U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
Air Traffic Organization Policy

ORDER
JO 7110.65W

Effective Date:
December 10, 2015

SUBJ: Air Traffic Control

This order prescribes air traffic control procedures and phraseology for use by personnel providing air traffic control services. Controllers are required to be familiar with the provisions of this order that pertain to their operational responsibilities and to exercise their best judgment if they encounter situations not covered by it.

Elizabeth L. Ray Digitally signed by Elizabeth L. Ray
DN: cn= Elizabeth L. Ray, o= Mission Support Services, AJV 0, ou= Air Traffic Organization, email=valentina.smith@faa.gov, c=US
Date: 2015.10.28 09:44:49 -04'00'

Vice President, Mission Support Services
Air Traffic Organization

Date: OCT 27 2015

Distribution: ZAT-710, ZAT-464

Initiated By: AJV-0
Vice President, System Operations Services

RECORD OF CHANGES

DIRECTIVE NO. **JO 7110.65W**

CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL	CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
Air Traffic Organization Policy

JO 7110.65W
CHG 1

Effective Date:
05/26/16

SUBJ: Air Traffic Control

1. Purpose of This Change. This change transmits revised pages to Federal Aviation Administration Order JO 7110.65W, Air Traffic Control, and the Briefing Guide.

2. Audience. This change applies to all Air Traffic Organization (ATO) personnel and anyone using ATO directives.

3. Where Can I Find This Change? This change is available on the FAA Web site at http://faa.gov/air_traffic/publications and https://employees.faa.gov/tools_resources/orders_notices/.

4. Explanation of Policy Change. See the Explanation of Changes attachment which has editorial corrections and changes submitted through normal procedures. The Briefing Guide lists only new or modified material, along with background.

5. Distribution. This change is distributed to selected offices in Washington headquarters, regional offices, service area offices, the William J. Hughes Technical Center, and the Mike Monroney Aeronautical Center. Also, copies are sent to all air traffic field facilities and international aviation field offices; and to interested aviation public.

6. Disposition of Transmittal. Retain this transmittal until superseded by a new basic order.

7. Page Control Chart. See the page control chart attachment.

Elizabeth L. Ray
Vice President, Mission Support Services
Air Traffic Organization

Date: ___________________________

Explanation of Changes
Change 1

Direct questions through appropriate facility/service center office staff to the Office of Primary Interest (OPI)

a. 1-1-9. REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATIONS OR CLARIFICATIONS

This change adds processes for requesting interpretations or clarifications pertaining to FAA Order JO 7110.65 content.

b. 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-3-10. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY
2-4-17. NUMBERS USAGE
2-5-2. NAVAID TERMS
2-5-3. NAVAID FIXES
3-3-2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION
3-7-5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA
4-1-1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS
4-6-4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS
4-7-5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT
4-7-13. SWITCHING ILS/MLS RUNWAYS
5-1-13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION
5-9-2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION
5-9-4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS
5-9-5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY
5-9-6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES
5-9-9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA) – HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-13-1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT
5-13-3. MONITOR INFORMATION
13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA

Due to lack of MLS and approach procedures in the NAS, this change removes all MLS references.

c. 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS

This change adds the abbreviation “NOWGT” to the subject paragraph.

d. 2-3-6. AIRCRAFT TYPE

This change deletes the contents of Appendices A, B, and C, and redirects the reader to FAA Order 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators.

e. 2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE
2-9-3. CONTENT

This change reflects the migration of the En Route Flight Advisory Service responsibilities into the InFlight position and the discontinued use of the term “Flight Watch” within the CONUS and Puerto Rico.

f. 2-6-4. WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES

This change adds the requirement for issuing an altitude to maintain when clearing an aircraft to deviate after a crossing altitude had already been issued, including Climb Via or Descend Via clearances on SID/STAR procedures.

g. 2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

This change adds oceanic sector teams to the title and deletes subparagraph 2-10-1a2. It also removes the remaining subparagraph designators that are no longer needed.

h. 2-10-2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES

This change deletes subparagraph 2-10-2a2 and removes the subparagraph 2-10-2 designators that are no longer needed.

i. 2-10-3. TOWER TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES

This change deletes subparagraph 2-10-3a2 and removes the subparagraph 2-10-3a designators that are no longer needed.

j. 3-3-7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT

The MM, or in the absence of a MM, 1/2 mile final and the IM or CAT II Missed Approach Point (MAP) will be used as reference points for the issuance of the localizer reliability advisory.

k. 3-8-1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION

This change advises pilots to inform ATC as soon as possible of any delay clearing the runway during their stop-and-go or full stop landing.

l. 3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

This change makes all the figures consistent with the logic provided in the text. The shaded aircraft in FIG 3-9-3 is moved to be within the confines of the runway, similar to the departure aircraft depicted in FIG 3-9-1 and FIG 3-9-2.

m. 3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

This change relocates a subparagraph of 3-9-9, and renumbers the remaining subparagraphs.

n. 3-10-5. LANDING CLEARANCE

This change allows controllers to be clearer with their instructions when controlling aircraft in the traffic pattern while utilizing LUAW procedures. These additional examples will reduce pilot confusion.

o. 4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS

This change conveys to ATC they cannot modify these restrictions (speed and/or crossing altitudes) since they are needed to ensure obstacle avoidance.

p. 4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

This change clarifies that both textual and graphic ODPs can be assigned by ATC to ensure aircraft separation.

q. 4-7-12. AIRPORT CONDITIONS
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE
4-8-9. MISSED APPROACH
4-8-10. APPROACH INFORMATION

This change prescribes controller responsibility when informed that a pilot will conduct Cold Temperature Compensation (CTC).

r. 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

This change revises the associated FIG 4-8-5 to be consistent with the content.

s. 5-1-3. RADAR USE

This change provides procedural guidance for facilities providing ATC services using ADS-B and WAM as surveillance sources.

t. 5-4-3. METHODS

This change allows the use of the CID as a means for the transferring controller to identify an aircraft in making an intra-facility point out.

u. 5–4–6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

Changes to this paragraph were inadvertently omitted from the global implementation of the previously vetted FAA Order 7110.311C, into FAA Order 7110.65.

v. 5-6-2. METHODS

This change adds the requirement to issue an altitude to maintain when clearing an aircraft to deviate off of a procedure containing published crossing restrictions except when the aircraft has not yet been cleared to navigate vertically.

w. 5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

This change allows controllers to discontinue using 1,000 feet vertical or 3 miles radar separation between aircraft conducting an RNAV (RNP) approach that contains a radius-to-fix (RF) leg and aircraft conducting a straight-in ILS/RNAV with vertical guidance/GLS, or another RNAV (RNP) approach with an RF leg once the aircraft are established on their respective approach procedures.

x. 7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

This change clarifies existing procedures and responsibilities and revises phraseology to ensure understanding of ATC clearances and instructions.

y. 7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS

This change permits the use of RNAV procedures and direct courses that will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees, to be used in lieu of radar vectors. This change also permits use of procedures using radius-to-fix legs that intercept final in lieu of 30-degree intercept provisions otherwise contained in this paragraph.

z. 8-7-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-8-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-9-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

This change implements ADS-B ITP to allow climb and descent of appropriately equipped aircraft using reduced separation in the oceanic domain upon pilot request.

aa. 9-1-2. SPECIAL HANDLING

This change increases Air Traffic awareness that aircraft using the call sign FLIGHT VAL will be performing Flight Validation activities that are similar to Flight Check activities, but no additional priority is granted.

ab. 10-2-13. MANPADS ALERT

This change identifies the DEN as the FAA Headquarters office for MANPADS notifications, adds a clarification edit, and a reference to FAA Order JO 7610.4.

ac. 11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
11-1-3. TIME−BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

This change incorporates responsibilities for the use of TBFM into FAA Order JO 7110.65. It provides specific directions to facilities as to duties and responsibilities.

ad. 13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION

This change adds the requirement for the first sector displaying the Embedded Route Text (ERT) coding to issue and acknowledge the ERT coding unless otherwise coordinated or specified in appropriate facility directives.

ae. Appendix A - Aircraft Information Fixed-Wing Aircraft
Appendix B - Aircraft Information Helicopters/Rotorcrafts
Appendix C - Aircraft Information Specific Amateur−Built/Experimental Aircraft

This change directs readers to a new source of aircraft information and deletes Appendices A, B, and C.

af. Entire publication

A global search and replace was conducted on the term "A/FD − Airport/Facility Directory." This term is now being referred to as "Chart Supplement U.S."

Additional editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used because of the insignificant nature of these changes.

ERRATA SHEET

SUBJECT: FAA Order JO 7110.65W, Air Traffic Control, effective December 10, 2015.

This errata sheet transmits the revised pages to the subject order.

REMOVE PAGE	DATED	INSERT PAGE	DATED
4–8–3 and 4–8–4	12/10/15	4–8–3 and 4–8–4	12/10/15
5–9–7 and 5–9–8	12/10/15	5–9–7 and 5–9–8	12/10/15

Attachment

Explanation of Changes
Basic

Direct questions through appropriate facility/service center office staff to the Office of Primary Interest (OPI)

ag. 1-1-7. DELIVERY DATES

This change deletes the requirement to contact the local National Geospatial/Intelligence Agency representative to obtain required publications and adds both the Defense Switching Network and commercial telephone contact numbers to request required publications.

ah. 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-2-11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA
2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)
2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES
4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS
4-6-3. DELAYS
5-1-6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS
5-2-2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT
5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT
5-3-3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS
5-3-8. TARGET MARKERS
5-4-3. METHODS
5-4-5. TRANSERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5-4-7. POINT OUT
5-4-11. EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-5-9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS
5-5-10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE
5-5-11. EDGE OF SCOPE
5-6-2. METHODS
5-14-1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT
5-14-3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF ASSIGNED ALTITUDE
5-14-5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS
5-14-8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS
5-14-9. ERAM COMPUTER ENTRIES OF HOLD INFORMATION
5-14-10. ERAM VISUAL INDICATOR OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA) STATUS
10-2-5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
13-1-1. DESCRIPTION
13-1-2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION
13-1-3. TRIAL PLANNING
13-1-4. URET–BASED CLEARANCES
13-1-5. THE AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL), DEPARTURE (DL), AND FLIGHT DATA MANAGEMENT
13-1-6. MANUAL COORDINATION AND THE COORDINATION MENU
13-1-7. HOLDING
13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA
13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION
13-1-10. CURRENCY OF TRAJECTORY INFORMATION
13-1-11. DELAY REPORTING
13-1-12. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
13-1-14. FORCAST WINDS
13-1-15. INTERFACILITY CONNECTIVITY
13-1-16. PRIMARY RDP/FDP OUTAGES
13-1-17. URET AIRSPACE CONFIGURATION ELEMENTS

The changes are intended to be a verbatim incorporation of previously vetted FAA Order 7110.311C, into FAA Order 7110.65. Some of the paragraphs that will have ERAM terminology added to them also contain legacy terminology that is no longer valid and those terms are being removed. During this global cleanup, additional paragraphs that were not part of FAA Order

7110.311C but contained legacy terminology were also identified. In these paragraphs, minor editorial changes were made to remove outdated legacy terms.

ai. 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-1-6. SAFETY ALERTS
5-2-13. CODE MONITOR
5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C
5-4-6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5-5-2. TARGET SEPARATION
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-15-1. APPLICATION
Chapter 5, Section 16. TPX-42
7-6-1. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT
7-7-3. SEPARATION
7-8-3. SEPARATION
7-9-4. SEPARATION

This change includes new procedures for ADS-B only surveillance as prescribed in the CARTS and STARS ADS-B Only SRMD addendum. Chapter 5, Section 15, has been revised to include STARS and adds ERAM related Mode C content. Obsolete provisions relating to TPX-42 and references to PIDP and DAIR have been removed. This change also moves Target Resolution information now contained in Chapter 7 NOTES into procedural guidance. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.683, Guidance for the Implementation of FUSION/Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) within Common Automated Terminal System Model IIIE (CARTS) and Standard Automation Replacement System (STARTS) effective January 29, 2015.

aj. 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
8-1-7. OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORTING (ONER) PROCEDURES

This changes the title of paragraph of 8−1−7 and deletes the NOTE.

ak. 2-1-6. SAFETY ALERT

With this modification, paragraph 2-1-6b example will comply with prescribed phraseology.

al. 2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE
2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES
2-4-14. WORDS AND PHRASES
2-4-21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES
3-3-5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES
3-7-3. GROUND OPERATIONS
3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH
4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES
5-5-7. PASSING OR DIVERGING
7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

This change adds the Super weight class to the order. Where applicable, "When wake turbulence separation is required" is used in lieu of excessive wording.

am. 2-3-8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

This change adds an additional aircraft equipment suffix, Slant O (/O), for RVSM capable aircraft that maintain an operating transponder with no Mode C altitude reporting capability. This suffix is for ATC use only.

an. 3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION
3-9-7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES
3-9-8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS
3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS
3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION
3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-5-7. PASSING OR DIVERGING
5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES
5-8-5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS
6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION
6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA
6-7-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA
7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH
7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS
7-6-7. SEQUENCING

This change adds the super weight class to the listed paragraphs, modifies wake turbulence separation minima behind the B757 aircraft, and adds a requirement to provide 10 NM separation in front of and behind an aircraft when the data block indicates “NOWGT.” Paragraph 3-9-7 has been edited to define the requirements of the procedure in a progressive format for easier readability.

ao. 3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

The change describes the conditions where an independent safety analysis specific to Converging Runway Operations could provide an equivalent level of safety and improve efficiency.

ap. 4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

This change adds directive guidance not to solicit a VCOA from the pilot. It also adds a new NOTE specifying that pilots will advise ATC of their intent to utilize the VCOA option.

aq. 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

This change reorganizes content to provide clarity.

ar. 4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES
7-3-1. VFR-ON-TOP
10-6-5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

This change removes the word “standard” while ensuring the application of IFR separation.

as. 5-4-2. TERMS

The change revises the term “point out” for consistency and added clarity.

at. 5-6-1. APPLICATION

This change removes the last sentence from paragraph 5-6-1a due to misapplication related to the vectoring and rerouting of RNAV aircraft. All aircraft should be allowed to remain on their own navigation to the extent possible, consistent with operational needs and pilot requests.

au. 5-9-6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES

This change introduces the use of 1 mile radar separation diagonally on simultaneous dependent approaches when runway centerlines are separated by at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet; and it alters the existing paragraph to account for the new 3,600 foot standard. There are no additional conditions or procedures required when utilizing the 1 NM minimum separation standard.

av. 5-9-7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES – DUAL AND TRIPLE

This change incorporates the latest AFS guidance concerning centerline spacing in the conduct of simultaneous parallel approaches. This change also articulates specific AFS mitigations not previously included. Lastly, the paragraph has been re-organized by moving monitoring requirement from the runway spacing provisions, and specifies that FUSION is not to be used when conducting final monitoring activities.

aw. 5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES-HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-9-9. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES – HIGH UPDATE RADAR NOT REQUIRED
5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)–HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-9-11. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY–SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

This change revises paragraph 5–9–8 to include PRM Approaches to better articulate the appropriate circumstances when PRM approaches need to be assigned to users which is lacking today. This change also deletes paragraph 5–9–9, and renumbers 5–9–10 and 5–9–11.

ax. 5-9-11. TRANSITIONAL PROCEDURES

This new paragraph allows a controller to issue control instructions without incurring a loss of separation which results in a low MOC.

ay. Entire Publication

Additional editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used because of the insignificant nature of these changes.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. General

Section 1. Introduction

Section 2. Terms of Reference

Chapter 2. General Control

Section 1. General

Section 2. Flight Plans and Control Information

Section 3. Flight Progress Strips

Section 4. Radio and Interphone Communications

Section 5. Route and NAVAID Description

Section 6. Weather Information

Section 7. Altimeter Settings

Section 8. Runway Visibility Reporting– Terminal

Section 9. Automatic Terminal Information Service Procedures

Section 10. Team Position Responsibilities

Chapter 3. Airport Traffic Control– Terminal

Section 1. General

Section 2. Visual Signals

Section 3. Airport Conditions

Section 4. Airport Lighting

Section 5. Runway Selection

Section 6. Airport Surface Detection Procedures

Section 7. Taxi and Ground Movement Procedures

Section 8. Spacing and Sequencing

Section 9. Departure Procedures and Separation

Section 10. Arrival Procedures and Separation

Section 11. Helicopter Operations

Section 12. Sea Lane Operations

Chapter 4. IFR

Section 1. NAVAID Use Limitations

Section 2. Clearances

Section 3. Departure Procedures

Section 4. Route Assignment

Section 5. Altitude Assignment and Verification

Section 6. Holding Aircraft

Section 7. Arrival Procedures

Section 3. Radar Identification

Section 4. Transfer of Radar Identification

Section 5. Radar Separation

Section 15. Common Automated Radar Terminal Systems (CARTS) & Standard Terminal Automation Replacement System (STARS)–Terminal

Chapter 6. Nonradar

Section 1. General

Section 2. Initial Separation of Successive Departing Aircraft

Section 3. Initial Separation of Departing and Arriving Aircraft

Section 4. Longitudinal Separation

Section 5. Lateral Separation

Section 6. Vertical Separation

Section 7. Timed Approaches

Chapter 7. Visual

Section 1. General

Section 2. Visual Separation

Section 3. VFR-On-Top

Section 4. Approaches

Section 5. Special VFR (SVFR)

Section 6. Basic Radar Service to VFR Aircraft– Terminal

Section 7. Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)– Terminal

Section 8. Class C Service– Terminal

Section 9. Class B Service Area– Terminal

Chapter 8. Offshore/Oceanic Procedures

Section 1. General

Section 2. Coordination

Section 3. Longitudinal Separation

Section 4. Lateral Separation

Section 5. Offshore/Oceanic Transition Procedures

Section 6. Separation from Airspace Reservations

Section 7. North Atlantic ICAO Region

Section 8. Caribbean ICAO Region

Section 9. Pacific ICAO Region

Section 10. North American ICAO Region

Chapter 9. Special Flights

Section 1. General

Section 2. Special Operations

Section 3. Special Use, ATC−Assigned Airspace, and Stationary ALTRVs

Section 4. Fuel Dumping

Section 5. Jettisoning of External Stores

Section 6. Unmanned Free Balloons

Section 7. Parachute Operations

Section 8. Unidentified Flying Object (UFO) Reports

Chapter 10. Emergencies

Section 1. General

Section 2. Emergency Assistance

Chapter 12. Canadian Airspace Procedures

Section 1. General Control

Chapter 13. Decision Support Tools

Section 1. ERAM Decision Support Tools (EDST)

Section 2. Ocean21 – Oceanic

Appendices

Chapter 1. General

Section 1. Introduction

1–1–1. PURPOSE OF THIS ORDER

This order prescribes air traffic control procedures and phraseology for use by persons providing air traffic control services. Controllers are required to be familiar with the provisions of this order that pertain to their operational responsibilities and to exercise their best judgment if they encounter situations that are not covered by it.

1–1–2. AUDIENCE

This order applies to all ATO personnel and anyone using ATO directives.

1–1–3. WHERE TO FIND THIS ORDER

This order is available on the FAA Web site at http://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/orders_notices.

1–1–4. WHAT THIS ORDER CANCELS

FAA Order JO 7110.65V, Air Traffic Control, dated April 3, 2014, and all changes to it are canceled.

1–1–5. EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

The significant changes to this order are identified in the Explanation of Changes page(s). It is advisable to retain the page(s) throughout the duration of the basic order.

1–1–6. SUBMISSION CUTOFF AND EFFECTIVE DATES

This order and its changes are scheduled to be published to coincide with AIRAC dates. (See TBL 1–1–1.)

TBL 1–1–1
Publication Schedule

Basic or Change	Cutoff Date for Submission	Effective Date of Publication
JO 7110.65W	6/25/15	12/10/15
Change 1	12/10/15	5/26/16
Change 2	5/26/16	11/10/16
Change 3	11/10/16	4/27/17
JO 7110.65X	4/27/17	10/12/17

1–1–7. DELIVERY DATES

a. If an FAA facility **has not** received the order/changes at least 30 days before the above effective dates, the facility must notify its service area office distribution officer.

b. If a military facility **has not** received the order/changes at least 30 days before the above effective dates, the facility must notify its appropriate military headquarters. (See TBL 1–1–2.)

TBL 1–1–2
Military Distribution Contacts

Military Headquarters	DSN	Commercial
U.S. Army USAASA	656–4868	(703) 806–4868
U.S. Air Force HQ AFFSA	884-5509	(405) 734-5509
U.S. Navy CNO (N980A)	224–2638	(703) 614–2638

1–1–8. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PROCEDURAL CHANGES

The office of primary responsibility (OPR) for this order is:
FAA Headquarters, Mission Support Services
Air Traffic Procedures (AJV-8)
600 Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, DC 20597

a. Personnel should submit recommended changes in procedures to facility management.

b. Recommendations from other sources should be submitted through appropriate FAA, military, or industry/user channels.

c. Proposed changes must be submitted, electronically, to the Air Traffic Procedures Correspondence Mailbox at 9−AJV−8−HQ−Correspondence@faa.gov. The submission should include a description of the recommended change, and the proposed language to be used in the order.

d. Procedural changes will not be made to this order until the operational system software has been adapted to accomplish the revised procedures

1−1−9. REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATIONS OR CLARIFICATIONS TO THIS ORDER

a. Interpretation requests from field air traffic personnel must be submitted as follows:

1. The request must be submitted, in writing, by an Air Traffic Facility/District manager to their Service Area Director.

2. The Service Area Director must review the request and determine if more than one interpretation on the intent of the language can be inferred.

3. If it is determined that an interpretation is required, the Service Area Director must submit the request, in writing, to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate, for a response.

b. If a request does not require an interpretation but further clarification is needed it must be forwarded to the Service Center Operations Support Group for a response.

1. The Service Center Operations Support Group may consult with the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate when preparing their response.

2. The Service Center Operations Support Group must provide a written response to the requestor and forward the response to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate.

c. Interpretation requests from all other sources must be submitted, in writing, to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate through the Air Traffic Procedures correspondence mailbox.

NOTE−
Interpretations can be accessed through the Air Traffic Control Interpretation link at the following website: https://my.faa.gov/org/linebusiness/ato/mission_support/air_traffic_procedures.html.

1−1−10. PROCEDURAL LETTERS OF AGREEMENT

Procedures/minima which are applied jointly or otherwise require the cooperation or concurrence of more than one facility/organization must be documented in a letter of agreement. Letters of agreement only supplement this order. Any minima they specify must not be less than that specified herein unless appropriate military authority has authorized application of reduced separation between military aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−1 , ATC Service.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−1, Letters of Agreement.

1−1−11. CONSTRAINTS GOVERNING SUPPLEMENTS AND PROCEDURAL DEVIATIONS

a. Exceptional or unusual requirements may dictate procedural deviations or supplementary procedures to this order. Prior to implementing supplemental or any procedural deviation that alters the level, quality, or degree of service, obtain prior approval from the Vice President, Mission Support Services.

b. If military operations or facilities are involved, prior approval by the following appropriate headquarters is required for subsequent interface with FAA. (See TBL 1−1−3.)

TBL 1−1−3
Military Operations Interface Offices

Branch	Address
U.S. Navy	Department of the Navy Chief of Naval Operations N980A, NAATSEA 2000 Navy Pentagon (5D453) Washington, D.C. 20350−2000
U.S. Air Force	HQ AFFSA/Airfield Operations Bldg 4 Room 240 6500 S. MacArthur Blvd Oklahoma City, OK 73169 Email: hqaffsa.xa@us.af.mil
U.S. Army	Director USAASA (MOAS−AS) 9325 Gunston Road, Suite N319 Ft. Belvoir, VA 22060−5582

NOTE−
Terminal: Headquarters Air Force Flight Standards Agency is the approval authority for any USAF procedures or minima that differ from those specified herein and that involve military aircraft only.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−12, Military Procedures
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−3 , Use of Active Runways.

1−1−12. SAFETY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (SMS)

Every employee is responsible to ensure the safety of equipment and procedures used in the provision of services within the National Airspace System (NAS). Risk assessment techniques and mitigations, as appropriate, are intended for implementation of any planned safety significant changes within the NAS, as directed by FAA Order 1100.161, Air Traffic Safety Oversight. Direction regarding the SMS and its application can be found in the FAA Safety Management System Manual and FAA Order 1100.161. The SMS will be implemented through a period of transitional activities. (Additional information pertaining to these requirements and processes can be obtained by contacting the service area offices.)

1−1−13. REFERENCES TO FAA NON−AIR TRAFFIC ORGANIZATIONS

When references are made to regional office organizations that are not part of the Air Traffic Organization (i.e., Communications Center, Flight Standards, Airport offices, etc.), the facility should contact the FAA region where the facility is physically located − not the region where the facility's service area office is located.

1−1−14. DISTRIBUTION

This order is distributed to selected offices in Washington headquarters, regional offices, service area offices, the William J. Hughes Technical Center, and the Mike Monroney Aeronautical Center. Also, copies are sent to all air traffic field facilities and international aviation field offices; and to interested aviation public.

Section 2. Terms of Reference

1−2−1. WORD MEANINGS

As used in this order:

a. "Shall" or "must" means a procedure is mandatory.

b. "Shall not" or "must not" means a procedure is prohibited.

c. "Should" means a procedure is recommended.

d. "May" or "need not" means a procedure is optional.

e. "Will" means futurity, not a requirement for the application of a procedure.

f. Singular words include the plural.

g. Plural words include the singular.

h. "Aircraft" means the airframe, crew members, or both.

i. "Approved separation" means separation in accordance with the applicable minima in this order.

j. "Altitude" means indicated altitude mean sea level (MSL), flight level (FL), or both.

k. "Miles" means nautical miles unless otherwise specified, and means statute miles in conjunction with visibility.

l. "Course," "bearing," "azimuth," "heading," and "wind direction" information must always be magnetic unless specifically stated otherwise.

m. "Time" when used for ATC operational activities, is the hour and the minute in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Change to the next minute is made at the minute plus 30 seconds, except time checks are given to the nearest quarter minute.

n. "Runway" means the runway used by aircraft and, unless otherwise specified, does not include helipads and/or their accompanying takeoff/landing courses. (See Pilot/Controller Glossary terms – Runway and Helipad.)

o. Flight operations in accordance with the options of "due regard" or "operational" obligates the authorized state aircraft commander to:

1. Separate his/her aircraft from all other air traffic; and

2. Assure that an appropriate monitoring agency assumes responsibility for search and rescue actions; and

3. Operate under at least one of the following conditions:

(a) In visual meteorological conditions (VMC); or

(b) Wthin radar surveillance and radio communications of a surface radar facility; or

(c) Be equipped with airborne radar that is sufficient to provide separation between his/her aircraft and any other aircraft he/she may be controlling and other aircraft; or

(d) Operate within Class G airspace.

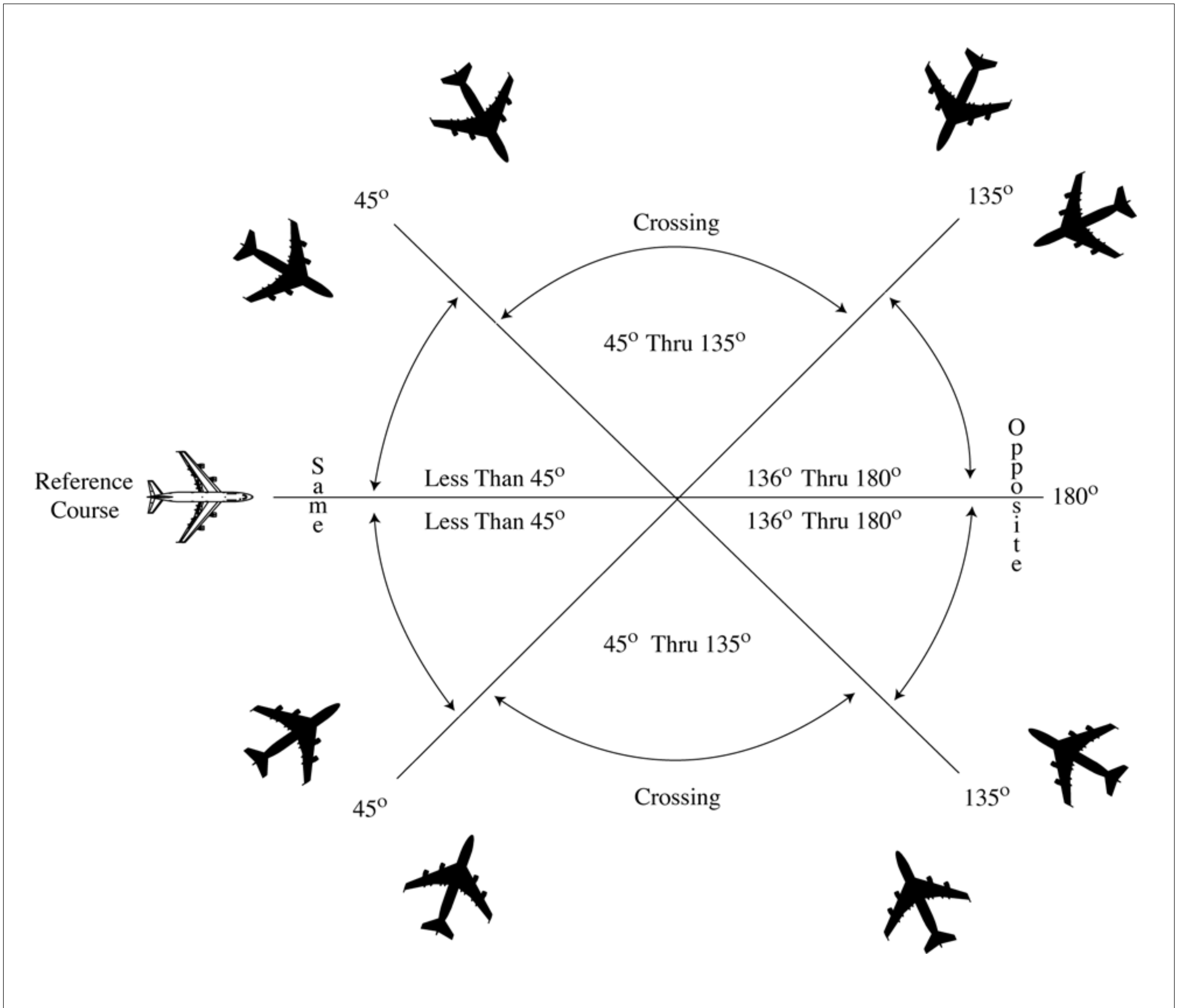
(e) An understanding between the pilot and controller regarding the intent of the pilot and the status of the flight should be arrived at before the aircraft leaves ATC frequency.

NOTE−
1. *A pilot's use of the phrase "Going Tactical" does not indicate "Due Regard." An understanding between the pilot and controller regarding the intent of the pilot and the status of the flight should be arrived at before the aircraft leaves air traffic control (ATC) frequency.*

2. *The above conditions provide for a level of safety equivalent to that normally given by International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) ATC agencies and fulfills U.S. Government obligations under Article 3 of the Chicago Convention of 1944 (Reference (d)), which stipulates there must be "due regard for the safety of navigation of civil aircraft" when flight is not being conducted under ICAO flight procedures.*

p. "CFR" means Code of Federal Regulations.

FIG 1−2−1
Divergence



1−2−2. COURSE DEFINITIONS

The following definitions must be used in the application of the separation criteria in this order.

NOTE−
The term "protected airspace," as used in this paragraph, is the airspace equal to one half the required applicable lateral separation on either side of an aircraft along its projected flight path. If the protected airspace of two aircraft does not overlap, applicable lateral separation is ensured.

a. *SAME COURSES* are courses whose protected airspaces are coincident, overlap, or intersect and whose angular difference is less than 45 degrees. (See FIG 1−2−1.)

b. *CROSSING COURSES* are intersecting courses whose angular difference is 45 through 135 degrees inclusive. (See FIG 1−2−1.)

c. *OPPOSITE/RECIPROCAL COURSES* are courses whose protected airspaces are coincident, overlap, or intersect and whose angular difference is greater than 135 degrees through 180 degrees inclusive. (See FIG 1−2−1.)

1−2−3. NOTES

Statements of fact, or of a prefatory or explanatory nature relating to directive material, are set forth as notes.

1–2–4. REFERENCES

As used in this order, references direct attention to an additional or supporting source of information such as FAA, NWS, and other agencies' orders, directives, notices, CFRs, and Advisory Circulars (ACs).

1–2–5. ANNOTATIONS

Revised, reprinted, or new pages are marked as follows:

a. The change number and the effective date are printed on each revised or additional page.

b. A page that does not require a change is reprinted in its original form.

c. Bold vertical lines in the margin of changed pages indicate the location of substantive revisions to the order. Bold vertical lines adjacent to the title of a chapter, section, or paragraph means that extensive changes have been made to that chapter, section, or paragraph.

d. Paragraphs/sections annotated with *EN ROUTE, OCEANIC,* or *TERMINAL* are only to be applied by the designated type facility. When they are not so designated, the paragraphs/sections apply to all types of facilities (en route, oceanic, and terminal).

e. The annotation, *USAF* for the U.S. Air Force, *USN* for the U.S. Navy, and *USA* for the U.S. Army denotes that the procedure immediately following the annotation applies only to the designated service.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–12, Military Procedures.

f. WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION inserted within a paragraph means that the remaining information in the paragraph requires the application of wake turbulence procedures.

g. The annotation ***PHRASEOLOGY*** denotes the prescribed words and/or phrases to be used in communications.

NOTE–
Controllers may, after first using the prescribed phraseology for a specific procedure, rephrase the message to ensure the content is understood. Good judgment must be exercised when using nonstandard phraseology.

h. The annotation ***EXAMPLE*** provides a sample of the way the prescribed phraseology associated with the preceding paragraph(s) will be used. If the preceding paragraph(s) does (do) not include specific prescribed phraseology, the ***EXAMPLE*** merely denotes suggested words and/or phrases that may be used in communications.

NOTE–
The use of the exact text contained in an example not preceded with specific prescribed phraseology is not mandatory. However, the words and/or phrases are expected, to the extent practical, to approximate those used in the example.

1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS

As used in this manual, the following abbreviations have the meanings indicated. (See TBL 1–2–1.)

TBL 1–2–1
FAA Order JO 7110.65 Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
AAR	Airport acceptance rate
AC	Advisory Circular
ACC	Area Control Center
ACD	ARTS Color Display
ACE–IDS . . .	ASOS Controller Equipment– Information Display System
ACL	Aircraft list
ACLS	Automatic Carrier Landing System
ADC	Aerospace Defense Command
ADIZ	Air Defense Identification Zone (to be pronounced "AY DIZ")
ADS	Automatic Dependent Surveillance
ADS–B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance Broadcast
ADS–C	Automatic Dependent Surveillance Contract
AERT	Automation Embedded Route Text
AFP	Airspace Flow Program
AIDC	ATS Interfacility Data Communications
AIM	Aeronautical Information Manual
AIRMET . . .	Airmen's meteorological information
ALERFA . . .	Alert phase code (Alerting Service)
ALNOT	Alert notice
ALS	Approach Light System
ALTRV	Altitude reservation
AMASS	Airport Movement Area Safety System

Abbreviation	Meaning
AMB	Ambiguity−A disparity greater than 2 miles exists between the position declared for a target by ATTS and another facility's computer declared position during interfacility handoff
AMVER	Automated Mutual Assistance Vessel Rescue System
ANG	Air National Guard
APR	ATC preferred route
APREQ	Approval Request
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
ARIP	Air refueling initial point
ARSR	Air route surveillance radar
ARTCC	Air Route Traffic Control Center
ARTS	Automated Radar Terminal System
ASD	Aircraft Situation Display
ASDE	Airport surface detection equipment
ASDE−X ...	Airport Surface Detection Equipment System − Model X
ASF	Airport Stream Filters
ASOS	Automated Surface Observing System
ASR	Airport surveillance radar
ATC	Air traffic control
ATCAA	ATC assigned airspace
ATCSCC	David J. Hurley Air Traffic Control System Command Center
ATD	Along−Track Distance
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATO	Air Traffic Organization
ATO COO ..	Air Traffic Organization Chief Operating Officer
ATS	Air Traffic Service
AWOS	Automated Weather Observing System
BAASS	Bigelow Aerospace Advanced Space Studies
BASE	Cloud base
CA	Conflict Alert
CARCAH ...	Chief, Aerial Reconnaissance Coordination, All Hurricanes
CARF	Central Altitude Reservation Function
CARTS	Common ARTS
CAT	Clear air turbulence
CDT	Controlled departure time
CENRAP ...	Center Radar ARTS Presentation
CEP	Central East Pacific
CERAP	Combined Center/RAPCON

Abbreviation	Meaning
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CFR	Call for Release
CIC	Controller−in−Charge
CNS	Continuous
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CPME	Calibration Performance Monitor Equipment
CTA	Control Area
CTRD	Certified Tower Radar Display
CVFP	Charted Visual Flight Procedure
CWA	Center Weather Advisory
DETRESFA .	Distress Phase code (Alerting Service)
DH	Decision height
DL	Departure List
DME	Distance measuring equipment compatible with TACAN
DOE	Department of Energy
DP	Instrument Departure Procedure
DR	Dead reckoning
DRT	Diversion recovery tool
DSR	Display System Replacement
DTAS	Digital Terminal Automation Systems
DTM	Digital Terrain Map
DVFR	Defense Visual Flight Rules
DVRSN	Diversion
EA	Electronic Attack
EAS	En Route Automation System
EBUS	Enhanced Backup Surveillance System
EDCT	Expect Departure Clearance Time
EDST	En Route Decision Support Tool
EFC	Expect further clearance
ELDB	Enhanced Limited Data Block
ELP	Emergency Landing Pattern
ELT	Emergency locator transmitter
EOS	End Service
EOVM	Emergency obstruction video map
ERAM	En Route Automation Modernization
ERIDS	En Route Information Display System
ETA	Estimated time of arrival
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAAO	FAA Order
FANS	Future Air Navigation System

Abbreviation	Meaning
FDB	Full Data Block
FDIO	Flight Data Input/Output
FDP	Flight data processing
FIR	Flight Information Region
FL	Flight level
FLIP	Flight Information Publication
FLM	Front−Line Manager
FLY	Fly or flying
FMS	Flight Management System
FMSP	Flight Management System Procedure
FSM	Flight Schedule Monitor
FSS	Flight Service Station
GCA	Ground controlled approach
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GPD	Graphics Plan Display
GPS	Global Positioning System
GS	Ground stop
HAR	High Altitude Redesign
HF/RO	High Frequency/Radio Operator
HIRL	High intensity runway lights
IAFDOF	Inappropriate Altitude for Direction of Flight
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
IDENT	Aircraft identification
IDS	Information Display System
IFR	Instrument flight rules
IFSS	International Flight Service Station
ILS	Instrument Landing System
INCERFA ...	Uncertainty Phase code (Alerting Service)
INREQ	Information request
INS	Inertial Navigation System
IR	IFR military training route
IRU	Inertial Reference Unit
ISR	Increased Separation Required
ITWS	Integrated Terminal Weather System
JATO	Jet assisted takeoff
LAHSO	Land and Hold Short Operations
LOA	Letter of Agreement
LLWAS	Low Level Wind Shear Alert System
LLWAS NE .	Low Level Wind Shear Alert System Network Expansion
LLWAS−RS .	Low Level Wind Shear Alert System Relocation/Sustainment
LLWS	Low Level Wind Shear
L/MF	Low/medium frequency

Abbreviation	Meaning
LORAN	Long Range Navigation System
Mach	Mach number
MALS	Medium Intensity Approach Light System
MALSR	Medium Approach Light System with runway alignment indicator lights
MAP	Missed approach point
MARSA	Military authority assumes responsibility for separation of aircraft
MCA	Minimum crossing altitude
MCI	Mode C Intruder
MDA	Minimum descent altitude
MDM	Main display monitor
MEA	Minimum en route (IFR) altitude
MEARTS ...	Micro En Route Automated Radar Tracking System
METAR	Aviation Routine Weather Report
MIA	Minimum IFR altitude
MIAWS	Medium Intensity Airport Weather System
MIRL	Medium intensity runway lights
MNPS	Minimum Navigation Performance Specification
MNT	Mach Number Technique
MOA	Military operations area
MOCA	Minimum obstruction clearance altitude
MRA	Minimum reception altitude
MSAW	Minimum Safe Altitude Warning
MSL	Mean sea level
MTI	Moving target indicator
MTR	Military training route
MVA	Minimum vectoring altitude
NADIN	National Airspace Data Interchange Network
NAR	National Automation Request
NAS	National Airspace System
NAT	ICAO North Atlantic Region
NBCAP	National Beacon Code Allocation Plan
NDB	Nondirectional radio beacon
NHOP	National Hurricane Operations Plan
NM	Nautical mile
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOPAC	North Pacific
NORAD	North American Aerospace Defense Command

Abbreviation	Meaning
NOS	National Ocean Service
NOTAM	Notice to Airmen
NOWGT	No weight. The weight class or wake category has not been determined
NRP	North American Route Program
NRR	Nonrestrictive Route
NRS	Navigation Reference System
NTZ	No transgression zone
NWS	National Weather Service
NWSOP	National Winter Storm Operations Plan
ODALS	Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System
ODP	Obstacle Departure Procedure
OID	Operator Interface Device
OS	Operations Supervisor
OTR	Oceanic transition route
PAPI	Precision Approach Path Indicators
PAR	Precision approach radar
PAR	Preferred arrival route
PBCT	Proposed boundary crossing time
P/CG	Pilot/Controller Glossary
PDAR	Preferential departure arrival route
PDC	Pre−Departure Clearance
PDR	Preferential departure route
PPI	Plan position indicator
PTP	Point−to−point
PVD	Plan view display
RA	Radar Associate
RAIL	Runway alignment indicator lights
RAPCON . . .	Radar Approach Control Facility (USAF)
RATCF	Radar Air Traffic Control Facility (USN)
RBS	Radar bomb scoring
RCC	Rescue Coordination Center
RCLS	Runway Centerline System
RCR	Runway condition reading
RE	Recent (used to qualify weather phenomena such as rain, e.g. recent rain = RERA)
REIL	Runway end identifier lights
RNAV	Area navigation
RNP	Required Navigation Performance
RTQC	Real−Time Quality Control
RVR	Runway visual range

Abbreviation	Meaning
RVSM	Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum
RVV	Runway visibility value
SAA	Special Activity Airspace
SAR	Search and rescue
SATCOM . . .	Satellite Communication
SDP	Surveillance Data Processing
SELCAL	Selective Calling System
SFA	Single frequency approach
SFO	Simulated flameout
SID	Standard Instrument Departure
SIGMET	Significant meteorological information
SPA	Special Posting Area
SPECI	Nonroutine (Special) Aviation Weather Report
STAR	Standard terminal arrival
STARS	Standard Terminal Automation Replacement System
STMC	Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator
STMCIC	Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator−in−charge
STOL	Short takeoff and landing
SURPIC	Surface Picture
SVFR	Special Visual Flight Rules
TAA	Terminal arrival area
TAS	Terminal Automation Systems
TACAN	TACAN UHF navigational aid (omnidirectional course and distance information)
TAWS	Terrain Awareness Warning System
TCAS	Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System
TCDD	Tower cab digital display
TDLS	Terminal Data Link System
TDW	Tower display workstation
TDWR	Terminal Doppler Weather Radar
TDZL	Touchdown Zone Light System
TFMS	Traffic Flow Management System
TMC	Traffic Management Coordinator
TMU	Traffic Management Unit
TRACON . . .	Terminal Radar Approach Control
TRSA	Terminal radar service area
UFO	Unidentified flying object
UHF	Ultra high frequency

Abbreviation	Meaning
USA	United States Army
USAF	United States Air Force
USN	United States Navy
UTC	Coordinated universal time
UTM	Unsuccessful transmission message
UUA	Urgent pilot weather report
VFR	Visual flight rules
VHF	Very high frequency
VMC	Visual meteorological conditions
VNAV	Vertical Navigation
VOR	VHF navigational aid (omnidirectional course information)
VOR/DME ..	Collocated VOR and DME navigational aids (VHF course and UHF distance information)
VORTAC ...	Collocated VOR and TACAN navigation aids (VHF and UHF course and UHF distance information)
VR	VFR military training route
VSCS	Voice Switching and Control System
WAAS	Wide Area Augmentation System
WARP	Weather and Radar Processing
WATRS	West Atlantic Route System
WSO	Weather Service Office
WSP	Weather System Processor
WST	Convective SIGMET

Chapter 2. General Control

Section 1. General

2-1-1. ATC SERVICE

The primary purpose of the ATC system is to prevent a collision between aircraft operating in the system and to provide a safe, orderly and expeditious flow of traffic, and to provide support for National Security and Homeland Defense. In addition to its primary function, the ATC system has the capability to provide, with certain limitations, additional services. The ability to provide additional services is limited by many factors, such as the volume of traffic, frequency congestion, quality of radar, controller workload, higher priority duties, and the pure physical inability to scan and detect those situations that fall in this category. It is recognized that these services cannot be provided in cases in which the provision of services is precluded by the above factors. Consistent with the aforementioned conditions, controllers must provide additional service procedures to the extent permitted by higher priority duties and other circumstances. The provision of additional services is not optional on the part of the controller, but rather is required when the work situation permits. Provide air traffic control service in accordance with the procedures and minima in this order except when:

a. A deviation is necessary to conform with ICAO Documents, National Rules of the Air, or special agreements where the U.S. provides air traffic control service in airspace outside the U.S. and its possessions or:

NOTE–
Pilots are required to abide by CFRs or other applicable regulations regardless of the application of any procedure or minima in this order.

b. Other procedures/minima are prescribed in a letter of agreement, FAA directive, or a military document, or:

NOTE–
These procedures may include altitude reservations, air refueling, fighter interceptor operations, law enforcement, etc.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1-1-9 Procedural Letters of Agreement.

c. A deviation is necessary to assist an aircraft when an emergency has been declared.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-6 Safety Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 10 Emergencies.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-8 Merging Target Procedures.

2-1-2. DUTY PRIORITY

a. Give first priority to separating aircraft and issuing safety alerts as required in this order. Good judgment must be used in prioritizing all other provisions of this order based on the requirements of the situation at hand.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-6 Safety Alert.

NOTE–
Because there are many variables involved, it is virtually impossible to develop a standard list of duty priorities that would apply uniformly to every conceivable situation. Each set of circumstances must be evaluated on its own merit, and when more than one action is required, controllers must exercise their best judgment based on the facts and circumstances known to them. That action which is most critical from a safety standpoint is performed first.

b. Provide support to national security and homeland defense activities to include, but not be limited to, reporting of suspicious and/or unusual aircraft/pilot activities.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4 Special Operations.

c. Provide additional services to the extent possible, contingent only upon higher priority duties and other factors including limitations of radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and workload.

2-1-3. PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE

a. Use automation procedures in preference to nonautomation procedures when workload, communications, and equipment capabilities permit.

b. Use radar separation in preference to nonradar separation when it will be to an operational advantage and workload, communications, and equipment permit.

c. Use nonradar separation in preference to radar separation when the situation dictates that an operational advantage will be gained.

NOTE−
One situation may be where vertical separation would preclude excessive vectoring.

2−1−4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY

Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:

NOTE−
It is solely the pilot's prerogative to cancel an IFR flight plan. However, a pilot's retention of an IFR flight plan does not afford priority over VFR aircraft. For example, this does not preclude the requirement for the pilot of an arriving IFR aircraft to adjust his/her flight path, as necessary, to enter a traffic pattern in sequence with arriving VFR aircraft.

a. An aircraft in distress has the right of way over all other air traffic.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.113(c).

b. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (call sign "MEDEVAC"). Use of the MEDEVAC call sign indicates that operational priority is requested. When verbally requested, provide priority to AIR EVAC, HOSP, and scheduled air carrier/air taxi flights. Assist the pilots of MEDEVAC, AIR EVAC, and HOSP aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.

NOTE−
It is recognized that heavy traffic flow may affect the controller's ability to provide priority handling. However, without compromising safety, good judgment must be used in each situation to facilitate the most expeditious movement of a MEDEVAC aircraft.

c. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−1−3, Providing Assistance.

d. Expedite the movement of presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.

NOTE−
As used herein the terms presidential aircraft and entourage include aircraft and entourage of the President, Vice President, or other public figures when designated by the White House.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−20 Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−2 Departure Clearances.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5−1−1 Advance Coordination.

e. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check aircraft.

NOTE−
It is recognized that unexpected wind conditions, weather, or heavy traffic flows may affect controller's ability to provide priority or special handling at the specific time requested.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−1−3, Flight Check Aircraft.

f. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NAOC (pronounced NA−YOCK) is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE−
The term "NAOC" will not be a part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12−1−1 Applications.

g. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−6 FLYNET.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12−4−1 "FLYNET" Flights, Nuclear Emergency Teams.

h. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.

NOTE−
Garden Plot flights require priority movement and are coordinated by the military with CARF. State authority will contact the Regional Administrator to arrange for priority of National Guard troop movements within a particular state.

i. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−17, SAMP.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5−3−4, Atmosphere Sampling For Nuclear Contamination.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12−4−3, Atmospheric Sampling For Nuclear Contamination.

j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.

k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE−
The term "SCOOT" will not be part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12−7−1, Applications.

l. When requested, provide priority handling to TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft.

NOTE−
Priority handling may be requested by the pilot, or via telephone from CARCAH or the 53rd Weather Reconnaissance Squadron (53WRS) operations center personnel, or in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−19, Weather Reconnaissance Flights.

m. IFR aircraft must have priority over SVFR aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 7, Section 5, Special VFR (SVFR).

n. Providing priority and special handling to expedite the movement of OPEN SKIES Treaty observation and demonstration (F and D) flights.

NOTE−
An OPEN SKIES Treaty (F and D) aircraft has priority over all "regular" air traffic. "Regular" is defined as all aircraft traffic other than:

1. Emergencies.

2. Aircraft directly involved in presidential movement.

3. Forces or activities in actual combat.

4. MEDEVAC, and active SAR missions.

5. AIR EVAC and HOSP aircraft that have requested priority handling.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−22, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5−3−7, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft Priority Flight (F and D).
Treaty on OPEN SKIES, Treaty Document, 102−37.

o. Aircraft operating under the North American Route Program (NRP) and in airspace identified in the High Altitude Redesign (HAR) program, are not subject to route limiting restrictions (e.g., published preferred IFR routes, letter of agreement requirements, standard operating procedures).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−3−2, En Route Data Entries.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−15, North American Route Program (NRP) Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−5, Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 17, Section 16, North American Route Program.

p. If able, provide priority handling to diverted flights. Priority handling may be requested via use of "DVRSN" in the remarks section of the flight plan or by the flight being placed on the Diversion Recovery Tool (DRT).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 17−4−5, Diversion Recovery.

2−1−5. EXPEDITIOUS COMPLIANCE

a. Use the word "immediately" only when expeditious compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

b. Use the word "expedite" only when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation. If an "expedite" climb or descent clearance is issued by ATC, and subsequently the altitude to maintain is changed or restated without an expedite instruction, the expedite instruction is canceled.

c. In either case, if time permits, include the reason for this action.

2−1−6. SAFETY ALERT

Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is in a position/altitude that, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. Once the pilot informs you action is being taken to resolve the situation, you may discontinue the issuance of further alerts. Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.

NOTE−
1. *The issuance of a safety alert is a first priority (see para 2−1−2, Duty Priority) once the controller observes and recognizes a situation of unsafe aircraft proximity to terrain, obstacles, or other aircraft. Conditions, such as workload, traffic volume, the quality/limitations of the radar system, and the available lead time to react are factors in determining whether it is reasonable for the controller to observe and recognize such situations. While a controller cannot see immediately the development of every situation where a safety alert must be issued, the*

controller must remain vigilant for such situations and issue a safety alert when the situation is recognized.

2. *Recognition of situations of unsafe proximity may result from MSAW/E−MSAW, automatic altitude readouts, Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert, observations on a PAR scope, or pilot reports.*

3. *Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, will be taken.*

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert. Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude that, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain and/or obstructions. Issue the alert as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY−
LOW ALTITUDE ALERT (call sign),

CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY.

and, if the aircraft is not yet on final approach,

THE (as appropriate) MEA/MVA/MOCA/MIA IN YOUR AREA IS (altitude),

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term − Final Approach − IFR

b. Aircraft Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert. Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware of another aircraft at an altitude that you believe places them in unsafe proximity. If feasible, offer the pilot an alternate course of action. When an alternate course of action is given, end the transmission with the word "immediately."

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC ALERT (call sign) (position of aircraft) ADVISE YOU TURN LEFT/RIGHT (heading),

and/or

CLIMB/DESCEND (specific altitude if appropriate) IMMEDIATELY.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic Alert, Cessna Three Four Juliet, 12'o clock, 1 mile advise you turn left immediately."
or
"Traffic Alert, Cessna Three-Four Juliet, 12'o clock, 1 mile advise you turn left and climb immediately."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−1, Conflict Alert (CA) and Mode C Intruder (MCI) Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−2, En Route Minimum Safe Altitude Warning (E−MSAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−15−6, CA/MCI.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-21, Traffic Advisories

2−1−7. INFLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS

a. When a pilot reports an inflight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.

NOTE−
Inflight equipment malfunctions include partial or complete failure of equipment, which may affect either safety, separation standards, and/or the ability of the flight to proceed under IFR, or in Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) airspace, in the ATC system. Controllers may expect reports from pilots regarding VOR, TACAN, ADF, GPS, RVSM capability, or low frequency navigation receivers, impairment of air−ground communications capability, or other equipment deemed appropriate by the pilot (e.g., airborne weather radar). Pilots should communicate the nature and extent of any assistance desired from ATC.

b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.

c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft, all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.

2−1−8. MINIMUM FUEL

If an aircraft declares a state of "minimum fuel," inform any facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred of the minimum fuel problem and be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft en route.

NOTE−
Use of the term "minimum fuel" indicates recognition by a pilot that his/her fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching destination, he/she cannot accept any undue delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely an advisory that indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur. A minimum fuel advisory does not imply a need for traffic priority. Common sense and good judgment will determine the extent of assistance to be given in minimum fuel situations. If, at any time, the

remaining usable fuel supply suggests the need for traffic priority to ensure a safe landing, the pilot should declare an emergency and report fuel remaining in minutes.

2−1−9. REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION

Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.

NOTE−
FSSs are responsible for classifying and disseminating Notices to Airmen.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−3, Timely Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−6, Service Limitations.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−1−2, Periodic Maintenance.
USN, See OPNAVINST 3721.30.

2−1−10. NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS

a. When an aircraft reports a ground−based NAVAID malfunction, take the following actions:

1. Request a report from a second aircraft.

2. If the second aircraft reports normal operations, continue use and inform the first aircraft. Record the incident on FAA Form 7230−4 or appropriate military form.

3. If the second aircraft confirms the malfunction or in the absence of a second aircraft report, activate the standby equipment or request the monitor facility to activate.

4. If normal operation is reported after the standby equipment is activated, continue use, record the incident on FAA Form 7230−4 or appropriate military form, and notify technical operations personnel (the Systems Engineer of the ARTCC when an en route aid is involved).

5. If continued malfunction is reported after the standby equipment is activated or the standby equipment cannot be activated, inform technical operations personnel and request advice on whether or not the aid should be shut down. In the absence of a second aircraft report, advise the technical operations personnel of the time of the initial aircraft report and the estimated time a second aircraft report could be obtained.

b. When an aircraft reports a GPS or WAAS anomaly, request the following information and/or take the following actions:

1. Record the following minimum information:

(a) Aircraft make, model, and call sign.

(b) Location or position, and altitude at the time where GPS or WAAS anomaly was observed.

(c) Date/time of occurrence.

2. Request a report from a second aircraft.

3. Record the incident on FAA Form 7230−4 or appropriate military form.

4. Inform other aircraft of the anomaly as specified in paragraph 4-8-1j or k, as applicable.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT, GPS REPORTED UNRELIABLE (OR WAAS UNAVAILABLE) IN VICINITY/AREA (position).

EXAMPLE−
"Attention all aircraft, GPS reported unreliable (or WAAS unavailable) in the area 30 miles south of Waco VOR."

c. When a pilot reports a WAAS anomaly, determine from the pilot what indications he or she observes and record the information in accordance with sub-paragraph b above.

2−1−11. USE OF MARSA

a. MARSA may only be applied to military operations specified in a letter of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military document.

NOTE−
Application of MARSA is a military command prerogative. It will not be invoked indiscriminately by individual units or pilots. It will be used only for IFR operations requiring its use. Commands authorizing MARSA will ensure that its implementation and terms of use are documented and coordinated with the control agency having jurisdiction over the area in which the operations are conducted. Terms of use will assign responsibility and provide for separation among participating aircraft.

b. ATC facilities do not invoke or deny MARSA. Their sole responsibility concerning the use of MARSA is to provide separation between military aircraft engaged in MARSA operations and other nonparticipating IFR aircraft.

c. DOD must ensure that military pilots requesting special-use airspace/ATCAAs have coordinated with the scheduling agency, have obtained approval for entry, and are familiar with the appropriate MARSA procedures. ATC is not responsible for determining which military aircraft are authorized to enter special-use airspace/ATCAAs.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−13, Military Aerial Refueling.

2−1−12. MILITARY PROCEDURES

Military procedures in the form of additions, modifications, and exceptions to the basic FAA procedure are prescribed herein when a common procedure has not been attained or to fulfill a specific requirement. They must be applied by:

a. ATC facilities operated by that military service.

EXAMPLE−
1. *An Air Force facility providing service for an Air Force base would apply USAF procedures to all traffic regardless of class.*

2. *A Navy facility providing service for a Naval Air Station would apply USN procedures to all traffic regardless of class.*

b. ATC facilities, regardless of their parent organization (FAA, USAF, USN, USA), supporting a designated military airport exclusively. This designation determines which military procedures are to be applied.

EXAMPLE−
1. *An FAA facility supports a USAF base exclusively; USAF procedures are applied to all traffic at that base.*

2. *An FAA facility provides approach control service for a Naval Air Station as well as supporting a civil airport; basic FAA procedures are applied at both locations by the FAA facility.*

3. *A USAF facility supports a USAF base and provides approach control service to a satellite civilian airport; USAF procedures are applied at both locations by the USAF facility.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1−2−5, Annotations.

c. Other ATC facilities when specified in a letter of agreement.

EXAMPLE−
A USAF unit is using a civil airport supported by an FAA facility− USAF procedures will be applied as specified in a letter of agreement between the unit and the FAA facility to the aircraft of the USAF unit. Basic FAA procedures will be applied to all other aircraft.

2−1−13. FORMATION FLIGHTS

a. Control formation flights as a single aircraft. When individual control is requested, issue advisory information which will assist the pilots in attaining separation. When pilot reports indicate separation has been established, issue control instructions as required.

NOTE−
1. *Separation responsibility between aircraft within the formation during transition to individual control rests with the pilots concerned until approved separation has been attained.*

2. *Formation join-up and breakaway will be conducted in VFR weather conditions unless prior authorization has been obtained from ATC or individual control has been approved.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
P/CG Term− Formation Flight.

b. Military and civil formation flights in RVSM airspace.

1. Utilize RVSM separation standards for a formation flight, which consists of all RVSM approved aircraft.

2. Utilize non−RVSM separation standards for a formation flight above FL 290, which does not consist of all RVSM approved aircraft.

3. If aircraft are requesting to form a formation flight to FL 290 or above, the controller who issues the clearance creating the formation flight is responsible for ensuring that the proper equipment suffix is entered for the lead aircraft.

4. If the flight departs as a formation, and is requesting FL 290 or above, the first center sector must ensure that the proper equipment suffix is entered.

5. If the formation flight is below FL 290 and later requests FL 290 or above, the controller receiving the RVSM altitude request must ensure the proper equipment suffix is entered.

6. Upon break−up of the formation flight, the controller initiating the break−up must ensure that all aircraft or flights are assigned their proper equipment suffix.

2−1−14. COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE

a. Ensure that the necessary coordination has been accomplished before you allow an aircraft under your control to enter another controller's area of jurisdiction.

b. Before you issue a control instruction directly to a pilot that will change the aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude, you must ensure that coordination has been completed with all controllers whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a letter of agreement or facility directive. If your control instruction will be relayed to the pilot through a source other than another radar controller (FSS, ARINC, another pilot, etc.), you are still responsible to ensure that all required coordination is completed.

NOTE–
1. *It is good operating practice for controllers to confirm that required coordination has been/will be effected, especially in unusual circumstances, such as recently modified sector configurations, airspace changes, route changes, etc.*

2. *Ensuring that all required coordination has been completed does not necessarily imply that the controller issuing the control instruction directly to the pilot has to perform the coordination action.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−15, Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−10, Adjacent Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

2−1−15. CONTROL TRANSFER

a. Transfer control of an aircraft in accordance with the following conditions:

1. At a prescribed or coordinated location, time, fix, or altitude; or,

2. At the time a radar handoff and frequency change to the receiving controller have been completed and when authorized by a facility directive or letter of agreement which specifies the type and extent of control that is transferred.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

b. Transfer control of an aircraft only after eliminating any potential conflict with other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

c. Assume control of an aircraft only after it is in your area of jurisdiction unless specifically coordinated or as specified by letter of agreement or a facility directive.

2−1−16. SURFACE AREAS

a. Coordinate with the appropriate nonapproach control tower on an individual aircraft basis before issuing a clearance which would require flight within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility unless otherwise specified in a letter of agreement.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−1, Letters of Agreement.
14 CFR Section 91.127, Operating on or in the Vicinity of an Airport in Class E Airspace.
P/CG Term− Surface Area.

b. Coordinate with the appropriate control tower for transit authorization when you are providing radar traffic advisory service to an aircraft that will enter another facility's airspace.

NOTE–
The pilot is not expected to obtain his/her own authorization through each area when in contact with a radar facility.

c. Transfer communications to the appropriate facility, if required, prior to operation within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−17, Radio Communications Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−11, Surface Area Restrictions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−1, Application.
14 CFR Section 91.129, Operations in Class D Airspace.

2−1−17. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS

a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated or specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:

NOTE–
Radio communications transfer procedures may be specified by a letter of agreement or contained in the route description of an MTR as published in the DOD Planning AP/1B (AP/3).

1. The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted. *TERMINAL*: Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility, or, when the tower and TRACON share the same name (for example, Phoenix Tower and Phoenix TRACON).

EXCEPTION. Controllers must include the name of the facility when instructing an aircraft to change frequency for final approach guidance.

2. Frequency to use except the following may be omitted:

(a) FSS frequency.

(b) Departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued.

(c) *TERMINAL:*

(1) Ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.

(2) The numbers preceding the decimal point if the ground control frequency is in the 121 MHz bandwidth.

EXAMPLE−
"Contact Tower."
"Contact Ground."
"Contact Ground Point Seven."
"Contact Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."
"Contact Huntington Radio."
"Contact Departure."
"Contact Los Angeles Center, One Two Three Point Four."

3. Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.

NOTE−
AIM, para 5−3−1, ARTCC Communications, informs pilots that they are expected to maintain a listening watch on the transferring controller's frequency until the time, fix, or altitude specified.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CONTACT (facility name or location name and terminal function), (frequency).

If required,

AT (time, fix, or altitude).

c. Controllers must, within a reasonable amount of time, take appropriate action to establish/restore communications with all aircraft for which a communications transfer or initial contact to his/her sector is expected/required.

NOTE−
For the purposes of this paragraph, a reasonable amount of time is considered to be 5 minutes from the time the aircraft enters the controller's area of jurisdiction or comes within range of radio/communications coverage. Communications include two−way VHF or UHF radio contact, data link, or high frequency (HF) radio through an approved third−party provider such as ARINC.

d. In situations where an operational advantage will be gained, and following coordination with the receiving controller, you may instruct aircraft on the ground to monitor the receiving controller's frequency.

EXAMPLE−
"Monitor Tower."
"Monitor Ground."
"Monitor Ground Point Seven."
"Monitor Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."

e. In situations where a sector has multiple frequencies or when sectors are combined using multiple frequencies and the aircraft will remain under your jurisdiction, transfer radio communication by specifying the following:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification) CHANGE TO MY FREQUENCY (state frequency).

EXAMPLE−
"United two twenty-two change to my frequency one two three point four."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 4−2−3, Contact Procedures.

f. Avoid issuing a frequency change to helicopters known to be single-piloted during air-taxiing, hovering, or low-level flight. Whenever possible, relay necessary control instructions until the pilot is able to change frequency.

NOTE−
Most light helicopters are flown by one pilot and require the constant use of both hands and feet to maintain control. Although Flight Control Friction Devices assist the pilot, changing frequency near the ground could result in inadvertent ground contact and consequent loss of control. Pilots are expected to advise ATC of their single-pilot status if unable to comply with a frequency change.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 4−3−14, Communications.

g. In situations where the controller does not want the pilot to change frequency but the pilot is expecting or may want a frequency change, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−1, Clearance Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−9, Communication Transfer.

2−1−18. OPERATIONAL REQUESTS

Respond to a request from another controller, a pilot or vehicle operator by one of the following verbal means:

a. Restate the request in complete or abbreviated terms followed by the word "APPROVED." The phraseology "APPROVED AS REQUESTED" may be substituted in lieu of a lengthy readback.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Requested operation) APPROVED.

or

APPROVED AS REQUESTED.

b. State restrictions followed by the word "APPROVED."

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Restriction and/or additional instructions, requested operation) APPROVED.

c. State the word "UNABLE" and, time permitting, a reason.

PHRASEOLOGY−
UNABLE (requested operation).

and when necessary,

(reason and/or additional instructions.)

d. State the words "STAND BY."

NOTE−
"STAND BY" is not an approval or denial. The controller acknowledges the request and will respond at a later time.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−5, Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−3, Methods.

2−1−19. WAKE TURBULENCE

a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to an aircraft operating behind another aircraft when wake turbulence separation is required.

NOTE−
Para 5−5−4, Minima, subparagraphs g and h specify the required radar wake turbulence separations. Time-based separations are contained in Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-9-7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures, Para 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway Separation, Para 3-9-9, Nonintersecting Converging Runway Operations, Para 3-10-3, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-10-4, Intersecting Runway Separation, Para 6-1-4, Adjacent Airport Operation, Para 6-1-5, Arrival Minima, and Para 6-7-5, Interval Minima.

b. The separation minima must continue to touchdown for all IFR aircraft not making a visual approach or maintaining visual separation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5, Approach Separation Responsibility.

2−1−20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES

a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories including the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight to aircraft operating behind an aircraft that requires wake turbulence separation when:

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Pilot Responsibility, Para 11
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4,Minima, Subparagraph g

1. *TERMINAL.* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored are behind the larger aircraft.

2. IFR aircraft accept a visual approach or visual separation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−1, Visual Approach.

3. *TERMINAL.* VFR arriving aircraft that have previously been radar vectored and the vectoring has been discontinued.

b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion, wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a super aircraft, include the word *super* in the description. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word *heavy* in the description.

NOTE−
Wake turbulence may be encountered by aircraft in flight as well as when operating on the airport movement area. Because wake turbulence is unpredictable, the controller is not responsible for anticipating its existence or effect. Although not mandatory during ground operations, controllers may use the words jet blast, propwash, or rotorwash, in lieu of wake turbulence, when issuing a caution advisory.

REFERENCE–
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence.
P/CG Term− Aircraft Classes.
P/CG Term− Wake Turbulence.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CAUTION WAKE TURBULENCE (traffic information).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

2−1−21. TRAFFIC ADVISORIES

Unless an aircraft is operating within Class A airspace or omission is requested by the pilot, issue traffic advisories to all aircraft (IFR or VFR) on your frequency when, in your judgment, their proximity may diminish to less than the applicable separation minima. Where no separation minima applies, such as for VFR aircraft outside of Class B/Class C airspace, or a TRSA, issue traffic advisories to those aircraft on your frequency when in your judgment their proximity warrants it. Provide this service as follows:

a. To radar identified aircraft:

1. Azimuth from aircraft in terms of the 12−hour clock, or

2. When rapidly maneuvering aircraft prevent accurate issuance of traffic as in 1 above, specify the direction from an aircraft's position in terms of the eight cardinal compass points (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, and NW). This method must be terminated at the pilot's request.

3. Distance from aircraft in miles.

4. Direction in which traffic is proceeding and/or relative movement of traffic.

NOTE–
Relative movement includes closing, converging, parallel same direction, opposite direction, diverging, overtaking, crossing left to right, crossing right to left.

5. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−21, Description of Aircraft Types.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC, (number) O'CLOCK,

or when appropriate,

(direction) (number) MILES, (direction)−BOUND and/or (relative movement),

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude).

or

When appropriate,

(type of aircraft and relative position), (number of feet) FEET ABOVE/BELOW YOU.

If altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, eleven o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, converging, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, one seven thousand."
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, one five miles, opposite direction, altitude unknown."
"Traffic, ten o'clock, one two miles, southeast bound, one thousand feet below you."

6. When requested by the pilot, issue radar vectors to assist in avoiding the traffic, provided the aircraft to be vectored is within your area of jurisdiction or coordination has been effected with the sector/facility in whose area the aircraft is operating.

7. If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−18, Operational Requests.

8. Inform the pilot of the following when traffic you have issued is not reported in sight:

(a) The traffic is no factor.

(b) The traffic is no longer depicted on radar.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,

or

(number) O'CLOCK TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,

or

(direction) TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED.

b. To aircraft that are not radar identified:

1. Distance and direction from fix.

2. Direction in which traffic is proceeding.

3. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

4. ETA over the fix the aircraft is approaching, if appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC, (number) MILES/MINUTES (direction) OF (airport or fix), (direction)−BOUND,

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude),

ESTIMATED (fix) (time),

or

TRAFFIC, NUMEROUS AIRCRAFT VICINITY (location).

If altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic, one zero miles east of Forsythe V−O−R, Southbound, M−D Eighty, descending to one six thousand."
"Traffic, reported one zero miles west of Downey V−O−R, northbound, Apache, altitude unknown, estimated Joliet V−O−R one three one five."
"Traffic, eight minutes west of Chicago Heights V−O−R, westbound, Mooney, eight thousand, estimated Joliet V−O−R two zero three five."
"Traffic, numerous aircraft, vicinity of Delia airport."

c. For aircraft displaying Mode C, not radar identified, issue indicated altitude.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic, one o'clock, six miles, eastbound, altitude indicates six thousand five hundred."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−6, Traffic Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−10, VFR Departure Information.

2−1−22. BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION

a. Issue advisory information on pilot-reported, tower-observed, or radar-observed and pilot-verified bird activity. Include position, species or size of birds, if known, course of flight, and altitude. Do this for at least 15 minutes after receipt of such information from pilots or from adjacent facilities unless visual observation or subsequent reports reveal the activity is no longer a factor.

EXAMPLE−
"Flock of geese, one o'clock, seven miles, northbound, last reported at four thousand."
"Flock of small birds, southbound along Mohawk River, last reported at three thousand."
"Numerous flocks of ducks, vicinity Lake Winnebago, altitude unknown."

b. Relay bird activity information to adjacent facilities and to FSSs whenever it appears it will become a factor in their areas.

2−1−23. TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

The transfer of position responsibility must be accomplished in accordance with the "Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility," and appropriate facility directives each time operational responsibility for a position is transferred from one specialist to another.

2−1−24. WHEELS DOWN CHECK

USA/USAF/USN

Remind aircraft to check wheels down on each approach unless the pilot has previously reported wheels down for that approach.

NOTE−
The intent is solely to remind the pilot to lower the wheels, not to place responsibility on the controller.

a. Tower must issue the wheels down check at an appropriate place in the pattern.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CHECK WHEELS DOWN.

b. Approach/arrival control, GCA must issue the wheels down check as follows:

1. To aircraft conducting ASR, PAR, or radar monitored approaches, before the aircraft starts descent on final approach.

2. To aircraft conducting instrument approaches and remaining on the radar facility's frequency, before the aircraft passes the outer marker/final approach fix.

PHRASEOLOGY−
WHEELS SHOULD BE DOWN.

2−1−25. SUPERVISORY NOTIFICATION

Ensure supervisor/controller-in-charge (CIC) is aware of conditions which impact sector/position operations including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Weather.

b. Equipment status.

c. Potential sector overload.

d. Emergency situations.

e. Special flights/operations.

f. Possible suspicious aircraft/pilot activity as prescribed in FAA Order JO 7610.4, paragraph 7−3−1.

2−1−26. PILOT DEVIATION NOTIFICATION

When it appears that the actions of a pilot constitute a pilot deviation, notify the pilot, workload permitting.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification) POSSIBLE PILOT DEVIATION ADVISE YOU CONTACT (facility) AT (telephone number).

REFERENCE−
FAAO 8020.11, Aircraft Accident and Incident Notification, Investigation, and Reporting, Para 84, Pilot Deviations.

2−1−27. TCAS RESOLUTION ADVISORIES

a. When an aircraft under your control jurisdiction informs you that it is responding to a TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), do not issue control instructions that are contrary to the RA procedure that a crew member has advised you that they are executing. Provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstructions and traffic advisories for the aircraft responding to the RA and all other aircraft under your control jurisdiction, as appropriate.

b. Unless advised by other aircraft that they are also responding to a TCAS RA, do not assume that other aircraft in the proximity of the responding aircraft are involved in the RA maneuver or are aware of the responding aircraft's intended maneuvers. Continue to provide control instructions, safety alerts, and traffic advisories as appropriate to such aircraft.

c. Once the responding aircraft has begun a maneuver in response to an RA, the controller is not responsible for providing approved separation between the aircraft that is responding to an RA and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain or obstructions. Responsibility for approved separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

1. The responding aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude, or

2. A crew member informs you that the TCAS maneuver is completed and you observe that approved separation has been reestablished, or

3. The responding aircraft has executed an alternate clearance and you observe that approved separation has been reestablished.

NOTE−
1. *AC 120−55C, Air Carrier Operational Approval and Use of TCAS II, suggests pilots use the following phraseology to notify controllers during TCAS events. When a TCAS RA may affect an ATC clearance, inform ATC when beginning the maneuver, or as soon as workload permits.*

EXAMPLE−
1. *"New York Center, United 321, TCAS climb."*

NOTE−
2. *When the RA has been resolved, the flight crew should advise ATC they are returning to their previously assigned clearance or subsequent amended clearance.*

EXAMPLE−
2. *"New York Center, United 321, clear of conflict, returning to assigned altitude."*

2−1−28. RVSM OPERATIONS

Controller responsibilities must include but not be limited to the following:

a. Non−RVSM aircraft operating in RVSM airspace.

1. Ensure non-RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the operations supervisor/CIC. The following aircraft are excepted: DOD, DOD-certified aircraft operated by NASA (T38, F15, F18, WB57, S3, and U2 aircraft only), MEDEVAC, manufacturer aircraft being flown for development/certification, and Foreign State aircraft. These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic-permitting basis.

NOTE−
The operations supervisor/CIC is responsible for system acceptance of a non−RVSM aircraft beyond the initial sector−to−sector coordination following the pilot request to access the airspace. Operations supervisor/CIC responsibilities are defined in FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 6, Section 9, Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM).

2. Ensure sector−to−sector coordination for all non−RVSM aircraft operations within RVSM airspace.

3. Inform the operational supervisor/CIC when a non−RVSM exception flight is denied clearance into RVSM airspace or is removed from RVSM airspace.

b. Non−RVSM aircraft transitioning RVSM airspace.

Ensure that operations supervisors/CICs are made aware when non−RVSM aircraft are transitioning through RVSM airspace.

c. Apply appropriate separation standards and remove any aircraft from RVSM airspace that advises it is unable RVSM due to equipment while en route.

d. Use "negative RVSM" in all verbal ground−to−ground communications involving non−RVSM aircraft while cleared to operate within RVSM airspace.

EXAMPLE−
"Point out Baxter21 climbing to FL 360, negative RVSM."

e. For the following situations, use the associated phraseology:

1. To deny clearance into RVSM airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"UNABLE CLEARANCE INTO RVSM AIRSPACE."

2. To request a pilot to report when able to resume RVSM.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"REPORT ABLE TO RESUME RVSM."

f. In the event of a change to an aircraft's navigational capability amend the equipment suffix in order to properly identify non−RVSM aircraft on the controller display.

2−1−29. TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS) ALERTS

a. When an aircraft under your control jurisdiction informs you that it is responding to a TAWS (or other on−board low altitude) alert, do not issue control instructions that are contrary to the TAWS procedure that a crew member has advised you that they are executing. Provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstructions and traffic advisories for the aircraft responding to the TAWS alert and all other aircraft under your control jurisdiction, as appropriate.

b. Once the responding aircraft has begun a maneuver in response to TAWS alert, the controller is not responsible for providing approved separation between the aircraft that is responding to a TAWS alert and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain or obstructions. Responsibility for approved separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

1. The responding aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude, or

2. A crew member informs you that the TAWS maneuver is completed and you observe that approved separation has been reestablished, or

3. The responding aircraft has executed an alternate clearance and you observe that approved separation has been reestablished.

2−1−30. "BLUE LIGHTNING" EVENTS

Ensure that the supervisor/controller−in−charge (CIC) is notified of reports of possible human trafficking. These may be referred to as "Blue Lightning" events.

Section 2. Flight Plans and Control Information

2–2–1. RECORDING INFORMATION

a. Record flight plan information required by the type of flight plan and existing circumstances. Use authorized abbreviations when possible.

NOTE–
Generally, all military overseas flights are required to clear through a specified military base operations office (BASOPS). Pilots normally will not file flight plans directly with an FAA facility unless a BASOPS is not available. BASOPS will, in turn, forward the IFR flight notification message to the appropriate center.

b. *EN ROUTE.* When flight plans are filed directly with the center, record all items given by the pilot either on a flight progress strip/flight data entry or on a voice recorder. If the latter, enter in box 26 of the initial flight progress strip the sector or position number to identify where the information may be found in the event search and rescue (SAR) activities become necessary.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–3–2, En Route Data Entries.

2–2–2. FORWARDING INFORMATION

a. Except during EAS FDP operation, forward the flight plan information to the appropriate ATC facility, FSS, or BASOPS and record the time of filing and delivery on the form.

b. *EN ROUTE.* During EAS FDP operation, the above manual actions are required in cases where the data is not forwarded automatically by the computer.

NOTE–
During EAS FDP operation, data is exchanged between interfaced automated facilities and both the data and time of transmission are recorded automatically.

c. *EN ROUTE.* Forward proposed tower en route flight plans and any related amendments to the appropriate departure terminal facility.

2–2–3. FORWARDING VFR DATA

TERMINAL

Forward aircraft departure times to FSSs or military operations offices when they have requested them. Forward other VFR flight plan data only if requested by the pilot.

2–2–4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES

TERMINAL

Forward departure times on all DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.

NOTE–
1. *Details for handling air carrier and nonscheduled civil DVFR flight data are contained in FAA Order JO 7610.4, Special Operations.*

2. *Civil pilots departing DVFR from a joint-use airport will include the phrase "DVFR to (destination)" in their initial call-up to an FAA-operated tower.*

2–2–5. IFR TO VFR FLIGHT PLAN CHANGE

Request a pilot to contact the appropriate FSS if the pilot informs you of a desire to change from an IFR to a VFR flight plan.

2–2–6. IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA

Forward control information from controller to controller within a facility, then to the receiving facility as the aircraft progresses along its route. Where appropriate, use computer equipment in lieu of manual coordination procedures. Do not use the remarks section of flight progress strips in lieu of voice coordination to pass control information. Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date. When covered by a letter of agreement/facility directive, the time requirements of subpara a may be reduced, and the time requirements of subpara b1 and para 2–2–11, Forwarding Amended and UTM Data, subpara a may be increased up to 15 minutes when facilitated by automated systems or mandatory radar handoffs; or if operationally necessary because of manual data processing or nonradar operations, the time requirements of subpara a may be increased.

NOTE–
1. *The procedures for preparing flight plan and control information related to altitude reservations (ALTRVs) are contained in FAAO JO 7210.3, para 8–1–2, Facility Operation and Administration, ALTRV Flight Data Processing. Development of the methods for assuring the accuracy and completeness of ALTRV flight plan and control information is the responsibility of the military liaison and security officer.*

2. *The term facility in this paragraph refers to centers and terminal facilities when operating in an en route capacity.*

a. Forward the following information at least 15 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to enter the receiving facility's area:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.

3. Assigned altitude and ETA over last reporting point/fix in transferring facility's area or assumed departure time when the departure point is the last point/fix in the transferring facility's area.

4. Altitude at which aircraft will enter the receiving facility's area if other than the assigned altitude.

5. True airspeed.

6. Point of departure.

7. Route of flight remaining.

8. Destination airport and clearance limit if other than destination airport.

9. ETA at destination airport (not required for military or scheduled air carrier aircraft).

10. Altitude requested by the aircraft if assigned altitude differs from requested altitude (within a facility only).

NOTE–
When an aircraft has crossed one facility's area and assignment at a different altitude is still desired, the pilot will reinitiate the request with the next facility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–8, Anticipated Altitude Changes.

11. When flight plan data must be forwarded manually and an aircraft has been assigned a beacon code by the computer, include the code as part of the flight plan.

NOTE–
When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the EAS and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, send a remove strips (RS) message on that aircraft via the EAS keyboard, the FDIO keyboard or call via service F.

12. Longitudinal separation being used between aircraft at the same altitude if it results in these aircraft having less than 10 minutes separation at the facilities' boundary.

13. Any additional nonroutine operational information pertinent to flight safety.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. This includes alerting the receiving controller that the flight is conducting celestial navigation training.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–2, Celestial Navigation Training.

b. Forward position report over last reporting point in the transferring facility's area if any of the following conditions exist:

1. Time differs more than 3 minutes from estimate given.

2. Requested by receiving facility.

3. Agreed to between facilities.

2–2–7. MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER-ASSIGNED BEACON CODES

When a flight plan is manually entered into the computer and a computer-assigned beacon code has been forwarded with the flight plan data, insert the beacon code in the appropriate field as part of the input message.

2–2–8. ALTRV INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

When an aircraft is a part of an approved ALTRV, forward only those items necessary to properly identify the flight, update flight data contained in the ALTRV APVL, or revise previously given information.

2–2–9. COMPUTER MESSAGE VERIFICATION

EN ROUTE

Unless your facility is equipped to automatically obtain acknowledgment of receipt of transferred data, when you transfer control information by computer message, obtain, via Service F, acknowledgment that the receiving center has received the message and verification of the following:

a. Within the time limits specified by a letter of agreement or when not covered by a letter of agreement, at least 15 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to enter the receiving facility's area, or at the time of a radar handoff, or coordination for transfer of control:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Assigned altitude.

3. Departure or coordination fix time.

b. Any cancellation of IFR or EAS generated VFR flight plan.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−6, IFR Flight Progress Data.

2−2−10. TRANSMIT PROPOSED FLIGHT PLAN

EN ROUTE

a. Transmit proposed flight plans which fall within an ARTCC's Proposed Boundary Crossing Time (PBCT) parameter to adjacent ARTCC's via the Computer B network during hours of inter-center computer operation. In addition, when the route of flight of any proposed flight plan exceeds 20 elements external to the originating ARTCC's area, NADIN must be used to forward the data to all affected centers.

b. During nonautomated operation, the proposed flight plans must be sent via NADIN to the other centers involved when any of the following conditions are met:

1. The route of flight external to the originating center's area consists of 10 or more elements and the flight will enter 3 or more other center areas.

NOTE−
An element is defined as either a fix or route as specified in FAAO JO 7110.10, Flight Services, para 6−3−3, IFR Flight Plan Control Messages.

2. The route of flight beyond the first point of exit from the originating center's area consists of 10 or more elements, which are primarily fixes described in fix-radial-distance or latitude/longitude format, regardless of the number of other center areas entered.

3. The flight plan remarks are too lengthy for interphone transmission.

2−2−11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA

a. Forward any amending data concerning previously forwarded flight plans except that revisions to ETA information in para 2−2−6, IFR Flight Progress Data, need only be forwarded when the time differs by more than 3 minutes from the estimate given.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification), REVISED (revised information).

EXAMPLE−
"American Two, revised flight level, three three zero."

"United Eight Ten, revised estimate, Front Royal two zero zero five."

"Douglas Five Zero One Romeo, revised altitude, eight thousand."

"U.S. Air Eleven Fifty−one, revised type, heavy Boeing Seven Sixty-seven."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−6, IFR Flight Progress Data.

b. Computer acceptance of an appropriate input message fulfills the requirement for sending amended data. During EAS FDP operations, the amendment data are considered acknowledged on receipt of a computer update message or a computer−generated flight progress strip containing the amended data.

NOTE−
1. *The successful utilization of automation equipment requires timely and accurate insertion of changes and/or new data.*

2. *If a pilot is not issued a computer-generated PDR/PDAR/PAR and if amendment data is not entered into the computer, the next controller will have incorrect route information.*

c. Forward any amended control information and record the action on the appropriate flight progress strip. Additionally, when a route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended within 15 minutes of an aircraft's proposed departure time, the facility that amended the clearance must coordinate the amendment with the receiving facility via verbal AND automated means to ensure timely passage of the information.

NOTE−
The term "receiving" facility means the ATC facility that is expected to transmit the amended clearance to the intended aircraft/pilot.

d. *EN ROUTE.* Effect manual coordination on any interfacility flight plan data that is not passed through automated means.

e. EN ROUTE. When a controller receives a UTM notification to an FDIO only facility, they must effect manual coordination for the flight plan data. In addition, the controller must verify the flight plan data to the receiving facility within three minutes of the transfer of control point estimate.

NOTE−
FDIO only facilities are facilities with FDIO but without ARTS or STARS.

2−2−12. AIRBORNE MILITARY FLIGHTS

Forward to FSSs the following information received from airborne military aircraft:

a. IFR flight plans and changes from VFR to IFR flight plans.

b. Changes to an IFR flight plan as follows:

1. Change in destination:

(a) Aircraft identification and type.

(b) Departure point.

(c) Original destination.

(d) Position and time.

(e) New destination.

(f) ETA.

(g) Remarks including change in fuel exhaustion time.

(h) Revised ETA.

2. Change in fuel exhaustion time.

NOTE−
This makes current information available to FSSs for relay to military bases concerned and for use by centers in the event of two−way radio communications failure.

2−2−13. FORWARDING FLIGHT PLAN DATA BETWEEN U.S. ARTCCs AND CANADIAN ACCs

EN ROUTE

a. *Domestic.* (Continental U.S./Canadian airspace except Alaska) Proposed departure flight plans and en route estimates will be handled on a 30 minute lead time (or as bilaterally agreed) between any ACC and ARTCC.

b. *International.* Any route changes (except SIDs) must be forwarded to the appropriate Oceanic/Pre-oceanic ACC or ARTCC with an optimum lead time of 30 minutes or as soon as this information becomes available.

c. Initially, if a flight goes from U.S. airspace into Canadian airspace and returns to U.S. airspace, the ACC will be responsible for forwarding the flight plan data to the appropriate ARTCC by voice transmission except for flights which traverse mutually agreed on airways/fixes. These airways/fixes will be determined on a case-by-case basis and will be based on time and distance considerations at the service area office.

2−2−14. TELETYPE FLIGHT DATA FORMAT− U.S. ARTCCs − CANADIAN ACCs

EN ROUTE

The exchange of flight plan data between Canadian ACCs and U.S. ARTCCs must be made as follows:

a. The U.S. ARTCCs will transmit flight data to the Canadian ACCs in one of the following formats:

1. NADIN II input format as described in the NAS Management Directives (MDs) for:

(a) Flight Plan Messages:

(1) Active.

(2) Proposed.

(b) Amendment messages.

(c) Cancellation messages.

(d) Response Messages to Canadian Input:

(1) Acknowledgment messages.

(2) Error messages.

(3) Rejection messages.

2. Transport Canada (TC) ACC Flight Strip Format: Where the data to be printed on the ACC strip form exceeds the strip form field size, the NADIN II input format in 1 above will be used. Input sequentially fields 1 through 8 in para 2−2−6, IFR Flight Progress Data, subpara a.

b. TC's ACCs will transmit flight data to the FAA ARTCCs in the following format:

1. NADIN II input format as described in NAS MDs for:

(a) Flight Plan Messages:

(1) Active.

(2) Proposed.

(b) Amendment messages.

(c) Cancellation messages.

(d) Correction messages.

2−2−15. NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP) INFORMATION

a. "NRP" must be retained in the remarks section of the flight plan if the aircraft is moved due to weather, traffic, or other tactical reasons.

NOTE−
Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.

b. If the route of flight is altered due to a pilot request, "NRP" must be removed from the remarks section of the flight plan.

c. "NRP" must not be entered in the remarks section of a flight plan, unless prior coordination is accomplished with the ATCSCC or as prescribed by international NRP flight operations procedures.

d. The en route facility within which an international flight entering the conterminous U.S. requests to participate in the NRP must enter "NRP" in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−3−2, En Route Data Entries.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−5, Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 17, Section 16, North American Route Program.

Section 3. Flight Progress Strips

2−3−1. GENERAL

Unless otherwise authorized in a facility directive, use flight progress strips to post current data on air traffic and clearances required for control and other air traffic control services. To prevent misinterpretation when data is hand printed, use standard hand-printed characters.
En route: Flight progress strips must be posted.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6−1−6, Flight Progress Strip Usage.

a. Maintain only necessary current data and remove the strips from the flight progress boards when no longer required for control purposes. To correct, update, or preplan information:

1. Do not erase or overwrite any item. Use an "X" to delete a climb/descend and maintain arrow, an at or above/below symbol, a cruise symbol, and unwanted altitude information. Write the new altitude information immediately adjacent to it and within the same space.

2. Do not draw a horizontal line through an altitude being vacated until after the aircraft has reported or is observed (valid Mode C) leaving the altitude.

3. Preplanning may be accomplished in red pencil.

b. Manually prepared strips must conform to the format of machine-generated strips and manual strip preparation procedures will be modified simultaneously with the operational implementation of changes in the machine-generated format. (See FIG 2−3−1.)

c. Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e. 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.

NOTE−
A slant line crossing through the number zero and underline of the letter "s" on handwritten portions of flight progress strips are required only when there is reason to believe the lack of these markings could lead to misunderstanding. A slant line crossing through the number zero is required on all weather data.

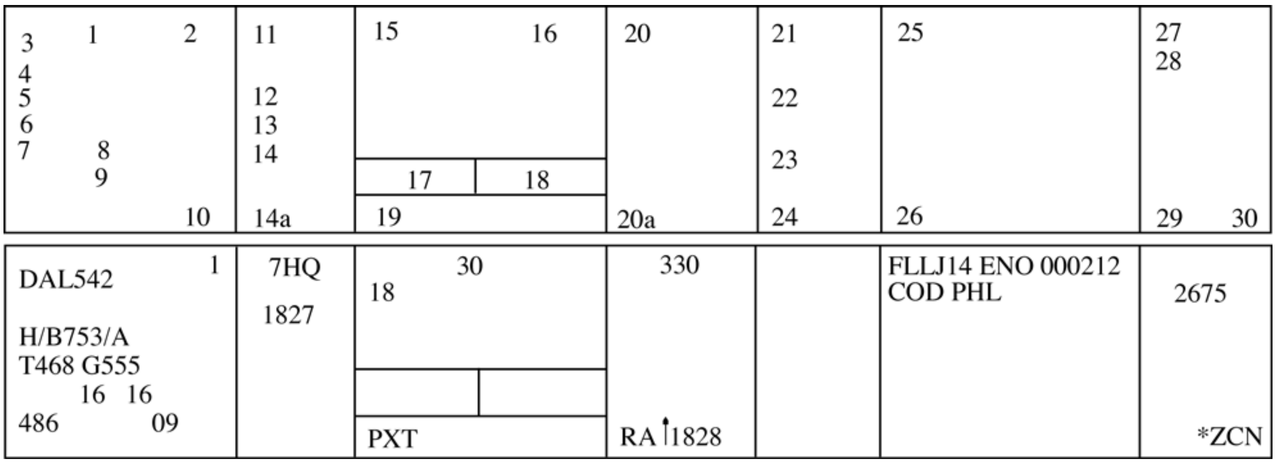
FIG 2–3–1
Standard Recording of Hand-printed Characters

Typed	Hand Printed	Typed	Hand Printed
A	A	T	T
B	B	U	U
C	C	V	V
D	D	W	W
E	E	X	X
F	F	Y	Y
G	G	Z	Ƶ
H	H		
I	I	1	1
J	J	2	2
K	K	3	3
L	L	4	4
M	M	5	5
N	N	6	6
O	O	7	7
P	P	8	8
Q	Q	9	9
R	R	0	Ø
S	S		

2−3−2. EN ROUTE DATA ENTRIES

FIG 2−3−2

Flight Progress Strip
(7230−19)



a. Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230−19) must be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces:

TBL 2−3−1

Block	Information Recorded
1.	Verification symbol if required.
2.	Revision number. DSR−Not used.
3.	Aircraft identification.
4.	Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator “H/” if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.
5.	Filed true airspeed.
6.	Sector number.
7.	Computer identification number if required.
8.	Estimated ground speed.
9.	Revised ground speed or strip request (SR) originator.
10.	Strip number. DSR− Strip number/Revision number.
11.	Previous fix.
12.	Estimated time over previous fix.
13.	Revised estimated time over previous fix.
14.	Actual time over previous fix, or actual departure time entered on first fix posting after departure.
14a.	Plus time expressed in minutes from the previous fix to the posted fix.
15.	Center−estimated time over fix (in hours and minutes), or clearance information for departing aircraft.
16.	Arrows to indicate if aircraft is departing (↑) or arriving (↓).
17.	Pilot−estimated time over fix.
18.	Actual time over fix, time leaving holding fix, arrival time at nonapproach control airport, or symbol indicating cancellation of IFR flight plan for arriving aircraft, or departure time (actual or assumed).
19.	Fix. For departing aircraft, add proposed departure time.
20.	Altitude information (in hundreds of feet) or as noted below.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e. FL 330 as 33, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*

Block	Information Recorded
20a.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being use at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
21.	Next posted fix or coordination fix.
22.	Pilot's estimated time over next fix.
23.	Arrows to indicate north (↑), south (↓), east (→), or west (←) direction of flight if required.
24.	Requested altitude.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e., FL 330 as 33, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
25.	Point of origin, route as required for control and data relay, and destination.
26.	Pertinent remarks, minimum fuel, point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information or sector/position number (when applicable in accordance with para 2−2−1, Recording Information), or NRP. High Altitude Redesign (HAR) or Point−to−point (PTP) may be used at facilities actively using these programs.
27.	Mode 3/A beacon code if applicable.
28.	Miscellaneous control data (expected further clearance time, time cleared for approach, etc.).
29−30.	Transfer of control data and coordination indicators.

b. Latitude/longitude coordinates may be used to define waypoints and may be substituted for nonadapted NAVAIDs in space 25 of domestic en route flight progress strips provided it is necessary to accommodate a random RNAV or GNSS route request.

c. Facility air traffic managers may authorize the optional use of spaces 13, 14, 14a, 22, 23, 24, and 28 for point out information, radar vector information, speed adjustment information, or transfer of control data.

2–3–3. OCEANIC DATA ENTRIES

FIG 2–3–3

1 2 3 4 5 6	7 8 9	10 11	12 13	14 15	16 17	16 17	18 19 20	21 21 24
22 23								

10000 B763 DAL210 M KZ M080 22 of 70 A	F370	BOS 0820	ACK 0820	TUK 0831	LACKS 0846	SLATN 0856	KBOS TXKF R	KZ C 70 87 1 of 2

a. The Ocean21 system displays information on electronic flight progress strips and, in the event of a catastrophic system failure, will print flight progress strips with data in the corresponding numbered spaces:

TBL 2–3–2

Block	Information Recorded
1.	Mode 3/A beacon code, if applicable.
2.	Number of aircraft, if more than one, and type of aircraft.
3.	Aircraft identification.
4.	Reduced separation flags. Indicators are available for: M – Mach Number Technique (MNT), R – Reduced MNT, D or 3 – Distance–based longitudinal separation using 50 NM (D) or 30 NM (3), and W– Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM). These flags are selectable for aircraft whose flight plans contain the required equipment qualifiers for each separation criteria.
5.	Controlling sector number.
6.	Filed airspeed or assigned Mach number/True airspeed.
7.	Reported flight level. May contain an indicator for a flight that is climbing (↑) or descending (↓). Reports from Mode C, ADS or position reports are displayed in that order of preference.
8.	Cleared flight level. May contain an indicator for a future conditional altitude (*) that cannot be displayed.
9.	Requested flight level, if applicable.
10.	Previously reported position.
11.	Actual time over previously reported position.
12.	Last reported position.
13.	Actual time over last reported position.
14.	Next reporting position.
15.	In–conformance pilot's estimate or controller–accepted pilot's estimate for next reporting position.
16.	Future reporting position(s).
17.	System estimate for future reporting position(s).
18.	Departure airport or point of origin.
19.	Destination airport or filed point of flight termination.
20.	Indicators. Indicators and toggles for displaying or suppressing the display of the route of flight (F), second flight profile (2), radar contact (A), annotations (&), degraded Required Navigation Performance (RNP, indicator R) and clearance restrictions (X).
21.	Coordination indicator(s).
22.	Annotations.
23.	Clearance restrictions and conditions (may be multiple lines).
24.	Strip number and total number of strips (printed strips only).

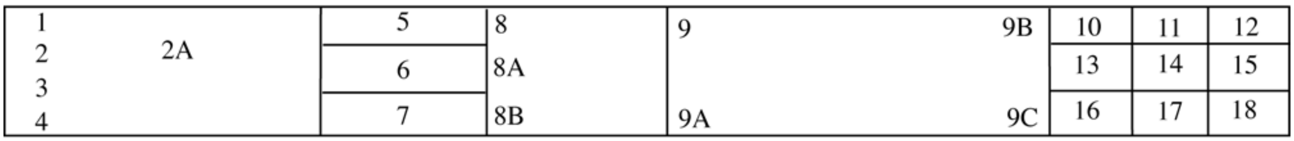
b. Standard annotations and abbreviations for Field 22 may be specified by facility directives.

2−3−4. TERMINAL DATA ENTRIES

a. Arrivals:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230−7.1, 7230−7.2, and 7230−8) must be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A, 8A, 8B, 9A, 9B, 9C, and 10−18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses must be specified in a facility directive.

FIG 2−3−4



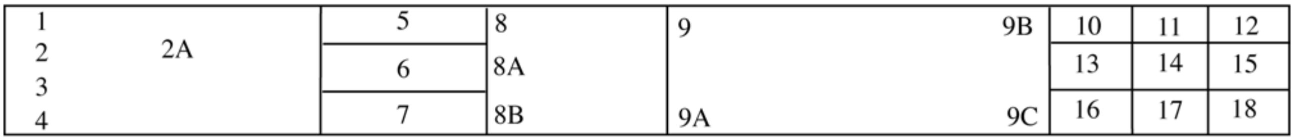
TBL 2−3−3

Block	Information Recorded
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	(FDIO Locations.) The previous fix will be printed. (Non−FDIO Locations.) Use of the inbound airway. This function is restricted to facilities where flight data is received via interphone when agreed upon by the center and terminal facilities.
7.	Coordination fix.
8.	Estimated time of arrival at the coordination fix or destination airport.
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
8B.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	Altitude (in hundreds of feet) and remarks.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	Minimum fuel, destination airport/point out/radar vector/speed adjustment information. Air traffic managers may authorize in a facility directive the omission of any of these items, **except minimum fuel,** if no misunderstanding will result.
NOTE−	*Authorized omissions and optional use of spaces must be specified in the facility directive concerning strip marking procedures.*
9B.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
9C.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
10−18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive. Radar facility personnel need not enter data in these spaces except when nonradar procedures are used or when radio recording equipment is inoperative.

b. Departures:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230−7.1, 7230−7.2, and 7230−8) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A, 8A, 8B, 9A, 9B, 9C, and 10−18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses shall be specified in a facility directive.

FIG 2−3−5



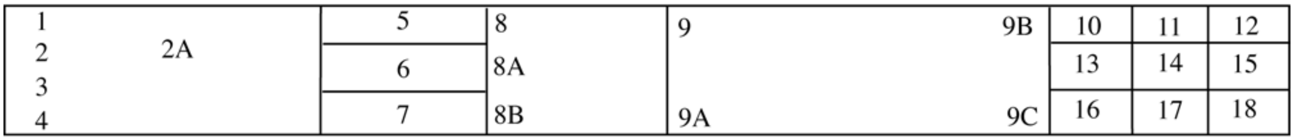
TBL 2−3−4

Block	Information Recorded
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	Proposed departure time.
7.	Requested altitude.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i. e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
8.	Departure airport.
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
8B.	**OPTIONAL USE**, when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE,** when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	**Computer−generated:** Route, destination, and remarks. Manually enter altitude/altitude restrictions in the order flown, if appropriate, and remarks.
9.	**Hand−prepared:** Clearance limit, route, altitude/altitude restrictions in the order flown, if appropriate, and remarks.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
9B.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
9C.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
10−18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive. Items, such as departure time, runway used for takeoff, check marks to indicate information forwarded or relayed, may be entered in these spaces.

c. Overflights:

Information recorded on the flight progress strips (FAA Forms 7230−7.1, 7230−7.2, and 7230−8) shall be entered in the correspondingly numbered spaces. Facility managers can authorize omissions and/or optional use of spaces 2A, 8A, 8B, 9A, 9B, 9C, and 10−18, if no misunderstanding will result. These omissions and/or optional uses shall be specified in a facility directive.

FIG 2−3−6



TBL 2−3−5

Block	Information Recorded
1.	Aircraft identification.
2.	Revision number (FDIO locations only).
2A.	Strip request originator. (At FDIO locations this indicates the sector or position that requested a strip be printed.)
3.	Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.
4.	Computer identification number if required.
5.	Secondary radar (beacon) code assigned.
6.	Coordination fix.
7.	Overflight coordination indicator (FDIO locations only).
NOTE−	*The overflight coordination indicator identifies the facility to which flight data has been forwarded.*
8.	Estimated time of arrival at the coordination fix.
8A.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
8B.	**OPTIONAL USE,** when voice recorders are operational; **REQUIRED USE**, when the voice recorders are not operating and strips are being used at the facility. This space is used to record reported RA events when the voice recorders are not operational and strips are being used at the facility. The letters RA followed by a climb or descent arrow (if the climb or descent action is reported) and the time (hhmm) the event is reported.
9.	Altitude and route of flight through the terminal area.
NOTE−	*Altitude information may be written in thousands of feet provided the procedure is authorized by the facility manager, and is defined in a facility directive, i.e., FL 230 as 23, 5,000 feet as 5, and 2,800 as 2.8.*
9A.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
9B.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
9C.	**OPTIONAL USE.**
10−18.	Enter data as specified by a facility directive.

NOTE−
National standardization of items (10 through 18) is not practical because of regional and local variations in operating methods; e.g., single fix, multiple fix, radar, tower en route control, etc.

d. Air traffic managers at automated terminal radar facilities may waive the requirement to use flight progress strips provided:

1. Backup systems such as multiple radar sites/systems or single site radars with CENRAP are utilized.

2. Local procedures are documented in a facility directive. These procedures should include but not be limited to:

(a) Departure areas and/or procedures.

(b) Arrival procedures.

(c) Overflight handling procedures.

(d) Transition from radar to nonradar.

(e) Transition from ARTS to non−ARTS.

(f) Transition from ASR to CENRAP.

(g) Transition to or from ESL.

3. No misunderstanding will occur as a result of no strip usage.

4. Unused flight progress strips, facility developed forms and/or blank notepads shall be provided for controller use.

5. Facilities shall revert to flight progress strip usage if backup systems referred to in subpara d1 are not available.

e. Air traffic managers at FDIO locations may authorize reduced lateral spacing between fields so as to print all FDIO data to the left of the strip perforation. When using FAA Form 7230−7.2, all items will retain the same relationship to each other as they do when the full length strip (FAA Form 7230−7.1) is used.

2−3−5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

Indicate aircraft identity by one of the following using combinations not to exceed seven alphanumeric characters:

a. Civil aircraft, including the air-carrier letter-digit registration number which can include the letter "T" for air taxi, the letter "L" for MEDEVAC, or the 3-letter company designator specified in FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, followed by the trip or flight number. Use the operating air carrier's company name in identifying equipment interchange flights.

EXAMPLE−
"N12345."
"TN5552Q."
"AAl192."
"LN751B."

NOTE−
The letter "L" is not to be used for air carrier/air taxi MEDEVAC *aircraft.*

b. Military Aircraft.

1. Prefixes indicating branch of service and/or type of mission followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number (the last 4 digits for CFC and CTG). (See TBL 2−3−6 and TBL 2−3−7.)

2. Pronounceable words of 3, 4, 5, and 6 letters followed by a 4−, 3−, 2−, or 1−digit number.

EXAMPLE−
"SAMP Three One Six."

3. Assigned double-letter 2−digit flight number.

4. Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft, one of the following:

(a) The service prefix and 2 letters (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

TBL 2−3−6
Branch of Service Prefix

Prefix	Branch
A	U.S. Air Force
C	U.S. Coast Guard
G	Air or Army National Guard
R	U.S. Army
VM	U.S. Marine Corps
VV	U.S. Navy
CFC	Canadian Forces
CTG	Canadian Coast Guard

TBL 2−3−7
Military Mission Prefix

Prefix	Mission
E	Medical Air Evacuation
F	Flight Check
L	LOGAIR (USAF Contract)
RCH	AMC (Air Mobility Command)
S	Special Air Mission

(b) The service prefix and a digit and a letter (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

5. Aircraft carrying the President, Vice President, and/or their family members will use the identifiers in the following tables. See TBL 2−3−8 and TBL 2−3−9.

TBL 2−3−8
President and Family

Service	President	Family
Air Force	AF1	EXEC1F
Marine	VM1	EXEC1F
Navy	VV1	EXEC1F
Army	RR1	EXEC1F
Coast Guard	C1	EXEC1F
Guard	G1	EXEC1F
Commercial	EXEC1	EXEC1F

TBL 2−3−9
Vice President and Family

Service	Vice President	Family
Air Force	AF2	EXEC2F
Marine	VM2	EXEC2F
Navy	VV2	EXEC2F
Army	RR2	EXEC2F
Coast Guard	C2	EXEC2F
Guard	G2	EXEC2F
Commercial	EXEC2	EXEC2F

c. Special-use. Approved special-use identifiers.

2−3−6. AIRCRAFT TYPE

Use the approved aircraft type designator, in accordance with FAA Order 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators.

2−3−7. USAF/USN UNDERGRADUATE PILOTS

To identify aircraft piloted by solo USAF/USN undergraduate student pilots (who may occasionally request revised clearances because they normally are restricted to flight in VFR conditions), the aircraft identification in the flight plan shall include the letter "Z" as a suffix. Do not use this suffix, however, in ground-to-air communication.

NOTE−
USAF solo students who have passed an instrument certification check may penetrate cloud layers in climb or descent only. Requests for revised clearances to avoid clouds in level flight can still be expected. This does not change the requirement to use the letter "Z" as a suffix to the aircraft identification.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−20, Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 12, Section 10, USAF Undergraduate Flying Training (UFT)/Pilot Instructor Training (PIT)/Introduction To Fighter Fundamentals.

2−3−8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or navigation capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant. (See TBL 2−3−10.)

b. GNSS-equipped aircraft:

1. Have an equipment suffix of /G, /L, /S, or /V.

2. May be determined by executing an ICAO flight plan readout and verifying a filed "G" in the ICAO equipment list.

3. May be determined by verifying with the pilot that the aircraft is GNSS-equipped.

c. When forwarding this information, state the aircraft type followed by the word "slant" and the appropriate phonetic letter equivalent of the suffix.

EXAMPLE−
"Cessna Three−ten slant Tango."
"A−Ten slant November."
"F−Sixteen slant Papa."
"Seven−sixty−seven slant Golf."

d. Utilize aircraft equipment suffix /O to indicate "RVSM−capable, no transponder."

NOTE−
/O is for ATC use only. Users are not authorized to file this suffix.

2−3−9. CLEARANCE STATUS

Use an appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (−) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft. To indicate delay status use:

a. The symbol "H" at the clearance limit when holding instructions have been included in the aircraft's original clearance. Show detailed holding information following the dash when holding differs from the established pattern for the fix; i.e., turns, leg lengths, etc.

b. The symbols "F" or "O" to indicate the clearance limit when a delay is not anticipated.

TBL 2-3-10
Aircraft Equipment Suffixes

	Navigation Capability	Transponder Capability	Suffix
RVSM	Any	Failed transponder or Failed Mode C capability	/H
	No GNSS, No RNAV	Transponder with Mode C	/W
	RNAV, No GNSS	Transponder with Mode C	/Z
	GNSS	Transponder with Mode C	/L
No RVSM	No DME	No transponder	/X
		Transponder with no Mode C	/T
		Transponder with Mode C	/U
	DME	No transponder	/D
		Transponder with no Mode C	/B
		Transponder with Mode C	/A
	TACAN	No transponder	/M
		Transponder with no Mode C	/N
		Transponder with Mode C	/P
	RNAV, No GNSS	No transponder	/Y
		Transponder with no Mode C	/C
		Transponder with Mode C	/I
	GNSS	No transponder	/V
		Transponder with no Mode C	/S
		Transponder with Mode C	/G

2−3−10. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY

Use authorized control and clearance symbols or abbreviations for recording clearances, reports, and instructions. Control status of aircraft must always be current. You may use:

a. Plain language markings when it will aid in understanding information.

b. Locally approved identifiers. Use these only within your facility and not on teletypewriter or interphone circuits.

c. Plain sheets of paper or locally prepared forms to record information when flight progress strips are not used. (See TBL 2−3−11 and TBL 2−3−12.)

d. Control Information Symbols.
(See FIG 2−3−7 and FIG 2−3−8.)

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−3, Exceptions.

TBL 2−3−11
Clearance Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
A	Cleared to airport (point of intended landing)
B	Center clearance delivered
C	ATC clears (when clearance relayed through non−ATC facility)
CAF	Cleared as filed
D	Cleared to depart from the fix
F	Cleared to the fix
H	Cleared to hold and instructions issued
L	Cleared to land
N	Clearance not delivered
O	Cleared to the outer marker
PD	Cleared to climb/descend at pilot's discretion
Q	Cleared to fly specified sectors of a NAVAID defined in terms of courses, bearings, radials or quadrants within a designated radius.
T	Cleared through (for landing and takeoff through intermediate point)
V	Cleared over the fix
X	Cleared to cross (airway, route, radial) at (point)
Z	Tower jurisdiction

TBL 2−3−12
Miscellaneous Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
BC	Back course approach
CT	Contact approach
FA	Final approach
FMS	Flight management system approach
GPS	GPS approach
I	Initial approach
ILS	ILS approach
MA	Missed approach
NDB	Nondirectional radio beacon approach
OTP	VFR conditions−on−top
PA	Precision approach
PT	Procedure turn
RA	Resolution advisory (Pilot reported TCAS event)
RH	Runway heading
RNAV	Area navigation approach
RP	Report immediately upon passing (fix/altitude)
RX	Report crossing
SA	Surveillance approach
SI	Straight−in approach
TA	TACAN approach
TL	Turn left
TR	Turn right
VA	Visual approach
VR	VOR approach

FIG 2−3−7

Control Information Symbols [Part 1]

Symbols	Meaning
T→ ( )	Depart (direction, if specified)
↑	Climb and maintain
↓	Descend and maintain
→	Cruise
@	At
X	Cross
~~M~~→	Maintain
	Join or intercept airway/jet route/track or course
═	While in controlled airspace
△	While in control area
	Enter control area
	Out of control area
NW, NE, E	Cleared to enter, depart or through surface area. Indicated direction of flight by arrow and appropriate compass letter. Maintain Special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate) while in surface area.
250 K	Aircraft requested to adjust speed to 250 knots.
-20 K	Aircraft requested to reduce speed 20 knots.
+30 K	Aircraft requested to increase speed 30 knots.
W	Local Special VFR operations in the vicinity of (name) airport are authorized until(time). Maintain special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate).
>	Before
<	After or Past
170 (red)	Inappropriate altitude/flight level for direction of flight. (Underline assigned altitude/flight level in red).
/	Until
( )	Alternate instructions
$\overline{\text{Restriction}}$	Restriction
	At or Below
	At or Above
-(Dash)	From-to (route, time, etc.)
(Alt)B(Alt)	Indicates a block altitude assignment. Altitudes are inclusive, and the first altitude shall be lower than the second. Example: 310B370
v <	Clearance void if aircraft not off ground by (time)

NOTE: The absence of an airway route number between two fixes in the route of flight indicates "direct"; no symbol or abbreviation is required.

FIG 2−3−8

Control Information Symbols [Part 2]

Symbols	Meaning
CL	Pilot canceled flight plan
✓	EN ROUTE: Aircraft has reported at assigned altitude, Example: 80 ✓
✓	TERMINAL/FSS: Information forwarded (indicated information forwarded as required)
◯ (red)	EN ROUTE: Information or revised information forwarded. (Circle, in red, inappropriate altitude/flight level for direction of flight or other control information when coordinated. Also circle, in red, the time (minutes and altitude) when a flight plan or estimate is forwarded. Use method in both inter-center and intra-center coordination.)
50	Other than assigned altitude reported (circle reported altitude)
H 10 6	DME holding (use with mileages)(Upper figure indicates distance from station to DME fix, lower figure indicates length of holding pattern.) In this example, the DME fix is 10 miles out with a 6 mile pattern indicated.
(mi.)(dir.)	DME arc of VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS.
C (freq.)	Contact (facility) or (freq.), (time, fix, or altitude if appropriate). Insert frequency only when it is other than standard.
R	Radar contact.
R	EN ROUTE: Requested altitude (preceding altitude information)
~~R~~	Radar service terminated
~~R~~	Radar contact lost
RV	Radar vector
RX	Pilot resumed own navigation
R	Radar handoff (circle symbol when handoff completed)
E (red)	EMERGENCY
W (red)	WARNING
P	Point out initiated. Indicate the appropriate facility, sector or position. Example: PZFW.
FUEL	Minimum fuel

NOTE: The absence of an airway route number between two fixes in the route of flight indicates “direct”; no symbol or abbreviation is required.

Section 4. Radio and Interphone Communications

2−4−1. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS

Use radio frequencies for the special purposes for which they are intended. A single frequency may be used for more than one function except as follows:

TERMINAL. When combining positions in the tower, do not use ground control frequency for airborne communications.

NOTE−
Due to the limited number of frequencies assigned to towers for the ground control function, it is very likely that airborne use of a ground control frequency could cause interference to other towers or interference to your aircraft from another tower. When combining these functions, it is recommended combining them on local control. The ATIS may be used to specify the desired frequency.

2−4−2. MONITORING

Monitor interphones and assigned radio frequencies continuously.

NOTE−
Although all FAA facilities, including RAPCONs and RATCFs, are required to monitor all assigned frequencies continuously, USAF facilities may not monitor all unpublished discrete frequencies.

2−4−3. PILOT ACKNOWLEDGMENT/READ BACK

Ensure pilots acknowledge all Air Traffic Clearances and ATC Instructions. When a pilot reads back an Air Traffic Clearance or ATC Instruction:

a. Ensure that items read back are correct.

b. Ensure the read back of hold short instructions, whether a part of taxi instructions or a LAHSO clearance.

c. Ensure pilots use call signs and/or registration numbers in any read back acknowledging an Air Traffic Clearance or ATC Instruction.

NOTE−
1. ATC Clearance/Instruction Read Back guidance for pilots in the AIM states:
a. Although pilots should read back the "numbers," unless otherwise required by procedure or controller request, pilots may acknowledge clearances, control instructions, or other information by using "Wilco," "Roger," "Affirmative," or other words or remarks with their aircraft identification.
b. Altitudes contained in charted procedures, such as departure procedures, instrument approaches, etc., need not be read back unless they are specifically stated by the controller.
c. Initial read back of a taxi, departure or landing clearance should include the runway assignment, including left, right, center, etc. if applicable.
2. Until a pilot acknowledges a controller's clearance or instruction, a controller cannot know if a pilot will comply with the clearance or remain as previously cleared.

EXAMPLE−
"Climbing to Flight Level three three zero, United Twelve" or "November Five Charlie Tango, roger, cleared to land runway four left."

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term − Air Traffic Clearance
P/CG Term − ATC Instructions
JO 7110.65, 3-7-2. Taxi and Ground Movement Operations
JO 7110.65, 10-4-4. Communications Failure
AIM Para 4-2-3, Contact Procedures
AIM Para 4-4-7 Pilot Responsibility upon Clearance Issuance
AIM Para 6-4-1, Two-way Radio Communications Failure
Federal Register, April 1, 1999 14 CFR Part 91 Pilot Responsibility for Compliance with ATC Clearances and Instructions

2−4−4. AUTHORIZED INTERRUPTIONS

As necessary, authorize a pilot to interrupt his/her communications guard.

NOTE−
Some users have adopted procedures to ensure uninterrupted receiving capability with ATC when a pilot with only one operative communications radio must interrupt his/her communications guard because of a safety related problem requiring airborne communications with his/her company. In this event, pilots will request approval to abandon guard on the assigned ATC frequency for a mutually agreeable time period. Additionally, they will inform controllers of the NAVAID voice facility and the company frequency they will monitor.

2−4−5. AUTHORIZED TRANSMISSIONS

Transmit only those messages necessary for air traffic control or otherwise contributing to air safety.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−2−2, Authorized Messages Not Directly Associated with Air Traffic Services.

2–4–6. FALSE OR DECEPTIVE COMMUNICATIONS

Take action to detect, prevent, and report false, deceptive, or phantom controller communications to an aircraft or controller. The following must be accomplished when false or deceptive communications occur:

a. Correct false information.

b. Broadcast an alert to aircraft operating on all frequencies within the area where deceptive or phantom transmissions have been received.

EXAMPLE–
"Attention all aircraft. False ATC instructions have been received in the area of Long Beach Airport. Exercise extreme caution on all frequencies and verify instructions."

c. Collect pertinent information regarding the incident.

d. Notify the operations supervisor of the false, deceptive, or phantom transmission and report all relevant information pertaining to the incident.

2–4–7. AUTHORIZED RELAYS

a. Relay operational information to aircraft or aircraft operators as necessary. Do not agree to handle such messages on a regular basis. Give the source of any such message you relay.

b. Relay official FAA messages as required.

NOTE–
The FAA Administrator and Deputy Administrator will sometimes use code phrases to identify themselves in air-to-ground communications as follows:
Administrator: "SAFEAIR ONE."
Deputy Administrator: "SAFEAIR TWO."

EXAMPLE–
"Miami Center, Jetstar One, this is SAFEAIR ONE, (message)."

c. Relay operational information to military aircraft operating on, or planning to operate on IRs.

2–4–8. RADIO MESSAGE FORMAT

Use the following format for radio communications with an aircraft:

a. Sector/position on initial radio contact:

1. Identification of aircraft.

2. Identification of ATC unit.

3. Message (if any).

4. The word "over" if required.

b. Subsequent radio transmissions from the same sector/position must use the same format, except the identification of the ATC unit may be omitted.

TERMINAL. You may omit aircraft identification after initial contact when conducting the final portion of a radar approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20, Aircraft Identification.

2–4–9. ABBREVIATED TRANSMISSIONS

Transmissions may be abbreviated as follows:

a. Use the identification prefix and the last 3 digits or letters of the aircraft identification after communications have been established. Do not abbreviate similar sounding aircraft identifications or the identification of an air carrier or other civil aircraft having an FAA authorized call sign.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20, Aircraft Identification.

b. Omit the facility identification after communication has been established.

c. Transmit the message immediately after the callup (without waiting for the aircraft's reply) when the message is short and receipt is generally assured.

d. Omit the word "over" if the message obviously requires a reply.

2–4–10. INTERPHONE TRANSMISSION PRIORITIES

Give priority to interphone transmissions as follows:

a. First priority. Emergency messages including essential information on aircraft accidents or suspected accidents. After an actual emergency has passed, give a lower priority to messages relating to that accident.

b. Second priority. Clearances and control instructions.

c. Third priority. Movement and control messages using the following order of preference when possible:

1. Progress reports.

2. Departure or arrival reports.

3. Flight plans.

d. Fourth priority. Movement messages on VFR aircraft.

2−4−11. PRIORITY INTERRUPTION

Use the words "emergency" or "control" for interrupting lower priority messages when you have an emergency or control message to transmit.

2−4−12. INTERPHONE MESSAGE FORMAT

Use the following format for interphone intra/interfacility communications:

a. Both the caller and receiver identify their facility and/or position in a manner that ensures they will not be confused with another position.

NOTE−
Other means of identifying a position, such as substituting departure or arrival gate/fix names for position identification, may be used. However, it must be operationally beneficial, and the procedure fully covered in a letter of agreement or a facility directive, as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
Caller: *"Albuquerque Center Sixty Three, Amarillo Departure."*

Receiver: *"Albuquerque Center."*

b. Between two facilities which utilize numeric position identification, the caller must identify both facility and position.

EXAMPLE−
Caller: *"Albuquerque Sixty Three, Fort Worth Eighty Two."*

c. Caller states the type of coordination to be accomplished when advantageous. For example, handoff or APREQ.

d. The caller states the message.

e. The receiver states the response to the caller's message followed by the receiver's operating initials.

f. The caller states his or her operating initials.

EXAMPLE−
1.
Caller: *"Denver High, R Twenty−five."*

Receiver: *"Denver High."*

Caller: *"Request direct Denver for Northwest Three Twenty−eight."*

Receiver: *"Northwest Three Twenty−eight direct Denver approved. H.F."*

Caller: *"G.M."*

2.
Receiver: *"Denver High, Go ahead override."*

Caller: *"R Twenty−five, Request direct Denver for Northwest Three Twenty−eight."*

Receiver: *"Northwest Three Twenty−eight direct Denver approved. H.F."*

Caller: *"G.M."*

3.
Caller: *("Bolos" is a departure gate in Houston ARTCC's Sabine sector)− "Bolos, Houston local."*

Receiver: *"Bolos."*

Caller: *"Request Flight Level three five zero for American Twenty−five."*

Receiver: *"American Twenty−five Flight Level three five zero approved, A.C."*

Caller: *"G.M."*

4.
Caller: *"Sector Twelve, Ontario Approach, APREQ."*

Receiver: *"Sector Twelve."*

Caller: *"Cactus Five forty−two heading one three zero and climbing to one four thousand."*

Receiver: *"Cactus Five forty−two heading one three zero and climbing to one four thousand approved. B.N."*

Caller: *"A.M."*

5.
Caller: *"Zanesville, Columbus, seventy−three line, handoff."*

Receiver: *"Zanesville."*

Caller: *"Five miles east of Appleton VOR, United Three Sixty−six."*

Receiver: *"United Three Sixty−six, radar contact, A.Z."*

Caller: *"M.E."*

g. Identify the interphone voice line on which the call is being made when two or more such lines are collocated at the receiving operating position.

EXAMPLE−
"Washington Center, Washington Approach on the Fifty Seven line."

"Chicago Center, O'Hare Tower handoff on the Departure West line."

h. *TERMINAL.* The provisions of subparas a, b, c, e, f, g, and para 2−4−13, Interphone Message Termination, may be omitted provided:

1. Abbreviated standard coordination procedures are contained in a facility directive describing the specific conditions and positions that may utilize an abbreviated interphone message format; and

2. There will be no possibility of misunderstanding which positions are using the abbreviated procedures.

2−4−13. INTERPHONE MESSAGE TERMINATION

Terminate interphone messages with your operating initials.

2−4−14. WORDS AND PHRASES

a. Use the words or phrases in radiotelephone and interphone communication as contained in the P/CG or, within areas where Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is in use, the phraseology contained in the applicable CPDLC message set.

b. The word *super* must be used as part of the identification in all communications with or about super aircraft.

c. The word *heavy* must be used as part of the identification in all communications with or about heavy aircraft.

d. *EN ROUTE.* The use of the words *super* or *heavy* may be omitted except as follows:

1. In communications with a terminal facility about super or heavy aircraft operations.

2. In communications with or about super or heavy aircraft with regard to an airport where the en route center is providing approach control service.

3. In communications with or about super or heavy aircraft when the separation from a following aircraft may become less than 5 miles by approved procedure.

4. When issuing traffic advisories.

EXAMPLE−
"United Fifty−Eight Heavy."

NOTE−
Most airlines will use the word "super" or "heavy" following the company prefix and flight number when establishing communications or when changing frequencies within a terminal facility's area.

e. When in radio communications with "Air Force One" or "Air Force Two," do not add the heavy designator to the call sign. State only the call sign "Air Force One/Two" regardless of the type aircraft.

2−4−15. EMPHASIS FOR CLARITY

Emphasize appropriate digits, letters, or similar sounding words to aid in distinguishing between similar sounding aircraft identifications. Additionally:

a. Notify each pilot concerned when communicating with aircraft having similar sounding identifications.

EXAMPLE−
"United Thirty−one United, Miami Center, U.S. Air Thirty−one is also on this frequency, acknowledge."

"U.S. Air Thirty−one U.S. Air, Miami Center, United Thirty−one is also on this frequency, acknowledge."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−20, Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−13, Aircraft Identification Problems.

b. Notify the operations supervisor−in-charge of any duplicate flight identification numbers or phonetically similar-sounding call signs when the aircraft are operating simultaneously within the same sector.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−13, Aircraft Identification Problems.

NOTE−
This is especially important when this occurs on a repetitive, rather than an isolated, basis.

2−4−16. ICAO PHONETICS

Use the ICAO pronunciation of numbers and individual letters. (See the ICAO radiotelephony alphabet and pronunciation in TBL 2−4−1.)

TBL 2−4−1
ICAO Phonetics

Character	Word	Pronunciation
0	Zero	ZE−RO
1	One	WUN
2	Two	TOO
3	Three	TREE
4	Four	FOW−ER
5	Five	FIFE
6	Six	SIX
7	Seven	SEV−EN
8	Eight	AIT
9	Nine	NIN−ER
A	Alfa	**AL**FAH
B	Bravo	**BRAH**VOH
C	Charlie	**CHAR**LEE
D	Delta	**DELL**TAH
E	Echo	**ECK**OH
F	Foxtrot	**FOKS**TROT
G	Golf	GOLF
H	Hotel	HOH**TELL**
I	India	**IN**DEE AH
J	Juliett	**JEW**LEE ETT
K	Kilo	**KEY**LOH
L	Lima	**LEE**MAH
M	Mike	MIKE
N	November	NO**VEM**BER
O	Oscar	**OSS**CAH
P	Papa	PAH**PAH**
Q	Quebec	KEH**BECK**
R	Romeo	**ROW**ME OH
S	Sierra	SEE**AIR**AH
T	Tango	**TANG**GO
U	Uniform	**YOU**NEE FORM
V	Victor	**VIK**TAH
W	Whiskey	**WISS**KEY
X	X−ray	**ECKS**RAY
Y	Yankee	**YANG**KEY
Z	Zulu	**ZOO**LOO

NOTE−
Syllables to be emphasized in pronunciation are in bold face.

2−4−17. NUMBERS USAGE

State numbers as follows:

a. Serial numbers. The separate digits.

EXAMPLE−

Number	Statement
11,495	"One one four niner five."
20,069	"Two zero zero six niner."

b. Altitudes or flight levels:

1. Altitudes. Pronounce each digit in the number of hundreds or thousands followed by the word "hundred" or "thousand" as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−

Number	Statement
10,000	"One zero thousand."
11,000	"One one thousand."
17,900	"One seven thousand niner hundred."

NOTE−
Altitudes may be restated in group form for added clarity if the controller chooses.

EXAMPLE−

Number	Statement
10,000	"Ten thousand."
11,000	"Eleven thousand."
17,900	"Seventeen thousand niner hundred."

2. Flight levels. The words "flight level" followed by the separate digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE−

Flight Level	Statement
180	"Flight level one eight zero."
275	"Flight level two seven five."

3. MDA/DH Altitudes. The separate digits of the MDA/DH altitude.

EXAMPLE−

MDA/DH Altitude	Statement
1,320	"Minimum descent altitude, one three two zero."
486	"Decision height, four eight six."

c. Time:

1. General time information. The four separate digits of the hour and minute/s in terms of UTC.

EXAMPLE−

UTC	Time (12 hour)	Statement
0715	1:15 a.m. CST	"Zero seven one five."
1915	1:15 p.m. CST	"One niner one five."

2. Upon request. The four separate digits of the hours and minute/s in terms of UTC followed by the local standard time equivalent; or the local time equivalent only. Local time may be based on the 24−hour clock system, and the word "local" or the time zone equivalent must be stated when other than UTC is referenced. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC.

EXAMPLE−

UTC	Time (24 hour)	Time (12 hour)	Statement
2230	1430 PST	2:30 p.m.	"Two two three zero, one four three zero Pacific or Local." or "Two−thirty P−M."

3. Time check. The word "time" followed by the four separate digits of the hour and minutes, and nearest quarter minute. Fractions of a quarter minute less than eight seconds are stated as the preceding quarter minute; fractions of a quarter minute of eight seconds or more are stated as succeeding quarter minute.

EXAMPLE−

Time	Statement
1415:06	"Time, one four one five."
1415:10	"Time, one four one five and one−quarter."

4. Abbreviated time. The separate digits of the minutes only.

EXAMPLE−

Time	Statement
1415	"One five."
1420	"Two zero."

d. Field elevation. The words "field elevation" followed by the separate digits of the elevation.

EXAMPLE−

Elevation	Statement
17 feet	"Field elevation, one seven."
817 feet	"Field elevation, eight one seven."
2,817 feet	"Field elevation, two eight one seven."

e. The number "0" as "zero" except where it is used in approved "group form" for authorized aircraft call signs, and in stating altitudes.

EXAMPLE−

As Zero	As Group
"Field elevation one six zero." "Heading three zero zero." "One zero thousand five hundred."	"Western five thirty." "EMAIR One Ten." "Ten thousand five hundred."

f. Altimeter setting. The word "altimeter" followed by the separate digits of the altimeter setting.

EXAMPLE−

Setting	Statement
30.01	"Altimeter, three zero zero one."

g. Surface wind. The word "wind" followed by the separate digits of the indicated wind direction to the nearest 10−degree multiple, the word "at" and the separate digits of the indicated velocity in knots, to include any gusts.

EXAMPLE−
"Wind zero three zero at two five."
"Wind two seven zero at one five gusts three five."

h. Heading. The word "heading" followed by the three separate digits of the number of degrees, omitting the word "degrees." Use heading 360 degrees to indicate a north heading.

EXAMPLE−

Heading	Statement
5 degrees	"Heading zero zero five."
30 degrees	"Heading zero three zero."
360 degrees	"Heading three six zero."

i. Radar beacon codes. The separate digits of the 4−digit code.

EXAMPLE−

Code	Statement
1000	“One zero zero zero.”
2100	“Two one zero zero.”

j. Runways. The word “runway,” followed by the separate digits of the runway designation. For a parallel runway, state the word “left,” “right,” or “center” if the letter “L,” “R,” or “C” is included in the designation.

EXAMPLE−

Designation	Statement
3	“Runway Three.”
8L	“Runway Eight Left.”
27R	“Runway Two Seven Right.”

k. Frequencies.

1. The separate digits of the frequency, inserting the word “point” where the decimal point occurs.

(a) Omit digits after the second digit to the right of the decimal point.

(b) When the frequency is in the L/MF band, include the word “kiloHertz.”

EXAMPLE−

Frequency	Statement
126.55 MHz	“One two six point five five.”
369.0 MHz	“Three six niner point zero.”
121.5 MHz	“One two one point five.”
135.275 MHz	“One three five point two seven.”
302 kHz	“Three zero two kiloHertz.”

2. *USAF/USN.* Local channelization numbers may be used in lieu of frequencies for locally based aircraft when local procedures are established to ensure that local aircraft and ATC facilities use the same channelization.

EXAMPLE−

Frequency	Statement
275.8 MHz	“Local channel one six.”

3. Issue TACAN frequencies by stating the assigned two− or three−digit channel number.

l. Speeds.

1. The separate digits of the speed followed by “knots” except as required by para 5−7−2, Methods.

EXAMPLE−

Speed	Statement
250	“Two five zero knots.”
190	“One niner zero knots.”

2. The separate digits of the Mach number preceded by “Mach.”

EXAMPLE−

Mach Number	Statement
1.5	“Mach one point five.”
0.64	“Mach point six four.”
0.7	“Mach point seven.”

m. Miles. The separate digits of the mileage followed by the word “mile.”

EXAMPLE−
“Three zero mile arc east of Nottingham.”
“Traffic, one o’clock, two five miles, northbound, D−C Eight, flight level two seven zero.”

2−4−18. NUMBER CLARIFICATION

a. If deemed necessary for clarity, and after stating numbers as specified in para 2−4−17, Numbers Usage, controllers may restate numbers using either group or single-digit form.

EXAMPLE−
“One Seven Thousand, Seventeen Thousand.”
“Altimeter Two Niner Niner Two, Twenty Nine Ninety Two.”
“One Two Six Point Five Five, One Twenty Six Point Fifty Five.”

2−4−19. FACILITY IDENTIFICATION

Identify facilities as follows:

a. Airport traffic control towers. State the name of the facility followed by the word "tower." Where military and civil airports are located in the same general area and have similar names, state the name of the military service followed by the name of the military facility and the word "tower."

EXAMPLE−
"Columbus Tower."
"Barksdale Tower."
"Navy Jacksonville Tower."

b. Air route traffic control centers. State the name of the facility followed by the word "center."

c. Approach control facilities, including RAPCONs, RATCFs, and ARACs. State the name of the facility followed by the word "approach." Where military and civil facilities are located in the same general area and have similar names, state the name of the military service followed by the name of the military facility and the word "approach."

EXAMPLE−
"Denver Approach."
"Griffiss Approach."
"Navy Jacksonville Approach."

d. Functions within a terminal facility. State the name of the facility followed by the name of the function.

EXAMPLE−
"Boston Departure."
"LaGuardia Clearance Delivery."
"O'Hare Ground."

e. When calling or replying on an interphone line which connects only two non−VSCS equipped facilities, you may omit the facility name.

EXAMPLE−
"Bradford High, Handoff."

f. FAA flight service stations. State the name of the station followed by the word "radio."

EXAMPLE−
"Altoona Radio."

g. Radar facilities having ASR or PAR but not providing approach control service. State the name of the facility, followed by the letters "G−C−A."

EXAMPLE−
"Corpus Christi G−C−A."
"Davison G−C−A."

2−4−20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

Use the full identification in reply to aircraft with similar sounding identifications. For other aircraft, the same identification may be used in reply that the pilot used in his/her initial callup except use the correct identification after communications have been established. Identify aircraft as follows:

a. U.S. registry aircraft. State one of the following:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−8, Radio Message Format.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−9, Abbreviated Transmissions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−15, Emphasis for Clarity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−17, Numbers Usage.

1. Civil. State the prefix "November" when establishing initial communications with U.S. registered aircraft followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration. The controller may state the aircraft type, the model, the manufacturer's name, followed by the ICAO phonetic pronunciation of the numbers/letters of the aircraft registration if used by the pilot on the initial or subsequent call.

EXAMPLE−
Air traffic controller's initiated call:

"November One Two Three Four Golf."
"November One Two Three Four."

Responding to pilot's initial or subsequent call:

"Jet Commander One Two Three Four Papa."
"Bonanza One Two Three Four Tango."
"Sikorsky Six Three Eight Mike Foxtrot."

NOTE−
If aircraft identification becomes a problem when the procedures specified above are used, the call sign must be restated after the flight number of the aircraft involved.

EXAMPLE−
"American Five Twenty−One American."
"Commuter Six Eleven Commuter."
"General Motors Thirty−Seven General Motors."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−13, Aircraft Identification Problems.

2. Air carrier and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs. State the call sign followed by the flight number in group form.

NOTE−
"Group form" is the pronunciation of a series of numbers as the whole number, or pairs of numbers they represent rather than pronouncing each separate digit. The use of group form may, however, be negated by four-digit identifiers or the placement of zeros in the identifier.

EXAMPLE−
"American Fifty−Two."
"Delta One Hundred."
"Eastern Metro One Ten."
"General Motors Thirty Fifteen."
"United One Zero One."
"Delta Zero One Zero."
"TWA Ten Zero Four."

NOTE−
Air carrier and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs may be pronounced using single digits if necessary for clarity.

EXAMPLE−
"United Five One Seven."
"United Five Seven Zero."

3. Air taxi and commercial operators not having FAA authorized call signs. State the prefix "TANGO" on initial contact, if used by the pilot, followed by the registration number. The prefix may be dropped in subsequent communications.

EXAMPLE−
"Tango Mooney Five Five Five Two Quebec."
"Tango November One Two Three Four."

4. Air carrier/taxi ambulance. State the prefix "MEDEVAC" if used by the pilot, followed by the call sign and flight number in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"MEDEVAC Delta Fifty-One."

5. Civilian air ambulance. State the word *"MEDEVAC"* followed by the numbers/letters of the registration number.

EXAMPLE−
"MEDEVAC Two Six Four Six."

6. U.S. military. State one of the following:

(a) The service name, followed by the word "copter," when appropriate, and the last 5 digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE−
"Navy Five Six Seven One Three."
"Coast Guard Six One Three Two Seven."
"Air Guard One Three Five Eight Six."
"Army Copter Three Two One Seven Six."

NOTE−
If aircraft identification becomes a problem, the procedures reflected in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, para 2−1−13, Aircraft Identification Problems, will apply.

(b) Special military operations. State one of the following followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number:

(c) Air evacuation flights. "AIR EVAC," "MARINE AIR EVAC," or "NAVY AIR EVAC."

EXAMPLE−
"Air Evac One Seven Six Five Two."

(d) Rescue flights. (Service name) "RESCUE."

EXAMPLE−
"Air Force Rescue Six One Five Seven Niner."

(e) Air Mobility Command. "REACH."

EXAMPLE−
"Reach Seven Eight Five Six Two."

(f) Special Air Mission. "SAM."

EXAMPLE−
"Sam Niner One Five Six Two."

(g) USAF Contract Aircraft "LOGAIR."

EXAMPLE−
"Logair Seven Five Eight Two Six."

(h) Military tactical and training:

(1) U.S. Air Force, Air National Guard, Military District of Washington priority aircraft, and USAF civil disturbance aircraft. Pronounceable words of 3 to 6 letters followed by a 1 to 5 digit number.

EXAMPLE−
"Paul Two Zero."
"Pat One Five Seven."
"Gaydog Four."

NOTE−
When the "Z" suffix described in para 2−3−7, USAF/USN Undergraduate Pilots, is added to identify aircraft piloted by USAF undergraduate pilots, the call sign will be limited to a combination of six characters.

(2) Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft. The service name and 2 letters, or a digit and a letter (use letter phonetic equivalents), followed by 2 or 3 digits.

EXAMPLE−
"Navy Golf Alfa Two One."
"Marine Four Charlie Two Three Six."

7. Presidential aircraft and Presidential family aircraft:

(a) When the President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "One."

EXAMPLE−
"Air Force One."
"Army One."
"Marine One."

(b) When the President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive One."

(c) When a member of the President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive One Foxtrot."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

8. Vice Presidential aircraft:

(a) When the Vice President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "Two."

EXAMPLE−
"Air Force Two."
"Army Two."
"Marine Two."

(b) When the Vice President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive Two."

(c) When a member of the Vice President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive Two Foxtrot."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

9. DOT and FAA flights. The following alphanumeric identifiers and radio/interphone call signs are established for use in air/ground communications when the Secretary of Transportation, Deputy Secretary of Transportation, FAA Administrator or FAA Deputy Administrator have a requirement to identify themselves. (See TBL 2−4−2.)

TBL 2−4−2
DOT and FAA Alphanumeric Identifiers and Call Signs

Official	Identifier	Call Sign
Secretary of Transportation	DOT−1	Transport−1
Deputy Secretary of Transportation	DOT−2	Transport−2
Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA−1	Safeair−1
Deputy Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA−2	Safeair−2

10. Other Special Flights.

(a) Department of Energy flights. State the letters "R−A−C" (use phonetic alphabet equivalents) followed by the last 4 separate digits of the aircraft registration number.

EXAMPLE−
"Romeo Alfa Charlie One Six Five Three."

(b) Flight Inspection of navigational aids. State the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" followed by the digits of the registration number.

EXAMPLE−
"Flight Check Three Niner Six Five Four."

(c) USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions. State the call sign "SAMP" followed by the last three digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE−
"SAMP Three One Six."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−17, SAMP.

11. Use a pilot's name in identification of an aircraft only in special or emergency situations.

b. Foreign registry. State one of the following:

1. Civil. State the aircraft type or the manufacturer's name followed by the letters/numbers of the aircraft registration, or state the letters or digits of the aircraft registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE−
"Stationair F−L−R−B."
"C−F−L−R−B."

NOTE−
Letters may be spoken individually or phonetically.

2. Air carrier. The abbreviated name of the operating company followed by the letters or digits of the registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE−
"Air France F−L−R−L−G."

3. The flight number in group form, or you may use separate digits if that is the format used by the pilot.

EXAMPLE−
"Scandinavian Sixty−eight."
"Scandinavian Six Eight."

4. Foreign Military. Except for military services identified in FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, the name of the country and the military service followed by the separate digits or letters of the registration or call sign. For military services listed in FAA Order JO 7340.2, the approved telephony followed by the separate digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE−
"Canforce Five Six Two Seven."
"Brazilian Air Force Five Three Two Seven Six."

2−4−21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES

Except for super and heavy aircraft, describe aircraft as follows when issuing traffic information.

a. Military:

1. Military designator, with numbers spoken in group form, or

2. Service and type, or

3. Type only if no confusion or misidentification is likely.

b. Air Carrier:

1. Manufacturer's model or type designator.

2. Add the manufacturer's name, company name or other identifying features when confusion or misidentification is likely.

EXAMPLE−
"L−Ten−Eleven."
"American MD−Eighty. Seven Thirty−Seven."
"Boeing Seven Fifty−Seven."

NOTE−
Pilots of "interchange" aircraft are expected to inform the tower on the first radio contact the name of the operating company and trip number followed by the company name, as displayed on the aircraft, and the aircraft type.

c. General Aviation and Air Taxi:

1. Manufacturer's model or type designator.

2. Manufacturer's name, or add color when considered advantageous.

EXAMPLE−
"Tri−Pacer."
"P A Twenty−Two."
"Cessna Four−Oh−One."
"Blue and white King Air."
"Airliner."
"Sikorsky S−Seventy−Six."

d. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a super aircraft, specify the word s*uper* before the manufacturer's name and model.

e. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a heavy aircraft, specify the word *heavy* before the manufacturer's name and model.

EXAMPLE−
"Super A-Three-Eighty" or "Super A-three-eighty-eight."
"Heavy C-Seventeen."
"Heavy Boeing Seven Forty-Seven."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

2−4−22. AIRSPACE CLASSES

A, B, C, D, E, and G airspace are pronounced in the ICAO phonetics for clarification. The term "Class" may be dropped when referring to airspace in pilot/controller communications.

EXAMPLE−
"Cessna 123 Mike Romeo cleared to enter Bravo airspace."
"Sikorsky 123 Tango Sierra cleared to enter New York Bravo airspace."

Section 5. Route and NAVAID Description

2−5−1. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) ROUTES

Describe ATS routes as follows:

a. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN airways or jet routes. State the word "Victor" or the letter "J" followed by the number of the airway or route in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"Victor Twelve."
"J Five Thirty−Three."

b. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN alternate airways. State the word "Victor" followed by the number of the airway in group form and the alternate direction.

EXAMPLE−
"Victor Twelve South."

c. Colored/L/MF airways. State the color of the airway followed by the number in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"Blue Eighty−One."

d. Named Routes. State the words "North American Route" or "Bahama Route" followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"North American Route Sixty−Seven Bravo."
"Bahama Route Fifty−Five Victor."

e. Air Traffic Service (ATS) routes. State the letter(s) of the route phonetically, followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"Romeo Twenty."
"Alfa Fifty."
"Golf Sixty−one."
"Alfa Seven Hundred."

f. Military Training Routes (MTRs). State the letters "I−R" or "V−R" followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"I−R Five Thirty−one."
"V−R Fifty−two."

g. Published RNAV routes.

1. High Altitude − State the letter "Q" followed by the route number in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"Q One Forty−five."

2. Low Altitude − State the letter of the route phonetically, followed by the number of the route in group form.

EXAMPLE−
"Tango Two Ten."

2−5−2. NAVAID TERMS

a. Describe NAVAIDs as follows:

1. State the name or phonetic alphabet equivalent (location identifier) of a NAVAID when using it in a routing.

EXAMPLE−
"V6 Victor Whiskey Victor (Waterville) V45 Jackson"

2. When utilized as the clearance limit, state the name of the NAVAID followed by the type of NAVAID if the type is known.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type)

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to Grand Rapids VOR"

b. Describe radials, arcs, courses, bearings, and quadrants of NAVAIDs as follows:

1. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN/GPS Waypoint. State the name of the NAVAID or GPS Waypoint followed by the separate digits of the radial/azimuth/bearing (omitting the word "degrees") and the word "radial/azimuth/bearing."

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero Radial."

2. Arcs about VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN NAVAIDs. State the distance in miles from the NAVAID followed by the words "mile arc," the direction from the NAVAID in terms of the eight principal points of the compass, the word "of," and the name of the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE−
"Two Zero mile arc southwest of Kirksville VOR"

3. Quadrant within a radius of NAVAID. State direction from NAVAID in terms of the quadrant; e.g., NE, SE, SW, NW, followed by the distance in miles from the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to fly northeast quadrant of Phillipsburg VORTAC within Four Zero mile radius."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−4−1, Route Use.
P/CG Term− Quadrant.

4. Nondirectional beacons. State the course to or the bearing from the radio beacon, omitting the word "degree," followed by the words "course to" or "bearing from," the name of the radio beacon, and the words "radio beacon."

EXAMPLE−
"Three Four Zero bearing from Randolph Radio Beacon."

5. MLS. State the azimuth to or azimuth from the MLS, omitting the word "degree" followed by the words "azimuth to" or "azimuth from," the name of the MLS, and the term MLS.

EXAMPLE−
"Two Six Zero azimuth to Linburgh Runway Two Seven MLS."

6. Navigation Reference System (NRS) Waypoint. State the single letter corresponding to the ICAO Flight Information Region (FIR) identifier, followed by the letter corresponding to the FIR subset (ARTCC area for the conterminous U.S.), the latitude increment in single digit or group form, and the longitude increment.

EXAMPLE−
"Kilo Delta Three Four Uniform."
"Kilo Delta Thirty Four Uniform."

2−5−3. NAVAID FIXES

Describe fixes determined by reference to a radial/localizer/azimuth and distance from a VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN/ILS-DME as follows:

a. When a fix is not named, state the name of the NAVAID followed by a specified radial/localizer/azimuth, and state the distance in miles followed by the phrase "mile fix."

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero radial Three Seven mile fix."
"Reno localizer back course Four mile fix."

b. When a fix is charted on a SID, STAR, en route chart, or approach plate, state the name of the fix.

c. Use specific terms to describe a fix. Do not use expressions such as "passing Victor Twelve" or "passing J Eleven."

Section 6. Weather Information

2-6-1. FAMILIARIZATION

Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform ATC duties.

2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)

Controllers must advise pilots of hazardous weather that may impact operations within 150 NM of their sector or area of jurisdiction. Hazardous weather information contained in HIWAS broadcasts includes Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMET), Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMET), Convective SIGMET (WST), Urgent Pilot Weather Reports (UUA), and Center Weather Advisories (CWA). Facilities must review alert messages to determine the geographical area and operational impact for hazardous weather information broadcasts. The broadcast is not required if aircraft on your frequency(s) will not be affected.

a. Controllers within commissioned HIWAS areas must broadcast a HIWAS alert on all frequencies, except emergency frequency, upon receipt of hazardous weather information. Controllers are required to disseminate data based on the operational impact on the sector or area of control jurisdiction.

NOTE–
The inclusion of the type and number of weather advisory responsible for the HIWAS advisory is optional.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Weather Report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA), Number or Numbers) FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE ON HIWAS OR FLIGHT SERVICE FREQUENCIES.

b. Controllers outside of commissioned HIWAS areas must:

1. Advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories. Pilots requesting additional information should be directed to contact the nearest Flight Service.

2. Apply the same procedure when HIWAS outlets, or outlets with radio coverage extending into your sector or airspace under your jurisdiction, are out of service.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE FROM FLIGHT SERVICE.

c. Terminal facilities have the option to limit hazardous weather information broadcasts as follows: Tower cab and approach control facilities may opt to broadcast hazardous weather information alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 NM of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 1, Meteorology, Para 7-1-5 through Para 7-1-9.

d. *EN ROUTE*. ERAM. Controllers must electronically acknowledge hazardous weather information messages after appropriate action has been taken.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. While hazardous weather information is commonly distributed via the SIGMET View, it is possible to receive the information via the GI View.

2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION

Significant PIREP information includes reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S) in the cabin, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3-1-8, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6-3-1, Handling of SIGMETs, CWAs, and PIREPs.
AIM, Para 7-5-9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-1, SIGMET and PIREP Handling.

a. Solicit PIREPs when requested or when one of the following conditions exists or is forecast for your area of jurisdiction:

1. Ceilings at or below 5,000 feet. These PIREPs must include cloud base/top reports when feasible.

TERMINAL. Ensure that at least one descent/climb-out PIREP, including cloud base/s, top/s, and other related phenomena, is obtained each hour.

EN ROUTE. When providing approach control services, the requirements stated in TERMINAL above apply.

2. Visibility (surface or aloft) at or less than 5 miles.

3. Thunderstorms and related phenomena.

4. Turbulence of moderate degree or greater.

5. Icing of light degree or greater.

6. Wind shear.

7. Volcanic ash clouds.

NOTE−
Pilots may forward PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the format described in the Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR) as depicted in the AIM, Appendix 2.

8. Detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S), associated with volcanic activity, in the cabin.

NOTE−
The smell of sulfur gases in the cockpit may indicate volcanic activity that has not yet been detected or reported and/or possible entry into an ash-bearing cloud. SO_2 is identifiable as the sharp, acrid odor of a freshly struck match. H_2S has the odor of rotten eggs.

9. *TERMINAL*. Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−5, Braking Action Advisories.
P/CG Term− Braking Action Advisories.

b. Record with the PIREPs:

1. Time.

2. Aircraft position.

3. Type aircraft.

4. Altitude.

5. When the PIREP involves icing include:

(a) Icing type and intensity.

(b) Air temperature in which icing is occurring.

c. Obtain PIREPs directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REQUEST/SAY FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

Or if appropriate,

REQUEST/SAY (specific conditions; i.e., ride, cloud, visibility, etc.) CONDITIONS.

If necessary,

OVER (fix),

or

ALONG PRESENT ROUTE,

or

BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix).

d. Handle PIREPs as follows:

1. Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.

2. *EN ROUTE*. Relay all operationally significant PIREPs to the facility weather coordinator.

3. *TERMINAL*. Relay all operationally significant PIREPs to:

(a) The appropriate intrafacility positions.

(b) The FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained.

NOTE−
The FSS is responsible for long line dissemination.

(c) Other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non−FAA facilities.

(d) Use the word *gain* and/or *loss* when describing to pilots the effects of wind shear on airspeed.

EXAMPLE−
"Delta Seven Twenty−one, a Boeing Seven Twenty−seven, previously reported wind shear, loss of Two Five knots at Four Hundred feet."

"U.S. Air Seventy−six, a D−C Niner, previously reported wind shear, gain of Twenty−Five knots between Niner Hundred and Six Hundred feet, followed by a loss of Five Zero knots between Five Hundred feet and the surface."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 7−1−24, Wind Shear PIREPs.

2−6−4. WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES

a. Issue pertinent information on observed/reported weather and chaff areas by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth (by referring to the 12-hour clock) and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.

NOTE–
Weather significant to the safety of aircraft includes such conditions as funnel cloud activity, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms, large hail, wind shear, microbursts, moderate to extreme turbulence (including CAT), and light to severe icing.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Paragraph 7-1-14, ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WEATHER/CHAFF AREA BETWEEN (number)O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK (number) MILES,

or

(number) MILE BAND OF WEATHER/CHAFF FROM (fix or number of miles and direction from fix) TO (fix or number of miles and direction from fix).

b. Inform any tower for which you provide approach control services of observed precipitation on radar which is likely to affect their operations.

c. Use the term "precipitation" when describing radar–derived weather. Issue the precipitation intensity from the lowest descriptor (LIGHT) to the highest descriptor (EXTREME) when that information is available. Do not use the word "turbulence" in describing radar–derived weather.

1. LIGHT.

2. MODERATE.

3. HEAVY.

4. EXTREME.

NOTE–
Weather and Radar Processor (WARP) does not display light intensity.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF (Intensity) PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES, MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Area of extreme precipitation between eleven o'clock and one o'clock, one zero miles moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero."*

2. *"Area of heavy precipitation between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

3. *"Area of heavy to extreme precipitation between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.

d. When precipitation intensity information is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES. MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER, INTENSITY UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Area of precipitation between one o'clock and three o'clock, three five miles moving south at one five knots, tops flight level three three zero. Area is three zero miles in diameter, intensity unknown."

NOTE–
Phraseology using precipitation intensity descriptions is only applicable when the radar precipitation intensity information is determined by NWS radar equipment or NAS ground based digitized radar equipment with weather capabilities. This precipitation may not reach the surface.

e. *EN ROUTE.* When issuing Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) precipitation intensity use the following:

1. Describe the lowest displayable precipitation intensity as MODERATE.

2. Describe the highest displayable precipitation intensity as HEAVY to EXTREME.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF (Intensity) PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK and (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES, MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Area of moderate precipitation between ten o'clock and one o'clock, three zero miles moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three seven zero.*

2. *"Area of moderate precipitation between ten o'clock and three o'clock, two zero miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

f. When operational/equipment limitations exist, controllers must ensure that the highest available level of precipitation intensity within their area of jurisdiction is displayed.

g. When requested by the pilot, provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas. In areas of significant weather, plan ahead and be prepared to suggest, upon pilot request, the use of alternative routes/altitudes.

1. An approval for lateral deviation authorizes the pilot to maneuver left or right within the limits of the lateral deviation area.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Paragraph 7-1-14b, 1. (a) ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance

2. When approving a weather deviation for an aircraft that had previously been issued a crossing altitude, including Climb Via or Descend Via clearances, issue an altitude to maintain along with the clearance to deviate. If you intend on clearing the aircraft to resume the procedure, advise the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, MAINTAIN (altitude), (if applicable) EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.) AT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint)

NOTE–
After a Climb Via or Descend Via clearance has been issued, a vector/deviation off of a SID/STAR cancels the altitude restrictions on the procedure. The aircraft's Flight Management System (FMS) may be unable to process crossing altitude restrictions once the aircraft leaves the SID/STAR lateral path. Without an assigned altitude, the aircraft's FMS may revert to leveling off at the altitude set by the pilot, which may be the SID/STAR's published top or bottom altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-2-5, Route or Altitude Amendments
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-6-2, Methods

3. If a pilot enters your area of jurisdiction already deviating for weather, advise the pilot of any additional pertinent weather which may affect his route.

4. If traffic and airspace (i.e., special use airspace boundaries, LOA constraints) permit, combine the approval for weather deviation with a clearance on course.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, WHEN ABLE, PROCEED DIRECT (name of NAVAID/WAYPOINT/FIX)
or
DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, WHEN ABLE, FLY HEADING (degrees), VECTOR TO JOIN (airway) AND ADVISE.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Deviation twenty degrees right approved, when able proceed direct O'Neill VORTAC and advise."*
En Route: The corresponding fourth line entry is "D20R/ONL" or "D20R/F."
2. *"Deviation 30 degrees left approved, when able fly heading zero niner zero, vector join J324 and advise."*
En Route: In this case the free text character limitation prevents use of fourth line coordination and verbal coordination is required.

5. If traffic or airspace prevent you from clearing the aircraft on course at the time of the approval for a weather deviation, instruct the pilot to advise when clear of weather.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, ADVISE CLEAR OF WEATHER.

EXAMPLE–
"Deviation North of course approved, advise clear of weather."
En Route: In this case the corresponding fourth line entry is "DN," and the receiving controller must provide a clearance to rejoin the route in accordance with paragraph 2-1-15 c.

h. When a deviation cannot be approved as requested because of traffic, take an alternate course of action that provides positive control for traffic resolution and satisfies the pilot's need to avoid weather.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNABLE DEVIATION, FLY HEADING (heading), ADVISE CLEAR OF WEATHER
or
UNABLE DEVIATION, TURN (number of degrees) DEGREES (left or right)FOR TRAFFIC, ADVISE CLEAR OF WEATHER,

EXAMPLE–
"Unable deviation, turn thirty degrees right vector for traffic, advise clear of weather."

i. When forwarding weather deviation information, the transferring controller must clearly coordinate the nature of the route guidance service being provided. This coordination should include, but is not limited to: assigned headings, suggested headings, pilot-initiated deviations. Coordination can be accomplished by: verbal, automated, or pre-arranged procedures. Emphasis should be made between: controller assigned headings, suggested headings, or pilot initiated deviations.

EXAMPLE–
"(call sign) assigned heading 330 for weather avoidance"
"(call sign) deviating west, pilot requested…"

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65 2-1-14 Coordinate Use Of Airspace
FAA Order JO 7110.65 5-4-5 Transferring Controller Handoff
FAA Order JO 7110.65 5-4-6 Receiving Controller Handoff
FAA Order JO 7110.65 5-4-10 Prearranged Coordination
FAA Order JO 7110.65 5-4-11 En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage

j. En Route Fourth Line Data Transfer

1. The inclusion of a NAVAID, waypoint, or /F in the fourth line data indicates that the pilot has been authorized to deviate for weather and must rejoin the route at the next NAVAID or waypoint in the route of flight.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65 5-4-11 En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage

EXAMPLE−
"Deviation twenty degrees right approved, when able proceed direct O'Neill VORTAC and advise." In this case, the corresponding fourth line entry is "D20R/ONL" or "D20R/F."

2. The absence of a NAVAID, waypoint, or /F in the fourth line indicates that:

(a) The pilot has been authorized to deviate for weather only, and the receiving controller must provide a clearance to rejoin the route in accordance with paragraph 2-1-15c.

EXAMPLE−
"Deviation twenty degrees right approved, advise clear of weather."

(b) The free text character limitation prevents the use of fourth line coordination. Verbal coordination is required.

EXAMPLE−
"Deviation 30 degrees left approved, when able fly heading zero niner zero, vector join J324 and advise."

k. The supervisory traffic management coordinator-in-charge/operations supervisor/controller-in-charge shall verify the digitized radar weather information by the best means available (e.g., pilot reports, local tower personnel, etc.) if the weather data displayed by digitized radar is reported as questionable or erroneous. Errors in weather radar presentation shall be reported to the technical operations technician and the air traffic supervisor shall determine if the digitized radar derived weather data is to be displayed and a NOTAM distributed.

NOTE−
Anomalous propagation (AP) is a natural occurrence affecting radar and does not in itself constitute a weather circuit failure.

2−6−5. CALM WIND CONDITIONS

TERMINAL. Describe the wind as calm when the wind velocity is less than three knots.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−5−3, Tailwind Components.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−4, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Separation.

2−6−6. REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS

a. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, tower personnel must take prevailing visibility observations and apply the observations as follows:

1. Use the lower of the two observations (tower or surface) for aircraft operations.

2. Forward tower visibility observations to the weather observer.

3. Notify the weather observer when the tower observes the prevailing visibility decrease to less than 4 miles or increase to 4 miles or more.

b. Forward current weather changes to the appropriate control facility as follows:

1. When the official weather changes to a condition which is below 1,000−foot ceiling or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility, and when it improves to a condition which is better than those above.

2. Changes which are classified as special weather observations during the time that weather conditions are below 1,000−foot ceiling or the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility.

c. Towers at airports where military turbo-jet en route descents are routinely conducted must also report the conditions to the ARTCC even if it is not the controlling facility.

d. If the receiving facility informs you that weather reports are not required for a specific time period, discontinue the reports. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of the receiving controller's tour of duty.

e. *EN ROUTE.* When you determine that weather reports for an airport will not be required for a specific time period, inform the FSS or tower of this determination. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of receiving controller's tour of duty.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–2, Forwarding Approach Information by Nonapproach Control Facilities.

2–6–7. DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION

TERMINAL. Observed elements of weather information must be disseminated as follows:

a. General weather information, such as "large breaks in the overcast," "visibility lowering to the south," or similar statements which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.

b. Specific values, such as ceiling and visibility, may be transmitted if obtained by one of the following means:

1. You are properly certificated and acting as official weather observer for the elements being reported.

NOTE–
USAF controllers do not serve as official weather observers.

2. You have obtained the information from the official observer for the elements being reported.

3. The weather report was composed or verified by the weather station.

4. The information is obtained from an official Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS) or an Automated Surface Observation System (ASOS).

c. Differences between weather elements observed from the tower and those reported by the weather station must be reported to the official observer for the element concerned.

Section 7. Altimeter Settings

2–7–1. CURRENT SETTINGS

a. Current altimeter settings must be obtained from direct-reading instruments or directly from weather reporting stations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 2, Section 10, Wind/Altimeter Information.

b. If a pilot requests the altimeter setting in millibars, ask the nearest weather reporting station for the equivalent millibar setting.

c. USAF/USA. Use the term "Estimated Altimeter" for altimeter settings reported or received as estimated.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–1, Departure Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–1, Landing Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–10, Approach Information.

2–7–2. ALTIMETER SETTING ISSUANCE BELOW LOWEST USABLE FL

a. *TERMINAL.* Identify the source of an altimeter setting when issued for a location other than the aircraft's departure or destination airport.

b. *EN ROUTE.* Identify the source of all altimeter settings when issued.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(If the altimeter is one hour old or less),
THE (facility name) ALTIMETER (setting).

or

(If the altimeter is more than one hour old),
THE (facility name) ALTIMETER (setting) MORE THAN ONE HOUR OLD.

c. Issue the altimeter setting:

1. To en route aircraft at least one time while operating in your area of jurisdiction. Issue the setting for the nearest reporting station along the aircraft's route of flight:

NOTE–
14 CFR Section 91.121(1) requires that the pilot set his/her altimeter to the setting of a station along his/her route of flight within 100 miles of the aircraft if one is available. However, issuance of the setting of an adjacent station during periods that a steep gradient exists will serve to inform the pilot of the difference between the setting he/she is using and the pressure in the local area and better enable him/her to choose a more advantageous setting within the limitations of 14 CFR Section 91.121.

2. *TERMINAL.* To all departures. Unless specifically requested by the pilot, the altimeter setting need not be issued to local aircraft operators who have requested this omission in writing or to scheduled air carriers.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–1, Departure Information.

3. *TERMINAL.* To arriving aircraft on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. The tower may omit the altimeter if the aircraft is sequenced or vectored to the airport by the approach control having jurisdiction at that facility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–10, Approach Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–10–2, Approach Information.

4. *EN ROUTE.* For the destination airport to arriving aircraft, approximately 50 miles from the destination, if an approach control facility does not serve the airport.

5. In addition to the altimeter setting provided on initial contact, issue changes in altimeter setting to aircraft executing a nonprecision instrument approach as frequently as practical when the official weather report includes the remarks "pressure falling rapidly."

d. If the altimeter setting must be obtained by the pilot of an arriving aircraft from another source, instruct the pilot to obtain the altimeter setting from that source.

NOTE–
1. *The destination altimeter setting, whether from a local or remote source, is the setting upon which the instrument approach is predicated.*

2. *Approach charts for many locations specify the source of altimeter settings as non–FAA facilities, such as UNICOMs.*

e. When issuing clearance to descend below the lowest usable flight level, advise the pilot of the altimeter setting of the weather reporting station nearest the point the aircraft will descend below that flight level.

f. Department of Defense (DOD) aircraft that are authorized to operate in restricted areas, MOAs, and ATC assigned airspace areas on "single altimeter settings" (CFR Exemption 2861A), must be issued altimeter settings in accordance with standard procedures while the aircraft are en route to and from the restricted areas, MOAs, and ATC assigned airspace areas.

NOTE–
The DOD is responsible for conducting all "single altimeter setting" operations within the boundaries of MOAs, restricted areas, and ATCAAs. Under an LOA, the DOD provides safe altitude clearance between DOD aircraft and other aircraft operating within, above, and below the MOAs, restricted areas, and ATCAAs with appropriate clearance of terrain.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Appendix 20, Grant of Exemption No. 2861A - Single Altimeter Setting For Frequent Transit of FL180.

g. When the barometric pressure is greater than 31.00 inches Hg., issue the altimeter setting and:

1. En Route/Arrivals. Advise pilots to remain set on altimeter 31.00 until reaching final approach segment.

2. Departures. Advise pilots to set altimeter 31.00 prior to reaching any mandatory/crossing altitude or 1,500 feet AGL, whichever is lower.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ALTIMETER, THREE ONE TWO FIVE, SET THREE ONE ZERO ZERO UNTIL REACHING THE FINAL APPROACH FIX.

or

ALTIMETER, THREE ONE ONE ZERO, SET THREE ONE ZERO ZERO PRIOR TO REACHING ONE THOUSAND THREE HUNDRED.

NOTE–
1. *Aircraft with Mode C altitude reporting will be displayed on the controller's radar scope with a uniform altitude offset above the assigned altitude. With an actual altimeter of 31.28 inches Hg, the Mode C equipped aircraft will show 3,300 feet when assigned 3,000 feet. This will occur unless local directives authorize entering the altimeter setting 31.00 into the computer system regardless of the actual barometric pressure.*

2. *Flight Standards will implement high barometric pressure procedures by NOTAM defining the geographic area affected.*

3. *Airports unable to accurately measure barometric pressures above 31.00 inches Hg. will report the barometric pressure as "missing" or "in excess of 31.00 inches of Hg." Flight operations to or from those airports are restricted to VFR weather conditions.*

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7−2−2, Procedures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−1, Landing Information.

Section 8. Runway Visibility Reporting− Terminal

2−8−1. FURNISH RVR/RVV VALUES

Where RVR or RVV equipment is operational, irrespective of subsequent operation or nonoperation of navigational or visual aids for the application of RVR/RVV as a takeoff or landing minima, furnish the values for the runway in use in accordance with para 2−8−3, Terminology.

NOTE−
Readout capability of different type/model RVR equipment varies. For example, older equipment minimum readout value is 600 feet. Newer equipment may have minimum readout capability as low as 100 feet. Readout value increments also may differ. Older equipment have minimum readout increments of 200 feet. New equipment increments below 800 feet are 100 feet.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 6560.10, Runway Visual Range (RVR).
FAAO 6750.24, Instrument Landing System (ILS) and Ancillary Electronic Component Configuration & Perf. Req.

2−8−2. ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE RUNWAY VISIBILITY

a. Issue current touchdown RVR/RVV for the runway(s) in use:

1. When prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less regardless of the value indicated.

2. When RVR/RVV indicates a reportable value regardless of the prevailing visibility.

NOTE−
Reportable values are: RVR 6,000 feet or less; RVV $1^1/_2$ miles or less.

3. When it is determined from a reliable source that the indicated RVR value differs by more than 400 feet from the actual conditions within the area of the transmissometer, the RVR data is not acceptable and must not be reported.

NOTE−
A reliable source is considered to be a certified weather observer, automated weather observing system, air traffic controller, flight service specialist, or pilot.

4. When the observer has reliable reports, or has otherwise determined that the instrument values are not representative of the associated runway, the data must not be used.

b. Issue both mid-point and roll-out RVR when the value of either is less than 2,000 feet and the touchdown RVR is greater than the mid−point or roll−out RVR.

c. Local control must issue the current RVR/RVV to each aircraft prior to landing or departure in accordance with subparas a and b.

2−8−3. TERMINOLOGY

a. Provide RVR/RVV information by stating the runway, the abbreviation RVR/RVV, and the indicated value. When issued along with other weather elements, transmit these values in the normal sequence used for weather reporting.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway One Four RVR Two Thousand Four Hundred."

"Runway Three Two RVV Three Quarters."

b. When two or more RVR systems serve the runway in use, report the indicated values for the different systems in terms of touchdown, mid, and rollout as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two Two Left RVR Two Thousand, rollout One Thousand Eight Hundred."

"Runway Two Seven Right RVR One Thousand, mid Eight Hundred, rollout Six Hundred."

c. When there is a requirement to issue an RVR or RVV value and a visibility condition greater or less than the reportable values of the equipment is indicated, state the condition as "MORE THAN" or "LESS THAN" the appropriate minimum or maximum readable value.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Three Six RVR more than Six Thousand."

"Runway Niner RVR One Thousand, rollout less than Six Hundred."

d. When a readout indicates a rapidly varying visibility condition (1,000 feet or more for RVR; one or more reportable values for RVV), report the current value followed by the range of visibility variance.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two Four RVR Two Thousand, variable One Thousand Six Hundred to Three Thousand."

"Runway Three One RVV Three-quarters, variable One-quarter to One."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−8−1, Furnish RVR/RVV Values.

Section 9. Automatic Terminal Information Service Procedures

2–9–1. APPLICATION

Use the ATIS, where available, to provide advance noncontrol airport/terminal area and meteorological information to aircraft.

a. Identify each ATIS message by a phonetic letter code word at both the beginning and the end of the message. Automated systems will have the phonetic letter code automatically appended. Exceptions may be made where omissions are required because of special programs or equipment.

1. Each alphabet letter phonetic word must be used sequentially, except as authorized in subpara a2, beginning with "Alpha," ending with "Zulu," and repeated without regard to the beginning of a new day. Identify the first resumed broadcast message with "Alpha" or the first assigned alphabet letter word in the event of a broadcast interruption of more than 12 hours.

2. Specific sequential portions of the alphabet may be assigned between facilities or an arrival and departure ATIS when designated by a letter of agreement or facility directive.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–4–1, Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS).

b. The ATIS recording must be reviewed for completeness, accuracy, speech rate, and proper enunciation before being transmitted.

c. Arrival and departure messages, when broadcast separately, need only contain information appropriate for that operation.

2–9–2. OPERATING PROCEDURES

Maintain an ATIS message that reflects the most current arrival and departure information.

a. Make a new recording when any of the following occur:

1. Upon receipt of any new official weather regardless of whether there is or is not a change in values.

2. When runway braking action reports are received that indicate runway braking is worse than that which is included in the current ATIS broadcast.

3. When there is a change in any other pertinent data, such as runway change, instrument approach in use, new or canceled NOTAMs/PIREPs/HIWAS update, etc.

b. When a pilot acknowledges that he/she has received the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained in the broadcasts if they are current. Rapidly changing conditions will be issued by ATC, and the ATIS will contain the following:

EXAMPLE–
"Latest ceiling/visibility/altimeter/wind/(other conditions) will be issued by approach control/tower."

c. Broadcast on all appropriate frequencies to advise aircraft of a change in the ATIS code/message.

d. Controllers must ensure that pilots receive the most current pertinent information. Ask the pilot to confirm receipt of the current ATIS information if the pilot does not initially state the appropriate ATIS code. Controllers must ensure that changes to pertinent operational information is provided after the initial confirmation of ATIS information is established. Issue the current weather, runway in use, approach information, and pertinent NOTAMs to pilots who are unable to receive the ATIS.

EXAMPLE–
"Verify you have information ALPHA."

"Information BRAVO now current, visibility three miles."

"Information CHARLIE now current, Ceiling 1500 Broken."

"Information CHARLIE now current, advise when you have CHARLIE."

2−9−3. CONTENT

Include the following in ATIS broadcast as appropriate:

a. Airport/facility name, phonetic letter code, time of weather sequence (UTC). Weather information consisting of wind direction and velocity, visibility, obstructions to vision, present weather, sky condition, temperature, dew point, altimeter, a density altitude advisory when appropriate and other pertinent remarks included in the official weather observation. Wind direction, velocity, and altimeter must be reported from certified direct reading instruments. Temperature and dew point should be reported from certified direct reading sensors when available. Always include weather observation remarks of lightning, cumulonimbus, and towering cumulus clouds.

NOTE−
ASOS/AWOS is to be considered the primary source of wind direction, velocity, and altimeter data for weather observation purposes at those locations that are so equipped. The ASOS Operator Interface Device (OID) displays the magnetic wind as "MAG WND" in the auxiliary data location in the lower left−hand portion of the screen. Other OID displayed winds are true and are not to be used for operational purposes.

b. Man−Portable Air Defense Systems (MANPADS) alert and advisory. Specify the nature and location of threat or incident, whether reported or observed and by whom, time (if known), and notification to pilots to advise ATC if they need to divert.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS threat reported by TSA, Chicago area." "Advise on initial contact if you want to divert."*

2. *"MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS attack observed by tower one−half mile northwest of airfield at one−two−five−zero Zulu." "Advise on initial contact if you want to divert."*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−13, MANPADS Alert.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−9, Handling MANPADS Incidents.

c. Terminal facilities must include reported unauthorized laser illumination events on the ATIS broadcast for one hour following the last report. Include the time, location, altitude, color, and direction of the laser as reported by the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY−
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, (UTC time), (location), (altitude), (color), (direction).

EXAMPLE−
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, AT 0100z, 8 MILE FINAL RUNWAY 18R AT 3,000 FEET, GREEN LASER FROM THE SOUTHWEST.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−14, Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−27, Reporting Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft.

d. The ceiling/sky condition, visibility, and obstructions to vision may be omitted if the ceiling is above 5,000 feet and the visibility is more than 5 miles.

EXAMPLE−
A remark may be made, "The weather is better than five thousand and five."

e. Instrument/visual approach/es in use. Specify landing runway/s unless the runway is that to which the instrument approach is made. Before advertising non-precision approaches, priority should be given to available precision, then APV approaches.

f. Departure runway/s (to be given only if different from landing runway/s or in the instance of a "departure only" ATIS).

g. Taxiway closures which affect the entrance or exit of active runways, other closures which impact airport operations, other NOTAMs and PIREPs pertinent to operations in the terminal area. Inform pilots of where hazardous weather is occurring and how the information may be obtained. Include available information of known bird activity.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−22, Bird Activity Information.

h. When a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, ensure that the word "WARNING" prefaces the runway number, and that the word "shortened" is also included in the text of the message.

1. Available runway length, as stated in the NOTAM, must be included in the ATIS broadcast. This information must be broadcast for the duration of the construction project.

2. For permanently shortened runways, facilities must continue to broadcast this information for a minimum of 30 days or until the Chart Supplement U.S. has been updated, whichever is longer.

PHRASEOLOGY−
WARNING, RUNWAY (number) HAS BEEN SHORTENED, (length in feet) FEET AVAILABLE.

EXAMPLE−
"Warning, Runway One-Zero has been shortened, niner-thousand eight hundred and fifty feet available."

i. Runway braking action or friction reports when provided. Include the time of the report and a word describing the cause of the runway friction problem.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) MU (first value, second value, third value) AT (time), (cause).

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two Seven, MU forty−two, forty−one, twenty−eight at one zero one eight Zulu, ice."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−5, Braking Action Advisories.

j. Other optional information as local conditions dictate in coordination with ATC. This may include such items as VFR arrival frequencies, temporary airport conditions, LAHSO operations being conducted, or other perishable items that may appear only for a matter of hours or a few days on the ATIS message.

k. Low level wind shear/microburst when reported by pilots or is detected on a wind shear detection system.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−8, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.

l. A statement which advises the pilot to read back instructions to hold short of a runway. The air traffic manager may elect to remove this requirement 60 days after implementation provided that removing the statement from the ATIS does not result in increased requests from aircraft for read back of hold short instructions.

m. Instructions for the pilot to acknowledge receipt of the ATIS message by informing the controller on initial contact.

EXAMPLE−
"Boston Tower Information Delta. One four zero zero Zulu. Wind two five zero at one zero. Visibility one zero. Ceiling four thousand five hundred broken. Temperature three four. Dew point two eight. Altimeter three zero one zero. ILS−DME Runway Two Seven Approach in use. Departing Runway Two Two Right. Hazardous Weather Information for (geographical area) available on HIWAS or Flight Service Frequencies. Advise on initial contact you have Delta."

Section 10. Team Position Responsibilities

2−10−1. EN ROUTE OR OCEANIC SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. En Route or Oceanic Sector Team Concept and Intent: There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that sector.

b. *Terms.* The following terms will be used in en route facilities for the purpose of standardization:

1. *Sector.* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace) of the en route sector team, and the team as a whole.

2. *Radar Position (R).* That position which is in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses radar information as the primary means of separation.

3. *Radar Associate (RA).* That position sometimes referred to as "D−Side" or "Manual Controller."

4. *Radar Coordinator Position (RC).* That position sometimes referred to as "Coordinator," "Tracker," or "Handoff Controller" (En Route).

5. *Radar Flight Data (FD).* That position commonly referred to as "Assistant Controller" or "A−Side" position.

6. *Nonradar Position (NR).* That position which is usually in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses nonradar procedures as the primary means of separation.

c. Primary responsibilities of the En Route Sector Team Positions:

1. ***Radar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate automated handoffs.

(e) Assist the radar associate position with nonautomated handoff actions when needed.

(f) Assist the radar associate position in coordination when needed.

(g) Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information or EDST data, as applicable.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(i) Ensure strip marking and/or electronic flight data entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(j) Adjust equipment at radar position to be usable by all members of the team.

(k) The radar controller must not be responsible for G/G communications when precluded by VSCS split functionality.

(l) At ERAM facilities, ensure the situation display accurately reflects the status of all SAAs that impact their area of control responsibility.

2. ***Radar Associate Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Where available, use EDST to plan, organize, and expedite the flow of traffic.

(c) Initiate control instructions.

(d) Operate interphones.

(e) Accept and initiate nonautomated handoffs, and ensure radar position is made aware of the actions.

(f) Assist the radar position by accepting or initiating automated handoffs which are necessary for the continued smooth operation of the sector, and ensure that the radar position is made immediately aware of any action taken.

(g) Coordinate, including pointouts.

(h) Monitor radios when not performing higher priority duties.

(i) Scan flight progress strips and/or EDST data. Correlate with radar data.

(j) Manage flight progress strips and/or electronic flight data.

(k) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions issued or received. Enter instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of those instructions.

(l) As appropriate, ensure strip marking and/or EDST data entries are completed on instructions issued or received, and record instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of them.

(m) Adjust equipment at radar associate position to be usable by all members of the team.

(n) Where authorized, perform EDST data entries to keep the activation status of designated Airspace Configuration Elements current.

(o) At ERAM facilities, scan the radar associate display for electronically distributed information, evaluate the information, and take action as appropriate.

3. ***Radar Coordinator Position:***

(a) Perform interfacility/intrafacility/sector/position coordination of traffic actions.

(b) Advise the radar position and the radar associate position of sector actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the en route sector team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

(d) The RC controller must not be responsible for monitoring or operating radios when precluded by VSCS split functionality.

NOTE–
The Radar Position has the responsibility for managing the overall sector operations, including aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Radar Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Radar Position retains responsibility for aircraft separation when the Radar Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. ***Radar Flight Data:***

(a) Operate interphone.

(b) Assist Radar Associate Position in managing flight progress strips.

(c) Receive/process and distribute flight progress strips.

(d) Ensure flight data processing equipment is operational, except for EDST capabilities.

(e) Request/receive and disseminate weather, NOTAMs, NAS status, traffic management, and Special Use Airspace status messages.

(f) Manually prepare flight progress strips when automation systems are not available.

(g) Enter flight data into computer.

(h) Forward flight data via computer.

(i) Assist facility/sector in meeting situation objectives.

5. ***En Route Nonradar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate transfer of control, communications, and flight data.

(e) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(f) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(g) Facilities utilizing nonradar positions may modify the standards contained in the radar associate, radar coordinator, and radar flight data sections to accommodate facility/sector needs, i.e., nonradar coordinator, nonradar data positions.

2–10–2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. *Terminal Radar Team Concept and Intent:* There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.

b. *Terms.* The following terms will be used in terminal facilities for the purposes of standardization.

1. *Facility/Sector.* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace) of the radar team, and the team as a whole.

2. *Radar Position (R).* That position which is in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses radar information as the primary means of separation.

3. *Radar Associate Position (RA).* That position commonly referred to as "Handoff Controller" or "Radar Data Controller."

4. *Radar Coordinator Position (RC).* That position commonly referred to as "Coordinator," "Tracker," "Sequencer," or "Overhead."

5. *Radar Flight Data (FD).* That position commonly referred to as "Flight Data."

6. *Nonradar Position (NR).* That position which is usually in direct communication with the aircraft and which uses nonradar procedures as the primary means of separation.

c. Primary Responsibilities of the Terminal Radar Team Positions:

1. ***Radar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate automated handoffs.

(e) Assist the Radar Associate Position with nonautomated handoff actions when needed.

(f) Assist the Radar Associate Position in coordination when needed.

(g) Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.

(j) Adjust equipment at Radar Position to be usable by all members of the team.

2. ***Radar Associate Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Operate interphones.

(d) Maintain awareness of facility/sector activities.

(e) Accept and initiate nonautomated handoffs.

(f) Assist the Radar Position by accepting or initiating automated handoffs which are necessary for the continued smooth operation of the facility/sector and ensure that the Radar Position is made immediately aware of any actions taken.

(g) Coordinate, including point outs.

(h) Scan flight progress strips. Correlate with radar data.

(i) Manage flight progress strips.

(j) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions issued or received, and enter instructions issued or received by the Radar Position when aware of those instructions.

(k) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions issued or received, and write instructions issued or received by the Radar Position when aware of them.

(l) Adjust equipment at Radar Associate Position to be usable by all members of the Radar Team.

3. ***Radar Coordinator Position:***

(a) Perform interfacility/sector/position coordination of traffic actions.

(b) Advise the Radar Position and the Radar Associate Position of facility/sector actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the Radar Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

NOTE−
The Radar Position has the responsibility of managing the overall sector operations, including aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Radar Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Radar Position retains responsibility for aircraft separation when the Radar Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. ***Radar Flight Data:***

(a) Operate interphones.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Compile statistical data.

(d) Assist facility/sector in meeting situation objectives.

5. ***Terminal Nonradar Position:***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate radios.

(d) Accept and initiate transfer of control, communications and flight data.

(e) Ensure computer entries are completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(f) Ensure strip marking is completed on instructions or clearances issued or received.

(g) Facilities utilizing nonradar positions may modify the standards contained in the radar associate, radar coordinator, and radar flight data sections to accommodate facility/sector needs, i.e., nonradar coordinator, nonradar data positions.

2−10−3. TOWER TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

a. *Tower Team Concept and Intent:* There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.

b. *Terms:* The following terms will be used in terminal facilities for the purpose of standardization.

1. *Tower Cab:* The area of control responsibility (delegated airspace and/or airport surface areas) of the tower team, and the team as a whole.

2. *Tower Position(s) (LC or GC):* That position which is in direct communications with the aircraft and ensures separation of aircraft in/on the area of jurisdiction.

3. *Tower Associate Position(s):* That position commonly referred to as "Local Assist," "Ground Assist," "Local Associate," or "Ground Associate."

4. *Tower Cab Coordinator Position (CC):* That position commonly referred to as "Coordinator."

5. *Flight Data (FD):* That position commonly referred to as "Flight Data."

6. *Clearance Delivery (CD):* That position commonly referred to as "Clearance."

c. Primary responsibilities of the Tower Team Positions:

1. ***Tower Position(s) (LC or GC):***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Initiate control instructions.

(c) Monitor and operate communications equipment.

(d) Utilize tower radar display(s).

(e) Utilize alphanumerics.

(f) Assist the Tower Associate Position with coordination.

(g) Scan tower cab environment.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed for instructions or clearances issued or received.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed for instructions or clearances issued or received.

(j) Process and forward flight plan information.

(k) Perform any functions of the Tower Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

2. ***Tower Associate Position(s):***

(a) Ensure separation.

(b) Operate interphones.

(c) Maintain awareness of tower cab activities.

(d) Utilize alphanumerics.

(e) Utilize tower radar display(s).

(f) Assist Tower Position by accepting/ initiating coordination for the continued smooth operation of the tower cab and ensure that the Tower Position is made immediately aware of any actions taken.

(g) Manage flight plan information.

(h) Ensure computer entries are completed for instructions issued or received and enter instructions issued or received by a Tower Position.

(i) Ensure strip marking is completed for instructions issued or received and enter instructions issued or received by a Tower Position.

3. ***Tower Coordinator Position:***

(a) Perform interfacility/position coordination for traffic actions.

(b) Advise the tower and the Tower Associate Position(s) of tower cab actions required to accomplish overall objectives.

(c) Perform any of the functions of the Tower Team which will assist in meeting situation objectives.

NOTE−
The Tower Positions have the responsibility for aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Tower Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Tower Positions retain responsibility for aircraft separation when the Tower Coordinator Position is staffed.

4. ***Flight Data:***

(a) Operate interphones.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Compile statistical data.

(d) Assist tower cab in meeting situation objectives.

(e) Observe and report weather information.

(f) Utilize alphanumerics.

5. ***Clearance Delivery:***

(a) Operate communications equipment.

(b) Process and forward flight plan information.

(c) Issue clearances and ensure accuracy of pilot read back.

(d) Assist tower cab in meeting situation objectives.

(e) Operate tower equipment.

(f) Utilize alphanumerics.

NOTE−
The Tower Positions have the responsibility for aircraft separation and traffic flows. The Tower Coordinator Position assumes responsibility for managing traffic flows and the Tower Positions retain responsibility for aircraft separation when the Tower Coordinator Position is staffed.

Chapter 3. Airport Traffic Control– Terminal

Section 1. General

3–1–1. PROVIDE SERVICE

Provide airport traffic control service based only upon observed or known traffic and airport conditions.

NOTE–
When operating in accordance with CFRs, it is the responsibility of the pilot to avoid collision with other aircraft. However, due to the limited space around terminal locations, traffic information can aid pilots in avoiding collision between aircraft operating within Class B, Class C, or Class D surface areas and the terminal radar service areas, and transiting aircraft operating in proximity to terminal locations.

3–1–2. PREVENTIVE CONTROL

Provide preventive control service only to aircraft operating in accordance with a letter of agreement. When providing this service, issue advice or instructions only if a situation develops which requires corrective action.

NOTE–
1. *Preventive control differs from other airport traffic control in that repetitious, routine approval of pilot action is eliminated. Controllers intervene only when they observe a traffic conflict developing.*

2. *Airfield Operating instructions, Memorandums of Understanding, or other specific directives used exclusively by the Department of Defense (DOD) satisfies the criteria in Paragraph 3-1-2 above.*

3–1–3. USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS

The local controller has primary responsibility for operations conducted on the active runway and must control the use of those runways. Positive coordination and control is required as follows:

NOTE–
Exceptions may be authorized only as provided in para 1–1–11, Constraints Governing Supplements and Procedural Deviations, and FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, para 10–1–7, Use of Active Runways, where justified by extraordinary circumstances at specific locations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1–1–11, Constraints Governing Supplements and Procedural Deviations.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–1–7, Use of Active Runways.

a. Ground control must obtain approval from local control before authorizing an aircraft or a vehicle to cross or use any portion of an active runway. The coordination must include the point/intersection at the runway where the operation will occur.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS (runway) AT (point/intersection).

b. When the local controller authorizes another controller to cross an active runway, the local controller must verbally specify the runway to be crossed and the point/intersection at the runway where the operation will occur preceded by the word "cross."

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS (runway) AT (point/intersection).

c. The ground controller must advise the local controller when the coordinated runway operation is complete. This may be accomplished verbally or through visual aids as specified by a facility directive.

d. *USA/USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE.* Authorization for aircraft/vehicles to taxi/proceed on or along an active runway, for purposes other than crossing, must be provided via direct communications on the appropriate local control frequency. This authorization may be provided on the ground control frequency after coordination with local control is completed for those operations specifically described in a facility directive.

NOTE–
The USA, USAF, and USN establish local operating procedures in accordance with, respectively, USA, USAF, and USN directives.

e. The local controller must coordinate with the ground controller before using a runway not previously designated as active.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–4, Coordination Between Local and Ground Controllers.

3–1–4. COORDINATION BETWEEN LOCAL AND GROUND CONTROLLERS

Local and ground controllers must exchange information as necessary for the safe and efficient use of airport runways and movement areas. This may be accomplished via verbal means, flight progress strips, other written information, or automation displays. As a minimum, provide aircraft identification and applicable runway/intersection/taxiway information as follows:

a. Ground control must notify local control when a departing aircraft has been taxied to a runway other than one previously designated as active.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–3, Use of Active Runways.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–1–6, Selecting Active Runways.

b. Ground control must notify local control of any aircraft taxied to an intersection for takeoff. This notification may be accomplished by verbal means or by flight progress strips.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.

c. When the runways in use for landing/departing aircraft are not visible from the tower or the aircraft using them are not visible on radar, advise the local/ground controller of the aircraft's location before releasing the aircraft to the other controller.

3–1–5. VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS

a. Ensure that the runway to be used is free of all known ground vehicles, equipment, and personnel before a departing aircraft starts takeoff or a landing aircraft crosses the runway threshold.

b. Vehicles, equipment, and personnel in direct communications with the control tower may be authorized to operate up to the edge of an active runway surface when necessary. Provide advisories as specified in para 3–1–6, Traffic Information, and para 3–7–5, Precision Approach Critical Area, as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PROCEED AS REQUESTED; (and if necessary, additional instructions or information).

NOTE–
Establishing hold lines/signs is the responsibility of the airport manager. Standards for surface measurements, markings, and signs are contained in the following Advisory Circulars; AC 150/5300–13, Airport Design; AC 150/5340–1, Standards for Airport Markings, and AC 150/5340–18, Standards for Airport Sign Systems. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3–1–12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–7–4, Runway Proximity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–8–2, Touch-and-Go or Stop-and-Go or Low Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.
AC 150/5300–13, Airport Design.
AC 150/5340–1G, Standards for Airport Markings.
14 CFR Section 91.129, Operations in Class D Airspace.
AIM, Para 2–2–3, Obstruction Lights.
P/CG Term– Runway in Use/Active Runway/Duty Runway.

3–1–6. TRAFFIC INFORMATION

a. Describe vehicles, equipment, or personnel on or near the movement area in a manner which will assist pilots in recognizing them.

EXAMPLE–
"Mower left of runway two seven."
"Trucks crossing approach end of runway two five."
"Workman on taxiway Bravo."
"Aircraft left of runway one eight."

b. Describe the relative position of traffic in an easy to understand manner, such as "to your right" or "ahead of you."

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, U.S. Air MD–Eighty on downwind leg to your left."
"King Air inbound from outer marker on straight-in approach to runway one seven."

c. When using a CTRD, you may issue traffic advisories using the standard radar phraseology prescribed in para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

3–1–7. POSITION DETERMINATION

Determine the position of an aircraft before issuing taxi instructions or takeoff clearance.

NOTE–
The aircraft's position may be determined visually by the controller, by pilots, or through the use of the ASDE.

3−1−8. LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR/ MICROBURST ADVISORIES

a. When low level wind shear/microburst is reported by pilots, Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS), or detected on wind shear detection systems such as LLWAS NE++, LLWAS−RS, WSP, or TDWR, controllers must issue the alert to all arriving and departing aircraft. Continue the alert to aircraft until it is broadcast on the ATIS and pilots indicate they have received the appropriate ATIS code. A statement must be included on the ATIS for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of the wind shear/microburst.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LOW LEVEL WIND SHEAR (or MICROBURST, as appropriate) ADVISORIES IN EFFECT.

NOTE−
Some aircraft are equipped with Predictive Wind Shear (PWS) alert systems that warn the flight crew of a potential wind shear up to 3 miles ahead and 25 degrees either side of the aircraft heading at or below 1200' AGL. Pilot reports may include warnings received from PWS systems.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−3, PIREP Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−9−3, Content.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−1, Landing Information.

b. At facilities without ATIS, ensure that wind shear/microburst information is broadcast to all arriving and departing aircraft for 20 minutes following the last report or indication of wind shear/microburst.

1. At locations equipped with LLWAS, the local controller must provide wind information as follows:

NOTE−
The LLWAS is designed to detect low level wind shear conditions around the periphery of an airport. It does not detect wind shear beyond that limitation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−3−3, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Detection Systems.

(a) If an alert is received, issue the airport wind and the displayed field boundary wind.

PHRASEOLOGY−
WIND SHEAR ALERT. AIRPORT WIND (direction) AT (velocity). (Location of sensor) BOUNDARY WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(b) If multiple alerts are received, issue an advisory that there are wind shear alerts in two/several/all quadrants. After issuing the advisory, issue the airport wind in accordance with para 3−9−1, Departure Information, followed by the field boundary wind most appropriate to the aircraft operation.

PHRASEOLOGY−
WIND SHEAR ALERTS TWO/SEVERAL/ALL QUADRANTS. AIRPORT WIND (direction) AT (velocity). (Location of sensor) BOUNDARY WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(c) If requested by the pilot, issue specific field boundary wind information even though the LLWAS may not be in alert status.

NOTE−
The requirements for issuance of wind information remain valid as appropriate under this paragraph, para 3−9−1, Departure Information and para 3−10−1, Landing Information.

2. Wind shear detection systems, including TDWR, WSP, LLWAS NE++ and LLWAS−RS provide the capability of displaying microburst alerts, wind shear alerts, and wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of a runway. When detected, the associated ribbon display allows the controller to read the displayed alert without any need for interpretation.

(a) If a wind shear or microburst alert is received for the runway in use, issue the alert information for that runway to arriving and departing aircraft as it is displayed on the ribbon display.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Runway) (arrival/departure) WIND SHEAR/ MICROBURST ALERT, (windspeed) KNOT GAIN/LOSS, (location).

EXAMPLE−
17A MBA 40K − 3MF

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 17 ARRIVAL MICROBURST ALERT 40 KNOT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL.

EXAMPLE−
17D WSA 25K+ 2MD

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 17 DEPARTURE WIND SHEAR ALERT 25 KNOT GAIN 2 MILE DEPARTURE.

(b) If requested by the pilot or deemed appropriate by the controller, issue the displayed wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of the runway.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Runway) DEPARTURE/THRESHOLD WIND (direction) AT (velocity).

(c) LLWAS NE++ or LLWAS−RS may detect a possible wind shear/microburst at the edge of the system but may be unable to distinguish between a wind shear and a microburst. A wind shear alert message will be displayed, followed by an asterisk, advising of a possible wind shear outside of the system network.

NOTE−
LLWAS NE++ when associated with TDWR can detect wind shear/microbursts outside the network if the TDWR fails.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Appropriate wind or alert information) POSSIBLE WIND SHEAR OUTSIDE THE NETWORK.

(d) If unstable conditions produce multiple alerts, issue an advisory of multiple wind shear/ microburst alerts followed by specific alert or wind information most appropriate to the aircraft operation.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR/MICROBURST ALERTS (specific alert or wind information).

(e) The LLWAS NE++ and LLWAS−RS are designed to operate with as many as 50 percent of the total sensors inoperative. When all three remote sensors designated for a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line are inoperative then the LLWAS NE++ and LLWAS−RS for that runway arrival/departure must be considered out of service. When a specific runway arrival or departure wind display line is inoperative and wind shear/microburst activity is likely; (for example, frontal activity, convective storms, PIREPs), the following statement must be included on the ATIS, "WIND SHEAR AND MICROBURST INFORMATION FOR RUNWAY (runway number) ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE NOT AVAILABLE."

NOTE−
The geographic situation display (GSD) is a supervisory planning tool and is not intended to be a primary tool for microburst or wind shear.

c. Wind Shear Escape Procedures.

1. If an aircraft under your control informs you that it is performing a wind shear escape, do not issue control instructions that are contrary to pilot actions. ATC should continue to provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstacles and traffic advisories for the escape aircraft, as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
"Denver Tower, United 1154, wind shear escape."

NOTE−
Aircraft that execute a wind shear escape maneuver will usually conduct a full power climb straight ahead and will not accept any control instructions until onboard systems advise the crew or the pilot in command (PIC) advises ATC that the escape maneuver is no longer required.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term – Wind Shear Escape

2. Unless advised by additional aircraft that they are also performing an escape procedure, do not presume that other aircraft in the proximity of the escape aircraft are responding to wind shear alerts/events as well. Continue to provide control instructions, safety alerts, and traffic advisories, as appropriate.

3. Once the responding aircraft has initiated a wind shear escape maneuver, the controller is not responsible for providing approved separation between the aircraft that is responding to an escape and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain, or obstacle. Responsibility for approved separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

(a) Departures:

(1) A crew member informs ATC that the wind shear escape maneuver is complete and ATC observes that approved separation has been re-established, or

(2) A crew member informs ATC that the escape maneuver is complete and has resumed a previously assigned departure clearance/routing.

(b) Arrivals:

(1) A crew member informs ATC that the escape maneuver is complete, and

(2) The aircrew has executed an alternate clearance or requested further instructions.

NOTE−
When the escape procedure is complete, the flight crew must advise ATC they are returning to their previously assigned clearance or request further instructions.

EXAMPLE−
"Denver Tower, United 1154, wind shear escape complete, resuming last assigned heading/(name) DP/clearance."

Or

"Denver Tower, United 1154, wind shear escape complete, request further instructions."

3−1−9. USE OF TOWER RADAR DISPLAYS

a. Uncertified tower display workstations must be used only as an aid to assist controllers in visually locating aircraft or in determining their spatial relationship to known geographical points. Radar services and traffic advisories are not to be provided using uncertified tower display workstations. General information may be given in an easy to understand manner, such as "to your right" or "ahead of you."

EXAMPLE−
"Follow the aircraft ahead of you passing the river at the stacks." "King Air passing left to right."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−5−3, Functional Use of Certified Tower Radar Displays.

b. Local controllers may use certified tower radar displays for the following purposes:

1. To determine an aircraft's identification, exact location, or spatial relationship to other aircraft.

NOTE−
This authorization does not alter visual separation procedures. When employing visual separation, the provisions of para 7−2−1, Visual Separation, apply unless otherwise authorized by the Vice President of Terminal Service.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−2, Primary Radar Identification Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−4, Terminal Automation Systems Identification Methods.

2. To provide aircraft with radar traffic advisories.

3. To provide a direction or suggested headings to VFR aircraft as a method for radar identification or as an advisory aid to navigation.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification), PROCEED (direction)−BOUND, (other instructions or information as necessary),

or

(identification), SUGGESTED HEADING (degrees), (other instructions as necessary).

NOTE−
It is important that the pilot be aware of the fact that the directions or headings being provided are suggestions or are advisory in nature. This is to keep the pilot from being inadvertently misled into assuming that radar vectors (and other associated radar services) are being provided when, in fact, they are not.

4. To provide information and instructions to aircraft operating within the surface area for which the tower has responsibility.

EXAMPLE−
"TURN BASE LEG NOW."

NOTE−
Unless otherwise authorized, tower radar displays are intended to be an aid to local controllers in meeting their responsibilities to the aircraft operating on the runways or within the surface area. They are not intended to provide radar benefits to pilots except for those accrued through a more efficient and effective local control position. In addition, local controllers at nonapproach control towers must devote the majority of their time to visually scanning the runways and local area; an assurance of continued positive radar identification could place distracting and operationally inefficient requirements upon the local controller. Therefore, since the requirements of para 5−3−1, Application, cannot be assured, the radar functions prescribed above are not considered to be radar services and pilots should not be advised of being in "radar contact."

c. Additional functions may be performed provided the procedures have been reviewed and authorized by appropriate management levels.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4, Minima.

3−1−10. OBSERVED ABNORMALITIES

When requested by a pilot or when you deem it necessary, inform an aircraft of any observed abnormal aircraft condition.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Item) APPEAR/S (observed condition).

EXAMPLE−
"Landing gear appears up."
"Landing gear appears down and in place."
"Rear baggage door appears open."

3−1−11. SURFACE AREA RESTRICTIONS

a. If traffic conditions permit, approve a pilot's request to cross Class C or Class D surface areas or exceed the Class C or Class D airspace speed limit. Do not, however, approve a speed in excess of 250 knots (288 mph) unless the pilot informs you a higher minimum speed is required.

NOTE−
14 CFR Section 91.117 permits speeds in excess of

250 knots (288 mph) when so required or recommended in the airplane flight manual or required by normal military operating procedures.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–16, Surface Areas.

b. Do not approve a pilot's request or ask a pilot to conduct unusual maneuvers within surface areas of Class B, C, or D airspace if they are not essential to the performance of the flight.

EXCEPTION. A pilot's request to conduct aerobatic practice activities may be approved, when operating in accordance with a letter of agreement, and the activity will have no adverse effect on safety of the air traffic operation or result in a reduction of service to other users.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–4–7, Aerobatic Practice Areas.

NOTE–
These unusual maneuvers include unnecessary low passes, unscheduled flybys, practice instrument approaches to altitudes below specified minima (unless a landing or touch-and-go is to be made), or any so-called "buzz jobs" wherein a flight is conducted at a low altitude and/or a high rate of speed for thrill purposes. Such maneuvers increase hazards to persons and property and contribute to noise complaints.

3–1–12. VISUALLY SCANNING RUNWAYS

a. Local controllers must visually scan runways to the maximum extent possible.

b. Ground control must assist local control in visually scanning runways, especially when runways are in close proximity to other movement areas.

3–1–13. ESTABLISHING TWO–WAY COMMUNICATIONS

Pilots are required to establish two-way radio communications before entering the Class D airspace. If the controller responds to a radio call with, "(a/c call sign) standby," radio communications have been established and the pilot can enter the Class D airspace. If workload or traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of Class D services, inform the pilot to remain outside the Class D airspace until conditions permit the services to be provided.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(A/c call sign) REMAIN OUTSIDE DELTA AIRSPACE AND STANDBY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.

3–1–14. GROUND OPERATIONS WHEN VOLCANIC ASH IS PRESENT

When volcanic ash is present on the airport surface, and to the extent possible:

a. Avoid requiring aircraft to come to a full stop while taxiing.

b. Provide for a rolling takeoff for all departures.

NOTE–
When aircraft begin a taxi or takeoff roll on ash contaminated surfaces, large amounts of volcanic ash will again become airborne. This newly airborne ash will significantly reduce visibility and will be ingested by the engines of following aircraft.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–5–9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.

3–1–15. GROUND OPERATIONS RELATED TO THREE/FOUR–HOUR TARMAC RULE

When a request is made by the pilot–in–command of an aircraft to return to the ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning area due to the Three/Four–Hour Tarmac Rule:

a. Provide the requested services as soon as operationally practical, or

b. Advise the pilot–in–command that the requested service cannot be accommodated because it would create a significant disruption to air traffic operations.

NOTE–
Facility procedures, including actions that constitute a significant disruption, vary by airport and must be identified in the facility directive pertaining to the Three/Four–Hour Tarmac Rule.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) TAXI TO (ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning area) VIA (route).

or

(Identification) EXPECT A (number) MINUTE DELAY DUE TO (ground and/or landing and/or departing) TRAFFIC,

or

(Identification) UNABLE DUE TO OPERATIONAL DISRUPTION.

REFERENCE−
DOT Rule, Enhancing Airline Passenger Protections, 14 CFR, Part 259, commonly referred to as the Three/Four−Hour Tarmac Rule.

Section 2. Visual Signals

3−2−1. LIGHT SIGNALS

Use ATC light signals from TBL 3−2−1 to control aircraft and the movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel on the movement area when radio communications cannot be employed.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−1, Letters of Agreement.

3−2−2. WARNING SIGNAL

Direct a general warning signal, alternating red and green, to aircraft or vehicle operators, as appropriate, when:

NOTE−
The warning signal is not a prohibitive signal and can be followed by any other light signal, as circumstances permit.

a. Aircraft are converging and a collision hazard exists.

b. Mechanical trouble exists of which the pilot might not be aware.

c. Other hazardous conditions are present which call for intensified pilot or operator alertness. These conditions may include obstructions, soft field, ice on the runway, etc.

3−2−3. RECEIVER-ONLY ACKNOWLEDGMENT

To obtain acknowledgment from an aircraft equipped with receiver only, request the aircraft to do the following:

a. *Fixed-wing aircraft:*

1. Between sunrise and sunset:

(a) Move ailerons or rudders while on the ground.

(b) Rock wings while in flight.

2. Between sunset and sunrise: Flash navigation or landing lights.

b. *Helicopters:*

1. Between sunrise and sunset:

(a) While hovering, either turn the helicopter toward the controlling facility and flash the landing light or rock the tip path plane.

(b) While in flight, either flash the landing light or rock the tip path plane.

2. Between sunset and sunrise: Flash landing light or search light.

TBL 3−2−1
ATC Light Signals

	Meaning		
Color and type of signal	**Aircraft on the ground**	**Aircraft in flight**	**Movement of vehicles, equipment and personnel**
Steady green	Cleared for takeoff	Cleared to land	Cleared to cross; proceed; go
Flashing green	Cleared to taxi	Return for landing (to be followed by steady green at the proper time)	Not applicable
Steady red	Stop	Give way to other aircraft and continue circling	Stop
Flashing red	Taxi clear of landing area or runway in use	Airport unsafe− Do not land	Clear the taxiway/runway
Flashing white	Return to starting point on airport	Not applicable	Return to starting point on airport
Alternating red and green	General Warning Signal− Exercise Extreme Caution	General Warning Signal− Exercise Extreme Caution	General Warning Signal− Exercise Extreme Caution

Section 3. Airport Conditions

3–3–1. LANDING AREA CONDITION

If you observe or are informed of any condition which affects the safe use of a landing area:

NOTE–
1. *The airport management/military operations office is responsible for observing and reporting the condition of the landing area.*

2. *It is the responsibility of the agency operating the airport to provide the tower with current information regarding airport conditions.*

3. *A disabled aircraft on a runway, after occupants are clear, is normally handled by flight standards and airport management/military operations office personnel in the same manner as any obstruction; e.g., construction equipment.*

a. Relay the information to the airport manager/ military operations office concerned.

b. Copy verbatim any information received and record the name of the person submitting it.

c. Confirm information obtained from other than authorized airport or FAA personnel unless this function is the responsibility of the military operations office.

NOTE–
Civil airport managers are required to provide a list of airport employees who are authorized to issue information concerning conditions affecting the safe use of the airport.

d. If you are unable to contact the airport management or operator, issue a NOTAM publicizing an unsafe condition and inform the management or operator as soon as practicable.

EXAMPLE–
"DISABLED AIRCRAFT ON RUNWAY."

NOTE–
1. *Legally, only the airport management/military operations office can close a runway.*

2. *Military controllers are not authorized to issue NOTAMs. It is the responsibility of the military operations office.*

e. Issue to aircraft only factual information, as reported by the airport management concerning the condition of the runway surface, describing the accumulation of precipitation.

EXAMPLE–
"ALL RUNWAYS COVERED BY COMPACTED SNOW SIX INCHES DEEP."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–12, Airport Conditions.

3–3–2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION

If an aircraft requests to takeoff, land, or touch-and-go on a closed or unsafe runway, inform the pilot the runway is closed or unsafe, and

a. If the pilot persists in his/her request, quote him/her the appropriate parts of the NOTAM applying to the runway and inform him/her that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Then, if the pilot insists and in your opinion the intended operation would not adversely affect other traffic, inform him/her that the operation will be at his/her own risk.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (runway number) CLOSED/UNSAFE.

If appropriate, (quote NOTAM information),

UNABLE TO ISSUE DEPARTURE/LANDING/TOUCH–AND–GO CLEARANCE.
DEPARTURE/LANDING/TOUCH–AND–GO WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK.

c. Except as permitted by para 4–8–7, Side-step Maneuver, where parallel runways are served by separate ILS systems and one of the runways is closed, the ILS associated with the closed runway should not be used for approaches unless not using the ILS would have an adverse impact on the operational efficiency of the airport.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–5, Landing Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–12, Airport Conditions.

3–3–3. TIMELY INFORMATION

Issue airport condition information necessary for an aircraft's safe operation in time for it to be useful to the pilot. Include the following, as appropriate:

a. Construction work on or immediately adjacent to the movement area.

b. Rough portions of the movement area.

c. Braking conditions caused by ice, snow, slush, or water.

d. Snowdrifts or piles of snow on or along the edges of the area and the extent of any plowed area.

e. Parked aircraft on the movement area.

f. Irregular operation of part or all of the airport lighting system.

g. Volcanic ash on any airport surface area and whether the ash is wet or dry (if known).

NOTE−
Braking action on wet ash may be degraded. Dry ash on the runway may necessitate minimum use of reverse thrust.

h. Other pertinent airport conditions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−9, Reporting Essential Flight Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

3−3−4. BRAKING ACTION

Furnish quality of braking action, as received from pilots or the airport management, to all aircraft as follows:

a. Describe the quality of braking action using the terms "good," "fair," "poor," "nil," or a combination of these terms. If the pilot or airport management reports braking action in other than the foregoing terms, ask him/her to categorize braking action in these terms.

NOTE−
The term "nil" is used to indicate bad or no braking action.

b. Include type of aircraft or vehicle from which the report is received.

EXAMPLE−
"Braking action fair to poor, reported by a heavy D−C Ten."
"Braking action poor, reported by a Boeing Seven Twenty−Seven."

c. If the braking action report affects only a portion of a runway, obtain enough information from the pilot or airport management to describe the braking action in terms easily understood by the pilot.

EXAMPLE−
"Braking action poor first half of runway, reported by a Lockheed Ten Eleven."
"Braking action poor beyond the intersection of runway two seven, reported by a Boeing Seven Twenty−Seven."

NOTE−
Descriptive terms, such as the first or the last half of the runway, should normally be used rather than landmark descriptions, such as opposite the fire station, south of a taxiway, etc. Landmarks extraneous to the landing runway are difficult to distinguish during low visibility, at night, or anytime a pilot is busy landing an aircraft.

d. Furnish runway friction measurement readings/values as received from airport management to aircraft as follows:

1. Furnish information as received from the airport management to pilots on the ATIS at locations where friction measuring devices, such as MU−Meter, Saab Friction Tester (SFT), and Skiddometer are in use only when the MU values are 40 or less. Use the runway followed by the MU number for each of the three runway segments, time of report, and a word describing the cause of the runway friction problem. Do not issue MU values when all three segments of the runway have values reported greater than 40.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway two seven, MU forty−two, forty−one, twenty−eight at one zero one eight Zulu, ice."

2. Issue the runway surface condition and/or the Runway Condition Reading (RCR), if provided, to all USAF and ANG aircraft. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.

EXAMPLE−
"Ice on runway, RCR zero five, patchy."

NOTE−
1. *USAF has established RCR procedures for determining the average deceleration readings of runways under conditions of water, slush, ice, or snow. The use of the RCR code is dependent upon the pilot's having a "stopping capability chart" specifically applicable to his/her aircraft.*

2. *USAF offices furnish RCR information at airports serving USAF and ANG aircraft.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−5, Braking Action Advisories.

3−3−5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES

a. When runway braking action reports are received from pilots or the airport management which include the terms "fair," "poor," or "nil" or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway conditions, include on the ATIS broadcast the statement "Braking Action Advisories are in effect."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−4−1, Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS).

b. During the time Braking Action Advisories are in effect, take the following action:

1. Issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft early enough to be of benefit to the pilot. When possible, include reports from super or heavy aircraft when the arriving or departing aircraft is a super or heavy.

2. If no report has been received for the runway of intended use, issue an advisory to that effect.

PHRASEOLOGY−
NO BRAKING ACTION REPORTS RECEIVED FOR RUNWAY (runway number).

3. Advise the airport management that runway braking action reports of "fair," "poor," or "nil" have been received.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−1, Letters of Agreement.

4. Solicit PIREPs of runway braking action.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−3, PIREP Information.

c. Include runway friction measurement/values received from airport management on the ATIS. Furnish the information when requested by the pilot in accordance with para 3−3−4, Braking Action.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−9−3, Content.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−1, Departure Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−1, Landing Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.

3−3−6. ARRESTING SYSTEM OPERATION

a. For normal operations, arresting systems remotely controlled by ATC must remain in the retracted or down position.

NOTE−
1. *USN− Runway Arresting Gear− barriers are not operated by ATC personnel. Readiness/rigging of the equipment is the responsibility of the operations department.*

2. *A request to raise a barrier or hook cable means the barrier or cable on the departure end of the runway. If an approach end engagement is required, the pilot or military authority will specifically request that the approach end cable be raised.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 9, Section 3. Aircraft Arresting System, Single Frequency Approach (SFA), Simulated Flameout (SFO)/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations, Celestial Navigation (CELNAV) Training, Para 9−3−1 through Para 9−3−8.

b. Raise aircraft arresting systems whenever:

1. Requested by a pilot.

NOTE−
The standard emergency phraseology for a pilot requesting an arresting system to be raised for immediate engagement is:

"BARRIER − BARRIER − BARRIER"

or

"CABLE − CABLE − CABLE."

2. Requested by military authority; e.g., airfield manager, supervisor of flying, mobile control officer, etc.

NOTE−
USAF. Web barriers at the departure end of the runway may remain in the up position when requested by the senior operational commander. The IFR Enroute Supplement and AP-1 will describe specific barrier configuration. ATC will advise transient aircraft of the barrier configuration using the phraseology in subpara c , below.

3. A military jet aircraft is landing with known or suspected radio failure or conditions (drag chute/hydraulic/electrical failure, etc.) that indicate an arresting system may be needed. Exceptions are authorized for military aircraft which cannot engage an arresting system (C−9, C−141, C−5, T−39, etc.) and should be identified in a letter of agreement and/or appropriate military directive.

c. When requested by military authority due to freezing weather conditions or malfunction of the activating mechanism, the barrier/cable may remain in a raised position provided aircraft are advised.

PHRASEOLOGY−
YOUR DEPARTURE/LANDING WILL BE TOWARD/OVER A RAISED BARRIER/CABLE ON RUNWAY (number), (location, distance, as appropriate).

d. Inform civil and U.S. Army aircraft whenever rubber supported cables are in place at the approach end of the landing runway, and include the distance of the cables from the threshold. This information may be omitted if it is published in the "Notices to Airmen" publication/DOD FLIP.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway One Four arresting cable one thousand feet from threshold."

e. When arresting system operation has been requested, inform the pilot of the indicated barrier/cable position.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification), BARRIER/CABLE INDICATES UP/DOWN. CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF/TO LAND.

f. Time permitting, advise pilots of the availability of all arresting systems on the runway in question when a pilot requests barrier information.

g. If an aircraft engages a raised barrier/cable, initiate crash alarm procedures immediately.

h. For preplanned practice engagements not associated with emergencies, crash alarm systems need not be activated if, in accordance with local military operating procedures, all required notifications are made before the practice engagement.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.

3−3−7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT

a. To meet the demand for more facilities capable of operating under CAT III weather, Type II equipment is being upgraded to Integrity Level 3. This integrity level will support operations which place a high degree of reliance on ILS guidance for positioning through touchdown.

b. Installation of the FFM remote status indicating units is necessary to attain the integrity necessary to meet internationally agreed upon reliability values in support of CAT III operations on Type II ILS equipment. The remote status indicating unit used in conjunction with Type II equipment adds a third integrity test; thereby, producing an approach aid which has integrity capable of providing Level 3 service.

c. The remote status sensing unit, when installed in the tower cab, will give immediate indications of localizer out-of-tolerance conditions. The alarm in the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates an inoperative or an out-of-tolerance localizer signal; e.g., the course may have shifted due to equipment malfunction or vehicle/aircraft encroachment into the critical area.

d. Operation of the FFM remote sensing unit will be based on the prevailing weather. The FFM remote sensing unit must be operational when the weather is below CAT I ILS minimums.

e. When the remote status unit indicates that the localizer FFM is in alarm (aural warning following the preset delay) and:

1. The aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM) or in the absence of a MM, ½ mile final, check for encroachment of those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower. It is understood that the entire critical area may not be visible due to low ceilings and poor visibility. The check is strictly to determine possible causal factors for the out-of-tolerance situation. If the alarm has not cleared prior to the aircraft's arriving at the MM or in the absence of a MM, ½ mile final, immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.

2. The aircraft is between the MM or ½ mile final and the inner marker (IM), or if the IM is not installed, the CAT II Missed Approach Point (MAP), immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CAUTION, MONITOR INDICATES RUNWAY (number) LOCALIZER UNRELIABLE.

3. The aircraft has passed the IM or the CAT II MAP (if the IM is not installed) there is no action requirement. Although the FFM has been modified with filters which dampen the effect of false alarms, you may expect alarms when aircraft are located between the FFM and the localizer antenna either on landing or on takeoff.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.

Section 4. Airport Lighting

3−4−1. EMERGENCY LIGHTING

Whenever you become aware that an emergency has or will occur, take action to provide for the operation of all appropriate airport lighting aids as required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−4−2, Lighting Requirements.

3−4−2. RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS

When separate on−off controls are provided, operate runway end identifier lights:

a. When the associated runway lights are lighted. Turn the REIL off after:

1. An arriving aircraft has landed.

2. A departing aircraft has left the traffic pattern area.

3. It is determined that the lights are of no further use to the pilot.

b. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

c. As requested by the pilot.

d. Operate intensity setting in accordance with the values in TBL 3−4−1 except as prescribed in subparas b and c above.

TBL 3−4−1
REIL Intensity Setting−Three Step System

Settings	Visibility	
	Day	Night
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 5 miles inclusive	1 to but not including 3 miles
1	When requested	3 miles or more

3−4−3. VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATORS (VASI)

VASI systems with remote on−off switching must be operated when they serve the runway in use and where intensities are controlled in accordance with TBL 3−4−2 and TBL 3−4−3 except:

a. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

b. As required by the pilot.

TBL 3−4−2
VASI Intensity Setting−Two Step System

Step	Period/Condition
High	Day−Sunrise to sunset.
Low	Night−Sunset to sunrise.

TBL 3−4−3
VASI Intensity Setting−Three Step System

Step	Period/Condition
High	Day−Sunrise to sunset.
Medium	Twilight−From sunset to 30 minutes after sunset and from 30 minutes before sunrise to sunrise,* and during twilight in Alaska.
Low	Night−Sunset to sunrise.
*During a 1 year period, twilight may vary 26 to 43 minutes between 25 and 49N latitude.	

NOTE−
The basic FAA standard for VASI systems permits independent operation by means of photoelectric device. This system has no on−off control feature and is intended for continuous operation. Other VASI systems in use include those that are operated remotely from the control tower. These systems may consist of either a photoelectric intensity control with only an on−off switch, a two step intensity system, or a three step intensity system.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−6−5, Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI) Systems.
FAAO 6850.2, Visual Guidance Lighting Systems.

3−4−4. PRECISION APPROACH PATH INDICATORS (PAPI)

PAPI systems with remote on−off switching shall be operated when they serve the runway in use and where intensities are controlled in accordance with TBL 3−4−4 except:

a. As required by local facility directives to meet local conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

NOTE−
The basic FAA standard for PAPI systems permits independent operation by means of photoelectric device. This system has no on−off control feature and is intended for continuous operation. Other PAPI systems in use include those that are operated remotely from the control tower. These systems may consist of either a photoelectric

intensity control with only an on−off switch, or a five−step intensity system.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 6850.2, Visual Guidance Lighting Systems.

TBL 3−4−4
PAPI Intensity Setting − Five Step System

Step	Period/Condition
5	On Pilot Request
4	Day − Sunrise to sunset
3	Night − Sunset to sunrise
2	On Pilot Request
1	On Pilot Request
*During a 1 year period, twilight may vary 26 to 43 minutes between 25 and 49N latitude.	

3−4−5. APPROACH LIGHTS

Operate approach lights:

a. Between sunset and sunrise when one of the following conditions exists:

1. They serve the landing runway.

2. They serve a runway to which an approach is being made but aircraft will land on another runway.

b. Between sunrise and sunset when the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet or the prevailing visibility is 5 miles or less and approaches are being made to:

1. A landing runway served by the lights.

2. A runway served by the lights but aircraft are landing on another runway.

3. The airport, but landing will be made on a runway served by the lights.

c. As requested by the pilot.

d. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

NOTE−
In the interest of energy conservation, the ALS should be turned off when not needed for aircraft operations.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−6, ALS Intensity Settings.

3−4−6. ALS INTENSITY SETTINGS

When operating ALS as prescribed in para 3−4−5, Approach Lights, operate intensity controls in accordance with the values in TBL 3−4−5 except:

a. When facility directives specify other settings to meet local atmospheric, topographic, and twilight conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

TBL 3−4−5
ALS Intensity Setting

Step	Visibility (Applicable to runway served by lights)	
	Day	Night
5	Less than 1 mile*	When requested
4	1 to but not including 3 miles	When requested
3	3 to but not including 5 miles	Less than 1 mile*
2	5 to but not including 7 miles	1 to 3 miles inclusive
1	When requested	Greater than 3 miles
*and/or 6,000 feet or less of the RVR on the runway served by the ALS and RVR.		

NOTE−
Daylight steps 2 and 3 provide recommended settings applicable to conditions in subparas b and c. At night, use step 4 or 5 only when requested by a pilot.

3−4−7. SEQUENCED FLASHING LIGHTS (SFL)

Operate Sequenced Flashing Lights:

NOTE−
SFL are a component of the ALS and cannot be operated when the ALS is off.

a. When the visibility is less than 3 miles and instrument approaches are being made to the runway served by the associated ALS.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

3−4−8. MALSR/ODALS

Operate MALSR/ODALS that have separate on−off and intensity setting controls in accordance with TBL 3−4−6 and TBL 3−4−7 except:

a. When facility directives specify other settings to meet local atmospheric, topographic, and twilight conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot's request.

TBL 3−4−6
Two Step MALS/One Step RAIL/Two Step ODALS

Settings		Visibility	
		Day	Night
MALS/ODALS RAIL	Hi On	Less than 3 miles	Less than 3 miles
MALS/ODALS RAIL	Low Off	When requested	3 miles or more
*At locations providing part−time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the associated FSS, the MALSR/ODALS must be set to low intensity during the hours of darkness when the tower is not staffed.			

TBL 3−4−7
Three Step MALS/Three Step RAIL/ Three Step ODALS

Settings	Visibility	
	Day	Night
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 5 miles inclusive	1 to but not including 3 miles*
1	When requested	3 miles or more
*At locations providing part−time control tower service, if duplicate controls are not provided in the FSS on the airport, the air−to−ground radio link shall be activated during the hours of darkness when the tower is unmanned. If there is no radio air−to−ground control, the MALSR/ODALS shall be set on intensity setting 2 during the hours of darkness when the tower is not staffed.		

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−6−2, Operation of Lights When Tower is Closed.

3−4−9. ALSF−2/SSALR

a. When the prevailing visibility is $^3/_4$ mile or less or the RVR is 4,000 feet or less, operate the ALSF−2 system as follows:

1. As requested by the pilot.

2. As you deem necessary if not contrary to pilot request.

b. Operate the SSALR system when the conditions in subpara a are not a factor.

3−4−10. RUNWAY EDGE LIGHTS

Operate the runway edge light system/s serving the runway/s in use as follows:

a. Between sunset and sunrise, turn the lights on:

1. For departures. Before an aircraft taxies onto the runway and until it leaves the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area.

2. For arrivals:

(a) IFR aircraft−Before the aircraft begins final approach, or

(b) VFR aircraft−Before the aircraft enters the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, and

(c) Until the aircraft has taxied off the landing runway.

b. Between sunrise and sunset, turn the lights on as shown in subparas a1 and a2 when the surface visibility is less than 2 miles.

c. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

d. Different from subparas a, b, or c above, when:

1. You consider it necessary, or

2. Requested by a pilot and no other known aircraft will be adversely affected.

NOTE−
Pilots may request lights to be turned on or off contrary to subparas a, b, or c. However, 14 CFR Part 135 operators are required to land/takeoff on lighted runways/heliport landing areas at night.

e. Do not turn on the runway edge lights when a NOTAM closing the runway is in effect.

NOTE−
Application concerns use for takeoffs/landings/ approaches and does not preclude turning lights on for use of unaffected portions of a runway for taxiing aircraft, surface vehicles, maintenance, repair, etc.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−15, Simultaneous Approach and Runway Edge Light Operation.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−6−3, Incompatible Light System Operation.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−6−9, Runway Edge Lights Associated With Medium Approach Light System/Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

3−4−11. HIGH INTENSITY RUNWAY, RUNWAY CENTERLINE, AND TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTS

Operate high intensity runway and associated runway centerline and touchdown zone lights in accordance with TBL 3−4−8, except:

a. Where a facility directive specifies other settings to meet local conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot request.

TBL 3−4−8

HIRL, RCLS, TDZL Intensity Setting

Step	Visibility	
	Day	Night
5	Less than 1 mile*	When requested
4	1 to but not including 2 miles*	Less than 1 mile*
3	2 to but not including 3 miles	1 to but not including 3 miles*
2	When requested	3 to 5 miles inclusive
1	When requested	More than 5 miles
*and/or appropriate RVR/RVV equivalent.		

3−4−12. HIRL ASSOCIATED WITH MALSR

Operate HIRL which control the associated MALSR in accordance with TBL 3−4−9, except:

a. As requested by the pilot.

b. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.

TBL 3−4−9

HIRL Associated with MALSR

Step	Visibility	
	Day	Night
5	Less than 1 mile	When requested
4	1 to but not including 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
3	2 to but not including 3 miles	1 to but not including 3 miles
2	When requested	3 to 5 miles inclusive
1	When requested	More than 5 miles

NOTE−
When going from a given brightness step setting to a lower setting, rotation of the brightness control to a point below the intended step setting and then back to the appropriate step setting will ensure that the MALSR will operate at the appropriate brightness.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−14, Medium Intensity Runway Lights.

3−4−13. HIRL CHANGES AFFECTING RVR

Keep the appropriate approach controller or PAR controller informed, in advance if possible, of HIRL changes that affect RVR.

3−4−14. MEDIUM INTENSITY RUNWAY LIGHTS

Operate MIRL or MIRL which control the associated MALSR in accordance with TBL 3−4−10, except:

a. As requested by the pilot.

b. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to the pilot's request.

TBL 3−4−10

MIRL Intensity Setting

Step	Visibility	
	Day	Night
3	Less than 2 miles	Less than 1 mile
2	2 to 3 miles	1 to 3 miles
1	When requested	More than 3 miles

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−12, HIRL Associated With MALSR.

3−4−15. SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AND RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT OPERATION

Turn on the runway edge lights for the runway in use whenever the associated approach lights are on. If multiple runway light selection is not possible, you may leave the approach lights on and switch the runway lights to another runway to accommodate another aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−10, Runway Edge Lights.

3−4−16. HIGH SPEED TURNOFF LIGHTS

Operate high speed turnoff lights:

a. Whenever the associated runway lights are used for arriving aircraft. Leave them on until the aircraft has either entered a taxiway or passed the last light.

b. As required by facility directives to meet local conditions.

c. As requested by the pilot.

3−4−17. TAXIWAY LIGHTS

Operate taxiway lights in accordance with TBL 3−4−11, TBL 3−4−12, or TBL 3−4−13 except:

a. Where a facility directive specifies other settings or times to meet local conditions.

b. As requested by the pilot.

c. As you deem necessary, if not contrary to pilot request.

TBL 3−4−11
Three Step Taxiway Lights

Step	Visibility	
	Day	Night
3	Less than 1 mile	When requested
2	When requested	Less than 1 mile
1	When requested	1 mile of more

TBL 3−4−12
Five Step Taxiway Lights

Step	Visibility	
	Day	Night
5	Less than 1 mile	When requested
4	When requested	Less than 1 mile
3	When requested	1 mile or more
1 & 2	When requested	When requested

TBL 3−4−13
One Step Taxiway Lights

Day	Night
Less than 1 mile	On

NOTE−
AC 150/5340-30, Design and Installation Details for Airport Visual Aides, contains recommended brightness levels for variable setting taxiway lights.

3−4−18. OBSTRUCTION LIGHTS

If controls are provided, turn the lights on between sunset and sunrise.

3−4−19. ROTATING BEACON

If controls are provided, turn the rotating beacon on:

a. Between sunset and sunrise.

b. Between sunrise and sunset when the reported ceiling or visibility is below basic VFR minima.

3−4−20. RUNWAY STATUS LIGHTS (RWSL)

TERMINAL

RWSL is equipped with automatic intensity settings and must be operated on a continuous basis except under the following conditions:

a. If a pilot or vehicle report indicates any portion of the RWSL system is on and is not able to accept an ATC clearance; then

1. ATC must visually scan the entire runway. If the runway is observed to be clear and the lights are still illuminated, then the lights must be turned off and clearance re-issued.

2. If a portion of the runway is not visible from the tower, ATC must visually scan the ASDE-X. If the runway is observed to be clear and the lights are still illuminated, then the lights must be turned off and clearance re-issued.

b. When the RWSL Operational Status displays "Lost Comm with System," consider the RWSL system out of service until checked and confirmed to be operational by technical operations personnel.

c. Once RWSL systems are turned off, they must remain off until returned to service by technical operations personnel.

d. Upon pilot request, adjust the light intensity.

Section 5. Runway Selection

3−5−1. SELECTION

a. Except where a "runway use" program is in effect, use the runway most nearly aligned with the wind when 5 knots or more or the "calm wind" runway when less than 5 knots (set tetrahedron accordingly) unless use of another runway:

NOTE−
1. *If a pilot prefers to use a runway different from that specified, the pilot is expected to advise ATC.*

2. *At airports where a "runway use" program is established, ATC will assign runways deemed to have the least noise impact. If in the interest of safety a runway different from that specified is preferred, the pilot is expected to advise ATC accordingly. ATC will honor such requests and advise pilots when the requested runway is noise sensitive.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO 8400.9, National Safety and Operational Criteria for Runway Use Programs.

1. Will be operationally advantageous, or

2. Is requested by the pilot.

b. When conducting aircraft operations on other than the advertised active runway, state the runway in use.

3−5−2. STOL RUNWAYS

Use STOL runways as follows:

a. A designated STOL runway may be assigned only when requested by the pilot or as specified in a letter of agreement with an aircraft operator.

b. Issue the measured STOL runway length if the pilot requests it.

3−5−3. TAILWIND COMPONENTS

When authorizing use of runways and a tailwind component exists, always state both wind direction and velocity.

NOTE−
The wind may be described as "calm" when appropriate.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−5, Calm Wind Conditions.

Section 6. Airport Surface Detection Procedures

3−6−1. EQUIPMENT USAGE

a. The operational status of ASDE systems must be determined during the relief briefing, or as soon as possible after assuming responsibility for the associated position.

b. Use ASDE systems to augment visual observation of aircraft landing or departing, and aircraft or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways, or other parts of the movement area.

1. ASDE systems with safety logic must be operated continuously.

2. ASDE systems without safety logic must be operated:

(a) Continuously between sunset and sunrise.

(b) When visibility is less than the most distant point in the active movement area, or

(c) When, in your judgment, its use will assist you in the performance of your duties at any time.

3−6−2. IDENTIFICATION

a. To identify an observed target/track on an ASDE system display, correlate its position with one or more of the following:

1. Pilot/vehicle operator position report.

2. Controller's visual observation.

3. An identified target observed on the ASR or CTRD.

b. An observed target/track on an ASDE system display may be identified as a false target by visual observation. If the area containing a suspected false target is not visible from the tower, an airport operations vehicle or pilots of aircraft operating in the area may be used to conduct the visual observation.

c. After positive verification that a target is false, through pilot/vehicle operator position report or controller visual observation, the track may be temporarily dropped, which will remove the target from the display and safety logic processing. A notation must be made to FAA Form 7230−4, Daily Record of Facility Operation, when a track is temporarily dropped.

3−6−3. INFORMATION USAGE

a. ASDE system derived information may be used to:

1. Formulate clearances and control instructions to aircraft and vehicles on the movement area.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−7−2, Radar Use.

2. Position aircraft and vehicles using the movement area.

3. Determine the exact location of aircraft and vehicles, or spatial relationship to other aircraft/vehicles on the movement area.

4. Monitor compliance with control instructions by aircraft and vehicles on taxiways and runways.

5. Confirm pilot reported positions.

6. Provide directional taxi information, as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TURN (left/right) ON THE TAXIWAY/RUNWAY YOU ARE APPROACHING.

b. Do not provide specific navigational guidance (exact headings to be followed) unless an emergency exists or by mutual agreement with the pilot.

NOTE−
It remains the pilot's responsibility to navigate visually via routes to the clearance limit specified by the controller and to avoid other parked or taxiing aircraft, vehicles, or persons in the movement area.

c. Do not allow an aircraft to begin departure roll or cross the landing threshold whenever there is an unidentified target/track displayed on the runway.

3−6−4. SAFETY LOGIC ALERT RESPONSES

When the system generates an alert, the controller must immediately assess the situation visually and as presented on the ASDE system display, then take appropriate action as follows:

a. When an arrival aircraft (still airborne, prior to the landing threshold) activates a warning alert, the controller must issue go−around instructions. (Exception: Alerts involving known formation flights, as they cross the landing threshold, may be disregarded if all other factors are acceptable.)

NOTE−
The intent of this paragraph is that an aircraft does not land on the runway, on that approach, when the safety logic system has generated a warning alert. A side−step maneuver or circle to land on another runway satisfies this requirement.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−8−1, Sequence/Spacing Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−6, Same Runway Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−3, Same Runway Separation.
P/CG Term− Go Around.

b. When two arrival aircraft, or an arrival aircraft and a departing aircraft activate an alert, the controller will issue go−around instructions or take appropriate action to ensure intersecting runway separation is maintained.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−4, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Separation.

c. For other safety logic system alerts, issue instructions/clearances based on good judgment and evaluation of the situation at hand.

3−6−5. RADAR−ONLY MODE

Radar−only mode is an enhancement of the ASDE−X system which allows the system to stay operational with safety logic processing, despite a critical fault in the Multilateration (MLAT) subsystem. The system stays in full core alert status under radar−only mode without data block capability.

Section 7. Taxi and Ground Movement Procedures

3−7−1. GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT

Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area except where permitted in an LOA.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−1, Letters of Agreement
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−2, Appropriate Subjects

a. Do not issue *conditional* instructions that are dependent upon the movement of an arrival aircraft on or approaching the runway or a departure aircraft established on a takeoff roll. Do not say, "Line up and wait behind landing traffic," or "Taxi/proceed across Runway Three−Six behind departing/landing Citation." The above requirements do not preclude issuing instructions to follow an aircraft observed to be operating on the movement area in accordance with an ATC clearance/instruction and in such a manner that the instructions to follow are not ambiguous.

b. Do not issue unconditional instructions when authorizing movement on a runway/taxiway for the purpose of airfield checks or other airport operations. Instructions must ensure positive control with specific instructions to proceed on a runway or movement area, and as necessary, hold short instructions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−3, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

EXAMPLE−
"Airport 1, proceed on Runway 26R, hold short of Runway 18L."

"(Tower), Airport 1 at taxiway B8, request to inspect Runway 26R." "Airport 1 proceed as requested, hold short of Runway 18L."

"Airport 1 proceed on taxi way B, hold short of Runway 18L."

NOTE−
The following are examples of unconditional instructions and are not approved for use: "THE FIELD IS YOURS," "CLEARED ON ALL SURFACES," "THE AIRPORT IS YOURS," and "PROCEED ON ALL RUNWAYS AND TAXIWAYS."

c. Do not use the word "cleared" in conjunction with authorization for aircraft to taxi or equipment/vehicle/personnel operations. Use the prefix "taxi," "proceed," or "hold," as appropriate, for aircraft instructions and "proceed" or "hold" for equipment/vehicles/personnel.

d. Intersection departures may be initiated by a controller or a controller may authorize an intersection departure if a pilot requests. Issue the measured distance from the intersection to the runway end rounded "down" to the nearest 50 feet to any pilot who requests and to all military aircraft, unless use of the intersection is covered in appropriate directives.

NOTE−
1. *Exceptions are authorized where specific military aircraft routinely make intersection takeoffs and procedures are defined in appropriate directives. The authority exercising operational control of such aircraft ensures that all pilots are thoroughly familiar with these procedures, including the usable runway length from the applicable intersection.*

2. *Some airports publish "declared distances" for a particular runway. These are published in the Chart Supplement U.S. or the Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) and there is no requirement that facility personnel be aware of them. These distances are a means of satisfying airport design criteria and are intended to be used by pilots and/or operators for preflight performance planning only. There are no special markings, signing, or lighting associated with declared distances and they do not limit the actual runway available for use by an aircraft. Therefore, they cannot be used for any air traffic control purpose. If pilots inquire about the existence of declared distances, refer them to the Chart Supplement U.S. or AIP.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE (remaining length) FEET AVAILABLE.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−4, Line Up and Wait (LUAW).

e. Do not use the term "full length" when the runway length available for departures has been temporarily shortened. On permanently shortened runways, do not use the term "full length" until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

3−7−2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

Issue the route for the aircraft/vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms. The taxi clearance must include the specific route to follow. When a taxi clearance to a runway is issued to an aircraft, confirm the aircraft has the correct runway assignment.

NOTE−
1. *A pilot's read back of taxi instructions with the runway assignment can be considered confirmation of runway assignment.*

2. *Movement of aircraft or vehicles on nonmovement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.*

a. When authorizing an aircraft/vehicle to proceed on the movement area or to any point other than assigned takeoff runway, specify the route/taxi instructions. If it is the intent to hold the aircraft/vehicle short of any given point along the taxi route, issue the route and then state the holding instructions.

NOTE−
1. *The absence of holding instructions authorizes an aircraft/vehicle to cross all taxiways that intersect the taxi route.*

2. *Movement of aircraft or vehicles on non−movement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD POSITION.

HOLD FOR (reason)

CROSS (runway/taxiway)

or

TAXI/CONTINUE TAXIING/PROCEED/VIA (route),

or

ON (runway number or taxiways, etc.),

or

TO (location),

or

(direction),

or

ACROSS RUNWAY (number).

or

VIA (route), HOLD SHORT OF (location)

or

FOLLOW (traffic) (restrictions as necessary)

or

BEHIND (traffic).

EXAMPLE−
"Cross Runway Two−Eight Left, hold short of Runway Two−Eight Right."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed straight ahead then via ramp to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed on Taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two−Seven."

or

"Taxi/continue taxing/proceed on Charlie, hold short of Runway Two−Seven."

b. When authorizing an aircraft to taxi to an assigned takeoff runway, state the departure runway followed by the specific taxi route. Issue hold short restrictions when an aircraft will be required to hold short of a runway or other points along the taxi route.

NOTE−
If the specific taxi route ends into a connecting taxiway with the same identifier (for example, taxiway "A" connects with Taxiway "A1") at the approach end of the runway, the connecting taxiway may be omitted from the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), TAXI VIA (route as necessary).

or

RUNWAY (number), TAXI VIA (route as necessary)(hold short instructions as necessary)."

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Three−Six Left, taxi via taxiway Alpha, hold short of taxiway Charlie."

or

"Runway Three−Six Left, taxi via Alpha, hold short of Charlie."

or

"Runway Three−Six Left, taxi via taxiway Alpha, hold short of Runway Two−Seven Right."

or

"Runway Three−Six Left, taxi via Charlie, cross Runway Two−Seven Left, hold short of Runway Two−Seven Right."

or

"Runway Three−Six Left, taxi via Alpha, Charlie, cross Runway One−Zero."

c. Aircraft/vehicles must receive a clearance for each runway their route crosses. An aircraft/vehicle must have crossed a previous runway before another runway crossing clearance may be issued.

NOTE−
A clearance is required for aircraft/vehicles to operate on any active, inactive, or closed runway except for vehicles operating on closed runways in accordance with a Letter of Agreement (LOA).

EXAMPLE−
"Cross Runway One−Six Left, hold short of Runway One−Six Right."

d. When an aircraft/vehicle is instructed to "follow" traffic and requires a runway crossing, issue a runway crossing clearance in addition to the follow instructions and/or hold short instructions, as applicable.

EXAMPLE−
"Follow (traffic), cross Runway Two−Seven Right."

or

"Follow (traffic), cross Runway Two Seven−Right, hold short Runway Two−Seven Left."

e. At those airports where the taxi distance between runway centerlines is less than 1,000 feet, multiple runway crossings may be issued with a single clearance. The air traffic manager must submit a request to the appropriate Terminal Services Director of Operations for approval before authorizing multiple runway crossings.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−3−10 Multiple Runway Crossings.

f. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when it is not received from the pilot/vehicle operator.

PHRASEOLOGY−
READ BACK HOLD INSTRUCTIONS.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"American Four Ninety Two, Runway Three Six Left, taxi via taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."*

or

"American Four Ninety Two, Runway Three Six Left, taxi via Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."

"American Four Ninety Two, Roger."

"American Four Ninety Two, read back hold instructions."

2. *"Cleveland Tower, American Sixty Three is ready for departure."*

"American Sixty Three, hold short of Runway Two Three Left, traffic one mile final."

"American Sixty Three, Roger."

"American Sixty Three, read back hold instructions."

3. *"OPS Three proceed via taxiway Charlie hold short of Runway Two Seven."*

or

"OPS Three proceed via Charlie hold short of Runway Two Seven."

"OPS Three, Roger."

"OPS Three, read back hold instructions."

NOTE−
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

g. Issue progressive taxi/ground movement instructions when:

1. A pilot/operator requests.

2. The specialist deems it necessary due to traffic or field conditions, e.g., construction or closed taxiways.

3. Necessary during reduced visibility, especially when the taxi route is not visible from the tower.

NOTE−
Progressive instructions may include step−by−step directions and/or directional turns.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−4, Runway Proximity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−11−1, Taxi and Ground Movement Operation.

h. Issue instructions to expedite a taxiing aircraft or a moving vehicle.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TAXI WITHOUT DELAY (traffic if necessary).

EXIT/PROCEED/CROSS
(runway/taxiway) WITHOUT DELAY.

i. Issue instructions to aircraft/vehicle to hold short of an approach hold area.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD SHORT OF (runway) APPROACH

3−7−3. GROUND OPERATIONS

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

Avoid clearances which require:

a. Super or heavy aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.

b. Small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.

NOTE−
Use caution when taxiing smaller aircraft/helicopters in the vicinity of larger aircraft.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 10 and Para 11.

3−7−4. RUNWAY PROXIMITY

Hold a taxiing aircraft or vehicle clear of the runway as follows:

a. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold short of a specific runway.

b. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold at a specified point.

c. Issue traffic information as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD SHORT OF/AT (runway number or specific point), (traffic or other information).

NOTE−
Establishing hold lines/signs is the responsibility of the airport manager. The standards for surface measurements, markings, and signs are contained in AC 150/5300−13, Airport Design; AC 150/5340−1, Standards for Airport Markings, and AC 150/5340−18, Standards for Airport Sign Systems. The operator is responsible for properly positioning the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3−1−12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel on Runways.

3−7−5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA

a. ILS critical area dimensions are described in FAA Order 6750.16, Siting Criteria for Instrument Landing Systems. Aircraft and vehicle access to the ILS critical area must be controlled to ensure the integrity of ILS course signals whenever conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles. Do not authorize vehicles/aircraft to operate in or over the critical area, except as specified in subparagraph a1, whenever an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS outer marker (OM) or the fix used in lieu of the OM unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight or is circling to land on another runway.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD SHORT OF (runway) ILS CRITICAL AREA.

1. LOCALIZER CRITICAL AREA

(a) Do not authorize vehicle or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM when conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles, except:

(1) A preceding arriving aircraft on the same or another runway that passes over or through the area while landing or exiting the runway.

(2) A preceding departing aircraft or missed approach on the same or another runway that passes through or over the area.

(b) In addition to subparagraph a1(a), when conditions are less than reported ceiling 200 feet or RVR 2,000 feet, do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the middle marker, or in the absence of a middle marker, ½ mile final.

2. GLIDESLOPE CRITICAL AREA. Do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight or is circling to land on another runway when conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles.

b. Operators commonly conduct "coupled" or "autoland" approaches to satisfy maintenance, training, or reliability program requirements. Promptly issue an advisory if the critical area will not be protected when an arriving aircraft advises that a "coupled," "CATIII," "autoland," or similar type approach will be conducted and the weather indicates a reported ceiling of 800 feet or more, or the visibility is 2 miles or more.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ILS CRITICAL AREA NOT PROTECTED.

c. The Department of Defense (DOD) is authorized to define criteria for protection of precision approach critical areas at military controlled airports. This protection is provided to all aircraft operating at that military controlled airport. Waiver authority for DOD precision approach critical area criteria rests with the appropriate military authority.

NOTE−
Signs and markings are installed by the airport operator to define the ILS critical area. No point along the longitudinal axis of the aircraft is permitted past the hold line for holding purposes. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in Para 3−1−12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE−
AC150/5340−1, Standards for Airport Markings.

3−7−6. PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (POFZ) AND FINAL APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACES (OCS)

a. Ensure the POFZ is clear of traffic (aircraft or vehicles) when an aircraft on a vertically−guided final approach is within 2 miles of the runway threshold and the reported ceiling is below 300 feet or visibility is less than 3/4 SM to protect aircraft executing a missed approach.

NOTE−
Only horizontal surfaces (e.g., the wings) can penetrate the POFZ, but not the vertical surfaces (e.g., fuselage or tail). Three hundred feet (300) is used because ATC does not measure ceilings in fifty (50) foot increments.

b. Ensure the final approach OCS (e.g., ILS /LPV W, X, and Y surfaces) are clear of aircraft/vehicles when an aircraft on the vertically−guided approach is within 2 miles of the runway threshold and the reported ceiling is below 800 feet or visibility is less than 2 SM to protect aircraft executing a missed approach.

NOTE−
1. *The POFZ and the close−in portion of the final approach obstacle clearance surfaces protect aircraft executing a missed approach. Their dimensions are described in FAAO 8260.3b, Volume III, Chapter 3, para 3.4, United States Standards for Terminal Instrument Procedures.*

2. *Vehicles that are less than 10 feet in height, necessary for the maintenance of the airport and/or navigation facilities operating outside the movement area, are exempt.*

c. If it is not possible to clear the POFZ or OCS prior to an aircraft reaching a point 2 miles from the runway threshold and the weather is less than described in subparas a or b above, issue traffic to the landing aircraft.

NOTE−
The POFZ and/or OCS must be cleared as soon as practical.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID), IN THE EVENT OF MISSED APPROACH (issue traffic).

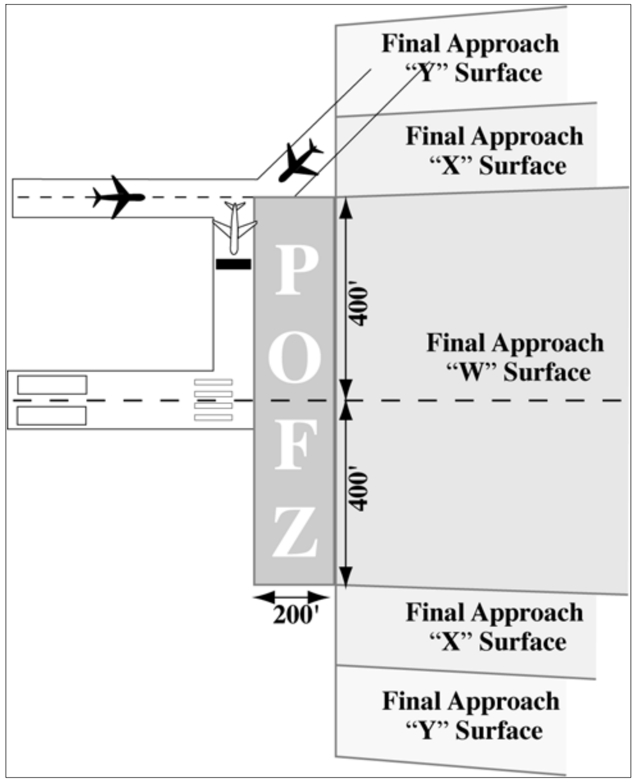
TAXIING AIRCRAFT/VEHICLE LEFT/RIGHT OF RUNWAY.

EXAMPLE−
"United 623, in the event of missed approach, taxiing aircraft right of runway."

"Delta 1058, in the event of missed approach, vehicle left of runway."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−6, Traffic Information.

FIG 3−7−1
Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ)



Section 8. Spacing and Sequencing

3−8−1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION

Establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation, as necessary, to achieve proper spacing.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF OR HOLD SHORT/HOLD IN POSITION/TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY (traffic).

EXTEND DOWNWIND.

MAKE SHORT APPROACH.

NUMBER (landing sequence number),

FOLLOW (description and location of traffic),

or if traffic is utilizing another runway,

TRAFFIC (description and location) LANDING RUNWAY (number of runway being used).

CIRCLE THE AIRPORT.

MAKE LEFT/RIGHT THREE−SIXTY/TWO SEVENTY.

GO AROUND (additional instructions as necessary).

CLEARED TO LAND.

CLEARED:

TOUCH−AND−GO,
or

STOP−AND−GO,
or

LOW APPROACH.

CLEARED FOR THE OPTION,

or

OPTION APPROVED,

or

UNABLE OPTION, (alternate instructions).

or

UNABLE (type of option), OTHER OPTIONS APPROVED.

NOTE−
1. *The "Cleared for the Option" procedure will permit an instructor pilot/flight examiner/pilot the option to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing. This procedure will only be used at those locations with an operational control tower and will be subject to ATC approval. After ATC approval of the option, the pilot should inform ATC as soon as possible of any delay on the runway during their stop-and-go or full stop landing.*

2. *For proper helicopter spacing, speed adjustments may be more practical than course changes.*

3. *Read back of hold short instructions apply when hold instructions are issued to a pilot in lieu of a takeoff clearance.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.
AIM, Para 4−3−22, Option Approach

3−8−2. TOUCH-AND-GO OR STOP-AND-GO OR LOW APPROACH

Consider an aircraft cleared for touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach as an arriving aircraft until it touches down (for touch-and-go), or makes a complete stop (for stop-and-go), or crosses the landing threshold (for low approach), and thereafter as a departing aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel on Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.

3−8−3. SIMULTANEOUS SAME DIRECTION OPERATION

Authorize simultaneous, same direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when the following conditions are met:

a. Operations are conducted in VFR conditions unless visual separation is applied.

b. Two-way radio communication is maintained with the aircraft involved and pertinent traffic information is issued.

c. The distance between the runways or landing strips is in accordance with the minima in TBL 3−8−1 (use the greater minimum if two categories are involved).

TBL 3−8−1

Same Direction Distance Minima

Aircraft category	Minimum distance (feet) between parallel	
	Runway centerlines	Edges of adjacent strips or runway and strip
Lightweight, single−engine, propeller driven	300	200
Twin−engine, propeller driven	500	400
All others	700	600

3−8−4. SIMULTANEOUS OPPOSITE DIRECTION OPERATION

Authorize simultaneous opposite direction operations on parallel runways, on parallel landing strips, or on a runway and a parallel landing strip only when the following conditions are met:

a. Operations are conducted in VFR conditions.

b. Two-way radio communication is maintained with the aircraft involved and pertinent traffic information is issued.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC (description) ARRIVING/DEPARTING/LOW APPROACH, OPPOSITE DIRECTION ON PARALLEL RUNWAY/LANDING STRIP.

c. The distance between the runways or landing strips is in accordance with the minima in TBL 3−8−2.

TBL 3−8−2

Opposite Direction Distance Minima

Type of Operation	Minimum distance (feet) between parallel	
	Runway centerlines	Edges of adjacent strips or runway and strip
Between sunrise and sunset	1,400	1,400
Between sunset and sunrise	2,800	Not authorized

Section 9. Departure Procedures and Separation

3–9–1. DEPARTURE INFORMATION

Provide current departure information, as appropriate, to departing aircraft.

a. Departure information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

b. Issue departure information by including the following:

1. Runway in use. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

2. Surface wind from direct readout dial, wind shear detection system, or automated weather observing system information display. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

3. Altimeter setting. (May be omitted if pilot states "have the numbers.")

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–7–1, Current Settings.

c. Time, when requested.

d. Issue the official ceiling and visibility, when available, to a departing aircraft before takeoff as follows:

1. To a VFR aircraft when weather is below VFR conditions.

2. To an IFR aircraft when weather is below VFR conditions or highest takeoff minima, whichever is greater.

NOTE–
Standard takeoff minimums are published in 14 CFR Section 91.175(f). Takeoff minima other than standard are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in a tabular form supplement to the FAA instrument approach procedures charts and appropriate FAA Forms 8260.

e. Issue the route for the aircraft/vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms. The taxi clearance must include the specific route to follow.

f. *USAF NOT APPLICABLE.* An advisory to "check density altitude" when appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–10–6, Broadcast Density Altitude Advisory.

g. Issue braking action for the runway in use as received from pilots or the airport management when Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–7–2, Altimeter Setting Issuance Below Lowest Usable FL.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–8, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–5, Braking Action Advisories.
P/CG Term– Braking Action Advisories.

h. When the ATIS is unavailable, and when the runway length available for departure has been temporarily shortened, controllers must ensure that pilots receive the runway number combined with a shortened announcement for all departing aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (NUMBER) SHORTENED

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened."

3–9–2. DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION

USA/USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE

When gate-hold procedures are in effect, issue the following departure delay information as appropriate:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–4–3, Gate Hold Procedures.

a. Advise departing aircraft the time at which the pilot can expect to receive engine startup advisory.

PHRASEOLOGY–
GATE HOLD PROCEDURES ARE IN EFFECT. ALL AIRCRAFT CONTACT (position) ON (frequency) FOR ENGINE START TIME. EXPECT ENGINE START/TAXI (time).

b. Advise departing aircraft when to start engines and/or to advise when ready to taxi.

PHRASEOLOGY–
START ENGINES, ADVISE WHEN READY TO TAXI,

or

ADVISE WHEN READY TO TAXI.

c. If the pilot requests to hold in a delay absorbing area, the request must be approved if space and traffic conditions permit.

d. Advise all aircraft on GC/FD frequency upon termination of gate hold procedures.

PHRASEOLOGY−
GATE HOLD PROCEDURES NO LONGER IN EFFECT.

3−9−3. DEPARTURE CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS

Inform departing IFR, SVFR, VFR aircraft receiving radar service, and TRSA VFR aircraft of the following:

a. Before takeoff.

1. Issue the appropriate departure control frequency and beacon code. The departure control frequency may be omitted if a SID has been or will be assigned and the departure control frequency is published on the SID.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DEPARTURE FREQUENCY (frequency), SQUAWK (code).

2. Inform all departing IFR military turboprop/turbojet aircraft (except transport and cargo types) to change to departure control frequency. If the local controller has departure frequency override, transmit urgent instructions on this frequency. If the override capability does not exist, transmit urgent instructions on the emergency frequency.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CHANGE TO DEPARTURE.

3. *USAF.* USAF control towers are authorized to inform all departing IFR military transport/cargo type aircraft operating in formation flight to change to departure control frequency before takeoff.

b. After takeoff.

1. When the aircraft is about $^{1}/_{2}$ mile beyond the runway end, instruct civil aircraft, and military transport, and cargo types to contact departure control, provided further communication with you is not required.

2. Do not request departing military turboprop/turbojet aircraft (except transport and cargo types) to make radio frequency or radar beacon changes before the aircraft reaches 2,500 feet above the surface.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

3−9−4. LINE UP AND WAIT (LUAW)

a. The intent of LUAW is to position aircraft for an imminent departure. Authorize an aircraft to line up and wait, except as restricted in subpara g, when takeoff clearances cannot be issued because of traffic. Issue traffic information to any aircraft so authorized. Traffic information may be omitted when the traffic is another aircraft which has landed on or is taking off the runway and is clearly visible to the holding aircraft. Do not use conditional phrases such as "behind landing traffic" or "after the departing aircraft."

b. First state the runway number followed by the line up and wait clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), LINE UP AND WAIT.

c. Procedures.

1. At facilities without a safety logic system or facilities with the safety logic system in the limited configuration:

(a) Do not issue a landing clearance to an aircraft requesting a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, option, or unrestricted low approach on the same runway with an aircraft that is holding in position or taxiing to line up and wait until the aircraft in position starts takeoff roll.

(b) Do not authorize an aircraft to LUAW if an aircraft has been cleared to land, touch−and−go, stop−and–go, option, or unrestricted low approach on the same runway.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), CONTINUE, TRAFFIC HOLDING IN POSITION.

EXAMPLE−
"American 528, Runway Two−Three continue, traffic holding in position."

2. Except when reported weather conditions are less than ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles, facilities using the safety logic system in the full core alert mode:

(a) May issue a landing clearance for a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, option, or unrestricted low approach to an arriving aircraft with an aircraft holding in position or taxiing to LUAW on the same runway, or

(b) May authorize an aircraft to LUAW when an aircraft has been cleared for a full stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, option, or unrestricted low approach on the same runway.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−5, Landing Clearance.

d. When an aircraft is authorized to line up and wait, inform it of the closest traffic requesting a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and− go, option, or unrestricted low approach to the same runway.

EXAMPLE−
"United Five, Runway One Eight, line up and wait. Traffic a Boeing Seven Thirty Seven, six mile final.

e. *USAF/USN*. When an aircraft is authorized to line up and wait, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the aircraft taxiing into position.

f. Do not authorize an aircraft to line up and wait when the departure point is not visible from the tower, unless the aircraft's position can be verified by ASDE or the runway is used for departures only.

g. An aircraft may be authorized to line up and wait at an intersection between sunset and sunrise under the following conditions:

1. The procedure must be approved by the appropriate Director, Terminal Operations (service area) as well as the Director, Terminal Safety and Operations Support.

2. The procedure must be contained in a facility directive.

3. The runway must be used as a departure−only runway.

4. Only one aircraft at a time is permitted to line up and wait on the same runway.

5. Document on FAA Form 7230−4, Daily Record of Facility Operation, the following: "LUAW at INT of RWY (number) and TWY (name) IN EFFECT" when using runway as a departure−only runway. "LUAW at INT of RWY (number) and TWY (name) SUSPENDED" when runway is not used as a departure−only runway.

h. Do not authorize an aircraft to line up and wait at anytime when the intersection is not visible from the tower.

i. Do not authorize aircraft to simultaneously line up and wait on the same runway, between sunrise and sunset, unless the local assist/local monitor position is staffed.

j. *USN*. Do not authorize aircraft to line up and wait simultaneously on intersecting runways.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CONTINUE HOLDING,

or

TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

k. When aircraft are authorized to line up and wait on runways that intersect, traffic must be exchanged between that aircraft and the aircraft that is authorized to line up and wait, depart, or arrive to the intersecting runway(s).

EXAMPLE−
"United Five, Runway Four, line up and wait, traffic holding Runway Three−One."
"Delta One, Runway Three−One, line up and wait, traffic holding Runway Four."

Or, when issuing traffic information to an arrival aircraft and an aircraft that is holding on runway(s) that intersect(s):

"Delta One, Runway Four, line up and wait, traffic landing Runway Three−One."
"United Five, Runway Three−One, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position Runway Four."

Or, when issuing traffic information to a departing aircraft and an aircraft that is holding on runway(s) that intersect(s):

"Delta One, Runway Three−One, line up and wait, traffic departing Runway Four."
"United Five, Runway Four, cleared for takeoff, traffic holding in position Runway Three−One."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−4, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Separation.

l. When a local controller delivers or amends an ATC clearance to an aircraft awaiting departure and that aircraft is holding short of a runway or is holding in position on a runway, an additional clearance must be issued to prevent the possibility of the aircraft inadvertently taxiing onto the runway and/or beginning takeoff roll. In such cases, append one of the following ATC instructions as appropriate:

1. HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY, *or*

2. HOLD IN POSITION.

m. *USAF/USN.* When issuing additional instructions or information to an aircraft holding in takeoff position, include instructions to continue holding or taxi off the runway, unless it is cleared for takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CONTINUE HOLDING,

or

TAXI OFF THE RUNWAY.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

n. When authorizing an aircraft to line up and wait at an intersection, state the runway intersection.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator), LINE UP AND WAIT.

o. When two or more aircraft call the tower ready for departure, one or more at the full length of a runway and one or more at an intersection, state the location of the aircraft at the full length of the runway when authorizing that aircraft to line up and wait.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), FULL−LENGTH, LINE UP AND WAIT.

EXAMPLE−
"American Four Eighty Two, Runway Three−Zero full length, line up and wait."

NOTE−
The controller need not state the location of the aircraft departing the full length of the runway if there are no aircraft holding for departure at an intersection for that same runway.

p. Do not use the term "full length" when the runway length available for departure has been temporarily shortened. On permanently shortened runways, do not use the term "full length" until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s).

NOTE−
The use of the term "full length" could be interpreted by the pilot(s) as the available runway length prior to the runway being shortened.

q. Whenever a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, state the word "shortened" immediately following the runway number as part of the line up and wait clearance.

1. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the line up and wait clearance for the duration of the construction project when the runway is temporarily shortened.

2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the line up and wait clearance until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, LINE UP AND WAIT.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, line up and wait."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

3−9−5. ANTICIPATING SEPARATION

Takeoff clearance needs not be withheld until prescribed separation exists if there is a reasonable assurance it will exist when the aircraft starts takeoff roll.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Clear of the Runway.

3−9−6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

Separate a departing aircraft from a preceding departing or arriving aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that it does not begin takeoff roll until:

a. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the runway end or turned to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3−9−1.) If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks, the other aircraft needs only be airborne if the following minimum distance exists between aircraft: (See FIG 3−9−2.)

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved− *3,000 feet.*

2. When a Category I aircraft is preceded by a Category II aircraft− *3,000 feet.*

3. When either the succeeding or both are Category II aircraft− *4,500 feet.*

4. When either is a Category III aircraft− *6,000 feet.*

5. When the succeeding aircraft is a helicopter, visual separation may be applied in lieu of using distance minima.

FIG 3−9−1
Same Runway Separation
[View 1]

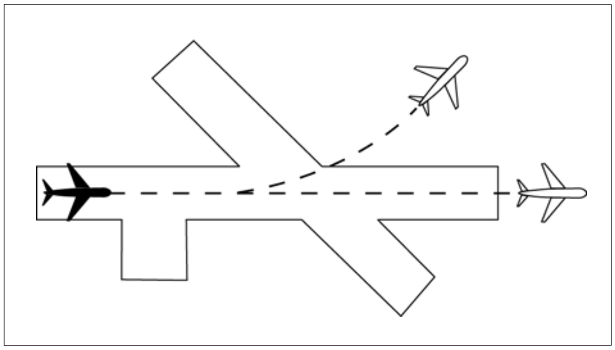
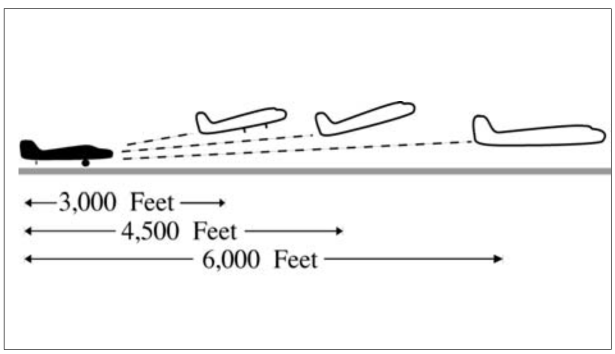


FIG 3−9−2
Same Runway Separation
[View 2]



NOTE−
Aircraft same runway separation (SRS) categories are specified in FAA Order JO 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators and based upon the following definitions:

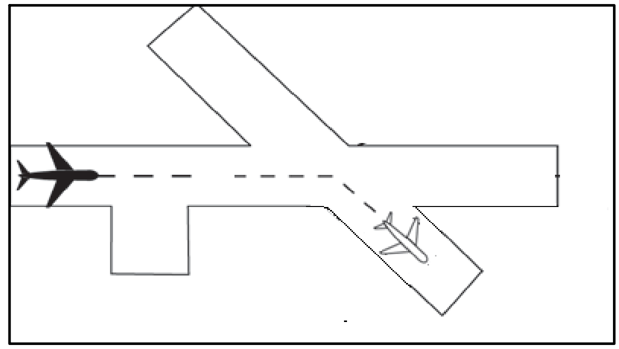
CATEGORY I − small single−engine propeller driven aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, and all helicopters.

CATEGORY II − small twin−engine propeller driven aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less.

CATEGORY III − all other aircraft.

b. A preceding landing aircraft is clear of the runway. (See FIG 3−9−3.)

FIG 3−9−3
Preceding Landing Aircraft Clear of Runway



REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Clear of the Runway.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Do not issue clearances which imply or indicate approval of rolling takeoffs by super or heavy aircraft except as provided in Para 3−1−14, Ground Operations When Volcanic Ash is Present.

d. Do not issue clearances to a small aircraft to line up and wait on the same runway behind a departing super or heavy aircraft to apply the necessary intervals.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence.

e. The minima in Para 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraph g, may be applied in lieu of the time interval requirements in subparagraphs f and g. When Para 5-5-4, Minima, is applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne.

NOTE−
The pilot may request additional separation, but should make this request before taxiing on the runway.

f. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off from the same runway or a parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet:

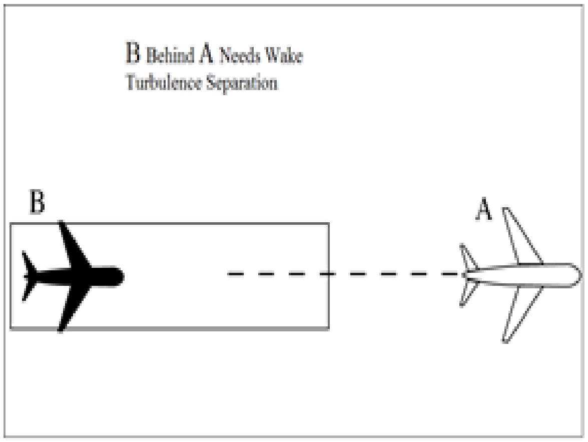
NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until the time interval has passed after the preceding aircraft begins takeoff roll.

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

g. Separate a small aircraft behind a B757 by *2 minutes* when departing the same runway.

FIG 3−9−4
Same Runway Separation



h. Separate aircraft when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross when either a departure follows an arrival or an arrival follows a departure by the following minima:

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

i. Separate an aircraft behind another aircraft that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet by the following minima:

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *4 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *3 minutes*

j. Separate a small aircraft behind a B757 that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same runway by − *3 minutes.*

k. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required intervals contained in subparagraphs f through j.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.

l. Separate a small aircraft behind a large aircraft (except B757) that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs on the same runway by *3 minutes* unless a pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the time interval. In the latter case, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff. Controllers must not initiate or suggest a waiver of the time interval.

NOTE−
A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request.

m. Inform aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required time interval.

3−9−7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES

a. Apply the following wake turbulence criteria for intersection departures:

1. Separate a small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a departing small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least *3 minutes* after the preceding aircraft has taken off.

2. Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a departing large aircraft (except B757) by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least *3 minutes* after the preceding aircraft has taken off.

3. Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a departing B757 by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least *3 minutes* after the preceding aircraft has taken off.

4. Separate aircraft departing from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff), parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with the runway thresholds offset by 500 feet or more, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start take-off roll until the following intervals exist after the preceding aircraft has taken off:

NOTE–
Apply Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, subparagraph f to parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with runway thresholds offset by less than 500 feet.

(a) Heavy, large, or small behind super - *4 minutes.*

(b) Heavy, large, or small behind heavy - *3 minutes.*

5. Inform aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required time interval.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.

NOTE–
Aircraft conducting touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are considered to be departing from an intersection.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–8–2, Touch–and–Go or Stop–and–Go or Low Approach.

b. The time interval is not required when:

1. A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the time intervals contained in subparagraph a1 or a2.

NOTE–
A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request; the request for takeoff must be accomplished by a request to deviate from the time interval.

2. USA NOT APPLICABLE. The intersection is 500 feet or less from the departure point of the preceding aircraft and both aircraft are taking off in the same direction.

3. Successive touch-and-go or stop-and-go operations are conducted with any aircraft following an aircraft in the pattern that requires wake turbulence separation, or an aircraft departing the same runway that requires wake turbulence separation in accordance with subparagraphs a1, a2, a3, or a4 (except for super aircraft), provided the pilot is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the larger aircraft.

NOTE–
Not authorized with a Super as the lead or departure aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-2-1, Visual Separation

4. If action is initiated to reduce the separation between successive touch-and-go or stop-and-go operations, apply the appropriate separation contained in subparagraph a1, a2, a3, or a4.

c. When applying the provision of subpara b:

1. Issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff.

2. Do not clear the intersection departure for an immediate takeoff.

3. Issue a clearance to permit the trailing aircraft to deviate from course enough to avoid the flight path of the preceding aircraft when applying subpara b1 or b2.

4. Separation requirements in accordance with Para 3–9–6, Same Runway Separation, must also apply.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–6, Same Runway Separation.

3–9–8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS

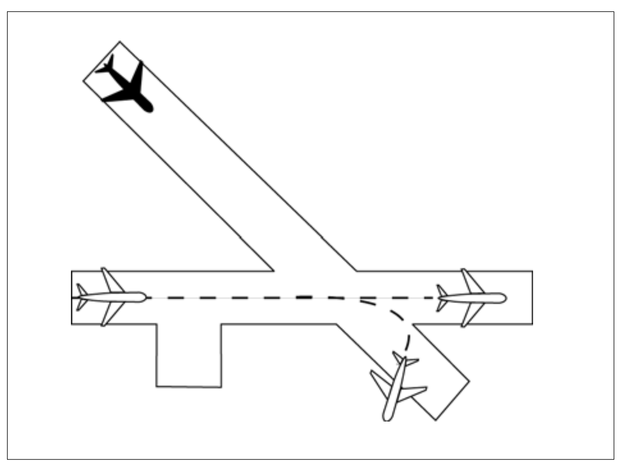
a. Issue traffic information to each aircraft operating on intersecting runways.

b. Separate departing aircraft from another aircraft using an intersecting runway by ensuring that the departure does not begin takeoff roll until one of the following exists:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.

1. The preceding aircraft has departed and passed the intersection or is turning to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3–9–5).

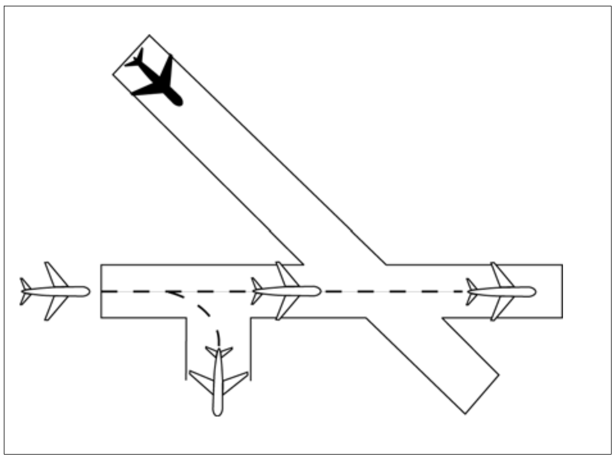
FIG 3–9–5
Intersecting Runway Separation



2. A preceding arriving aircraft is clear of the landing runway, completed the landing roll and will hold short of the intersection, or has passed the intersection. (See FIG 3-9-6).

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

FIG 3-9-6
Intersecting Runway Separation



WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

3. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a departing or landing aircraft on an intersecting runway if flight paths will cross (see FIG 3-9-7 and FIG 3-9-8), or an aircraft departing a parallel runway separated by 2,500 feet or more if projected flights will cross (see FIG 3-9-9):

NOTE–
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until the appropriate time interval has passed after the preceding aircraft began takeoff roll.

(a) Heavy, large, or small behind super – *3 minutes.*

(b) Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – *2 minutes.*

(c) Small behind B757 – *2 minutes.*

FIG 3-9-7
Departure Behind Departure on Intersecting Runway

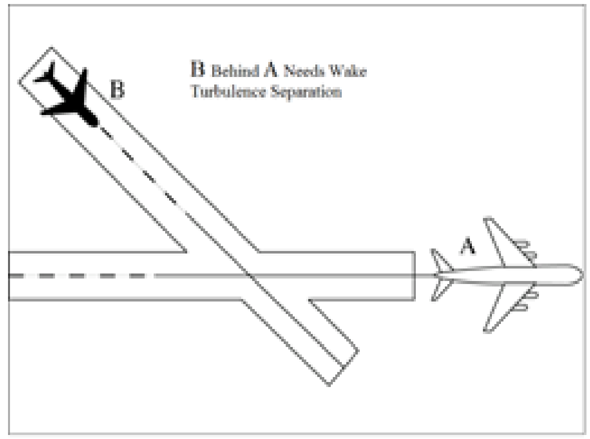


FIG 3-9-8
Departure Behind Arrival on Intersecting Runway

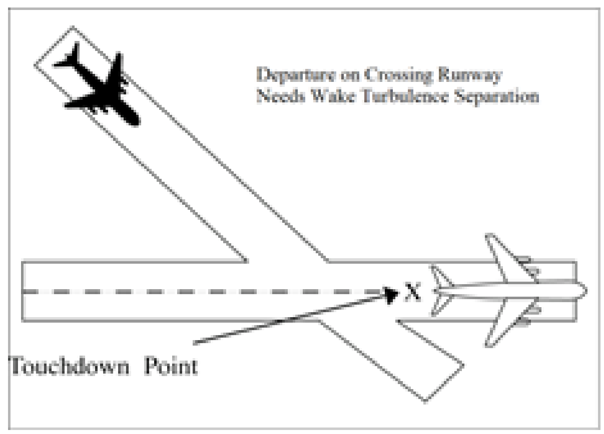
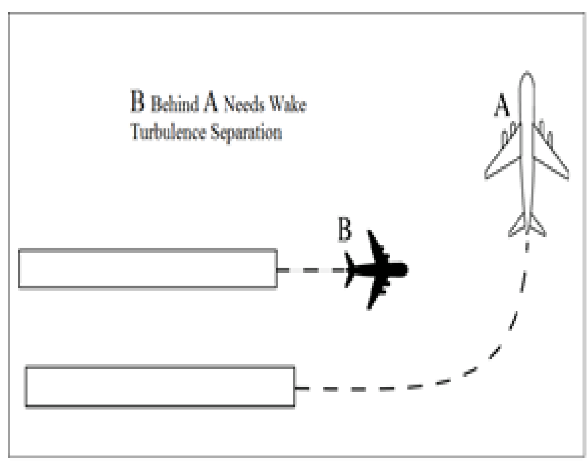


FIG 3-9-9
Parallel Runway



4. Pilot requests to deviate from the required time intervals must not be approved if the preceding aircraft requires wake turbulence separation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

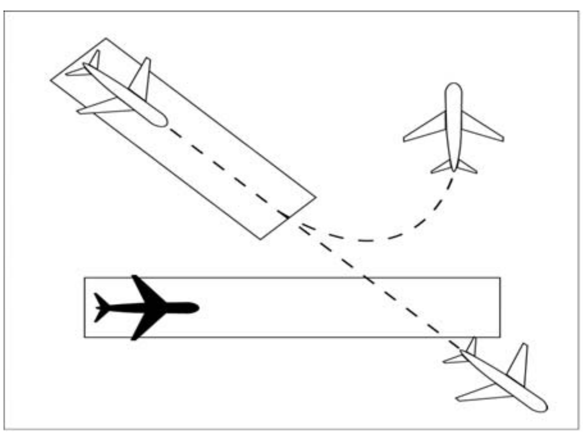
3−9−9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

a. Separate departing aircraft from an aircraft using a nonintersecting runway when the flight paths intersect by ensuring that the departure does not begin takeoff roll until one of the following exists:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

1. The preceding aircraft has departed and crossed the departure runway, or is turning to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3−9−10).

FIG 3−9−10
Intersecting Runway Separation



2. A preceding arriving aircraft has completed the landing roll and will hold short of the projected intersection, passed the projected intersection, or has crossed over the departure runway (See FIG 3−9−11 and FIG 3-9-12).

FIG 3−9−11
Intersecting Runway Separation

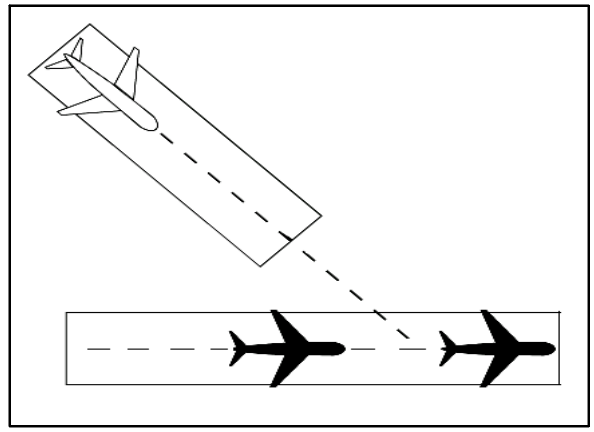
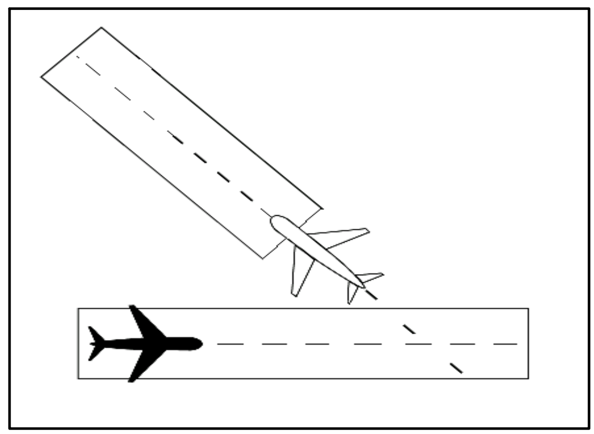


FIG 3−9−12
Intersecting Runway Separation



b. If the extended centerline of a runway crosses a converging runway or the extended centerline of a converging runway at a distance of 1NM or less from either departure end, apply the provisions of Paragraph 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway Separation, unless: The facility is using aids specified in a facility directive, (may include but are not limited to, Arrival/Departure Window (ADW), ASDE−X Virtual Runway Intersection Point (VRIP), cut−off points or automation). (See FIG 3−9−15 and FIG 3−9−16).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-14, Go-Around/Missed Approach

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

FIG 3−9−13
Intersecting Runway Separation

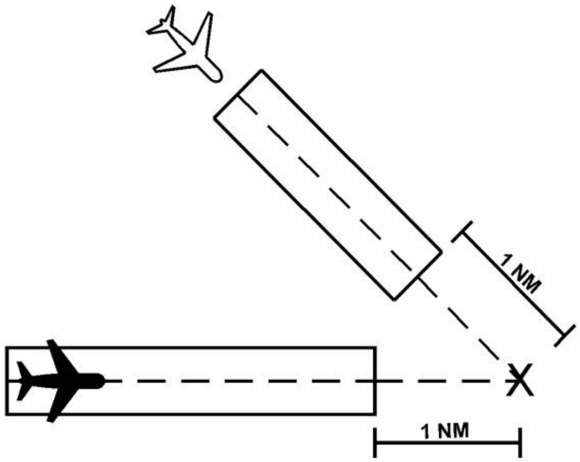
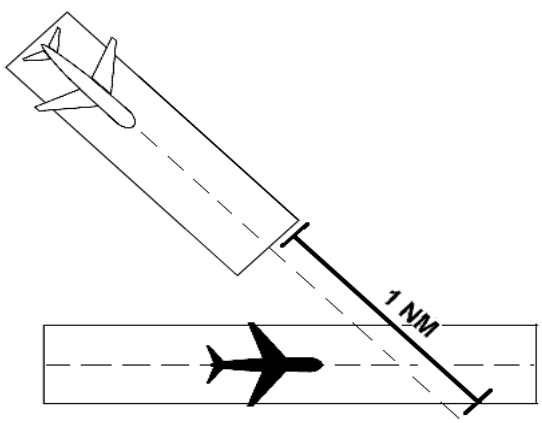


FIG 3−9−14
Intersecting Runway Separation



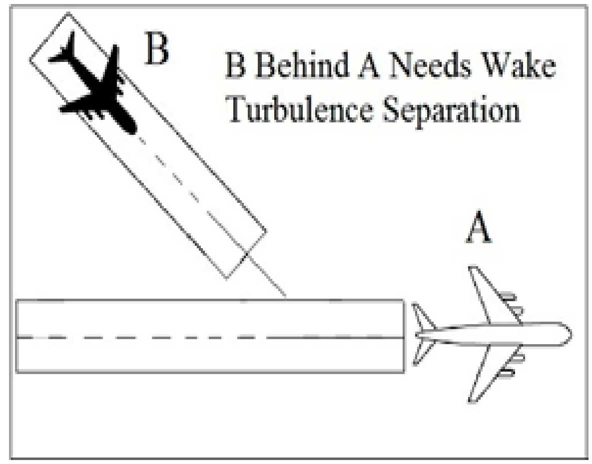
c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a departing aircraft on a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross (See FIG 3−9−15):

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

FIG 3−9−15
Intersecting Runway Separation



NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until the time interval has passed from when the preceding aircraft began takeoff roll.

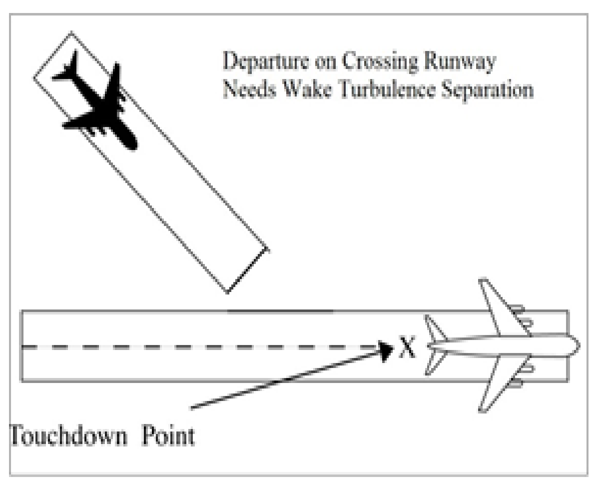
d. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing aircraft on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival (See FIG 3−9−16):

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

FIG 3−9−16
Intersecting Runway Separation



e. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required time interval if the preceding aircraft requires wake turbulence separation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

3−9−10. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

a. When issuing a clearance for takeoff, first state the runway number followed by the takeoff clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"RUNWAY TWO SEVEN, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF."

NOTE−
Turbine−powered aircraft may be considered ready for takeoff when they reach the runway unless they advise otherwise.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−1, Departure Terminology.

b. When clearing an aircraft for takeoff from an intersection, state the runway intersection.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

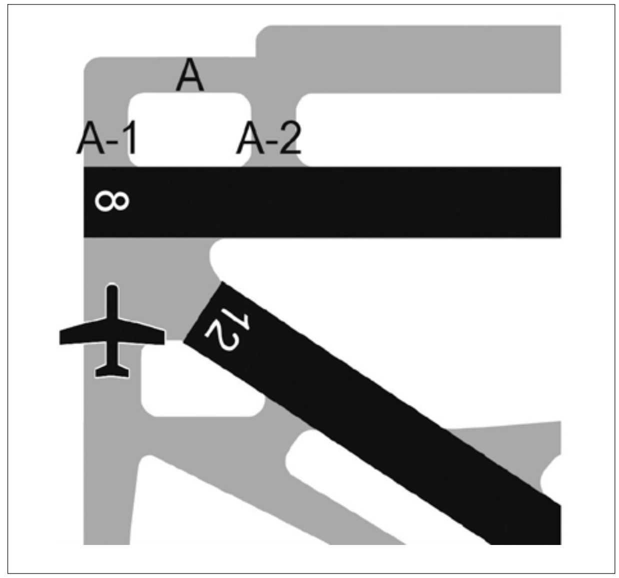
c. When two or more aircraft call the tower ready for departure, one or more at the full length of a runway and one or more at an intersection, state the location of the aircraft at the full length of the runway when clearing that aircraft for takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), FULL LENGTH, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"American Four Eighty Two, Runway Three Zero full length, cleared for takeoff."

d. The controller must ensure that all runways along the taxi route that lead to the departure runway are crossed before the takeoff clearance is issued, except as stated in para 3−9−9e.

FIG 3−9−17
Runway/Taxiway Proximity

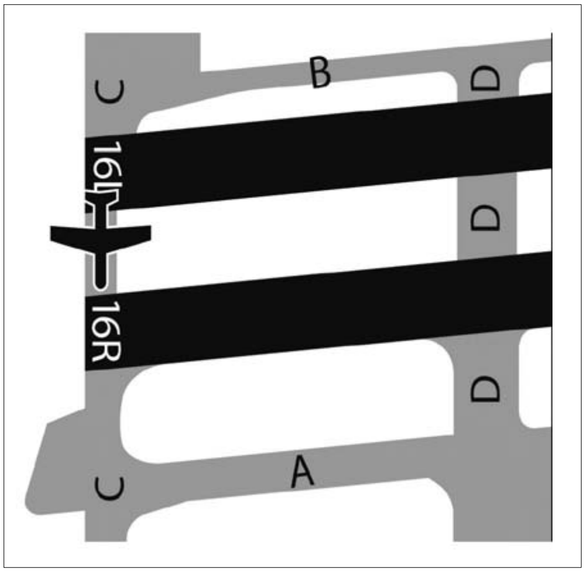


e. At those airports where the airport configuration does not allow for an aircraft to completely cross one runway and hold short of the departure runway and/or where airports do not have runway hold markings between runways, state the runway to be crossed with the takeoff clearance if the aircraft is not able to complete a runway crossing before reaching its departure runway.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CROSS RUNWAY (number), RUNWAY (number) CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"CROSS RUNWAY TWO FOUR LEFT, RUNWAY TWO FOUR RIGHT, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF."

FIG 3−9−18
Runway/Taxiway Proximity



REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−3−9, Takeoff Clearance.
P/CG Term− Clear of the Runway.

f. Do not use the term "full length" when the runway length available for departure has been temporarily shortened. On permanently shortened runways, do not use the term "full length" until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s).

NOTE−
The use of the term "full length" could be interpreted by the pilot(s) as the available runway length prior to the runway being shortened.

g. Whenever a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, state the word "shortened" immediately following the runway number as part of the takeoff clearance. This information must be issued in conjunction with the takeoff clearance.

1. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance for the duration of the construction project when the runway is temporarily shortened.

2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared for takeoff."

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"Runway Two-Seven at Juliet, intersection departure shortened, cleared for takeoff."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

h. *USAF.* When an aircraft is cleared for takeoff, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the departing aircraft.

i. *USA/USN/USAF.* Issue surface wind and takeoff clearance to aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number), WIND (surface wind in direction and velocity). CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

3−9−11. CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

Cancel a previously issued clearance for takeoff and inform the pilot of the reason if circumstances require. Once an aircraft has started takeoff roll, cancel the takeoff clearance only for the purpose of safety.

NOTE−
In no case should a takeoff clearance be canceled after an aircraft has started its takeoff roll solely for the purpose of meeting traffic management requirements/EDCT.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE (reason).

Section 10. Arrival Procedures and Separation

3−10−1. LANDING INFORMATION

Provide current landing information, as appropriate, to arriving aircraft. Landing information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code. Runway, wind, and altimeter may be omitted if a pilot uses the phrase "have numbers." Issue landing information by including the following:

NOTE−
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast.

a. Specific traffic pattern information (may be omitted if the aircraft is to circle the airport to the left).

PHRASEOLOGY−
ENTER LEFT/RIGHT BASE.

STRAIGHT−IN.

MAKE STRAIGHT−IN.

STRAIGHT−IN APPROVED.

RIGHT TRAFFIC.

MAKE RIGHT TRAFFIC.

RIGHT TRAFFIC APPROVED.

CONTINUE.

NOTE−
Additional information should normally be issued with instructions to continue. Example: "continue, report one mile final"; "continue, expect landing clearance two mile final"; etc.

b. Runway in use.

c. Surface wind.

d. Altimeter setting.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−7−1, Current Settings.

e. Any supplementary information.

f. Clearance to land.

g. Requests for additional position reports. Use prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts. This does not preclude the use of the legs of the traffic pattern as reporting points.

NOTE−
At some locations, VFR checkpoints are depicted on sectional aeronautical and terminal area charts. In selecting geographical fixes, depicted VFR checkpoints are preferred unless the pilot exhibits a familiarity with the local area.

h. Ceiling and visibility if either is below basic VFR minima.

i. Low level wind shear or microburst advisories when available.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−8 , Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.

j. Issue braking action for the runway in use as received from pilots or the airport management when Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−5 , Braking Action Advisories.

k. If the pilot does not indicate the appropriate ATIS code, and when a runway has been shortened, controllers must ensure that pilots receive the runway number combined with a shortened announcement for all arriving aircraft.

3−10−2. FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES

a. Forward the following, as appropriate, to the control facility having IFR jurisdiction in your area. You may eliminate those items that, because of local conditions or situations, are fully covered in a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

1. When you clear an arriving aircraft for a visual approach.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−1 , Visual Approach.

2. Aircraft arrival time.

3. Cancellation of IFR flight plan.

4. Information on a missed approach, unreported, or overdue aircraft.

5. Runway in use.

6. Weather as required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−6 , Reporting Weather Conditions.

b. When the weather is below 1,000 feet or 3 miles or the highest circling minimums, whichever is greater, issue current weather to aircraft executing an instrument approach if it changes from that on the ATIS or that previously forwarded to the center/approach control.

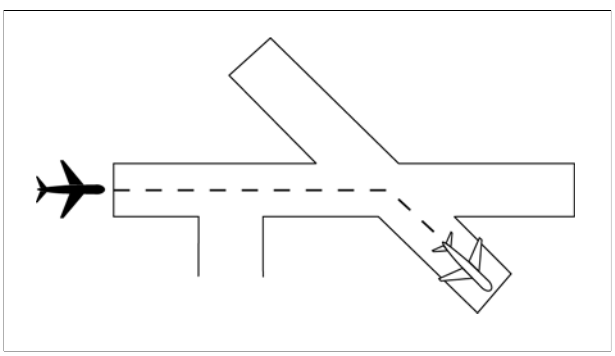
3−10−3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

a. Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

1. The other aircraft has landed and is clear of the runway. (See FIG 3−10−1.) Between sunrise and sunset, if you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft has landed, it need not be clear of the runway if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

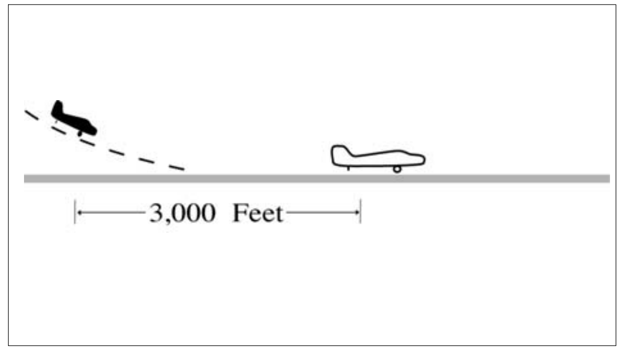
REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Clear of the Runway.

FIG 3−10−1
Same Runway Separation



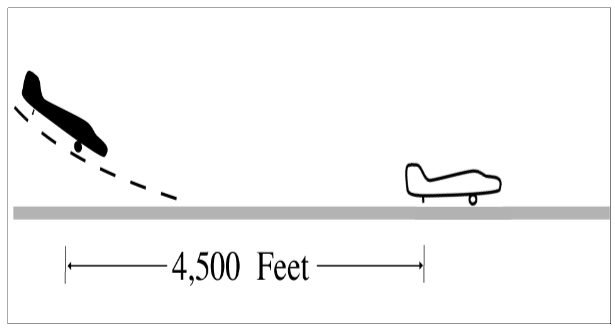
(a) When a Category I aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II− *3,000 feet*.
(See FIG 3−10−2.)

FIG 3−10−2
Same Runway Separation



(b) When a Category II aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II− *4,500 feet.*
(See FIG 3−10−3.)

FIG 3−10−3
Same Runway Separation



2. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the runway end. (See FIG 3−10−4). If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft is airborne, it need not have crossed the runway end if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

(a) Category I aircraft landing behind Category I or II− *3,000 feet*.

(b) Category II aircraft landing behind Category I or II− *4,500 feet.*

(c) When either is a category III aircraft− *6,000 feet*. (See FIG 3−10−5.)

FIG 3−10−4
Same Runway Separation

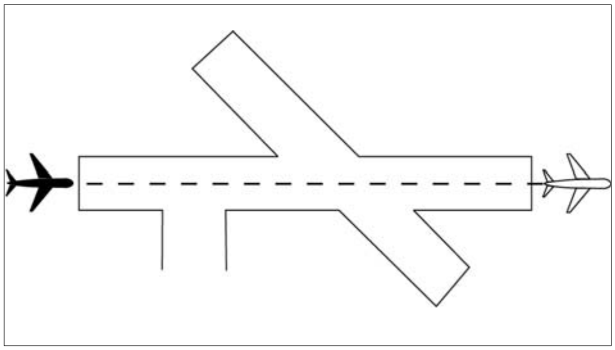
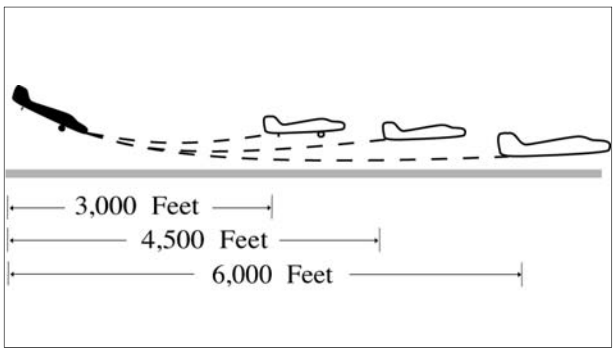


FIG 3−10−5
Same Runway Separation



3. When the succeeding aircraft is a helicopter, visual separation may be applied in lieu of using distance minima.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

b. Issue wake turbulence advisories, and the position, altitude if known, and the direction of flight of:

1. The super or heavy to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving super or_heavy on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

2. The B757/large aircraft to a small aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving B757/large aircraft on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 12, Pilot Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Runway two seven left cleared to land, caution wake turbulence, heavy Boeing 747 departing runway two seven right."*

2. *"Number two follow Boeing 757 on two-mile final. Caution wake turbulence."*

3−10−4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH SEPARATION

Issue traffic information to each aircraft operating on intersecting runways.

a. Separate an arriving aircraft using one runway from another aircraft using an intersecting runway or a nonintersecting runway when the flight paths intersect by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold or flight path of the other aircraft until one of the following conditions exists:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

1. The preceding aircraft has departed and passed the intersection/flight path or is airborne and turning to avert any conflict.
(See FIG 3−10−6 and FIG 3−10−7.)

FIG 3−10−6
Intersecting Runway Separation

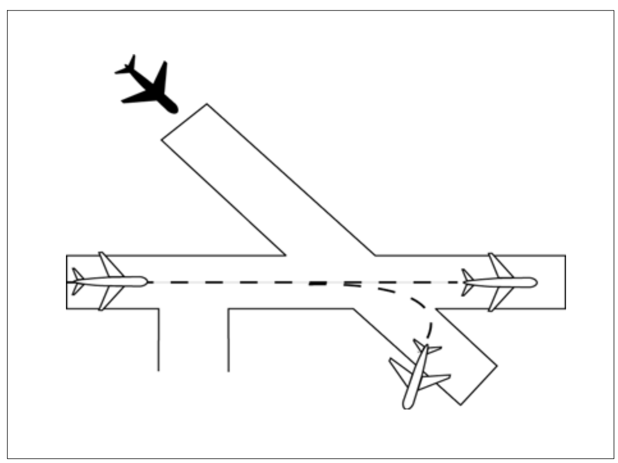
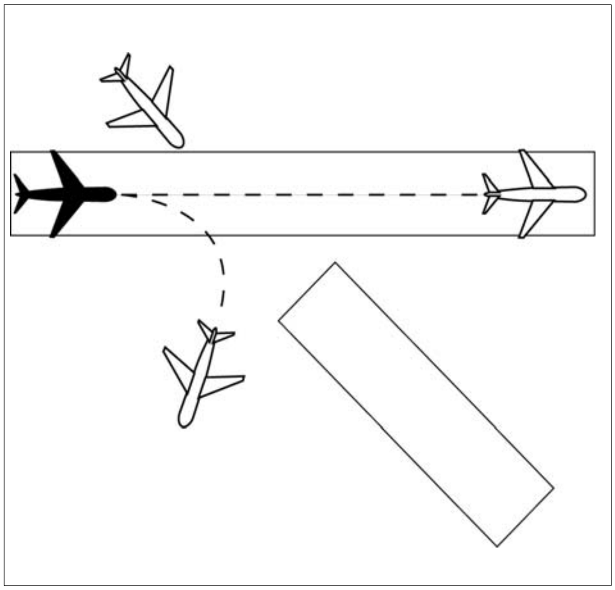


FIG 3−10−7
Intersecting Runway Separation



2. A preceding arriving aircraft is clear of the landing runway, completed landing roll and will hold short of the intersection/flight path, or has passed the intersection/flight path.
(See FIG 3−10−8 and FIG 3−10−9.)

FIG 3−10−8
Intersection Runway Separation

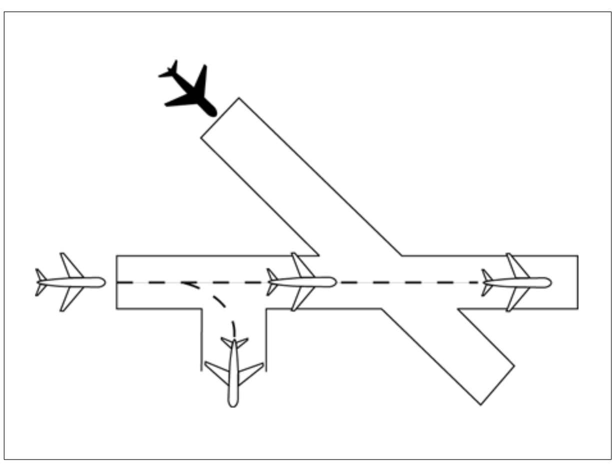
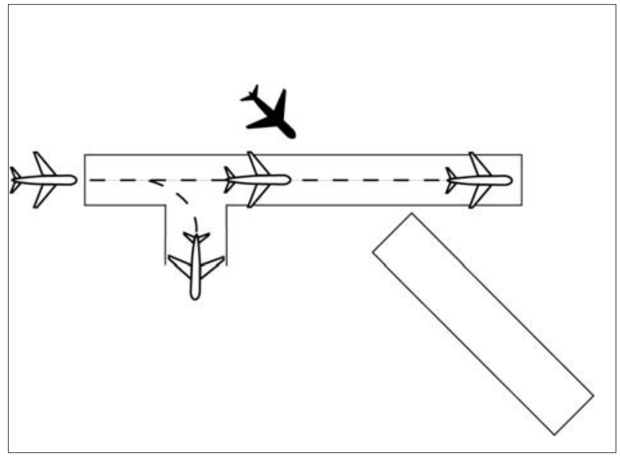


FIG 3−10−9
Intersection Runway Separation



NOTE−
When visual separation is being applied by the tower, appropriate control instructions and traffic advisories must be issued to ensure go around or missed approaches avert any conflict with the flight path of traffic on the other runway.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation, subpara a2.

b. "USA/USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE." An aircraft may be authorized to takeoff from one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft lands on one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway, or an aircraft lands to hold short of an intersecting taxiway or some other predetermined point such as an approach/departure flight path using procedures specified in the current LAHSO directive. The procedure must be approved by the air traffic manager and be in accordance with a facility directive. The following conditions apply:

NOTE−
Application of these procedures does not relieve controllers from the responsibility of providing other appropriate separation contained in this order.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−3−7, Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO).

1. A simultaneous takeoff and landing operation must only be conducted in VFR conditions.

2. Instruct the landing aircraft to hold short of the intersecting runway being used by the aircraft taking off. In the case of simultaneous landings and no operational benefit is lost, restrict the aircraft of the lesser weight category (if known). LAHSO clearances must only be issued to aircraft that are listed in the current LAHSO directive, whose Available Landing Distance (ALD) does not exceed the landing distance requirement for the runway condition.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY (runway number), (traffic, type aircraft or other information).

NOTE−
Pilots who prefer to use the full length of the runway or a runway different from that specified are expected to advise ATC prior to landing.

3. Issue traffic information to both aircraft involved and obtain an acknowledgment from each. Request a read back of hold short instructions when they are not received from the pilot of the restricted aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Runway one eight cleared to land, hold short of runway one four left, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one four left."*

(When pilot of restricted aircraft responds with only acknowledgment):

"Runway one four left cleared to land, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one eight will hold short of the intersection."

"Read back hold short instructions."

2. *"Runway three six cleared to land, hold short of runway three three, traffic, (type aircraft) departing runway three three."*

"Traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway three six will hold short of the intersection, runway three three cleared for takeoff."

4. Issue the measured distance from the landing threshold to the hold short point rounded "down" to the nearest 50−foot increment if requested by either aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
"Five thousand fifty feet available."

5. The conditions in subparas b2, 3, and 4 must be met in sufficient time for the pilots to take other action, if desired, and no later than the time landing clearance is issued.

6. Land and Hold Short runways must be free of any contamination as described in the current LAHSO directive, with no reports that braking action is less than good.

7. There is no tailwind for the landing aircraft restricted to hold short of the intersection. The wind may be described as "calm" when appropriate.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−6−5, Calm Wind Conditions.

8. The aircraft required landing distances are listed in the current LAHSO directive.

9. STOL aircraft operations are in accordance with a letter of agreement with the aircraft operator/pilot or the pilot confirms that it is a STOL aircraft.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing aircraft on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure by the appropriate radar separation or the following interval: (See FIG 3-10-10):

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

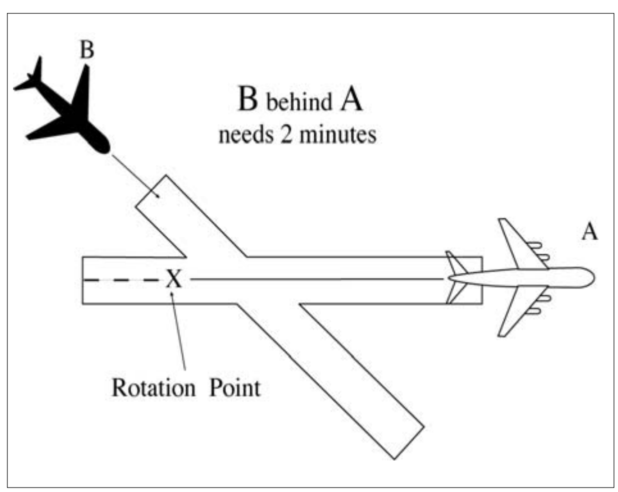
2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the super, heavy, or B757 to:

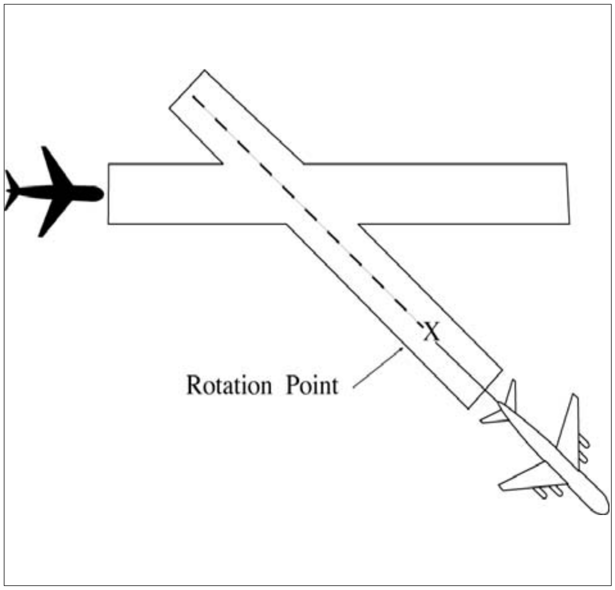
REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 11, Pilot Responsibility.

FIG 3−10−10
Intersecting Runway Separation



1. All aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind a departing super or heavy, or a small aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind a departing B757, if the arrival flight path will cross the takeoff path behind the departing aircraft rotation point. (See FIG 3−10−11.)

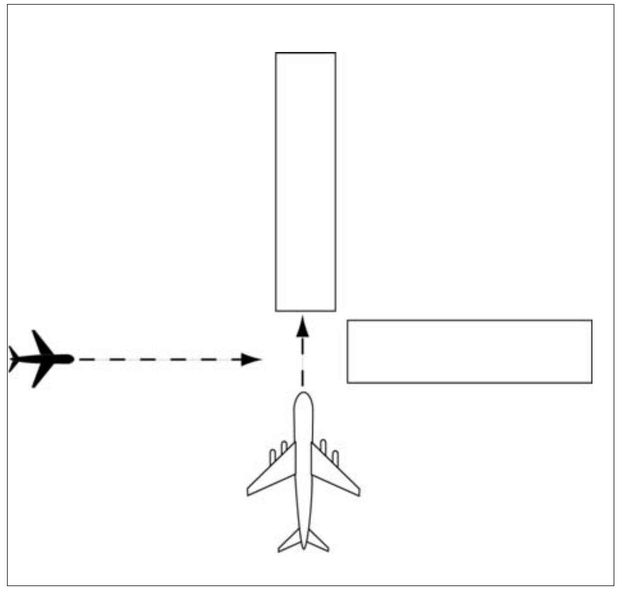
FIG 3−10−11
Intersecting Runway Separation



EXAMPLE−
"Runway niner cleared to land. Caution wake turbulence, heavy C−One Forty One departing runway one five."

2. All VFR aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind an arriving super or heavy, and VFR small aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind a B757**,** if the arrival flight path**s** will cross. (See FIG 3−10−12.)

FIG 3−10−12
Intersecting Runway Separation



EXAMPLE−
"Runway niner cleared to land. Caution wake turbulence, Boeing Seven Fifty Seven landing runway three six."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−4, Approaches to Multiple Runways.

3−10−5. LANDING CLEARANCE

a. When issuing a clearance to land, first state the runway number followed by the landing clearance. If the landing runway is changed, controllers must preface the landing clearance with "Change to runway."

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

Or

CHANGE TO RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

b. Procedures.

1. Facilities without a safety logic system or facilities with the safety logic system inoperative or in the limited configuration must not clear an aircraft for a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, option, or unrestricted low approach when a departing aircraft has been instructed to line up and wait or is holding in position on the same runway. The landing clearance may be issued once the aircraft in position has started takeoff roll.

2. Facilities using safety logic in the full core alert runway configuration may issue a landing clearance, full–stop, touch–and–go, stop–and–go, option, or unrestricted low approach to an arriving aircraft with an aircraft holding in position or taxiing to LUAW on the same runway except when reported weather conditions are less than ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles.

c. Inform the closest aircraft that is requesting a full–stop, touch–and–go, stop–and–go, option, or unrestricted low approaches when there is traffic authorized to line up and wait on the same runway.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta One, Runway One–Eight, continue, traffic holding in position."

"Delta One, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."
"Twin Cessna Four Four Golf, Runway One-Niner base approved, traffic holding in position."
"Baron Two Five Foxtrot, Runway One-Niner Right extend downwind, tower will call your base, traffic holding in position."

d. USA/USN/USAF. Issue runway identifier along with surface wind when clearing an aircraft to land, touch and go, stop and go, low approach, or the option.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), WIND (surface wind direction and velocity), CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE–
A clearance to land means that appropriate separation on the landing runway will be ensured. A landing clearance does not relieve the pilot from compliance with any previously issued restriction.

e. Whenever a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, state the word "shortened" immediately following the runway number as part of the landing clearance. This information must be issued in conjunction with the landing clearance.

1. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the landing clearance for the duration of the construction project when the runway is temporarily shortened.

2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the landing clearance until the Chart Supplement U.S. is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED TO LAND.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared to land."

f. If landing clearance is temporarily withheld, insert the word "shortened" immediately after the runway number to advise the pilot to continue.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CONTINUE.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, continue."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

3–10–6. ANTICIPATING SEPARATION

a. Landing clearance to succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if you observe the positions of the aircraft and determine that prescribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft crosses the landing threshold. Issue traffic information to the succeeding aircraft if a preceding arrival has not been previously reported and when traffic will be departing prior to their arrival.

EXAMPLE–
"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land, number two following a United Seven–Thirty–Seven two mile final. Traffic will depart prior to your arrival."

"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic will depart prior to your arrival."

NOTE–
Landing sequence number is optional at tower facilities where the arrival sequence to the runway is established by the approach control.

b. Anticipating separation must not be applied when conducting LUAW operations, except as authorized in paragraph 3–10–5b2. Issue applicable traffic information when using this provision.

EXAMPLE–
"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic will be a Boeing Seven–Fifty–Seven holding in position."

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

3–10–7. LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION

When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he/she should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.

PHRASEOLOGY−
NOT IN SIGHT, RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE−
Aircraft observance on the CTRD satisfies the visually observed requirement.

3−10−8. WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE

Do not withhold a landing clearance indefinitely even though it appears a violation of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations has been committed. The apparent violation might be the result of an emergency situation. In any event, assist the pilot to the extent possible.

3−10−9. RUNWAY EXITING

a. Instruct aircraft where to turn-off the runway after landing, when appropriate, and advise the aircraft to hold short of a runway or taxiway if required for traffic.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TURN LEFT/RIGHT (taxiway/runway),

or

IF ABLE, TURN LEFT/RIGHT (taxiway/runway)

and if required

HOLD SHORT OF (runway).

NOTE−
Runway exiting or taxi instructions should not normally be issued to an aircraft prior to, or immediately after, touchdown.

b. Taxi instructions must be provided to the aircraft by the local controller when:

1. Compliance with ATC instructions will be required before the aircraft can change to ground control, or

2. The aircraft will be required to enter an active runway in order to taxi clear of the landing runway.

EXAMPLE−
"U.S. Air Ten Forty Two, turn right next taxiway, cross runway two one, contact ground point seven."

"U.S. Air Ten Forty Two, turn right on Alfa/next taxiway, cross Bravo, hold short of Charlie, contact ground point seven."

NOTE−
1. *An aircraft is expected to taxi clear of the runway unless otherwise directed by ATC. Pilots must not exit the landing runway on to an intersecting runway unless authorized by ATC. In the absence of ATC instructions, an aircraft should taxi clear of the landing runway by clearing the hold position marking associated with the landing runway even if that requires the aircraft to protrude into or enter another taxiway/ramp area. This does not authorize an aircraft to cross a subsequent taxiway or ramp after clearing the landing runway.*

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Clear of the Runway.

2. *The pilot is responsible for ascertaining when the aircraft is clear of the runway by clearing the runway holding position marking associated with the landing runway.*

c. Ground control and local control must protect a taxiway/runway/ramp intersection if an aircraft is required to enter that intersection to clear the landing runway.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−1−7, Use of Active Runways.

d. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when not received from the pilot.

EXAMPLE−
"American Four Ninety−two, turn left at Taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway 27 Right."

or

"American Four Ninety−two, turn left at Charlie, hold short of Runway 27 Right."

"American Four Ninety Two, Roger."

"American Four Ninety−two, read back hold instructions."

NOTE−
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

3−10−10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH

A low approach with an altitude restriction of not less than 500 feet above the airport may be authorized except over an aircraft in takeoff position or a departure aircraft. Do not clear aircraft for restricted altitude low approaches over personnel unless airport authorities have advised these personnel that the approaches will be conducted. Advise the approaching aircraft of the location of applicable ground traffic, personnel, or equipment.

NOTE−
1. *The 500 feet restriction is a minimum. Higher altitudes should be used when warranted. For example, 1,000 feet is more appropriate for super or heavy aircraft operating over unprotected personnel or small aircraft on or near the runway.*

2. *This authorization includes altitude restricted low approaches over preceding landing or taxiing aircraft. Restricted low approaches are not authorized over aircraft in takeoff position or departing aircraft.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED LOW APPROACH AT OR ABOVE (altitude). TRAFFIC (description and location).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel on Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−6, Traffic Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−2−1, Light Signals.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−3, Timely Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−4, Line Up and Wait (LUAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−3, Same Runway Separation.

3−10−11. CLOSED TRAFFIC

Approve/disapprove pilot requests to remain in closed traffic for successive operations subject to local traffic conditions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LEFT/RIGHT (if required) CLOSED TRAFFIC APPROVED. REPORT (position if required),

or

UNABLE CLOSED TRAFFIC, (additional information as required).

NOTE−
Segregated traffic patterns for helicopters to runways and other areas may be established by letter of agreement or other local operating procedures.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−4, Runway Proximity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−4, Line Up and Wait (LUAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−3, Same Runway Separation.

3−10−12. OVERHEAD MANEUVER

Issue the following to arriving aircraft that will conduct an overhead maneuver:

a. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. Omit either or both if standard or when you know the pilot is familiar with a nonstandard procedure.

PHRASEOLOGY−
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

b. Request for report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT INITIAL.

c. “Break” information and request for pilot report. Specify the point of “break” only if nonstandard. Request the pilot to report “break” if required for traffic or other reasons.

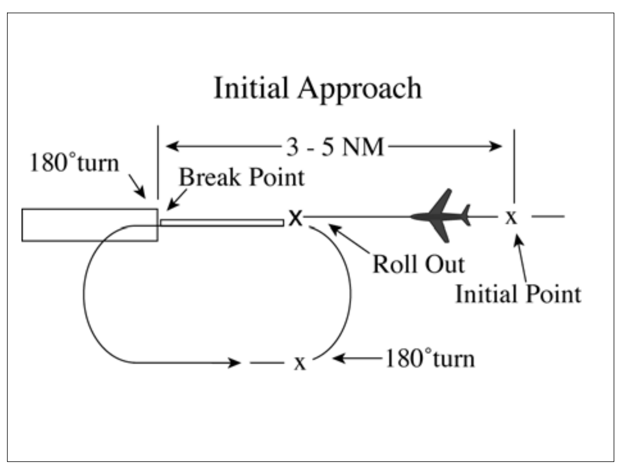
PHRASEOLOGY−
BREAK AT (specified point).

REPORT BREAK.

d. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the “initial point” on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved.

NOTE−
Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver or after landing.

FIG 3−10−13
Overhead Maneuver



EXAMPLE−
"Air Force Three Six Eight, Runway Six, wind zero seven zero at eight, pattern altitude six thousand, report initial."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, break at midfield, report break."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, cleared to land."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, Runway Three One, wind three three zero at one four, right turns, report initial."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, report break."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, cleared to land."

e. Timely and positive controller action is required to prevent a conflict when an overhead pattern could extend into the path of a departing or a missed approach aircraft. Local procedures and/or coordination requirements should be set forth in an appropriate letter of agreement, facility directive, base flying manual etc., when the frequency of occurrence warrants.

3−10−13. SIMULATED FLAMEOUT (SFO) APPROACHES/EMERGENCY LANDING PATTERN (ELP) OPERATIONS/PRACTICE PRECAUTIONARY APPROACHES

a. Authorize military aircraft to make SFO/ELP/practice precautionary approaches if the following conditions are met:

1. A letter of agreement or local operating procedure is in effect between the military flying organization and affected ATC facility.

(a) Include specific coordination, execution, and approval procedures for the operation.

(b) The exchange or issuance of traffic information as agreed to in any interfacility letter of agreement is accomplished.

(c) Include a statement in the procedure that clarifies at which points SFOs/ELPs may/may not be terminated. (See FIG 3−10−14 and FIG 3−10−16.)

2. Traffic information regarding aircraft in radio communication with or visible to tower controllers which are operating within or adjacent to the flameout maneuvering area is provided to the SFO/ELP aircraft and other concerned aircraft.

3. The high-key altitude or practice precautionary approach maneuvering altitudes of the aircraft concerned are obtained prior to approving the approach. (See FIG 3−10−14 and FIG 3−10−16.)

NOTE−
1. *Practice precautionary/SFO/ELP approaches are authorized only for specific aircraft. Any aircraft, however, might make precautionary approaches, when engine failure is considered possible. The practice precautionary approach maneuvering area/altitudes may not conform to the standard SFO/ELP maneuvering area/altitudes.*

2. *SFO/ELP approaches generally require high descent rates. Visibility ahead and beneath the aircraft is greatly restricted.*

3. *Pattern adjustments for aircraft conducting SFOs and ELPs may impact the effectiveness of SFO and ELP training.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−12, Low Approach and Touch-and-Go.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 9−3−7, Simulated Flameout (SFO)/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations.

b. For overhead SFO/ELP approaches:

1. Request a report at the entry point.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT (high or low) KEY (as appropriate).

2. Request a report at low key.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT LOW KEY.

3. At low key, issue low approach clearance or alternate instructions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−8−1, Sequence/Spacing Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−1−7, Inflight Emergencies Involving Military Fighter-type Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 9−3−7, Simulated Flameout (SFO)/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations.

c. For straight−in simulation flameout approaches:

1. Request a position report from aircraft conducting straight−in SFO approaches.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT (distance) MILE SIMULATED FLAMEOUT FINAL.

2. At the appropriate position on final (normally no closer than 3 miles), issue low approach clearance or alternate instruction. (See FIG 3−10−15.)

FIG 3−10−14
Simulated Flameout [1]

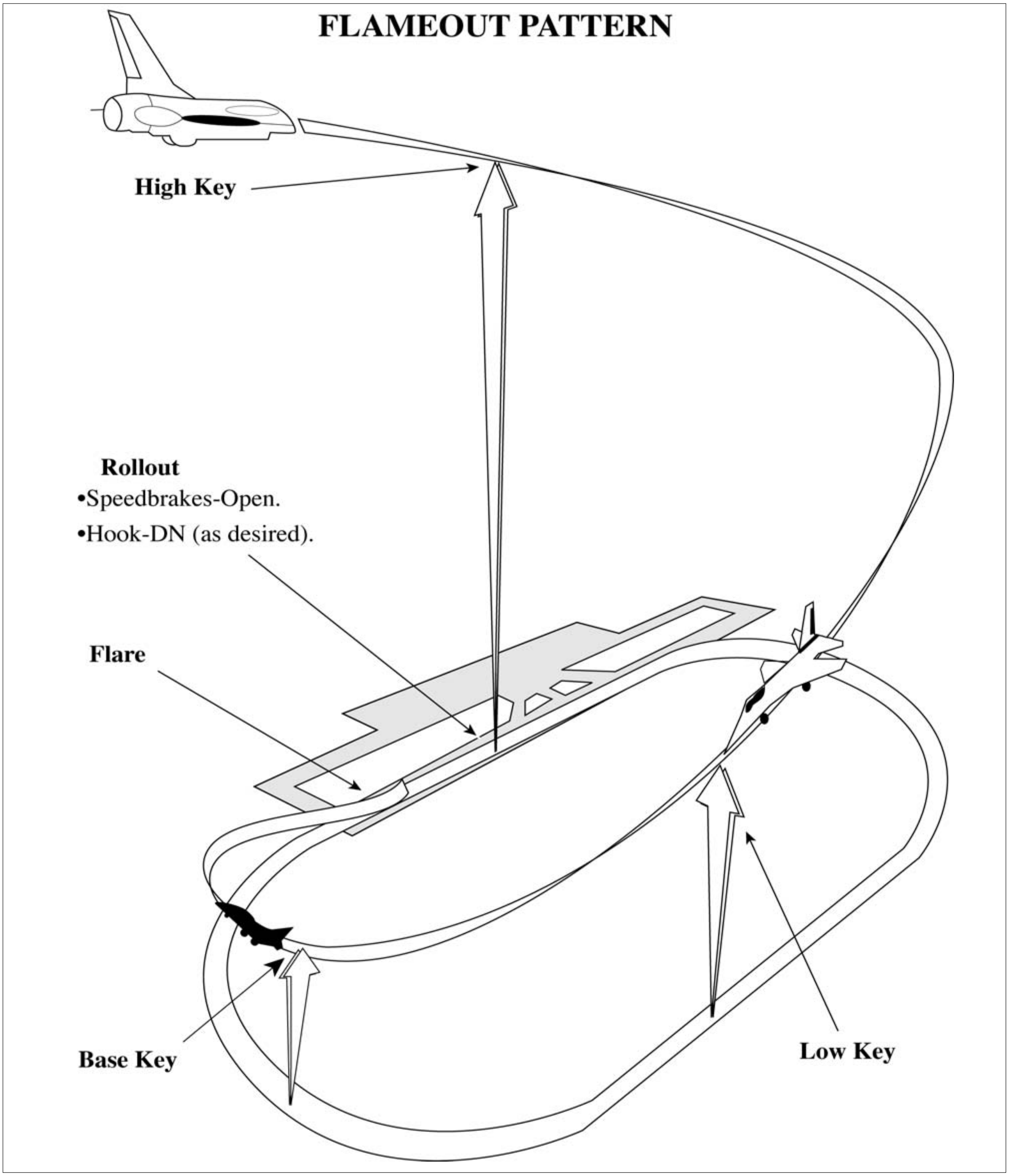


FIG 3−10−15
Simulated Flameout [2]

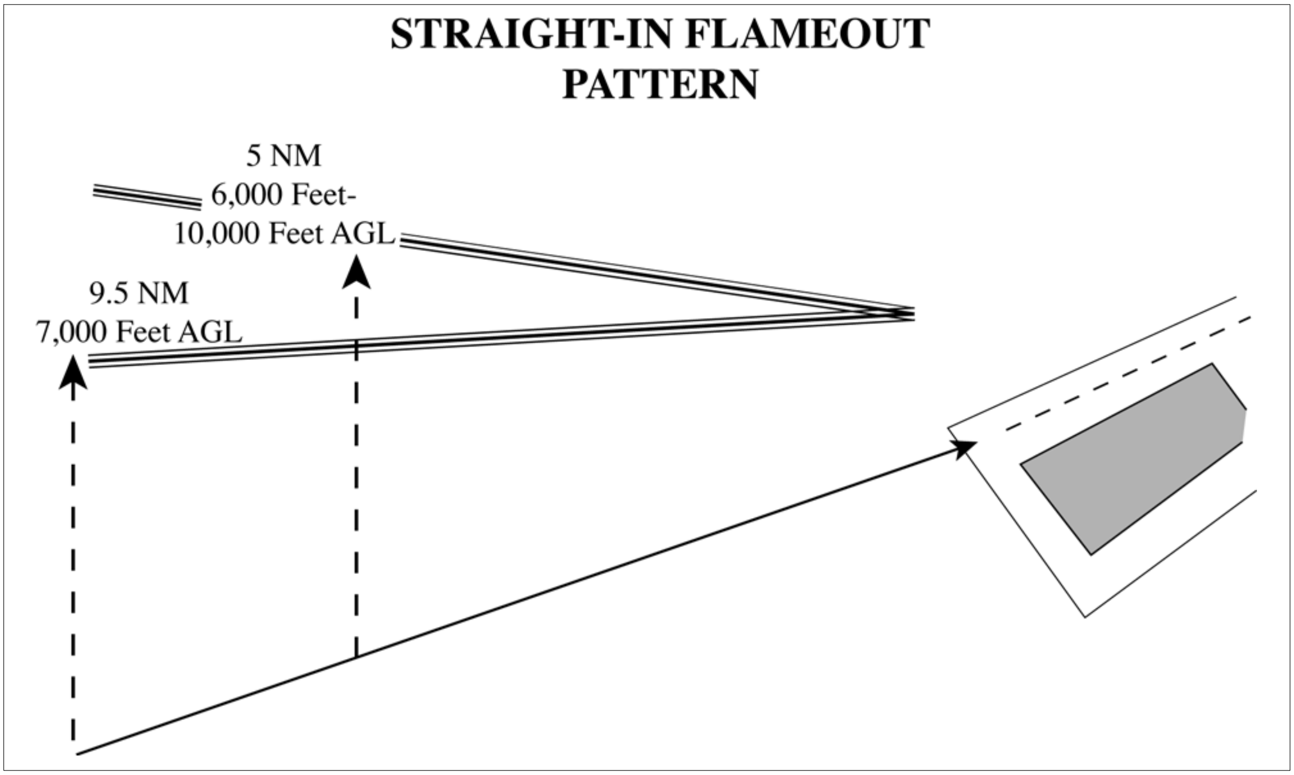
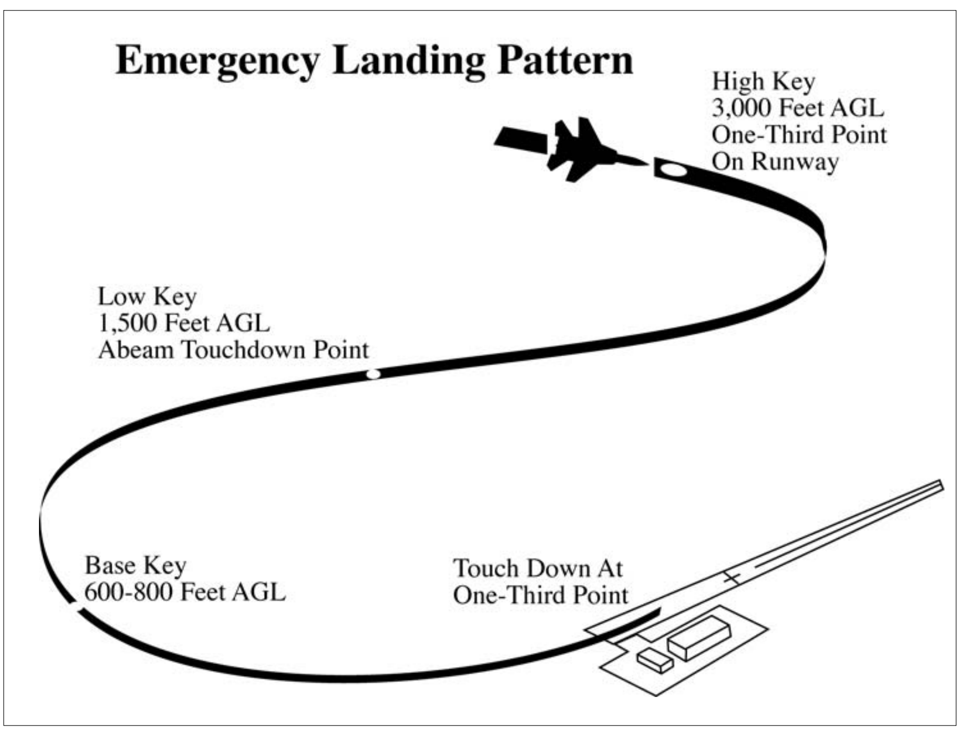


FIG 3−10−16
Emergency Landing Pattern



Section 11. Helicopter Operations

3−11−1. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATION

a. When necessary for a wheeled helicopter to taxi on the surface, use the phraseology in para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.

NOTE−
Ground taxiing uses less fuel than hover-taxiing and minimizes air turbulence. However, under certain conditions, such as rough, soft, or uneven terrain, it may become necessary to hover/air-taxi for safety considerations. Helicopters with articulating rotors (usually designs with three or more main rotor blades) are subject to "ground resonance" and may, on rare occasions, suddenly lift off the ground to avoid severe damage or destruction.

b. When requested or necessary for a helicopter/VTOL aircraft to proceed at a slow speed above the surface, normally below 20 knots and in ground effect, use the following phraseology, supplemented as appropriate with the phraseology in para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOVER-TAXI (supplemented, as appropriate, from para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.)

CAUTION (dust, blowing snow, loose debris, taxiing light aircraft, personnel, etc.).

NOTE−
Hover-taxiing consumes fuel at a high burn rate, and helicopter downwash turbulence (produced in ground effect) increases significantly with larger and heavier helicopters.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Hover Taxi.
AIM, Para 4−3−17, VFR Helicopter Operations at Controlled Airports.

c. When requested or necessary for a helicopter to proceed expeditiously from one point to another, normally below 100 feet AGL and at airspeeds above 20 knots, use the following phraseology, supplemented as appropriate with the phraseology in para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.

PHRASEOLOGY−
AIR-TAXI:

VIA (direct, as requested, or specified route)

TO (location, heliport, helipad, operating/movement area, active/inactive runway).

AVOID (aircraft/vehicles/personnel).
If required,

REMAIN AT OR BELOW (altitude).

CAUTION (wake turbulence or other reasons above).

LAND AND CONTACT TOWER,

or

HOLD FOR (reason− takeoff clearance, release, landing/taxiing aircraft, etc.).

NOTE−
Air-taxi is the preferred method for helicopter movements on airports provided ground operations/conditions permit. Air-taxi authorizes the pilot to proceed above the surface either via hover-taxi or flight at speeds more than 20 knots. Unless otherwise requested or instructed, the pilot is expected to remain below 100 feet AGL. The pilot is solely responsible for selecting a safe airspeed for the altitude/operation being conducted.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Air Taxi.
AIM, Para 4−3−17, VFR Helicopter Operations at Controlled Airports.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

d. Avoid clearances which require small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 10 and Para 11.

3−11−2. HELICOPTER TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

a. Issue takeoff clearances from movement areas other than active runways or in diverse directions from active runways, with additional instructions as necessary. Whenever possible, issue takeoff clearance in lieu of extended hover−taxi or air−taxi operations.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Present position, taxiway, helipad, numbers) MAKE RIGHT/LEFT TURN FOR (direction, points of compass, heading, NAVAID radial) DEPARTURE/DEPARTURE ROUTE (number, name, or code), AVOID (aircraft/vehicles/personnel),

or

REMAIN (direction) OF (active runways, parking areas, passenger terminals, etc.).

CAUTION (power lines, unlighted obstructions, trees, wake turbulence, etc.).

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

b. If takeoff is requested from non−movement areas, an area not authorized for helicopter use, or an area off the airport, and, in your judgment, the operation appears to be reasonable, use the following phraseology instead of the takeoff clearance in subpara a.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DEPARTURE FROM (requested location) WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK (additional instructions, as necessary). USE CAUTION (if applicable).

c. Unless agreed to by the pilot, do not issue downwind takeoffs if the tailwind exceeds 5 knots.

NOTE−
A pilot request to takeoff from a given point in a given direction constitutes agreement.

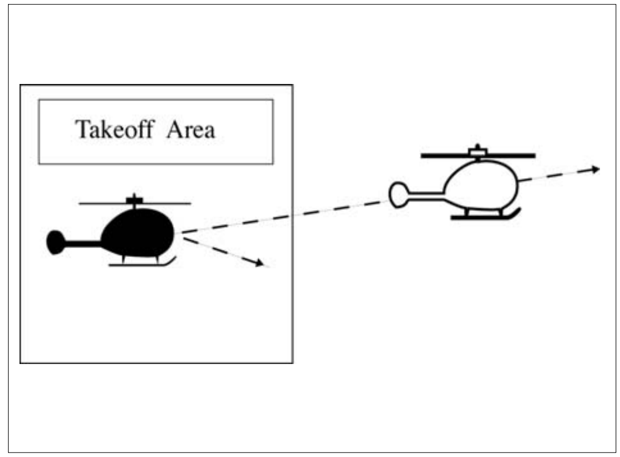
3−11−3. HELICOPTER DEPARTURE SEPARATION

Separate a departing helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not takeoff until one of the following conditions exists:

NOTE−
Helicopters performing air-taxiing operations within the boundary of the airport are considered to be taxiing aircraft.

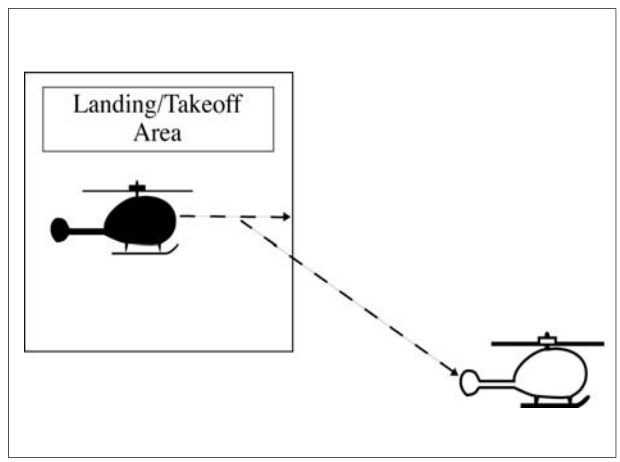
a. A preceding, departing helicopter has left the takeoff area. (See FIG 3−11−1.)

FIG 3−11−1
Helicopter Departure Separation



b. A preceding, arriving helicopter has taxied off the landing area. (See FIG 3−11−2.)

FIG 3−11−2
Helicopter Departure Separation



3−11−4. HELICOPTER ARRIVAL SEPARATION

Separate an arriving helicopter from other helicopters by ensuring that it does not land until one of the following conditions exists:

a. A preceding, arriving helicopter has come to a stop or taxied off the landing area.
(See FIG 3−11−3 and FIG 3−11−4.)

FIG 3−11−3
Helicopter Arrival Separation

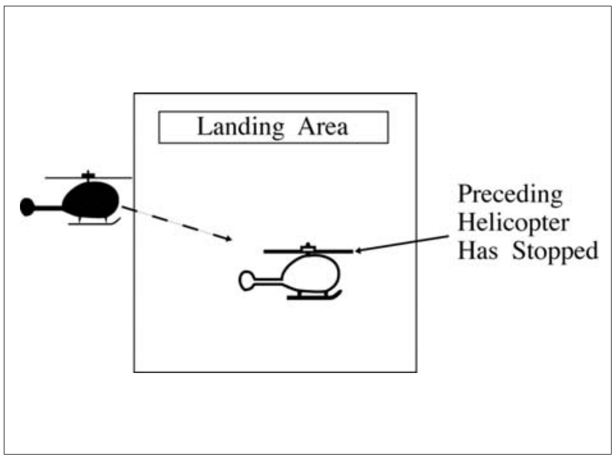
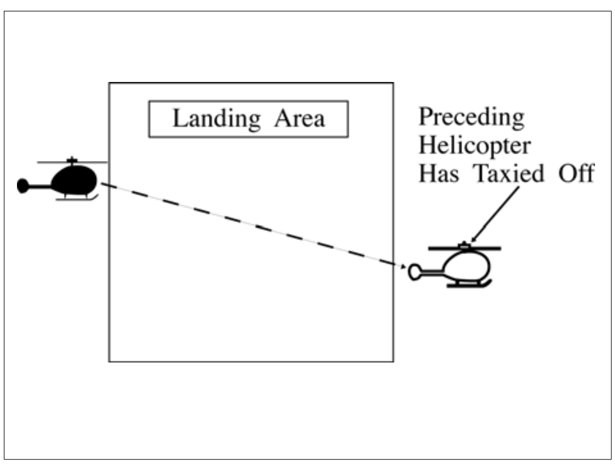
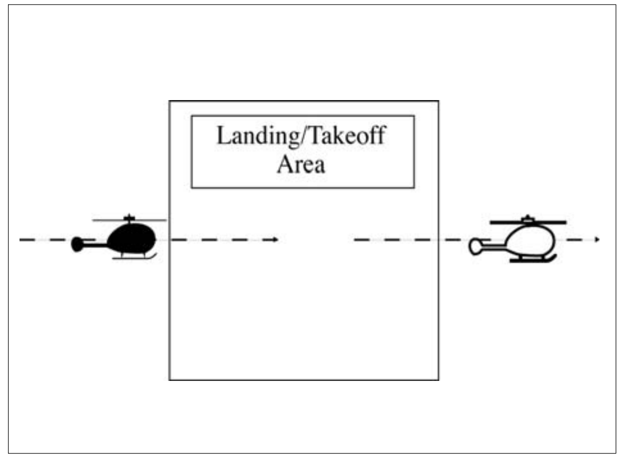


FIG 3−11−4
Helicopter Arrival Separation



b. A preceding, departing helicopter has left the landing area. (See FIG 3−11−5.)

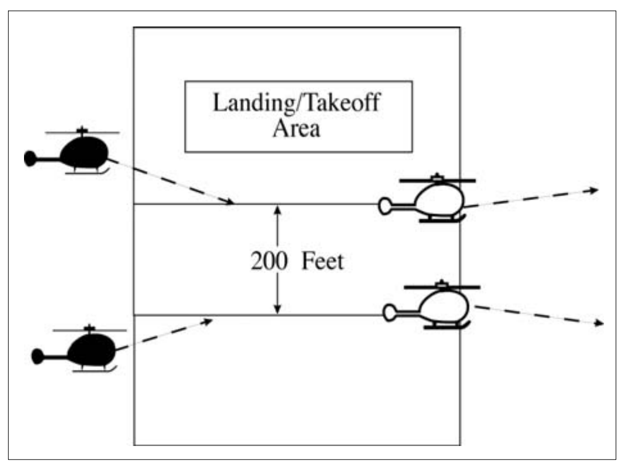
FIG 3−11−5
Helicopter Arrival Separation



3−11−5. SIMULTANEOUS LANDINGS OR TAKEOFFS

Authorize helicopters to conduct simultaneous landings or takeoffs if the distance between the landing or takeoff points is at least 200 feet and the courses to be flown do not conflict. Refer to surface markings to determine the 200 foot minimum, or instruct a helicopter to remain at least 200 feet from another helicopter. (See FIG 3−11−6.)

FIG 3−11−6
Simultaneous Helicopter Landings or Takeoffs



3−11−6. HELICOPTER LANDING CLEARANCE

a. Issue landing clearances to helicopters going to movement areas other than active runways or from diverse directions to points on active runways, with additional instructions as necessary. Whenever possible, issue a landing clearance in lieu of extended hover−taxi or air−taxi operations.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAKE APPROACH STRAIGHT−IN/CIRCLING LEFT/RIGHT TURN TO (location, runway, taxiway, helipad, Maltese cross) ARRIVAL/ARRIVAL ROUTE (number, name, or code).

HOLD SHORT OF (active runway, extended runway centerline, other).

REMAIN (direction/distance; e.g., 700 feet, 1 1/2 miles) OF/FROM (runway, runway centerline, other helicopter/aircraft).

CAUTION (power lines, unlighted obstructions, wake turbulence, etc.).

CLEARED TO LAND.

b. If landing is requested to non-movement areas, an area not authorized for helicopter use, or an area off the airport, and, in your judgment, the operation appears to be reasonable, use the following phraseology instead of the landing clearance in subpara a.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LANDING AT (requested location) WILL BE AT YOUR OWN RISK (additional instructions, as necessary). USE CAUTION (if applicable).

c. Unless agreed to by the pilot, do not issue downwind landings if the tailwind exceeds 5 knots.

NOTE−
A pilot request to land at a given point from a given direction constitutes agreement.

Section 12. Sea Lane Operations

3−12−1. APPLICATION

Where sea lanes are established and controlled, apply the provisions of this section.

3−12−2. DEPARTURE SEPARATION

Separate a departing aircraft from a preceding departing or arriving aircraft using the same sea lane by ensuring that it does not commence takeoff until:

a. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the end of the sea lane or turned to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3−12−1). If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks, the other aircraft need only be airborne if the following minimum distance exists between aircraft:

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved− *1,500 feet.*

2. When a Category I aircraft is preceded by a Category II aircraft− *3,000 feet.*

3. When either the succeeding or both are Category II aircraft− *3,000 feet.*

4. When either is a Category III aircraft− *6,000 feet.* (See FIG 3−12−2.)

FIG 3−12−1
Sea Lane Departure Operations

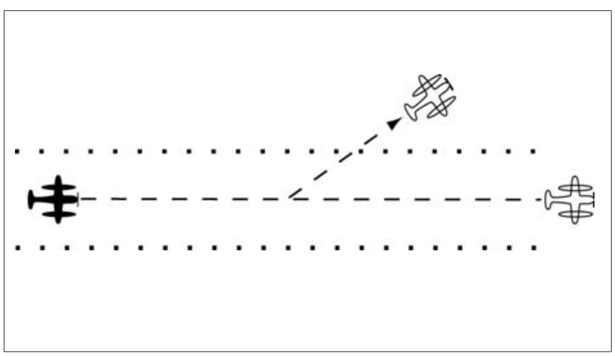
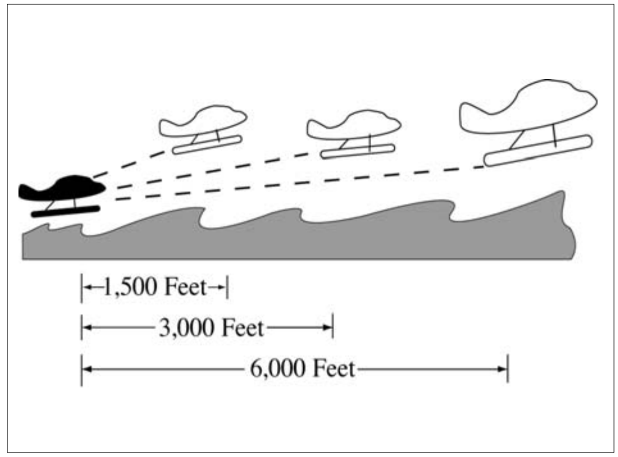


FIG 3−12−2
Sea Lane Departure Operations



b. A preceding landing aircraft has taxied out of the sea lane.

NOTE−
Due to the absence of braking capability, caution should be exercised when instructing a float plane to hold a position as the aircraft will continue to move because of prop generated thrust. Therefore, clearance to line up and wait should be followed by takeoff or other clearance as soon as is practical.

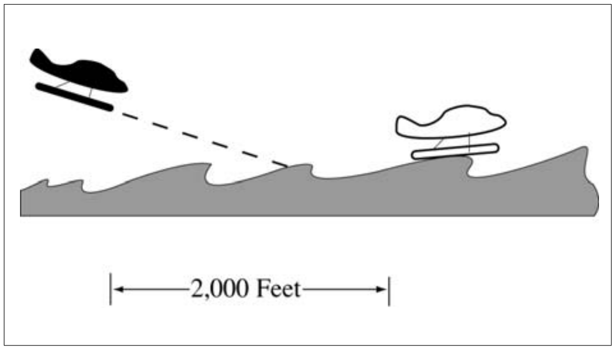
3−12−3. ARRIVAL SEPARATION

Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same sea lane by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists:

a. The other aircraft has landed and taxied out of the sea lane. Between sunrise and sunset, if you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft has landed, it need not be clear of the sea lane if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

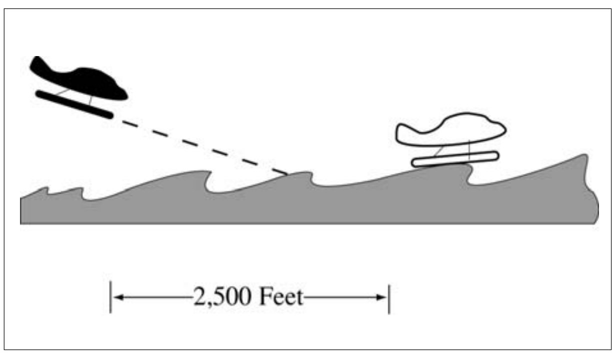
1. When a Category I aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II− *2,000 feet.* (See FIG 3−12−3.)

FIG 3−12−3
Sea Lane Arrival Operations



2. When a Category II aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II− *2,500 feet.* (See FIG 3−12−4.)

FIG 3−12−4
Sea Lane Arrival Operations
[View 2]



b. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the end of the sea lane or turned to avert any conflict. (See FIG 3−12−5.) If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft is airborne, it need not have crossed the end of the sea lane if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

1. When only Category I aircraft are involved− *1,500 feet.*

2. When either is a Category II aircraft− *3,000 feet.*

3. When either is a Category III aircraft− *6,000 feet*. (See FIG 3−12−6.)

FIG 3−12−5
Sea Lane Arrival Operations

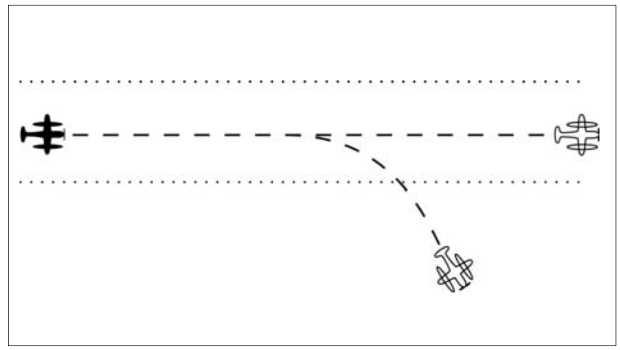
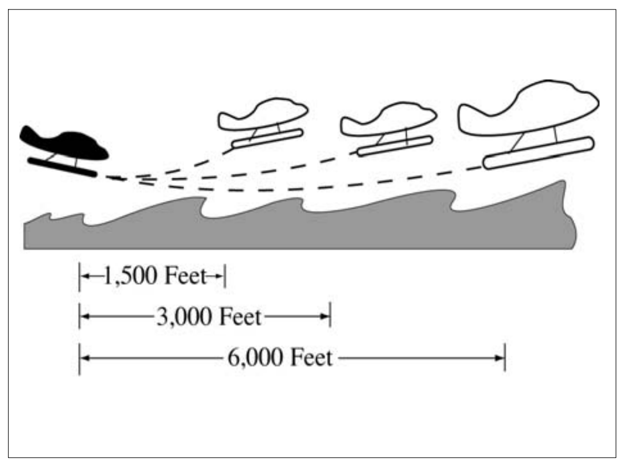


FIG 3−12−6
Sea Lane Arrival Operations



Chapter 4. IFR

Section 1. NAVAID Use Limitations

4−1−1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS

When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the table on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace. (For altitude and distance limitations, see TBL 4−1−1, TBL 4−1−2, and TBL 4−1−3) (For correct application of altitude and distance limitations see FIG 4−1−1 and FIG 4−1−2.)

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−1−5, Fix Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−2, Methods.

TBL 4−1−1
VOR/VORTAC/TACAN NAVAIDs
Normal Usable Altitudes and Radius Distances

Class	Altitude	Distance (miles)
T	12,000 and below	25
L	Below 18,000	40
H	Below 14,500	40
H	14,500 − 17,999	100
H	18,000 − FL 450	130
H	Above FL 450	100

TBL 4−1−2
L/MF Radio Beacon (RBN)
Usable Radius Distances for All Altitudes

Class	Power (watts)	Distance (miles)
CL	Under 25	15
MH	Under 50	25
H	50 − 1,999	50
HH	2,000 or more	75

TBL 4−1−3
ILS
Usable Height and Distance*

Height (feet) above transmitter	Distance (miles from transmitter)
4,500	10 (for glideslope)
4,500	18 (for localizer)
*Use the current flight check height/altitude limitations if different from the above minima.	

FIG 4−1−1
Application of Altitude and Distance Limitations [Application 1]

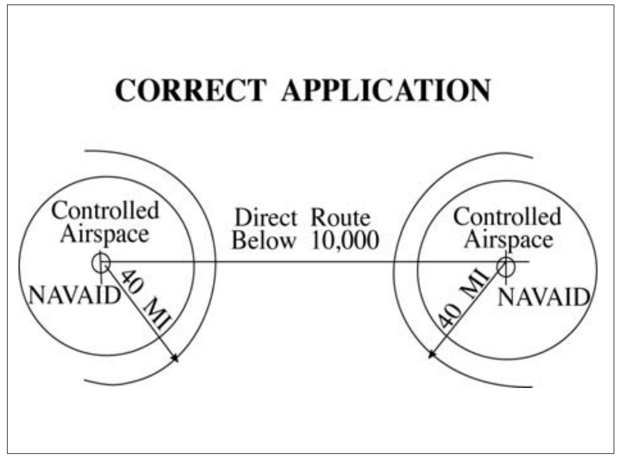
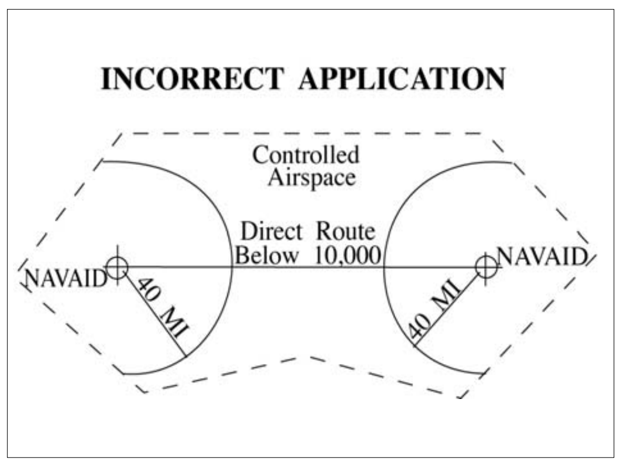


FIG 4−1−2
Application of Altitude and Distance Limitations [Application 2]



4−1−2. EXCEPTIONS

Altitude and distance limitations need not be applied when any of the following conditions are met:

a. Routing is initiated by ATC or requested by the pilot and radar monitoring is provided.

EXCEPTION-
GNSS equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V not on a random impromptu route.

NOTE–

1. *Except for GNSS-equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V, not on a random impromptu route, Paragraph 5-5-1, Application, requires radar separation be provided to RNAV aircraft operating at and below FL450 on Q routes or random RNAV routes, excluding oceanic airspace.*

2. *When a clearance is issued beyond the altitude and/or distance limitations of a NAVAID, in addition to being responsible for maintaining separation from other aircraft and airspace, the controller is responsible for providing aircraft with information and advice related to significant deviations from the expected flight path.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-3, Procedural Preference.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-10, Deviation Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6-5-4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes.
AIM, Para 5-1-8c, Direct Flights
AIM, Para 5-1-8d, Area Navigation (RNAV)
P/CG Term - Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)[ICAO].

b. Operational necessity requires and approval has been obtained from the Frequency Management and Flight Inspection Offices to exceed them.

c. Requested routing is via an MTR.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–2, Methods.

4–1–3. CROSSING ALTITUDE

Use an altitude consistent with the limitations of the aid when clearing an aircraft to cross or hold at a fix.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–2, Methods.

4–1–4. VFR-ON-TOP

Use a route not meeting service volume limitations only if an aircraft requests to operate "VFR-on-top" on this route.

NOTE–
Aircraft equipped with TACAN only are expected to:

1. *Define route of flight between TACAN or VORTAC NAVAIDs in the same manner as VOR-equipped aircraft.*

2. *Except in Class A airspace, submit requests for "VFR-on-top" flight where insufficient TACAN or VORTAC NAVAIDs exist to define the route.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–2, Methods.

4–1–5. FIX USE

Request aircraft position reports only over fixes shown on charts used for the altitude being flown, except as follows:

NOTE–
Waypoints filed in random RNAV routes automatically become compulsory reporting points for the flight unless otherwise advised by ATC.

a. Unless the pilot requests otherwise, use only those fixes shown on high altitude en route charts, high altitude instrument approach procedures charts, and SID charts when clearing military turbojet single-piloted aircraft.

b. Except for military single-piloted turbojet aircraft, unpublished fixes may be used if the name of the NAVAID and, if appropriate, the radial/course/azimuth and frequency/channel are given to the pilot. An unpublished fix is defined as one approved and planned for publication which is not yet depicted on the charts or one which is used in accord with the following:

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7130.3, Holding Pattern Criteria.

1. Unpublished fixes are formed by the en route radial and either a DME distance from the same NAVAID or an intersecting radial from an off-route VOR/VORTAC/TACAN. DME must be used in lieu of off-route radials, whenever possible.

2. Except where known signal coverage restrictions exist, an unpublished fix may be used for ATC purposes if its location does not exceed NAVAID altitude and distance limitation, and when off-route radials are used, the angle of divergence meets the criteria prescribed below.

NOTE–
Unpublished fixes should not negate the normal use of published intersections. Frequent routine use of an unpublished fix would justify establishing a fix.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–1–1, Altitude and Distance Limitations.

3. Do not hold aircraft at unpublished fixes below the lowest assignable altitude dictated by terrain clearance for the appropriate holding pattern airspace area (template) regardless of the MEA for the route being flown.

4. When the unpublished fix is located on an off-route radial and the radial providing course guidance, it must be used consistent with the following divergence angles:

(a) When holding operations are involved with respect to subparas (b) and (c) below, the angle of divergence must be at least 45 degrees.

(b) When both NAVAIDs involved are located within 30 NM of the unpublished fix, the minimum divergence angle is 30 degrees.

(c) When the unpublished fix is located over 30 NM from the NAVAID generating the off-course radial, the minimum divergence angle must increase 1 degree per NM up to 45 NM; e.g., 45 NM would require 45 degrees.

(d) When the unpublished fix is located beyond 45 NM from the NAVAID generating the off-course radial, the minimum divergence angle must increase $^1/_2$ degree per NM; e.g., 130 NM would require 88 degrees.

c. Fixes contained in the route description of MTRs are considered filed fixes.

d. TACAN-only aircraft (type suffix M, N, or P) possess TACAN with DME, but no VOR or LF navigation system capability. Assign fixes based on TACAN or VORTAC facilities only.

NOTE−
TACAN-only aircraft can never be held overhead the NAVAID, be it TACAN or VORTAC.

e. DME fixes must not be established within the no-course signal zone of the NAVAID from which inbound holding course information would be derived.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−5−3, NAVAID Fixes.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−2, Methods.

Section 2. Clearances

4−2−1. CLEARANCE ITEMS

Issue the following clearance items, as appropriate, in the order listed below:

a. Aircraft identification.

b. Clearance limit.

1. When the clearance limit is an airport, the word "airport" must follow the airport name.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT.

2. When the clearance limit is a NAVAID, and the NAVAID type is known, the type of NAVAID must follow the NAVAID name.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type).

3. When the clearance limit is an intersection or waypoint, and the type is known, the type must follow the intersection or waypoint name.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type).

c. Standard Instrument Departure (SID).

d. Route of flight including PDR/PDAR/PAR when applied.

e. Altitude data in the order flown.

f. Mach number, if applicable.

g. *USAF.* When issuing a clearance to an airborne aircraft containing an altitude assignment, do not include more than one of the following in the same transmission:

1. Frequency change.

2. Transponder change.

3. Heading.

4. Altimeter setting.

5. Traffic information containing an altitude.

h. Holding instructions.

i. Any special information.

j. Frequency and beacon code information.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−8, IFR−VFR and VFR−IFR Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−7, Altitude Information.

4−2−2. CLEARANCE PREFIX

a. Prefix a clearance, information, or a request for information which will be relayed to an aircraft through a non−ATC facility by stating "A−T−C clears," "A−T−C advises," or "A−T−C requests."

b. Flight service stations must prefix a clearance with the appropriate phrase: "ATC clears," "ATC advises," etc.

4−2−3. DELIVERY INSTRUCTIONS

Issue specific clearance delivery instructions, if appropriate.

4−2−4. CLEARANCE RELAY

Relay clearances verbatim.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−4−4, Communications Failure.

4−2−5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS

a. Amend route of flight in a previously issued clearance by one of the following:

1. State which portion of the route is being amended and then state the amendment.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CHANGE (portion of route) TO READ (new portion of route).

2. State the amendment to the route and then state that the rest of the route is unchanged.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Amendment to route), REST OF ROUTE UNCHANGED.

3. Issue a clearance "direct" to a point on the previously issued route.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED DIRECT (fix,waypoint).
Or
CLEARED DIRECT (destination) AIRPORT.

NOTE−
Clearances authorizing "direct" to a point on a previously issued route do not require the phrase "rest of route

unchanged." However, it must be understood where the previously cleared route is resumed. When necessary, "rest of route unchanged" may be used to clarify routing.

4. Issue the entire route by stating the amendment.

EXAMPLE−
(Cessna 21A has been cleared to the Airville Airport via V41 Delta VOR V174 Alfa VOR, direct Airville Airport, maintain 9000. After takeoff, the aircraft is rerouted via V41 Frank intersection, V71 Delta VOR, V174 Alfa VOR. The controller issues one of the following as an amended clearance):

1. *"Cessna Two One Alfa change Victor Forty−One Delta to read Victor Forty−One Frank, Victor Seventy−One Delta."*

2. *"Cessna Two One Alfa cleared via Victor Forty−One Frank, Victor Seventy−One Delta, rest of route unchanged."*

3. *"Cessna Two One Alfa cleared via Victor Forty−One Frank, Victor Seventy−One Delta, Victor One Seventy−Four Alfa V−O−R, direct Airville airport, maintain Niner Thousand."*

b. When route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, restate all applicable altitude restrictions.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(A departing aircraft is cleared to cross Ollis intersection at or above 3,000; Gordonsville VOR at or above 12,000; maintain FL 200. Shortly after departure the altitude to be maintained is changed to FL 240. Because altitude restrictions remain in effect, the controller issues an amended clearance as follows):*

"Amend altitude. Cross Ollis intersection at or above Three Thousand; cross Gordonsville V−O−R at or above One Two Thousand; maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

(Shortly after departure, altitude restrictions are no longer applicable, the controller issues an amended clearance as follows):

"Climb and maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

2. *(An aircraft is cleared to climb via a SID with published altitude restrictions. Shortly after departure the top altitude is changed to FL 230 and compliance with the altitude restrictions is still required, the controller issues an amended clearance as follows):*

"Climb via SID except maintain Flight Level Two Three Zero."

NOTE−
1. *Restating previously issued altitude to "maintain" is an amended clearance. If altitude to "maintain" is changed or restated, whether prior to departure or while airborne and previously issued altitude restrictions are omitted, altitude restrictions are canceled, including SID/STAR altitude restrictions if any.*

2. *Crossing altitudes and speed restrictions on Obstacle Departure Procedure/s (ODP/s) cannot be canceled or amended by ATC.*

c. Issue an amended clearance if a speed restriction is declined because it cannot be complied with concurrently with a previously issued altitude restriction.

EXAMPLE−
(An aircraft is cleared to cross Gordonsville VOR at 11,000. Shortly thereafter he/she is cleared to reduce his/her airspeed to 300 knots. The pilot informs the controller he/she is unable to comply with both clearances simultaneously. The controller issues an amended clearance as follows):

"Cross Gordonsville VOR at One One Thousand. Then, reduce speed to Three Zero Zero."

NOTE−
The phrase "do the best you can" or comparable phrases are not valid substitutes for an amended clearance with altitude or speed restrictions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−18, Operational Requests.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Section 6, Vectoring, Para 5−6−2, Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Section 7, Speed Adjustment, Para 5−7−2, Methods.

d. Air traffic control specialists should avoid route and/or altitude changes for aircraft participating in the North American Route Program (NRP) and that are displaying "NRP" in the remarks section of their flight plan. Specialists at facilities actively participating in the High Altitude Redesign (HAR) program should avoid route and/or altitude changes for aircraft participating in full HAR and high altitude Point−to−point (PTP), and that are displaying "HAR," or "PTP" in the remarks section of their flight plan.

NOTE−
Air traffic control specialists retain the latitude necessary to tactically resolve conflicts. Every effort should be made to ensure the aircraft is returned to the original filed flight plan/altitude as soon as conditions warrant.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−15, North American Route Program (NRP) Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−3−2, En Route Data Entries.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 17, Section 16, North American Route Program.

4−2−6. THROUGH CLEARANCES

You may clear an aircraft through intermediate stops.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED THROUGH (airport) TO (fix).

4−2−7. ALTRV CLEARANCE

Use the phrase "via approved altitude reservation flight plan," if the aircraft will operate in an approved ALTRV.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VIA APPROVED ALTITUDE RESERVATION (mission name) FLIGHT PLAN.

NOTE−
An ALTRV normally includes the departure, climb, cruise, and arrival phases of flight up to and including holding pattern or point/time at which ATC provides separation between aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−3, Abbreviated Departure Clearance.

4−2−8. IFR−VFR AND VFR−IFR FLIGHTS

a. Clear an aircraft planning IFR operations for the initial part of flight and VFR for the latter part to the fix at which the IFR part ends.

b. Treat an aircraft planning VFR for the initial part of flight and IFR for the latter part as a VFR departure. Issue a clearance to this aircraft when it requests IFR clearance approaching the fix where it proposes to start IFR operations. The phraseology CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED may be used with abbreviated departure clearance procedures.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−3, Abbreviated Departure Clearance.

c. When an aircraft changes from VFR to IFR, the controller must assign a beacon code to Mode-C equipped aircraft that will allow MSAW alarms.

d. When VFR aircraft operating below the minimum altitude for IFR operations requests an IFR clearance and the pilot informs you, or you are aware, that they are unable to climb in VFR conditions to the minimum IFR altitude:

1. Before issuing a clearance, ask if the pilot is able to maintain terrain and obstruction clearance during a climb to the minimum IFR altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft call sign), ARE YOU ABLE TO MAINTAIN YOUR OWN TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE UNTIL REACHING (appropriate MVA/MIA/MEA/OROCA)

NOTE−
Pilots of pop−up aircraft are responsible for terrain and obstacle clearance until reaching minimum instrument altitude (MIA) or minimum en route altitude (MEA). Pilot compliance with an approved FAA procedure or an ATC instruction transfers that responsibility to the FAA; therefore, do not assign (or imply) specific course guidance that will (or could) be in effect below the MIA or MEA.

EXAMPLE−
"November Eight Seven Six, are you able to provide your own terrain and obstruction clearance between your present altitude and six thousand feet?"

2. If the pilot is able to maintain their own terrain and obstruction clearance, issue the appropriate IFR clearance as prescribed in Para 4−2−1, Clearance Items, and Para 4−5−6, Minimum En Route Altitudes.

3. If the pilot states that they are unable to maintain terrain and obstruction clearance, instruct the pilot to maintain VFR and to state intentions.

4. If appropriate, apply the provisions of Para 10−2−7, VFR Aircraft In Weather Difficulty, or Para 10−2−9, Radar Assistance Techniques, as necessary.

4−2−9. CLEARANCE ITEMS

The following guidelines must be utilized to facilitate the processing of airfile aircraft:

a. Ensure the aircraft is within your area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated.

b. Obtain necessary information needed to provide IFR service.

c. Issue clearance to destination, short range clearance, or an instruction to the pilot to contact an FSS if the flight plan cannot be processed. If clearance is to destination airport, the phraseology CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT must be used. If clearance is to a NAVAID, state the name of the NAVAID followed by the type of NAVAID, if the type is known. If clearance is to an intersection or waypoint and the type is known, the type must follow the intersection or waypoint name.

NOTE−
These procedures do not imply that the processing of airfiles has priority over another ATC duty to be performed.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−1, Recording Information.

4−2−10. CANCELLATION OF IFR FLIGHT PLAN

a. If necessary, before instructing an IFR aircraft arriving at an airport not served by an air traffic control tower or flight service station to change to the common traffic advisory frequency, provide the pilot with instructions on how to cancel his/her IFR flight plan.

1. Airports with an air/ground communications station:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign) REPORT CANCELLATION OF IFR ON (frequency).

2. Airports without an air/ground communications station:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign) REPORT CANCELLATION OF IFR THIS FREQUENCY OR WITH FLIGHT SERVICE.
Or

(Call sign) REPORT CANCELLATION OF IFR THIS FREQUENCY OR WITH (FSS serving the area or the ATC controlling facility).

EXAMPLE−
"N13WA report cancellation of IFR this frequency or with McAlester Radio."

b. Respond to a pilot's cancellation of his/her IFR flight plan as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign) IFR CANCELLATION RECEIVED.

Section 3. Departure Procedures

4–3–1. DEPARTURE TERMINOLOGY

Avoid using the term "takeoff" except to actually clear an aircraft for takeoff or to cancel a takeoff clearance. Use such terms as "depart," "departure," or "fly" in clearances when necessary.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–9, Takeoff Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–11, Cancellation of Takeoff Clearance.

4–3–2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

Include the following items in IFR departure clearances:

NOTE–
When considered necessary, controllers or pilots may initiate read backs of a clearance. Some pilots may be required by company rule to do so.

a. Always include the airport of departure when issuing a departure clearance for relay to an aircraft by an FSS, dispatcher, etc.

b. Clearance Limit.

1. Specify the destination airport when practicable, even though it is outside controlled airspace. Issue short range clearances as provided for in any procedures established for their use.

(a) When the clearance limit is an airport, the word "airport" must follow the airport name.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT

(b) When the clearance limit is a NAVAID and the NAVAID type is known, the type of NAVAID must follow the NAVAID name.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type)

(c) When the clearance limit is an intersection or waypoint and the type is known, the type must follow the intersection or waypoint name.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type)

2. For Air Force One (AF1) operations, do not specify the destination airport.

NOTE–
Presidential detail is responsible for ensuring the accuracy of the destination airport.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DESTINATION AS FILED.

c. Departure Procedures.

1. Specify direction of takeoff/turn or initial heading/azimuth to be flown after takeoff as follows:

(a) Locations with Airport Traffic Control Service– Specify these items as necessary.

(b) Locations without Airport Traffic Control Service, but within a Class E surface area– specify these items if necessary. Obtain/solicit the pilot's concurrence concerning these items before issuing them in a clearance.

NOTE–
Direction of takeoff and turn after takeoff can be obtained/solicited directly from the pilot, or relayed by an FSS, dispatcher, etc., as obtained/solicited from the pilot.

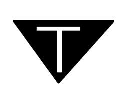
(c) At all other airports– Do not specify direction of takeoff/turn after takeoff. If necessary to specify an initial heading/azimuth to be flown after takeoff, issue the initial heading/azimuth so as to apply only within controlled airspace.

2. Where an obstacle departure procedure (ODP) has been published for a location and pilot compliance is necessary to ensure separation, include the procedure as part of the ATC clearance.

EXAMPLE–
"Depart via the (airport name)(runway number) departure procedure."
Or
"Depart via the (graphic ODP name) obstacle departure procedure."

NOTE–
Some aircraft are required by 14 CFR 91.175 to depart a runway under IFR using the ODP absent other instructions from ATC.

NOTE–
IFR takeoff minimums and obstacle departure procedures are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in either a textual, or graphic form with the label (OBSTACLE) in the procedure title, and documented on an appropriate FAA Form 8260. To alert pilots of their existence, instrument approach procedure charts are annotated with a symbol:



3. Do not solicit use of the Visual Climb over Airport (VCOA) option.

NOTE–
Pilots will specifically advise ATC of their intent to use the VCOA option.

4. Compatibility with a procedure issued may be verified by asking the pilot if items obtained/solicited will allow him/her to comply with local traffic pattern, terrain, or obstruction avoidance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
FLY RUNWAY HEADING.

DEPART (direction or runway).

TURN LEFT/RIGHT.

WHEN ENTERING CONTROLLED AIRSPACE (instruction), FLY HEADING (degrees) UNTIL REACHING (altitude, point, or fix) BEFORE PROCEEDING ON COURSE.

FLY A (degree) BEARING/AZIMUTH FROM/TO (fix) UNTIL (time),

or

UNTIL REACHING (fix or altitude),

and if required,

BEFORE PROCEEDING ON COURSE.

EXAMPLE–
"Verify right turn after departure will allow compliance with local traffic pattern,"or "Verify this clearance will allow compliance with terrain or obstruction avoidance."

NOTE–
If a published IFR departure procedure is not included in an ATC clearance, compliance with such a procedure is the pilot's prerogative.

5. SIDs:

(a) Assign a SID (including transition if necessary). Assign a PDR or the route filed by the pilot, only when a SID is not established for the departure route to be flown, or the pilot has indicated that he/she does not wish to use a SID.

NOTE–
Departure procedure descriptive text contained within parentheses (for example, "Jimmy One (RNAV) Departure") is not included in departure clearance phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID name and number) DEPARTURE.

(SID name and number) DEPARTURE, (transition name) TRANSITION.

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure."
"Stroudsburg One Departure, Sparta Transition."

NOTE–
If a pilot does not wish to use a SID issued in an ATC clearance, or any other SID published for that location, he/she is expected to advise ATC.

(b) If it is necessary to assign a crossing altitude which differs from the SID altitude emphasize the change to the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID name and number) DEPARTURE, EXCEPT CROSS (revised altitude information).

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure, except cross Quaker at five thousand.

"Astoria Two Departure, except cross Astor waypoint at six thousand.

(c) Specify altitudes when they are not included in the SID.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(SID name and number) DEPARTURE. CROSS (fix) AT (altitude).

EXAMPLE–
"Stroudsburg One Departure. Cross Jersey intersection at four thousand. Cross Range intersection at six thousand." depart

"Engle Two departure. Cross Pilim waypoint at or above five thousand. Cross Engle waypoint at or above seven thousand. Cross Gorge waypoint at niner thousand."

d. Route of flight. Specify one or more of the following:

1. Airway, route, course, heading, azimuth, arc, or vector.

2. The routing a pilot can expect if any part of the route beyond a short range clearance limit differs from that filed.

PHRASEOLOGY–
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (airways, routes, or fixes.)

e. Altitude. Use one of the following in the order of preference listed. Altitude may be omitted if the top altitude is published in the SID route description.

NOTE−
Turbojet aircraft equipped with afterburner engines may occasionally be expected to use afterburning during their climb to the en route altitude. When so advised by the pilot, the controller may be able to plan his/her traffic to accommodate the high performance climb and allow the pilot to climb to his/her planned altitude without restriction.

REFERENCE−
PCG, Climb Via, Top Altitude

1. To the maximum extent possible, Air Force One will be cleared unrestricted climb to:

(a) 9,000' AGL or higher.

(b) If unable 9,000' AGL or higher, then the highest available altitude below 9,000' AGL.

2. Assign the altitude requested by the pilot.

3. Assign an altitude, as near as possible to the altitude requested by the pilot, and

(a) Inform the pilot when to expect clearance to the requested altitude unless instructions are contained in the specified SID, or

(b) If the requested altitude is not expected to be available, inform the pilot what altitude can be expected and when/where to expect it.

NOTE−
1. *14 CFR Section 91.185, says that in the event of a two-way radio communication failure, in VFR conditions or if VFR conditions are encountered after the failure, the pilot must continue the flight under VFR and land as soon as practicable. That section also says that when the failure occurs in IFR conditions the pilot must continue flight at the highest of the following altitudes or flight levels for the route segment being flown:*

a. *The altitude or flight level assigned in the last ATC clearance received.*

b. *The minimum altitude (converted, if appropriate, to minimum flight level as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.121(c)) for IFR operations. (This altitude should be consistent with MEAs, MOCAs, etc.)*

c. *The altitude or flight level ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.*

2. *If the expected altitude is the highest of the preceding choices, the pilot should begin to climb to that expected altitude at the time or fix specified in the clearance. The choice to climb to the expected altitude is not applicable if the pilot has proceeded beyond the specified fix or if the time designated in the clearance has expired.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (the altitude as near as possible to the pilot's requested altitude). EXPECT (the requested altitude or an altitude different from the requested altitude) AT (time or fix),

and if applicable,

(pilot's requested altitude) IS NOT AVAILABLE.

EXAMPLE−
1. *A pilot has requested flight level 350. Flight level 230 is immediately available and flight level 350 will be available at the Appleton zero five zero radial 35 mile fix. The clearance will read:*
"Climb and maintain flight level two three zero. Expect flight level three five zero at Appleton zero five zero radial three five mile fix."

2. *A pilot has requested 9,000 feet. An altitude restriction is required because of facility procedures or requirements. Assign the altitude and advise the pilot at what fix/time the pilot may expect the requested altitude. The clearance could read:*
"Climb and maintain five thousand. Expect niner thousand one zero minutes after departure."

3. *A pilot has requested 17,000 feet which is unavailable. You plan 15,000 feet to be the pilot's highest altitude prior to descent to the pilot's destination but only 13,000 feet is available until San Jose VOR. Advise the pilot of the expected altitude change and at what fix/time to expect clearance to 15,000 feet. The clearance will read: "Climb and maintain one three thousand. Expect one five thousand at San Jose. One seven thousand is not available."*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−3, Abbreviated Departure Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−8−2, Initial Heading.

4. Use one of the following when the SID contains published crossing restrictions:

(a) When the top altitude is included in the SID route description, instruct aircraft to "climb via SID."

(b) When a top altitude is not published on a SID that contains published crossing restrictions, or when it is necessary to issue an interim altitude instruct the aircraft to "Climb via SID except (altitude assignment/ change)".

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-One Forty-five. Climb via SID."

"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure,

Jonez transition, Q-One Forty-five, Climb via SID except maintain flight level one eight zero."

"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-One Forty-five, Climb Via SID except maintain flight level one eight zero, expect flight level three five zero one zero minutes after departure."

NOTE–
Considering the principle that the last ATC clearance issued has precedence over the previous, the phraseology 'maintain (altitude)' alone cancels previously issued altitude restrictions, including SID/STAR altitude restrictions, unless they are restated or modified.

REFERENCE–
FAA JO7110.65 Para 4-2-5 Route or Altitude Amendments
AIM 4-4-10 Adherence to Clearance

4–3–3. ABBREVIATED DEPARTURE CLEARANCE

a. Issue an abbreviated departure clearance if its use reduces verbiage and the following conditions are met:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–8, IFR-VFR and VFR-IFR Flights.

1. The route of flight filed with ATC has not been changed by the pilot, company, operations officer, input operator, or in the stored flight plan program prior to departure.

NOTE–
A pilot will not accept an abbreviated clearance if the route of flight filed with ATC has been changed by him/her or the company or the operations officer before departure. He/she is expected to inform the control facility on initial radio contact if he/she cannot accept the clearance. It is the responsibility of the company or operations officer to inform the pilot when they make a change.

2. All ATC facilities concerned have sufficient route of flight information to exercise their control responsibilities.

NOTE–
The route of flight information to be provided may be covered in letters of agreement.

3. When the flight will depart IFR, destination airport information is relayed between the facilities concerned prior to departure.

EXAMPLE–
1. *A tower or flight service station relay of destination airport information to the center when requesting clearance:*
"Request clearance for United Four Sixty-One to O'Hare."
2. *A center relay to the tower or flight service station when initiating a clearance:*
"Clearance for United Four Sixty-One to O'Hare."

NOTE–
Pilots are expected to furnish the facility concerned with destination airport information on initial radio call-up. This will provide the information necessary for detecting any destination airport differences on facility relay.

4. The assigned altitude, according to the provisions in para 4–3–2, Departure Clearances, subparagraph e, is stated in the clearance. Where a top altitude is published in the SID route description it may be omitted.

b. If it is necessary to modify a filed route of flight in order to achieve computer acceptance due, for example, to incorrect fix or airway identification, the contraction "FRC," meaning "Full Route Clearance Necessary," or "FRC/(fix)," will be added to the remarks. "FRC" or "FRC/(fix)" must always be the first item of intra-center remarks. When "FRC" or "FRC/(fix)" appears on a flight progress strip, the controller issuing the ATC clearance to the aircraft must issue a full route clearance to the specified fix, or, if no fix is specified, for the entire route.

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Missoula International Airport, Chief Two Departure to Angley; direct Salina; then as filed; maintain one seven thousand."

NOTE–
Changes, such as those made to conform with traffic flows and preferred routings, are only permitted to be made by the pilot (or his/her operations office) or the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft.

c. Specify the destination airport in the clearance.

d. When no changes are required in the filed route, state the phrase: "Cleared to (destination) airport, ([SID name and number] and SID transition, as appropriate); then, as filed." If a SID is not assigned, follow with "As filed."

1. Specify the assigned altitude. The altitude may be omitted and pilots instructed to "climb via SID" when a top altitude is published in the SID route description.

2. When the SID has published altitude restrictions but the top altitude is not published or must be changed, state the phrase "climb via SID except maintain" to assign the top altitude. If required, add any additional instructions or information, including final requested altitude if different than assigned except if Pre−Departure Clearance (PDC) is utilized.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT;

and as appropriate,

(SID name and number) DEPARTURE,
THEN AS FILED.

MAINTAIN (altitude); (additional instructions or information).

Or as appropriate,

CLIMB VIA SID.

CLIMB VIA SID except maintain (altitude); (additional instructions or information).

If a SID is not assigned,

CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED.
MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; David Two Departure, Kingham Transition; then, as filed. Maintain niner thousand. Expect flight level four one zero, one zero minutes after departure."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; David Two Departure, Kingham Transition; then, as filed. Climb via SID."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; David Two Departure, Kingham Transition; then, as filed. Climb via SID except maintain flight level two four zero. Expect flight level four one zero, one zero minutes after departure.

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport as filed. Maintain niner thousand. Expect flight level four one zero, one zero minutes after departure."

NOTE−
1. *SIDs are excluded from "cleared as filed" procedures.*

2. *If a pilot does not wish to accept an ATC clearance to fly a SID, he/she is expected to advise ATC or state "NO SID" in his/her flight plan remarks.*

REFERENCE−
PCG, Climb Via, Top Altitude

e. When a filed route will require revisions, the controller responsible for initiating the clearance to the aircraft must either:

1. Issue a FRC/FRC until a fix; or

2. If it reduces verbiage, state the phrase: "Cleared to (destination) airport, or cleared NAVAID, intersection, or waypoint (type if known), (SID name and number and SID transition, as appropriate), then as filed, except ..." Specify the necessary revision.

3. Specify the assigned altitude. The altitude may be omitted and pilots instructed to "climb via SID" when a top altitude is published in the SID route description.

4. When the SID has published altitude restrictions but the top altitude is not published or must be changed state the phrase "climb via SID except maintain" and the assign the top altitude. If required, add any additional instructions or information.

5. If a SID is not assigned, state: "Cleared to (destination) airport or cleared to NAVAID, intersection, or waypoint (type if known) as filed, except ..." Specify the necessary revision, the assigned altitude; and if required, add any additional instructions or information.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT.

Or

CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type).

Or

CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type).

and as appropriate,

(SID name and number) DEPARTURE,

(transition name) TRANSITION; THEN,

AS FILED, EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ

(amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

Or as appropriate,

CLIMB VIA SID

CLIMB VIA SID except maintain (altitude); (additional instructions or information);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

If a SID is not assigned,

CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED,

EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ (amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; South Boston One Departure; then, as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; South Boston One Departure; then, as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro; climb via SID."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; South Boston One Departure; then, as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro; climb via SID except maintain flight level one eight zero, expect flight level three one zero one zero minutes after departure."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport via Victor Ninety-one Albany, then as filed. Maintain six thousand."

f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.

1. Specify the destination airport, when practicable, followed by the word "airport" even though it is outside controlled airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT

2. When the clearance limit is a NAVAID, the type of NAVAID must follow the NAVAID name.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type)

3. When the clearance limit is an intersection or waypoint and the type is known, the type must follow the intersection or waypoint name.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type)

EXAMPLE−
The filed route of flight is from Hutchins V10 Emporia, thence V10N and V77 to St. Joseph. The clearance will read:
"Cleared to Watson Airport as filed via Emporia, maintain Seven Thousand."

g. Do not apply these procedures when a pilot requests a detailed clearance or to military operations conducted within ALTRV, stereo routes, operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling.

NOTE−
Departure clearance procedures and phraseology for military operations within approved altitude reservations, military operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling are contained in separate procedures in this order or in a LOA, as appropriate.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−7, ALTRV Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−14, Military Operations Above FL 600.

4−3−4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−3−1, Overdue Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−4−1, Traffic Restrictions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−4−3, Traffic Resumption.

a. Clearance Void Times.

1. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.

2. The facility delivering a clearance void time to a pilot must issue a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and the nearest quarter minute).

b. Hold For Release (HFR).

1. "Hold for release" instructions must be used when necessary to inform a pilot or a controller that a departure clearance is not valid until additional instructions are received.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Hold for Release.

2. When issuing hold for release instructions, include departure delay information.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft identification) CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED, MAINTAIN (altitude),

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

HOLD FOR RELEASE, EXPECT (time in hours and/or minutes) DEPARTURE DELAY.

3. When conditions allow, release the aircraft as soon as possible.

PHRASEOLOGY−
To another controller,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED.

To a flight service specialist,

ADVISE (aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

To a pilot at an airport not served by a control tower,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

c. Release Times.

1. Release times must be issued to pilots when necessary to specify the earliest time an aircraft may depart.

NOTE−
A release time is a departure restriction issued to a pilot (either directly or through authorized relay) to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

2. The facility issuing a release time to a pilot must include a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE AT (time in hours and/or minutes),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and nearest quarter minute).

d. When expect departure clearance times (EDCT) are assigned through traffic management programs, excluding overriding call for release (CFR) operations as described in subparagraph e, the departure terminal must, to the extent possible, plan ground movement of aircraft destined to the affected airport(s) so that flights are sequenced to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT. Do not release aircraft on their assigned EDCT if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, unless approval has been received from the originator of the GS.

e. Call for Release (CFR). When CFR is in effect, release aircraft so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time, unless otherwise coordinated.

NOTE−
1. *Subparagraph (e) applies to all facilities.*
2. *Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.*

1. If an aircraft has begun to taxi or requests taxi in a manner consistent with meeting the EDCT, the aircraft must be released. Additional coordination is not required.

2. If an aircraft requests taxi or clearance for departure inconsistent with meeting the EDCT window, ask the pilot to verify the EDCT.

(a) If the pilot's EDCT is the same as the FAA EDCT, the aircraft is released consistent with the EDCT.

(b) If the pilot's EDCT is not the same as the FAA EDCT, refer to Trust and Verify Note below.

3. If an aircraft requests taxi too late to meet the EDCT, contact the ATCSCC through the appropriate TMU.

NOTE–
(Trust & Verify) EDCTs are revised by Air Carriers and Traffic Management for changing conditions en route or at affected airport(s). Terminal controllers' use of aircraft reported EDCT for departure sequencing should be verified with the appropriate TMU prior to departure if this can be accomplished without the aircraft incurring delay beyond the EDCT reported by the aircraft. The preferred method for verification is the Flight Schedule Monitor (FSM). If the EDCT cannot be verified without incurring additional delay, the aircraft should be released based on the pilot reported EDCT. The aircraft operator is responsible for operating in a manner consistent to meet the EDCT.

4–3–5. GROUND STOP

Do not release an aircraft if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, without the approval of the originator of the GS.

4–3–6. DELAY SEQUENCING

When aircraft elect to take delay on the ground before departure, issue departure clearances to them in the order in which the requests for clearance were originally made if practicable.

4–3–7. FORWARD DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION

Inform approach control facilities and/or towers of anticipated departure delays.

4–3–8. COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY

a. Coordinate with the receiving facility before the departure of an aircraft if the departure point is less than 15 minutes flying time from the transferring facility's boundary unless an automatic transfer of data between automated systems will occur, in which case, the flying time requirement may be reduced to 5 minutes or replaced with a mileage from the boundary parameter when mutually agreeable to both facilities.

NOTE–
Agreements requiring additional time are encouraged between facilities that need earlier coordination. However, when agreements establish mandatory radar handoff procedures, coordination needs only be effected in a timely manner prior to transfer of control.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 4, Transfer of Radar Identification, Para 5–4–1, Application.

b. The actual departure time or a subsequent strip posting time must be forwarded to the receiving facility unless assumed departure times are agreed upon and that time is within 3 minutes of the actual departure time.

4–3–9. VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE

When an aircraft which has filed an IFR flight plan requests a VFR departure through a terminal facility, FSS, or air/ground communications station:

a. After obtaining, if necessary, approval from the facility/sector responsible for issuing the IFR clearance, you may authorize an IFR flight planned aircraft to depart VFR. Inform the pilot of the proper frequency and, if appropriate, where or when to contact the facility responsible for issuing the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VFR DEPARTURE AUTHORIZED. CONTACT (facility) ON (frequency) AT (location or time if required) FOR CLEARANCE.

b. If the facility/sector responsible for issuing the clearance is unable to issue a clearance, inform the pilot, and suggest that the delay be taken on the ground. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.

4–3–10. FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES

TERMINAL

Unless alternate procedures are prescribed in a letter of agreement or automatic departure messages are being transmitted between automated facilities, forward departure times to the facility from which you received the clearance and also to the terminal departure controller when that position is involved in the departure sequence.

NOTE−
1. *Letters of agreement prescribing assumed departure times or mandatory radar handoff procedures are alternatives for providing equivalent procedures.*
2. *The letters "DM" flashing in the data block signify unsuccessful transmission of a departure message.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11−2−6, Automatic Acquisition/Termination Areas.

Section 4. Route Assignment

4–4–1. ROUTE USE

Clear aircraft via routes consistent with the altitude stratum in which the operation is to be conducted by one or more of the following:

NOTE–
Except for certain NAVAIDs/routes used by scheduled air carriers or authorized for specific uses in the control of IFR aircraft, Air Traffic Service (ATS) routes, and NAVAIDs established for use at specified altitudes are shown on U.S. government charts or DOD FLIP charts.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–5–2, NAVAID Terms.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–1–2, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–6, Minimum En Route Altitudes.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–1, Application.

a. Designated ATS routes.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VIA:

VICTOR (color) (airway number)(the word Romeo when RNAV for existing Alaska routes),

or

J (route number) (the word Romeo when RNAV for existing Alaska routes),

or

Q (route number)

or

Tango (route number)

or

SUBSTITUTE (ATS route) FROM (fix) to (fix),

or

IR (route number).

CROSS/JOIN VICTOR/(color) (airway number), (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (fix).

b. Radials, courses, azimuths to or from NAVAIDs.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VIA;

(name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL/COURSE/AZIMUTH,

or

(fix) AND (fix),

or

RADIALS OF (ATS route) AND (ATS route).

c. Random routes.

1. When not being radar monitored, GNSS-equipped RNAV aircraft on random RNAV routes must be cleared via or reported to be established on a point-to-point route.

(a) The points must be published NAVAIDs, waypoints, fixes or airports recallable from the aircraft's navigation database. The points must be displayed on controller video maps or depicted on the controller chart displayed at the control position. When applying nonradar separation the maximum distance between points must not exceed 500 miles.

(b) Protect 4 miles either side of the route centerline.

(c) Assigned altitudes must be at or above the highest MIA along the projected route segment being flown, including the protected airspace of that route segment.

2. Impromptu

PHRASEOLOGY–
DIRECT (name of NAVAID/waypoint/fix/airport)

NOTE–
A random impromptu routing is a direct course initiated by ATC or requested by the pilot during flight. Aircraft are cleared from their present position to a NAVAID, waypoint, fix, or airport.

3. Point-to-Point

PHRASEOLOGY–
After (fix) proceed direct (fix)

NOTE–
A point-to-point route segment begins and ends with a published NAVAID, waypoint, fix, or airport.

d. DME arcs of NAVAIDS.

e. Radials, courses, azimuths, and headings of departure or arrival routes.

f. SIDs/STARs.

g. Vectors.

h. Fixes defined in terms of degree-distance from NAVAIDs for special military operations.

i. Courses, azimuths, bearings, quadrants, or radials within a radius of a NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO FLY (general direction from NAVAID) OF (NAVAID name and type) BETWEEN (specified) COURSES TO/BEARINGS FROM/RADIALS (NAVAID name when a NDB) WITHIN (number of miles) MILE RADIUS,

or

CLEARED TO FLY (specified) QUADRANT OF (NAVAID name and type) WITHIN (number of miles) MILE RADIUS.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Cleared to fly east of Allentown VORTAC between the zero four five and the one three five radials within four zero mile radius."*

2. *"Cleared to fly east of Crystal Lake radio beacon between the two two five and the three one five courses to Crystal Lake within three zero mile radius."*

3. *"Cleared to fly northeast quadrant of Philipsburg VORTAC within four zero mile radius."*

j. Fixes/waypoints defined in terms of:

1. Published name; or

2. Degree-distance from NAVAIDs; or

3. Latitude/longitude coordinates, state the latitude and longitude in degrees and minutes including the direction from the axis such as North or West; or

PHRASEOLOGY−
"32 DEGREES, 45 MINUTES NORTH,
105 DEGREES, 37 MINUTES WEST."

4. Offset from published or established ATS route at a specified distance and direction for random (impromptu) RNAV Routes.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DIRECT (fix/waypoint)

DIRECT TO THE (facility) (radial) (distance) FIX.

OFFSET(distance) RIGHT/LEFT OF (route).

EXAMPLE−
"Direct SUNOL."
"Direct to the Appleton three one zero radial two five mile fix."
"Offset eight miles right of Victor six."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-3-8 Aircraft Equipment Suffix.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-5-3 NAVAID Fixes
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-1-2, Exceptions
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6-5-4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes.
P/CG Term - Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)[ICAO].

4−4−2. ROUTE STRUCTURE TRANSITIONS

To effect transition within or between route structures, clear an aircraft by one or more of the following methods, based on NAVAIDs or RNAV:

a. Vector aircraft to or from radials, courses, or azimuths of the ATS route assigned.

b. Assign a SID/STAR.

c. Clear departing or arriving aircraft to climb or descend via radials, courses, or azimuths of the ATS route assigned.

d. Clear departing or arriving aircraft directly to or between the NAVAIDs forming the ATS route assigned.

e. Clear aircraft to climb or descend via the ATS route on which flight will be conducted.

f. Clear aircraft to climb or descend on specified radials, courses, or azimuths of NAVAIDs.

g. Clear RNAV aircraft between designated or established ATS routes via random RNAV routes to a NAVAID, waypoint, airport or fix on the new route.

h. Provide radar monitoring to RNAV equipped aircraft transitioning via random RNAV routes.

EXCEPTION. GNSS equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V not on a random impromptu route.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-1-2, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-1, Route Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application.
P/CG Term − Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)[ICAO].

4−4−3. DEGREE-DISTANCE ROUTE DEFINITION FOR MILITARY OPERATIONS

EN ROUTE

a. Do not accept a military flight plan whose route or route segments do not coincide with designated airways or jet routes or with a direct course between NAVAIDs unless it is authorized in subpara b and meets the following degree-distance route definition and procedural requirements:

1. The route or route segments must be defined in the flight plan by degree-distance fixes composed of:

(a) A location identifier;

(b) Azimuth in degrees magnetic; and

(c) Distance in miles from the NAVAID used.

EXAMPLE−
"MKE 030025."

2. The NAVAIDs selected to define the degree-distance fixes must be those authorized for use at the altitude being flown and at a distance within the published service volume area.

3. The distance between the fixes used to define the route must not exceed:

(a) Below FL 180− 80 miles;

(b) FL 180 and above− 260 miles; and

(c) For celestial navigation routes, all altitudes− 260 miles.

4. Degree-distance fixes used to define a route must be considered compulsory reporting points except that an aircraft may be authorized by ATC to omit reports when traffic conditions permit.

5. Military aircraft using degree-distance route definition procedures must conduct operations in accordance with the following:

(a) Unless prior coordination has been effected with the appropriate air traffic control facility, flight plan the departure and the arrival phases to conform with the routine flow of traffic when operating within 75 miles of the departure and the arrival airport. Use defined routes or airways or direct courses between NAVAIDs or as otherwise required to conform to the normal flow of traffic.

(b) Flight plans must be filed at least 2 hours before the estimated time of departure.

b. The following special military operations are authorized to define routes, or portions of routes, by degree-distance fixes:

1. Airborne radar navigation, radar bomb scoring (RBS), and airborne missile programming conducted by the USAF, USN, and RAF.

2. Celestial navigation conducted by the USAF, USN, and RAF.

3. Target aircraft operating in conjunction with air defense interceptors, and air defense interceptors while en route to and from assigned airspace.

4. Missions conducted above FL 450.

5. USN fighter and attack aircraft operating in positive control airspace.

6. USN/USMC aircraft, TACAN equipped, operating within the Honolulu FIR/Hawaiian airways area.

7. USAF/USN/USMC aircraft flight planned to operate on MTRs.

8. USAF Air Mobility Command (AMC) aircraft operating on approved station-keeping equipment (SKE) routes in accordance with the conditions and limitations listed in FAA Exemption No. 4371 to 14 CFR Section 91.177(a)(2) and 14 CFR Section 91.179(b)(1).

4−4−4. ALTERNATIVE ROUTES

When any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status, clear aircraft that are not RNAV capable via one of the following alternative routes:

a. A route depicted on current U.S. Government charts/publications. Use the word "substitute" immediately preceding the alternative route in issuing the clearance.

b. A route defined by specifying NAVAID radials, courses, or azimuths.

c. A route defined as direct to or between NAVAIDs.

d. Vectors.

NOTE−
Inform area navigation aircraft that will proceed to the NAVAID location of the NAVAID outage.

4−4−5. CLASS G AIRSPACE

Include routes through Class G airspace only when requested by the pilot.

NOTE–
1. *Flight plans filed for random RNAV routes through Class G airspace are considered a request by the pilot.*

2. *Flight plans containing MTR segments in/through Class G airspace are considered a request by the pilot.*

4–4–6. DIRECT CLEARANCES

a. Unless operational necessity dictates, do not issue a routing clearance that will take an aircraft off of its flight plan route if:

1. The aircraft is part of a known traffic management initiative.

2. The part of the route under consideration for the direct routing is within a protected segment. If a flight routing within a protected segment is amended, coordination must be accomplished as follows:

(a) ATCS: with TMU.

(b) Terminal facility TMU: with overlying ARTCC TMU.

(c) ARTCC TMU (for amendments outside their facility): with ATCSCC.

b. *EN ROUTE*. Do not issue revised routing clearances that will take an aircraft off its flight plan route past the last fix in your facility's airspace, unless requested by the pilot or operational necessity dictates.

NOTE–
Nothing in this paragraph must preclude a controller from issuing a routing clearance that conforms to a letter of agreement or standard operating procedure within their own facility or between facilities, is required to maintain separation or comply with traffic flow management initiatives.

Section 5. Altitude Assignment and Verification

4-5-1. VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft using the following minima between altitudes:

a. Up to and including FL 410- 1,000 feet.

b. Apply 2,000 feet at or above FL 290 between non-RVSM aircraft and all other aircraft at or above FL 290.

c. Above FL 410- 2,000 feet, except:

1. In oceanic airspace, above FL 450 between a supersonic and any other aircraft- 4,000 feet.

2. Above FL 600 between military aircraft- 5,000 feet.

NOTE-
Oceanic separation procedures are supplemented in Chapter 8; Section 7, Section 8, Section 9, and Section 10.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-5, Vertical Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6-6-1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-2-14, Military Operations Above FL 600.

4-5-2. FLIGHT DIRECTION

Clear aircraft at altitudes according to the TBL 4-5-1.

TBL 4-5-1
Altitude Assignment

Aircraft Operating	On course degrees magnetic	Assign	Examples
Below 3,000 feet above surface	Any course	Any altitude	
At and below FL 410	0 through 179	Odd cardinal altitude or flight levels at intervals of 2,000 feet	3,000, 5,000, FL 310, FL 330
	180 through 359	Even cardinal altitude or flight levels at intervals of 2,000 feet	4,000, 6,000, FL 320, FL 340
Above FL 410	0 through 179	Odd cardinal flight levels at intervals of 4,000 feet beginning with FL 450	FL 450, FL 490, FL 530
	180 through 359	Odd cardinal flight levels at intervals of 4,000 feet beginning with FL 430	FL 430, FL 470, FL 510
One way routes (except in composite systems)	Any course	Any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 410 or any odd cardinal flight level above FL 410	FL 270, FL 280, FL 290, FL 300, FL 310, FL 410, FL 430, FL 450
Within an ALTRV	Any course	Any altitude or flight level	
In transition to/from or within Oceanic airspace where composite separation is authorized	Any course	Any odd or even cardinal flight level including those above FL 290	FL 280, FL 290, FL 300, FL 310, FL 320, FL 330, FL 340
In aerial refueling tracks and anchors	Any course	Altitude blocks as requested. Any altitude or flight level	050B080, FL 180B220, FL 280B310

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-3, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-7-5, Altitude Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-2, Separation Minima.

4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS

When traffic, meteorological conditions, or aircraft operational limitations prevent assignment of altitudes prescribed in para 4-5-2, Flight Direction, assign any cardinal altitude or flight level below FL 410 or any odd cardinal flight level at or above FL 410 without regard to direction of flight as follows:

NOTE-
See para 2-3-10, Control Symbology, for control abbreviations and symbols to be used in conjunction with this paragraph.

a. For traffic conditions, take this action only if one of the following conditions exists:

1. Aircraft remain within a facility's area and prior approval is obtained from other affected positions or sectors or the operations are covered in a Facility Directive.

2. Aircraft will proceed beyond the facility's area and specific operations and procedures permitting random altitude assignment are covered in a letter of agreement between the appropriate facilities.

b. Military aircraft are operating on random routes and prior approval is obtained from the facility concerned.

c. For meteorological conditions, take this action only if you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.

d. For aircraft operational limitations, take this action only if the pilot informs you the available appropriate altitude exceeds the operational limitations of his/her aircraft and only after you obtain prior approval from other affected positions or sectors within your facility and, if necessary, from the adjacent facility concerned.

e. For mission requirements, take this action only when the aircraft is operating on an MTR.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−5, Altitude Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−3−2, Separation Minima.

4−5−4. LOWEST USABLE FLIGHT LEVEL

If a change in atmospheric pressure affects a usable flight level in your area of jurisdiction, use TBL 4−5−2 to determine the lowest usable flight level to clear aircraft at or above 18,000 feet MSL.

TBL 4−5−2
Lowest Usable FL

Altimeter Setting	Lowest Usable FL
29.92" or higher	180
29.91" to 28.92"	190
28.91" to 27.92"	200

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−3−2, Separation Minima.

4−5−5. ADJUSTED MINIMUM FLIGHT LEVEL

When the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations is at or above 18,000 feet MSL and the atmospheric pressure is less than 29.92", add the appropriate adjustment factor from TBL 4−5−3 to the flight level equivalent of the minimum altitude in feet to determine the adjusted minimum flight level.

TBL 4−5−3
Minimum FL Adjustment

Altimeter Setting	Adjustment Factor
29.92" or higher	None
29.91" to 29.42"	500 feet
29.41" to 28.92"	1,000 feet
28.91" to 28.42"	1,500 feet
28.41" to 27.92"	2,000 feet

4−5−6. MINIMUM EN ROUTE ALTITUDES

Except as provided in subparas a and b below, assign altitudes at or above the MEA for the route segment being flown. When a lower MEA for subsequent segments of the route is applicable, issue the lower MEA only after the aircraft is over or past the Fix/NAVAID beyond which the lower MEA applies unless a crossing restriction at or above the higher MEA is issued.

a. An aircraft may be cleared below the MEA but not below the MOCA for the route segment being flown if the altitude assigned is at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace and one of the following conditions are met:

NOTE−
Controllers must be aware that in the event of radio communications failure, a pilot will climb to the MEA for the route segment being flown.

1. Nonradar procedures are used only within 22 miles of a VOR, VORTAC, or TACAN.

2. Radar procedures are used only when an operational advantage is realized and the following actions are taken:

(a) Radar navigational guidance is provided until the aircraft is within 22 miles of the NAVAID, and

(b) Lost communications instructions are issued.

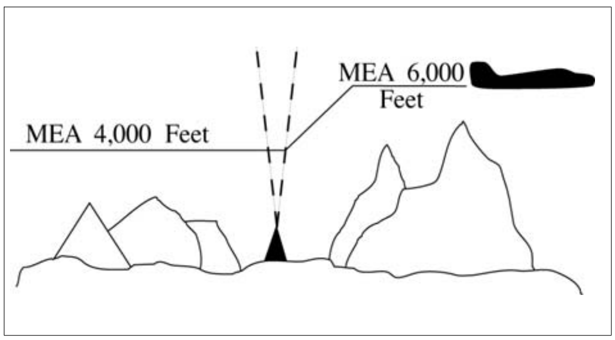
b. An aircraft may be cleared to operate on jet routes below the MEA (but not below the prescribed minimum altitude for IFR operations) or above the maximum authorized altitude if, in either case, radar service is provided.

NOTE−
Minimum en route and maximum authorized altitudes for certain jet route segments have been established above the floor of the jet route structure due to limitations on navigational signal coverage.

c. Where a higher altitude is required because of an MEA, the aircraft must be cleared to begin climb to the higher MEA as follows:

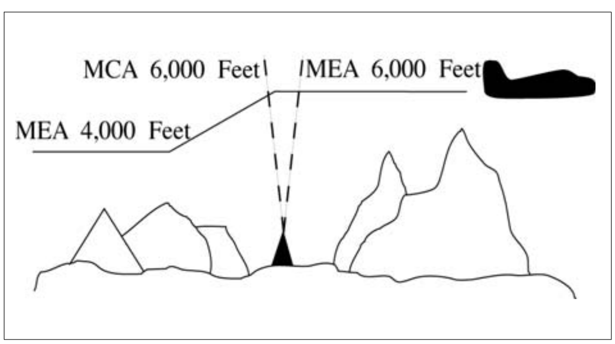
1. If no MCA is specified, prior to or immediately after passing the fix where the higher MEA is designated. (See FIG 4−5−1.)

FIG 4−5−1
No MCA Specified



2. If a MCA is specified, prior to the fix so as to cross the fix at or above the MCA. (See FIG 4−5−2.)

FIG 4−5−2
MCA Specified



d. GNSS MEAs may be approved on published ATS routes. Air traffic may assign GNSS MEAs to GNSS−equipped aircraft where established.

NOTE−
On high altitude ATS routes, the GNSS MEA is FL180 unless published higher.

e. Where MEAs have not been established, clear an aircraft at or above the minimum altitude for IFR operations prescribed by 14 CFR Section 91.177.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−8, IFR-VFR and VFR-IFR Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−4−1, Route Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 6, Para 5−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−5, Altitude Assignments.

4−5−7. ALTITUDE INFORMATION

Issue altitude instructions as follows:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−1, Clearance Items.

a. Altitude to maintain or cruise. When issuing cruise in conjunction with an airport clearance limit and an unpublished route will be used, issue an appropriate crossing altitude to ensure terrain clearance until the aircraft reaches a fix, point, or route where the altitude information is available to the pilot. When issuing a cruise clearance to an airport which does not have a published instrument approach, a cruise clearance without a crossing restriction may be issued.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAINTAIN/CRUISE (altitude). MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL (time, fix, waypoint),

or

(number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES PAST (fix, waypoint).

CROSS (fix, point, waypoint),

or

INTERCEPT (route) AT OR ABOVE (altitude), CRUISE (altitude).

NOTE−
1. *The crossing altitude must assure IFR obstruction clearance to the point where the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.*

2. *When an aircraft is issued a cruise clearance to an airport which does not have a published instrument approach procedure, it is not possible to satisfy the requirement for a crossing altitude that will ensure terrain clearance until the aircraft reaches a fix, point, or route where altitude information is available to the pilot. Under those conditions, a cruise clearance without a crossing restriction authorizes a pilot to determine the minimum IFR altitude as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.177 and* *descend to it at pilot discretion if it is lower than the altitude specified in the cruise clearance.*

b. Instructions to climb or descend including restrictions, as required. Specify a time restriction reference the UTC clock reading with a time check. If you are relaying through an authorized communications provider, such as ARINC, FSS, etc., advise the radio operator to issue the current time to the aircraft when the clearance is relayed. The requirement to issue a time check must be disregarded if the clearance is issued via Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC).

EXCEPTION. If you are in direct, two-way, VHF/UHF voice communication with the pilot and the aircraft is in radar contact, you may specify an elapsed time interval restriction, in full minute increments only, without any reference to the UTC clock. The time restriction begins once the clearance has been acknowledged by the pilot.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"United Four Seventeen, climb to reach one three thousand at two two one five."*
"Time two two one one and one−quarter."
The pilot is expected to be level at 13,000 feet at 2215 UTC.

2. Through Relay− *"Speedbird Five, climb to reach flight level three−five zero at one−two−one−five, time" (Issue a time check).*

3. *In radar contact and in direct controller to pilot, two-way, VHF/UHF voice communication - "United Four Seventeen, descend to reach flight level three five zero within two minutes." The time restriction begins once the clearance has been acknowledged by the pilot.*

4. *"United Four Seventeen climb to leave flight level three three zero within two minutes, maintain flight level three five zero."*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1−2−1, Word Meanings.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−17, Numbers Usage.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

If required,

AFTER PASSING (fix, waypoint),

or

AT (time) (time in hours, minutes, and nearest quarter minute).

CLIMB/DESCEND TO REACH (altitude)
AT (time (issue time check) or fix, waypoint),

or

AT (time). CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude) WHEN ESTABLISHED AT LEAST (number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES PAST (fix, waypoint) ON THE (NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.
CLIMB/DESCEND TO REACH (altitude) AT (time or fix, waypoint),

or

A POINT (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (name of DME NAVAID),

or

MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL (time (issue time check), fix, waypoint), THEN CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

Through relay:

CLIMB TO REACH (altitude) AT (time) (issue a time check).

Or

Using a time interval while in radar contact and in direct controller to pilot, two-way, VHF/UHF voice communication:

CLIMB/DESCEND TO REACH/LEAVE (altitude) WITHIN (number) MINUTES, MAINTAIN (altitude).
Or

CLIMB/DESCEND TO REACH/LEAVE (altitude) IN (number) MINUTES OR LESS, MAINTAIN (altitude).

c. Specified altitude for crossing a specified fix or waypoint; or, specified altitude for crossing a distance (in miles) and direction from a specified fix or waypoint.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CROSS (fix, waypoint) AT (altitude).
CROSS (fix, waypoint) AT OR ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).
CROSS (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (name of fix, waypoint) AT (altitude).
CROSS (number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (name of fix, waypoint) AT OR ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

d. A specified altitude over a specified fix for that portion of a descent clearance where descent at pilot's discretion is permissible. At any other time it is practicable, authorize climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB/DESCEND AT PILOT'S DISCRETION.

EXAMPLE−
"United Four Seventeen, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE−
The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend at the suggested rates specified in the AIM, para 4−4−10, Adherence to Clearance, until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE−
"United Four Seventeen, descend at pilot's discretion, maintain six thousand."

NOTE−
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent within the context of the term "at pilot's discretion" as described in the AIM.

EXAMPLE−
"United Four Seventeen cross Lakeview V−O−R at or above flight level two zero zero, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE−
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent "at pilot's discretion" until reaching Lakeview VOR. The pilot must comply with the clearance provision to cross the Lakeview VOR at or above FL 200, and after passing Lakeview VOR, the pilot is expected to descend at the rates specified in the AIM until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE−
"United Four Seventeen, cross Lakeview V−O−R at and maintain six thousand."

NOTE−
The pilot is authorized to conduct descent "at pilot's discretion," but must comply with the clearance provision to cross Lakeview VOR at 6,000 feet.

EXAMPLE−
"United Four Seventeen, descend now to flight level two seven zero, cross Lakeview V−O−R at or below one zero thousand, descend and maintain six thousand."

NOTE−
The pilot is expected to promptly execute and complete descent to FL 270 upon receipt of the clearance. After reaching FL 270, the pilot is authorized to descend "at pilot's discretion" until reaching Lakeview VOR. The pilot must comply with the clearance provision to cross Lakeview VOR at or below 10,000 feet. After Lakeview VOR, the pilot is expected to descend at the rates specified in the AIM until reaching 6,000 feet.

NOTE−
1. *A descent clearance which specifies a crossing altitude authorizes descent at pilot's discretion for that portion of the flight to which the crossing altitude restriction applies.*

2. *Any other time that authorization to descend at pilot's discretion is intended, it must be specifically stated by the controller.*

3. *The pilot may need to know of any future restrictions that might affect the descent, including those that may be issued in another sector, in order to properly plan a descent at pilot's discretion.*

4. *Controllers need to be aware that the descent rates in the AIM are only suggested and aircraft will not always descend at those rates.*

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Pilot's Discretion.

e. When a portion of a climb/descent may be authorized at the pilot's discretion, specify the altitude the aircraft must climb/descend to followed by the altitude to maintain at the pilot's discretion.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB/DESCEND NOW TO (altitude), THEN CLIMB/DESCEND AT PILOT'S DISCRETION MAINTAIN (altitude).

EXAMPLE−
"United Three Ten, descend now to flight level two eight zero, then descend at pilot's discretion maintain flight level two four zero."

NOTE−
1. *The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend as prescribed in the AIM, para 4−4−10, Adherence to Clearance, until FL 280. At that point, the pilot is authorized to continue descent to FL 240 within context of the term "at pilot's discretion" as described in the AIM.*

2. *Controllers need to be aware that the descent rates are only suggested and aircraft will not always descend at those rates.*

f. When the "pilot's discretion" portion of a climb/descent clearance is being canceled by assigning a new altitude, inform the pilot that the new altitude is an "amended altitude."

EXAMPLE−
"American Eighty Three, amend altitude, descend and maintain Flight Level two six zero."

NOTE−
American Eighty Three, at FL 280, has been cleared to descend at pilot's discretion to FL 240. Subsequently, the altitude assignment is changed to FL 260. Therefore, pilot's discretion is no longer authorized.

g. Altitude assignments involving more than one altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAINTAIN BLOCK (altitude) THROUGH (altitude).

h. Instructions to vertically navigate on a STAR/SID with published restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DESCEND VIA (STAR name and number).

TERMINAL: DESCEND VIA (STAR name and number and runway number).

CLIMB VIA (SID name and number).

EXAMPLE−
"Descend via the Eagul Five arrival."
"Cross Gramm at or above flight level one eight zero, then descend via the Riivr Two arrival."

TERMINAL: "Descend via the Lendy One Arrival, Runway 22 left."

"Climb via the Dawgs Four Departure."

NOTE−
When cleared for STARs that contain published speed restrictions, the pilot must comply with those speed restrictions independent of any descend via clearance.
Clearance to "descend via" authorizes pilots:
1. *To descend at pilot discretion to meet published restrictions and laterally navigate on a STAR. Pilots navigating on a STAR must maintain the last assigned altitude until receiving clearance to descend via. Once departing an altitude the pilot may not return to that altitude without an ATC clearance.*
2. *When cleared to a waypoint depicted on a STAR, to descend from a previously assigned altitude at pilot's discretion to the altitude depicted for that waypoint. ATC assigned altitudes must ensure obstacle clearance.*
3. *Once established on the depicted arrival, to descend and to meet all published or assigned altitude and/or speed restrictions. Where speed restrictions are published at the waypoint/fix pilots will begin slowing to comply with the restrictions prior to reaching the waypoint/fix.*

NOTE−
When cleared for SIDs that contain published speed restrictions, the pilot must comply with those speed restrictions independent of any "climb via" clearance.
Clearance to "climb via" authorizes pilots:
1. *When used in the IFR departure clearance, in a PDC, DCL or when subsequently cleared after departure to a waypoint depicted on a SID, to join a procedure after departure or resume a procedure.*
2. *When vertical navigation is interrupted and an altitude is assigned to maintain which is not contained on the published procedure, to climb from that previously-assigned altitude at pilot's discretion to the altitude depicted for the next waypoint. ATC must ensure obstacle clearance until the aircraft is established on the lateral and vertical path of the SID.*
3. *Once established on the depicted departure, to climb and to meet all published or assigned altitude and speed restrictions.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-6, Minimum En Route Altitudes
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-9, Separation From Obstructions
PCG, Climb Via, Descend Via.

NOTE−
Pilots cleared for vertical navigation using the phraseology "descend via" or "climb via" must inform ATC, upon initial contact, of the altitude leaving, the runway transition or landing direction if assigned (STARs), and any assigned restrictions not published on the procedure.

EXAMPLE−
"Delta One Twenty One leaving flight level one niner zero, descending via the Eagul Five arrival runway two-six transition."

"Delta One Twenty One leaving flight level one niner zero for one two thousand, descending via the Eagul Five arrival, runway two-six transition."

"JetBlue six zero two leaving flight level two one zero descending via the Ivane Two arrival landing south."

"Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand climbing via the Laura Two departure."

"Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand for one-six thousand, climbing via the Laura Two departure."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5-2-8, Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP) and Standard Instrument Departures (SID)
PCG, Top Altitude, Bottom Altitude
AIM, Para 5-4-1, Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Procedures.

1. Assign an altitude to cross the waypoint/fix, if no altitude is depicted at the waypoint/fix, for aircraft on a direct routing to a STAR or SID waypoint/fix.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Proceed direct Denis, cross Denis at or above flight level two zero zero, then descend via the Mmell One arrival."*

NOTE−
In Example 1 the aircraft will maintain FL200 or higher until reaching Denis. The pilot will then comply with the Mmell One arrival lateral path and published speed restrictions and will descend at pilot discretion to comply with published altitude restrictions. The aircraft may begin slowing prior to Denis to comply with any published speed restrictions at that waypoint.

EXAMPLE–
2. "Proceed direct Rockr, cross Rockr at or above one-zero thousand, climb via the Bizee Two departure."

NOTE–
In Example 2 the aircraft will join the Bizee Two departure at Rockr and will then comply with departure published lateral path, published speed and altitude restrictions.

2. A "descend via" clearance must not be used where procedures contain only published "expect" altitude and/or speed restrictions.

NOTE–
Pilots are not expected to comply with published "expect" restrictions in the event of lost communications, unless ATC has specifically advised the pilot to expect these restrictions as part of a further clearance.

3. "Descend via" may be used on procedures that contain both "expect" and required altitude and speed restrictions only if altitude and/or speed restrictions or alternate restrictions are issued for the fix/waypoint associated with all expect restrictions.

4. "Descend via" clearances may also be issued if an aircraft is past all fixes/waypoints that have expect restrictions.

5. If it is necessary to assign a crossing altitude which differs from the STAR or SID altitude, emphasize the change to the pilot.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DESCEND VIA (STAR name and number) ARRIVAL, EXCEPT CROSS (fix, point, waypoint), (revised altitude information).

EXAMPLE–
"United 454 descend via the Haris One Arrival, except cross Haris at or above one six thousand."

NOTE–
The aircraft should track laterally and vertically on the Haris One Arrival and should descend so as to cross Haris at or above 16,000; remainder of the arrival must be flown as published.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB VIA SID, EXCEPT CROSS (fix, point, waypoint), (revised altitude information).

CLIMB VIA (SID name and number), EXCEPT CROSS (fix, point, waypoint), (revised altitude information).

EXAMPLE–
1. "Climb via SID except cross Mkala at or above seven thousand."

NOTE–
In Example 1, the aircraft will comply with the assigned SID departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions and climb so as to cross Mkala at or above 7,000; remainder of the departure must be flown as published.

EXAMPLE–
2. (There is a published altitude at Dvine WP): "Proceed direct Dvine, Climb via the Suzan Two departure except cross Mkala at or above seven thousand."

NOTE–
In Example 2, the aircraft will join the Suzan Two departure at Dvine, at the published altitude, and then comply with the published lateral path and any published speed or altitude restrictions. The aircraft will climb so as to cross Mkala at or above 7,000; remainder of the departure must be flown as published.

6. When an aircraft has been issued an interim altitude and after departure ATC can subsequently clear the aircraft to climb to the original top altitude published in the SID instruct aircraft to "climb via SID." When issuing a new altitude and compliance with published restrictions is still required instruct aircraft to "climb via SID except maintain (altitude)."

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB VIA SID.

CLIMB VIA SID except maintain (altitude).

EXAMPLE–
1. (An aircraft was issued the Teddd One departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. An interim altitude of 10,000 was issued instead of the published top altitude of FL 230; after departure ATC is able to issue the published top altitude): "Climb via SID."

NOTE–
In Example 1, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Teddd One departure and initially climb to 10,000; Once re-issued the "climb via" clearance the interim altitude is cancelled aircraft will continue climb to FL230 while complying with published restrictions.

EXAMPLE–
2. (Using Example 1, after departure ATC is able to issue an altitude higher than the published top altitude): "Climb via SID except maintain flight level two six zero."

NOTE–
In Example 2, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Teddd One departure and initially climb to 10,000; once issued "climb via" clearance to FL260 the aircraft will continue climb while complying with published restrictions.

7. If it is necessary to assign an interim altitude or assign a bottom or top altitude not contained on a STAR or SID, the provisions of subparagraph 4-5-7h may be used in conjunction with subparagraph 4-5-7a.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DESCEND VIA THE (STAR name and number) ARRIVAL EXCEPT AFTER (fix) MAINTAIN (revised altitude information).

EXAMPLE−
"United 454 descend via the Eagul Five Arrival, except after Geeno maintain one zero thousand."

NOTE−
The aircraft should track laterally and vertically on the Eagul Five Arrival and should descend so as to comply with all speed and altitude restrictions until reaching Geeno and then maintain 10,000. Upon reaching 10,000, aircraft should maintain 10,000 until cleared by ATC to continue to descend.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−1, Clearance Information.
AIM, Para 5−4−1, Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Procedures.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB VIA SID EXCEPT AFTER (waypoint name), MAINTAIN (altitude).

EXAMPLE−
"Climb via SID except after Baret, maintain flight level one niner zero."

NOTE−
1. *Considering the principle that the last ATC clearance issued has precedence over the previous, the phraseology "maintain (altitude)" alone cancels previously issued altitude restrictions, including SID/STAR altitude restrictions unless they are restated or modified, and authorizes an unrestricted climb or descent. Speed restrictions remain in effect unless the controller explicitly cancels the speed restrictions.*

2. *Restate "climb/descend via" and then use "except" or "except maintain" phraseology to modify published restrictions or assign a new top/bottom altitude. Use "resume" phraseology with "maintain" to rejoin a route and assign a new altitude where compliance with published altitude restrictions is not required.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-2-5, Route or Altitude Amendments
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-6-2, Methods
AIM 4-4-10 Adherence to Clearance
AIM, Para 5−2−8. Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP) and Standard Instrument Departures (SID).

i. When a pilot is unable to accept a clearance, issue revised instructions to ensure positive control and approved separation.

NOTE−
1. *14 CFR Section 91.123 states that a pilot is not allowed to deviate from an ATC clearance "that has been obtained...unless an amended clearance is obtained" (except when an emergency exists).*

2. *A pilot is therefore expected to advise the controller if a clearance cannot be accepted when the clearance is issued. "We will try" and other such acknowledgements do not constitute pilot acceptance of an ATC clearance.*

3. *Controllers are expected to issue ATC clearances which conform with normal aircraft operational capabilities and do not require "last minute" amendments to ensure approved separation.*

4. *"Expedite" is not to be used in lieu of appropriate restrictions to ensure separation.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−1−3, Providing Assistance.

4−5−8. ANTICIPATED ALTITUDE CHANGES

If practicable, inform an aircraft when to expect climb or descent clearance or to request altitude change from another facility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT HIGHER/LOWER IN (number of miles or minutes) MILES/MINUTES,

or

AT (fix). REQUEST ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL CHANGE FROM (name of facility).

If required,

AT (time, fix, or altitude).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−2−6, IFR Flight Progress Data.

4−5−9. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION− NONRADAR

a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact and when position reports are received unless:

NOTE−
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

1. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

2. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or descending aircraft, or

3. *TERMINAL.* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY−
(In level flight situations),

VERIFY AT (altitude/flight level).

(In climbing/descending situations),

(if aircraft has been assigned an altitude below the lowest useable flight level),

VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE (altitude).

(If aircraft has been assigned a flight level at or above the lowest useable flight level),

VERIFY ASSIGNED FLIGHT LEVEL (flight level).

b. *USA*. Reconfirm all pilot altitude read backs.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(If altitude read back is correct),
AFFIRMATIVE (altitude).

(If altitude read back is not correct),
NEGATIVE. CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

NEGATIVE. MAINTAIN (altitude).

Section 6. Holding Aircraft

4−6−1. CLEARANCE TO HOLDING FIX

Consider operational factors such as length of delay, holding airspace limitations, navigational aids, altitude, meteorological conditions when necessary to clear an aircraft to a fix other than the destination airport. Issue the following:

a. Clearance limit (if any part of the route beyond a clearance limit differs from the last routing cleared, issue the route the pilot can expect beyond the clearance limit).

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (routing).

EXAMPLE−
"Expect further clearance via direct Stillwater V−O−R, Victor Two Twenty-Six Snapy intersection, direct Newark."

b. Holding instructions.

1. Holding instructions may be eliminated when you inform the pilot that no delay is expected.

2. When the pattern is charted, you may omit all holding instructions except the charted holding direction and the statement "as published." Always issue complete holding instructions when the pilot requests them.

NOTE−
The most generally used holding patterns are depicted on U.S. Government or commercially produced low/high altitude en route, area, and STAR Charts.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (fix), HOLD (direction), AS PUBLISHED,

or

CLEARED TO (fix), NO DELAY EXPECTED.

c. EFC. Do not specify this item if no delay is expected.

1. When additional holding is expected at any other fix in your facility's area, state the fix and your best estimate of the additional delay. When more than one fix is involved, state the total additional en route delay (omit specific fixes).

NOTE−
Additional delay information is not used to determine pilot action in the event of two-way communications failure. Pilots are expected to predicate their actions solely on the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.185.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time),

and if required,

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes/hours) MINUTE/HOUR DELAY AT (fix),

or

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes/hours) MINUTE/HOUR EN ROUTE DELAY.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Expect further clearance one niner two zero, anticipate additional three zero minute delay at Sweet."*

2. *"Expect further clearance one five one zero, anticipate additional three zero minute en route delay."*

2. When additional holding is expected in an approach control area, state the total additional terminal delay.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time),

and if required,

ANTICIPATE ADDITIONAL (time in minutes/hours) MINUTE/HOUR TERMINAL DELAY.

3. *TERMINAL.* When terminal delays exist or are expected, inform the appropriate center or approach control facility so that the information can be forwarded to arrival aircraft.

4. When delay is expected, issue items in subparas a and b at least 5 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to reach the clearance limit. If the traffic situation requires holding an aircraft that is less than 5 minutes from the holding fix, issue these items immediately.

NOTE−
1. *The AIM indicates that pilots should start speed reduction when 3 minutes or less from the holding fix. The additional 2 minutes contained in the 5−minute requirement are necessary to compensate for different pilot/controller ETAS at the holding fix, minor differences in clock times, and provision for sufficient planning and reaction times.*

2. *When holding is necessary, the phrase "delay indefinite" should be used when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately* *be determined; i.e., disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center sector saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc. In any event, every attempt should be made to provide the pilot with the best possible estimate of his/her delay time and the reason for the delay. Controllers/supervisors should consult, as appropriate, with personnel (other sectors, weather forecasters, the airport management, other facilities, etc.) who can best provide this information.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
DELAY INDEFINITE, (reason if known), EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (time). (After determining the reason for the delay, advise the pilot as soon as possible.)

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared to Drewe, hold west, as published, expect further clearance via direct Sidney V−O−R one three one five, anticipate additional two zero minute delay at Woody."

"Cleared to Aston, hold west on Victor two twenty-five, seven mile leg, left turns, expect further clearance one niner two zero, anticipate additional one five minute terminal delay."

"Cleared to Wayne, no delay expected."

"Cleared to Wally, hold north, as published, delay indefinite, snow removal in progress, expect further clearance one one three zero."

4−6−2. CLEARANCE BEYOND FIX

a. If no delay is expected, issue a clearance beyond the clearance limit as soon as possible and, whenever possible, at least 5 minutes before the aircraft reaches the fix.

b. Include the following items when issuing clearance beyond a clearance limit:

1. Clearance limit or approach clearance.

2. Route of flight. Specify one of the following:

(a) Complete details of the route (airway, route, course, fix(es), azimuth course, heading, arc, or vector.)

(b) The phrase "via last routing cleared." Use this phrase only when the most recently issued routing to the new clearance limit is valid and verbiage will be reduced.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VIA LAST ROUTING CLEARED.

3. Assigned altitude if different from present altitude.

NOTE−
Except in the event of a two-way communications failure, when a clearance beyond a fix has not been received, pilots are expected to hold as depicted on U.S. Government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low/high altitude en route and area or STAR charts. If no holding pattern is charted and holding instructions have not been issued, pilots should ask ATC for holding instructions prior to reaching the fix. If a pilot is unable to obtain holding instructions prior to reaching the fix, the pilot is expected to hold in a standard pattern on the course on which the aircraft approached the fix and request further clearance as soon as possible.

4−6−3. DELAYS

a. Advise your supervisor or flow controller as soon as possible when you delay or expect to delay aircraft.

b. When arrival delays reach or are anticipated to reach 30 minutes, take the following action:

1. *EN ROUTE.* The center responsible for transferring control to an approach control facility or, for a nonapproach control destination, the center in whose area the aircraft will land must issue total delay information as soon as possible after the aircraft enters the center's area. Whenever possible, the delay information must be issued by the first center controller to communicate with the aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO7110.65, Para 5-14-9, ERAM Computer Entry of Hold Information

2. *TERMINAL.* When tower en route control service is being provided, the approach control facility whose area contains the destination airport must issue total delay information as soon as possible after the aircraft enters its approach control area. Whenever possible, the delay information must be issued by the first terminal controller to communicate with the aircraft.

3. Unless a pilot requests delay information, the actions specified in subparas 1 and 2 above may be omitted when total delay information is available to pilots via ATIS.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Airport) ARRIVAL DELAYS (time in minutes/hours).

4−6−4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS

When issuing holding instructions, specify:

a. Direction of holding from the fix/waypoint.

b. Holding fix or waypoint.

NOTE−
The holding fix may be omitted if included at the beginning of the transmission as the clearance limit.

c. Radial, course, bearing, track, azimuth, airway, or route on which the aircraft is to hold.

d. Leg length in miles if DME or RNAV is to be used. Specify leg length in minutes if the pilot requests it or you consider it necessary.

e. Direction of holding pattern turns only if left turns are to be made, the pilot requests it, or you consider it necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD (direction) OF (fix/waypoint) ON (specified radial, course, bearing, track, airway, azimuth(s), or route.)

If leg length is specified,

(number of minutes/miles) MINUTE/MILE LEG.

If direction of turn is specified,

LEFT/RIGHT TURNS.

f. Issue maximum holding airspeed advisories when an aircraft is:

1. Approved to exceed the maximum airspeed of a pattern, and is cleared into a holding pattern that will protect for the greater speed; or

2. Observed deviating from the holding pattern airspace area; or

3. Cleared into an airspeed restricted holding pattern in which the icon has not been published.

EXAMPLE−
Due to turbulence, a turboprop requests to exceed the recommended maximum holding airspeed. ATCS may clear the aircraft into a pattern that protects for the airspeed request, and must advise the pilot of the maximum holding airspeed for the holding pattern airspace area.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"MAXIMUM HOLDING AIRSPEED IS TWO ONE ZERO KNOTS."

4−6−5. VISUAL HOLDING POINTS

You may use as a holding fix a location which the pilot can determine by visual reference to the surface if he/she is familiar with it.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD AT (location) UNTIL (time or other condition.)

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−1−4, Visual Holding of VFR Aircraft.

4−6−6. HOLDING FLIGHT PATH DEVIATION

Approve a pilot's request to deviate from the prescribed holding flight path if obstacles and traffic conditions permit.

4−6−7. UNMONITORED NAVAIDs

Separate an aircraft holding at an unmonitored NAVAID from any other aircraft occupying the course which the holding aircraft will follow if it does not receive signals from the NAVAID.

4−6−8. ILS PROTECTION/CRITICAL AREAS

When conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility of 2 miles, do not authorize aircraft to hold below 5,000 feet AGL inbound toward the airport on or within 1 statute mile of the localizer between the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM and the airport. *USAF.* The holding restriction applies only when an arriving aircraft is between the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM and the runway.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7130.3, Holding Pattern Criteria.

Section 7. Arrival Procedures

4-7-1. CLEARANCE INFORMATION

Clear an arriving aircraft to a clearance limit by specifying the following:

a. Name of fix or airport.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT.
Or
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type if known).
Or
CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type if known).

b. Route of flight including a STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP and STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP transition, if appropriate. Assign a STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP and STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP transition to any aircraft in lieu of other routes; e.g., airways or preferential arrival routes when the routings are the same. The clearance must include the name and transition, if necessary, of the STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP to be flown.

TERMINAL: When the STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP transition is designed to provide course guidance to multiple runways, the facility must state intended runway number on initial contact, or as soon as practical. If the runway assignment, or any subsequent runway change, is not issued prior to 10 NM from the runway transition waypoint, radar vectors to final must be provided.

PHRASEOLOGY-
(STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP name and number) ARRIVAL.
(STAR/RNAV STAR/FMSP name and number) ARRIVAL, (transition name) TRANSITION.
CHANGE/AMEND TRANSITION TO (runway number).
CHANGE/AMEND TRANSITION TO (runway number) TURN LEFT/RIGHT or HEADING (heading) FOR VECTOR TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

EXAMPLE-
"Rosewood One arrival."
"Rosewood One arrival, Delta transition."
"Change transition to Runway 09 right."
"Amend transition to Runway 22 left, turn right heading 180 for vector to final approach course."

NOTE-
1. *If a civil pilot does not wish to use a STAR issued in an ATC clearance or any other STAR published for that location, the pilot is expected to advise ATC.*

2. *Arrival procedure descriptive text contained within parentheses (for example, "Devine One (RNAV) Arrival") are not included in arrival clearance phraseology.*

c. Altitude instructions, as follows:

1. Assigned altitude; or

2. Instructions to vertically navigate on the STAR/FMSP or STAR/FMSP transition.

EXAMPLE-
"Bayview Three Arrival, Helen Transition, maintain Flight Level Three Three Zero."
"Descend via the Civit One Arrival."
"Descend via the Lendy One Arrival, Runway 22 left."

"Cross JCT at Flight Level Two Four Zero."
"Descend via the Coast Two Arrival."
"Civit One Arrival, Descend and Maintain Flight Level Two Four Zero."

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-7, Altitude Information.
AIM, Para 5-4-1, Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR), Area Navigation (RNAV) STAR, and Flight Management System Procedures (FMSP) for Arrivals.

d. Issue holding instructions, EFC, and additional delay information as required.

e. Instructions regarding further communications as appropriate.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-17, Radio Communications Transfer.

4-7-2. ADVANCE DESCENT CLEARANCE

EN ROUTE

Take the following action when exercising control of aircraft landing at an airport located in an adjacent center's control area near the common boundary:

a. Coordinate with the receiving facility for a lower altitude and issue a clearance to the aircraft as appropriate.

b. Initiate this action at a distance sufficient from destination to allow for normal descent and speed reduction.

4-7-3. SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES (SFA)

TERMINAL

Where SFA procedures for military single-piloted turbojet aircraft on an IFR flight plan are contained in a letter of agreement, do not require a radio frequency change after the aircraft begins approach or after initial contact during an en route descent until a landing or low approach has been completed except under the following conditions:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations, Para 9–3–6, Single Frequency Approach (SFA).
P/CG Term– Single-Piloted Aircraft.

a. During daylight hours while the aircraft is in VFR conditions.

b. On pilot request.

c. When pilot cancels IFR flight plan.

d. In an emergency situation.

e. When aircraft is cleared for visual approach.

4–7–4. RADIO FREQUENCY AND RADAR BEACON CHANGES FOR MILITARY AIRCRAFT

When military single-piloted turbojet aircraft will conduct an approach wholly or partly in IFR conditions or at night, take the following action:

NOTE–
It is known that the mental distraction and the inadvertent movement of aircraft controls resulting from the pilot's turning, reaching, or leaning to change frequencies can induce spatial disorientation (vertigo).

a. Avoid radio frequency and radar beacon changes to the maximum extent that communications capabilities and traffic will permit. However, when changes are required:

1. Give instructions early enough to allow the change before the aircraft reaches the approach fix or handoff point.

2. Keep frequency/radar beacon changes to a minimum below 2,500 feet above the surface.

3. Avoid requiring frequency/radar beacon changes during the time the aircraft is making a turn.

b. When traffic volume requires, a frequency other than the one used by aircraft making approaches may be assigned for use in transferring control to the approach control facility.

TERMINAL

c. If practicable, use a frequency common to both the GCA unit and approach control to minimize frequency changes.

d. When a GCA unit is not able to communicate on a common frequency, a change to a GCA frequency may be authorized.

e. When a nonradar approach will be made, aircraft may be instructed to change to tower frequency when:

1. The reported ceiling is at or above 1,500 feet and visibility is 5 statute miles or more.

2. The aircraft reports able to proceed by visual reference to the surface.

3. The aircraft requests and is cleared for a contact approach.

4. The aircraft is cleared for a visual approach.

f. Avoid making frequency/radar beacon changes after an aircraft begins a high altitude approach.

g. In the event of a missed approach, do not require a frequency/radar beacon change before the aircraft reaches the missed approach altitude, the MEA, or the MVA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–6, Function Code Assignments.

4–7–5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT

Provide military turbojet aircraft the same arrival procedures that are provided for nonmilitary turbojet aircraft except:

NOTE–
It is the responsibility of the pilot to request a high altitude approach if he/she does not want normal arrival handling.

a. An en route descent may be used in a nonradar environment; however, radar capability should exist which will permit the aircraft to be vectored to the final approach course of a published high altitude instrument approach procedure or PAR/ASR approach. Do not use this procedure if other than normal vectoring delays are anticipated.

b. Prior to issuance of a descent clearance below the highest initial approach fix altitude established for any high altitude instrument approach procedure for the destination airport inform the aircraft:

1. Type of approach to expect.

EXAMPLE–
"Expect V–O–R approach to runway three two."

2. Radar vectors will be provided to the final approach course.

EXAMPLE−
"Expect surveillance/precision approach to runway one seven; radar vectors to final approach course."

3. Current weather whenever the ceiling is below 1,000 feet (**USAF:** 1,500 feet) or the highest circling minimum whichever is greater, or when the visibility is less than 3 miles.

EXAMPLE−
"Expect ILS approach to runway eight; radar vectors to localizer course. Weather (reported weather)."

c. If ATIS is provided and the pilot advises he/she has received the current ATIS broadcast before the descent clearance in subpara b is issued, omit those items in subpara b that are contained in the broadcast.

d. To avoid requiring an aircraft to fly at low altitudes for an excessive distance, descent clearance should be issued at a point determined by adding 10 to the first two digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE−
For FL 370, 37 + 10 = 47 miles.

NOTE−
Turbojet en route descents are based on a rate of descent of 4,000 to 6,000 feet per minute.

e. Do not terminate the en route descent of an aircraft without the consent of the pilot except as required by radar outage or an emergency situation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−4, Altitude Assignment for Military High Altitude Instrument Approaches.

4−7−6. ARRIVAL INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

a. Forward the following information to nonapproach control towers soon enough to permit adjustment of the traffic flow or to FSSs soon enough to provide local airport advisory where applicable:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft.

3. ETA.

4. Type of instrument approach procedure the aircraft will execute; or

5. For SVFR, the direction from which the aircraft will enter Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and any altitude restrictions that were issued; or

6. For aircraft executing a contact approach the position of the aircraft.

NOTE−
Specific time requirements are usually stated in a letter of agreement.

b. Forward the following information to approach control facilities before transfer of control jurisdiction:

NOTE−
Transfer points are usually specified in a letter of agreement.

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft and appropriate aircraft equipment suffix.

3. ETA or actual time, and proposed or actual altitude over clearance limit. The ETA need not be given if the arrival information is being forwarded during a radar handoff.

4. Clearance limit (when other than the destination airport) and EFC issued to the aircraft. Clearance limit may be omitted when provided for in a letter of agreement.

5. Time, fix, or altitude when control responsibility is transferred to the approach control facility. This information may be omitted when provided for in a letter of agreement.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification), (type of aircraft), ESTIMATED/OVER (clearance limit), (time), (altitude), EFC (time).

If required,

YOUR CONTROL,

or

YOUR CONTROL AT (time, fix or altitude).

4−7−7. WEATHER INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

When an available official weather report indicates weather conditions are below a 1,000−foot (*USAF:* 1,500−foot) ceiling or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is higher, or less than three-miles visibility for the airport concerned, transmit the weather report and changes classified as special weather observations to an arriving aircraft prior to or as part of the approach clearance when:

a. It is transmitted directly to the pilot via center controller-to-pilot communications.

b. It is relayed through a communications station other than an air carrier company radio or through a nonapproach control facility. You may do this by telling the station or nonapproach control facility to issue current weather.

4–7–8. BELOW MINIMA REPORT BY PILOT

If an arriving aircraft reports weather conditions are below his/her landing minima:

NOTE–
Determination that existing weather/visibility is adequate for approach/landing is the responsibility of the pilot/aircraft operator.

a. Issue appropriate instructions to the aircraft to hold or proceed to another airport.

b. Adjust, as necessary, the position in the landing sequence of any other aircraft desiring to make approaches and issue approach clearances accordingly.

4–7–9. TRANSFER OF JURISDICTION

Transfer radio communications and control responsibility early enough to allow the receiving facility to clear an aircraft beyond the clearance limit before the aircraft reaches it.

4–7–10. APPROACH INFORMATION

a. Both en route and terminal approach control sectors must provide current approach information to aircraft destined to airports for which they provide approach control services. This information must be provided on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter. Approach information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code. For pilots destined to an airport without ATIS, items 3–5 below may be omitted after the pilot advises receipt of the automated weather; otherwise, issue approach information by including the following:

1. Approach clearance or type approach to be expected if two or more approaches are published and the clearance limit does not indicate which will be used.

2. Runway if different from that to which the instrument approach is made.

3. Surface wind.

4. Ceiling and visibility if the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or the visibility is less than 3 miles.

5. Altimeter setting for the airport of intended landing.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 2, Section 7, Altimeter Settings.

b. Upon pilot request, controllers must inform pilots of the frequency where automated weather data may be obtained and, if appropriate, that airport weather is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Airport) AWOS/ASOS WEATHER AVAILABLE ON (frequency).

1. ASOS/AWOS must be set to provide one minute weather at uncontrolled airports that are without ground–to–air weather broadcast capability by a CWO, NWS or FSS observer.

2. Controllers will consider the long–line disseminated weather from an automated weather system at an uncontrolled airport as trend information only and must rely on the pilot for the current weather information for that airport.

3. Controllers must issue the last long–line disseminated weather to the pilot if the pilot is unable to receive the ASOS/AWOS broadcast.

NOTE–
Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports, which have automated weather data with broadcast capability, should monitor the ASOS/AWOS frequency to ascertain the current weather at the airport. The pilot should advise the controller when he/she has received the broadcast weather and state his/her intentions.

c. Issue any known changes classified as special weather observations as soon as possible. Special weather observations need not be issued after they are included in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

d. Advise pilots when the ILS on the runway in use is not operational if that ILS is on the same frequency as an operational ILS serving another runway.

EXAMPLE−
"Expect visual approach runway two five right, runway two five right I−L−S not operational."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−7−2, Altimeter Setting Issuance Below Lowest Usable FL.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−2, Approach Information.
14 CFR Section 91.129 Operations in Class D Airspace, Subpara (d)(2).

e. *TERMINAL*: If multiple runway transitions are depicted on a STAR procedure, advise pilots of the runway assignment on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter.

4−7−11. ARRIVAL INFORMATION BY APPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES

TERMINAL

a. Forward the following information to nonapproach control towers soon enough to permit adjustment of the traffic flow or to FSSs soon enough to provide local airport advisory where applicable:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type of aircraft.

3. ETA.

4. Type of instrument approach procedure the aircraft will execute; or

5. For SVFR, the direction from which the aircraft will enter Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and any altitude restrictions that were issued; or

6. For aircraft executing a contact approach, the position of the aircraft.

NOTE−
Specific time requirements are usually stated in a letter of agreement.

b. Forward the following information to the tower when the tower and TRACON are part of the same facility:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Type aircraft if required for separation purposes.

3. Type of instrument approach procedure and/or runway if differing from that in use.

NOTE−
The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ATTS data on the CTRD where a facility directive authorizes its use for the transfer of arrival data.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11−2−4, Use of Modify and Quick Look Functions.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11−8−4, Use of STARS Quick Look Functions.

c. Where the collocated or satellite tower has ATTS data displayed on its CTRD, the ATTS modify or quick look functions may be used to forward arrival data provided that a facility directive at the collocated tower or a letter of agreement with the satellite tower exists which outlines procedures for using ATTS for transferring this data.

d. Forward the following information to centers:

1. Where two or more instrument approach procedures are published for the airport, the particular procedure which an aircraft can expect or that it will be vectored toward the airport for a visual approach.

2. Highest altitude being used by the approach control facility at the holding fix.

3. Average time interval between successive approaches.

4. Arrival time of aircraft over the holding fix or, if control has been transferred to you before an aircraft has reached the fix, a statement or other indication acknowledging receipt of control responsibility.

5. Revised EFC if different by 10 minutes or more from that issued by the center.

6. Missed approaches if they affect center operations.

7. Information relating to an unreported or overdue aircraft.

4−7−12. AIRPORT CONDITIONS

a. *EN ROUTE.* Before issuing an approach clearance or en route descent, and subsequently as changes occur, inform an aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing.

NOTE−
1. *Airport conditions information, in the provision of en route approach control service, does not include information pertaining to cold temperature compensation or the airport surface environment other than the landing area(s) or obstruction information for aircraft that will be*

cleared for an instrument approach. Accordingly, D NOTAMs that contain the keywords TAXIWAY (TWY), RAMP, APRON, or SERVICE (SVC) are not required to be issued. Additionally, Obstruction NOTAMs (OBST) are not required to be issued if an aircraft will be cleared for an instrument approach.

2. *When advised of special use airspace (SUA) or military training route (MTR) activation, appropriate action is taken to separate nonparticipating IFR aircraft from those activities when required, and/or to issue applicable advisories as warranted. When meeting this requirement, there is no requirement for controllers to additionally issue the associated D NOTAM activating that SUA or MTR to the pilot. Accordingly, D NOTAMs for SUA that contain the accountability codes SUAE, SUAC, and SUAW are not required to be issued.*

b. *TERMINAL.* On first contact or as soon as possible thereafter, and subsequently as changes occur, inform an aircraft of any abnormal operation of approach and landing aids and of destination airport conditions that you know of which might restrict an approach or landing. This information may be omitted if it is contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 3, Section 3, Airport Conditions.

c. *TERMINAL.* Where RCRs are provided, transmit this information to USAF and ANG aircraft in accordance with one of the following. Issue the RCR to other aircraft upon pilot request.

1. Before or when an approach clearance is issued.

2. Before an en route descent clearance is issued.

3. Prior to departure.

4. As soon as possible after receipt of any subsequent changes in previously issued RCR information.

NOTE–
1. *USAF has established RCR procedures for determining the average deceleration readings of runways under conditions of water, slush, ice, or snow. The use of RCR code is dependent upon the pilot having a "stopping capability chart" specifically applicable to his/her aircraft.*

2. *USAF offices furnish RCR information at airports serving USAF and ANG aircraft.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–1, Landing Area Condition.

4–7–13. SWITCHING ILS RUNWAYS

TERMINAL

When a change is made from one ILS to another at airports equipped with multiple systems which are not used simultaneously, coordinate with the facilities which use the fixes formed by reference to these NAVAIDs.

Section 8. Approach Clearance Procedures

4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

a. Clear aircraft for "standard" or "special" instrument approach procedures only.

1. To require an aircraft to execute a particular instrument approach procedure, specify in the approach clearance the name of the approach as published on the approach chart. Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown, amend the approach clearance to specify execution of the specific approach to be flown. If only one instrument approach of a particular type is published, the approach needs not be identified by the runway reference.

2. An aircraft conducting an ILS or LDA approach must be advised at the time an approach clearance is issued when the glideslope is reported out of service, unless the title of the published approach procedure allows (for example, ILS or LOC Rwy 05).

3. Standard instrument approach procedures (SIAP) must begin at an initial approach fix (IAF) or an intermediate fix (IF) if there is not an IAF.

4. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may vector aircraft to the final approach course in accordance with Paragraph 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course, and Paragraph 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may clear an aircraft to any fix 3 NM or more prior to the FAF, along the final approach course, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees.

6. Controllers must not disapprove a pilot request to cold temperature compensate in conjunction with the issuance of an approach clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED (type) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute his/her choice of instrument approach),

CLEARED APPROACH.

(Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown),

CLEARED (specific procedure to be flown) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute an ILS or an LDA approach when the glideslope is out of service)

CLEARED (ILS/LDA) APPROACH, GLIDESLOPE UNUSABLE.
(When the title of the approach procedure contains "or LOC")

CLEARED LOCALIZER APPROACH

EXAMPLE-
"Cleared Approach."
"Cleared (V-O-R/I-L-S/Localizer) Approach."
"Cleared L-D-A Runway Three-Six Approach."
"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One-Three Approach."
"Cleared (GPS/RNAV Z) Runway Two-Two Approach."
"Cleared BRANCH ONE Arrival and (ILS/RNAV) Runway One-Three Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three-Six Approach, glideslope unusable."
"Cleared S-D-F Approach."
"Cleared G-L-S Approach."

NOTE-
1. *Clearances authorizing instrument approaches are issued on the basis that, if visual contact with the ground is made before the approach is completed, the entire approach procedure will be followed unless the pilot receives approval for a contact approach, is cleared for a visual approach, or cancels their IFR flight plan.*

2. *Approach clearances are issued based on known traffic. The receipt of an approach clearance does not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to comply with applicable Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations and the notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; for example, "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," or "Procedure not authorized at night" or Snowflake icon with associated temperature.*

3. *In some cases, the name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS is inoperative.*

4. *Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though* *each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC.*

5. *The use of alphabetical identifiers in the approach name with a letter from the end of the alphabet; for example, X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN Z Rwy 6L or RNAV(GPS) Y Rwy 04", denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid.*

6. *Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet; for example, A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.*

7. *14 CFR Section 91.175(j) requires a pilot to receive a clearance to conduct a procedure turn when vectored to a final approach course or fix, conducting a timed approach, or when the procedure specifies "NO PT."*

8. *An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and prior to reaching that fix is issued a clearance for an approach, but not issued a revised routing; that is, "proceed direct to...." may be expected to proceed via the last assigned route, a feeder route (if one is published on the approach chart), and then to commence the approach as published. If, by following the route of flight to the holding fix, the aircraft would overfly an IAF or the fix associated\ with the beginning of a feeder route to be used, the aircraft is expected to commence the approach using the published feeder route to the IAF or from the IAF as appropriate; that is, the aircraft would not be expected to overfly and return to the IAF or feeder route.*

9. *Approach name items contained within parenthesis; for example, RNAV (GPS) Rwy 04, are not included in approach clearance phraseology.*

10. *Pilots are required to advise ATC when intending to apply cold temperature compensation to instrument approach segments. Pilots must advise ATC of the amount of compensation required for each affected segment on initial contact or as soon as possible. Pilots are not required to advise ATC when correcting on the final segment only. Controllers may delay the issuance of an approach clearance to comply with approved separation requirements when informed that a pilot will apply cold temperature compensation (CTC). Pilots will not apply altitude compensation, unless authorized, when assigned an altitude prior to an approach clearance. Consideration should be given to vectoring aircraft at or above the requested compensating altitude if possible. This eliminates pilots having to climb once on the approach.*

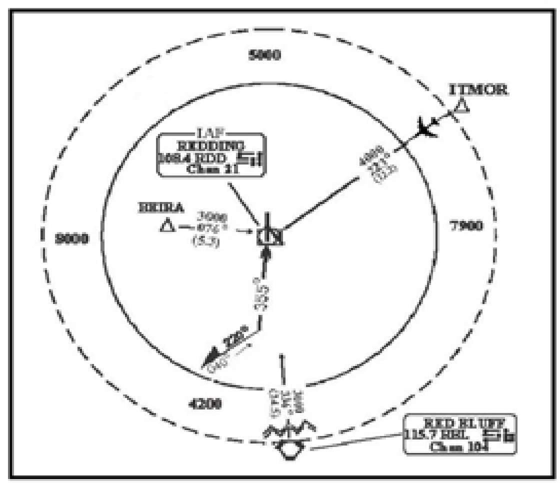
REFERENCE–
FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS).
P/CG Term – Cold Temperature Compensation
AIM, Paragraph 5-1-17, Cold Temperature Operations
AIM, Paragraph 5-5-4, Instrument Approach

b. For aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue the approach clearance only after the aircraft is:

1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or (See FIG 4–8–1)

EXAMPLE–
The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."

FIG 4–8–1
Approach Clearance Example



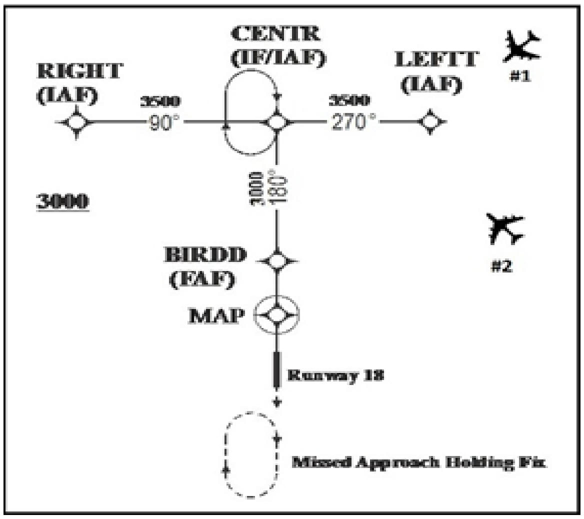
2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. (See FIG 4-8-2.)

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1 is cleared direct LEFTT. The MVA in the area is 3,000 feet, and the aircraft is at 4,000 feet. "Cross LEFTT at or above three thousand five hundred, cleared RNAV Runway One Eight Approach."

The MVA in the area is 3,000 feet and Aircraft 2 is at 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT direct CENTR, maintain three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One Eight Approach."

FIG 4−8−2

Approach Clearance Example



NOTE−

1. *The altitude assigned must assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.*

2. *If the altitude assignment is VFR-on-top, it is conceivable that the pilot may elect to remain high until arrival over the final approach fix which may require the pilot to circle to descend so as to cross the final approach fix at an altitude that would permit landing.*

3. *An aircraft is not established on an approach until at or above an altitude published on that segment of the approach.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO 8260.3 United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Para 10-2

c. Except for visual approaches, do not clear an aircraft direct to the FAF unless it is also an IAF, wherein the aircraft is expected to execute the depicted procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.

d. Intercept angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a procedure turn, a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern, or arrival holding is depicted and the pilot will execute the procedure.

e. If a procedure turn, hold-in-lieu of procedure turn, or arrival holding pattern is depicted and the angle of intercept is 90 degrees or less, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. (See FIG 4−8−3)

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH

NOTE−

1. *Restate "cleared straight-in" in the approach clearance even if the pilot was advised earlier to expect a straight-in approach.*

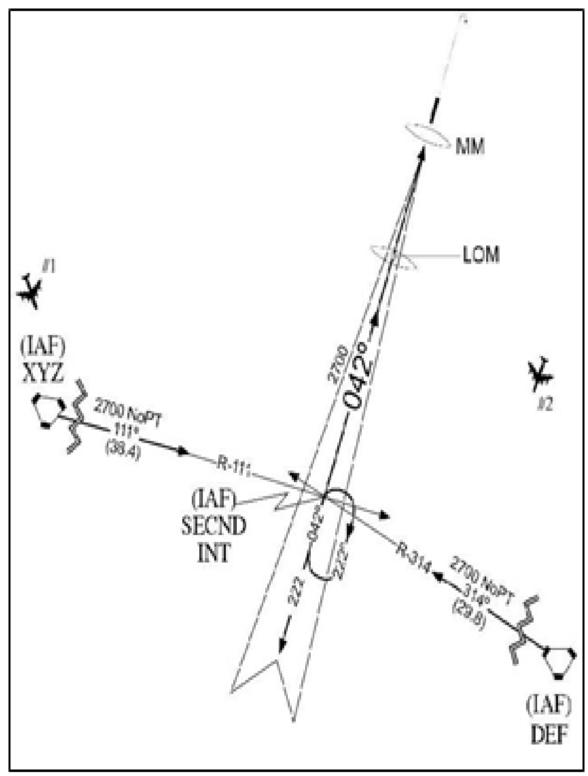
2. *Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC.*

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared direct SECND, maintain at or above three thousand until SECND, cleared straight-in ILS Runway One-Eight approach."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-9, Procedure Turn and Hold-in-lieu of Procedure Turn

FIG 4−8−3

Approach Clearance Example
For Aircraft On a Conventional Approach



EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to XYZ VORTAC, or SECND because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less.

Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared to XYZ VORTAC because the intercept angle is greater than 90 degrees.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared to SECND if allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern.

f. Except when applying radar procedures, timed or visual approaches, clear an aircraft for an approach to an airport when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled IFR flight plan.

g. Where instrument approaches require radar monitoring and radar services are not available, do not use the phraseology "cleared approach," which allows the pilot his/her choice of instrument approaches.

RNAV APPLICATION

h. For RNAV−equipped aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue approach clearance for conventional or RNAV SIAP including approaches with RF legs only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4−8−4).

1. Established on a heading or course direct to the IAF at an intercept angle not greater than 90 degrees and is assigned an altitude in accordance with b2. Radar monitoring is required to the IAF for RNAV (RNP) approaches when no hold−in−lieu of procedure turn is executed.

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR, section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold in lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at an IAF and a TAA is not defined, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a hold-in-lieu procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

2. Established on a heading or course direct to the IF at an angle not greater than 90 degrees, provided the following conditions are met:

(a) Assign an altitude in accordance with b2 that will permit a normal descent to the FAF.

NOTE−
Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 150-300 feet per nautical mile when applying guidance in subpara d2(a).

(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the IF.

(c) The SIAP must identify the intermediate fix *with the letters "IF."*

(d) For procedures where an IAF is published, the pilot is advised to expect clearance to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix.

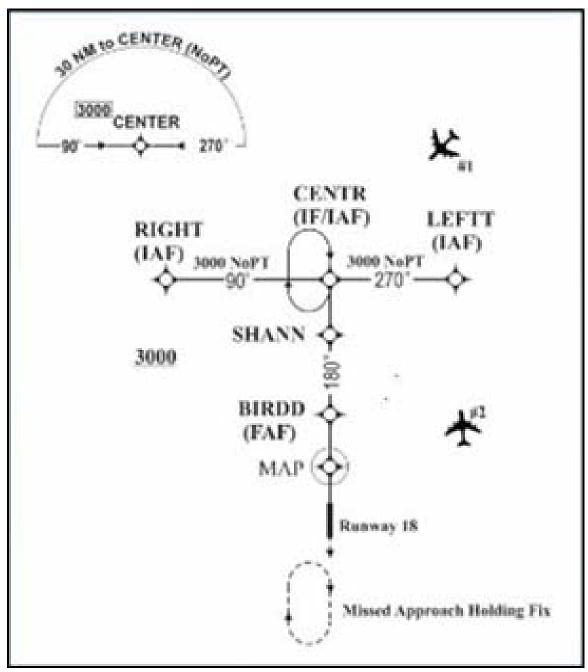
EXAMPLE−
"Expect direct CENTR for RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

3. Established on a heading or course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees, and assigned an altitude in accordance with b2.

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1 is more than 5 miles from SHANN. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to SHANN is 3,000 feet. SHANN is a step down fix between the IF/IAF (CENTR) and the FAF. To clear Aircraft 1 to SHANN, ATC must ensure the intercept angle for the intermediate segment at SHANN is not greater than 30 degrees and must be cleared to an altitude that will allow a normal descent to the FAF. "Cleared direct SHANN, cross SHANN at or above three thousand, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7110.65, Par 5-6-2, Methods
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

FIG 4−8−4
Approach Clearance Example
For RNAV Aircraft



EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. The intercept angle at that IF/IAF is greater than

90 degrees. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight approach." The pilot is expected to proceed direct CENTR and execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared direct LEFTT. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at LEFTT.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

i. Clear RNAV−equipped aircraft conducting RNAV instrument approach procedures that contain radius to fix (RF) legs:

1. Via published transitions, or

2. In accordance with paragraph d.

3. Do not clear aircraft direct to any waypoint beginning or within an RF leg.

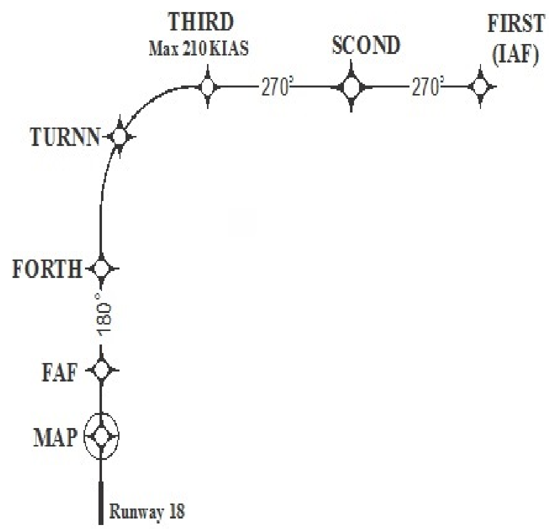
4. Do not assign fix/waypoint crossing speeds in excess of charted speed restrictions.

NOTE−
1. *RNAV approaches (containing RF legs) that commence at 10,000 feet or above require special procedures that will be site specific and specified in a facility directive.*

2. *An RF leg is defined as a curved segment indicating a constant radius circular path about a defined turn center that begins at a waypoint. RF legs may have maximum airspeeds charted for procedural containment that must be followed.*

3. *If an aircraft is vectored off the procedure, expect the aircraft to request a return to an IAF.*

FIG 4−8−5
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)



NOTE−
1. *The segment between THIRD and FORTH in FIG 4-8-5 is an RF leg.*

2. *The straight segments between waypoints in FIG 4-8-5 are TF legs.*

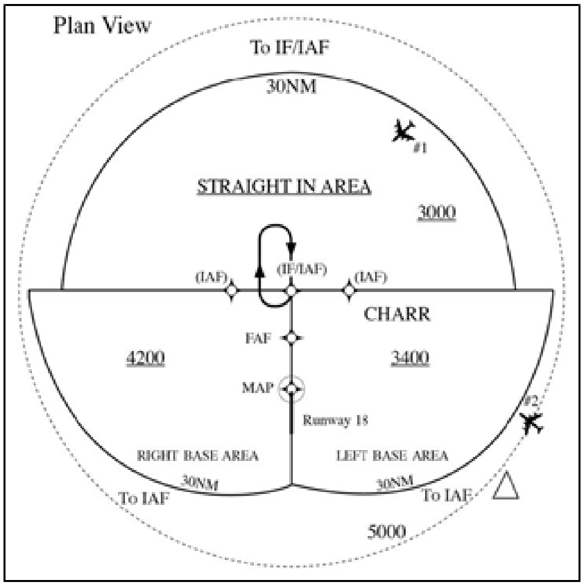
j. Where a terminal arrival area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4−8−6.)

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1: The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is therefore established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R-NAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct

CHARR, maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

FIG 4-8-6
Basic "T" and TAA Design



k. When GPS TESTING NOTAMs are published and testing is actually occurring, inform pilots requesting or cleared for a RNAV approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. Do not resume RNAV approach operations until certain that GPS interference is no longer a factor or such GPS testing exercise has ceased.

l. During times when pilots report GPS anomalies, request the pilot's intentions and/or clear that aircraft for an alternative approach, if available and operational. Announce to other aircraft requesting an RNAV approach that GPS is reported unavailable and request intentions.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-10, NAVAID Malfunctions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-7-12, Airport Conditions.

m. When clearing an aircraft for an RNAV approach, and a GPS NOTAM is published (a WAAS NOTAM is not issued), both GPS and WAAS may become unavailable. Therefore, when a GPS anomaly is reported, request the pilot's intentions.

NOTE-
WAAS UNAVAILABLE NOTAMs are published to indicate a failure of a WAAS system component. Airborne GPS/WAAS equipment may revert to GPS-only operation which satisfies the requirements for basic RNAV (GPS) approaches to the airport of intended landing or filed alternate airport, if airborne equipment is approved for such operations.

4-8-2. CLEARANCE LIMIT

Issue approach or other clearances, as required, specifying the destination airport as the clearance limit if airport traffic control service is not provided even though this is a repetition of the initial clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY-
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT

4-8-3. RELAYED APPROACH CLEARANCE

TERMINAL

Include the weather report, when it is required and available, when an approach clearance is relayed through a communication station other than an air carrier company radio. You may do this by telling the station to issue current weather.

4-8-4. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT FOR MILITARY HIGH ALTITUDE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

Altitudes above those shown on the high altitude instrument approach procedures chart may be specified when required for separation.

NOTE-
To preclude the possibility of aircraft exceeding rate-of-descent or airspeed limitations, the maximum altitudes which may be assigned for any portion of the high altitude instrument approach procedure will be determined through coordination between the ATC facility concerned and the military authority which originated the high altitude instrument approach procedure.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-7-5, Military Turbojet En Route Descent.

4-8-5. SPECIFYING ALTITUDE

Specify in the approach clearance the altitude shown in the approach procedures when adherence to that altitude is required for separation. When vertical separation will be provided from other aircraft by pilot adherence to the prescribed maximum, minimum, or mandatory altitudes, the controller may omit specifying the altitude in the approach clearance.

NOTE-
Use FAA or NGA instrument approach procedures charts appropriate for the aircraft executing the approach.

4−8−6. CIRCLING APPROACH

a. Circling approach instructions may only be given for aircraft landing at airports with operational control towers.

b. Include in the approach clearance instructions to circle to the runway in use if landing will be made on a runway other than that aligned with the direction of instrument approach. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right base/downwind leg as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (number),

or

CIRCLE (direction using eight cardinal compass points) OF THE AIRPORT/RUNWAY FOR A LEFT/RIGHT BASE/DOWNWIND TO RUNWAY (number).

NOTE−
Where standard instrument approach procedures (SIAPs) authorize circling approaches, they provide a basic minimum of 300 feet of obstacle clearance at the MDA within the circling area considered. The dimensions of these areas, expressed in distances from the runways, vary for the different approach categories of aircraft. In some cases a SIAP may otherwise restrict circling approach maneuvers.

c. Do not issue clearances, such as "extend downwind leg," which might cause an aircraft to exceed the circling approach area distance from the runways within which required circling approach obstacle clearance is assured.

4−8−7. SIDE−STEP MANEUVER

TERMINAL

Side-step Maneuver. When authorized by an instrument approach procedure, you may clear an aircraft for an approach to one runway and inform the aircraft that landing will be made on a parallel runway.

EXAMPLE−
"Cleared I−L−S Runway seven left approach. Side-step to runway seven right."

NOTE−
Side-step maneuvers require higher weather minima/MDA. These higher minima/MDA are published on the instrument approach charts.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−3−2, Closed/Unsafe Runway Information.
P/CG Term− Side−step Maneuver.

4−8−8. COMMUNICATIONS RELEASE

If an IFR aircraft intends to land at an airport not served by a tower or FSS, approve a change to the advisory service frequency when you no longer require direct communications.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED.

NOTE−
An expeditious frequency change permits the aircraft to receive timely local airport traffic information in accordance with AC 90−42, Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers.

4−8−9. MISSED APPROACH

Except in the case of a VFR aircraft practicing an instrument approach, an approach clearance automatically authorizes the aircraft to execute the missed approach procedure depicted for the instrument approach being flown. An alternate missed approach procedure as published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 or appropriate military form may be assigned when necessary. Once an aircraft commences a missed approach, it may be radar vectored.

NOTE−
1. *Alternate missed approach procedures are published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 or appropriate military form and require a detailed clearance when they are issued to the pilot.*

2. *In the event of a missed approach involving a turn, unless otherwise cleared, the pilot will proceed to the missed approach point before starting that turn.*

3. *Pilots must advise ATC when intending to apply cold temperature compensation and of the amount of compensation required. Pilots will not apply altitude compensation, unless authorized, when assigned an altitude if provided an initial heading to fly or radar vectors in lieu of published missed approach procedures. Consideration should be given to vectoring aircraft at or above the requested compensating altitude if possible.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−11, Practice Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−3, Vectors Below Minimum Altitude.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−8−3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO 8260.19, Flight Procedures and Airspace, Paras 404 and 815.
FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Paras 275, 278, 943, 957, and 997.
AIM, Paragraph 5-5-5, Missed Approach

4−8−10. APPROACH INFORMATION

Specify the following in the approach clearance when the pilot says he/she is unfamiliar with the procedure:

a. Initial approach altitude.

b. Direction and distance from the holding fix within which procedure turn is to be completed.

c. Altitude at which the procedure turn is to be made.

d. Final approach course and altitude.

e. Missed approach procedures if considered necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY−
INITIAL APPROACH AT (altitude), PROCEDURE TURN AT (altitude), (number) MINUTES/MILES (direction), FINAL APPROACH ON (name of NAVAID) (specified) COURSE/RADIAL/AZIMUTH AT (altitude).

f. Applicable notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; for example, "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," "Procedure not authorized at night," or a Snowflake icon indicating mandatory cold temperature compensation.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5-1-17, Cold Temperature Operations
AIM, Paragraph 5-5-4, Instrument Approach
AIM, Paragraph 5-5-5, Missed Approach

4−8−11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

Except for military aircraft operating at military airfields, ensure that neither VFR nor IFR practice approaches disrupt the flow of other arriving and departing IFR or VFR aircraft. Authorize, withdraw authorization, or refuse to authorize practice approaches as traffic conditions require. Normally, approaches in progress should not be terminated.

NOTE−
The priority afforded other aircraft over practice instrument approaches is not intended to be so rigidly applied that it causes grossly inefficient application of services.

a. Separation.

1. IFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches must be afforded approved separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 minima until:

(a) The aircraft lands, and the flight is terminated, or

(b) The pilot cancels the flight plan.

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for super or heavy aircraft, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6−4−4, Practice Instrument Approaches.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−4−5, Practice Instrument Approaches.

3. Where separation services are not provided to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, the controller must;

(a) Instruct the pilot to maintain VFR.

(b) Advise the pilot that separation services are not provided.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"(Aircraft identification) MAINTAIN VFR, PRACTICE APPROACH APPROVED, NO SEPARATION SERVICES PROVIDED."

(c) Provide traffic information or advise the pilot to contact the appropriate facility.

4. If an altitude is assigned, including at or above/below altitudes, the altitude specified must meet MVA, minimum safe altitude, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−5, Altitude Assignments.

5. All VFR aircraft must be instructed to maintain VFR on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter.

NOTE−
This advisory is intended to remind the pilot that even though ATC is providing IFR-type instructions, the pilot is responsible for compliance with the applicable parts of the CFR governing VFR flight.

b. Missed Approaches.

1. Unless alternate instructions have been issued, IFR aircraft are automatically authorized to execute the missed approach depicted for the instrument approach being flown.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–8–9, Missed Approach.

2. VFR aircraft are not automatically authorized to execute the missed approach procedure. This authorization must be specifically requested by the pilot and approved by the controller. When a missed approach has been approved, separation must be provided throughout the missed approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.

4–8–12. LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO

Consider an aircraft cleared for a touch-and-go, low approach, or practice approach as an arriving aircraft until that aircraft touches down or crosses the landing threshold; thereafter, consider the aircraft as a departing aircraft. Before the aircraft begins its final descent, issue the appropriate departure instructions the pilot is to follow upon completion of the approach (in accordance with para 4–3–2, Departure Clearances). Climb-out instructions must include a specific heading or a route of flight and altitude, except when the aircraft will maintain VFR and contact the tower.

EXAMPLE–
"After completing low approach, climb and maintain six thousand. Turn right, heading three six zero."

"Maintain VFR, contact tower."

(Issue other instructions as appropriate.)

NOTE–
Climb-out instructions may be omitted after the first approach if instructions remain the same.

Chapter 5. Radar

Section 1. General

5–1–1. PRESENTATION AND EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE

Provide radar service only if you are personally satisfied that the radar presentation and equipment performance is adequate for the service being provided.

NOTE–
The provision of radar service is not limited to the distance and altitude parameters obtained during the commissioning flight check.

5–1–2. ALIGNMENT ACCURACY CHECK

During relief briefing, or as soon as possible after assuming responsibility for a control position, check the operating equipment for alignment accuracy and display acceptability. Recheck periodically throughout the watch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 3, Chapter 8, Chapter 9, Chapter 10, and Chapter 11.
Comparable Military Directives.

TERMINAL

a. Check the alignment of the radar video display by assuring that the video/digital map or overlay is properly aligned with a permanent target of known range and azimuth on the radar display. Where possible, check one permanent target per quadrant.

b. Accuracy of the radar video display must be verified for digitized radar systems by using the moving target indicator (MTI) reflectors, fixed location beacon transponders (Parrots), beacon real–time quality control (RTQC) symbols or calibration performance monitor equipment (CPME) beacon targets.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–8–1, Tolerance for Radar Fix Accuracy.

EN ROUTE

c. Radar Data Processing (RDP) alignment checking is accomplished by the operational program as part of the certification procedures for system startup and then on a real–time basis during operational hours.

d. Ensure the situation display center and altitude limits for the system are appropriate for the operating position.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–14–5, Selected Altitude Limits.

5–1–3. ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE USE

Use approved ATC Surveillance Sources.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–4, Beacon Range Accuracy.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–15, Inoperative or Malfunctioning Interrogator.

a. Secondary radar may be used as the sole display source as follows:

1. In Class A airspace.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–16, Failed Transponder in Class A Airspace.
14 CFR Section 91.135, Operations in Class A Airspace.

2. Outside Class A airspace, or where mix of Class A airspace/non–Class A airspace exists, only when:

(a) Additional coverage is provided by secondary radar beyond that of the primary radar, or

(b) The primary radar is temporarily unusable or out of service. Advise pilots when these conditions exist, or

PHRASEOLOGY–
PRIMARY RADAR UNAVAILABLE (describe location). RADAR SERVICES AVAILABLE ON TRANSPONDER EQUIPPED AIRCRAFT ONLY.

NOTE–
1. *Advisory may be omitted when provided on ATIS and pilot indicates having ATIS information.*

2. *This provision is to authorize secondary radar only operations where there is no primary radar available and the condition is temporary.*

(c) A secondary radar system is the only source of radar data for the area of service. When the system is used for separation, beacon range accuracy is assured, as provided in para 5−1−4, Beacon Range Accuracy. *TERMINAL.* Advise pilots when these conditions exist.

NOTE−
Advisory may be omitted when provided on ATIS or by other appropriate notice to pilots.

b. *TERMINAL.* Do not use secondary radar only to conduct surveillance (ASR) final approaches unless an emergency exists and the pilot concurs.

c. All procedures and requirements relating to ATC services using secondary radar targets apply to ATC services provided to targets derived from ADS-B and WAM.

NOTE−
Targets derived from ADS-B and/or WAM cannot be used to provide 3NM separation in the EAS. 3NM targets are not derived from ADS-B and/or WAM within the EAS.

REFERENCE−
JO 7110.65, Para4-1-2, Exceptions.
JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions
JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application
JO 7110.65, Para 6-5-4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes
JO 7110.65, Chapter 6, Nonradar
JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima
JO 7210.3 3-6-2 ATC Surveillance Source Use

5−1−4. BEACON RANGE ACCURACY

a. You may use beacon targets for separation purposes if beacon range accuracy is verified by one of the following methods:

NOTE−
1. *The check for verification of beacon range accuracy accomplished by correlation of beacon and primary radar targets of the same aircraft is not a check of display accuracy. Therefore, it is not necessary that it be done using the same display with which separation is being provided, nor the same targets being separated.*

2. *Narrowband and Full Digital Automation Systems: Technical operations personnel verify beacon range accuracy for automated narrowband display equipment and Full Digital Terminal Automation Systems. Consequently, further verification by the controller is unnecessary.*

1. Correlate beacon and primary targets of the same aircraft (not necessarily the one being provided separation) to assure that they coincide.

2. When beacon and primary targets of the same aircraft do not coincide, correlate them to assure that any beacon displacement agrees with the specified distance and direction for that particular radar system.

3. Refer to beacon range monitoring equipment where so installed.

b. If beacon range accuracy cannot be verified, you may use beacon targets only for traffic information.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−3, Radar Use.

5−1−5. ELECTRONIC ATTACK (EA) ACTIVITY

a. Refer all EA activity requests to the appropriate center supervisor.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 2, Section 7, Electronic Attack (EA) and Testing Coordination.

NOTE−
EA activity can subsequently result in a request to apply EA videos to the radar system which may necessitate the decertification of the narrowband search radar. The Systems Engineer should be consulted concerning the effect of EA on the operational use of the narrowband radar prior to approving/disapproving requests to conduct EA activity.

b. When EA activity interferes with the operational use of radar:

1. *EN ROUTE.* Request the responsible military unit or aircraft, if initial request was received directly from pilot, to suspend the activity.

2. *TERMINAL.* Request suspension of the activity through the ARTCC. If immediate cessation of the activity is required, broadcast the request directly to the EA aircraft on the emergency frequency. Notify the ARTCC of direct broadcast as soon as possible.

c. When previously suspended activity will no longer interfere:

1. *EN ROUTE.* Inform the NORAD unit or aircraft that it may be resumed.

2. *TERMINAL.* Inform the ARTCC or aircraft that it may be resumed. Obtain approval from the ARTCC prior to broadcasting a resume clearance directly to the aircraft.

d. In each stop request, include your facility name, type of EA activity (chaff dispensing− "stream"/"burst" or electronic jamming− "buzzer"), radar band affected and, when feasible, expected duration of suspension.

PHRASEOLOGY−
BIG PHOTO (identification, if known) (name) CENTER/TOWER/APPROACH CONTROL.

To stop EA activity:

STOP STREAM/BURST IN AREA (area name) (degree and distance from facility),

or

STOP BUZZER ON (frequency band or channel).

To resume EA activity:

RESUME STREAM/BURST,

or

RESUME BUZZER ON (frequency band or channel).

5−1−6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS

a. When radar mapping is not available, limit radar services to:

1. Separating identified aircraft targets.

2. Vectoring aircraft to intercept a PAR final approach course.

3. Providing radar service in areas that ensure no confliction with traffic on airways, other ATC areas of jurisdiction, restricted or prohibited areas, terrain, etc.

b. *EN ROUTE*. When the position symbol associated with the data block falls more than one history behind the actual aircraft target or there is no target symbol displayed, the Mode C information in the data block must not be used for the purpose of determining separation.

c. Report radar malfunctions immediately for corrective action and for dispatch of a Notice to Airmen. Advise adjacent ATC facilities when appropriate.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−9, Reporting Essential Flight Information.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 3, Chapter 7, Chapter 10 Section 5, and Chapter 11 Section 2.

5−1−7. ELECTRONIC CURSOR

TERMINAL

a. An electronic cursor may be used to aid in identifying and vectoring an aircraft and to give finer delineation to a video map. Do not use it as a substitute for a video map or map overlay; e.g., to form intersections, airway boundaries, final approach courses, etc.

b. Fixed electronic cursors may be used to form the final approach course for surveillance approaches conducted by military operated mobile radar facilities.

5−1−8. MERGING TARGET PROCEDURES

a. Except while they are established in a holding pattern, apply merging target procedures to all radar identified:

1. Aircraft at 10,000 feet and above.

2. Turbojet aircraft regardless of altitude.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Turbojet Aircraft.

3. Presidential aircraft regardless of altitude.

b. Issue traffic information to those aircraft listed in subpara a whose targets appear likely to merge unless the aircraft are separated by more than the appropriate vertical separation minima.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic twelve o'clock, seven miles, eastbound, MD−80, at one seven thousand."

"United Sixteen and American Twenty-five, traffic twelve o'clock, one zero miles, opposite direction, eastbound seven twenty seven at flight level three three zero, westbound MD−Eighty at flight level three one zero."

c. When both aircraft in subpara b are in RVSM airspace, and vertically separated by 1,000 feet, if either pilot reports they are unable to maintain RVSM due to turbulence or mountain wave, vector either aircraft to avoid merging with the target of the other aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
"Delta One Twenty Three, fly heading two niner zero, vector for traffic. Traffic twelve o'clock, one zero miles, opposite direction, MD−80 eastbound at flight level three two zero."

d. If the pilot requests, vector his/her aircraft to avoid merging with the target of previously issued traffic.

NOTE–
Aircraft closure rates are so rapid that when applying merging target procedures, controller issuance of traffic must be commenced in ample time for the pilot to decide if a vector is necessary.

e. If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.

NOTE–
The phraseology "Unable RVSM due turbulence (or mountain wave)" is only intended for severe turbulence or other weather encounters with altitude deviations of approximately 200 feet or more.

5–1–9. HOLDING PATTERN SURVEILLANCE

Provide radar surveillance of outer fix holding pattern airspace areas, or any portions thereof, shown on your radar scope (displayed on the video map or scribed on the map overlay) whenever aircraft are holding there. Attempt to detect any aircraft that stray outside the area. If you detect an aircraft straying outside the area, assist it to return to the assigned airspace.

5–1–10. DEVIATION ADVISORIES

Inform an aircraft when it is observed in a position and on a track which will obviously cause the aircraft to deviate from its protected airspace area. If necessary, help the aircraft to return to the assigned protected airspace.

NOTE–
1. *RNAV ATS routes have a width of 8 miles and laterally protected airspace of 4 miles on each side of the route centerline*

2. *Navigation system performance requirements for operations on RNAV ATS routes require the aircraft system be capable of remaining within 2 miles of the route centerline. Aircraft approaching this limit may be experiencing a navigation system error or failure.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–5, Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–9–3, Methods.
FAAO 7400.2, Para 20-5-3. Lateral Protected Airspace Criteria for RNAV En Route Segments
AC90-100A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, Para 8a. Navigation System Accuracy

5–1–11. RADAR FIX POSTING

EN ROUTE

A controller is required to manually record at least once the observed or reported time over a fix for each controlled aircraft in their sector of responsibility only when the flight progress recording components of the EAS FDP are not operational.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6–1–6, Flight Progress Strip Usage.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–1–8, Flight Progress Strip Usage.

5–1–12. POSITION REPORTING

If necessary, you may request an aircraft to provide an estimate or report over a specific fix. After an aircraft receives the statement "radar contact" from ATC, it discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points. It resumes normal position reporting when ATC informs it "radar contact lost" or "radar service terminated."

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Radar Contact.

a. When required, inform an aircraft of its position with respect to a fix or airway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
OVER/PASSING (fix).

(Number of miles) MILES FROM (fix).

(Number of miles) MILES (direction) OF (fix, airway, or location).

CROSSING/JOINING/DEPARTING (airway or route).

INTERCEPTING/CROSSING (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.

5–1–13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION

a. Inform aircraft when radar service is terminated.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED (nonradar routing if required).

b. Radar service is automatically terminated and the aircraft needs not be advised of termination when:

NOTE–
1. *Termination of radar monitoring when conducting simultaneous ILS approaches is prescribed in Para 5–9–7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches– Dual & Triple.*

2. *Termination of radar monitoring where PAR equipment is used to monitor approaches is prescribed in para 5−13−3, Monitor Information.*

1. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, TRSA, or where basic radar service is provided.

2. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

3. At tower-controlled airports where radar coverage does not exist to within $^1/_2$ mile of the end of the runway, arriving aircraft must be informed when radar service is terminated.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−5−6, Radar Tolerances.

4. *TERMINAL*. An arriving VFR aircraft receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, TRSA, or where basic radar service is provided has landed, or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

5. *TERMINAL*. An aircraft completes a radar approach.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−12, Service Provided When Tower is Inoperative.

Section 2. Beacon Systems

5–2–1. ASSIGNMENT CRITERIA

a. General.

1. Mode 3/A is designated as the common military/civil mode for air traffic control use.

2. Make radar beacon code assignments to only Mode 3/A transponder-equipped aircraft.

b. Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement, make code assignments to departing, en route, and arrival aircraft in accordance with the procedures specified in this section for the radar beacon code environment in which you are providing ATC service. Give first preference to the use of discrete beacon codes.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK THREE/ALFA (code),

or

SQUAWK (code).

NOTE–
A code environment is determined by an operating position's/sector's equipment capability to decode radar beacon targets using either the first and second or all four digits of a beacon code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

a. Issue discrete beacon codes assigned by the computer. Computer-assigned codes may be modified as required.

1. *TERMINAL.* Aircraft that will remain within the terminal facility's delegated airspace must be assigned a code from the code subset allocated to the terminal facility.

2. *TERMINAL.* Unless otherwise specified in a facility directive or a letter of agreement, aircraft that will enter an adjacent ATTS facility's delegated airspace must be assigned a beacon code assigned by the ARTCC computer.

NOTE–
1. *This will provide the adjacent facility advance information on the aircraft and will cause auto-acquisition of the aircraft prior to handoff.*

2. *When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the ARTCC computer and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, ensure that appropriate action is taken to remove strips (RS message) on that aircraft.*

b. Make handoffs to other positions/sectors on the computer-assigned code.

c. Coastal facilities accepting "over" traffic that will subsequently be handed-off to an oceanic ARTCC must reassign a new discrete beacon code to an aircraft when it first enters the receiving facility's airspace. The code reassignment must be accomplished by inputting an appropriate message into the computer and issued to the pilot while operating in the first sector/position in the receiving facility's airspace.

NOTE–
Per an agreement between FAA and the Department of Defense, 17 Code subsets in the NBCAP have been reserved for exclusive military use outside NBCAP airspace. To maximize the use of these subsets, they have been allocated to ARTCC's underlying NBCAP airspace that do not abut an oceanic ARTCC's area. To preclude a potential situation where two aircraft might be in the same airspace at the same time on the same discrete code, it is necessary to reassign an aircraft another code as specified in subpara c.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–4, Mixed Environment.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–9, VFR Code Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–3. NONDISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

a. Assign appropriate nondiscrete beacon codes from the function codes specified in para 5–2–6, Function Code Assignments.

b. Unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, make handoffs to other positions/sectors on an appropriate nondiscrete function code.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–4, Mixed Environment.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–9, VFR Code Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–4. MIXED ENVIRONMENT

a. When discrete beacon code capability does not exist in your area of responsibility, comply with the procedures specified in para 5–2–3, Nondiscrete Environment.

NOTE–
In a mixed code environment, a situation may exist where a discrete-equipped position/sector exchanges control of aircraft with nondiscrete-equipped facilities or vice versa.

b. When discrete beacon code capability exists in your area of responsibility:

1. Comply with the procedures specified in para 5–2–2, Discrete Environment, and

2. Unless otherwise coordinated at the time of handoff, assign aircraft that will enter the area of responsibility of a nondiscrete-equipped position/sector an appropriate nondiscrete function code from the codes specified in para 5–2–6, Function Code Assignments, prior to initiating a handoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–8, IFR-VFR and VFR-IFR Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–9, VFR Code Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–5. RADAR BEACON CODE CHANGES

Unless otherwise specified in a directive or a letter of agreement or coordinated at the time of handoff, do not request an aircraft to change from the code it was squawking in the transferring facility's area until the aircraft is within your area of responsibility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–8, IFR-VFR and VFR-IFR Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–6. FUNCTION CODE ASSIGNMENTS

Unless otherwise specified by a directive or a letter of agreement, make nondiscrete code assignments from the following categories:

a. Assign codes to departing IFR aircraft as follows:

1. Code 2000 to an aircraft which will climb to FL 240 or above or to an aircraft which will climb to FL 180 or above where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180. The en route code must not be assigned until the aircraft is established in the high altitude sector.

2. Code 1100 to an aircraft which will remain below FL 240 or below FL 180 as above.

3. For handoffs from terminal facilities when so specified in a letter of agreement as follows:

(a) Within NBCAP airspace**– Code 0100 to Code 0400** inclusive or any other code authorized by the appropriate service area office.

(b) Outside NBCAP airspace**– Code 1000** or one of the codes from **0100 to 0700** inclusive or any other code authorized by the appropriate service area office.

b. Assign codes to en route IFR aircraft as follows:

NOTE–
1. *FL 180 may be used in lieu of FL 240 where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180.*

2. *The provisions of subparas b2(b) and (c) may be modified by facility directive or letter of agreement when operational complexities or simplified sectorization indicate. Letters of agreement are mandatory when the operating sectors of two facilities are not stratified at identical levels. The general concept of utilizing* ***Codes 2100 through 2500*** *within Class A airspace should be adhered to.*

1. Aircraft operating below FL 240 or when control is transferred to a controller whose area includes the stratum involved.

(a) Code 1000 may be assigned to aircraft changing altitudes.

(b) Code 1100 to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude below FL 240. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **Code 1300** must be assigned.

2. Aircraft operating at or above FL 240 or when control is transferred to a controller whose area includes the stratum involved.

(a) Code 2300 may be assigned to aircraft changing altitudes.

(b) Code 2100 to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude from FL 240 to FL 330 inclusive. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **Code 2200** must be assigned.

(c) Code 2400 to an aircraft operating at an assigned altitude from FL 350 to FL 600 inclusive. Should an additional code be operationally desirable, **Code 2500** must be assigned.

3. Code 4000 when aircraft are operating on a flight plan specifying frequent or rapid changes in assigned altitude in more than one stratum or other conditions of flight not compatible with a stratified code assignment.

NOTE–
1. *Categories of flight that can be assigned **Code 4000** include certain flight test aircraft, MTR missions, aerial refueling operation requiring descent involving more than one stratum, ALTRVs where continuous monitoring of ATC communications facilities is not required and frequent altitude changes are approved, and other aircraft operating on flight plans requiring special handling by ATC.*

2. *Military aircraft operating VFR or IFR in restricted/warning areas or VFR on VR routes will adjust their transponders to reply on **Code 4000** unless another code has been assigned by ATC or coordinated, if possible, with ATC.*

c. Assign the following codes to arriving IFR aircraft, except military turbojet aircraft as specified in para 4−7−4, Radio Frequency and Radar Beacon Changes for Military Aircraft:

NOTE–
FL 180 may be used in lieu of FL 240 where the base of Class A airspace and the base of the operating sector are at FL 180, and for inter-facility handoff the receiving sector is also stratified at FL 180.

1. Code 2300 may be assigned for descents while above FL 240.

2. Code 1500 may be assigned for descents into and while within the strata below FL 240, or with prior coordination the specific code utilized by the destination controller, or the code currently assigned when descent clearance is issued.

3. The applicable en route code for the holding altitude if holding is necessary before entering the terminal area and the appropriate code in subparas 1 or 2.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−8, IFR-VFR and VFR-IFR Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−3, Nondiscrete Environment.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−4, Mixed Environment.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−9, VFR Code Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−7. EMERGENCY CODE ASSIGNMENT

Assign codes to emergency aircraft as follows:

a. Code 7700 when the pilot declares an emergency and the aircraft is not radar identified.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK MAYDAY ON 7700.

b. After radio and radar contact have been established, you may request other than single-piloted helicopters and single-piloted turbojet aircraft to change from **Code 7700** to another code appropriate for your radar beacon code environment.

NOTE–
1. *The code change, based on pilot concurrence, the nature of the emergency, and current flight conditions will signify to other radar facilities that the aircraft in distress is identified and under ATC control.*

2. *Pilots of single-piloted helicopters and single-piloted turbojet aircraft may be unable to reposition transponder controls during the emergency.*

PHRASEOLOGY–
RADAR CONTACT (position). IF FEASIBLE, SQUAWK (code).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

c. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

5−2−8. RADIO FAILURE

When you observe a **Code 7600** display, apply the procedures in para 10−4−4, Communications Failure.

NOTE–
*Should a transponder-equipped aircraft experience a loss of two-way radio communications capability, the pilot can be expected to adjust his/her transponder to **Code 7600**.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−9. VFR CODE ASSIGNMENTS

a. For VFR aircraft receiving radar advisories, assign an appropriate function code or computer-assigned code for the code environment in which you are providing service.

NOTE–
1. *Para 5–2–2 , Discrete Environment; para 5–2–3 , Nondiscrete Environment, and para 5–2–4, Mixed Environment, specify code assignment procedures to follow for the three code environments.*

2. *Para 5–2–6 , Function Code Assignments, specifies the function code allocation from which an appropriate code for the aircraft indicated in subpara a should be selected. In the terminal environment, additional function codes may be authorized by the appropriate service area office.*

1. If the aircraft is outside of your area of responsibility and an operational benefit will be gained by retaining the aircraft on your frequency for the purpose of providing services, ensure that coordination has been effected:

(a) As soon as possible after positive identification, and

(b) Prior to issuing a control instruction or providing a service other than a safety alert/traffic advisory.

NOTE–
Safety alerts/traffic advisories may be issued to an aircraft prior to coordination if an imminent situation may be averted by such action. Coordination should be effected as soon as possible thereafter.

b. Instruct IFR aircraft which cancel an IFR flight plan and are not requesting radar advisory service and VFR aircraft for which radar advisory service is being terminated to squawk the VFR code.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK VFR.

or

SQUAWK 1200.

NOTE–
1. *Aircraft not in contact with an ATC facility may squawk 1255 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated fire fighting area(s).*

2. *VFR aircraft which fly authorized SAR missions for the USAF or USCG may be advised to squawk 1277 in lieu of 1200 while en route to/from or within the designated search area.*

3. *Gliders not in contact with an ATC facility should squawk 1202 in lieu of 1200. Gliders operate under some flight and maneuvering limitations. They may go from essentially stationary targets while climbing and thermaling to moving targets very quickly. They can be expected to make radical changes in flight direction to find lift and cannot hold altitude in a response to an ATC request. Gliders may congregate together for short periods of time to climb together in thermals and may cruise together in loose formations while traveling between thermals.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.66, National Beacon Code Allocation Plan.

c. When an aircraft changes from VFR to IFR, the controller must assign a beacon code to Mode C equipped aircraft that will allow MSAW alarms.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–10. BEACON CODE FOR PRESSURE SUIT FLIGHTS AND FLIGHTS ABOVE FL 600

a. Mode 3/A, **Code 4400**, and discrete **Codes 4440 through 4465** are reserved for use by R–71, F–12, U–2, B–57, pressure suit flights, and aircraft operations above FL 600.

NOTE–
The specific allocation of the special use codes in subset 4400 is in FAAO 7110.66, National Beacon Code Allocation Plan.

b. Ensure that aircraft remain on **Code 4400** or one of the special use discrete codes in the **4400** subset if filed as part of the flight plan. Except when unforeseen events, such as weather deviations, equipment failure, etc., cause more than one aircraft with same Mode 3/A discrete beacon codes to be in the same or adjacent ARTCC's airspace at the same time, a controller may request the pilot to make a code change, squawk standby, or to stop squawk as appropriate.

NOTE–
Due to the inaccessibility of certain equipment to the flight crews, ***Code 4400*** *or a discrete code from the* ***4400*** *subset is preset on the ground and will be used throughout the flight profile including operations below FL 600. Controllers should be cognizant that not all aircraft may be able to accept the transponder changes identified in the exception. Emergency* ***Code 7700,*** *however, can be activated.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–11. AIR DEFENSE EXERCISE BEACON CODE ASSIGNMENT

EN ROUTE

Ensure exercise FAKER aircraft remain on the exercise flight plan filed discrete beacon code.

NOTE–
1. *NORAD will ensure exercise FAKER aircraft flight*

plans are filed containing discrete beacon codes from the Department of Defense code allocation specified in FAA Order JO 7610.4, Special Operations, Appendix 6.

2. *NORAD will ensure that those FAKER aircraft assigned the same discrete beacon code are not flight planned in the same or any adjacent ARTCC's airspace at the same time. (Simultaneous assignment of codes will only occur when operational requirements necessitate.)*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−12. STANDBY OR LOW SENSITIVITY OPERATION

You may instruct an aircraft operating on an assigned code to change transponder to "standby" or "low sensitivity" position:

NOTE−
National standards no longer require improved transponder to be equipped with the low sensitivity feature. Therefore, aircraft with late model transponders will be unable to respond to a request to "squawk low."

a. When approximately 15 miles from its destination and you no longer desire operation of the transponder.

b. When necessary to reduce clutter in a multi-target area, or to reduce "ring-around" or other phenomena, provided you instruct the aircraft to return to "normal sensitivity" position as soon as possible thereafter.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SQUAWK STANDBY,

or

SQUAWK LOW/NORMAL.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−13. CODE MONITOR

Continuously monitor the Mode 3/A radar beacon codes assigned for use by aircraft operating within your area of responsibility when nonautomated beacon decoding equipment (e.g., 10−channel decoder) is used to display the target symbol.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−6 , Function Code Assignments.

NOTE−
In addition to alphanumeric and control symbology processing enhancements, the MEARTS and STARS systems are equipped with automatic beacon decoders. Therefore, in facilities where the automatic beacon decoders are providing the control slash video, there is no requirement to have the non−automated decoding equipment operating simultaneously.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−7−4, Monitoring of Mode 3/A Radar Beacon Codes.

a. This includes the appropriate IFR code actually assigned and, additionally, **Code 1200**, **Code 1202, Code 1255**, and **Code 1277** unless your area of responsibility includes only Class A airspace. During periods when ring-around or excessive VFR target presentations derogate the separation of IFR traffic, the monitoring of VFR **Code 1200**, **Code 1202, Code 1255**, and **Code 1277** may be temporarily discontinued.

b. Positions of operation which contain a restricted or warning area or VR route within or immediately adjacent to their area of jurisdiction must monitor **Code 4000** and any other code used in lieu of **4000** within the warning/restricted area or VR route. If by local coordination with the restricted/warning area or VR route user a code other than 4000 is to be exclusively used, then this code must be monitored.

c. If a normally assigned beacon code disappears, check for a response on the following codes in the order listed and take appropriate action:

NOTE−
*When **Codes 7500** and/or **7600** have been preselected, it will be necessary for the ID−SEL−OFF switches for these codes to be left in the off position so that beacon target for an aircraft changing to one of these codes will disappear, thereby alerting the controller to make the check. This check will not be required if automatic alerting capability exists.*

1. Code 7500 (hijack code).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−6 , Hijacked Aircraft.

2. Code 7600 (loss of radio communications code).

5−2−14. FAILURE TO DISPLAY ASSIGNED BEACON CODE OR INOPERATIVE/ MALFUNCTIONING TRANSPONDER

a. Inform an aircraft with an operable transponder that the assigned beacon code is not being displayed.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Identification) RESET TRANSPONDER, SQUAWK (appropriate code).

b. Inform an aircraft when its transponder appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) YOUR TRANSPONDER APPEARS INOPERATIVE/MALFUNCTIONING, RESET, SQUAWK (appropriate code).

c. Ensure that the subsequent control position in the facility or the next facility, as applicable, is notified when an aircraft transponder is malfunctioning/inoperative.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–15. INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING INTERROGATOR

Inform aircraft concerned when the ground interrogator appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Name of facility or control function) BEACON INTERROGATOR INOPERATIVE/MALFUNCTIONING.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–3, Radar Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–16. FAILED TRANSPONDER IN CLASS A AIRSPACE

Disapprove a request or withdraw previously issued approval to operate in Class A airspace with a failed transponder solely on the basis of traffic conditions or other operational factors.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–3, Radar Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5–2–17. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT

Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts. When an X is displayed adjacent to the Mode C, the Mode C altitude readout must be validated after the X is no longer displayed in the data block. (CTRD equipped tower cabs are not required to validate Mode C readouts after receiving interfacility handoffs from TRACONs according to the procedures in Para 5-4-3, Methods, subpara a4.)

a. Consider an altitude readout valid when:

1. It varies less than 300 feet from the pilot reported altitude, or

PHRASEOLOGY–
(If aircraft is known to be operating below the lowest useable flight level),

SAY ALTITUDE.

or

(If aircraft is known to be operating at or above the lowest useable flight level),

SAY FLIGHT LEVEL.

2. You receive a continuous readout from an aircraft on the airport and the readout varies by less than 300 feet from the field elevation, or

NOTE–
A continuous readout exists only when the altitude filter limits are set to include the field elevation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–23, Altitude Filters.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–14–5, Selected Altitude Limits.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–2–3, Display Data.

3. You have correlated the altitude information in your data block with the validated information in a data block generated in another facility (by verbally coordinating with the other controller) and your readout is exactly the same as the readout in the other data block.

b. When unable to validate the readout, do not use the Mode C altitude information for separation.

c. Whenever you observe an invalid Mode C readout below FL 180:

1. Issue the correct altimeter setting and confirm the pilot has accurately reported the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Location) ALTIMETER (appropriate altimeter), VERIFY ALTITUDE.

2. If the altitude readout continues to be invalid:

(a) Instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude-reporting part of his/her transponder and include the reason; and

(b) Notify the operations supervisor-in-charge of the aircraft call sign.

PHRASEOLOGY–
STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK. ALTITUDE DIFFERS BY (number of feet) FEET.

d. Whenever you observe an invalid Mode C readout at or above FL 180, unless the aircraft is descending below Class A airspace:

1. Verify that the pilot is using 29.92 inches of mercury as the altimeter setting and has accurately reported the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VERIFY USING TWO NINER NINER TWO AS YOUR ALTIMETER SETTING.

(If aircraft is known to be operating at or above the lowest useable flight level),

VERIFY FLIGHT LEVEL.

2. If the Mode C readout continues to be invalid:

(a) Instruct the pilot to turn off the altitude-reporting part of his/her transponder and include the reason; and

(b) Notify the operational supervisor-in-charge of the aircraft call sign.

PHRASEOLOGY−
STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK. ALTITUDE DIFFERS BY (number of feet) FEET.

e. Whenever possible, inhibit altitude readouts on all consoles when a malfunction of the ground equipment causes repeated invalid readouts.

5−2−18. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION− MODE C

Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless:

NOTE−
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

a. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

b. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or a descending aircraft, or

c. The Mode C readout is valid and indicates that the aircraft is established at the assigned altitude, or

d. *TERMINAL.* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY−
(In level flight situations),VERIFY AT (altitude/flight level).

(In climbing/descending situations),

(if aircraft has been assigned an altitude below the lowest useable flight level),

VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE (altitude).

or

(If aircraft has been assigned a flight level at or above the lowest useable flight level),

VERIFY ASSIGNED FLIGHT LEVEL (flight level).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−19. ALTITUDE CONFIRMATION− NON−MODE C

a. Request a pilot to confirm assigned altitude on initial contact unless:

NOTE−
For the purpose of this paragraph, "initial contact" means a pilot's first radio contact with each sector/position.

1. The pilot states the assigned altitude, or

2. You assign a new altitude to a climbing or a descending aircraft, or

3. *TERMINAL.* The aircraft was transferred to you from another sector/position within your facility (intrafacility).

PHRASEOLOGY−
(In level flight situations),VERIFY AT (altitude/flight level).

(In climbing/descending situations),VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL (altitude/flight level).

b. USA. Reconfirm all pilot altitude read backs.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(If the altitude read back is correct),

AFFIRMATIVE (altitude).

(If the altitude read back is not correct),

NEGATIVE. CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

NEGATIVE. MAINTAIN (altitude).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3 , Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−20. AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING

Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn on/off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SQUAWK ALTITUDE,

or

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.

NOTE−
Controllers should be aware that not all aircraft have a capability to disengage the altitude squawk independently from the beacon code squawk. On some aircraft both functions are controlled by the same switch.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−17, Validation of Mode C Readout.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.
P/CG Term− Automatic Altitude Report.

5−2−21. INFLIGHT DEVIATIONS FROM TRANSPONDER/MODE C REQUIREMENTS BETWEEN 10,000 FEET AND 18,000 FEET

Apply the following procedures to requests to deviate from the Mode C transponder requirement by aircraft operating in the airspace of the 48 contiguous states and the District of Columbia at and above 10,000 feet MSL and below 18,000 feet MSL, excluding the airspace at and below 2,500 feet AGL.

NOTE−
1. *14 CFR Section 91.215(b) provides, in part, that all U.S. registered civil aircraft must be equipped with an operable, coded radar beacon transponder when operating in the altitude stratum listed above. Such transponders must have a Mode 3/A 4096 code capability, replying to Mode 3/A interrogation with the code specified by ATC, or a Mode S capability, replying to Mode 3/A interrogations with the code specified by ATC. The aircraft must also be equipped with automatic pressure altitude reporting equipment having a Mode C capability that automatically replies to Mode C interrogations by transmitting pressure altitude information in 100−foot increments.*

2. *The exception to 14 CFR Section 91.215 (b) is 14 CFR Section 91.215(b)(5) which states: except balloons, gliders, and aircraft without engine−driven electrical systems.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 19, Temporary Flight Restrictions.

a. Except in an emergency, do not approve inflight requests for authorization to deviate from 14 CFR Section 91.215(b)(5)(i) requirements originated by aircraft without transponder equipment installed.

b. Approve or disapprove other inflight deviation requests, or withdraw approval previously issued to such flights, solely on the basis of traffic conditions and other operational factors.

c. Adhere to the following sequence of action when an inflight VFR deviation request is received from an aircraft with an inoperative transponder or Mode C, or is not Mode C equipped:

1. Suggest that the aircraft conduct its flight in airspace unaffected by the CFRs.

2. Suggest that the aircraft file an IFR flight plan.

3. Suggest that the aircraft provide a VFR route of flight and maintain radio contact with ATC.

d. Do not approve an inflight deviation unless the aircraft has filed an IFR flight plan or a VFR route of flight is provided and radio contact with ATC is maintained.

e. You may approve an inflight deviation request which includes airspace outside your jurisdiction without the prior approval of the adjacent ATC sector/facility providing a transponder/Mode C status report is forwarded prior to control transfer.

f. Approve or disapprove inflight deviation requests within a reasonable period of time or advise when approval/disapproval can be expected.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−22. BEACON TERMINATION

Inform an aircraft when you want it to turn off its transponder.

PHRASEOLOGY−

STOP SQUAWK.

(For a military aircraft when you do not know if the military service requires that it continue operating on another mode),

STOP SQUAWK (mode in use).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

5−2−23. ALTITUDE FILTERS

TERMINAL

Set altitude filters to display Mode C altitude readouts to encompass all altitudes within the controller's jurisdiction. Set the upper limits no lower than 1,000 feet above the highest altitude for which the controller is responsible. In those stratified positions, set the lower limit to 1,000 feet or more below the lowest altitude for which the controller is responsible. When the position's area of responsibility includes down to an airport field elevation, the facility will normally set the lower altitude filter limit to encompass the field elevation so that provisions of para 2−1−6, Safety Alert, and para 5−2−17, Validation of Mode C Readout, subpara a2 may be applied. Air traffic managers may authorize temporary suspension of this requirement when target clutter is excessive.

5−2−24. INOPERATIVE OR MALFUNCTIONING ADS-B TRANSMITTER

TERMINAL-

Inform an aircraft when the ADS-B transmitter appears to be inoperative or malfunctioning.

PHRASEOLOGY−

(Aircraft ID) YOUR ADS-B TRANSMITTER APPEARS TO BE INOPERATIVE / MALFUCTIONING.

Section 3. Radar Identification

5−3−1. APPLICATION

Before you provide radar service, establish and maintain radar identification of the aircraft involved, except as provided in Paragraph 5-5-1, Application, subparagraphs b2, b3 and in Paragraph 8-5-5, Radar Identification Application.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3-1-9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-1, Presentation and Equipment Performance.

5−3−2. PRIMARY RADAR IDENTIFICATION METHODS

Identify a primary or radar beacon target by using one of the following methods:

a. Observing a departing aircraft target within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end at airports with an operating control tower, provided one of the following methods of coordination is accomplished.

1. A verbal rolling/boundary notification is issued for each departure, or

2. A nonverbal rolling/boundary notification is used for each departure aircraft.

NOTE−
Nonverbal notification can be accomplished via the use of a manual or electronic "drop tube" or automation.

b. Observing a target whose position with respect to a fix (displayed on the video map, scribed on the map overlay, or displayed as a permanent echo) or a visual reporting point (whose range and azimuth from the radar antenna has been accurately determined and made available to the controller) corresponds with a direct position report received from an aircraft, and the observed track is consistent with the reported heading or route of flight. If a TACAN/VORTAC is located within 6,000 feet of the radar antenna, the TACAN/VORTAC may be used as a reference fix for radar identification without being displayed on the video map or map overlay.

NOTE−
1. *Establishment of radar identification through use of DME position information can be complicated by the fact that some military TACANs are not collocated with frequency−paired VORs and might be separated from them by as much as 31 miles.*

2. *Visual reporting points used for RADAR identification are limited to those most used by pilots and whose range and azimuth have been determined by supervisory personnel.*

c. Observing a target make an identifying turn or turns of 30 degrees or more, provided the following conditions are met:

NOTE−
Use of identifying turns or headings which would cause the aircraft to follow normal IFR routes or known VFR flight paths might result in misidentification. When these circumstances cannot be avoided, additional methods of identification may be necessary.

1. Except in the case of a lost aircraft, a pilot position report is received which assures you that the aircraft is within radar coverage and within the area being displayed.

2. Only one aircraft is observed making these turns.

3. For aircraft operating in accordance with an IFR clearance, you either issue a heading away from an area which will require an increased minimum IFR altitude or have the aircraft climb to the highest minimum altitude in your area of jurisdiction before you issue a heading.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−11, Surveillance Unusable.

5−3−3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS

When using only Mode 3/A radar beacon to identify a target, use one of the following methods:

a. Request the aircraft to activate the "IDENT" feature of the transponder and then observe the identification display.

NOTE−
1. *At facilities where the single-slash "IDENT" modification is installed or other decoder modifications have been made which increase the number of "blooming" target displays, it will be necessary to exercise additional care to preclude the possibility of misidentification.*

2. *TERMINAL. When automated displays are operated in the analog mode, the "IDENT" return is displayed as a double slash and the emergency return as a single bloomer whenever the beacon control head is in the "fail" position.*

PHRASEOLOGY−
IDENT.
SQUAWK (code) AND IDENT.

b. Request the aircraft to change to a specific discrete or nondiscrete code, as appropriate, and then observe the target or code display change. If a code change is required in accordance with Section 2, Beacon Systems, of this chapter, use the codes specified therein.

c. Request the aircraft to change transponder to "standby." After you observe the target disappear for sufficient scans to assure that loss of target resulted from placing the transponder in "standby" position, request the aircraft to return transponder to normal operation and then observe the reappearance of the target.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SQUAWK STANDBY,

then

SQUAWK NORMAL.

d. *EN ROUTE.* An aircraft may be considered identified when the full data block is automatically associated with the beacon target symbol of an aircraft that is squawking a discrete code assigned by the computer.

NOTE−
Paired LDBs in ERAM do not display a beacon code.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SQUAWK (4 digit discrete code), AND IF YOUR ALTITUDE REPORTING EQUIPMENT IS TURNED OFF, SQUAWK ALTITUDE.

NOTE−
The AIM informs pilots to adjust Mode C transponders with altitude reporting capability activated unless deactivation is requested by ATC. Squawk altitude is included to provide applicable phraseology.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−6, Position Information.

5−3−4. TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEMS IDENTIFICATION METHODS

TERMINAL

a. Consider an auto-acquired aircraft as identified when the data block is displayed and is visible to you, and one of the following conditions exist:

1. The radar or beacon identification procedures have been used to confirm the identity of the tagged target.

2. The aircraft is being handed off using a NAS automated system and one of the following does not appear in the data block: "CST", "NAT", "NT", "AMB", "OLD", "NB", "TU", "AM", "OL", or "TRK".

b. Use the data block to maintain target identity unless it is in a coast status or displaced from the appropriate target.

c. A displaced data block must be updated at all times.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.

5−3−5. QUESTIONABLE IDENTIFICATION

a. Use more than one method of identification when proximity of targets, duplication of observed action, or any other circumstances cause doubt as to target identification.

b. If identification is questionable for any reason, take immediate action to reidentify the aircraft or terminate radar service. Identify the aircraft as follows:

1. As described in para 5−3−2, Primary Radar Identification Methods, or para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods.

2. En route. Ensure that all primary targets are displayed when radar identification is lost or is questionable.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−3, Methods.

5−3−6. POSITION INFORMATION

Inform an aircraft of its position whenever radar identification is established by means of identifying turns or by any of the beacon identification methods outlined in para 5−3−3, Beacon Identification Methods. Position information need not be given when identification is established by position correlation or when a departing aircraft is identified within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end.

5−3−7. IDENTIFICATION STATUS

a. Inform an aircraft of radar contact when:

1. Initial radar identification in the ATC system is established.

2. Subsequent to loss of radar contact or terminating radar service, radar identification is reestablished.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RADAR CONTACT (position if required).

b. Inform an aircraft when radar contact is lost.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RADAR CONTACT LOST (alternative instructions when required).

5−3−8. TARGET MARKERS

EN ROUTE

Retain data blocks that are associated with the appropriate target symbol in order to maintain continuous identity of aircraft. Retain the data block until the aircraft has exited the sector or delegated airspace, and all potential conflicts have been resolved; including an aircraft that is a point out. The data block must display flight identification and altitude information, as a minimum. The displayed altitude may be assigned, interim, or reported.

ERAM: When you have separation responsibility for an aircraft and a paired track exists, display a full data block (FDB).

5−3−9. TARGET MARKERS

TERMINAL

a. Retain data blocks that are associated with the appropriate target symbol in order to maintain continuous identity of aircraft. Retain the data block until the aircraft has exited the sector or delegated airspace, and all potential conflicts have been resolved; including an aircraft that is a point out. The data block must display flight identification and altitude information, as a minimum.

NOTE−
Where delegated airspace extends beyond Class B and/or Class C airspace, the following will apply: If a VFR aircraft is clear of Class B and Class C airspace and radar services have been terminated then retention of the data block is no longer required.

b. During prearranged coordination procedures, the controllers who penetrate another controller's airspace must display data block information of that controller's aircraft which must contain, at a minimum, the position symbol and altitude information.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−3, Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−10, Prearranged Coordination.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−7−7, Prearranged Coordination.

Section 4. Transfer of Radar Identification

5–4–1. APPLICATION

To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another. This section describes the terms, methods, and responsibilities associated with this task. Interfacility and intrafacility transfers of radar identification must be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible. Where such constraints exist, they must be:

a. Covered in letters of agreement which clearly state that control will not be based upon a radar handoff, or

b. Coordinated by the transferring and receiving controllers for a specified period of time.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–8, Coordination with Receiving Facility.

5–4–2. TERMS

a. *Handoff.* An action taken to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another controller if the aircraft will enter the receiving controller's airspace and radio communications with the aircraft will be transferred.

b. *Radar Contact.* The term used to inform the controller initiating a handoff that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace.

c. *Point Out.* An action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

d. *Point Out Approved.* The term used to inform the controller initiating a point out that the aircraft is identified and that approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace, as coordinated, without a communications transfer or the appropriate automated system response.

e. *Traffic.* A term used to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued:

1. In response to a handoff or point out;

2. In anticipation of a handoff or point out; or

3. In conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

f. *Traffic Observed.* The term used to inform the controller issuing the traffic restrictions that the traffic is identified and that the restrictions issued are understood and will be complied with.

5–4–3. METHODS

a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods:

1. Physically point to the target on the receiving controller's display.

2. Use landline voice communications.

3. Use automation capabilities.

NOTE–
Automated handoff capabilities are only available when FDP is operational.

4. *TERMINAL.* Use the "Modify" or "Quick Look" functions for data transfer between the TRACON and tower cab only if specific procedures are established in a facility directive. The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS/STARS data on the BRITE/DBRITE/TDW.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–2–4, Use of Modify and Quick Look Functions.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–8–4, Use of Stars Quick Look Functions.

b. When making a handoff, point-out, or issuing traffic restrictions, relay information to the receiving controller in the following order:

1. The position of the target relative to a fix, map symbol, or radar target known and displayed by both the receiving and transferring controller. Mileage from the reference point may be omitted when relaying the position of a target if a full data block associated with the target has been forced on the receiving controller's radar display.

EXAMPLE–
"Point out, Southwest of Richmond VOR . . .."

2. The aircraft identification, as follows:

(a) The aircraft call sign, or

(b) The discrete beacon code of the aircraft during interfacility point-outs only, if both the receiving and the transferring controllers agree.

NOTE−
Acceptance of a point-out using the discrete beacon code as the aircraft's identification constitutes agreement.

(c) EN ROUTE. The Computer Identification Number (CID) during intra-facility point-outs.

EXAMPLE−
"Point Out, Southwest of Richmond VOR, C-I-D 123…"

3. The assigned altitude, appropriate restrictions, and information that the aircraft is climbing or descending, if applicable, except when inter/intrafacility directives ensure that the altitude information will be known by the receiving controller.

NOTE−
When physically pointing to the target, you do not have to state the aircraft position.

4. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or available flight data unless covered in an LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information may include:

(a) Assigned heading.

(b) Speed/altitude restrictions.

(c) Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.

(d) Any other pertinent information.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HANDOFF/POINT-OUT/TRAFFIC (aircraft position) (aircraft ID),

or

(discrete beacon code point-out only) (altitude, restrictions, and other pertinent information, if applicable).

c. When receiving a handoff, point-out, or traffic restrictions, respond to the transferring controller as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft ID) (restrictions, if applicable) RADAR CONTACT,

or

(aircraft ID or discrete beacon code) (restrictions, if applicable) POINT-OUT APPROVED,

or

TRAFFIC OBSERVED,

or

UNABLE (appropriate information, as required).

d. If any doubt as to target identification exists after attempting confirmation in accordance with this section, apply the provisions of para 5−3−5, Questionable Identification.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−17, Validation of Mode C Readout.

5−4−4. TRAFFIC

a. When using the term "traffic" for coordinating separation, the controller issuing traffic must issue appropriate restrictions.

b. The controller accepting the restrictions must be responsible to ensure that approved separation is maintained between the involved aircraft.

5−4−5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The transferring controller must:

a. Complete a radar handoff prior to an aircraft's entering the airspace delegated to the receiving controller.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−15, Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

b. Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, speed, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance, unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

c. Ensure that, prior to transferring communications:

1. Potential violations of adjacent airspace and potential conflicts between aircraft in their own area of jurisdiction are resolved.

2. Coordination has been accomplished with all controllers through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass prior to entering the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

3. Restrictions issued to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.

d. After transferring communications, continue to comply with the requirements of subparas c1 and 2.

e. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

f. Comply with the provisions of para 2−1−17, Radio Communications Transfer, subparas a and b. To the extent possible, transfer communications when the transfer of radar identification has been accepted.

NOTE−
Before the ARTS/STARS "modify/quick look" function is used to transfer radar identification, a facility directive which specifies communication transfer points is required.

g. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or flight progress strip unless covered in a LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information includes:

1. Assigned heading.

2. Air speed restrictions.

3. Altitude information issued.

4. Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.

5. The beacon code if different from that normally used or previously coordinated.

6. Any other pertinent information.

h. Ensure that the data block is associated with the appropriate target.

i. Initiate verbal coordination to verify the position of primary or nondiscrete targets when using the automated handoff functions except for intrafacility handoffs using single-sensor systems or multisensor systems operating in a mosaic RDP mode.

j. Initiate verbal coordination before transferring control of a track when "CST," "FAIL," "NONE," "NB," "NX," "IF," "NT", or "TRK" is displayed in the data block.

k. Advise the receiving controller if radar monitoring is required.

l. Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.

m. Consider the target being transferred as identified on the receiving controller's display when the receiving controller acknowledges receipt verbally or has accepted an automated handoff.

n. Accomplish the necessary coordination with any intervening controllers whose area of jurisdiction is affected by the receiving controller's delay in the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of your area of jurisdiction when the receiving controller advises you of that delay before accepting the transfer of radar identification unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

5−4−6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The receiving controller must:

a. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an appropriate association between an automated data block and the target being transferred before accepting a handoff.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−15, Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff.

b. Issue restrictions that are needed for the aircraft to enter your sector safely before accepting the handoff.

c. Comply with restrictions issued by the transferring controller unless otherwise coordinated.

d. After accepting a handoff from another controller, confirm the identity of primary target by advising the aircraft of its position, and of a beacon target by observing a code change, an "ident" reply, or a "standby" squawk unless one of these was used during handoff. These provisions do not apply at those towers and GCAs which have been delegated the responsibility for providing radar separation within designated areas by the parent approach control facility and the aircraft identification is assured by sequencing or positioning prior to the handoff.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5, Approach Separation Responsibility.

e. When using appropriate equipment, consider a discrete beacon target's identity to be confirmed when:

1. The data block associated with the target being handed off indicates the computer assigned discrete beacon code is being received, or

2. You observe the deletion of a discrete code that was displayed in the data block, or

NOTE–
When the aircraft generated discrete beacon code does not match the computer assigned beacon code, the code generated will be displayed in the data block. When the aircraft changes to the assigned discrete code, the code disappears from the data block. In this instance, the observance of code removal from the data block satisfies confirmation requirements.

3. You observe the numeric display of a discrete code that an aircraft has been instructed to squawk or reports squawking.

f. Take the identified action prior to accepting control of a track when the following indicators are displayed in the data block:

1. "AMB" and "AM": advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your CARTS/PIDP/STARS system.

2. "NAT", "NT," or "TU": advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.

3. "DATA", "CST", "NONE", "NX", "OLD", or "OL": initiate verbal coordination.

g. ERAM: Notify the FLM when a MISM is displayed in the data block.

h. Advise the transferring controller, prior to accepting the transfer of radar identification, that you will delay the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

i. If you decide, *after* accepting the transfer of radar identification, to delay the aircraft's climb or descent through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, advise the transferring controller of that decision as soon as possible.

5–4–7. POINT OUT

a. The transferring controller must:

1. Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace. *TERMINAL.* Automated approval may be utilized in lieu of verbal, provided the appropriate automation software is operational (automated point out function), and the procedures are specified in a facility directive/LOA.

2. Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, speed, or data block information after the point out has been approved.

3. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

4. Be responsible for subsequent radar handoffs and communications transfer, including flight data revisions and coordination, unless otherwise agreed to by the receiving controller or as specified in a LOA.

b. The receiving controller must:

1. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.

2. Be responsible for separation between point out aircraft and other aircraft for which he/she has separation responsibility.

3. Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/her area of jurisdiction.

5–4–8. AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER (AIT)

Transfer radar identification, altitude control, and/or en route fourth line control information, without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff; and

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks; and

c. Within the same facility, except as provided in Paragraph 5–4–9, Interfacility Automated Information Transfer; and

d. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−11, En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage.

5−4−9. INTERFACILITY AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER

EN ROUTE

Transfer radar identification without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff; and

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks; and

c. On aircraft at assigned altitude in level flight; and

d. Only the first sector within the receiving facility must utilize the procedure; and

e. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive and LOA.

5−4−10. PREARRANGED COORDINATION

Prearranged coordination allowing aircraft under your control to enter another controller's area of jurisdiction may only be approved provided procedures are established and published in a facility directive/LOA in accordance with FAAO JO 7210.3, Paragraph 3−6−7, Prearranged Coordination.

NOTE−
Under no circumstances may one controller permit an aircraft to enter another's airspace without proper coordination. Coordination can be accomplished by several means; i.e., radar handoff, automated information transfer, verbal, point−out, and by prearranged coordination procedures identified in a facility directive that clearly describe the correct application. Airspace boundaries should not be permitted to become barriers to the efficient movement of traffic. In addition, complete coordination, awareness of traffic flow, and understanding of each position's responsibility concerning penetration of another's airspace cannot be overemphasized.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−3, Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−6−7, Prearranged Coordination.

5−4−11. EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE

a. The fourth line of the data block must be displayed. When used for forwarding control information, only the specified messages listed in this section may be used. Any additional control information must be forwarded via other communications methods. Free text may be used by individual sector teams for recording information the team deems appropriate for managing the sector, but must be removed prior to initiation of identification transfer.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff, subpara b.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−9, Interfacility Automated Information Transfer.

b. The en route fourth line data block area must be used for coordination purposes only in association with radar identified aircraft.

c. When automated information transfer (AIT) procedures are applied, en route fourth line usage for transfer of control information must be specifically defined within facility AIT directive.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).

d. Coordination format for assigned headings must use the designation character "H" preceding a three−digit number.

EXAMPLE−
H080, H270

e. Aircraft assigned a heading until receiving a fix or joining a published route must be designated with assigned heading format followed by the fix or route.

EXAMPLE−
H080/ALB, 080/J121, PH/ALB

NOTE−
1. *The notation "PH" may be used to denote present heading.*

2. *The character "H" may be omitted as a prefix to the heading assignment only if necessary due to character field limitations, and it does not impede understanding.*

f. Coordination format for weather deviations must use the designated characters:
D-deviation
L-left
R-right

N-north
E-east
S-south
W-west
/F – direct next NAVAID/waypoint
D+2 headings – deviate between.

NOTE–
1. *Two digits specify turns in degrees and must include direction character(s). Three digits specify heading(s).*

2. *The inclusion of a /NAVAID, /waypoint, or /F indicates that the pilot has been authorized to deviate for weather and must rejoin the route at the next NAVAID, waypoint, or fix in the route of flight in accordance with the phraseology in paragraph 2-6-4.*

EXAMPLE–
D90/ATL, DL/KD75U, D090/F

3. *The absence of a NAVAID, waypoint, or /F indicates that the pilot has been authorized to deviate for weather only, and the receiving controller must provide a clearance to rejoin the route in accordance with paragraph 2-1-15c.*

EXAMPLE–
DN, D20L, D30R, D080+120

g. Coordination format for assigned airspeeds must use the designation character "S" preceding a three−digit number.

NOTE–
A "+" notation may be added to denote an assigned speed at or greater than the displayed value. A "−" notation may be added to denote an assigned speed at or less than the displayed value.

EXAMPLE–
S210, S250, S250+, S280−

h. Aircraft assigned a Mach number must use the designation "M" preceding the two−digit assigned value.

EXAMPLE–
M80, M80+, M80−

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−11, En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage, subpara gNOTE.

i. Aircraft authorized to conduct celestial navigation training within 30 NM of the route centerline specified within the en route clearance.

EXAMPLE–
CELNAV

j. Coordination format for aircraft requesting an altitude change must use the designation characters "RQ" preceding a three−digit number.

EXAMPLE–
RQ170, RQ410

k. Coordination format for aircraft requesting a route change must use the designation "RQ/" preceding a specific fix identifier.

EXAMPLE–
RQ/LAX, RQ/NEUTO

l. The acceptance of a handoff by the receiving controller must constitute receipt of the information contained within the en route fourth line data block. This information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive. It is the responsibility of the receiving controller to advise the transferring controller if any information is not understood, or needs to be revised.

NOTE–
Due to system and character limitations the usage of these standardized entries may require additional support via facility directive in order to provide complete coordination.

m. All other control information must be coordinated via other methods.

Section 5. Radar Separation

5−5−1. APPLICATION

a. Radar separation must be applied to all RNAV aircraft operating at and below FL450 on Q routes or random RNAV routes, excluding oceanic airspace.

EXCEPTION. GNSS-equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V not on a random impromptu route.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.5, Para 2-3-8, Aircraft Equipment Suffixes.
FAAO JO 7110.5, TBL 2-3-10, Aircraft Equipment Suffixes
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-1, Route Use.
AIM, Para 5-1-8d., Area Navigation (RNAV).
AIM, Para 5-3-4a.3. Area Navigation (RNAV) Routes.
P/CG Term - Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)[ICAO].
P/CG Term - Global Positioning Satellite/ Wide Area Augmentation Minimum En Route IFR Altitude (GPS/WAAS MEA).
P/CG Term – Parallel Offset Route.
AC 90-101A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, Para 8a, Navigation System Accuracy.

b. Radar separation may be applied between:

1. Radar identified aircraft.

2. An aircraft taking off and another radar identified aircraft when the aircraft taking off will be radar-identified within 1 mile of the runway end.

3. A radar-identified aircraft and one not radar-identified when either is cleared to climb/ descend through the altitude of the other provided:

(a) The performance of the radar system is adequate and, as a minimum, primary radar targets or ASR−9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol targets are being displayed on the display being used within the airspace within which radar separation is being applied; and

(b) Flight data on the aircraft not radar-identified indicate it is a type which can be expected to give adequate primary/ASR−9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol return in the area where separation is applied; and

(c) The airspace within which radar separation is applied is not less than the following number of miles from the edge of the radar display:

(1) When less than 40 miles from the antenna− *6 miles;*

(2) When 40 miles or more from the antenna− *10 miles*;

(3) Narrowband radar operations− *10 miles;* and

(d) Radar separation is maintained between the radar-identified aircraft and all observed primary, ASR−9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol, and secondary radar targets until nonradar separation is established from the aircraft not radar identified; and

(e) When the aircraft involved are on the same relative heading, the radar-identified aircraft is vectored a sufficient distance from the route of the aircraft not radar identified to assure the targets are not superimposed prior to issuing the clearance to climb/descend.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−1−2, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−4−1, Route Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−3−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5, Approach Separation Responsibility.

4. A radar-identified aircraft and one not radar-identified that is in transit from oceanic airspace or non-radar offshore airspace into an area of known radar coverage where radar separation is applied as specified in Paragraph 8-5-5, Radar Identification Application, until the transiting aircraft is radar-identified or the controller establishes other approved separation in the event of a delay or inability to establish radar identification of the transiting aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-2-6, IFR Flight Progress Data.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-1, Presentation and Equipment Performance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-3-1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 8-1-8, Use of Control Estimates.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 8-5-5, Radar Separation.

5−5−2. TARGET SEPARATION

Apply radar separation:

a. Between the centers of primary radar targets; however, do not allow a primary target to touch another primary target or a beacon control slash.

b. Between the ends of beacon control slashes.

c. Between the end of a beacon control slash and the center of a primary target.

d. All−digital displays. Between the centers of digitized targets. Do not allow digitized targets to touch.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple.

5−5−3. TARGET RESOLUTION

a. A process to ensure that correlated radar targets or digitized targets do not touch.

b. Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts must be issued when this procedure is used.

NOTE−
This procedure must not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

c. Target resolution must be applied as follows:

1. Between the edges of two primary targets or the edges of primary digitized targets.

2. Between the end of the beacon control slash and the edge of a primary target or primary digitized target.

3. Between the ends of two beacon control slashes.

5−5−4. MINIMA

Separate aircraft by the following minima:

a. *TERMINAL*. Single Sensor ASR or Digital Terminal Automation System (DTAS):

NOTE−
Includes single sensor long range radar mode.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna− *3 miles*.

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna− *5 miles*.

3. For single sensor ASR−9 with Mode S, when less than 60 miles from the antenna− *3 miles*.

4. For single sensor ASR−11 MSSR Beacon, when less than 60 miles from the antenna− *3 miles*.

NOTE−
Wake turbulence procedures specify increased separation minima required for certain classes of aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

b. *TERMINAL*. FUSION:

1. Fusion target symbol – *3 miles.*

2. When displaying ISR in the data block- *5 miles.*

NOTE−
In the event of an unexpected ISR on one or more aircraft, the ATCS working that aircraft must transition from 3-mile to 5-mile separation, or establish some other form of approved separation (visual or vertical) as soon as feasible. This action must be timely, but taken in a reasonable fashion, using the controller's best judgment, as not to reduce safety or the integrity of the traffic situation. For example, if ISR appears when an aircraft is established on final with another aircraft on short final, it would be beneficial from a safety perspective to allow the trailing aircraft to continue the approach and land rather than terminate a stabilized approach.

3. If TRK appears in the data block, handle in accordance with Paragraph 5-3-7, Identification Status, subparagraph b, and take appropriate steps to establish non-radar separation.

4. ADS-B may be integrated as an additional surveillance source when operating in FUSION mode. The display of ADS-B targets is permitted and does not require radar reinforcement.

NOTE−
ADS-B surveillance must only be used when operating in FUSION.

5. The use of ADS-B only information may be used to support all radar requirements associated with any published instrument procedure that is annotated "Radar Required".

6. The ADS-B Computer Human Interface (CHI) may be implemented by facilities on a sector by sector or facility wide basis when the determination is made that utilization of the ADS-B CHI provides an operational advantage to the controller.

c. EBUS, Terminal Mosaic/Multi-Sensor Mode

NOTE−
Mosaic/Multi−Sensor Mode combines radar input from 2 to 16 sites into a single picture utilizing a mosaic grid composed of radar sort boxes.

1. Below FL 600− *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600− *10 miles.*

3. Facility directives may specify 3 miles for areas meeting all of the following conditions:

(a) Radar site adaptation is set to single sensor.

(b) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(c) Within 40 miles of the antenna.

(d) Up to and including FL 230.

(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied and define the requirements for displaying the area on the controller's display.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-1, Three Mile Airspace Operations
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11-8-15, Single Site Coverage ATTS Operations

4. When transitioning from terminal to en route control, 3 miles increasing to 5 miles or greater, provided:

(a) The aircraft are on diverging routes/courses, and/or

(b) The leading aircraft is and will remain faster than the following aircraft; and

(c) Separation constantly increasing and the first center controller will establish 5 NM or other appropriate form of separation prior to the aircraft departing the first center sector; and

(d) The procedure is covered by a letter of agreement between the facilities involved and limited to specified routes and/or sectors/positions.

d. ERAM:

1. Below FL 600- *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600- *10 miles*

3. Below FL 230 where all the following conditions are met – *3 miles:*

(a) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(b) Within 40 miles of the preferred sensor, and within the 3 NM separation area.

(c) The preferred sensor is providing reliable beacon targets.

(d) Facility directives specifically define the 3 NM separation area.

(e) The 3 NM separation area is displayable on the video map.

(f) Involved aircraft are displayed using the 3 NM target symbol.

4. When transitioning from terminal to en route control, 3 miles increasing to 5 miles or greater, provided:

(a) The aircraft are on diverging routes/courses, and/or

(b) The leading aircraft is and will remain faster than the following aircraft; and

(c) Separation constantly increasing and the first center controller will establish 5 NM or other appropriate form of separation prior to the aircraft departing the first center sector; and

(d) The procedure is covered by a letter of agreement between the facilities involved and limited to specified routes and/or sectors/positions.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-1, Three Mile Airspace Operations
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11-8-15, Single Site Coverage ATTS Operations

e. MEARTS Mosaic Mode:

1. Below FL 600- *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600- *10 miles.*

3. For areas meeting all of the following conditions – *3 miles*:

(a) Radar site adaptation is set to single sensor mode.

NOTE–
1. *Single Sensor Mode displays information from the radar input of a single site.*

2. *Procedures to convert MEARTS Mosaic Mode to MEARTS Single Sensor Mode at each PVD/MDM will be established by facility directive.*

(b) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(c) Within 40 miles of the antenna.

(d) Below FL 180.

(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied and define the requirements for displaying the area on the controller's PVD/MDM.

4. MEARTS Mosaic Mode Utilizing Single Source Polygon (San Juan CERAP and Honolulu Control Facility only) when meeting all of the following conditions– *3 miles*:

(a) Less than 40 miles from the antenna, below FL180, and targets are from the adapted sensor.

(b) The single source polygon must be displayed on the controller's PVD/MDM.

(c) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(d) Facility directives specifically define the single source polygon area where the separation can be applied and specify procedures to be used.

(e) Controller must commence a transition to achieve either vertical separation or 5 mile lateral separation in the event that either target is not from the adapted sensor.

f. STARS Multi−Sensor Mode:

NOTE−
1. *In Multi−Sensor Mode, STARS displays targets as filled and unfilled boxes, depending upon the target's distance from the radar site providing the data. Since there is presently no way to identify which specific site is providing data for any given target, utilize separation standards for targets 40 or more miles from the antenna.*

2. *When operating in STARS Single Sensor Mode, if TRK appears in the data block, handle in accordance with para 5−3−7, Identification Status, subpara b, and take appropriate steps to establish nonradar separation.*

3. *TRK appears in the data block whenever the aircraft is being tracked by a radar site other than the radar currently selected. Current equipment limitations preclude a target from being displayed in the single sensor mode; however, a position symbol and data block, including altitude information, will still be displayed. Therefore, low altitude alerts must be provided in accordance with para 2−1−6 , Safety Alert.*

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

g. Separate aircraft operating directly behind or following an aircraft conducting an instrument approach by the minima specified and in accordance with the following:

NOTE−
Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

1. When operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth and less than 1,000 feet below:

(a) *TERMINAL.* Behind super:

(1) Heavy - *6 miles.*

(2) Large - *7 miles.*

(3) Small - *8 miles.*

(b) *EN ROUTE.* Behind super - *5 miles,* unless the super is operating at or below FL240 and below 250 knots, then:

(1) Heavy - *6 miles.*

(2) Large - *7 miles.*

(3) Small - *8 miles.*

(c) Behind heavy:

(1) Heavy - *4 miles.*

(2) Large or small - *5 miles.*

2. Separate small aircraft behind a B757 by *4 miles* when operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth and/or less than 500 feet below.

3. *TERMINAL.* When departing parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, the 2,500 feet requirement in subparagraph 2 is not required when a small departs the parallel runway behind a B757. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and instructions that will establish lateral separation in accordance with subparagraph 2. Do not issue instructions that will allow the small to pass behind the B757.

NOTE−
The application of paragraph 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures, satisfies this requirement when an initial heading is issued with the take-off clearance.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

h. In addition to subpara g, separate an aircraft landing behind another aircraft on the same runway, or one making a touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach by ensuring the following minima will exist at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold:

NOTE−
Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

1. Small behind large− *4 miles*.

2. Small behind heavy− *6 miles.*

If the landing threshold cannot be determined, apply the above minima as constant or increasing at the closest point that can be determined prior to the landing threshold.

i. *TERMINAL.* When NOWGT is displayed in an aircraft data block, provide *10 miles* separation behind the preceding aircraft and *10 miles* separation to the succeeding aircraft.

j. *TERMINAL*. 2.5 nautical miles (NM) separation is authorized between aircraft established on the final approach course within 10 NM of the landing runway when operating in single sensor slant range mode and aircraft remains within 40 miles of the antenna and:

1. The leading aircraft's weight class is the same or less than the trailing aircraft;

2. Super and heavy aircraft are permitted to participate in the separation reduction as the trailing aircraft only;

3. An average runway occupancy time of 50 seconds or less is documented;

4. CTRDs are operational and used for quick glance references;

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−9 , Use of Tower Radar Displays.

5. Turnoff points are visible from the control tower.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−19 , Wake Turbulence.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−6 , Same Runway Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−7 , Passing or Diverging.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−9 , Separation from Obstructions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−8−3 , Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5 , Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−7 , Sequencing.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3 , Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65 Para 7−8−3 , Separation.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−4−11 , Reduced Separation on Final.

5−5−5. VERTICAL APPLICATION

Aircraft not laterally separated, may be vertically separated by one of the following methods:

a. Assign altitudes to aircraft, provided valid Mode C altitude information is monitored and the applicable separation minima is maintained at all times.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−1 , Vertical Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−17 , Validation of Mode C Readout.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3 , Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−3 , Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−4 , Separation.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft after the aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent clearance and is observed (valid Mode C), or reports leaving the altitude.

NOTE−
1. *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics, pilot furnished and/or Mode C detected information which indicate that climb/descent will not be consistent with the rates recommended in the AIM.*

2. *It is possible that the separation minima described in para 4−5−1 , Vertical Separation Minima, para 7−7−3 , Separation, para 7−8−3 , Separation, or para 7−9−4 , Separation, might not always be maintained using subpara b. However, correct application of this procedure will ensure that aircraft are safely separated because the first aircraft must have already vacated the altitude prior to the assignment of that altitude to the second aircraft.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−3 , Procedural Preference.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−1 , Vertical Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−17 , Validation of Mode C Readout.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−6−1 , Application.

5−5−6. EXCEPTIONS

a. Do not use Mode C to effect vertical separation with an aircraft on a cruise clearance, contact approach, or as specified in para 5−15−4, System Requirements, subpara e3.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−6−2 , Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−6 , Contact Approach.
P/CG Term− Cruise.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft only after the aircraft previously at that altitude is observed at or passing through another altitude separated from the first by the appropriate minima when:

1. Severe turbulence is reported.

2. Aircraft are conducting military aerial refueling.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−13 , Military Aerial Refueling.

3. The aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

5−5−7. PASSING OR DIVERGING

a. *TERMINAL*. In accordance with the following criteria, all other approved separation may be discontinued and passing or diverging separation applied when:

1. Single Site ASR or FUSION Mode

(a) Aircraft are on opposite/reciprocal courses and you have observed that they have passed each other; or aircraft are on same or crossing courses/assigned radar vectors and one aircraft has crossed the projected course of the other, and the angular difference between their courses/assigned radar vectors is at least 15 degrees.

NOTE–
Two aircraft, both assigned radar vectors with an angular difference of at least 15 degrees, is considered a correct application of this paragraph.

(b) The tracks are monitored to ensure that the primary targets, beacon control slashes, FUSION target symbols, or full digital terminal system primary and/or beacon target symbols will not touch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1-2-2, Course Definitions.

2. Single Site ARSR or FUSION Mode when target refresh is only from an ARSR or when in FUSION Mode − ISR is displayed.

(a) Aircraft are on opposite/reciprocal courses and you have observed that they have passed each other; or aircraft are on same or crossing courses/assigned radar vectors and one aircraft has crossed the projected course of the other, and the angular difference between their courses/assigned radar vectors is at least 45 degrees.

NOTE–
Two aircraft, both assigned radar vectors with an angular difference of at least 45 degrees, is considered a correct application of this paragraph.

(b) The tracks are monitored to ensure that the primary targets, beacon control slashes, FUSION target symbols, or full digital terminal system primary and/or beacon target symbols will not touch.

3. Although approved separation may be discontinued, the requirements of Para 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraph g must be applied when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1−2−2, Course Definitions.

NOTE–
Apply en route separation rules when using multi−sensor mode.

b. *EN ROUTE.* Vertical separation between aircraft may be discontinued when they are on opposite courses as defined in para 1−2−2, Course Definitions; and

1. You are in communications with both aircraft involved; and

2. You tell the pilot of one aircraft about the other aircraft, including position, direction, type; and

3. One pilot reports having seen the other aircraft and that the aircraft have passed each other; and

4. You have observed that the radar targets have passed each other; and

5. You have advised the pilots if either aircraft is classified as a super or heavy aircraft.

6. Although vertical separation may be discontinued, the requirements of Para 5−5−4, Minima, subparagraph g must be applied when wake turbulence separation is required.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, opposite direction. Do you have it in sight?"

(If the answer is in the affirmative):

"Report passing the traffic."

(When pilot reports passing the traffic and the radar targets confirm that the traffic has passed, issue appropriate control instructions.)

5−5−8. ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS

Because of the distance allowed between formation aircraft and lead aircraft, additional separation is necessary to ensure the periphery of the formation is adequately separated from other aircraft, adjacent airspace, or obstructions. Provide supplemental separation for formation flights as follows:

a. Separate a standard formation flight by adding 1 mile to the appropriate radar separation minima.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−13, Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3, Separation.
P/CG Term− Formation Flight.

b. Separate two standard formation flights from each other by adding 2 miles to the appropriate separation minima.

c. Separate a nonstandard formation flight by applying the appropriate separation minima to the perimeter of the airspace encompassing the nonstandard formation or from the outermost aircraft of the nonstandard formation whichever applies.

d. If necessary for separation between a nonstandard formation and other aircraft, assign an appropriate beacon code to each aircraft in the formation or to the first and last aircraft in-trail.

NOTE–
The additional separation provided in Paragraph 5–5–8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights, is not normally added to wake turbulence separation when a formation is following a heavier aircraft since none of the formation aircraft are likely to be closer to the heavier aircraft than the lead aircraft (to which the prescribed wake turbulence separation has been applied).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–13 , Military Aerial Refueling.

5–5–9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS

a. TERMINAL. Separate aircraft from obstructions depicted on the radar display by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles.*

b. TERMINAL. Vertical separation of aircraft above an obstruction depicted on the radar display may be discontinued after the aircraft has passed it.

c. EAS. Apply the radar separation minima specified in Para 5-5-4, Minima.

5–5–10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

a. If coordination between the controllers concerned has not been effected, separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of adjacent airspace in which radar separation is also being used by the following minima:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–14 , Coordinate Use of Airspace.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *1 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *2 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

3. *EAS:*

(a) Below Flight Level 600– *2 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

(b) Flight Level 600 and above– *5 miles.*

b. Separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of airspace in which nonradar separation is being used by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles*.

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles*.

3. *EAS:*

(a) Below Flight Level 600– *5 miles.*

(b) Flight Level 600 and above– *10 miles.*

c. The provisions of subparas a and b do not apply to VFR aircraft being provided Class B, Class C, or TRSA services. Ensure that the targets of these aircraft do not touch the boundary of adjacent airspace.

d. VFR aircraft approaching Class B, Class C, Class D, or TRSA airspace which is under the control jurisdiction of another air traffic control facility should either be provided with a radar handoff or be advised that radar service is terminated, given their position in relation to the Class B, Class C, Class D, or TRSA airspace, and the ATC frequency, if known, for the airspace to be entered. These actions should be accomplished in sufficient time for the pilot to obtain the required ATC approval prior to entering the airspace involved, or to avoid the airspace.

5–5–11. EDGE OF SCOPE

Separate a radar-controlled aircraft climbing or descending through the altitude of an aircraft that has been tracked to the edge of the scope/display by the following minima until nonradar separation has been established:

a. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles* from edge of scope.

b. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles* from edge of scope.

c. *EAS:*

1. Below Flight Level 600– *5 miles*.

2. Flight Level 600 and above– *10 miles*.

5-5-12. BEACON TARGET DISPLACEMENT

When using a radar target display with a previously specified beacon target displacement to separate a beacon target from a primary target, adjacent airspace, obstructions, or terrain, add a 1 mile correction factor to the applicable minima. The maximum allowable beacon target displacement which may be specified by the facility air traffic manager is $^{1}/_{2}$ mile.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3-7-4, Monitoring of Mode 3/A Radar Beacon Codes.

Section 6. Vectoring

5-6-1. APPLICATION

Vector aircraft:

a. In controlled airspace for separation, safety, noise abatement, operational advantage, confidence maneuver, or when a pilot requests.

b. In Class G airspace only upon pilot request and as an additional service.

c. At or above the MVA or the minimum IFR altitude except as authorized for radar approaches, special VFR, VFR operations, or by Para 5-6-3, Vectors Below Minimum Altitude.

NOTE-
VFR aircraft not at an altitude assigned by ATC may be vectored at any altitude. It is the responsibility of the pilot to comply with the applicable parts of CFR Title 14.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-6, Minimum En Route Altitudes.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-5-2, Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-5-4, Altitude Assignment.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-7-5, Altitude Assignments.
14 CFR Section 91.119, Minimum Safe Altitudes: General.

d. In airspace for which you have control jurisdiction, unless otherwise coordinated.

e. So as to permit it to resume its own navigation within radar coverage.

f. Operating special VFR only within Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas.

g. Operating VFR at those locations where a special program is established, or when a pilot requests, or you suggest and the pilot concurs.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-1, Route Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-2-1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-5-3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-6-1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-4-4, Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 11, Section 1, Terminal VFR Radar Services.

5-6-2. METHODS

a. Vector aircraft by specifying:

1. Direction of turn, if appropriate, and magnetic heading to be flown, or

PHRASEOLOGY-
TURN LEFT/RIGHT HEADING (degrees).

FLY HEADING (degrees).

FLY PRESENT HEADING.

DEPART (fix) HEADING (degrees).

2. The number of degrees, in group form, to turn and the direction of turn, or

PHRASEOLOGY-
TURN (number of degrees) DEGREES LEFT/RIGHT.

3. For NO-GYRO procedures, the type of vector, direction of turn, and when to stop turn.

PHRASEOLOGY-
THIS WILL BE A NO-GYRO VECTOR,

TURN LEFT/RIGHT.

STOP TURN.

b. When initiating a vector, advise the pilot of the purpose, and if appropriate, what to expect when radar navigational guidance is terminated.

PHRASEOLOGY-
VECTOR TO (fix or airway).

VECTOR TO INTERCEPT (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.

VECTOR FOR SPACING.

(if appropriate) EXPECT DIRECT (NAVAID, waypoint, fix)

VECTOR TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE,

or if the pilot does not have knowledge of the type of approach,

VECTOR TO (approach name) FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

NOTE-
Determine optimum routing based on factors such as wind, weather, traffic, pilot requests, noise abatement, adjacent sector requirement, and letters of agreement.

c. When vectoring or approving course deviations, assign an altitude to maintain when:

1. The vector or approved deviation is off an assigned procedure which contains altitude instructions, i.e., instrument approach, etc.

2. The previously issued clearance included crossing restrictions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−5, Route or Altitude Amendments.

3. The vector or approved deviation is off an assigned procedure that contains published altitude restrictions, i.e., SID, STAR, and a clearance to Climb Via/Descend Via has been issued.

d. When vectoring or approving an aircraft to deviate off of a procedure that includes published altitude restrictions, advise the pilot if you intend on clearing the aircraft to resume the procedure.

PHRASEOLOGY−
FLY HEADING (degrees), MAINTAIN (altitude), EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.).

DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, MAINTAIN (altitude) EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.) AT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint)

NOTE−
After a Climb Via or Descend Via clearance has been issued, a vector/deviation off of a SID/STAR cancels the altitude restrictions on the procedure. The aircraft's Flight Management System (FMS) may be unable to process crossing altitude restrictions once the aircraft leaves the SID/STAR lateral path. Without an assigned altitude, the aircraft's FMS may revert to leveling off at the altitude set by the pilot, which may be the SID/STAR's published top or bottom altitude.

e. Provide radar navigational guidance until the aircraft is:

1. Established within the airspace to be protected for the nonradar route to be flown, or

2. On a heading that will, within a reasonable distance, intercept the nonradar route to be flown, and

3. Informed of its position unless the aircraft is RNAV, FMS, or DME equipped and being vectored toward a VORTAC/TACAN or waypoint and within the service volume of the NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Position with respect to course/fix along route), RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, FLY HEADING (degrees). WHEN ABLE, PROCEED DIRECT (name of fix), RESUME (SID/STAR/transition/procedure).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 4, Section 1, NAVAID Use Limitations.
FAAO JO 7110.65,Paragraph 4-5-7, Altitude Information

f. Aircraft instructed to resume a procedure which contains restrictions (SID/STAR, etc.) must be issued/reissued all applicable restrictions or must be advised to comply with those restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RESUME (name/SID/transition/STAR), COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS.

PROCEED DIRECT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint) CROSS (NAVAID, fix, waypoint) AT/AT OR ABOVE/AT OR BELOW (altitude) CLIMB VIA/DESCEND VIA (SID/STAR)

EXAMPLE−
"Resume the Mudde One Arrival, comply with restrictions."
"Cleared direct Luxor, resume the Ksino One arrival, comply with restrictions."
"Cleared direct HITME, cross HITME at or above one one thousand, climb via the Boach Five departure."

g. Aircraft may not be vectored off an Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), or issued an altitude lower than published altitude on an ODP, until at or above the MVA/MIA, at which time the ODP is cancelled.

NOTE−
Once an aircraft has been vectored off an Obstacle Departure Procedure, the procedure is cancelled and ATC cannot clear the aircraft to resume the ODP.

REFERENCE−
P/CG− Obstacle Departure Procedure

h. Aircraft vectored off an RNAV route must be recleared to the next waypoint or as requested by the pilot.

i. When flight data processing is available, update the route of flight in the computer unless an operational advantage is gained and coordination is accomplished.

j. Inform the pilot when a vector will take the aircraft across a previously assigned nonradar route.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT VECTOR ACROSS (NAVAID radial) (airway/route/course) FOR (purpose).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−1, Application.

5−6−3. VECTORS BELOW MINIMUM ALTITUDE

Except in en route automated environments in areas where more than 3 miles separation minima is required, you may vector a departing IFR aircraft, or one executing a missed approach, within 40 miles of the radar antenna and before it reaches the minimum altitude for IFR operations if separation from prominent obstacles shown on the radar scope is applied in accordance with the following:

a. If the flight path is 3 miles or more from the obstacle and the aircraft is climbing to an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the obstacle, vector the aircraft to maintain at least 3 miles separation from the obstacle until the aircraft reports leaving an altitude above the obstacle.

b. If the flight path is less than 3 miles from the obstacle and the aircraft is climbing to an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the obstacle, vector the aircraft to increase lateral separation from the obstacle until the 3 mile minimum is achieved or until the aircraft reports leaving an altitude above the obstacle.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term − Obstacle.
P/CG Term − Obstruction.
P/CG Term − Prominent Obstacle.

c. At those locations where diverse vector areas (DVA) have been established, terminal radar facilities may vector aircraft below the MVA/MIA within those areas and along those routes described in facility directives.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3−9−5, Establishing Diverse Vector Area/s (DVA).

Section 7. Speed Adjustment

5−7−1. APPLICATION

Keep speed adjustments to the minimum necessary to achieve or maintain required or desired spacing. Avoid adjustments requiring alternate decreases and increases. Terminate speed adjustments when no longer needed.

NOTE−
It is the pilot's responsibility and prerogative to refuse speed adjustment that he/she considers excessive or contrary to the aircraft's operating specifications.

a. Consider the following when applying speed control:

1. Determine the interval required and the point at which the interval is to be accomplished.

2. Implement speed adjustment based on the following principles.

(a) Priority of speed adjustment instructions is determined by the relative speed and position of the aircraft involved and the spacing requirement.

(b) Speed adjustments are not achieved instantaneously. Aircraft configuration, altitudes, and speed determine the time and distance required to accomplish the adjustment.

3. Use the following techniques in speed control situations:

(a) Compensate for compression when assigning air speed adjustment in an in-trail situation by using one of the following techniques:

(1) Reduce the trailing aircraft first.

(2) Increase the leading aircraft first.

(b) Assign a specific airspeed if required to maintain spacing.

(c) Allow increased time and distance to achieve speed adjustments in the following situations:

(1) Higher altitudes.

(2) Greater speed.

(3) Clean configurations.

(d) Ensure that aircraft are allowed to operate in a clean configuration as long as circumstances permit.

(e) Keep the number of speed adjustments per aircraft to the minimum required to achieve and maintain spacing.

b. Do not assign speed adjustment to aircraft:

1. At or above FL 390 without pilot consent.

2. Executing a published high altitude instrument approach procedure.

3. In a holding pattern.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−6−4, Holding Instructions.

4. Inside the final approach fix on final or a point 5 miles from the runway, whichever is closer to the runway.

c. At the time approach clearance is issued, previously issued speed adjustments must be restated if required.

d. Approach clearances cancel any previously assigned speed adjustment. Pilots are expected to make their own speed adjustments to complete the approach unless the adjustments are restated.

e. If feasible, when issuing speed adjustments to aircraft cleared along a route or procedure that has published speed restrictions, advise aircraft where to resume published speed.

f. Express speed adjustments in terms of knots based on indicated airspeed (IAS) in 10−knot increments. At or above FL 240, speeds may be expressed in terms of Mach numbers in 0.01 increments for turbojet aircraft with Mach meters (i.e., Mach 0.69, 0.70, 0.71, etc.).

NOTE−
1. *Pilots complying with speed adjustment instructions should maintain a speed within plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed.*

2. *When assigning speeds to achieve spacing between aircraft at different altitudes, consider that ground speed may vary with altitude. Further speed adjustment may be necessary to attain the desired spacing.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−7−2, Methods.

5−7−2. METHODS

a. Instruct aircraft to:

1. Maintain present/specific speed.

2. Maintain specified speed or greater/less.

3. Maintain the highest/lowest practical speed.

4. Increase or reduce to a specified speed or by a specified number of knots.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SAY AIRSPEED.

SAY MACH NUMBER.

MAINTAIN PRESENT SPEED.

MAINTAIN (specific speed) KNOTS.

MAINTAIN (specific speed) KNOTS OR GREATER.

DO NOT EXCEED (speed) KNOTS.

MAINTAIN MAXIMUM FORWARD SPEED.

MAINTAIN SLOWEST PRACTICAL SPEED.

INCREASE/REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed in knots),

or

TO MACH (Mach number),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

EXAMPLE−
"Increase speed to Mach point seven two."
"Reduce speed to two five zero."
"Reduce speed twenty knots."
"Maintain two eight zero knots."
"Maintain maximum forward speed."

NOTE−
1. *A pilot operating at or above 10,000 feet MSL on an assigned speed adjustment greater than 250 knots is expected to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.117(a) when cleared below 10,000 feet MSL, within domestic airspace, without notifying ATC. Pilots are expected to comply with the other provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.117 without notification.*

2. *Speed restrictions of 250 knots do not apply to aircraft operating beyond 12 NM from the coastline within the U.S. Flight Information Region, in offshore Class E airspace below 10,000 feet MSL. However, in airspace underlying a Class B airspace area designated for an airport, or in a VFR corridor designated through such as a Class B airspace area, pilots are expected to comply with the 200 knot speed limit specified in 14 CFR Section 91.117(c). (See 14 CFR Sections 91.117(c) and 91.703.)*

3. *The phrases "maintain maximum forward speed" and "maintain slowest practical speed" are primarily intended for use when sequencing a group of aircraft. As the sequencing plan develops, it may be necessary to determine the specific speed and/or make specific speed assignments.*

b. To obtain pilot concurrence for a speed adjustment at or above FL 390, as required by para 5−7−1, Application, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Speed adjustment), IF UNABLE ADVISE.

EXAMPLE−
"Reduce speed to one niner zero, if unable advise."

c. Simultaneous speed reduction and descent can be extremely difficult, particularly for turbojet aircraft. Specifying which action is to be accomplished first removes any doubt the pilot may have as to controller intent or priority. Specify which action is expected first when combining speed reduction with a descent clearance.

1. Speed reductions prior to descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

THEN, DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

2. Speed reduction following descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

THEN, REDUCE SPEED:

TO (specified speed in knots),

or

TO MACH (Mach number),

or

(number of knots) KNOTS.

NOTE−
When specifying descent prior to speed reduction, consider the maximum speed requirements specified in 14 CFR Section 91.117. It may be necessary for the pilot to level off temporarily and reduce speed prior to descending below 10,000 feet MSL.

d. Specify combined speed/altitude fix crossing restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CROSS (fix) AT AND MAINTAIN (altitude) AT (specified speed) KNOTS.

EXAMPLE−
"Cross Robinsville at and maintain six thousand at two three zero knots."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−17, Numbers Usage.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−7, Altitude Information.

e. When issuing speed adjustments to aircraft cleared on procedures with published speed restrictions specify the point at which the issued restriction begins, ends, or changes the published restrictions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CROSS (fix/waypoint) AT (speed).

MAINTAIN (speed) UNTIL (fix/waypoint),

THEN (additional instructions).

RESUME PUBLISHED SPEED.

COMPLY WITH SPEED RESTRICTIONS.

EXCEPT (if required)

DELETE SPEED RESTRICTIONS.

CLIMB/DESCEND VIA (SID/STAR name and number) (transition if required.)

NOTE−
1. *Aircraft will meet all published speed restrictions when on any route or procedure with published speed restrictions regardless of climb via or descend via clearance.*

2. *Due to variations of aircraft types, Flight Management Systems, and environmental conditions, ATC should anticipate that aircraft will begin speed adjustments at varying locations along cleared routes or procedures that contain published speed restrictions.*

3. *Issuing speed adjustments to aircraft flying procedures with published speed restrictions may impact the pilot's ability to fly the intended flight profile of the procedure.*

EXAMPLE−
1. *"Cross Alisa at two two zero knots, then climb via the TIMMY One departure."*

NOTE−
The aircraft will maintain the ATC assigned speed until Alisa waypoint and will then comply with the speed restrictions on the TIMMY One departure

EXAMPLE−
2. "Cross Alisa at one zero thousand, then climb via the TIMMY One departure, except maintain two two zero knots."

NOTE−
The aircraft will maintain the ATC assigned speed of two two zero knots and will not meet any published speed restrictions. Aircraft will meet all published altitude restrictions after Alisa.

EXAMPLE−
3. "Maintain two two zero knots until BALTR then resume published speed."

NOTE−
The ATC assigned speed assignment of two two zero knots would apply until BALTR. The aircraft would then comply with the published speed restrictions.

EXAMPLE−
4. "Descend via the KEPEC Two arrival, except after NIPZO maintain one eight zero knots."

NOTE−
The aircraft will comply with all published restrictions. After NIPZO, the aircraft will continue to comply with altitude restrictions, but will comply with the ATC assigned speed adjustment.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-4-17, Numbers Usage
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-7, Altitude Information
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-7-1, Application

5−7−3. MINIMA

When assigning airspeeds, use the following recommended minima:

a. To aircraft operating between FL 280 and 10,000 feet, a speed not less than 250 knots or the equivalent Mach number.

NOTE−
1. *On a standard day the Mach numbers equivalent to 250 knots CAS (subject to minor variations) are:*
FL 240−0.6

FL 250−0.61
FL 260−0.62
FL 270−0.64
FL 280−0.65
FL 290−0.66.

2. *If a pilot is unable to comply with the speed assignment, the pilot will advise.*

b. When an operational advantage will be realized, speeds lower than the recommended minima may be applied.

c. To arrival aircraft operating below 10,000 feet:

1. Turbojet aircraft. A speed not less than 210 knots; except when the aircraft is within 20 flying miles of the runway threshold of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 170 knots.

2. Reciprocating engine and turboprop aircraft. A speed not less than 200 knots; except when the aircraft is within 20 flying miles of the runway threshold of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 150 knots.

d. Departures:

1. Turbojet aircraft. A speed not less than 230 knots.

2. Reciprocating engine and turboprop aircraft. A speed not less than 150 knots.

e. Helicopters. A speed not less than 60 knots.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−7−2, Methods.

5−7−4. TERMINATION

Advise aircraft when speed adjustments are no longer needed.

a. Advise aircraft to "resume normal speed" when ATC-assigned speed adjustments are no longer required and no published speed restrictions apply.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RESUME NORMAL SPEED.

NOTE−
"Resume normal speed" is only used where there is no underlying published speed restriction. It does not delete speed restrictions on upcoming segments of flight and does not relieve the pilot of those speed restrictions which are applicable to 14 CFR Section 91.117.

b. Instruct aircraft to "comply with speed restrictions" applicable to the charted procedure or route being flown.

PHRASEOLOGY−
COMPLY WITH SPEED RESTRICTIONS

NOTE−
The phraseology "comply with restrictions" requires compliance with all altitude and/or speed restrictions depicted on the procedure.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-6-2, Methods

c. Advise aircraft to "resume published speed" when aircraft have been assigned an unpublished speed and ATC wants aircraft to meet subsequent published speed restrictions on the route or procedure.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RESUME PUBLISHED SPEED

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-5-7, Altitude Information

d. Advise aircraft when either ATC assigned speed adjustments or published speed restrictions are no longer required.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DELETE SPEED RESTRICTIONS

NOTE−
When deleting published restrictions, ATC must ensure obstacle clearance until aircraft are established on a route where no published restrictions apply. This does not relieve the pilot of those speed restrictions which are applicable to 14 CFR Section 91.117.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-7-1, Application

Section 8. Radar Departures

5−8−1. PROCEDURES

Use standard departure routes and channelized altitudes whenever practical to reduce coordination. Do not, however, assign these routes solely to provide for possible radar or communication failure.

5−8−2. INITIAL HEADING

a. Before departure, assign the initial heading to be flown if a departing aircraft is to be vectored immediately after takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY−
FLY RUNWAY HEADING.
TURN LEFT/RIGHT, HEADING (degrees).

NOTE−
TERMINAL. A purpose for the heading is not necessary, since pilots operating in a radar environment associate assigned headings with vectors to their planned route of flight.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−2, Departure Clearances.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−3, Vectors Below Minimum Altitude.

b. When conducting simultaneous parallel runway departures utilizing RNAV SIDs, advise aircraft of the initial fix/waypoint on the RNAV route.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RNAV to (fix/waypoint), RUNWAY (number), CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE−
"RNAV to MPASS, Runway Two−Six Left, cleared for takeoff."

NOTE−
1. *TERMINAL. A purpose for an initial waypoint advisory is not necessary since pilots associate this advisory with the flight path to their planned route of flight. Pilots must immediately advise ATC if a different RNAV SID is entered in the aircraft FMS.*

2. *The SID transition is not restated as it is contained in the ATC clearance.*

3. *Aircraft cleared via RNAV SIDs designed to begin with a vector to the initial waypoint are assigned a heading before departure.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3-9-9, Takeoff Clearance
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-3-2, Departure Clearances
AIM, Para 5−2−7. Departure Control

5−8−3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES

TERMINAL

Separate aircraft departing from the same airport/heliport or adjacent airports/heliports in accordance with the following minima provided radar identification with the aircraft will be established within 1 mile of the takeoff runway end/helipad and courses will diverge by 15 degrees or more.

NOTE−
1. *FAAO 8260.46, Departure Procedure (DP) Program, and FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Volume 4, establishes guidelines for IFR departure turning procedures which assumes a climb to 400 feet above the departure end of runway (DER) elevation before a turn is commenced. TERPS criteria ensures obstacle clearance with a climb gradient of 200 feet per nautical mile from the DER. "Immediately after departure" is considered to be any turn that provides at least 15 degrees of divergence that commences no later than 2 miles from the DER.*

2. *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics when applying initial separation to successive departing aircraft.*

3. *When one or both of the departure surfaces is a helipad, use the takeoff course of the helicopter as a reference, comparable to the centerline of a runway and the helipad center as the threshold.*

a. Between aircraft departing the same runway/helipad or parallel runways/helicopter takeoff courses separated by less than 2,500 feet− *1 mile* if courses diverge by 15 degrees or more immediately after departure or 10 degrees or more when both aircraft are departing the same runway and both are flying an RNAV SID. (See FIG 5−8−1, FIG 5−8−2, and FIG 5−8−3.)

NOTE−
RNAV SIDs specific to this paragraph are those SIDs constructed with a specific lateral path that begins at the DER.

FIG 5−8−1
Successive Departures

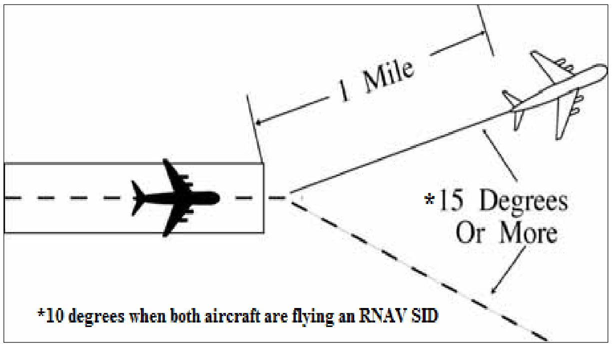


FIG 5−8−2
Simultaneous Departures

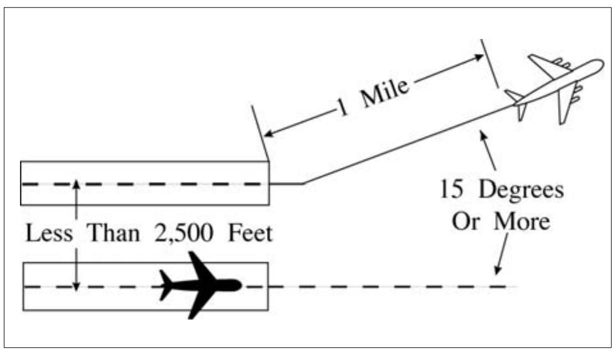
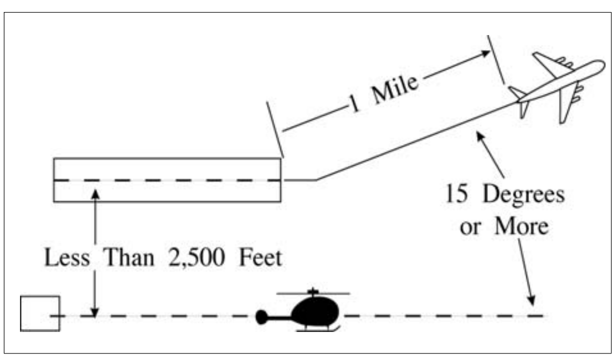


FIG 5−8−3
Simultaneous Departures



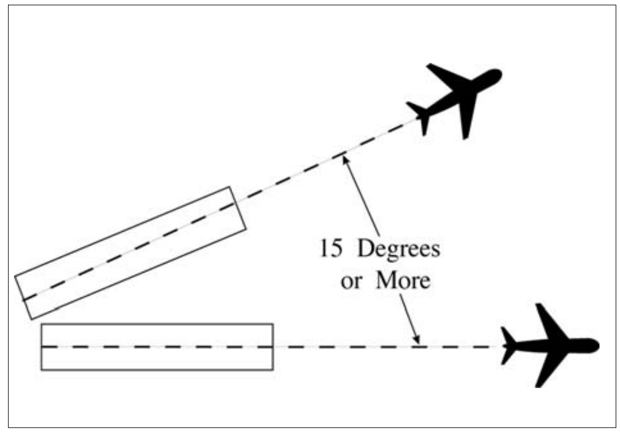
NOTE−
This procedure does not apply when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4, Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

b. Between aircraft departing from diverging runways:

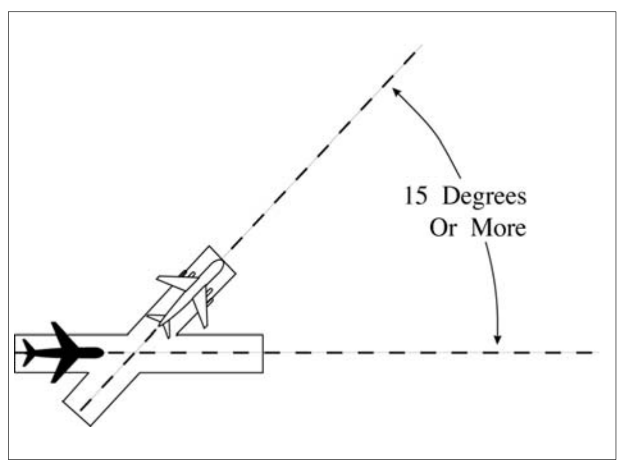
1. Nonintersecting runways. Authorize simultaneous takeoffs if runways diverge by 15 degrees or more. (See FIG 5−8−4.)

FIG 5−8−4
Nonintersecting Runway Departures



2. Intersecting runways and/or helicopter takeoff courses which diverge by 15 degrees or more. Authorize takeoff of a succeeding aircraft when the preceding aircraft has passed the point of runway and/or takeoff course intersection. When applicable, apply the procedure in para 3−9−5, Anticipating Separation. (See FIG 5−8−5 and FIG 5−8−6.)

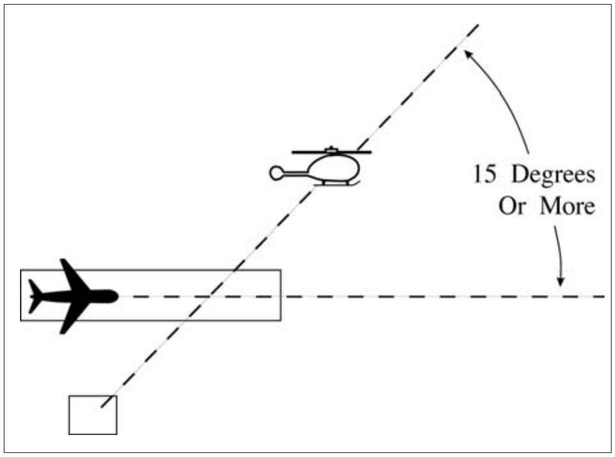
FIG 5−8−5
Intersecting Runway Departures



NOTE−
This procedure does not apply when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

FIG 5−8−6
Intersecting Helicopter Course Departures



c. Between aircraft departing in the same direction from parallel runways/helicopter takeoff courses. Authorize simultaneous takeoffs if the centerlines/ takeoff courses are separated by at least 2,500 feet and courses diverge by 15 degrees or more immediately after departure or 10 degrees or more when both aircraft are flying an RNAV SID. (See FIG 5−8−7 and FIG 5−8−8.)

NOTE−
RNAV SIDs specific to this paragraph are those SIDs constructed with a specific lateral path that begins at the DER.

FIG 5−8−7
Parallel Runway Departures

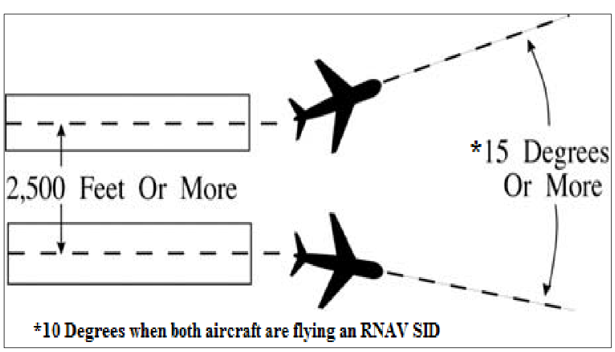
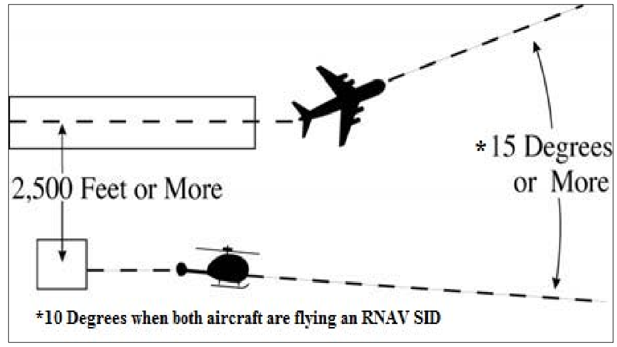


FIG 5−8−8
Parallel Helicopter Course Departures



5−8−4. DEPARTURE AND ARRIVAL

TERMINAL. Except as provided in para 5−8−5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways, separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft on final approach by a minimum of *2 miles* if separation will increase to a minimum of 3 miles (5 miles when 40 miles or more from the antenna) within 1 minute after takeoff.

NOTE−
1. *This procedure permits a departing aircraft to be released so long as an arriving aircraft is no closer than 2 miles from the runway at the time. This separation is determined at the time the departing aircraft commences takeoff roll.*

2. *Consider the effect surface conditions, such as ice, snow, and other precipitation, may have on known aircraft performance characteristics, and the influence these conditions may have on the pilot's ability to commence takeoff roll in a timely manner.*

5−8−5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS

TERMINAL. Authorize simultaneous operations between an aircraft departing on a runway and an aircraft on final approach to another parallel or nonintersecting diverging runway if the departure course diverges immediately by at least 30 degrees from the missed approach course until separation is applied and provided one of the following conditions are met:

NOTE−
When one or both of the takeoff/landing surfaces is a helipad, consider the helicopter takeoff course as the runway centerline and the helipad center as the threshold.

a. When parallel runway thresholds are even, the runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet apart. (See FIG 5−8−9 and FIG 5−8−10.)

FIG 5−8−9
Parallel Thresholds are Even

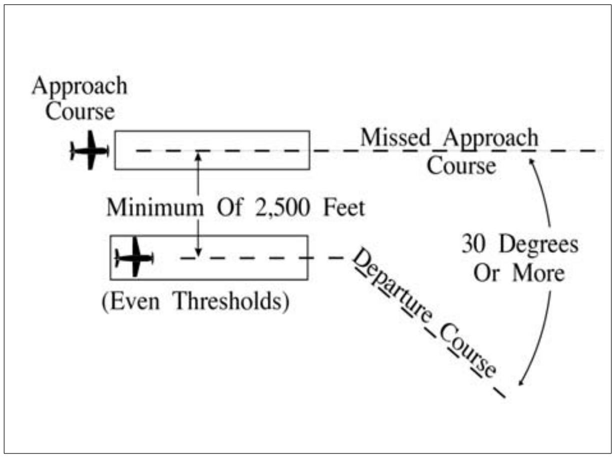
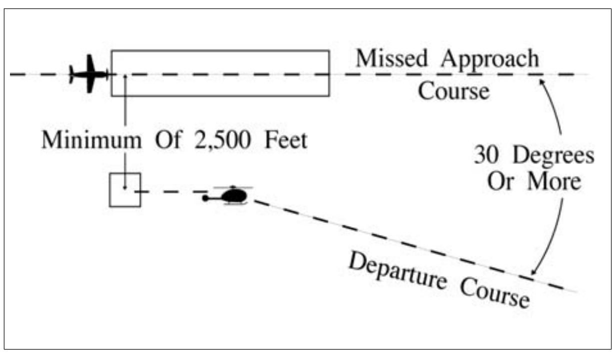


FIG 5−8−10
Parallel Thresholds are Even



b. When parallel runway thresholds are staggered and:

1. The arriving aircraft is approaching the nearer runway: the centerlines are at least 1,000 feet apart and the landing thresholds are staggered at least 500 feet for each 100 feet less than 2,500 the centerlines are separated. (See FIG 5−8−11 and FIG 5−8−12.)

FIG 5−8−11
Parallel Thresholds are Staggered

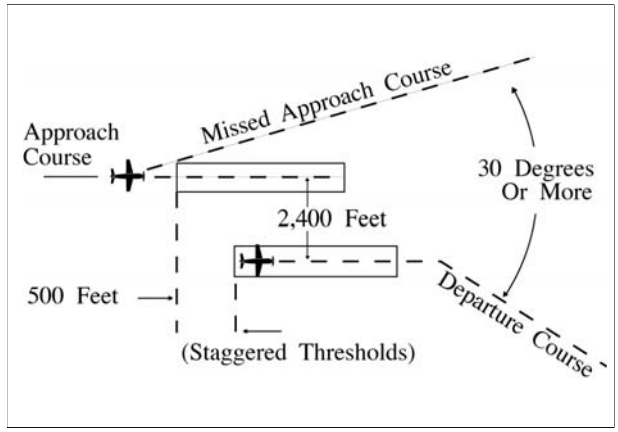
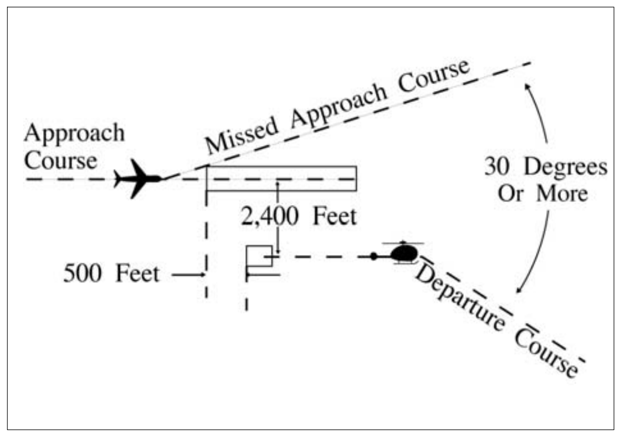


FIG 5−8−12
Parallel Thresholds are Staggered



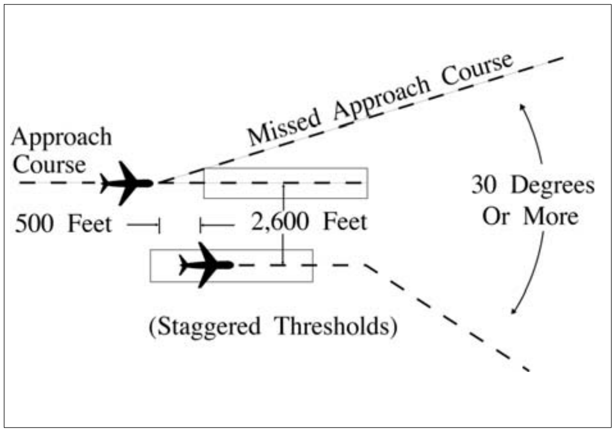
NOTE−
In the event of a missed approach by an aircraft requiring wake turbulence separation behind it, apply the procedures in Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations, ensure that the larger aircraft does not overtake or cross in front of an aircraft departing from the adjacent parallel runway.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph f.

2. The arriving aircraft is approaching the farther runway: the runway centerlines separation exceeds 2,500 feet by at least 100 feet for each

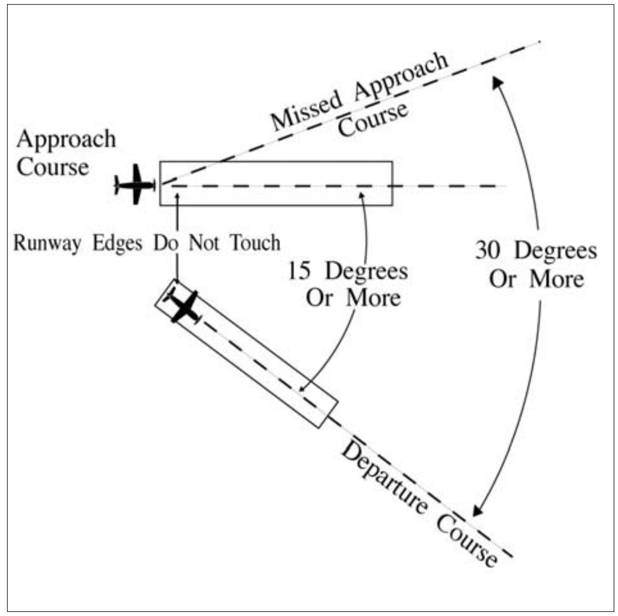
500 feet the landing thresholds are staggered. (See FIG 5−8−13.)

FIG 5−8−13
Parallel Thresholds are Staggered



c. When nonintersecting runways diverge by 15 degrees or more and runway edges do not touch. (See FIG 5−8−14.)

FIG 5−8−14
Diverging Nonintersecting Runways



d. When the aircraft on takeoff is a helicopter, hold the helicopter until visual separation is possible or apply the separation criteria in subparas a, b, or c.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−8−4, Departure and Arrival.

Section 9. Radar Arrivals

5−9−1. VECTORS TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE

Except as provided in para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach, vector arriving aircraft to intercept the final approach course:

a. At least 2 miles outside the approach gate unless one of the following exists:

1. When the reported ceiling is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA and the visibility is at least 3 miles (report may be a PIREP if no weather is reported for the airport), aircraft may be vectored to intercept the final approach course closer than 2 miles outside the approach gate but no closer than the approach gate.

2. If specifically requested by the pilot, aircraft may be vectored to intercept the final approach course inside the approach gate but no closer than the final approach fix.

EXCEPTION. Conditions 1 and 2 above do not apply to RNAV aircraft being vectored for a GPS or RNAV approach.

b. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation between aircraft on opposite base legs unless another form of approved separation is established during turn-on to final approach.

c. For a precision approach, at an altitude not above the glideslope/glidepath or below the minimum glideslope intercept altitude specified on the approach procedure chart.

d. For a nonprecision approach, at an altitude which will allow descent in accordance with the published procedure.

NOTE−
A pilot request for an "evaluation approach," or a "coupled approach," or use of a similar term, indicates the pilot desires the application of subparas a and b.

e. *EN ROUTE.* The following provisions are required before an aircraft may be vectored to the final approach course:

1. The approach gate and a line (solid or broken), depicting the final approach course starting at or passing through the approach gate and extending away from the airport, be displayed on the radar scope; for a precision approach, the line length must extend at least the maximum range of the localizer; for a nonprecision approach, the line length must extend at least 10NM outside the approach gate; and

2. The maximum range selected on the radar display is 150 NM; or

3. An adjacent radar display is set at 125 NM or less, configured for the approach in use, and is utilized for the vector to the final approach course.

4. If unable to comply with subparas 1, 2, or 3 above, issue the clearance in accordance with Para 4−8−1, Approach Clearance.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−1, Approach Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5−9−2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION

a. Assign headings that will permit final approach course interception on a track that does not exceed the interception angles specified in TBL 5−9−1.

TBL 5−9−1
Approach Course Interception Angle

Distance from interception point to approach gate	Maximum interception angle
Less than 2 miles or triple simultaneous approaches in use	20 degrees
2 miles or more	30 degrees (45 degrees for helicopters)

b. If deviations from the final approach course are observed after initial course interception, apply the following:

1. Outside the approach gate: apply procedures in accordance with subpara a, if necessary, vector the aircraft for another approach.

2. Inside the approach gate: inform the pilot of the aircraft's position and ask intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Ident) (distance) MILE(S) FROM THE AIRPORT, (distance) MILE(S) RIGHT/LEFT OF COURSE, SAY INTENTIONS.

NOTE−
The intent is to provide for a track course intercept angle judged by the controller to be no greater than specified by this procedure.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals, and Section 10, Radar Approaches− Terminal.

c. *EN ROUTE.* When using a radar scope range above 125 NM, the controller must solicit and receive a pilot report that the aircraft is established on the final approach course. If the pilot has not reported established by the final approach gate, inform the pilot of his/her observed position and ask intentions.

NOTE−
It may be difficult to accurately determine small distances when using very large range settings.

5−9−3. VECTORS ACROSS FINAL APPROACH COURSE

Inform the aircraft whenever a vector will take it across the final approach course and state the reason for such action.

NOTE−
In the event you are unable to so inform the aircraft, the pilot is not expected to turn inbound on the final approach course unless approach clearance has been issued.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT VECTORS ACROSS FINAL FOR (purpose).

EXAMPLE−
"EXPECT VECTORS ACROSS FINAL FOR SPACING."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5−9−4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS

Issue all of the following to an aircraft before it reaches the approach gate:

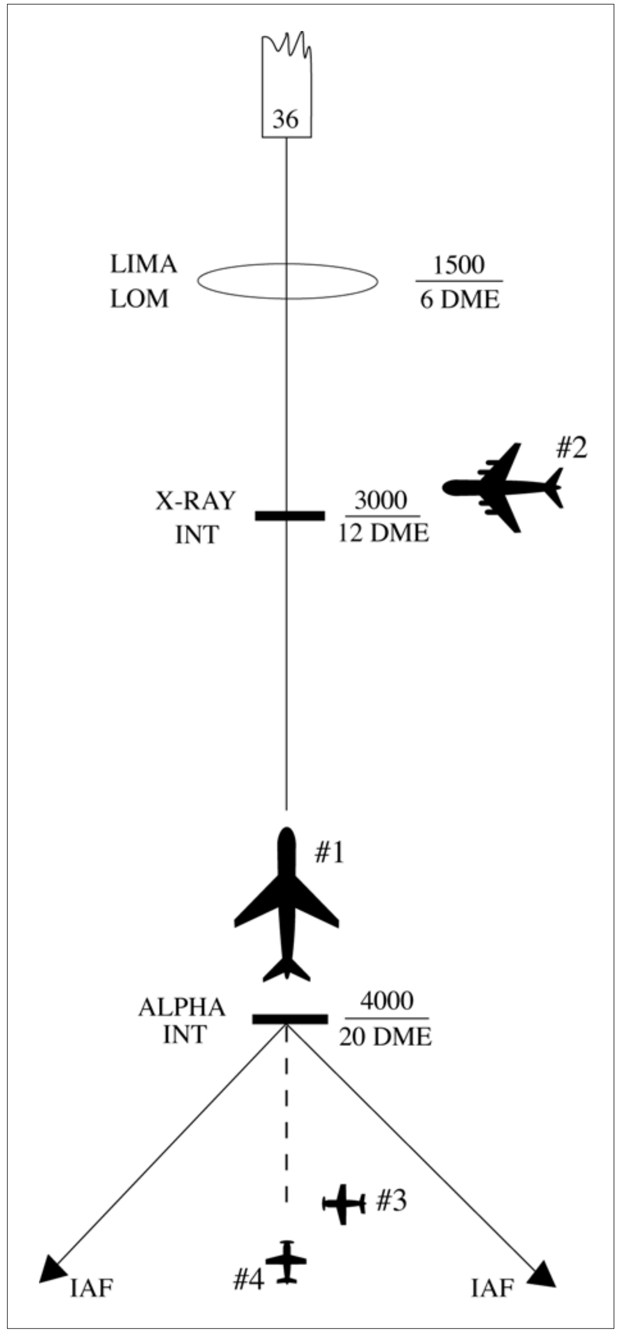
a. Position relative to a fix on the final approach course. If none is portrayed on the radar display or if none is prescribed in the procedure, issue position information relative to the navigation aid which provides final approach guidance or relative to the airport.

b. Vector to intercept the final approach course if required.

c. Approach clearance except when conducting a radar approach. Issue approach clearance only after the aircraft is:

1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or see FIG 5−9−1 Example 1.

FIG 5−9−1
Arrival Instructions



EXAMPLE−
1. *Aircraft 1 was vectored to the final approach course but clearance was withheld. It is now at 4,000 feet and established on a segment of the instrument approach procedure. "Seven miles from X-RAY. Cleared I–L–S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5−9−1.)*

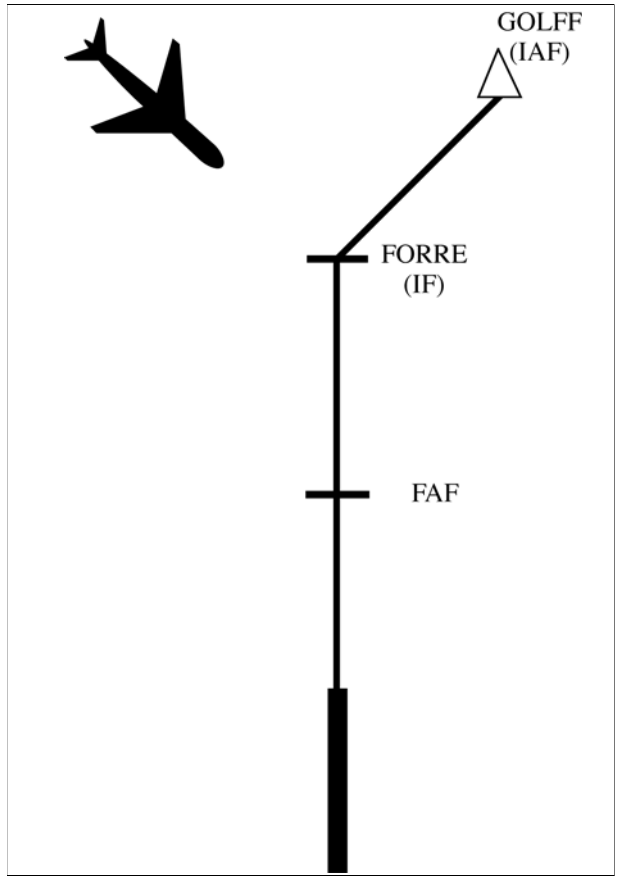
2. *Aircraft 2 is being vectored to a published segment of the final approach course, 4 miles from LIMA at 2,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 2,000 feet. "Four miles from LIMA. Turn right heading three four zero. Maintain two thousand until established on the localizer. Cleared I–L–S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5−9−1.)*

3. *Aircraft 3 is being vectored to intercept the final approach course beyond the approach segments, 5 miles from Alpha at 5,000 feet. the MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Five miles from Alpha. Turn right heading three three zero. Cross Alpha at or above four thousand. Cleared I–L–S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5−9−1.)*

4. *Aircraft 4 is established on the final approach course beyond the approach segments, 8 miles from Alpha at 6,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Eight miles from Alpha. Cross Alpha at or above four thousand. Cleared I–L–S runway three six approach." (See FIG 5−9−1.)*

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

FIG 5−9−2
Arrival Instructions



EXAMPLE−
The aircraft is being vectored to the intermediate fix FORRE for an RNAV approach. "Seven miles from FOORE, cleared direct FORRE, cross FORRE at or above four thousand, cleared RNAV runway one eight approach."

NOTE−
1. *The altitude assigned must assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.*

2. *If the altitude assignment is VFR-on-top, it is conceivable that the pilot may elect to remain high until arrival over the final approach fix which may require the pilot to circle to descend so as to cross the final approach fix at an altitude that would permit landing.*

3. *Aircraft being vectored to the intermediate fix in FIG 5−9−2 must meet all the provisions described in subpara 4−8−1h2.*

d. Instructions to do one of the following:

NOTE−
The principal purpose of this paragraph is to ensure that frequency changes are made prior to passing the final approach fix. However, at times it will be desirable to retain an aircraft on the approach control frequency to provide a single-frequency approach or other radar services. When this occurs, it will be necessary to relay tower clearances or instructions to preclude changing frequencies prior to landing or approach termination.

1. Monitor local control frequency, reporting to the tower when over the approach fix.

2. Contact the tower on local control frequency.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−8, Communications Release.

3. Contact the final controller on the appropriate frequency if radar service will be provided on final on a different frequency.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−8, Final Controller Changeover.

4. When radar is used to establish the final approach fix, inform the pilot that after being advised that he/she is over the fix he/she is to contact the tower on local control frequency.

EXAMPLE−
"Three miles from final approach fix. Turn left heading zero one zero. Maintain two thousand until established on the localizer. Cleared I−L−S runway three six approach. I will advise when over the fix."

"Over final approach fix. Contact tower one one eight point one."

NOTE−
ARSR may be used for establishment of initial approach and intermediate approach fixes only. ASR must be used to establish the final approach fix.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple.

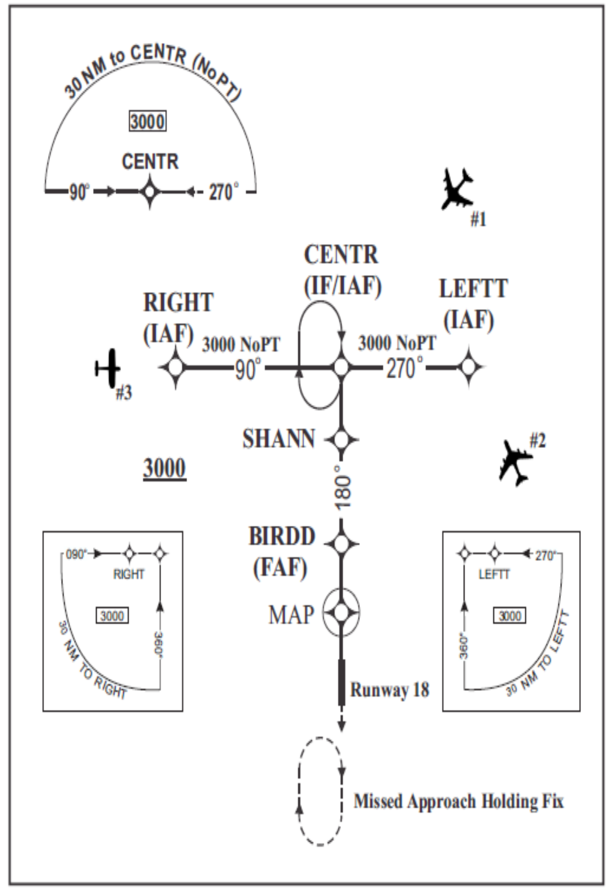
e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, inform the aircraft of its position relative to the appropriate IAF and issue the approach clearance. (See FIG 5−9−3.)

EXAMPLE−
1. *Aircraft 1: The aircraft is in the straight in area of the TAA. "Seven miles from CENTR, Cleared R−NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

2. *Aircraft 2: The aircraft is in the left base area of the TAA. "One five miles from LEFTT, Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

3. *Aircraft 3: The aircraft is in the right base area of the TAA. "Four miles from RIGHT, Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

FIG 5−9−3
Basic "T" Design



5−9−5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY

a. The radar controller performing the approach control function is responsible for separation of radar arrivals unless visual separation is provided by the tower, or a letter of agreement/facility directive authorizes otherwise. Radar final controllers ensure that established separation is maintained between aircraft under their control and other aircraft established on the same final approach course.

NOTE−
The radar controller may be a controller in an ARTCC, a terminal facility, or a tower controller when authorized to perform the approach control function in a terminal area.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−19, Wake Turbulence.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Section 5, Radar Separation, Para 5−5−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4, Minima.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−15, Authorization for Separation Services by Towers.

b. When timed approaches are being conducted, the radar controller must maintain the radar separation specified in Para 6−7−5, Interval Minima, until the aircraft is observed to have passed the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approaches) or the OM or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approaches) and is within 5 miles of the runway on the final approach course or until visual separation can be provided by the tower.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−6, Parallel Dependent Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence.

5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES

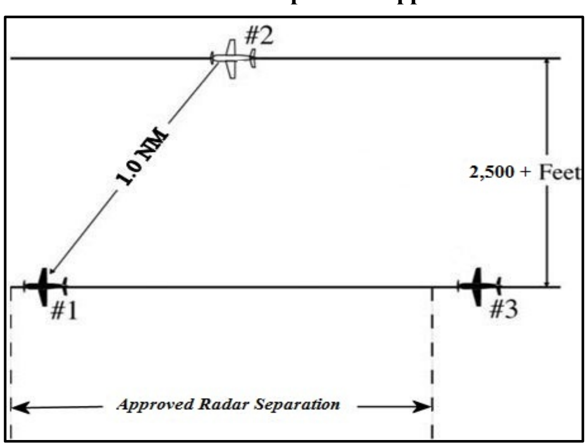
TERMINAL

a. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting simultaneous dependent approaches:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn on.

2. Provide a minimum of 1 mile radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet apart.

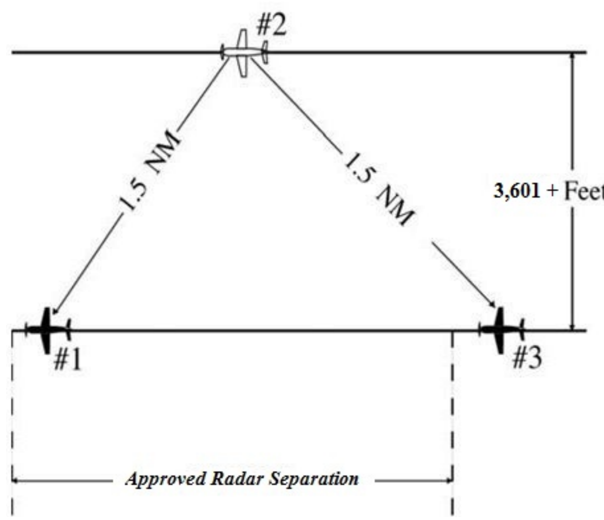
FIG 5−9−4
Simultaneous Dependent Approaches



EXAMPLE−
In FIG 5−9−4, Aircraft 2 is 1.0 mile from Aircraft 1. Approved radar separation must be maintained between Aircraft 1 and Aircraft 3.

3. Provide a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses when runway centerlines are more than 3,600 feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart.

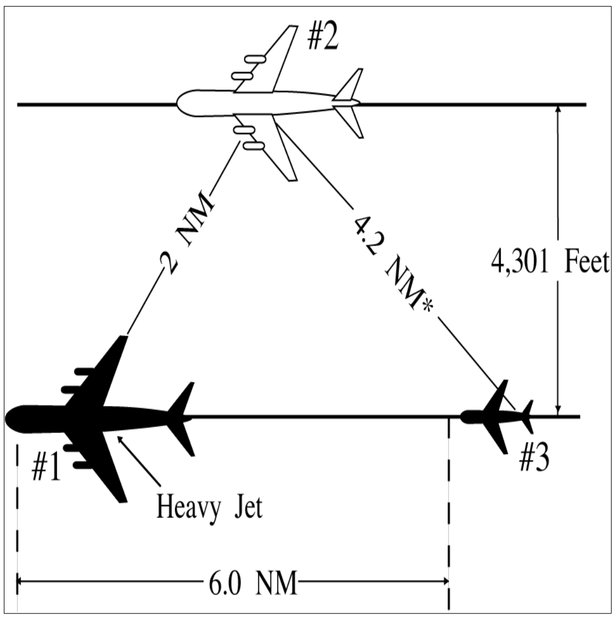
FIG 5−9−5
Simultaneous Dependent Approaches



EXAMPLE−
In FIG 5−9−5, Aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from Aircraft 1, and Aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from Aircraft 2. Approved radar separation must be maintained between aircraft on the same final.

4. Provide a minimum of 2 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses where runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart.

FIG 5−9−6
Simultaneous Dependent Approaches



EXAMPLE−
*In FIG 5−9−6, Aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy Aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from Aircraft 1. *The resultant separation between Aircraft 2 and 3 is at least 4.2 miles.*

5. Provide the minimum approved radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Section 5, Radar Separation, Para 5−5−4, Minima.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum radar separation on adjacent final approach courses allowed in subparagraph a:

NOTE−
1. *Simultaneous dependent approaches involving an RNAV approach may only be conducted when (GPS) appears in the approach title or a chart note states that GPS is required.*

2. *Simultaneous dependent approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches to adjacent runways.*

1. Apply this separation standard only after aircraft are established on the parallel final approach course.

2. Straight-in landings will be made.

3. Missed approach procedures do not conflict.

4. Aircraft are informed that approaches to both runways are in use. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

5. Approach control must have the interphone capability of communicating directly with the local controller at locations where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

NOTE−
The interphone capability is an integral part of this procedure when approach control has the sole separation responsibility.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5, Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−15, Authorization for Separation Services by Towers.

c. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight, such as surface wind direction and velocity, wind shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5−9−7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES− DUAL & TRIPLE

TERMINAL

a. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting simultaneous independent approaches:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach.

NOTE−
1. *During triple parallel approaches, no two aircraft will be assigned the same altitude during turn-on. All three aircraft will be assigned altitudes which differ by a minimum of 1,000 feet. Example: 3,000, 4,000, 5,000; 7,000, 8,000, 9,000.*

2. *Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency must be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.*

2. Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,600 feet apart, or dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart with a 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to either runway and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less.

NOTE–
Airport field elevation requirement does not apply to dual parallel runways that are 4,300 feet or more apart.

3. Triple parallel approaches may be conducted under one of the following conditions:

(a) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,900 feet apart and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less; or

(b) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart, a 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to both outside runways, and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less; or

(c) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart, a single 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to either outside runway while parallel approaches to the remaining two runways are separated by at least 3,900 feet, and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less.

4. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

b. A color digital display set to a 4 to 1 (4:1) aspect ratio (AR) with visual and aural alerts, such as the STARS final monitor aid (FMA), and a surveillance update rate at least 4.8 seconds must be used to monitor approaches where:

1. Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 and no more than 4,300 feet apart.

2. Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 but less than 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less.

3. Triple parallel approaches to airports where the airport field elevation is more than 2,000 feet MSL require use of the FMA system and an approved FAA aeronautical study.

NOTE–
FMA is not required to monitor the NTZ for runway centerlines greater than 4,300 feet for dual runways, and 5,000 feet or greater for triple operations.

c. FUSION must be discontinued on the FMA displays and set to a single-sensor, when conducting final monitoring activities.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–4 , Minima.

d. The following conditions must be met when conducting dual or triple simultaneous independent approaches:

NOTE–
Simultaneous independent approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-4-6, Simultaneous Approaches (Dependent/Independent)

1. Straight-in landings will be made.

2. All appropriate communication, navigation, and surveillance systems are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that simultaneous independent approaches are in use, or when runway centerlines are less than 4,300 feet PRM approaches are in use, prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) System.

4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE–
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

5. An NTZ at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and must be depicted on the monitor display. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.

6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.

NOTE–
1. *Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, must ensure aircraft do not penetrate the*

depicted NTZ. Facility directives must define responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

2. *The aircraft is considered the center of the primary radar return for that aircraft, or, if an FMA or other color final monitor aid is used, the center of the digitized target of that aircraft, for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ. The provisions of para 5−5−2, Target Separation, apply also.*

e. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Instruct the aircraft to return to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY−
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,
or
TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

2. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in your judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (right/left) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

3. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:

(a) Visual separation is applied.

(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.

(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required and contained in facility directives.

4. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

5. Do not apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for simultaneous independent approaches.

f. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous independent approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, windshear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−13 , Radar Service Termination.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2 , Final Approach Course Interception.

5−9−8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES −PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) APPROACHES

TERMINAL

a. PRM approaches may only be conducted when charted in the approach title, and where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.

REFERENCE−
P/CG- Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) System
P/CG-Simultaneous Close Parallel Approaches

b. PRM approaches must be assigned when conducting instrument approaches to dual and triple parallel runways with runway centerlines separated by less than 4,300 feet.

c. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel or offset final approach.

NOTE−
Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency must be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.

d. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4 , Minima.

e. The following conditions must be met when conducting dual and triple PRM approaches:

1. Straight-in landings will be made.

2. All appropriate communication, navigation, and surveillance systems are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that PRM approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE–
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

5. An NTZ at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and must be depicted on the monitor display. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.

6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.

7. Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, must ensure aircraft do not penetrate the depicted NTZ. Facility directives must define the responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

NOTE–
The aircraft is considered the center of the digitized target for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ.

f. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Provide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted final approach course centerline, and in your judgment is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft call sign) I SHOW YOU (left/right) OF THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

2. Instruct the aircraft to return immediately to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

or

TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in your judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

NOTE–
An instruction that may include a descent to avoid the deviating aircraft should only be used when there is no other reasonable option available to the controller. In such a case, the descent must not put the aircraft below the MVA.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (DEGREES), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

4. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:

(a) Visual separation is applied.

(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.

(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required, and contained in facility directives.

5. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

6. Do not apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for PRM approaches.

g. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when PRM approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, windshear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of the approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–13 , Radar Service Termination.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2 , Final Approach Course Interception.

5–9–9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)– HIGH UPDATE RADAR

TERMINAL

a. Simultaneous offset independent approaches (SOIA) may be conducted at FAA designated airports that have an authorization issued by the Director, Operations-Headquarters, AJT-2, in co-ordination with AFS with parallel runways that have centerlines separated by less than 3,000 feet with one final approach course offset by 2.5 to 3.0 degrees using a high update rate surveillance system with a 1.0−second radar update; and

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn−on to final approaches.

NOTE−
Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency must be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.

2. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

3. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between the trailing offset aircraft of a leading SOIA pair and the lead straight-in aircraft in the subsequent SOIA pair when the parallel runways have centerlines separated by less than 2,500 feet.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4 , Minima.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation between lead straight-in and offset trailing approaches with glideslope courses or vertical navigation authorized in subparagraph a above:

1. Straight−in landings will be made.

2. All appropriate communication, navigation, and surveillance systems are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that PRM approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE−
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

5. A No Transgression Zone (NTZ) at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and must be depicted on the monitor display. The NTZ begins prior to the point where adjacent inbound aircraft first lose vertical separation and extends to a point coincident with the location of the offset approach MAP. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.

6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.

7. Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, must ensure aircraft do not penetrate the depicted NTZ. Facility directives must define the responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course and the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between the trailing offset aircraft of a leading SOIA pair and the lead straight in aircraft in the subsequent SOIA pair when the parallel runways have centerlines separated by less than 2,500 feet.

NOTE−
The aircraft is considered the center of the digitized target for that aircraft for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ.

c. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Provide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted final approach course centerline, and in your judgment is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft call sign) I SHOW YOU (left/right) OF THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

2. Instruct the aircraft to return immediately to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn−on or continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY−
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

or

TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in your judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

NOTE−
An instruction that may include a descent to avoid the deviating aircraft should only be used when there is no other reasonable option available to the controller. In such a case, the descent must not put the aircraft below the MVA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (DEGREES), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

4. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:

(a) The lead straight in aircraft passes the end of the NTZ nearest the runway threshold.

(b) The trailing offset aircraft passes the end of the NTZ nearest the runway threshold and has reported the lead straight in aircraft in sight.

(c) The aircraft begins the visual segment of the approach.

5. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

6. Do not apply the provisions of paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for simultaneous approaches.

d. Advise the pilot of the trailing offset aircraft of traffic on the adjacent lead straight-in approach course, if that traffic will be a factor in the visual segment of the approach. The provisions of Paragraphs 7-2-1, Visual Separation, subparagraph a2**,** concerning visual separation between aircraft being provided by the tower must not be applied to aircraft conducting SOIAs.

NOTE−
Once advised, the pilot is authorized to continue past the offset approach MAP if all of the following conditions are met: The pilot has the straight-in approach traffic in sight and expects the traffic to remain in sight; the pilot advises ATC that the traffic is in sight; and the pilot has the runway environment in sight. Otherwise, it is the pilot's responsibility to execute a missed approach at the offset approach MAP.

e. Ensure that the trailing offset aircraft is positioned to facilitate the flight crew's ability to see the lead straight in traffic from the nominal clear-of-clouds point to the offset approach MAP so that the flight crew can remain separated from that traffic visually from the offset approach MAP to the runway threshold.

NOTE−
After accepting a clearance for an offset PRM approach, pilots must remain on the offset approach course until passing the offset approach MAP prior to alignment with the runway centerline. Between the offset approach MAP and the runway threshold, the pilot of the offset approach aircraft assumes visual separation responsibility from the aircraft on the straight-in approach, which means maneuvering the aircraft as necessary to avoid the straight in approach traffic until landing, and providing wake turbulence avoidance, if necessary.

f. In the visual segment between the offset approach MAP and the runway threshold, if the pilot of the trailing offset aircraft loses visual contact with the lead straight-in traffic, the pilot must advise ATC as soon as practical and follow the published missed approach procedure. If necessary, issue alternate missed approach instructions.

g. Wake turbulence requirements between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses inside the offset approach MAP are as follows (standard in-trail wake separation must be applied between aircraft on the same approach course):

1. When runways are at least 2,500 feet apart, there are no wake turbulence requirements between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses.

2. For runways less than 2,500 feet apart, whenever the ceiling is greater than or equal to 500 feet above the MVA, wake vortex spacing between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses need not be applied.

3. For runways less than 2,500 feet apart, whenever the ceiling is less than 500 feet above the MVA, wake vortex spacing between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses, as described in Para 5−5−4, Minima, must be applied unless acceptable mitigating techniques and operational procedures have been documented and verified by an AFS safety assessment and authorized by the Director, Operations-Headquarters, AJT-2. The wake turbulence mitigation techniques employed will be based on each airport's specific runway geometry and meteorological conditions and implemented through local facility directives.

4. Issue all applicable wake turbulence advisories.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 8260.49, Para 13.0, Wake Turbulence Requirements.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–4–6, Simultaneous Independent Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–20 , Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–4 , Minima.

h. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when conducting SOIA to parallel runways. Factors include but are not limited to wind direction/velocity, wind–shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of the approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–13 , Radar Service Termination.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2 , Final Approach Course Interception.

5–9–10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

a. Simultaneous independent approaches to widely-spaced parallel runways may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.

b. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting simultaneous independent approaches to runway centerlines that are separated by more than 9,000 feet with a field elevation at or below 5,000 feet MSL, or 9,200 feet between runway centerlines with a field elevation above 5,000 feet MSL:

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft:

(a) during turn-on to parallel final approach, or

(b) conducting an RNAV (RNP) approach that contains a Radius-to-Fix (RF) leg and an aircraft conducting a straight-in ILS/RNAV with vertical guidance/GLS or another RNAV (RNP) approach with an RF leg until both aircraft are established on their respective approach procedures. Ensure dual RNAV (RNP) approaches that contain RF legs are limited to aircraft approaching from opposite downwinds or base legs and all approach pairings must be conducted so that the approach courses do not overlap.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Paragraph 10-4-7, Simultaneous Widely-Spaced Parallel Operations

2. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, para 5-5-4, Minima.

c. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on widely–spaced parallel courses allowed in subpara b:

1. Straight-in landings will be made.

2. The approach system, radar, and appropriate frequencies are operating normally.

3. Inform aircraft that simultaneous approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

4. Clear an aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.

NOTE–
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

5. Separate final and local controllers are required for each final. Aircraft on the final must be on the appropriate final controller frequency for that runway.

6. Transfer of communication and monitor responsibility to the tower controller's frequency must be specified in a facility directive and/or Letter of Agreement.

d. The following procedures must be used by the final approach controllers:

NOTE–
There is no requirement for establishment of a NTZ.

1. Instruct the aircraft to return to the correct final approach course when that aircraft is observed to overshoot the turn-on or continue on a track which deviates from the final approach course in the direction of the adjacent approach course.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,

or

TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

2. Instruct aircraft on adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed, or in the controller's judgment, has deviated from the final approach course in the direction of the adjacent approach course.

PHRASEOLOGY−

TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude)

3. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.

e. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.

REFERENCE−

FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5−9−11. TRANSITIONAL PROCEDURE

When aircraft are conducting simultaneous dependent, independent, or any approaches allowing for reduced separation, and one of the aircraft executes a go-around or has its approach clearance terminated and prior to losing the approved reduced separation, control instructions must be expeditiously issued to increase separation between the applicable aircraft. These control instructions must establish approved separation (for example, altitude and/or lateral separation via divergence). In addition, wake turbulence cautionary advisories must be issued in accordance with FAAO JO 7110.65, Paragraph 2-1-20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.

Section 10. Radar Approaches− Terminal

5−10−1. APPLICATION

a. Provide radar approaches in accordance with standard or special instrument approach procedures.

b. A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to aircraft in distress regardless of weather conditions or to expedite traffic.

NOTE−
Acceptance of a radar approach by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minima for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The pilot is responsible for determining if the approach and landing are authorized under the existing weather minima.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−2. APPROACH INFORMATION

a. Issue the following information to an aircraft that will conduct a radar approach. Current approach information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS broadcast code. All items listed below, except for subpara 3 may be omitted after the first approach if repeated approaches are made and no change has occurred. Transmissions with aircraft in this phase of the approach should occur approximately every minute.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−10, Approach Information.

1. Altimeter setting.

2. If available, ceiling and visibility if the ceiling at the airport of intended landing is reported below 1,000 feet or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or if the visibility is less than 3 miles. Advise pilots when weather information is available via the Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)/Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS) and, if requested, issue the appropriate frequency.

NOTE−
Automated weather observing systems may be set to provide one minute updates. This one minute data may be useful to the pilot for possible weather trends. Controllers provide service based solely on official weather, i.e., hourly and special observations.

3. Issue any known changes classified as special weather observations as soon as possible. Special weather observations need not be issued after they are included in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS broadcast code.

4. Pertinent information on known airport conditions if they are considered necessary to the safe operation of the aircraft concerned.

5. Lost communication procedures as specified in para 5−10−4, Lost Communications.

b. Before starting final approach:

NOTE−
1. *ASR approach procedures may be prescribed for specific runways, for an airport/heliport, and for helicopters only to a "point-in-space," i.e., a MAP from which a helicopter must be able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.*

2. *Occasionally, helicopter PAR approaches are available to runways where conventional PAR approaches have been established. In those instances where the two PAR approaches serve the same runway, the helicopter approach will have a steeper glide slope and a lower decision height. By the controllers designating the approach to be flown, the helicopter pilot understands which of the two approaches he/she has been vectored for and which set of minima apply.*

1. Inform the aircraft of the type of approach, runway, airport, heliport, or other point, as appropriate, to which the approach will be made. Specify the airport name when the approach is to a secondary airport.

PHRASEOLOGY−
THIS WILL BE A P−A−R/SURVEILLANCE APPROACH TO:

RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT, RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

THIS WILL BE A COPTER P−A−R APPROACH TO:

RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT, RUNWAY (runway number),

or

(airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

2. For surveillance approaches, specify the location of the MAP in relation to the runway/airport/heliport.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MISSED APPROACH POINT IS (distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/HELIPORT,

or for a point-in-space approach,

A MISSED APPROACH POINT (distance) MILE(S) (direction from landing area) OF (airport name) AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

EXAMPLE−
Helicopter point-in-space approach:

"Army copter Zulu Two, this will be a surveillance approach to a missed approach point, three point five miles south of Creedon Heliport."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

c. Inform an aircraft making an approach to an airport not served by a tower that no traffic or landing runway information is available for that airport.

PHRASEOLOGY−
NO TRAFFIC OR LANDING RUNWAY INFORMATION AVAILABLE FOR THE AIRPORT.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−7−2, Altimeter Setting Issuance Below Lowest Usable FL.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.

5−10−3. NO-GYRO APPROACH

When an aircraft will make a no-gyro surveillance or a PAR approach:

a. Before issuing a vector, inform the aircraft of the type of approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
THIS WILL BE A NO-GYRO SURVEILLANCE/P−A−R APPROACH.

b. Instruct the aircraft when to start and stop turn.

PHRASEOLOGY−
TURN LEFT/RIGHT. STOP TURN.

c. After turn on to final approach has been made and prior to the aircraft reaching the approach gate, instruct the aircraft to make half-standard rate turns.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAKE HALF-STANDARD RATE TURNS.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−4. LOST COMMUNICATIONS

When weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach, take the following action as soon as possible after establishing radar identification and radio communications (may be omitted after the first approach when successive approaches are made and the instructions remain the same):

NOTE−
Air traffic control facilities at U.S. Army and U.S. Air Force installations are not required to transmit lost communications instructions to military aircraft. All military facilities will issue specific lost communications instructions to civil aircraft when required.

a. If lost communications instructions will require the aircraft to fly on an unpublished route, issue an appropriate altitude to the pilot. If the lost communications instructions are the same for both pattern and final, the pattern/vector controller must issue both. Advise the pilot that if radio communications are lost for a specified time interval (not more than 1 minute) on vector to final approach, 15 seconds on a surveillance final approach, or 5 seconds on a PAR final approach to:

1. Attempt contact on a secondary or a tower frequency.

2. Proceed in accordance with visual flight rules if possible.

3. Proceed with an approved nonradar approach, or execute the specific lost communications procedure for the radar approach being used.

NOTE−
The approved procedures are those published on the FAA Forms 8260 or applicable military document.

PHRASEOLOGY−
IF NO TRANSMISSIONS ARE RECEIVED FOR (time interval) IN THE PATTERN OR FIVE/FIFTEEN SECONDS ON FINAL APPROACH, ATTEMPT CONTACT ON (frequency), AND

if the possibility exists,

PROCEED VFR. IF UNABLE:

if approved,

PROCEED WITH (nonradar approach), MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL ESTABLISHED ON/OVER FIX/ NAVAID/APPROACH PROCEDURE,

or

(alternative instructions).

PHRASEOLOGY−
USN. *For ACLS operations using Mode I, IA, and II,*

IF NO TRANSMISSIONS ARE RECEIVED FOR FIVE SECONDS AFTER LOSS OF DATA LINK, ATTEMPT CONTACT ON (frequency), AND

if the possibility exists,

PROCEED VFR. IF UNABLE:

if approved,

PROCEED WITH (nonradar approach), MAINTAIN (altitude) UNTIL ESTABLISHED ON/OVER FIX/ NAVAID/APPROACH PROCEDURE,

or

(alternative instructions).

b. If the final approach lost communications instructions are changed, differ from those for the pattern, or are not issued by the pattern controller, they must be issued by the final controller.

c. If the pilot states that he/she cannot accept a lost communications procedure due to weather conditions or other reasons, request the pilot's intention.

NOTE−
The pilot is responsible for determining the adequacy of lost communications procedures with respect to aircraft performance, equipment capability, or reported weather.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−2, Approach Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−5. RADAR CONTACT LOST

If radar contact is lost during an approach and the aircraft has not started final approach, clear the aircraft to an appropriate NAVAID/fix for an instrument approach.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−14, Final Approach Abnormalities.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−6. LANDING CHECK

USA/USN. Advise the pilot to perform landing check while the aircraft is on downwind leg and in time to complete it before turning base leg. If an incomplete pattern is used, issue this before handoff to the final controller for a PAR approach, or before starting descent on final approach for surveillance approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
PERFORM LANDING CHECK.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−7. POSITION INFORMATION

Inform the aircraft of its position at least once before starting final approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Number) MILES (direction) OF (airport name) AIRPORT,

or

(number) MILES (direction) OF (airport name) AIRPORT ON DOWNWIND/BASE LEG.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−8. FINAL CONTROLLER CHANGEOVER

When instructing the aircraft to change frequency for final approach guidance, include the name of the facility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CONTACT (name of facility) FINAL CONTROLLER ON (frequency).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–17, Radio Communications Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–4, Arrival Instructions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5–10–9. COMMUNICATIONS CHECK

On initial contact with the final controller, ask the aircraft for a communication check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft call sign), (name of facility) FINAL CONTROLLER. HOW DO YOU HEAR ME?

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5–10–10. TRANSMISSION ACKNOWLEDGMENT

After contact has been established with the final controller and while on the final approach course, instruct the aircraft not to acknowledge further transmissions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DO NOT ACKNOWLEDGE FURTHER TRANSMISSIONS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5–10–11. MISSED APPROACH

Before an aircraft starts final descent for a full stop landing and weather reports indicate that any portion of the final approach will be conducted in IFR conditions, issue a specific missed approach procedure approved for the radar approach being conducted.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOUR MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE IS (missed approach procedure).

NOTE–
1. *The specific missed approach procedure is published on FAA Form 8260−4 or applicable military document.*

2. ***USAF.*** *At locations where missed approach instructions are published in base flying regulations, controllers need not issue missed approach instructions to locally assigned/attached aircraft.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5–10–12. LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO

Before an aircraft which plans to execute a low approach or touch-and-go begins final descent, issue appropriate departure instructions to be followed upon completion of the approach. Climb-out instructions must include a specific heading and altitude except when the aircraft will maintain VFR and contact the tower.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AFTER COMPLETING LOW APPROACH/TOUCH AND GO:

CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

TURN (right or left) HEADING (degrees)/FLY RUNWAY HEADING,

or

MAINTAIN VFR, CONTACT TOWER,

or

(other instructions as appropriate).

NOTE–
This may be omitted after the first approach if instructions remain the same.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5–10–13. TOWER CLEARANCE

a. When an aircraft is on final approach to an airport served by a tower, obtain a clearance to land, touch-and-go, or make low approach. Issue the clearance and the surface wind to the aircraft.

b. If the clearance is not obtained or is canceled, inform the aircraft and issue alternative instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TOWER CLEARANCE CANCELED/NOT RECEIVED (alternative instructions).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−14. FINAL APPROACH ABNORMALITIES

Instruct the aircraft if runway environment not in sight, execute a missed approach if previously given; or climb to or maintain a specified altitude and fly a specified course whenever the completion of a safe approach is questionable because one or more of the following conditions exists. The conditions in subparas a, b, and c do not apply after the aircraft passes decision height on a PAR approach.

EXAMPLE−
Typical reasons for issuing missed approach instructions:
"Radar contact lost."
"Too high/low for safe approach."
"Too far right/left for safe approach."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−7, Position Advisories.

a. Safety limits are exceeded or radical target deviations are observed.

b. Position or identification of the aircraft is in doubt.

c. Radar contact is lost or a malfunctioning radar is suspected.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Reason) IF RUNWAY/APPROACH LIGHTS/RUNWAY LIGHTS NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(alternative instructions).

NOTE−
If the pilot requests, approval may be granted to proceed with the approach via ILS or another navigational aid/approach aid.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−5, Radar Contact Lost.

d. Airport conditions or traffic preclude approach completion.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(alternative instructions), (reason).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

5−10−15. MILITARY SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACHES

a. Utilize single frequency approach procedures as contained in a letter of agreement.

b. Do not require a frequency change from aircraft on a single frequency approach after the approach has begun unless:

1. Landing or low approach has been completed.

2. The aircraft is in visual flight rules (VFR) conditions during daylight hours.

3. The pilot requests the frequency change.

4. An emergency situation exists.

5. The aircraft is cleared for a visual approach.

6. The pilot cancels instrument flight rules (IFR).

c. Accomplish the following steps to complete communications transfer on single frequency approaches after completion of a handoff:

1. Transferring controller: Position transmitter selectors to preclude further transmissions on the special use frequencies.

2. Receiving controller: Position transmitter and receiver selectors to enable communications on the special use frequencies.

3. Do not require or expect the flight to check on frequency unless an actual frequency change is transmitted to the pilot.

Section 11. Surveillance Approaches− Terminal

5−11−1. ALTITUDE INFORMATION

Provide recommended altitudes on final approach if the pilot requests. If recommended altitudes are requested, inform the pilot that recommended altitudes which are at or above the published MDA will be given for each mile on final.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−5−7, Recommended Altitudes for Surveillance Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−11−5, Final Approach Guidance.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RECOMMENDED ALTITUDES WILL BE PROVIDED FOR EACH MILE ON FINAL TO MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE/CIRCLING MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

5−11−2. VISUAL REFERENCE REPORT

Aircraft may be requested to report the runway, approach/runway lights, or airport in sight. Helicopters making a "point-in-space" approach may be requested to report when able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT (runway, approach/runway lights or airport) IN SIGHT.

REPORT WHEN ABLE TO PROCEED VISUALLY TO AIRPORT/HELIPORT.

5−11−3. DESCENT NOTIFICATION

a. Issue advance notice of where descent will begin and issue the straight-in MDA prior to issuing final descent for the approaches.

NOTE−
The point at which descent to the minimum descent altitude is authorized is the final approach fix unless an altitude limiting stepdown-fix is prescribed.

b. When it is determined that the surveillance approach will terminate in a circle to land maneuver, request the aircraft approach category from the pilot. After receiving the aircraft approach category, provide him/her with the applicable circling MDA prior to issuing final descent for the approach.

NOTE−
Pilots are normally expected to furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller when it is determined that the surveillance approach will terminate in a circle to land maneuver. If this information is not voluntarily given, solicit the aircraft approach category from the pilot, and then issue him/her the applicable circling MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
PREPARE TO DESCEND IN (number) MILE(S).

for straight-in approaches,

MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (altitude).

for circling approaches,

REQUEST YOUR AIRCRAFT APPROACH CATEGORY. (Upon receipt of aircraft approach category), PUBLISHED CIRCLING MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (altitude).

5−11−4. DESCENT INSTRUCTIONS

When an aircraft reaches the descent point, issue one of the following as appropriate:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−10, Elevation Failure.

a. Unless a descent restriction exists, advise the aircraft to descend to the MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Number) MILES FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/ HELIPORT. DESCEND TO YOUR MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

b. When a descent restriction exists, specify the prescribed restriction altitude. When the aircraft has passed the altitude limiting point, advise to continue descent to MDA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Number) MILES FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/ HELIPORT. DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (restriction altitude).

DESCEND TO YOUR MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.

5−11−5. FINAL APPROACH GUIDANCE

a. Issue course guidance, inform the aircraft when it is on course, and frequently inform the aircraft of any deviation from course. Transmissions with aircraft on surveillance final approach should occur approximately every 15 seconds.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HEADING (heading),

ON COURSE,

or

SLIGHTLY/WELL LEFT/RIGHT OF COURSE.

NOTE−
Controllers should not key the radio transmitter continuously during radar approaches to preclude a lengthy communications block. The decision on how often transmitters are unkeyed is the controller's prerogative.

b. Issue trend information, as required, to indicate target position with respect to the extended runway centerline and to describe the target movement as appropriate corrections are issued. Trend information may be modified by the terms "RAPIDLY" and "SLOWLY" as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
"Going left/right of course."
"Left/right of course and holding/correcting."

c. Inform the aircraft of its distance from the runway, airport/heliport, or MAP, as appropriate, each mile on final.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Number) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/ HELIPORT OR MISSED APPROACH POINT.

d. Recommended altitudes must be furnished, if requested, in accordance with para 5−11−1, Altitude Information.

PHRASEOLOGY−
If requested,

ALTITUDE SHOULD BE (altitude).

5−11−6. APPROACH GUIDANCE TERMINATION

a. Discontinue surveillance approach guidance when:

1. Requested by the pilot.

2. In your opinion, continuation of a safe approach to the MAP is questionable.

3. The aircraft is over the MAP.

b. Surveillance approach guidance may be discontinued when the pilot reports the runway or approach/runway lights in sight or if a "point-in-space" approach, he/she reports able to proceed to the landing area by visual reference to a prescribed surface route.

c. When approach guidance is discontinued in accordance with subpara a and the aircraft has reported the runway or approach/runway lights in sight, advise the aircraft of its position and to proceed visually.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY/AIRPORT/ HELIPORT,

or

OVER MISSED APPROACH POINT.

PROCEED VISUALLY (additional instructions/clearance as required.)

d. When approach guidance is discontinued in accordance with subpara a above and the aircraft has not reported the runway or approach/runway lights in sight, advise the aircraft of its position and to execute a missed approach unless the runway or approach/ runway lights are in sight or, if a "point-in-space" approach, unless able to proceed visually.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Distance) MILE(S) FROM RUNWAY,

or

OVER MISSED APPROACH POINT.
IF RUNWAY,

or

APPROACH/RUNWAY LIGHTS NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(missed approach instructions). (Additional instructions/clearance, as required.)

(Distance and direction) FROM AIRPORT/HELIPORT/ MISSED APPROACH POINT.

IF UNABLE TO PROCEED VISUALLY, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH. (Additional instructions/clearance, if required.)

NOTE−
Terminal instrument approach procedures and flight inspection criteria require establishment of a MAP for each procedure including the point to which satisfactory radar guidance can be provided.

Section 12. PAR Approaches− Terminal

5−12−1. GLIDEPATH NOTIFICATION

Inform the aircraft when it is approaching glidepath (approximately 10 to 30 seconds before final descent).

PHRASEOLOGY−
APPROACHING GLIDEPATH.

5−12−2. DECISION HEIGHT (DH) NOTIFICATION

Provide the DH to any pilot who requests it.

PHRASEOLOGY−
DECISION HEIGHT (number of feet).

5−12−3. DESCENT INSTRUCTION

When an aircraft reaches the point where final descent is to start, instruct it to begin descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
BEGIN DESCENT.

5−12−4. GLIDEPATH AND COURSE INFORMATION

a. Issue course guidance and inform the aircraft when it is on glidepath and on course, and frequently inform the aircraft of any deviation from glidepath or course. Transmissions with aircraft on precision final approach should occur approximately every 5 seconds.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HEADING (heading).

ON GLIDEPATH.

ON COURSE,

or

SLIGHTLY/WELL ABOVE/BELOW GLIDEPATH.

SLIGHTLY/WELL LEFT/RIGHT OF COURSE.

NOTE−
Controllers should not key the radio transmitter continuously during radar approaches to preclude a lengthy communications block. The decision on how often transmitters are unkeyed is the controller's prerogative.

b. Issue trend information as required, to indicate target position with respect to the azimuth and elevation cursors and to describe target movement as appropriate corrections are issued. Trend information may be modified by the terms "RAPIDLY" or "SLOWLY," as appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
"Going above/below glidepath."
"Going right/left of course."
"Above/below glidepath and coming down/up."
"Above/below glidepath and holding."
"Left/right of course and holding/correcting."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−7, Position Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−13−3, Monitor Information.

5−12−5. DISTANCE FROM TOUCHDOWN

Inform the aircraft of its distance from touchdown at least once each mile on final approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Number of miles) MILES FROM TOUCHDOWN.

5−12−6. DECISION HEIGHT

Inform the aircraft when it reaches the published decision height.

PHRASEOLOGY−
AT DECISION HEIGHT.

5−12−7. POSITION ADVISORIES

a. Continue to provide glidepath and course information prescribed in para 5−12−4, Glidepath and Course Information, subparas a and b, until the aircraft passes over threshold.

NOTE−
Glidepath and course information provided below decision height is advisory only. 14 CFR Section 91.175 outlines pilot responsibilities for descent below decision height.

b. Inform the aircraft when it is passing over the approach lights.

PHRASEOLOGY−
OVER APPROACH LIGHTS.

c. Inform the aircraft when it is passing over the landing threshold and inform it of its position with respect to the final approach course.

PHRASEOLOGY−
OVER LANDING THRESHOLD, (position with respect to course).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−14, Final Approach Abnormalities.

5−12−8. APPROACH GUIDANCE TERMINATION

a. Discontinue precision approach guidance when:

1. Requested by the pilot.

2. In your opinion, continuation of a safe approach to the landing threshold is questionable.

3. The aircraft passes over landing threshold.

4. The pilot reports the runway/approach lights in sight and requests to or advises that he/she will proceed visually.

NOTE−
A pilot's report of "runway in sight" or "visual" is not a request to proceed visually.

b. When precision approach guidance is discontinued in accordance with subpara a, advise the aircraft of its position and to proceed visually.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Distance) MILE(S) FROM TOUCHDOWN, PROCEED VISUALLY (additional instructions/clearance as required).

c. After a pilot has reported the runway/approach lights in sight and requested to or advised that he/she will proceed visually, and has been instructed to proceed visually, all PAR approach procedures must be discontinued.

d. Continue to monitor final approach and frequency. Pilots must remain on final controller's frequency until touchdown or otherwise instructed.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−14, Final Approach Abnormalities.

5−12−9. COMMUNICATION TRANSFER

Issue communications transfer instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CONTACT (terminal control function) (frequency, if required) AFTER LANDING.

NOTE−
Communications transfer instructions should be delayed slightly until the aircraft is on the landing roll-out to preclude diversion of the pilot's attention during transition and touchdown.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−17, Radio Communications Transfer.

5−12−10. ELEVATION FAILURE

a. If the elevation portion of PAR equipment fails during a precision approach:

1. Discontinue PAR instructions and tell the aircraft to take over visually or if unable, to execute a missed approach. If the aircraft executes a missed approach, apply subpara 2 below.

PHRASEOLOGY−
NO GLIDEPATH INFORMATION AVAILABLE. IF RUNWAY, APPROACH/RUNWAY LIGHTS, NOT IN SIGHT, EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH/(alternative instructions).

2. If a surveillance approach, ASR or PAR without glide slope, is established for the same runway, inform the aircraft that a surveillance approach can be given. Use ASR or the azimuth portion of the PAR to conduct the approach and apply Chapter 5, Radar, Section 11, Surveillance Approaches− Terminal. When the PAR azimuth is used, inform the pilot that mileage information will be from touchdown, and at those runways where specific minima have been established for PAR without glideslope, inform the pilot that the PAR azimuth will be used for the approach.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Approach information when PAR azimuth used:*
"This will be a surveillance approach to runway three six. Mileages will be from touchdown."
or
"This will be a surveillance approach to runway three six using P−A−R azimuth. Mileages will be from touchdown."

2. *Descent Instructions:*
"Five miles from touchdown, descend to your minimum descent altitude/minimum altitude."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−10−2, Approach Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−11−4, Descent Instructions.

b. If the elevation portion of the PAR equipment is inoperative before starting a precision approach, apply subpara a2.

5−12−11. SURVEILLANCE UNUSABLE

PAR approaches may be conducted when the ASR is unusable provided a nonradar instrument approach will position the aircraft over a navigational aid or DME fix within the precision radar coverage, or an adjacent radar facility can provide a direct radar handoff to the PAR controller.

NOTE−
The display of the NAVAID or DME fix in accordance with para 5−3−2, Primary Radar Identification Methods, is not required provided the NAVAID or DME fix can be correlated on a PAR scope.

Section 13. Use of PAR for Approach Monitoring− Terminal

5−13−1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT

USAF not applicable. Aircraft conducting precision or nonprecision approaches must be monitored by PAR equipment if the PAR final approach course coincides with the NAVAID final approach course from the final approach fix to the runway and one of the following conditions exists:

NOTE−
1. *The provisions of this section do not apply to monitoring simultaneous approaches.*

2. *This procedure is used in PAR facilities operated by the FAA and other military services at joint-use civil/military locations and military installations during the operational hours of the PAR.*

a. The reported weather is below basic VFR minima.

b. ***USA Not applicable.*** At night.

c. Upon request of the pilot.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple.

5−13−2. MONITOR AVAILABILITY

a. Inform the aircraft of the frequency on which monitoring information will be transmitted if it will not be the same as the communication frequency used for the approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RADAR MONITORING ON LOCALIZER VOICE (frequency),

and if applicable,

CONTACT (terminal control function) (frequency, if required) AFTER LANDING.

b. If the approach is not monitored, inform the aircraft that radar monitoring is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RADAR MONITORING NOT AVAILABLE.

c. If conditions prevent continued monitor after the aircraft is on final approach, advise the pilot. State the reason and issue alternate procedures as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Reason), RADAR MONITORING NOT AVAILABLE, (alternative instructions).

NOTE−
Approach monitoring is a vital service, but during the approach, the controller acts primarily as a safety observer and does not actually guide the aircraft. Loss of the radar monitoring capability (and thus availability) is no reason to terminate an otherwise good instrument approach. Advise the pilot that radar contact has been lost (or other reason as appropriate), that radar monitoring is not available, and of actions for the pilot to take in either proceeding with or breaking off the approach; i.e., contact tower, remain on PAR frequency, etc.

5−13−3. MONITOR INFORMATION

When approaches are monitored, take the following action:

a. Advise the pilot executing a nonprecision approach that glidepath advisories are not provided. Do this prior to the pilot beginning the final descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
GLIDEPATH ADVISORIES WILL NOT BE PROVIDED.

b. Inform the aircraft when passing the final approach fix (nonprecision approaches) or when passing the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approaches).

PHRASEOLOGY−
PASSING (FIX).

c. Advise the pilot of glidepath trend information (precision approaches) and course trend information to indicate target position and movement with respect to the elevation or azimuth cursor when the aircraft target corresponds to a position of well above/below the glidepath or well left/right of course and whenever the aircraft exceeds the radar safety limits. Repeat if no correction is observed.

EXAMPLE−
Course trend information:
"(Ident), well right/left of P−A−R course, drifting further right/left."

Glidepath trend information:
"(Ident), well above/below P−A−R glidepath."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−12−4, Glidepath and Course Information.

d. If, after repeated advisories, the aircraft is observed proceeding outside the safety limits or a radical target deviation is observed, advise the aircraft if unable to proceed visually, to execute a missed approach. Issue a specific altitude and heading if a procedure other than the published missed approach is to be executed.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Position with respect to course or glidepath). IF NOT VISUAL, ADVISE YOU EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH (alternative instructions).

e. Provide monitor information until the aircraft is over the landing threshold or commences a circling approach.

Section 14. Automation− En Route

5−14−1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT

a. When a CA or MCI alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the alert without delay and take appropriate action.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−6, Safety Alert.

b. If another controller is involved in the alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.

c. Suppressing/Inhibiting CA/MCI alert.

1. The controller may suppress the display of a CA/MCI alert from a control position with the application of one of the following suppress/inhibit computer functions:

(a) The Conflict Suppress (CO) function may be used to suppress the CA/MCI display between specific aircraft for a specific alert.

NOTE−
See NAS−MD−678 for the EARTS conflict suppress message.

(b) The Group Suppression (SG) function must be applied exclusively to inhibit the displaying of alerts among military aircraft engaged in special military operations where standard en route separation criteria does not apply.

NOTE−
Special military operations where the SG function would typically apply involve those activities where military aircraft routinely operate in proximities to each other that are less than standard en route separation criteria; i.e., air refueling operations, ADC practice intercept operations, etc.

2. The computer entry of a message suppressing a CA/MCI alert constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.

3. The CA/MCI alert may not be suppressed or inhibited at or for another control position without being coordinated.

5−14−2. EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (E-MSAW)

a. When an E-MSAW alert is displayed, immediately analyze the situation and take the appropriate action to resolve the alert.

NOTE−
Caution should be exercised when issuing a clearance to an aircraft in reaction to an E-MSAW alert to ensure that adjacent MIA areas are not a factor.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−6, Safety Alert.

b. The controller may suppress the display of an E-MSAW alert from his/her control position with the application of one of the following suppress/inhibit computer functions:

1. The specific alert suppression message may be used to inhibit the E-MSAW alerting display on a single flight for a specific alert.

2. The indefinite alert suppression message must be used exclusively to inhibit the display of E-MSAW alerts on aircraft known to be flying at an altitude that will activate the alert feature of one or more MIA areas within an ARTCC.

NOTE−
1. *The indefinite alert suppression message will remain in effect for the duration of the referenced flight's active status within the ARTCC unless modified by controller action.*

2. *The indefinite alert suppression message would typically apply to military flights with clearance to fly low-level type routes that routinely require altitudes below established minimum IFR altitudes.*

c. The computer entry of a message suppressing or inhibiting E-MSAW alerts constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and indicates that appropriate action has or will be taken to resolve the situation.

5−14−3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION

a. Altitude

1. The altitude field(s) of the data block must always reflect the current status of the aircraft unless otherwise specified in an appropriate facility directive.

NOTE−
As it applies to altitude, the current status of the aircraft, for the transferring controller, indicates the clearance given by air traffic control, directly to and read back by an aircraft. This ensures the aircraft has received the clearance and is expected to comply with the instructions. The current status of the aircraft, for the receiving controller, indicates the specific verbally coordinated altitude, if that differs from the altitude coordinated by automated means.

2. Assigned and Interim altitude information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.

3. Whenever an aircraft is cleared to maintain an altitude different from that in the flight plan database, enter into the computer one of the following:

(a) The new assigned altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude, or

(b) An interim altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude for a short period of time and subsequently be recleared to the altitude in the flight plan database or a new altitude or a new interim altitude, or

(c) A Local Interim Altitude (LIA), entered by the transferring controller when the assigned altitude differs from the coordinated altitude unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.

NOTE−
A facility directive may be published, in accordance with JO 7210.3, Paragraph 8-2-7, Waiver to Interim Altitude Requirements, deleting the interim altitude computer entry requirements of subpara 3(b).

b. Flight Plan Route Data

This information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.

5−14−4. ENTRY OF REPORTED ALTITUDE

Whenever Mode C altitude information is either not available or is unreliable, enter reported altitudes into the computer as follows:

NOTE−
Altitude updates are required to assure maximum accuracy in applying slant range correction formulas.

a. When an aircraft reaches the assigned altitude.

b. When an aircraft at an assigned altitude is issued a clearance to climb or descend.

c. A minimum of each 10,000 feet during climb to or descent from FL 180 and above.

5−14−5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS

The display of Mode C targets and limited data blocks is necessary for application of Merging Target Procedures. Sectors must ensure the display of Mode C targets and data blocks by entering appropriate altitude limits and display filters to include, as a minimum, the altitude stratum of the sector plus:

a. 1,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest altitude or flight level of the sector where 1,000 feet vertical separation is applicable; and

b. 2,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest flight level of the sector where 2,000 feet vertical separation is applicable.

NOTE−
1. *The data block, for purposes of this paragraph, must contain the Mode C altitude and call sign or beacon code at a minimum.*

2. *Exception to these requirements may be authorized for specific altitudes in certain ARTCC sectors if defined in appropriate facility directives and approved by the En Route and Oceanic Operations Area Director.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−2, Alignment Accuracy Check.

5−14−6. SECTOR ELIGIBILITY

The use of the OK function is allowed to override sector eligibility only when one of the following conditions is met:

a. Prior coordination is effected.

b. The flight is within the control jurisdiction of the sector.

5−14−7. COAST TRACKS

Do not use coast tracks in the application of either radar or nonradar separation criteria.

5−14−8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS

a. Initiate coast tracks only in Flight Plan Aided Tracking (FLAT) mode, except "free" coast tracking may be used as a reminder that aircraft without corresponding computer-stored flight plan information are under your control.

NOTE−
1. *To ensure tracks are started in FLAT mode, perform a start track function at the aircraft's most current reported position, then immediately "force" the track into coast tracking by performing another start function with "CT" option in field 64. Making amendments to the stored route with trackball entry when the aircraft is rerouted, and repositioning the data block to coincide with the aircraft's position reports are methods of maintaining a coast track in FLAT mode.*

2. *EBUS does not have the capability to initiate coast tracks.*

b. Prior to initiating a coast track, ensure that a departure message or progress report corresponding with the aircraft's current position is entered into the computer.

c. As soon as practicable after the aircraft is in radar surveillance, initiate action to cause radar tracking to begin on the aircraft.

5−14−9. ERAM COMPUTER ENTRY OF HOLD INFORMATION

a. When an aircraft is issued holding instructions, the delay is ATC initiated, and the EFC is other than "no delay expected:"

1. Enter a hold message.

2. Maintain a paired track.

3. Enter an EFC time via a hold message, the Hold Data Menu, or the Hold View.

4. Enter non-published holding instructions via a hold message or the Hold Data Menu.

NOTE−
The ERAM hold message allows automatic calculation and reporting of aggregate delays.

b. Unless otherwise specified in a facility directive, verbally coordinate non-published holding instructions when handing off an aircraft in hold status to another ERAM sector.

c. An EFC time entered into the Hold Data Menu, Hold View, or the hold message constitutes coordination of the EFC between ERAM sectors.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-9, ERAM Hold Information Facility Directive Requirements

5−14−10. ERAM VISUAL INDICATOR OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA) STATUS

Sector controllers shall ensure the situation display accurately reflects the status of all SAAs that impact their area of control responsibility. When "SAA DOWN" is displayed in the Outage View, manually create visual indicators on the situation display to reflect changes to airspace status.

NOTE−
The "SAA DOWN" message in the Outage View means that SAA status is no longer being updated. The status of each SAA at the time of the failure, whether "on" or "off", will continue to be displayed. Status changes will not be automatically updated on the display until the outage is resolved.

Section 15. Common Automated Radar Terminal Systems (CARTS) & Standard Terminal Automation Replacement System (STARS)−Terminal

5−15−1. APPLICATION

CARTS/STARS may be used for identifying aircraft assigned a discrete beacon code, maintaining identity of targets, and performing handoffs of these targets between controllers. All procedures for the terminal domain related to air traffic control services using CARTS or STARS apply to the FUSION target.

5−15−2. RESPONSIBILITY

This equipment does not relieve the controller of the responsibility to ensure proper identification, maintenance of identity, handoff of the correct target associated with the alphanumeric data, and separation of aircraft.

5−15−3. FUNCTIONAL USE

In addition to other uses specified herein, terminal automation may be used for the following functions:

a. Tracking.

b. Tagging.

c. Handoff.

d. Altitude information.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.

e. Coordination.

f. Ground speed.

g. Identification.

5−15−4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Use terminal automation systems as follows:

NOTE−
Locally developed procedures, operating instructions, and training material are required because of differences in equipment capability. Such locally developed procedures must be supplemental to those contained in this section and must be designed to make maximum use of the ARTS equipment.

a. Inform all appropriate positions before terminating or reinstating use of the terminal automation system at a control position. When terminating the use of terminal automation systems, all pertinent flight data of that position must be transferred or terminated.

b. Inform other interfaced facilities of scheduled and unscheduled shutdowns.

c. Initiate a track/tag on all aircraft to the maximum extent possible. As a minimum, aircraft identification should be entered, and automated handoff functions should be used.

d. Assigned altitude, if displayed, must be kept current at all times. Climb and descent arrows, where available, must be used to indicate other than level flight.

e. When operating in FUSION mode, the assigned or pilot reported altitude must be displayed and kept current when the aircraft is in level flight.

f. The automatic altitude readout of an aircraft under another controller's jurisdiction may be used for vertical separation purposes without verbal coordination provided:

1. Operation is conducted using single-site radar coverage or when operating in FUSION mode.

2. Prearranged coordination procedures are contained in a facility directive in accordance with para 5−4−10, Prearranged Coordination, and FAAO 7210.3, para 3−7−7, Prearranged Coordination.

3. Do not use Mode C to effect vertical separation within a Mosaic radar configuration.

5−15−5. INFORMATION DISPLAYED

a. Two-letter ICAO designators or three-letter designators, as appropriate, must be used unless program limitations dictate the use of a single letter alpha prefix.

b. Use of the inhibit/select functions to remove displayed information no longer required must be in accordance with local directives, which should ensure maximum required use of the equipment.

c. Information displayed must be in accordance with national orders and specified in local directives.

5−15−6. CA/MCI

a. When a CA or MCI alert is displayed, evaluate the reason for the alert without delay and take appropriate action.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−6, Safety Alert.

b. If another controller is involved in the alert, initiate coordination to ensure an effective course of action. Coordination is not required when immediate action is dictated.

c. Suppressing/Inhibiting CA/MCI alert.

1. The suppress function may be used to suppress the display of a specific CA/MCI alert.

2. The inhibit function must only be used to inhibit the display of CA for aircraft routinely engaged in operations where approved separation criteria do not apply.

NOTE−
Examples of operations where approved separation criteria do not apply are ADC practice intercept operations and air shows.

3. Computer entry of a message suppressing a CA/MCI alert constitutes acknowledgment for the alert and signifies that appropriate action has or will be taken.

4. CA/MCI alert may not be suppressed or inhibited at or for another control position without being coordinated.

5−15−7. INHIBITING MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)

a. Inhibit MSAW processing of VFR aircraft and aircraft that cancel instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plans unless the pilot specifically requests otherwise.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−7, VFR Aircraft in Weather Difficulty.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−8, Radar Assistance to VFR Aircraft in Weather Difficulty.

b. A low altitude alert may be suppressed from the control position. Computer entry of the suppress message constitutes an acknowledgment for the alert and indicates that appropriate action has or will be taken.

5−15−8. TRACK SUSPEND FUNCTION

Use the track suspend function only when data block overlap in holding patterns or in proximity of the final approach create an unworkable situation. If necessary to suspend tracks, those which are not displaying automatic altitude readouts must be suspended. If the condition still exists, those displaying automatic altitude readouts may then be suspended.

Chapter 6. Nonradar

Section 1. General

6–1–1. DISTANCE

Use mileage–based (DME and/or ATD) procedures and minima only when direct pilot/controller communications are maintained.

6–1–2. NONRECEIPT OF POSITION REPORT

When a position report affecting separation is not received, take action to obtain the report no later than 5 minutes after the aircraft was estimated over the fix.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–7, IFR Military Training Routes.

6–1–3. DUPLICATE POSITION REPORTS

Do not require an aircraft to make the same position report to more than one facility.

6–1–4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION

TERMINAL

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

The ATC facility having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports must separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross the flight path of an aircraft requiring wake turbulence separation in accordance with the following:

a. Heavy, large, or small behind super – *3 minutes.*

b. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – *2 minutes.*

c. Small behind B757 - *2 minutes.*

FIG 6–1–1
Adjacent Airport Operation –– Arrival

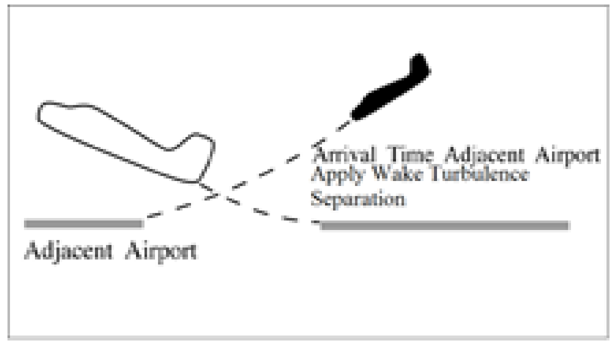
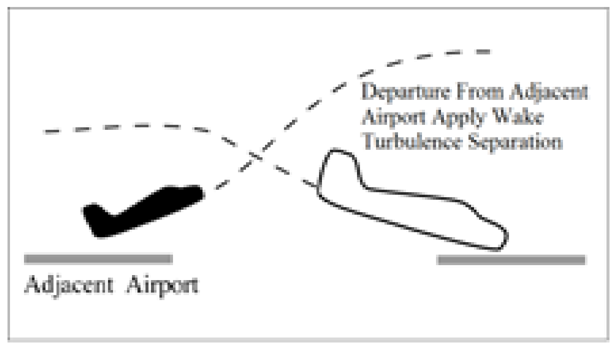


FIG 6–1–2
Adjacent Airport Operation –– Departure



6–1–5. ARRIVAL MINIMA

TERMINAL

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

a. Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving aircraft to the same runway:

1. Behind super:

(a) Heavy or large – *3 minutes.*

(b) Small – *4 minutes.*

2. Behind heavy:

(a) Heavy or large – *2 minutes.*

(b) Small – *3 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 – *3 minutes.*

b. Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving aircraft to a parallel runway separated by less than

2,500 feet, or a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross:

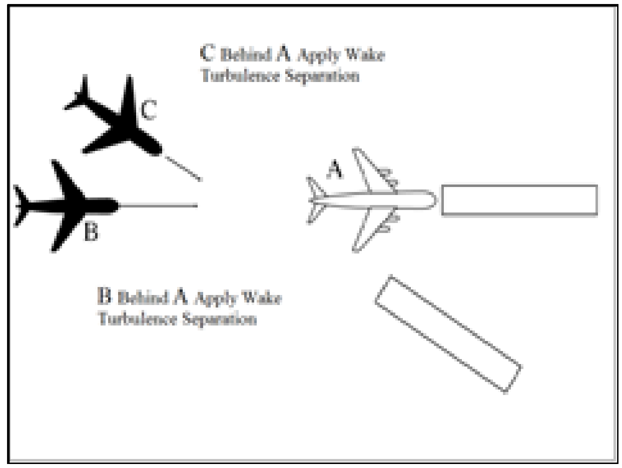
1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

FIG 6−1−3

Arrival Minima Landing Behind an Arriving Aircraft Requiring Wake Turbulence Separation



Section 2. Initial Separation of Successive Departing Aircraft

6–2–1. MINIMA ON DIVERGING COURSES

Separate aircraft that will fly courses diverging by 45 degrees or more after departing the same or adjacent airports by use of one of the following minima:

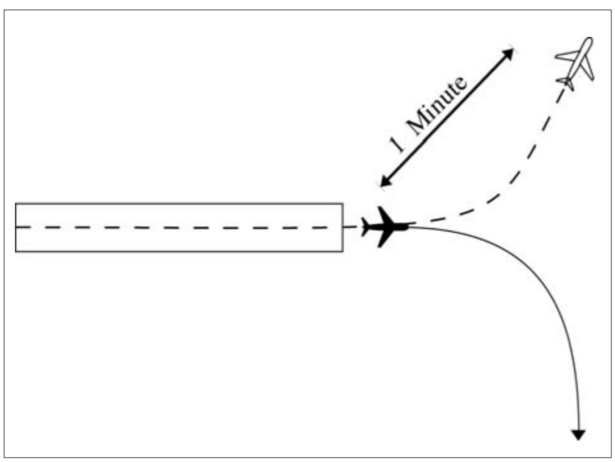
NOTE–
1. *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics when applying initial separation to successive departing aircraft.*

2. W*hen one or both of the departure surfaces is a helipad, use the takeoff course of the helicopter as a reference, comparable to the centerline of a runway and the helipad center as the threshold.*

a. When aircraft will fly diverging courses:

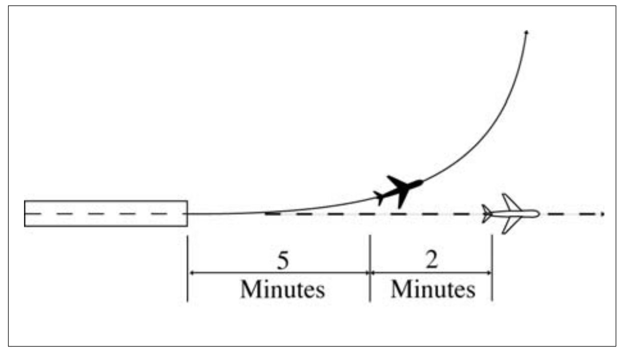
1. Immediately after takeoff – *1 minute* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–1.)

FIG 6–2–1
Minima on Diverging Courses



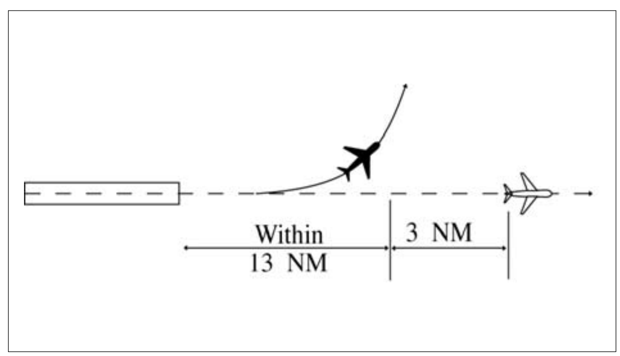
2. Within 5 minutes after takeoff– *2 minutes* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–2.)

FIG 6–2–2
Minima on Diverging Courses



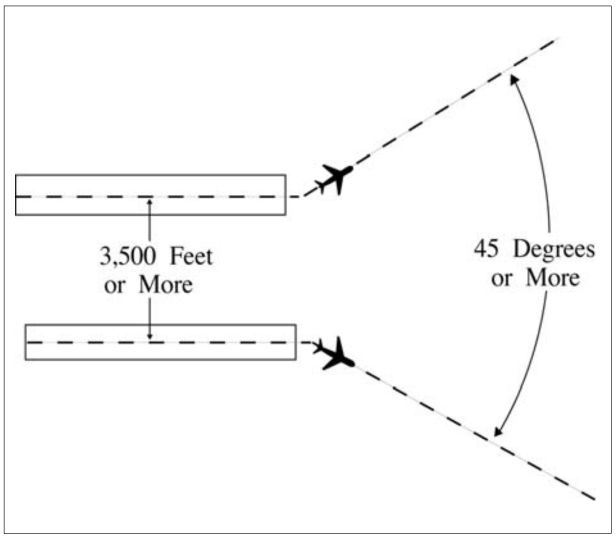
3. Within 13 miles DME/ATD after takeoff – *3 miles* until courses diverge. (See FIG 6–2–3.)

FIG 6–2–3
Minima on Diverging Courses



b. *TERMINAL.* Between aircraft departing in the same direction from different runways whose centerlines are parallel and separated by at least 3,500 feet, authorize simultaneous takeoffs when the aircraft will fly diverging courses immediately after takeoff. (See FIG 6−2−4.)

FIG 6−2−4
Minima on Diverging Courses



c. *TERMINAL.* Between aircraft that will fly diverging courses immediately after takeoff from diverging runways: (See FIG 6−2−5.)

1. Nonintersecting runways. Authorize simultaneous takeoffs when either of the following conditions exist:

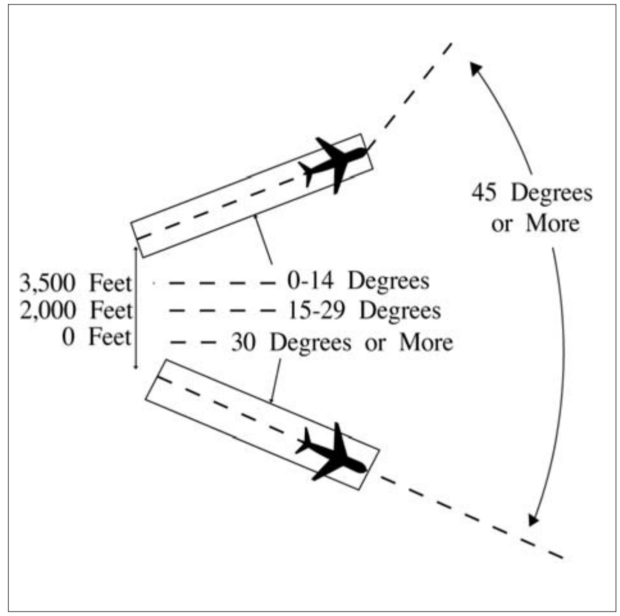
(a) The runways diverge by 30 degrees or more.

(b) The distance between runway centerlines at and beyond the points where takeoffs begin is at least:

(1) 2,000 feet and the runways diverge by 15 to 29 degrees inclusive.

(2) 3,500 feet and the runways diverge by less than 15 degrees.

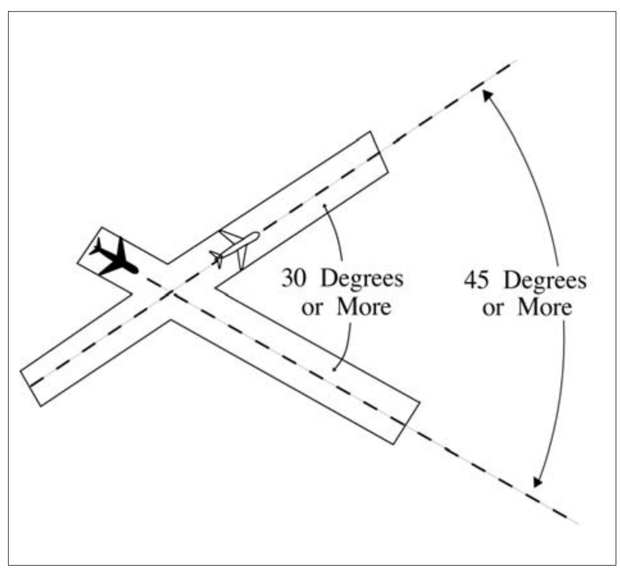
FIG 6−2−5
Minima on Diverging Courses



2. Intersecting runways. Authorize takeoff of a succeeding aircraft when the preceding aircraft has passed the point of runway intersection, and

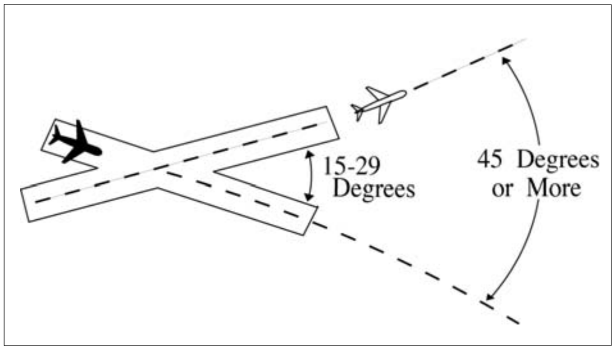
(a) The runways diverge by 30 degrees or more. (See FIG 6−2−6.)

FIG 6−2−6
Minima on Diverging Courses



(b) The runways diverge by 15 to 29 degrees inclusive and the preceding aircraft has commenced a turn. (See FIG 6−2−7.)

FIG 6−2−7
Minima on Diverging Courses



6−2−2. MINIMA ON SAME COURSE

Separate aircraft that will fly the same course when the following aircraft will climb through the altitude assigned to the leading aircraft by using a minimum of *3 minutes* until the following aircraft passes through the assigned altitude of the leading aircraft; or *5 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID. (See FIG 6−2−8 and FIG 6−2−9.)

FIG 6−2−8
Minima on Same Course

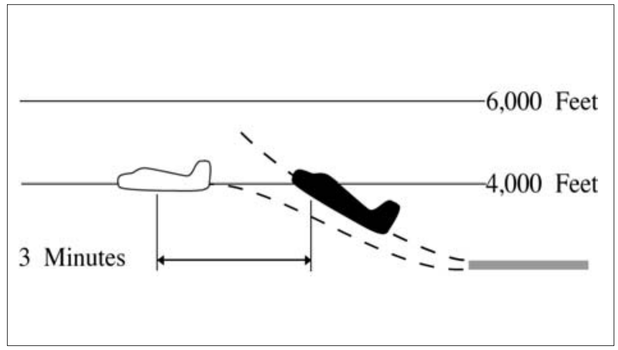
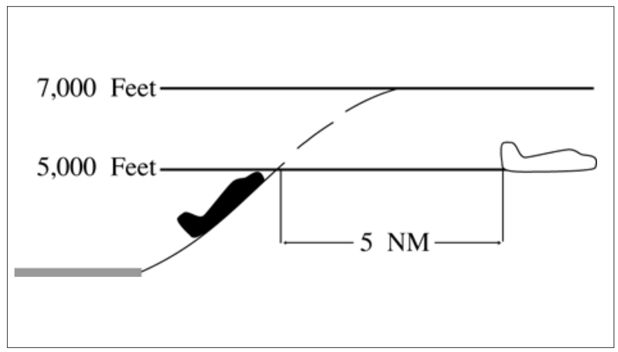


FIG 6−2−9
Minima on Same Course



Section 3. Initial Separation of Departing and Arriving Aircraft

6−3−1. SEPARATION MINIMA

a. Separate a departing aircraft from an arriving aircraft making an instrument approach to the same airport by using one of the following minima until vertical or lateral separation is achieved:

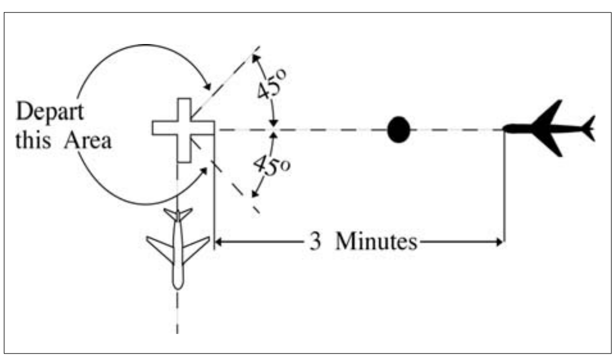
b. *TERMINAL.* When takeoff direction differs by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course, the departing aircraft takes off before the arriving aircraft leaves a fix inbound not less than *4 miles* from the airport.

c. *TERMINAL.* When takeoff direction is other than in subpara a, the departing aircraft takes off so that it is established on a course diverging by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course before the arriving aircraft leaves a fix inbound not less than *4 miles* from the airport.

d. *TERMINAL***.** When the absence of an appropriate fix precludes the application of subparas b or c and at airports where approach control service is not provided, the separation in subparas e or f must be applied.

e. When takeoff direction differs by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course, the departing aircraft takes off *3 minutes* before the arriving aircraft is estimated at the airport. (See FIG 6−3−1.)

FIG 6−3−1
Separation Minima



f. When takeoff direction is other than in subpara d, the departing aircraft takes off so that it is established on a course diverging by at least 45 degrees from the reciprocal of the final approach course *5 minutes* before the arriving aircraft is estimated at the airport or before it starts procedure turn. (See FIG 6−3−2 and FIG 6−3−3.)

FIG 6−3−2
Separation Minima

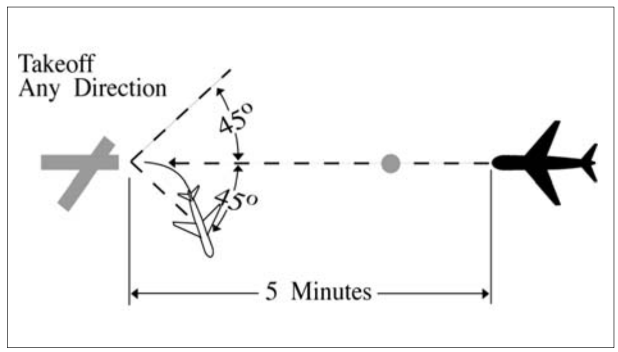
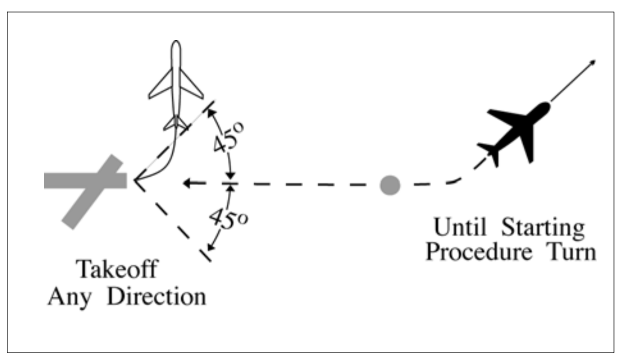


FIG 6−3−3
Separation Minima



Section 4. Longitudinal Separation

6–4–1. APPLICATION

Separate aircraft longitudinally by requiring them to do one of the following, as appropriate:

a. Depart at a specified time.

b. Arrive at a fix at a specified time.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS (fix) AT OR BEFORE (time).

CROSS (fix) AT OR AFTER (time).

c. Hold at a fix until a specified time.

d. Change altitude at a specified time or fix.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–7, Altitude Information.

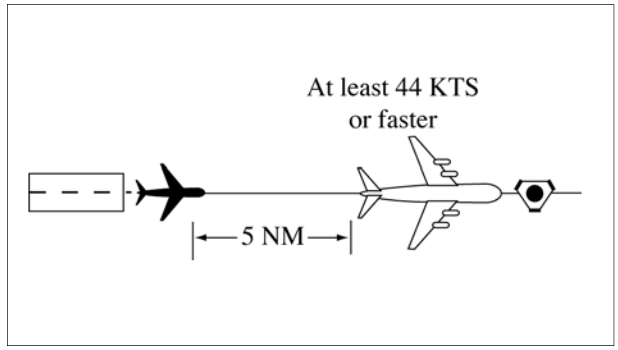
6–4–2. MINIMA ON SAME, CONVERGING, OR CROSSING COURSES

Separate aircraft on the same, converging, or crossing courses by an interval expressed in time or distance, using the following minima:

a. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 44 knots faster than the following aircraft – *5 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID, or *3 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions is met:

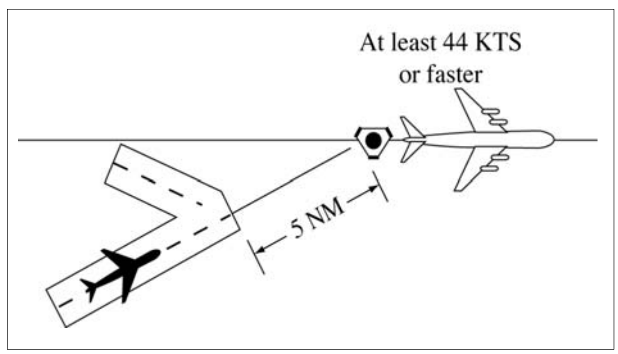
1. A departing aircraft follows a preceding aircraft which has taken off from the same or adjacent airport. (See FIG 6–4–1.)

FIG 6–4–1
Minima on Same Course
44 Knots or More Separation



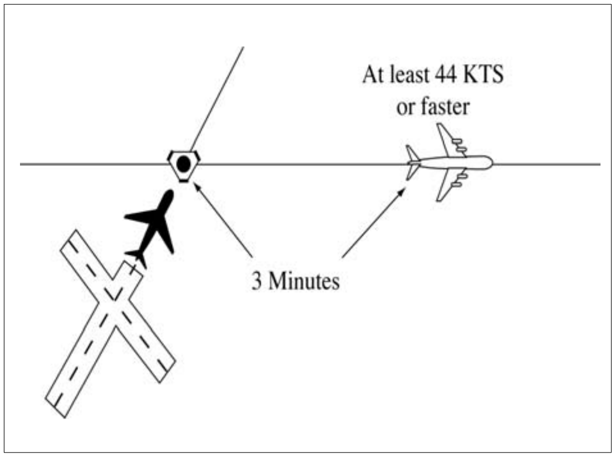
2. A departing aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over a fix serving the departure airport. (See FIG 6–4–2.)

FIG 6–4–2
Minima on Converging Courses
44 Knots or More Separation



3. An en route aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over the same fix. (See FIG 6−4−3.)

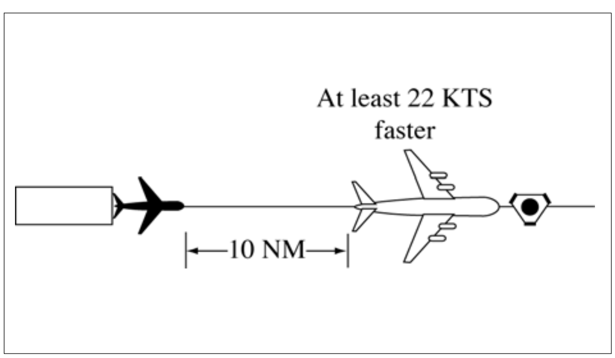
FIG 6−4−3
Minima on Crossing Courses
44 Knots or More Separation



b. When the leading aircraft maintains a speed at least 22 knots faster than the following aircraft − *10 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID; or *5 minutes* between other aircraft if, in either case, one of the following conditions exists:

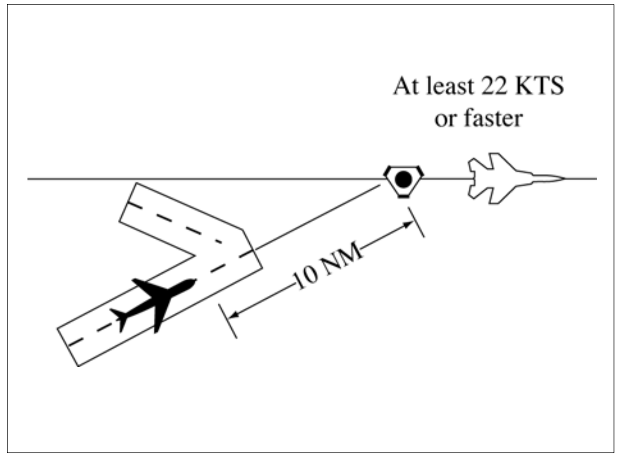
1. A departing aircraft follows a preceding aircraft which has taken off from the same or an adjacent airport. (See FIG 6−4−4.)

FIG 6−4−4
Minima on Same Course
22 Knots or More Separation



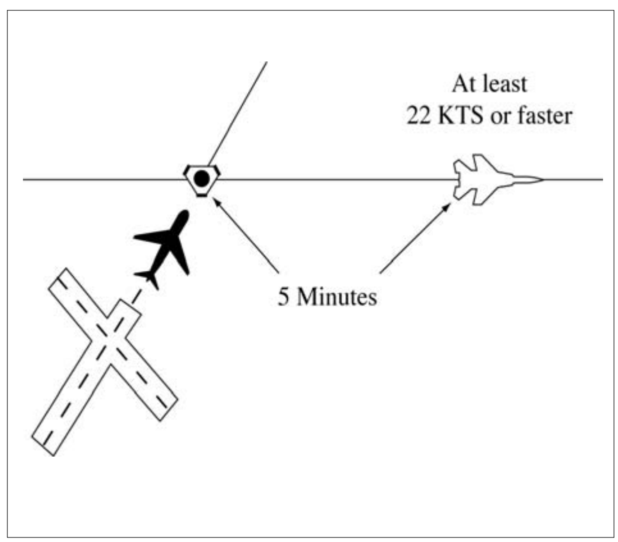
2. A departing aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over a fix serving the departure airport. (See FIG 6−4−5.)

FIG 6−4−5
Minima on Converging Courses
22 Knots or More Separation



3. An en route aircraft follows a preceding en route aircraft which has reported over the same fix. (See FIG 6−4−6.)

FIG 6−4−6
Minima on Crossing Courses
22 Knots or More Separation



c. When an aircraft is climbing or descending through the altitude of another aircraft:

1. Between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID− *10 miles,* if the descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following. (See FIG 6−4−7 and FIG 6−4−8.)

FIG 6−4−7
Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude DME Separation

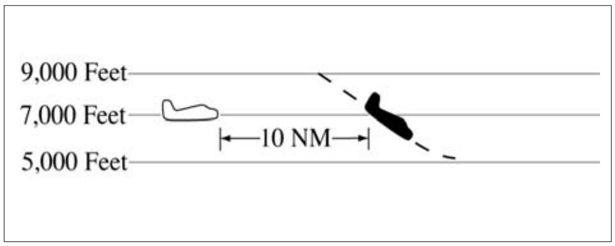
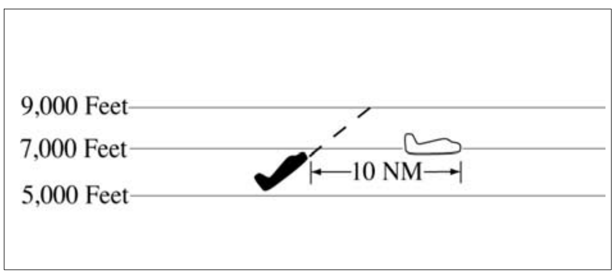


FIG 6−4−8
Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude DME Separation



2. Between other aircraft− *5 minutes*, if all of the following conditions are met:
(See FIG 6−4−9 and FIG 6−4−10.)

(a) The descending aircraft is leading or climbing aircraft is following.

(b) The aircraft are separated by not more than 4,000 feet when the altitude change started.

(c) The change is started within 10 minutes after a following aircraft reports over a fix reported over by the leading aircraft or has acknowledged a clearance specifying the time to cross the same fix.

3. Between RNAV aircraft that are operating along an RNAV route that is eight miles or less in width− *10 miles* provided the following conditions are met:

(a) The descending aircraft is leading or the climbing aircraft is following.

(b) The aircraft were separated by not more than 4,000 feet when the altitude change started.

FIG 6−4−9
Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Timed Separation

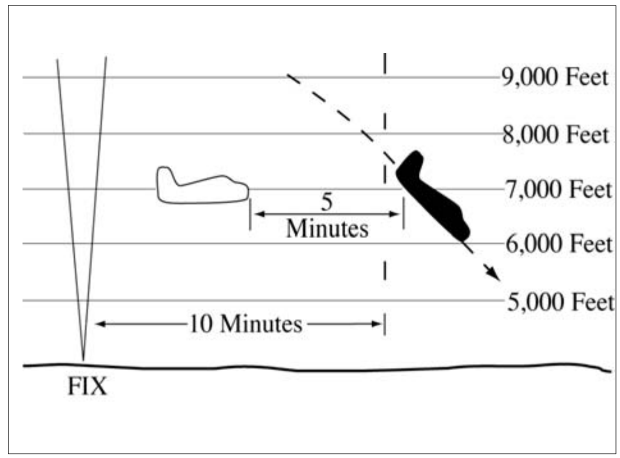
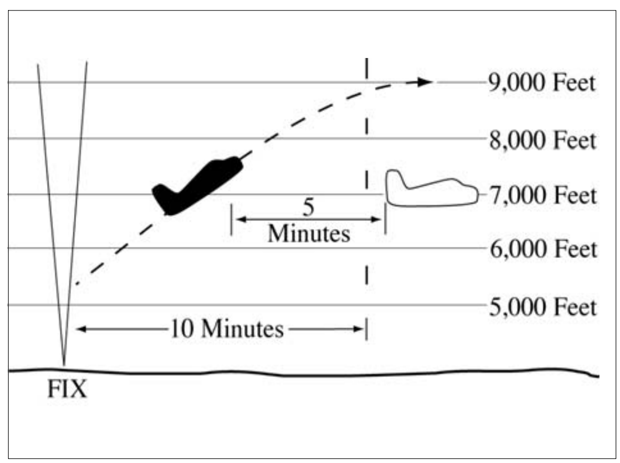


FIG 6−4−10
Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Timed Separation



d. When the conditions of subparas a, b, or c cannot be met− *20 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID; or *10 minutes* between other aircraft.
(See FIG 6−4−11, FIG 6−4−12, FIG 6−4−13, FIG 6−4−14, FIG 6−4−15, and FIG 6−4−16.)

FIG 6−4−11
Minima for Same Course Separation

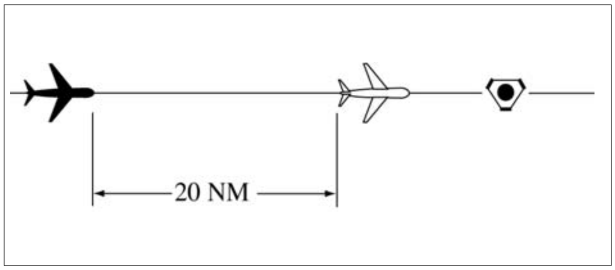


FIG 6−4−12
Minima for Crossing Courses Separation

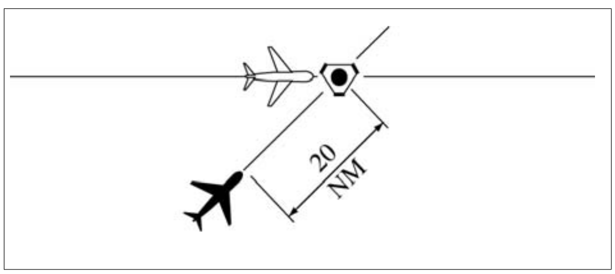


FIG 6−4−13
Minima for Same Course Separation

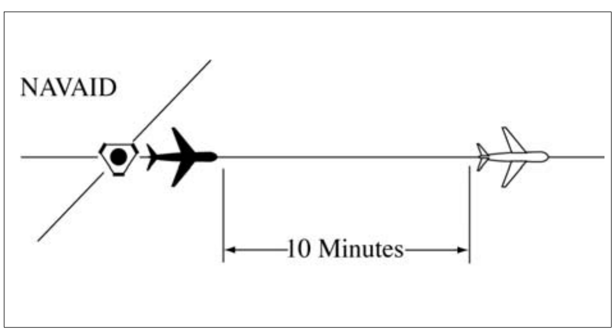


FIG 6−4−14
Minima for Crossing Courses Separation

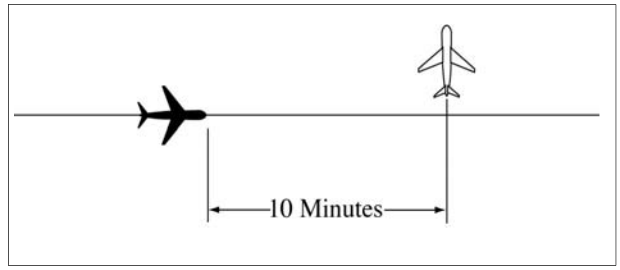


FIG 6−4−15
Climbing Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Separation

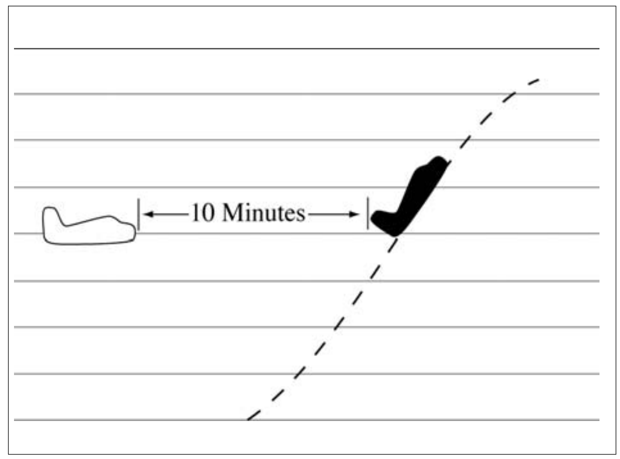
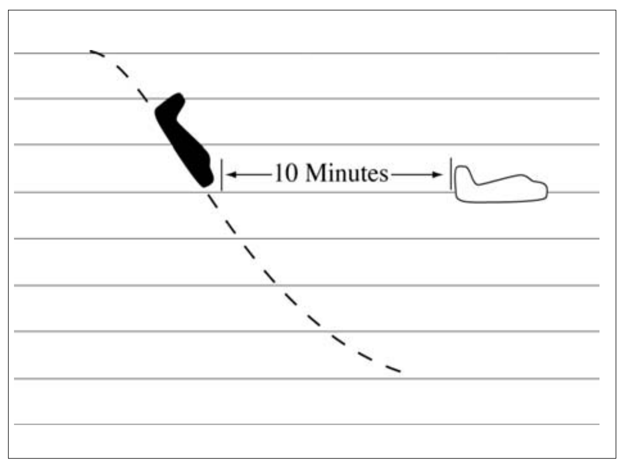


FIG 6−4−16
Descending Through Another Aircraft's Altitude Separation



e. Between aircraft, when one aircraft is using DME/ATD and the other is not− *30 miles* if both the following conditions are met:
(See FIG 6−4−17 and FIG 6−4−18.)

FIG 6−4−17
Minima for Same Course Separation

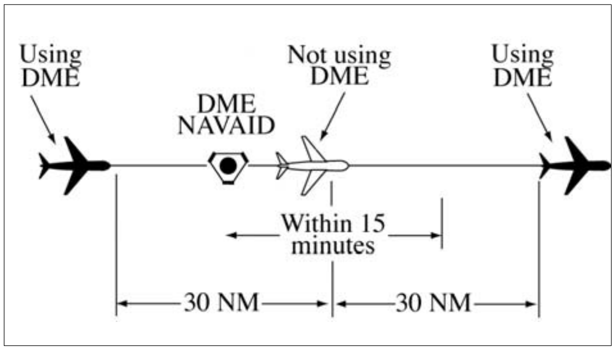
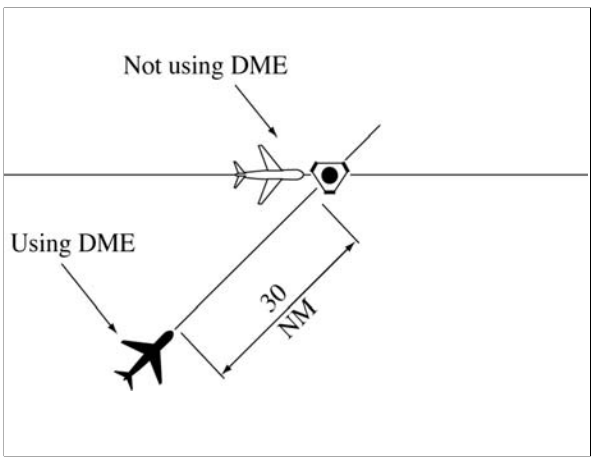


FIG 6−4−18
Minima for Crossing Courses Separation



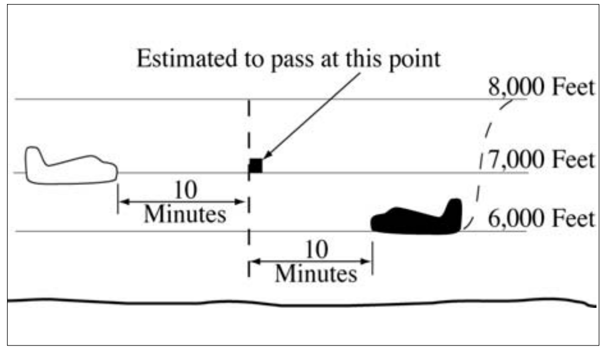
1. The aircraft using DME/ATD derives distance information by reference to the same NAVAID or waypoint over which the aircraft not using DME/ATD has reported.

2. The aircraft not using DME/ATD is within 15 minutes of the NAVAID.

6−4−3. MINIMA ON OPPOSITE COURSES

Separate aircraft traveling opposite courses by assigning different altitudes consistent with the approved vertical separation from *10 minutes* before, until *10 minutes* after they are estimated to pass. Vertical separation may be discontinued after one of the following conditions is met: (See FIG 6−4−19.)

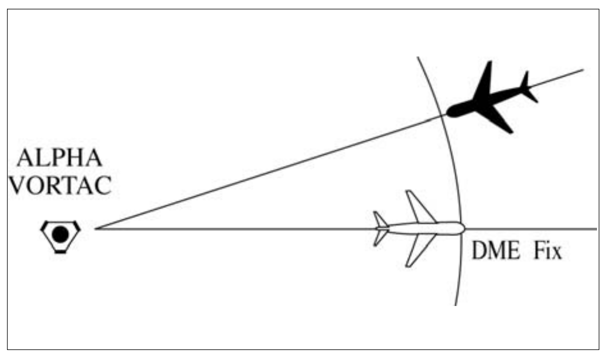
FIG 6−4−19
Minima for Opposite Courses Separation



NOTE−
RNAV route segments that have been expanded in the proximity to reference facilities for slant-range effect are not to be considered "expanded" for purposes of applying separation criteria in this paragraph.

a. Both aircraft have reported passing NAVAIDs, DME fixes, or waypoints indicating they have passed each other. (See FIG 6−4−20.)

FIG 6−4−20
Minima for Opposite Courses Separation



NOTE−
It is not intended to limit application of this procedure only to aircraft operating in opposite directions along the same airway or radial. This procedure may also be applied to aircraft established on diverging airways or radials of the same NAVAID.

b. Both aircraft have reported passing the same intersection/waypoint and they are at least *3 minutes* apart.

c. Two RNAV aircraft have reported passing the same position and are at least *8 miles* apart if operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width; or *18 miles* apart if operating along an expanded route; except that *30 miles* must be applied if operating along that portion of any route segment defined by a navigation station requiring extended usable distance limitations beyond 130 miles.

d. An aircraft utilizing RNAV and an aircraft utilizing VOR have reported passing the same position and the RNAV aircraft is at least *4 miles* beyond the reported position when operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width; *9 miles* beyond the point when operating along an expanded route; except that *15 miles* must be applied if operating along that portion of any route segment defined by a navigation station requiring extended usable distance limitation beyond 130 miles; or *3 minutes* apart whichever is greater.

NOTE−
Except for GNSS-equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V, not on a random impromptu route, Paragraph 5-5-1, Application, requires radar separation be provided to RNAV aircraft operating at and below FL450 on Q routes or random RNAV routes, excluding oceanic airspace.

6−4−4. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft on the same course in direct radio communication with each other concur, you may authorize the following aircraft to maintain longitudinal separation of *10 minutes;* or *20 miles* between DME equipped aircraft; RNAV equipped aircraft using ATD; and between DME and ATD aircraft provided the DME aircraft is either 10,000 feet or below or outside of 10 miles from the DME NAVAID.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAINTAIN AT LEAST ONE ZERO MINUTES/ TWO ZERO MILES SEPARATION FROM (ident).

6−4−5. RNAV AIRCRAFT ALONG VOR AIRWAYS/ROUTES

Advise the pilot to use DME distances when applying DME separation to an RNAV aircraft operating along VOR airways/routes.

PHRASEOLOGY−
USE DME DISTANCES.

NOTE−
ATD derived from area navigation devices having slant-range correction will not coincide with the direct DME readout.

Section 5. Lateral Separation

6−5−1. SEPARATION METHODS

Separate aircraft by one of the following methods:

a. Clear aircraft on different airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap.

b. Clear aircraft below 18,000 to proceed to and report over or hold at different geographical locations determined visually or by reference to NAVAIDs.

c. Clear aircraft to hold over different fixes whose holding pattern airspace areas do not overlap each other or other airspace to be protected.

d. Clear departing aircraft to fly specified headings which diverge by at least 45 degrees.

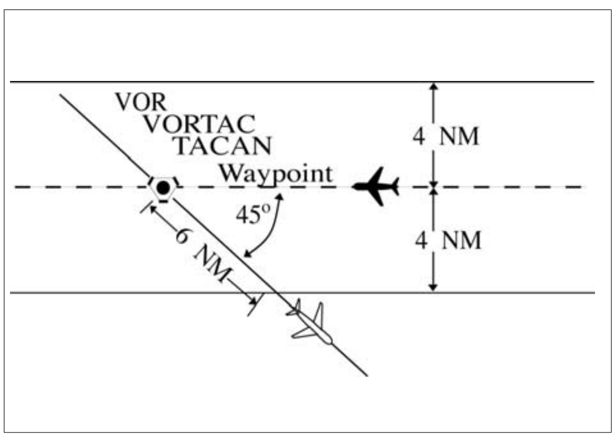
6−5−2. MINIMA ON DIVERGING RADIALS

a. Consider separation to exist between aircraft:

1. Established on radials of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 15 degrees when either aircraft is clear of the airspace to be protected for the other aircraft.

2. With non−VOR/DME based navigational equipment established on tracks of the same waypoint that diverge by at least 15 degrees when either aircraft is clear of the airspace to be protected for the other aircraft.

FIG 6−5−1
Minima on Diverging Radials



NOTE−
The procedure may be applied to converging as well as diverging aircraft. (See FIG 6−5−1.) The aircraft depicted 6 miles from the NAVAID/waypoint would require vertical separation until reaching the 6−mile point. Reversing direction, the same aircraft would require vertical separation before passing the 6−mile point. Due to the nature of GPS equipment, issue crossing restrictions in reference to the next waypoint, since the pilot receives tracking "to" data rather than tracking "from" the last waypoint.

b. Use TBL 6−5−1 and TBL 6−5−2 to determine the distance required for various divergence angles to clear the airspace to be protected. For divergence that falls between two values, use the lesser divergence value to obtain the distance.

TBL 6−5−1
Non−DME Divergence Distance Minima

Divergence (Degrees)	Distance (NM)
15	16
20	12
25	10
30	8
35	7
45	6
55	5
90	4
NOTE: *This table is for non−DME application only.*	

TBL 6−5−2
Divergence Distance Minima

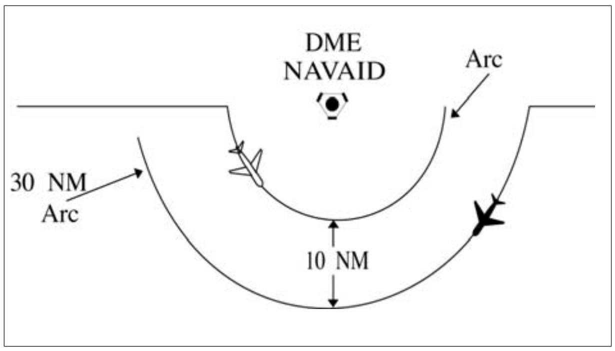
Divergence (Degrees)	Distance (NM)	
	Below FL 180	Fl 180 through FL 450
15	17	18
20	13	15
25	11	13
30	9	11
35	8	11
45	7	11
55	6	11
90	5	11
NOTE: *This table is for DME application and compensates for DME slant-range error.*		

NOTE–
For altitudes of 3,000 feet or less above the elevation of the NAVAID, DME slant-range error is negligible and the values in TBL 6–5–1 may be used.

6–5–3. DME ARC MINIMA

Apply lateral DME separation by requiring aircraft using DME to fly an arc about a NAVAID at a specified distance using the following minima: (See FIG 6–5–2.)

FIG 6–5–2
DME Arc Minima



REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–5–2, NAVAID Terms.

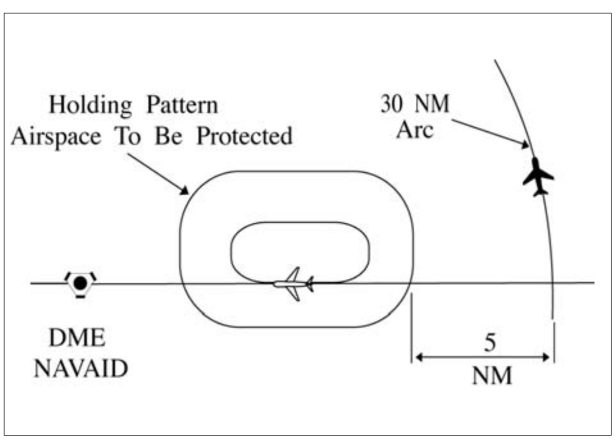
a. Between different arcs about a NAVAID regardless of direction of flight:

1. At 35 miles or less from the NAVAID– *10 miles.*

2. More than 35 miles from the NAVAID– *20 miles.*

b. Between an arc about a NAVAID and other airspace to be protected: (See FIG 6–5–3.)

FIG 6–5–3
DME Arc Minima



NOTE–
The other airspace to be protected may be a MOA, a holding pattern, airway or route, ATCAA, Warning Area, Restricted Area, Prohibited Area, etc.

1. At 35 miles or less from the NAVAID– *5 miles*.

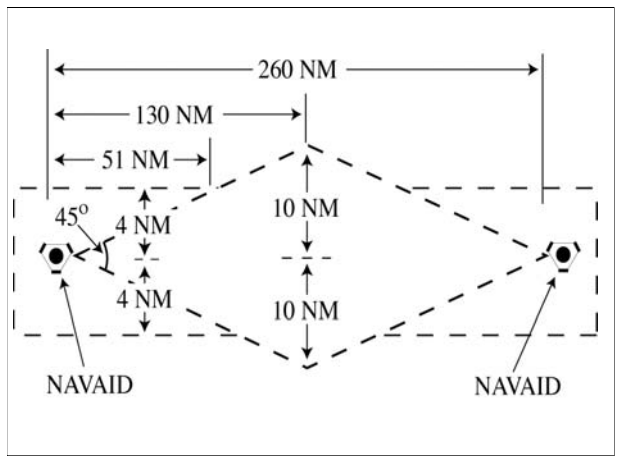
2. More than 35 miles from the NAVAID– *10 miles.*

PHRASEOLOGY–
VIA (number of miles) MILE ARC (direction) OF (name of DME NAVAID).

6–5–4. MINIMA ALONG OTHER THAN ESTABLISHED AIRWAYS OR ROUTES

Protect airspace along other than established airways or routes as follows: (See FIG 6–5–4.)

FIG 6–5–4
Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes



REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Airway.
P/CG Term– Route.

a. Direct courses and course changes of 15 degrees or less:

1. Via NAVAIDs or radials FL 600 and below– *4 miles* on each side of the route to a point 51 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 4 $^{1}/_{2}$ degree angle to a width of *10 miles* on each side of the route at a distance of 130 miles from the NAVAID.

2. Via degree-distance fixes for aircraft authorized under para 4–4–3, Degree–Distance Route Definition for Military Operations.

(a) Below FL 180– *4 miles* on each side of the route.

(b) FL 180 to FL 600 inclusive− *10 miles* on each side of the route.

3. Via degree-distance fixes for RNAV flights above FL 450− *10 miles* on each side of the route.

NOTE−
Except for GNSS-equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V, not on a random impromptu route, Paragraph 5-5-1, Application, requires radar separation be provided to RNAV aircraft operating at and below FL450 on Q routes or random RNAV routes, excluding oceanic airspace.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application.
P/CG Term - Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)[ICAO].

4. GNSS-equipped RNAV aircraft provided non-radar separation on random RNAV routes must be cleared via or reported to be established on point-to-point route segments.

(a) The points must be published NAVAIDs, waypoints, fixes, or airports recallable from the aircraft's navigation database. The points must be displayed on controller video maps or depicted on the controller chart displayed at the control position. The maximum distance between points must not exceed 500 miles.

(b) Protect 4 miles either side of the route centerline.

(c) Assigned altitudes must be at or above the highest MIA along the projected route segment being flown, including the protected airspace of that route segment.

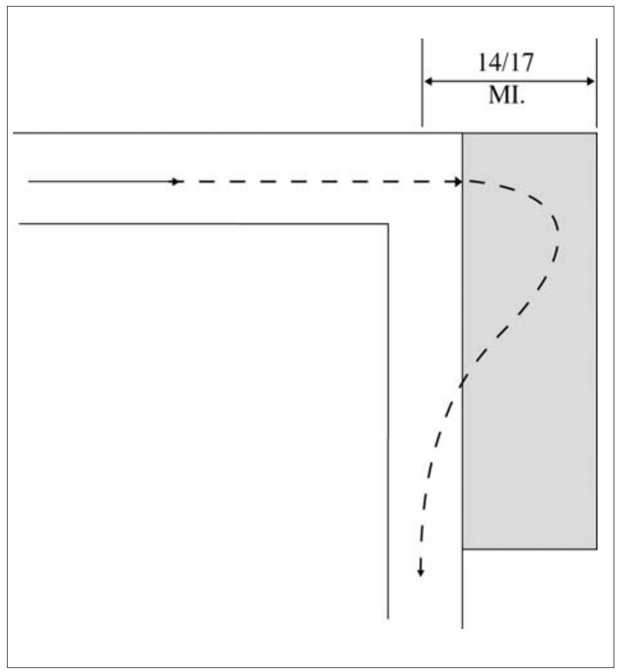
(d) When the GNSS aircraft is being provided radar service and is transitioning to non-radar airspace, provide clearance direct to the named point in non-radar airspace in accordance with subparagraphs a4(a) through (c).

EXAMPLE−
A pilot has filed a point-to-point route from XYZ to ABC at 13,000 feet. Departure procedures from the originating airport place the aircraft a significant distance from XYZ; however, the aircraft can establish itself along the route segment from XYZ to ABC. Ascertain when the pilot is established on the point-to-point route segment and at an altitude, which meets or exceeds the highest MVA/MIA projected along the route of flight, then issue a clearance.
"Verify when you are established on the XYZ to ABC route segment at or above 6,000 feet."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application

b. When course change is 16 degrees through 90 degrees, protect the airspace on the overflown side beginning at the point where the course changes as follows: (See FIG 6−5−5.)

FIG 6−5−5
Overflown Side Minima
16 to 90 Degrees



1. Below FL 180− same as subparas a1 or 2.

2. FL 180 to FL 230 inclusive− *14 miles.*

3. Above FL 230 to FL 600 inclusive− *17 miles.*

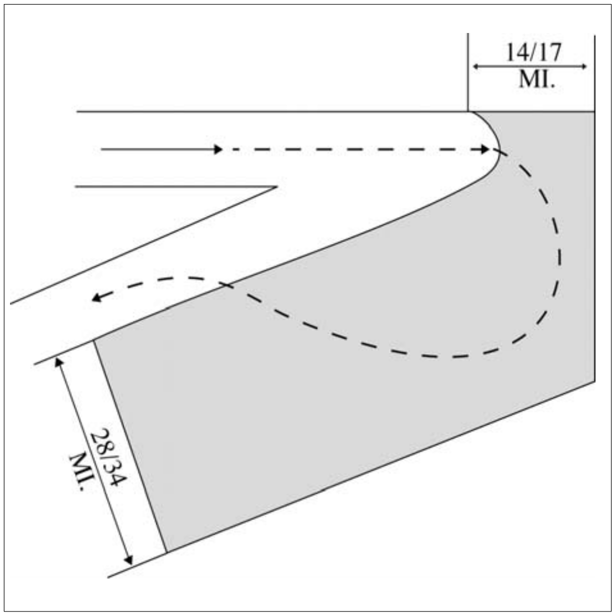
c. When course change is 91 degrees through 180 degrees, protect the airspace on the overflown side beginning at the point where the course changes as follows: (See FIG 6−5−6.)

1. Below FL 180− same as subparas a1 or 2.

2. FL 180 to FL 230 inclusive− *28 miles.*

3. Above FL 230 to FL 600 inclusive− *34 miles*.

FIG 6-5-6
Overflown Side Minima
91 to 180 Degrees

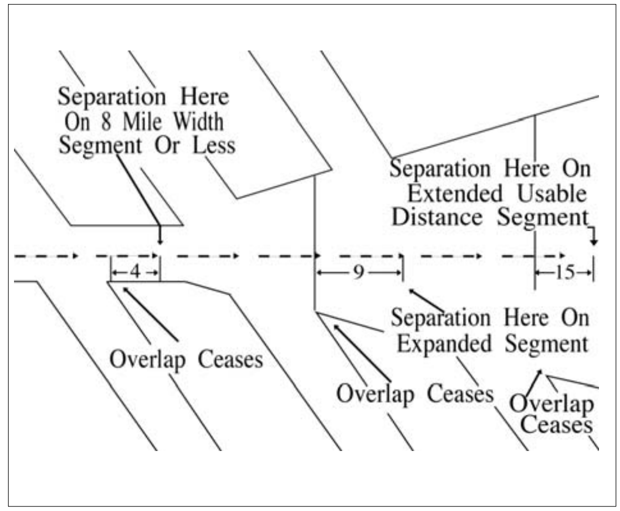


d. After the course changes specified in subparas b or c have been completed and the aircraft is back on course, the appropriate minima in subpara a may be used.

6-5-5. RNAV MINIMA- DIVERGING/ CROSSING COURSES

Consider lateral separation to exist when an RNAV aircraft is beyond the point where the lateral protected airspace of that aircraft has ceased to overlap the lateral protected airspace of another by at least: (See FIG 6-5-7 and FIG 6-5-8.)

FIG 6-5-7
RNAV Minima

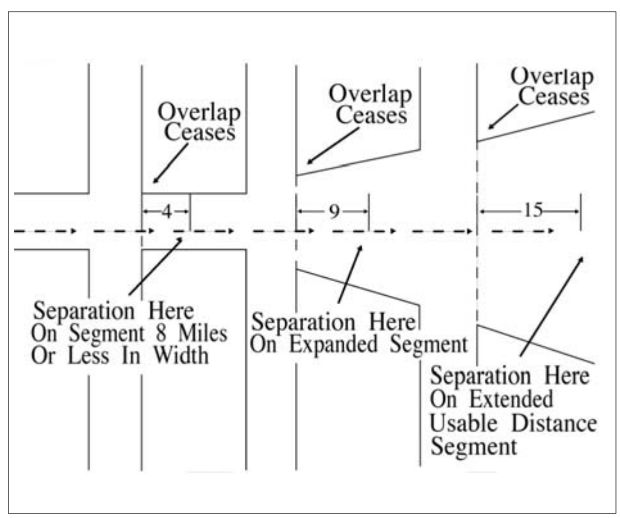


a. When operating along a route that is 8 miles or less in width- *4 miles.*

b. When operating along an expanded route- *9 miles,* except that *15 miles* must be applied along that portion of any route segment requiring extended usable distance limitation beyond 130 miles of the reference facility.

NOTE-
Except for GNSS-equipped aircraft /G, /L, /S, and /V, not on a random impromptu route, Paragraph 5-5-1, Application, requires radar separation be provided to RNAV aircraft operating at and below FL450 on Q routes or random RNAV routes, excluding oceanic airspace.

FIG 6-5-8
RNAV Minima



Section 6. Vertical Separation

6−6−1. APPLICATION

Assign an altitude to an aircraft after the aircraft previously at that altitude has reported leaving the altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT LEAVING/REACHING (altitude/flight level).

REPORT LEAVING ODD/EVEN ALTITUDES/FLIGHT LEVELS.

(If aircraft is known to be operating below the lowest useable flight level),

SAY ALTITUDE.

or

(If aircraft is known to be operating at or above the lowest useable flight level),

SAY FLIGHT LEVEL.

or

If aircraft's position relative to the lowest useable flight level is unknown),

SAY ALTITUDE OR FLIGHT LEVEL.

NOTE−
Consider known aircraft performance characteristics, pilot furnished and/or Mode C detected information which indicate that climb/descent will not be consistent with the rates recommended in the AIM.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−3, Procedural Preference.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−1, Vertical Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−4, Separation.

6−6−2. EXCEPTIONS

Assign an altitude to an aircraft only after the aircraft previously at that altitude has reported at or passing through another altitude separated from the first by the appropriate minimum when:

a. Severe turbulence is reported.

b. Aircraft are conducting military aerial refueling.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−13, Military Aerial Refueling.

c. The aircraft previously at the altitude has been:

1. Issued a clearance permitting climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

2. Cleared to CRUISE (altitude). However, do not use Mode C to effect separation with an aircraft on a cruise clearance.

NOTE−
An aircraft assigned a cruise clearance is assigned a block of airspace from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the assigned cruising altitude, and climb/descent within the block is at pilot's discretion. When the pilot verbally reports leaving an altitude in descent, he/she may not return to that altitude.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Cruise.

6−6−3. SEPARATION BY PILOTS

When pilots of aircraft in direct radio communication with each other during climb and descent concur, you may authorize the lower aircraft, if climbing, or the upper aircraft, if descending, to maintain vertical separation.

Section 7. Timed Approaches

6–7–1. APPLICATION

Timed approaches using either nonradar procedures or radar vectors to the final approach course may be used at airports served by a tower if the following conditions are met:

NOTE–
These procedures require NAVAIDs and standard/special instrument approach procedures or adequate radar coverage which permit an aircraft to:

1. *Hold at a fix located on the approach course or to be radar vectored to the final approach course for a straight-in approach in accordance with the minima specified in para 6–7–5, Interval Minima.*

2. *Proceed in the direction of the airport along the approach course crossing the holding/approach fix at a specified altitude if required.*

3. *Continue descent for an approach to destination airport.*

a. Direct communication is maintained with the aircraft until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

b. If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none require course reversal.

c. If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met:

1. Course reversal is not required.

2. Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the instrument approach procedure in use.

NOTE–
Determination of whether or not an existing ceiling meets minima is accomplished by comparing MDA (MSL) with ceiling (AGL) plus the airport elevation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–7–2, Approach Sequence.

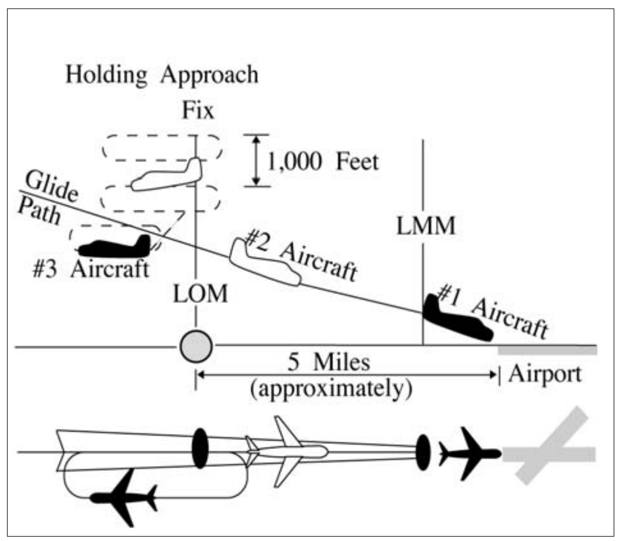
6–7–2. APPROACH SEQUENCE

When an aircraft passes the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach), issue clearances for a succeeding timed approach in accordance with the following:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5, Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–7–4, Level Flight Restriction.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–7–7, Missed Approaches.

a. Clear the succeeding aircraft for approach, to descend to the altitude vacated by the preceding aircraft, and to leave the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) at a specified time; or when using radar to sequence and position aircraft on the final approach course, vector aircraft to cross the final approach fix/outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker in compliance with para 6–7–5, Interval Minima.

FIG 6–7–1
Timed Approach Procedures
Using ILS and Longitudinal Separation Only

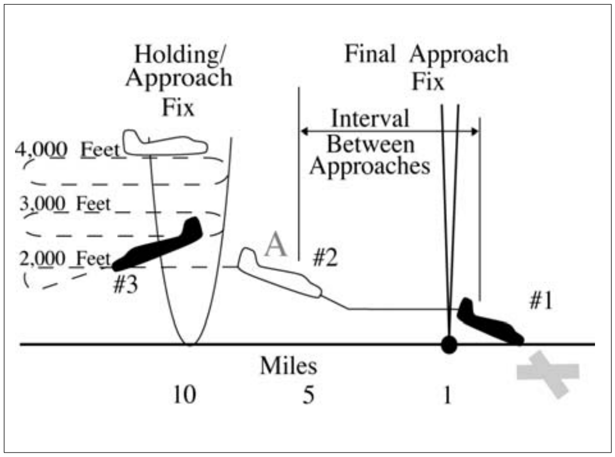


NOTE–
FIG 6–7–1 depicts the application of timed approach procedures using an ILS and applying longitudinal separation only. Using an interval of 2 minutes between successive approaches, the #1 and #2 aircraft have already passed the outer locator (LOM) on final approach, and the #3 aircraft has been cleared for approach and to depart the LOM 2 minutes after the #2 aircraft reported leaving the LOM inbound on final approach. After aircraft in the approach sequence depart the holding/approach fix (LOM) inbound, vertical separation is no longer provided and longitudinal separation is utilized.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–2, Final Approach Course Interception.

b. If an alternative missed approach procedure is not available and weather conditions are less than required by para 6−7−1, Application, subpara c, clear the succeeding aircraft for an approach when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled its IFR flight plan.

FIG 6−7−2
Timed Approach Procedures Using a Bearing on an NDB and Longitudinal and Vertical Separation



NOTE−
FIG 6−7−2 depicts the application of timed approach procedures using a holding/approach fix on a bearing of an NDB and applying a combination of longitudinal and vertical separation. The #3 aircraft has been instructed to descend to 2,000 after the #2 aircraft has reported departing the holding/approach fix inbound and leaving 2,000 at point A. The #2 aircraft has departed the holding/approach fix inbound at the designated time, maintaining 2,000 until cleared for approach at point A. The #1 aircraft has been sighted, enabling the controller to issue approach clearance to the #2 aircraft at point A.

c. Release the aircraft to the tower before it reaches the final approach fix.

6−7−3. SEQUENCE INTERRUPTION

Interrupt the established timed approach sequence if necessary to allow an aircraft to execute a different type of approach.

6−7−4. LEVEL FLIGHT RESTRICTION

If the weather report indicates an aircraft will be in IFR conditions over the final approach fix (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker (precision approach) when para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence, subpara b is applied, clear the second aircraft for an approach early enough to allow at least 1 minute of level flight before crossing the final approach fix/outer marker or the fix used in lieu of the outer marker.

6−7−5. INTERVAL MINIMA

Use the following time or radar interval as the minimum interval between successive approaches:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−5, Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−7−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence.

a. Behind super:

1. Heavy − *3 minutes* or *6 miles.*

2. Large − *3 minutes* or *7 miles.*

3. Small − *4 minutes* or *8 miles.*

b. Behind heavy:

1. Heavy − *2 minutes or 4 miles.*

2. Large − *2 minutes* or *5 miles.*

3. Small − *3 minutes* or *6 miles.*

c. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes* or *4 miles.*

d. Increase the interval, as necessary, taking into account the:

1. Relative speeds of the aircraft concerned.

2. Existing weather conditions.

3. Distance between the approach fix and the airport.

4. Type of approach being made.

6−7−6. TIME CHECK

Issue a time check to an aircraft before specifying a time to leave the approach fix inbound unless the aircraft is vectored to the final approach course.

6−7−7. MISSED APPROACHES

a. If weather conditions are such that an aircraft will likely miss an approach, issue an alternative missed approach procedure to the next aircraft.

b. If an aircraft misses an approach, allow the next aircraft to continue the approach if it has been assigned an alternative missed approach procedure. Retain radar control or hold any remaining aircraft at assigned altitudes until traffic conditions permit the issuance of approach clearances.

c. When para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence, subpara b is applied and the first aircraft misses an approach, retain radar control or clear the second aircraft to maintain the last assigned altitude (minimum holding altitude) and return to the holding/approach fix to hold until traffic conditions permit the issuance of approach clearances.

Chapter 7. Visual

Section 1. General

7−1−1. CLASS A AIRSPACE RESTRICTIONS

Do not apply visual separation or issue VFR or "VFR-on-top" clearances in Class A airspace.

7−1−2. VFR CONDITIONS

a. You may clear aircraft to maintain "VFR conditions" if one of the following conditions exists:

1. The pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests a VFR climb/descent.

2. *TERMINAL.* The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA-approved noise abatement route or altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS.

MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS UNTIL (time or fix).

MAINTAIN VFR CONDITIONS ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

CLIMB/DESCEND VFR,

and if required,

BETWEEN (altitude) AND (altitude)

or

ABOVE/BELOW (altitude).

b. When, in your judgment, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
IF UNABLE, (alternative procedure), AND ADVISE.

7−1−3. APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE FOR VFR ARRIVING AIRCRAFT

Issue the following where procedures have been established for arriving VFR aircraft to contact approach control for landing information:

a. Wind, runway, and altimeter setting at the airport of intended landing. This information may be omitted if contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code or if the pilot uses the phrase, "have numbers."

NOTE−
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast.

b. Traffic information on a workload permitting basis.

c. Time or place at which the aircraft is to contact the tower on local control frequency for further landing information.

d. An aircraft may be instructed to contact approach control for landing and traffic information upon initial contact with the tower.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−2, Service Availability.

7−1−4. VISUAL HOLDING OF VFR AIRCRAFT

TERMINAL

When it becomes necessary to hold VFR aircraft at visual holding fixes, take the following actions:

a. Clear aircraft to hold at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts.

NOTE−
At some locations, VFR checkpoints are depicted on Sectional Aeronautical and Terminal Area Charts. In selecting geographical fixes, depicted VFR checkpoints are preferred unless the pilot exhibits a familiarity with the local area.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−6−5, Visual Holding Points.

b. Issue traffic information to aircraft cleared to hold at the same fix.

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD AT (location) UNTIL (time or other condition),

TRAFFIC (description) HOLDING AT (fix, altitude if known),

or

PROCEEDING TO (fix) FROM (direction or fix).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−5, Holding.

Section 2. Visual Separation

7–2–1. VISUAL SEPARATION

Visual separation may be applied when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, known weather conditions, and aircraft position. Weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5, Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–1, Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–4, Approaches to Multiple Runways.
P/CG Term– Visual Approach.
P/CG Term– Visual Separation.

a. TERMINAL. Visual separation may be applied between aircraft up to but not including FL180 under the following conditions:

1. Tower-applied visual separation.

(a) Maintain communication with at least one of the aircraft involved or ensure there is an ability to communicate immediately with applicable military aircraft as prescribed in Paragraph 3-9-3, Departure Control Instructions, subparagraph a2.

(b) The tower visually observes the aircraft, issues timely traffic advisories, and provides visual separation between the aircraft.

(c) Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure continued separation between the applicable aircraft.

(d) Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation.

(e) The use of tower-applied visual separation is not authorized when wake turbulence separation is required.

(f) Adjacent airports with operating ATCTs are not authorized to apply visual separation between their traffic and the other ATCT's traffic.

2. Pilot-applied visual separation.

(a) Maintain communication with at least one of the aircraft involved and ensure there is an ability to communicate with the other aircraft.

(b) The pilot sees another aircraft and is instructed to maintain visual separation from the aircraft as follows:

(1) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft. Include position, direction, type, and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention.

(2) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot that the other aircraft is in sight.

(3) Instruct the pilot to maintain visual separation from that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(ACID), TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information).

If required,
(ACID), REPORT TRAFFIC IN SIGHT or DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT?

If the pilot reports traffic in sight, or the answer is in the affirmative,

(ACID), MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION

NOTE–
Towers must use the procedures contained in Paragraph 3-1-6, Traffic Information, Subparagraph b or c, as appropriate.

(c) If the pilot reports the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation from it (the pilot must state both), the controller may "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(ACID), APPROVED.

NOTE–
Pilot-applied visual separation between aircraft is achieved when the controller has instructed the pilot to maintain visual separation and the pilot acknowledges with their call sign or when the controller has approved pilot-initiated visual separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-4-5, Transferring Controller Handoff

(d) If aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID), TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.

(e) Advise the pilots if the targets appear likely to merge.

NOTE−
Issue this advisory in conjunction with the instruction to maintain visual separation, the advisory to the other aircraft of the converging course, or thereafter if the controller subsequently becomes aware that the targets are merging.

EXAMPLE−
"Targets appear likely to merge."

(f) Control of aircraft maintaining visual separation may be transferred to an adjacent position/sector/facility. Coordination procedures must be specified in an LOA or facility directive.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4-3-1, Letters of Agreement

b. *EN ROUTE.* Visual separation may be used up to but not including FL 180 when the following conditions are met:

1. Direct communication is maintained with one of the aircraft involved and there is an ability to communicate with the other.

2. A pilot sees another aircraft and is instructed to maintain visual separation from it as follows:

(a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction, and type. If it is not obvious, include the other aircraft's intentions.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

(b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot that the other aircraft is in sight.

(c) Instruct the pilot to maintain visual separation from that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID), TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information). If required, (ACID), REPORT TRAFFIC IN SIGHT or DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT? If the pilot reports traffic in sight, or the answer is in the affirmative, (ACID), MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION

(d) If the pilot reports the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation (the pilot must state both), the controller may "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID), APPROVED.

NOTE−
Pilot-applied visual separation between aircraft is achieved when the controller has instructed the pilot to maintain visual separation and the pilot acknowledges with their call sign or when the controller has approved pilot-initiated visual separation.

(e) Advise the pilot if the targets appear likely to converge.

(f) If aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID) TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)−BOUND, (type of aircraft), ON CONVERGING COURSE, HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−1, Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach.

(g) Advise the pilots if either aircraft is a heavy.

(h) Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2−1−20.

c. Nonapproach control towers may be authorized to provide visual separation between aircraft within surface areas or designated areas when approved separation is provided before and after the application of visual separation. The nonapproach control tower must apply the procedures contained in subparagraph a1 or a2, when applying visual separation.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED BETWEEN (ACID) AND (ACID),

and for departing aircraft,

(departing/succeeding aircraft) (ACID), RELEASED.

d. If the nonapproach control tower controller states to the radar controller that they will provide visual separation between arrivals, departures/arrivals and/or successive departures, and states the call signs of all aircraft involved, the radar controller can approve the application of visual separation as requested.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED and for departing/succeeding aircraft, (ACIDs) RELEASED

NOTE−
A nonapproach control tower by accepting authorization for visual separation becomes responsible for ensuring that separation. Separation of IFR aircraft before and after application of visual separation is an IFR control function that must be applied by the Approach/Departure/En Route facility. Separation requirements also apply to VFR aircraft when IFR, Class B, Class C or TRSA separation services are required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−11, Practice Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−2, Issuance of EFC.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−4, Helicopter Traffic.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−5, Altitude Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−6, Approach Interval.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−7, TRSA Departure Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−2, Class C Services.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−4, Establishing Two−Way Communications.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−5, Altitude Assignments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−8−6, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−3, Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−4, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−6, Helicopter Traffic.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−9−7, Altitude Assignments.

Section 3. VFR-On-Top

7–3–1. VFR-ON-TOP

a. You may clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP.

NOTE–
1. *When an aircraft has been cleared to maintain "VFR-on-top," the pilot is responsible to fly at an appropriate VFR altitude, comply with VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria, and to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft. The pilot is also responsible to comply with instrument flight rules applicable to the flight (e.g., adherence to ATC clearances).*

2. *Although IFR separation is not applied, controllers must continue to provide traffic advisories and safety alerts, and apply merging target procedures to aircraft operating VFR-on-top.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–6, Safety Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–8, Merging Target Procedures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–1–1, Class A Airspace Restrictions.
AIM, Para 5–5–13, VFR–on–top.
14 CFR Section 91.157, Special VFR Weather Minimums.
14 CFR Section 91.159, VFR Cruising Altitude or Flight Level.

b. You may clear an aircraft to climb through clouds, smoke, haze, or other meteorological formations and then to maintain "VFR-on-top" if the following conditions are met:

1. The pilot requests the clearance.

2. You inform the pilot of the reported height of the tops of the meteorological formation, or

3. You inform the pilot that no top report is available.

4. When necessary, you ensure separation from all other traffic for which you have separation responsibility by issuing an alternative clearance.

5. When an aircraft is climbing to and reports reaching "VFR-on-top," reclear the aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top."

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLIMB TO AND REPORT REACHING VFR-ON-TOP,

and

TOPS REPORTED (altitude),

or

NO TOPS REPORTS.

IF NOT ON TOP AT (altitude), MAINTAIN (altitude), AND ADVISE.

MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP.

c. Do not clear an aircraft to maintain "VFR-on-top" between sunset and sunrise to separate holding aircraft from each other or from en route aircraft unless restrictions are applied to ensure the appropriate IFR vertical separation.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP AT OR ABOVE/BELOW/ BETWEEN (altitudes).

EXAMPLE–
"Maintain VFR-on-top at or above one three thousand five hundred."

"Maintain VFR-on-top at or below one two thousand five hundred."

"Maintain VFR-on-top at or between six thousand and one zero thousand."

d. When, in your judgment, there is reason to believe that flight in VFR conditions may become impractical, issue an alternative clearance which will ensure separation from all other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
IF UNABLE, (alternative procedure), AND ADVISE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–3–3, VFR-on-top.

7−3−2. ALTITUDE FOR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT

Inform an aircraft maintaining "VFR-on-top" when a report indicates the pilot is not complying with 14 CFR Section 91.159(a).

NOTE−
As required by 14 CFR Section 91.159(a), the appropriate VFR altitudes for aircraft (not in a holding pattern of 2 minutes or less, or turning) operating more than 3,000 feet above the surface to and including 18,000 feet MSL:

Magnetic courses 0−179− odd cardinal altitudes plus 500 feet; e.g., 3,500, 5,500.

Magnetic courses 180−359− even cardinal altitudes plus 500 feet; e.g., 4,500, 8,500.

PHRASEOLOGY−
VFR-ON-TOP CRUISING LEVELS FOR YOUR DIRECTION OF FLIGHT ARE:

more than 3,000 feet above the surface to FL 180:

ODD/EVEN ALTITUDES/FLIGHT LEVELS PLUS FIVE HUNDRED FEET.

Section 4. Approaches

7−4−1. VISUAL APPROACH

A visual approach is an ATC authorization for an aircraft on an IFR flight plan to proceed visually to the airport of intended landing; it is not an instrument approach procedure. Also, there is no missed approach segment. An aircraft unable to complete a visual approach must be handled as any go-around and appropriate separation must be provided.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−10−2, Forwarding Approach Information by Nonapproach Control Facilities.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−4, Approaches to Multiple Runways.

7−4−2. VECTORS FOR VISUAL APPROACH

A vector for a visual approach may be initiated if the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA and the visibility is 3 miles or greater. At airports without weather reporting service there must be reasonable assurance (e.g. area weather reports, PIREPs, etc.) that descent and flight to the airport can be made visually, and the pilot must be informed that weather information is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Ident) FLY HEADING OR TURN RIGHT/LEFT HEADING (degrees) VECTOR FOR VISUAL APPROACH TO (airport name).

(If appropriate)

WEATHER NOT AVAILABLE.

NOTE−
At airports where weather information is not available, a pilot request for a visual approach indicates that descent and flight to the airport can be made visually and clear of clouds.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−1, Vectors to Final Approach Course.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−3, Clearance for Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−4, Approaches to Multiple Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−7, Sequencing.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3, Separation.

7−4−3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH

ARTCCs and approach controls may clear aircraft for visual approaches using the following procedures:

NOTE−
Towers may exercise this authority when authorized by a LOA with the facility that provides the IFR service, or by a facility directive at collocated facilities.

a. Controllers may initiate, or pilots may request, a visual approach even when an aircraft is being vectored for an instrument approach and the pilot subsequently reports:

1. The airport or the runway in sight at airports with operating control towers.

2. The airport in sight at airports without a control tower.

b. Resolve potential conflicts with all other aircraft, advise an overtaking aircraft of the distance to the preceding aircraft and speed difference, and ensure that weather conditions at the airport are VFR or that the pilot has been informed that weather is not available for the destination airport. Upon pilot request, advise the pilot of the frequency to receive weather information where AWOS/ASOS is available.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign) (control instructions as required) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH RUNWAY (number);

or

(Call sign) (control instructions as required) CLEARED VISUAL APPROACH TO (airport name)

(and if appropriate)

WEATHER NOT AVAILABLE OR VERIFY THAT YOU HAVE THE (airport) WEATHER.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

c. Clear an aircraft for a visual approach when:

1. The aircraft is number one in the approach sequence, or

2. The aircraft is to follow a preceding aircraft and the pilot reports the preceding aircraft in sight and is instructed to follow it, or

NOTE–
The pilot need not report the airport/runway in sight.

3. The pilot reports the airport or runway in sight but not the preceding aircraft. Radar separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

d. All aircraft following a heavy, or a small aircraft following a B757, must be informed of the airplane manufacturer and/or model.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Boeing 757, 12 o'clock, six miles."

or

"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Seven fifty seven, 12 o'clock, six miles."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para.2–4–21, Description of Aircraft Types.

NOTE–
Visual separation is not authorized when the lead aircraft is a super.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-2-1.

e. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position prior to communications transfer at controlled airports. ARTS/STARS functions may be used provided a facility directive or LOA specifies control and communication transfer points.

f. In addition to the requirements of para 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and subparas a, b, c, d, and e, ensure that the location of the destination airport is provided when the pilot is asked to report the destination airport in sight.

g. In those instances where airports are located in close proximity, also provide the location of the airport that may cause the confusion.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Five Six November, Cleveland Burke Lakefront Airport is at 12 o'clock, 5 miles. Cleveland Hopkins Airport is at 1 o'clock 12 miles. Report Cleveland Hopkins in sight."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–4, Approaches to Multiple Runways.

7–4–4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS

a. All aircraft must be informed that approaches are being conducted to parallel, intersecting, or converging runways. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

b. When conducting visual approaches to multiple runways ensure the following:

1. Do not permit the respective aircrafts' primary radar targets to touch unless visual separation is being applied.

2. When the aircraft flight paths intersect, ensure approved separation is maintained until visual separation is provided.

c. In addition to the requirements in para 7–2–1, Visual Separation, para 7–4–1, Visual Approach, para 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and para 7–4–3, Clearance for Visual Approach, the following conditions apply to visual approaches being conducted simultaneously to parallel, intersecting, and converging runways, as appropriate:

1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless approved separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation. However, do not permit a super or heavy aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a B757 or other large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.

2. Parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet, but less than 4,300 feet.

(a) Approved separation is provided until the aircraft are:

(1) Established on a heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/ instrument approach procedure which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees, and,

(2) Issued an approach clearance and one pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual approach clearance, and,

(3) The other pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual or instrument approach clearance.

NOTE–
1. *The intent of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the extended centerline of the runway and preclude side-by-side operations with one*

or both aircraft in a "belly-up" configuration during the turn. Aircraft performance, speed, and the number of degrees of the turn are factors to be considered when vectoring aircraft to parallel runways.

2. *Variances between heading assigned to intercept the extended centerline of the runway and aircraft ground track are expected due to the effect of wind and course corrections after completion of the turn and pilot acknowledgment of a visual approach clearance.*

3. *Procedures using Radius-to-Fix legs that intercept final may be used in lieu of 30-degree intercept provisions contained in this paragraph.*

REFERENCE–
FAA Publication, Pilot's Handbook of Aeronautical Knowledge, Chapter 15 "Effect of Wind."

(b) Visual approaches may be conducted to one runway while visual or instrument approaches are conducted simultaneously to other runways, provided the conditions of subpara (a) are met.

(c) Provided aircraft flight paths do not intersect, and when the provisions of subparas (a) and (b) are met, it is not necessary to apply any other type of separation with aircraft on the adjacent final approach course.

3. Parallel runways separated by 4,300 feet or more.

(a) When aircraft flight paths do not intersect, visual approaches may be conducted simultaneously, provided approved separation is maintained until one of the aircraft has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance.

(b) Visual approaches may be conducted to one runway while visual or instrument approaches are conducted simultaneously to other runways, provided the conditions of subpara (a) are met.

(c) Provided the aircraft flight paths do not intersect, when the provisions of subparas (a) and (b) are met, it is not necessary to apply any other type of separation with aircraft on the adjacent final approach course.

(d) Each aircraft must either be assigned a heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will allow the aircraft to intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.

NOTE–
1. *The intent of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the extended centerline of the runway and preclude side-by-side operations with one or both aircraft in a "belly-up" configuration during the turn. Aircraft performance, speed, and the number of degrees of the turn are factors to be considered when vectoring aircraft to parallel runways.*

2. *Variances between heading assigned to intercept the extended centerline of the runway and aircraft ground track are expected due to the effect of wind and course corrections after completion of the turn and pilot acknowledgment of a visual approach clearance.*

3. *Procedures using Radius-to-Fix legs that intercept final may be used in lieu of 30-degree intercept provisions contained in this paragraph.*

REFERENCE–
FAA Publication, Pilot's Handbook of Aeronautical Knowledge, Chapter 15 "Effect of Wind."

4. Intersecting and converging runways. Visual approaches may be conducted simultaneously with visual or instrument approaches to other runways, provided:

(a) Approved separation is maintained until the aircraft conducting the visual approach has been issued, and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of, the visual approach clearance.

(b) When aircraft flight paths intersect, approved separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

NOTE–
Although simultaneous approaches may be conducted to intersecting runways, staggered approaches may be necessary to meet the airport separation requirements specified in Para 3–10–4, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.79, Charted Visual Flight Procedures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–5, Charted Visual Flight Procedures (CVFP). USA/USN Not Applicable.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–7–3, Separation.

7–4–5. CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURES (CVFP). USA/USN NOT APPLICABLE

Clear an aircraft for a CVFP only when the following conditions are met:

a. There is an operating control tower.

b. The published name of the CVFP and the landing runway are specified in the approach clearance, the reported ceiling at the airport of intended landing is at least 500 feet above the MVA/MIA, and the visibility is 3 miles or more, unless higher minimums are published for the particular CVFP.

c. When using parallel or intersecting/converging runways, the criteria specified in Para 7−4−4, Approaches to Multiple Runways, are applied.

d. An aircraft not following another aircraft on the approach reports sighting a charted visual landmark, or reports sighting a preceding aircraft landing on the same runway and has been instructed to follow that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Ident) CLEARED (name of CVFP) APPROACH.

7−4−6. CONTACT APPROACH

Clear an aircraft for a contact approach only if the following conditions are met:

a. The pilot has requested it.

NOTE−
When executing a contact approach, the pilot is responsible for maintaining the required flight visibility, cloud clearance, and terrain/obstruction clearance. Unless otherwise restricted, the pilot may find it necessary to descend, climb, and/or fly a circuitous route to the airport to maintain cloud clearance and/or terrain/obstruction clearance. It is not in any way intended that controllers will initiate or suggest a contact approach to a pilot.

b. The reported ground visibility is at least 1 statute mile.

c. A standard or special instrument approach procedure has been published and is functioning for the airport of intended landing.

d. Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and other IFR or SVFR aircraft. When applying vertical separation, do not assign a fixed altitude but clear the aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 1,000 feet below any IFR traffic but not below the minimum safe altitude prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.119.

NOTE−
14 CFR Section 91.119 specifies the minimum safe altitude to be flown:
(a) Anywhere.
(b) Over congested areas.
(c) Other than congested areas. To provide for an emergency landing in the event of power failure and without undue hazard to persons or property on the surface.
(d) Helicopters. May be operated at less than the minimums prescribed in paras (b) and (c) above if the operation is conducted without hazard to persons or property on the surface.

e. An alternative clearance is issued when weather conditions are such that a contact approach may be impracticable.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED CONTACT APPROACH,

And if required,
AT OR BELOW (altitude) (routing).

IF NOT POSSIBLE, (alternative procedures), AND ADVISE.

Section 5. Special VFR (SVFR)

7−5−1. AUTHORIZATION

a. SVFR operations in weather conditions less than basic VFR minima are authorized:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

1. At any location not prohibited by 14 CFR Part 91, Appendix D or when an exemption to 14 CFR Part 91 has been granted and an associated LOA established. 14 CFR Part 91 does not prohibit SVFR helicopter operations.

2. Only within the lateral boundaries of Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas, below 10,000 feet MSL.

3. Only when requested by the pilot.

4. On the basis of weather conditions reported at the airport of intended landing/departure.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−5−6, Climb to VFR.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−5−7, Ground Visibility Below One Mile.

5. When weather conditions are not reported at the airport of intended landing/departure and the pilot advises that VFR cannot be maintained and requests SVFR.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO ENTER/OUT OF/THROUGH, (name) SURFACE AREA

and if required,

(direction) OF (name) AIRPORT (specified routing), and

MAINTAIN SPECIAL V−F−R CONDITIONS,

and if required,

AT OR BELOW (altitude below 10,000 feet MSL)

or as applicable under an exemption from 14 CFR Part 91,

CLEARED FOR (coded arrival or departure procedure) ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE, (additional instructions as required).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−22, Airspace Classes.

b. SVFR operations may be authorized for aircraft operating in or transiting a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area when the primary airport is reporting VFR but the pilot advises that basic VFR cannot be maintained.

NOTE−
The basic requirements for issuance of a SVFR clearance in subpara a apply with the obvious exception that weather conditions at the controlling airport are not required to be less than basic VFR minima.

7−5−2. PRIORITY

a. SVFR flights may be approved only if arriving and departing IFR aircraft are not delayed.

EXAMPLE−
1. *A SVFR aircraft has been cleared to enter a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area and subsequently an IFR aircraft is ready to depart or is in position to begin an approach. Less overall delay might accrue to the IFR aircraft if the SVFR aircraft is allowed to proceed to the airport and land, rather than leave, a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area or be repositioned to provide IFR priority.*

2. *A SVFR aircraft is number one for takeoff and located in such a position that the number two aircraft, an IFR flight, cannot taxi past to gain access to the runway. Less overall delay might accrue to the IFR aircraft by releasing the SVFR departure rather than by having the aircraft taxi down the runway to a turnoff point so the IFR aircraft could be released first.*

NOTE−
The priority afforded IFR aircraft over SVFR aircraft is not intended to be so rigidly applied that inefficient use of airspace results. The controller has the prerogative of permitting completion of a SVFR operation already in progress when an IFR aircraft becomes a factor if better overall efficiency will result.

b. Inform an aircraft of the anticipated delay when a SVFR clearance cannot be granted because of IFR traffic. Do not issue an EFC or expected departure time.

PHRASEOLOGY−
EXPECT (number) MINUTES DELAY, (additional instructions as necessary).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−1, Application.

7–5–3. SEPARATION

a. Apply non-radar or visual separation between:

1. SVFR fixed wing aircraft.

2. SVFR fixed-wing aircraft and SVFR Helicopters.

3. SVFR fixed-wing aircraft and IFR aircraft.

NOTE–
1. *Vertical separation is authorized between SVFR fixed wing aircraft and IFR aircraft as prescribed in FAA JO 7110.65, Paragraph 7-5-4 Altitude Assignments*

2. *Due to the requirements for SVFR fixed-wing aircraft to maintain 1-mile flight visibility and to remain clear of clouds, radar separation is not authorized during SVFR fixed-wing operations. Radar vectors are authorized, as prescribed in para 5-6-1, Application, subparagraph f, to expedite the entrance, exit, and transition of SVFR fixed-wing aircraft through the appropriate surface area.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 6, Nonradar
FAAO JO 7110.65, para 7-2-1 Visual Separation
FAAO JO 7110.65, para 7-5-4 Altitude Assignment

b. Apply non-radar, visual, or IFR radar separation between:

1. SVFR Helicopters.

2. SVFR Helicopters and IFR aircraft.

NOTE–
1. *Vertical separation is authorized between SVFR helicopters and IFR aircraft as prescribed in FAA JO 7110.65, Paragraph 7-5-4 Altitude Assignments*

2. *Radar separation as prescribed in Chapter 5 may be applied provided that the facility conducting the operation is authorized to provide radar separation services in accordance with FAAO 7210.3, paragraph 10-5-3, Functional Use of Certified Tower Radar Displays (CTRD), subparagraph b5, and subparagraph d. Facilities that are not delegated airspace or separation responsibility must use CTRDs in accordance with FAAO 7110.65, paragraph 3-1-9, Use of Tower Radar Displays, subparagraph b.*

c. Alternate SVFR helicopter separation minima may be established when warranted by the volume and/or complexity of local helicopter operations. Alternate SVFR helicopter separation minima must be established with an LOA with the helicopter operator which must specify, as a minimum, that SVFR helicopters are to maintain visual reference to the surface and adhere to the following aircraft separation minima:

1. Between a SVFR helicopter and an arriving or departing IFR aircraft:

(a) $^{1}/_{2}$ mile. If the IFR aircraft is less than 1 mile from the landing airport.

(b) 1 mile. If the IFR aircraft is 1 mile or more from the airport.

2. 1 mile between SVFR helicopters. This separation may be reduced to 200 feet if:

(a) Both helicopters are departing simultaneously on courses that diverge by at least 30 degrees and:

(1) The tower can determine this separation by reference to surface markings; or

(2) One of the departing helicopters is instructed to remain at least 200 feet from the other.

NOTE–
1. *Vertical separation is authorized between SVFR helicopters and IFR aircraft as prescribed in FAAO 7110.65, 7-5-4, Altitude Assignments.*

2. *Radar separation as prescribed in Chapter 5 may be applied provided that the facility conducting the operation is authorized to provide radar separation services in accordance with FAAO 7210.3, paragraph 10-5-3, Functional Use of Certified Tower Radar Displays (CTRD), subparagraph b5, and subparagraph d. Facilities that are not delegated airspace or separation responsibility must use CTRDs in accordance with FAAO 7110.65, paragraph 3-1-9, Use of Tower Radar Displays, subparagraph b.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, para 7-2-1, Visual Separation
FAAO JO 7110.65, para 7-5-4 Altitude Separation
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 6, Nonradar
FAAO JO 7210.3, para 10-5-3, Functional Use of Certified Tower Radar Displays

7–5–4. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

Do not assign a fixed altitude when applying vertical separation, but clear the SVFR aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 500 feet below any conflicting IFR traffic but not below the MSA prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.119.

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN SPECIAL V–F–R CONDITIONS AT OR BELOW (altitude).

NOTE–
1. *SVFR aircraft are not assigned fixed altitudes to*

maintain because of the clearance from clouds requirement.

2. *The MSAs are:*

(a) Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle, and

(b) Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.

(c) Helicopters may be operated at less than the minimum altitudes prescribed in (a) and (b) above.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−1, Application.
14 CFR Section 91.119, Minimum Safe Altitudes: General.

7−5−5. LOCAL OPERATIONS

a. Authorize local SVFR operations for a specified period (series of landings and takeoffs, etc.) upon request if the aircraft can be recalled when traffic or weather conditions require. Where warranted, LOAs may be consummated.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LOCAL SPECIAL V−F−R OPERATIONS IN THE IMMEDIATE VICINITY OF (name) AIRPORT ARE AUTHORIZED UNTIL (time). MAINTAIN SPECIAL V−F−R CONDITIONS.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−2, Appropriate Subjects.

b. Control facilities may also authorize an FSS to transmit SVFR clearances so that only one aircraft at a time operates in the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas unless pilots agree that they will maintain visual separation with other aircraft operating in the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas. Such authorization concerning visual separation by pilots must be contained in a LOA between the control facility and the FSS.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4−3−3, Developing LOA.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

7−5−6. CLIMB TO VFR

Authorize an aircraft to climb to VFR upon request if the only weather limitation is restricted visibility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLIMB TO V−F−R WITHIN (name) SURFACE AREA/WITHIN (a specified distance) MILES FROM (airport name) AIRPORT, MAINTAIN SPECIAL V−F−R CONDITIONS UNTIL REACHING V−F−R.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−22, Airspace Classes.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−5−1, Authorization.

7−5−7. GROUND VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE

14 CFR Part 91 does not prohibit helicopter SVFR flight when the visibility is less than 1 mile. Treat requests for SVFR fixed wing operations as follows when the ground visibility is officially reported at an airport as less than 1 mile:

a. Inform departing aircraft that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Inform arriving aircraft, operating outside of a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and that, unless an emergency exists, a clearance cannot be issued.

c. Inform arriving aircraft, operating VFR/SVFR within a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area, that ground visibility is less than 1 mile and request the pilot to advise intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Name of airport) VISIBILITY LESS THAN ONE MILE. ADVISE INTENTIONS.

NOTE−
Clear an aircraft to land at an airport with an operating control tower, traffic permitting, if the pilot reports the airport in sight. The pilot is responsible to continue to the airport or exit the surface area. 14 CFR Section 91.157 prohibits VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) from landing at any airport within a surface area when ground visibility is less than 1 mile. A pilot could inadvertently encounter conditions that are below SVFR minimums after entering a surface area due to rapidly changing weather. The pilot is best suited to determine the action to be taken since pilots operating under SVFR between sunrise and sunset are not required to be instrument rated, and the possibility exists that flight visibility may not be the same as ground visibility. 14 CFR Section 91.3 authorizes a pilot encountering an inflight emergency requiring immediate action to deviate from any rule of 14 CFR Part 91 to the extent required to meet that emergency. Flight into adverse weather conditions may require the pilot to execute the emergency authority granted in 14 CFR Section 91.3 and continue inbound to land.

d. Authorize scheduled air carrier aircraft in the U.S. to conduct operations if ground visibility is not less than $^1/_2$ statute mile.

NOTE−
14 CFR Part 121 permits landing or takeoff by domestic scheduled air carriers where a local surface restriction to visibility is not less than 1/2 statute mile, provided all turns after takeoff or before landing and all flights beyond 1 statute mile from the airport boundary can be

accomplished above or outside the area so restricted. The pilot is solely responsible for determining if the nature of the visibility restriction will permit compliance with the provisions of 14 CFR Part 121.

e. Clear an aircraft to fly through the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area if the aircraft reports flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−5−1, Authorization.

7−5−8. FLIGHT VISIBILITY BELOW ONE MILE

Treat requests for SVFR fixed-wing operations as follows when weather conditions are not reported at an airport and the pilot advises the flight visibility is less than 1 mile:

NOTE−
14 CFR Part 91 prescribes the visibility for basic VFR and SVFR operations as the official reported ground visibility at airports where provided and landing or takeoff "flight visibility" where there is no official reported ground visibility.

a. Inform departing aircraft that a clearance cannot be issued.

b. Inform arriving aircraft operating outside of a Class B, Class C, Class D or Class E surface area that a clearance cannot be issued unless an emergency exists.

c. Request the intentions of an arriving aircraft operating within a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area.

NOTE−
Clear an aircraft to land at an airport with an operating control tower, traffic permitting, if the pilot reports the airport in sight. The pilot is responsible to continue to the airport or exit the surface area. 14 CFR Section 91.157 prohibits VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) from landing at any airport within a surface area when flight visibility is less than 1 mile. A pilot could inadvertently encounter conditions that are below SVFR minimums after entering a surface area due to rapidly changing weather. The pilot is best suited to determine the action to be taken since pilots operating under SVFR between sunrise and sunset are not required to be instrument rated, and the possibility exists that flight visibility may not be the same as ground visibility. 14 CFR Section 91.3 authorizes a pilot encountering an inflight emergency requiring immediate action to deviate from any rule of 14 CFR Part 91 to the extent required to meet that emergency. Flight into adverse weather conditions may require the pilot to execute the emergency authority granted in 14 CFR Section 91.3 and continue inbound to land.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

Section 6. Basic Radar Service to VFR Aircraft− Terminal

7−6−1. APPLICATION

a. Basic radar services for VFR aircraft must include:

1. Safety alerts.

2. Traffic advisories.

3. Limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot.

4. Sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a LOA.

b. Apply the procedures contained in para 7−1−3, Approach Control Service for VFR Arriving Aircraft, when arriving VFR aircraft are handled by approach control and provide vectoring service in accordance with Chapter 5, Radar, Section 7, Speed Adjustment, in addition to the radar services prescribed in para 5−6−1, Application, and para 5−6−2, Methods.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−16, Surface Areas.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 11, Section 1, Terminal VFR Radar Services.
AIM, Para 4−1−18, Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft.

7−6−2. SERVICE AVAILABILITY

a. Inform aircraft on initial contact whenever this service cannot be provided because of radar outage and apply para 7−1−3, Approach Control Service for VFR Arriving Aircraft.

b. Provide the service, to the extent possible using an available frequency, if an aircraft desires the service but cannot communicate on the appropriate frequencies. Aircraft which do not desire radar service may be fitted into the landing sequence by the tower. Coordination of these aircraft must be accomplished with the approach control unless a facility directive/LOA prescribes otherwise. Nonparticipating aircraft must, to the extent possible, be given the same landing sequence they would have received had they been sequenced by radar vectors.

c. Radar sequencing to the primary airport, when local procedures have been developed, must be provided unless the pilot states that the service is not requested. Arriving aircraft are assumed to want radar service unless the pilot states "Negative radar service," or makes a similar comment.

7−6−3. INITIAL CONTACT

An aircraft sighted by the local controller at the time of first radio contact may be positioned in the landing sequence after coordination with approach control.

7−6−4. IDENTIFICATION

Identify the aircraft before taking action to position it in the approach sequence.

7−6−5. HOLDING

Hold VFR aircraft over the initial reporting fix or a fix near the airport when holding is required to establish an approach sequence.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−1−4, Visual Holding of VFR Aircraft.

7−6−6. APPROACH SEQUENCE

Do not assign landing sequence numbers, when establishing aircraft in the approach sequence, unless this responsibility has been delegated in a LOA or facility directive.

NOTE−
The landing sequence is ordinarily established by the tower.

7−6−7. SEQUENCING

a. Establish radar contact before instructing a VFR aircraft to enter the traffic pattern at a specified point or vectoring the aircraft to a position in the approach sequence. Inform the pilot of the aircraft to follow when the integrity of the approach sequence is dependent on following a preceding aircraft. Ensure visual contact is established with the aircraft to follow and provide instruction to follow that aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
FOLLOW (description) (position, if necessary).

b. Direct a VFR aircraft to a point near the airport to hold when a position is not available in the approach sequence for the runway in use. The aircraft may be vectored to another runway after coordination with the tower.

c. Apply the following procedures to a VFR aircraft being radar sequenced:

1. The provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g.

2. When parallel runways are less than 2,500 feet apart, do not permit a super or heavy aircraft to overtake any aircraft, nor a B757 or other large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft established on final within the facility's area of responsibility.

7−6−8. CONTROL TRANSFER

a. Inform the tower of the aircraft's position and then instruct the pilot to contact the tower.

b. The aircraft may be instructed to contact the tower prior to the tower being advised of the aircraft's position provided:

1. The tower advises the aircraft is in sight, and

2. Space is available in the landing sequence.

c. Instruct the pilot to contact the tower at the appropriate point when the approach control ARTS/STARS track data is being displayed on the tower's BRITE/DBRITE/TDW display, the aircraft is tagged by ARTS/STARS, and a facility directive specifies change of communications and control jurisdiction points.

NOTE−
The point at which an aircraft is instructed to contact the tower is determined by prior coordination between the tower and approach control and will vary, depending on the runway in use, weather, etc. The transfer of communications ordinarily occurs at least 5 miles from the runway. The point for the transfer of communications should be a sufficient distance from the airport to permit the tower to properly sequence the aircraft, but not at a distance that could derogate the provision of radar traffic information service.

7−6−9. ABANDONED APPROACH

Instruct the aircraft to change to approach control for sequencing when an aircraft, under tower control, abandons the approach and coordination with approach control reveals no immediate space in the approach sequence.

7−6−10. VFR DEPARTURE INFORMATION

Inform departing VFR aircraft who request radar traffic advisories when to contact departure control and the frequency to use. Provide traffic advisories in accordance with para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories, after the departure is radar identified.

NOTE−
Departing aircraft desiring traffic information are expected to request the service and to state their proposed direction of flight upon initial contact with ground control.

7−6−11. TERMINATION OF SERVICE

Basic radar services should be provided to the extent possible, workload permitting. Terminate radar service to aircraft landing at airports other than those where sequencing service is provided at a sufficient distance from the airport to permit the pilot to change to the appropriate frequency for traffic and airport information.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO,

or

SQUAWK VFR,

then

CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED,

or

CONTACT (frequency identification),

or

FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

7−6−12. SERVICE PROVIDED WHEN TOWER IS INOPERATIVE

a. Provide the following services during hours when the tower is not in operation:

1. Wind direction and velocity.

NOTE−
Issue information provided from the FSS or WSO. Otherwise, inform the pilot that wind information is not available.

2. Traffic information.

3. Inform aircraft when radar service is terminated.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−13, Radar Service Termination.

b. Do not assign landing sequence.

Section 7. Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)− Terminal

7−7−1. APPLICATION

Apply TRSA procedures within the designated TRSA in addition to the basic services described in Chapter 7, Visual, Section 6, Basic Radar Service to VFR Aircraft− Terminal.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−2. ISSUANCE OF EFC

Inform the pilot when to expect further clearance when VFR aircraft are held either inside or outside the TRSA.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−3. SEPARATION

Separate VFR aircraft from VFR/IFR aircraft by any one of the following:

a. Visual separation, as specified in para 7−2−1, Visual Separation, para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and para 7−6−7, Sequencing.

NOTE−
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.

b. 500 feet vertical separation.

c. Target resolution, except when ISR is being displayed.

NOTE−
Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−4. HELICOPTER TRAFFIC

Helicopters need not be separated from other helicopters. Traffic information must be exchanged, as necessary.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. Altitude information contained in a clearance, instruction, or advisory to VFR aircraft must meet MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−2, Flight Direction.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−3, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−6, Minimum En Route Altitudes.

b. If required, issue altitude assignments, consistent with the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.119.

NOTE−
The MSAs are:
1. *Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle; and*

2. *Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.*

c. When necessary to assign an altitude for separation purposes to VFR aircraft contrary to 14 CFR Section 91.159, advise the aircraft to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude assignment is no longer needed for separation or when leaving the TRSA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−8−11, Practice Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−6−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−6. APPROACH INTERVAL

The tower must specify the approach interval.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−7−7. TRSA DEPARTURE INFORMATION

a. At controlled airports within the TRSA, inform a departing aircraft proposing to operate within the TRSA when to contact departure control and the frequency to use. If the aircraft is properly equipped, ground control or clearance delivery must issue the appropriate beacon code.

NOTE−
Departing aircraft are assumed to want TRSA service unless the pilot states, "negative TRSA service," or makes a similar comment. Pilots are expected to inform the controller of intended destination and/or route of flight and altitude.

b. Provide separation until the aircraft leaves the TRSA.

c. Inform VFR participating aircraft when leaving the TRSA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LEAVING THE (name) TRSA,

and as appropriate,

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY FOR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO.

d. Aircraft departing satellite controlled airports that will penetrate the TRSA should be provided the same service as those aircraft departing the primary airport. Procedures for handling this situation must be covered in a letter of agreement or facility directives, as appropriate.

e. Procedures for handling aircraft departing uncontrolled satellite airports must be advertised in a facility bulletin and service provided accordingly.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

Section 8. Class C Service− Terminal

7−8−1. APPLICATION

Apply Class C service procedures within the designated Class C airspace and the associated outer area. Class C services are designed to keep ATC informed of all aircraft within Class C airspace, not to exclude operations. Two-way radio communications and operational transponder are normally required for operations within Class C airspace, but operations without radio communications or transponder can be conducted by LOA, facility directive, or special arrangement with Class C airspace controlling facility.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.
14 CFR Section 91.215, ATC Transponder and Altitude Reporting Equipment and Use.

7−8−2. CLASS C SERVICES

a. Class C services include the following:

1. Sequencing of all aircraft to the primary airport.

2. Standard IFR services to IFR aircraft.

3. Separation, traffic advisories, and safety alerts between IFR and VFR aircraft.

4. Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts between VFR aircraft.

b. Provide Class C services to all aircraft operating within Class C airspace.

c. Provide Class C services to all participating aircraft in the outer area.

d. Aircraft should not normally be held. However, if holding is necessary, inform the pilot of the expected length of delay.

e. When a radar outage occurs, advise aircraft that Class C services are not available and, if appropriate, when to contact the tower.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−8−3. SEPARATION

Separate VFR aircraft from IFR aircraft by any one of the following:

a. Visual separation as specified in para 7−2−1, Visual Separation, para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and para 7−6−7, Sequencing.

NOTE−
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.

b. 500 feet vertical separation;

c. Target resolution, except when ISR is being displayed.

NOTE−
Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7−8−4. ESTABLISHING TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS

Class C service requires pilots to establish two-way radio communications before entering Class C airspace. If the controller responds to a radio call with, "(a/c call sign) standby," radio communications have been established and the pilot can enter Class C airspace. If workload or traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of Class C services, inform the pilot to remain outside Class C airspace until conditions permit the services to be provided.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(A/c call sign) REMAIN OUTSIDE CHARLIE AIRSPACE AND STANDBY.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−2−1, Visual Separation.

7–8–5. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. When necessary to assign altitudes to VFR aircraft, assign altitudes that meet the MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

b. Aircraft assigned altitudes which are contrary to 14 CFR Section 91.159 must be advised to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude is no longer needed for separation, when leaving the outer area, or when terminating Class C service.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.

7–8–6. EXCEPTIONS

a. VFR helicopters need not be separated from IFR helicopters. Traffic information and safety alerts must be issued as appropriate.

b. Hot air balloons need not be separated from IFR aircraft. Traffic information and safety alerts must be issued as appropriate.

7–8–7. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATIONS

a. Aircraft that will penetrate Class C airspace after departing controlled airports within or adjacent to Class C airspace must be provided the same services as those aircraft departing the primary airport. Procedures for handling this situation must be covered in a LOA or a facility directive, as appropriate.

b. Aircraft departing uncontrolled airports within Class C airspace must be handled using procedures advertised in a Letter to Airmen.

7–8–8. TERMINATION OF SERVICE

Unless aircraft are landing at secondary airports or have requested termination of service while in the outer area, provide services until the aircraft departs the associated outer area. Terminate Class C service to aircraft landing at other than the primary airport at a sufficient distance from the airport to allow the pilot to change to the appropriate frequency for traffic and airport information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED,

or

CONTACT (facility identification).

Section 9. Class B Service Area− Terminal

7−9−1. APPLICATION

Apply Class B services and procedures within the designated Class B airspace.

a. No person may operate an aircraft within Class B airspace unless:

1. The aircraft has an operable two-way radio capable of communications with ATC on appropriate frequencies for that Class B airspace.

2. The aircraft is equipped with the applicable operating transponder and automatic altitude reporting equipment specified in para (a) of 14 CFR Section 91.215, except as provided in para (d) of that section.

7−9−2. VFR AIRCRAFT IN CLASS B AIRSPACE

a. VFR aircraft must obtain an ATC clearance to operate in Class B airspace.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−18, Operational Requests.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−4−22, Airspace Classes.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED THROUGH/TO ENTER/OUT OF BRAVO AIRSPACE,

and as appropriate,

VIA (route). MAINTAIN (altitude) WHILE IN BRAVO AIRSPACE.

or

CLEARED AS REQUESTED.

(Additional instructions, as necessary.)

REMAIN OUTSIDE BRAVO AIRSPACE. (When necessary, reason and/or additional instructions.)

NOTE−
1. *Assignment of radar headings, routes, or altitudes is based on the provision that a pilot operating in accordance with VFR is expected to advise ATC if compliance will cause violation of any part of the CFR.*

2. *Separation and sequencing for VFR aircraft is dependent upon radar. Efforts should be made to segregate VFR traffic from IFR traffic flows when a radar outage occurs.*

b. Approve/deny requests from VFR aircraft to operate in Class B airspace based on workload, operational limitations and traffic conditions.

c. Inform the pilot when to expect further clearance when VFR aircraft are held either inside or outside Class B airspace.

d. Inform VFR aircraft when leaving Class B airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY−
LEAVING (name) BRAVO AIRSPACE,

and as appropriate,

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY FOR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES, RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED, SQUAWK ONE TWO ZERO ZERO.

7−9−3. METHODS

a. To the extent practical, clear large turbine engine-powered airplanes to/from the primary airport using altitudes and routes that avoid VFR corridors and airspace below the Class B airspace floor where VFR aircraft are operating.

NOTE−
Pilots operating in accordance with VFR are expected to advise ATC if compliance with assigned altitudes, headings, or routes will cause violation of any part of the CFR.

b. Vector aircraft to remain in Class B airspace after entry. Inform the aircraft when leaving and reentering Class B airspace if it becomes necessary to extend the flight path outside Class B airspace for spacing.

NOTE−
14 CFR Section 91.131 states that "Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, each person operating a large turbine engine-powered airplane to or from a primary airport for which a Class B airspace area is designated must operate at or above the designated floors of the Class B airspace area while within the lateral limits of that area." Such authorization should be the exception rather than the rule.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−10, Deviation Advisories.

c. Aircraft departing controlled airports within Class B airspace will be provided the same services as those aircraft departing the primary airport.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–18, Operational Requests.

7–9–4. SEPARATION

a. Standard IFR services to IFR aircraft.

b. VFR aircraft must be separated from VFR/IFR aircraft/ helicopter/rotorcraft that weigh more than 19,000 pounds and turbojets by no less than:

1. 1 $^1/_2$ miles separation, or

NOTE–
When ISR is being displayed, discontinue 1 1/2–NM separation.

2. 500 feet vertical separation, or

NOTE–
Apply the provisions of paragraph 5–5–4, Minima, when wake turbulence separation is required.

3. Visual separation, as specified in paragraph 7–2–1, Visual Separation, paragraph 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and paragraph 7–6–7, Sequencing.

NOTE–
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with paragraph 2–1–20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.

c. For the application of Class Bravo airspace separation requirements, the V-22 Osprey must be treated as a helicopter/rotorcraft.

d. VFR aircraft must be separated from all VFR/IFR aircraft which weigh 19,000 pounds or less by a minimum of:

1. Target resolution, except when ISR is being displayed, or

2. 500 feet vertical separation, or

NOTE–
1. *Apply the provisions of para 5–5–4, Minima, when wake turbulence separation is required.*

2. *Aircraft weighing 19,000 pounds or less include all aircraft in SRS Categories I and II plus G73, STAR, S601, BE30, SW3, B190 and C212.*

3. Visual separation, as specified in para 7–2–1, Visual Separation, para 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach, and para 7–6–7, Sequencing.

NOTE–
Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2–1–20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Lateral Separation.
P/CG Term– Radar Separation.
P/CG Term– Target Resolution.
P/CG Term– Visual Separation.

7–9–5. TRAFFIC ADVISORIES

a. Provide mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts, between all aircraft.

b. Apply merging target procedures in accordance with para 5–1–8, Merging Target Procedures.

7–9–6. HELICOPTER TRAFFIC

VFR helicopters need not be separated from VFR or IFR helicopters. Traffic advisories and safety alerts must be issued as appropriate.

7–9–7. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENTS

a. Altitude information contained in a clearance, instruction, or advisory to VFR aircraft must meet MVA, MSA, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

b. Issue altitude assignments, if required, consistent with the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.119.

NOTE–
The MSAs are:
1. *Over congested areas, an altitude at least 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle,*
2. *Over other than congested areas, an altitude at least 500 feet above the surface.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–2, Flight Direction.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–3, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–6, Minimum En Route Altitudes.

c. Aircraft assigned altitudes which are contrary to 14 CFR Section 91.159 must be advised to resume altitudes appropriate for the direction of flight when the altitude assignment is no longer required or when leaving Class B airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RESUME APPROPRIATE VFR ALTITUDES.

7–9–8. APPROACH INTERVAL

The tower must specify the approach interval.

Chapter 8. Offshore/Oceanic Procedures

Section 1. General

8−1−1. ATC SERVICE

Provide air traffic control service in oceanic controlled airspace in accordance with the procedures in this chapter except when other procedures/minima are prescribed in a directive or a letter of agreement.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Procedural Letters of Agreement, Para 1−1−9.

8−1−2. OPERATIONS IN OFFSHORE AIRSPACE AREAS

Provide air traffic control service in offshore airspace areas in accordance with procedures and minima in this chapter. For those situations not covered by this chapter, the provisions in this Order must apply.

8−1−3. VFR FLIGHT PLANS

VFR flights in Oceanic FIRs may be conducted in meteorological conditions equal to or greater than those specified in 14 CFR Section 91.155, Basic VFR weather minimums. Operations on a VFR flight plan are permitted only between sunrise and sunset and only within:

a. Miami, Houston, and San Juan Oceanic Control Areas (CTAs) below FL 180.

b. Within the Oakland FIR when operating less than 100 NM seaward from the shoreline within controlled airspace.

c. All Oceanic FIR airspace below the Oceanic CTAs.

8−1−4. TYPES OF SEPARATION

Separation must consist of at least one of the following:

a. Vertical separation;

b. Horizontal separation, either;

1. Longitudinal; or

2. Lateral;

c. Composite separation;

d. Radar separation, as specified in Chapter 5, Radar, where radar coverage is adequate.

8−1−5. ALTIMETER SETTING

Within oceanic control areas, unless directed and/or charted otherwise, altitude assignment must be based on flight levels and a standard altimeter setting of 29.92 inches Hg.

8−1−6. RECEIPT OF POSITION REPORTS

When a position report affecting separation is not received, take action to obtain the report no later than *10 minutes* after the control estimate, unless otherwise specified.

8−1−7. OCEANIC ERROR REPORT PROCEDURES

FAAO 7110.82 establishes procedures for reporting Gross Navigation Errors (GNE), height errors, time(longitudinal) errors, intervention, and Special Area of Operations (SAO) verification in oceanic airspace. This data is needed for risk modeling activities to support separation standard reductions.

8−1−8. USE OF CONTROL ESTIMATES

Control estimates are the estimated position of aircraft, with reference to time as determined by the ATC automation system in use or calculated by the controller using known wind patterns, previous aircraft transit times, pilot progress reports, and pilot estimates. These estimates may be updated through the receipt of automated position reports and/or manually updated by the controller. Control estimates must be used when applying time−based separation minima.

8−1−9. RVSM OPERATIONS

Controller responsibilities for non−RVSM aircraft operating in RVSM airspace must include but not be limited to the following:

a. Ensure non−RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the operations supervisor/CIC.

b. In addition to those aircraft listed in Chapter 2, Section 1, Paragraph 2-1-28 RVSM Operations in this order, the following aircraft operating within oceanic airspace or transiting to/from oceanic airspace are excepted:

1. Aircraft being initially delivered to the State of Registry or Operator;

2. Aircraft that was formerly RVSM approved but has experienced an equipment failure and is being flown to a maintenance facility for repair in order to meet RVSM requirements and/or obtain approval;

3. Aircraft being utilized for mercy or humanitarian purposes;

4. Within the Oakland, Anchorage, and Arctic FIR's, an aircraft transporting a spare engine mounted under the wing.

(a) These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic-permitting basis.

(b) All other requirements contained in paragraph 2-1-28 are applicable to this section.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-28, RVSM Operations

Section 2. Coordination

8−2−1. GENERAL

ARTCCs must:

a. Forward to appropriate ATS facilities, as a flight progresses, current flight plan and control information.

b. Coordinate flight plan and control information in sufficient time to permit the receiving facility to analyze the data and to effect any necessary additional coordination. This may be specified in a letter of agreement.

c. Coordinate with adjacent ATS facilities when airspace to be protected will overlap the common boundary.

d. Forward revisions of estimates of *3 minutes* or more to the appropriate ATS facility.

e. Coordinate with adjacent facilities on IFR and VFR flights to ensure the continuation of appropriate air traffic services.

8−2−2. TRANSFER OF CONTROL AND COMMUNICATIONS

a. Only one air traffic control unit must control an aircraft at any given time.

b. The control of an aircraft must be transferred from one control unit to another at the time the aircraft is estimated to cross the control boundary or at such other point or time agreed upon by the two units.

c. The transferring unit must forward to the accepting unit any changed flight plan or control data which are pertinent to the transfer.

d. The accepting unit must notify the transferring unit if it is unable to accept control under the terms specified, or it must specify the changes or conditions required so that the aircraft can be accepted.

e. The accepting unit must not alter the clearance of an aircraft that has not yet reached the transfer of control point without the prior approval of the transferring unit.

f. Where nonradar separation minima are being applied, the transfer of air-ground communications with an aircraft must be made *5 minutes* before the time at which the aircraft is estimated to reach the boundary unless otherwise agreed to by the control and/or communication units concerned.

8−2−3. AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES INTERFACILITY DATA COMMUNICATIONS (AIDC)

Where interfacility data communications capability has been implemented, its use for ATC coordination should be accomplished in accordance with regional Interface Control Documents, and supported by letters of agreement between the facilities concerned.

Section 3. Longitudinal Separation

8−3−1. APPLICATION

a. Longitudinal separation must be applied so that the spacing between the estimated positions of the aircraft being separated is never less than a prescribed minimum.

NOTE−
Consider separation to exist when the estimated positions of the aircraft being separated are never less than a prescribed minimum.

b. In situations where one aircraft requires a different time−based longitudinal standard than another, apply the larger of the two standards between the aircraft concerned.

c. Longitudinal separation expressed in distance may be applied as prescribed in Chapter 6, Nonradar.

d. In situations where an update to a control estimate indicates that the minimum being applied no longer exists, controllers must ensure that separation is reestablished. Issue traffic information as necessary.

8−3−2. SEPARATION METHODS

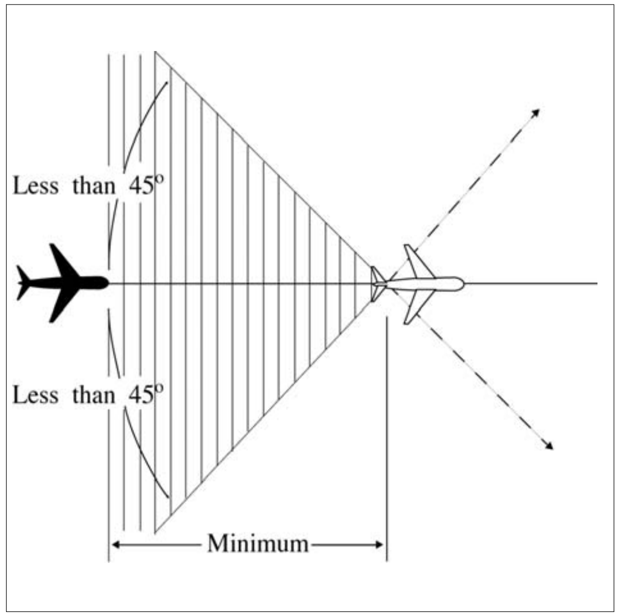
a. For the purpose of application of longitudinal separation, the terms *same track* must be considered identical to *same course*, *reciprocal tracks* must be considered identical to *reciprocal courses*, and *crossing tracks*, must be considered identical to *crossing courses*.

NOTE−
Refer to para 1−2−2, Course Definitions.

b. Separate aircraft longitudinally in accordance with the following:

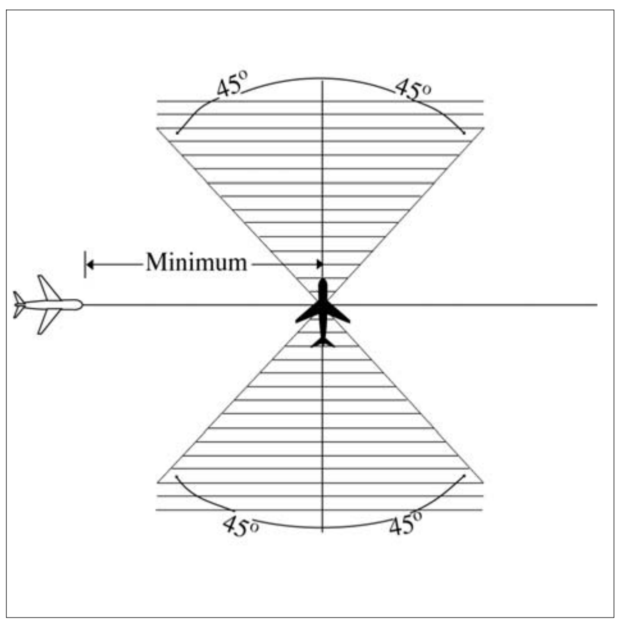
1. Same track. Ensure that the estimated spacing between aircraft is not less than the applicable minimum required. (See FIG 8−3−1.)

FIG 8−3−1
Same Courses



2. Crossing tracks. Ensure that the estimated spacing at the point of intersection is not less than the applicable minimum required. (See FIG 8−3−2.)

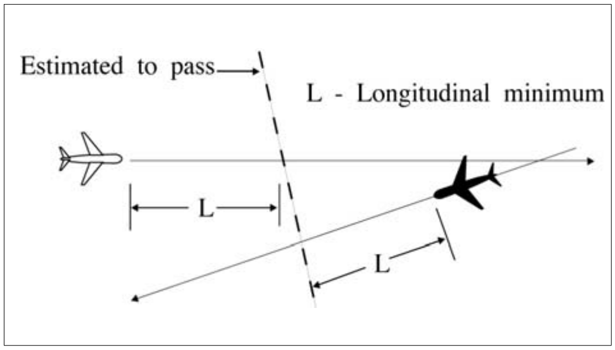
FIG 8−3−2
Crossing Courses



3. Reciprocal tracks:

(a) Ensure that aircraft are vertically separated for a time interval equal to the applicable minimum required before and after the aircraft are estimated to pass. (See FIG 8-3-3.)

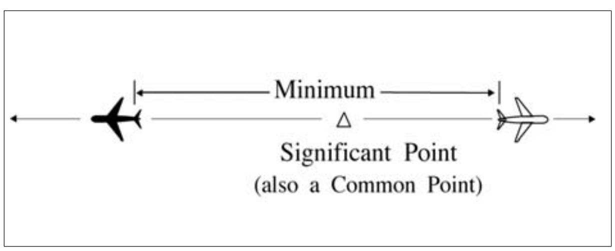
FIG 8-3-3
Reciprocal Courses



(b) Vertical separation may be discontinued after one of the following conditions are met:

(1) Both aircraft have reported passing a significant point and the aircraft are separated by at least the applicable minimum required for the same direction longitudinal spacing; (See FIG 8-3-4.) or

FIG 8-3-4
Vertical Separation



(2) Both aircraft have reported passing ground-based NAVAIDs or DME fixes indicating that they have passed each other.

8-3-3. MACH NUMBER TECHNIQUE

The use of Mach number technique allows for the application of reduced longitudinal separation minima. The following conditions must be met when the Mach number technique is being applied:

a. Aircraft Types: Turbojet aircraft only.

b. Routes:

1. The aircraft follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks, and

2. The aircraft concerned have reported over a common point; or

3. If the aircraft have *not* reported over a common point, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at the common point; or,

4. If a common point does not exist, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at significant points along each track.

c. Altitudes: The aircraft concerned are in level, climbing or descending flight.

d. Mach Number Assignment:

1. A Mach number (or, when appropriate, a range of Mach numbers) must be issued to each aircraft unless otherwise prescribed on the basis of ICAO regional agreement.

NOTE−
1. *The application of Mach number technique requires pilots to strictly adhere to the last assigned Mach number (or range of Mach numbers), even during climbs and descents, unless revised by ATC. Turbojet aircraft must request ATC approval before making any changes. If it is essential to make an immediate temporary change in the Mach number (e.g., due to turbulence), ATC must be notified as soon as possible that such a change has been made.*
2. *When it is necessary to issue crossing restrictions to ensure the appropriate time interval, it may be impossible for an aircraft to comply with both the clearance to meet the crossing restrictions and the clearance to maintain a single, specific Mach number.*

REFERENCE−
ICAO DOC 9426−AN/924, Part II, Section 2, Para 2.3.4, Para 2.4.7, and Para 2.5.3.

EXAMPLE−
"Maintain Mach point eight four or greater."
"Maintain Mach point eight three or less."
"Maintain Mach point eight two or greater; do not exceed Mach point eight four."

e. Longitudinal Minima:

When the Mach number technique is applied, minimum longitudinal separation must be:

1. *10 minutes*, provided that:

(a) The preceding aircraft maintains a Mach number equal to, or greater than that maintained by the following aircraft; or

(b) When the following aircraft is faster than the preceding aircraft, at least *10 minutes* exists until another form of separation is achieved; or

2. Between *9 and 5 minutes* inclusive, provided that the preceding aircraft is maintaining a Mach number greater than the following aircraft in accordance with the following:

(a) *9 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.02 faster than the following aircraft;

(b) *8 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.03 faster than the following aircraft;

(c) *7 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.04 faster than the following aircraft;

(d) *6 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.05 faster than the following aircraft;

(e) *5 minutes*, if the preceding aircraft is Mach 0.06 faster than the following aircraft.

NOTE−
A "rule−of−thumb" may be applied to assist in providing the required estimated spacing over the oceanic exit point when either conflict probe is not in use or when requested by another facility. This rule−of−thumb can be stated as follows: For each 600 NM in distance between the entry and exit points of the area where the Mach Number Technique is used, add 1 minute for each 0.01 difference in Mach number for the two aircraft concerned to compensate for the fact that the second aircraft is overtaking the first aircraft. (See TBL 8−3−1.)

TBL 8−3−1
Application of the Mach Number Technique When the Following Aircraft is Faster

Difference in Mach	**Distance to Fly and Separation (in Minutes) Required at Entry Point**				
	001−600 NM	**601−1200 NM**	**1201−1800 NM**	**1801−2400 NM**	**2401−3000 NM**
0.01	11	12	13	14	15
0.02	12	14	16	18	20
0.03	13	16	19	22	25
0.04	14	18	22	26	30
0.05	15	20	25	30	35
0.06	16	22	28	34	40
0.07	17	24	31	38	45
0.08	18	26	34	42	50
0.09	19	28	37	46	55
0.10	20	30	40	50	60

Section 4. Lateral Separation

8-4-1. APPLICATION

Separate aircraft by assigning different flight paths whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap.

Within that portion of the Gulf of Mexico Low Offshore airspace, use 12 NM between aircraft whose flight paths are defined by published Grid System waypoints.

NOTE-
1. *The Grid System is defined as those waypoints contained within the Gulf of Mexico Low Offshore airspace and published on the IFR Vertical Flight Reference Chart.*

2. *Lateral separation minima is contained in:*
Section 7, North Atlantic ICAO Region.
Section 8, Caribbean ICAO Region.
Section 9, Pacific ICAO Region.
Section 10, North American ICAO Region- Arctic CTA.

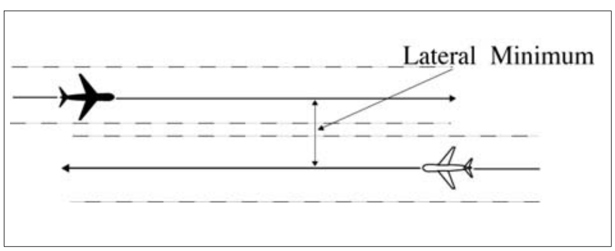
8-4-2. SEPARATION METHODS

Lateral separation exists for:

a. Nonintersecting flight paths:

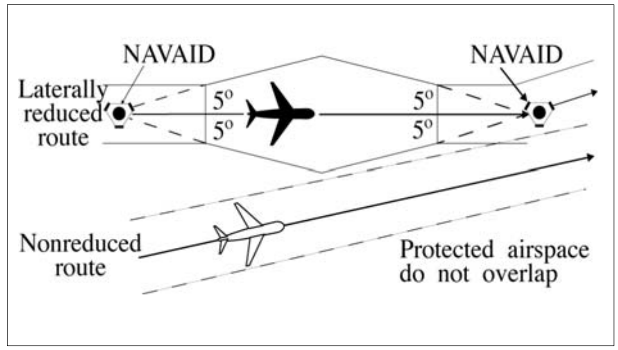
1. When the required distance is maintained between the flight paths; or (See FIG 8-4-1.)

FIG 8-4-1
Separation Methods



2. When reduced route protected airspace is applicable, and the protected airspace of the flight paths do not overlap; or (See FIG 8-4-2.)

FIG 8-4-2
Separation Methods

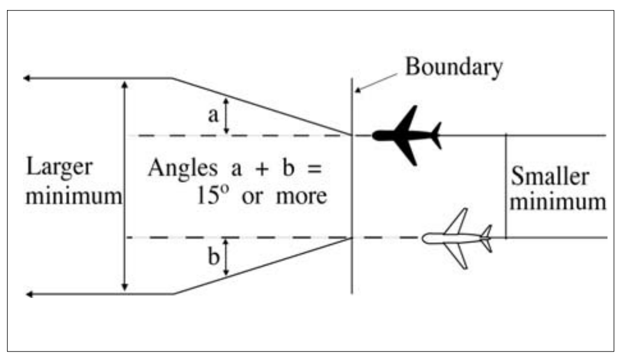


3. When aircraft are crossing an oceanic boundary and are entering an airspace with a larger lateral minimum than the airspace being exited; and

(a) The smaller separation exists at the boundary; and

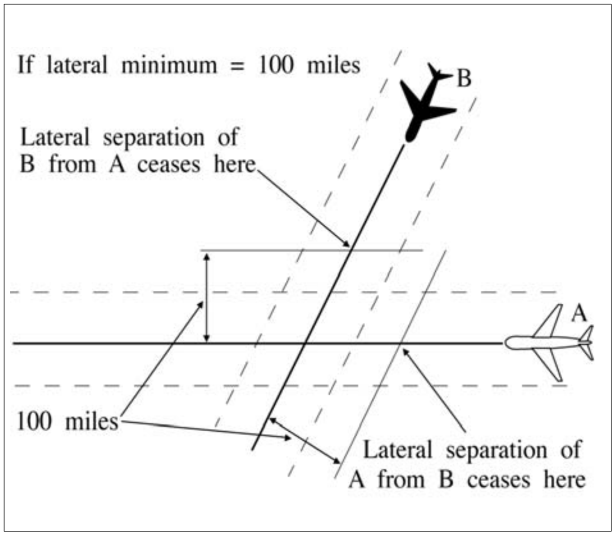
(b) Flight paths diverge by 15° or more until the larger minimum is established. (See FIG 8-4-3.)

FIG 8-4-3
Separation Methods



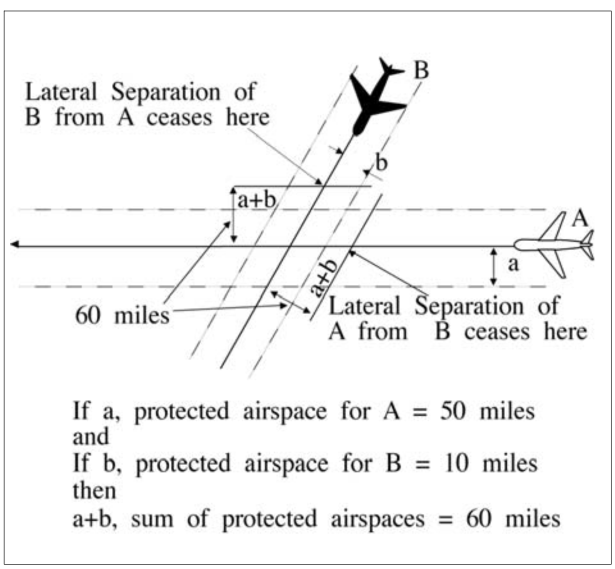
b. Intersecting flight paths with constant and same width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the applicable lateral separation minimum measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. (See FIG 8−4−4.)

FIG 8−4−4
Separation Methods



c. Intersecting flight paths with constant but different width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the sum of the protected airspace of both flight paths measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. (See FIG 8−4−5.)

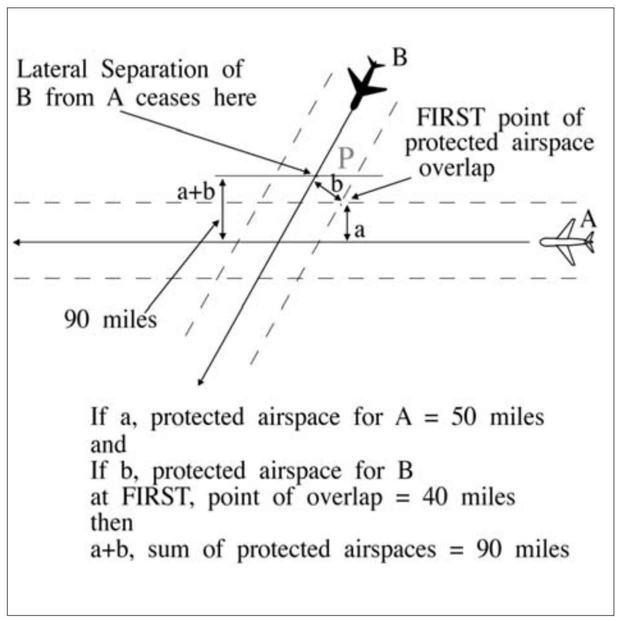
FIG 8−4−5
Separation Methods



d. Intersecting flight paths with variable width protected airspace when either aircraft is at or beyond a distance equal to the sum of the protected airspace of both flight paths measured perpendicular to the flight path of the other aircraft. Measure protected airspace for each aircraft perpendicular to its flight path at the first point or the last point, as applicable, of protected airspace overlap.

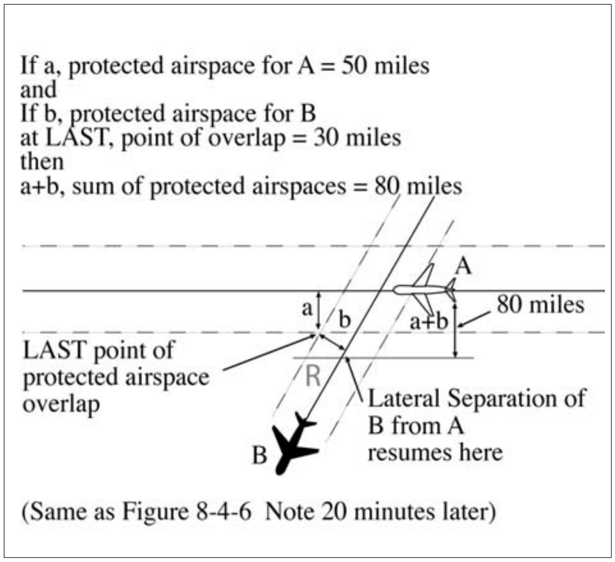
NOTE−
In FIG 8−4−5, the protected airspace for westbound flight A is distance "a" (50 miles), and for southwestbound flight B, distance "b" (10 miles). Therefore, the sum of distances "a" and "b"; i.e., the protected airspace of Aircrafts A and B, establishes the lateral separation minimum (60 miles) applicable for either flight relevant to the other.

FIG 8−4−6
Separation Methods



NOTE−
(See FIG 8−4−6.) At the first point of protected airspace overlap, the protected airspace for westbound flight A is distance "a" (50 miles), and for southbound flight B, distance "b" (40 miles). The sum of distances "a" and "b" (90 miles) establishes the lateral separation minimum applicable in this example for either flight as it approaches the intersection. For example, Aircraft B should be vertically separated from Aircraft A by the time it reaches point "p."

FIG 8−4−7
Separation Methods



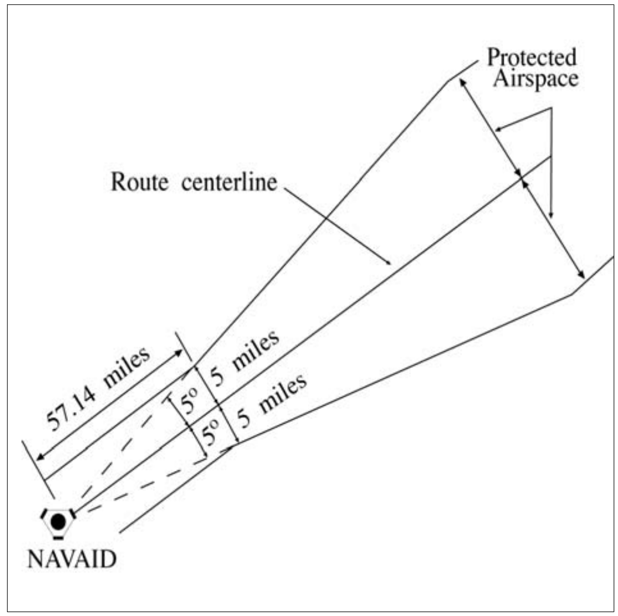
NOTE−
(See FIG 8−4−7.) Distance "a" (50 miles) and "b" (30 miles) are determined at the last point of protected airspace overlap. The sum of the distances "a" and "b" (80 miles) establishes the lateral separation minima applicable for either flight after it passes beyond the intersection. For example, Aircraft B could be cleared to, or through, Aircraft A's altitude after passing point "r."

8−4−3. REDUCTION OF ROUTE PROTECTED AIRSPACE

When routes have been satisfactorily flight checked and notice has been given to users, reduction in route protected airspace may be made as follows:

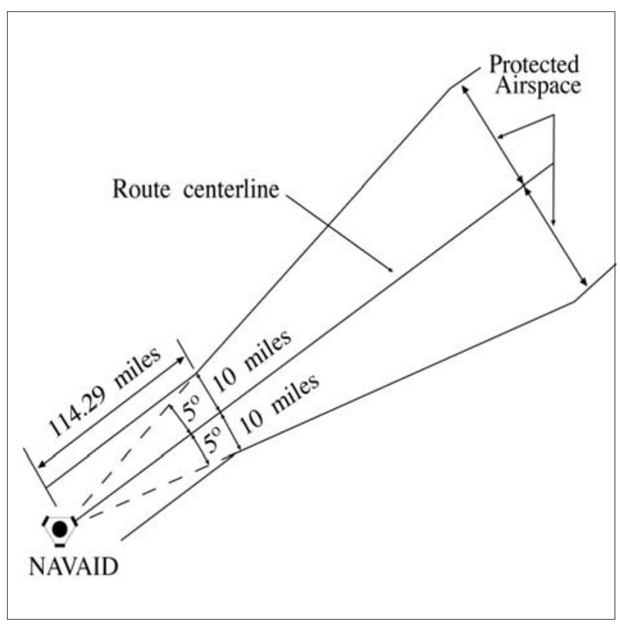
a. Below FL 240, reduce the width of the protected airspace to 5 miles on each side of the route centerline to a distance of 57.14 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 5° angle from the route centerline, measured at the NAVAID, to the maximum width allowable within the lateral minima; for example, 50 miles of protected airspace on each side of centerline; i.e., a lateral minimum of 100 miles. (See FIG 8−4−8.)

FIG 8−4−8
Reduction of Route Protected Airspace



b. At and above FL 240, reduce the width of the protected airspace to 10 miles on each side of the route centerline to a distance of 114.29 miles from the NAVAID, then increasing in width on a 5° angle from the route centerline, as measured at the NAVAID, to the maximum width allowable within the lateral minima; for example, 60 miles of protected airspace on each side of the centerline; i.e., a lateral separation minimum of 120 miles. (See FIG 8−4−9.)

FIG 8−4−9
Reduction of Route Protected Airspace



8−4−4. TRACK SEPARATION

Apply track separation between aircraft by requiring aircraft to fly specified tracks or radials and with specified spacings as follows:

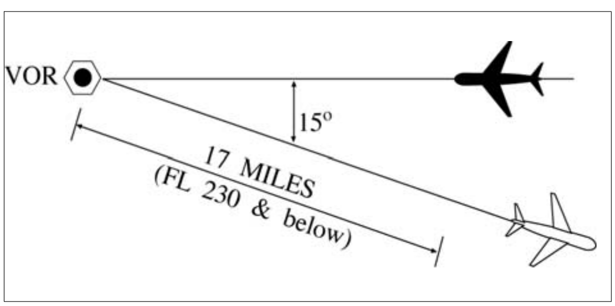
a. ***Same NAVAID:***

1. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN. Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on radials of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 15 degrees when either aircraft is clear of the airspace to be protected for the other aircraft. Use TBL 8−4−1 to determine the flight distance required for various divergence angles and altitudes to clear the airspace to be protected. (See FIG 8−4−10.)

TBL 8−4−1
Divergence-Distance Minima VOR/VORTAC/TACAN

Divergence (degrees)	Distance (mile)	
	FL 230 and below	Fl 240 through FL 450
15−25	17	18
26−35	11	13
36−90	8	11
Note: *This table compensates for DME slant range error.*		

FIG 8−4−10
Track Separation VOR



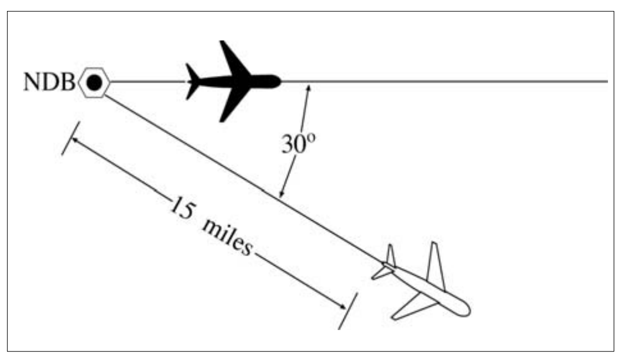
2. ***NDB:***

(a) Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on tracks of the same NAVAID that diverge by at least 30 degrees and one aircraft is at least 15 miles from the NAVAID. This separation must not be used when one or both aircraft are inbound to the aid unless the distance of the aircraft from the facility can be readily determined by reference to the NAVAID. Use TBL 8−4−2 to determine the flight distance required for various divergence angles to clear the airspace to be protected. For divergence that falls between two values, use the lesser value to obtain the distance. (See FIG 8−4−11.)

TBL 8−4−2
Divergence-Distance Minima (NDB)

Divergence (degrees)	Distance (mile)	
	FL 230 and below	FL 240 through FL 450
30	15	17
45	13	14
60	9	10
75	7	8
90	6	7
Note: *This table compensates for DME slant range error.*		

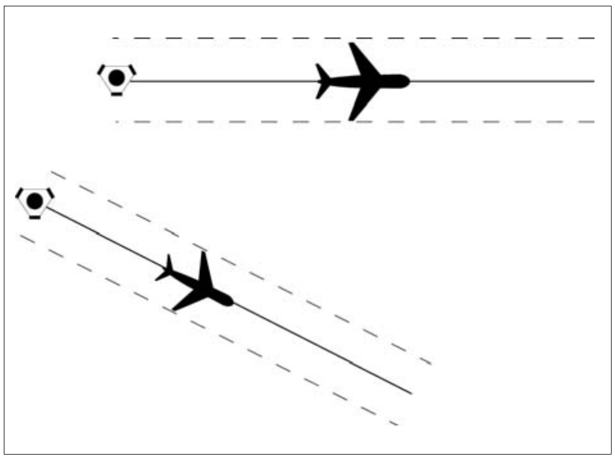
FIG 8−4−11
Track Separation NDB



(b) Clear aircraft navigating on NDB facilities in accordance with para 2−5−2, NAVAID Terms.

b. Different NAVAIDs: Separate aircraft using different navigation aids by assigning tracks so that their protected airspace does not overlap. (See FIG 8−4−12.)

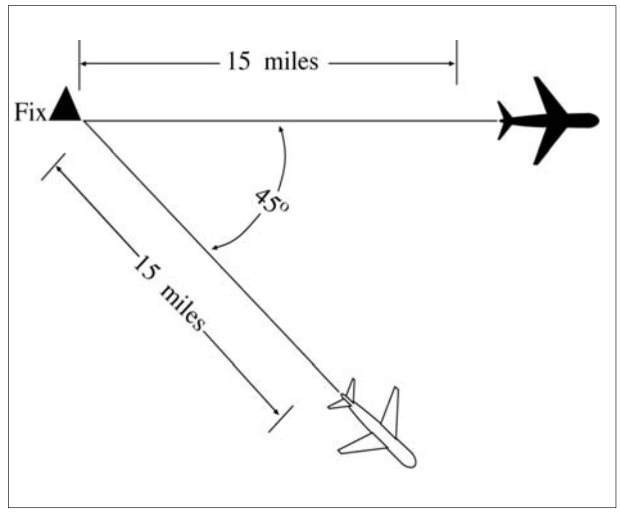
FIG 8−4−12
Track Separation
Different NAVAIDs



c. Dead Reckoning (DR):

1. Consider separation to exist between aircraft established on tracks that diverge by at least 45 degrees when one aircraft is at least 15 miles from the point of intersection of the tracks. This point may be determined either visually or by reference to a ground−based navigation aid. (See FIG 8−4−13.)

FIG 8−4−13
Track Separation
Dead Reckoning

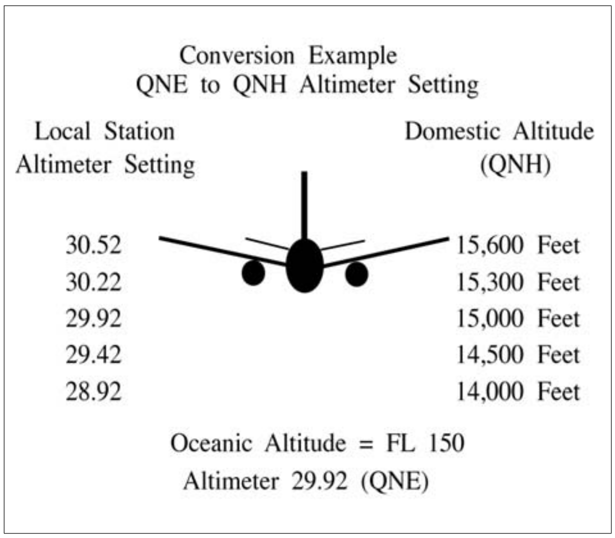


Section 5. Offshore/Oceanic Transition Procedures

8-5-1. ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL TRANSITION

When vertical separation is applied between aircraft crossing the offshore/oceanic airspace boundary below FL 180, control action must be taken to ensure that differences between the standard altimeter setting (QNE) and local altimeter setting (QNH) do not compromise separation. (See FIG 8-5-1.)

FIG 8-5-1
Standard and Local Altimeter Setting Differences



8-5-2. COURSE DIVERGENCE

When aircraft are entering oceanic airspace, separation will exist in oceanic airspace when:

a. Aircraft are established on courses that diverge by at least 15 degrees until oceanic lateral separation is established, and

b. The aircraft are horizontally radar separated and separation is increasing at the edge of known radar coverage.

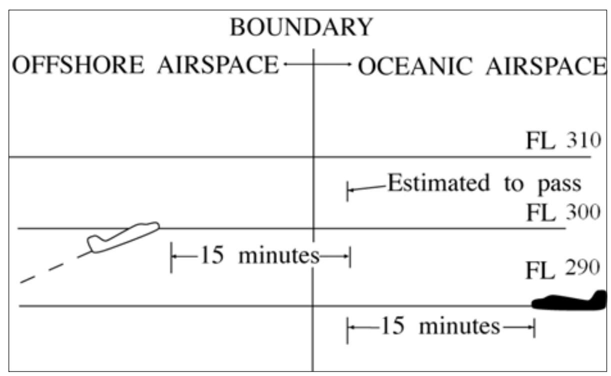
8-5-3. OPPOSITE DIRECTION

When transitioning from an offshore airspace area to oceanic airspace, an aircraft may climb through opposite direction oceanic traffic provided vertical separation above that traffic is established:

a. Before the outbound crosses the offshore/ oceanic boundary; and

b. 15 minutes before the aircraft are estimated to pass. (See FIG 8-5-2.)

FIG 8-5-2
Transitioning From Offshore to Oceanic Airspace Opposite Direction



8–5–4. SAME DIRECTION

When transitioning from an offshore airspace area to oceanic airspace or while within oceanic airspace, apply 5 minutes minimum separation when a following aircraft on the same course is climbing through the altitude of the preceding aircraft if the following conditions are met:

a. The preceding aircraft is level at the assigned altitude and is maintaining a speed equal to or greater than the following aircraft; and

b. The minimum of *5 minutes* is maintained between the preceding and following aircraft; and

c. The following aircraft is separated by not more than 4,000 feet from the preceding aircraft when the climb clearance is issued; and

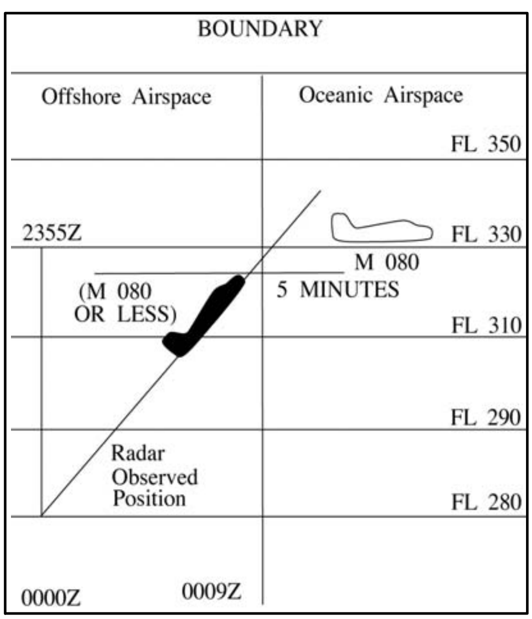
d. The following aircraft commences climb within *10 minutes* after passing:

1. An exact reporting point (DME fix or intersection formed from NAVAIDs) which the preceding aircraft has reported; or

2. A radar observed position over which the preceding aircraft has been observed; and

e. The following aircraft is in direct communication with air traffic control until vertical separation is established. (See FIG 8–5–3.)

FIG 8–5–3
Transitioning From Offshore to Oceanic Airspace Same Direction



8–5–5. RADAR IDENTIFICATION APPLICATION

Radar separation standards may be applied between radar identified aircraft and another aircraft not yet identified that is in transit from oceanic airspace or non-radar offshore airspace into an area of known radar coverage where radar separation is applied provided:

a. Direct radio communications is maintained with one of the aircraft involved and there is an ability to communicate with the other;

b. The transiting aircraft is RNAV equipped;

c. The performance of the radar/system is adequate;

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-1, Presentation and Equipment Performance

d. Flight data on the aircraft that has not been radar identified indicate that it is equipped with a standard transponder and there is no known information that the transponder is not operating;

e. Radar separation standards are maintained between the radar identified aircraft and any other observed targets until the transitioning aircraft is radar identified or non-radar separation is established;

f. The facility has identified areas of known radar coverage, incorporated those areas into facility standard operating procedures (SOP), and provided training to the controllers.

g. This procedure is also applicable to aircraft in transit from oceanic airspace into Guam Control Area (CTA), San Juan CTA and Honolulu CTA radar coverage areas.

h. EXCEPTION: This procedure is not authorized if there is insufficient time for the controller to establish other approved separation in the event of a delay or inability to establish radar identification of the transiting aircraft taking into consideration factors such as aircraft performance characteristics, type, and speed; weather, traffic conditions; workload; frequency congestion; etc.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-2-6,IFR Flight Progreass Data, Subpara2-2-6.b.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para8-1-8, use of Control Estimates

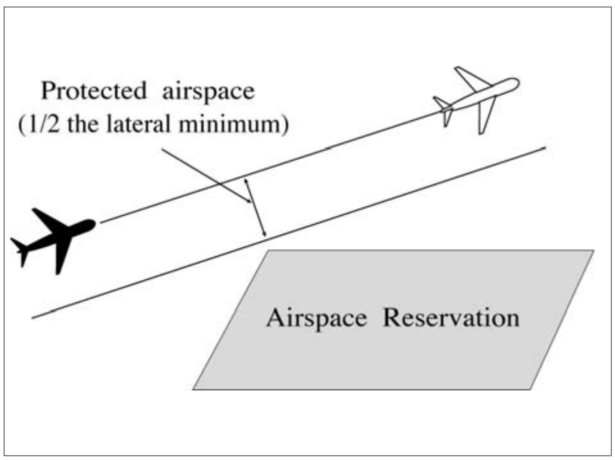
Section 6. Separation from Airspace Reservations

8-6-1. TEMPORARY STATIONARY AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

Separate aircraft from a temporary stationary reservation by one of two methods:

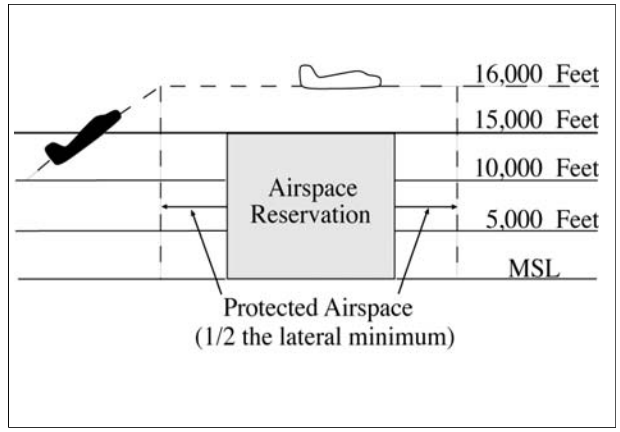
a. Laterally: Clear aircraft so that the protected airspace along the route of flight does not overlap the geographical area of the stationary reservation. (See FIG 8-6-1.)

FIG 8-6-1
Temporary Stationary Airspace Reservations Lateral Separation



b. Vertically: Clear aircraft so that vertical separation exists while the aircraft is within a geographical area defined as the stationary reservation plus a buffer around the perimeter equivalent to one-half the lateral separation minimum. (See FIG 8-6-2.)

FIG 8-6-2
Temporary Stationary Airspace Reservations Vertical Separation



8-6-2. REFUSAL OF AVOIDANCE CLEARANCE

If a pilot refuses to accept a clearance to avoid a reservation, inform him/her of the potential hazard, advise him/her that services will not be provided while the flight is within the reservation and, if possible, inform the appropriate using agency.

8-6-3. TEMPORARY MOVING AIRSPACE RESERVATIONS

Separate aircraft from a temporary moving airspace reservation by one of the following methods:

a. Laterally: Clear aircraft so that the protected airspace along the route of flight does not overlap the (time-dependent) geographical area of the moving airspace reservation.

b. Longitudinally: Clear aircraft so that the appropriate longitudinal minimum exists ahead of the first or behind the last aircraft operating within the reservation.

c. Vertically: Clear aircraft so that vertical separation exists while the aircraft is within a (time-dependent) geographical area defined as the moving airspace reservation plus a buffer around the perimeter equivalent to one-half the lateral separation minimum.

Section 7. North Atlantic ICAO Region

8–7–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North Atlantic ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8–7–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4, IFR, Section 5, Altitude Assignment and Verification.

8–7–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

a. Supersonic flight:

1. *10 minutes* provided that:

(a) both aircraft are in level flight at the same Mach number or the aircraft are of the same type and are both operating in cruise climb, and one of the following;

(1) The aircraft concerned have reported over a common point; or,

(2) If the aircraft have not reported over a common point, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at the common point; or,

(3) If a common point does not exist, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at significant points along each track.

2. *15 minutes* between aircraft in supersonic flight not covered in subpara a1 above.

b. Turbojet operations *(subsonic flight)*:

1. Apply the prescribed minima in accordance with para 8–3–3, Mach Number Technique; or

2. Where tracks diverge from the common point and the following aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach Number than the preceding aircraft:

(a) At least *10 minutes* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

(b) At least *5 minutes* longitudinal separation will exist where minimum lateral separation is achieved *(whichever is estimated to occur first)*;

(1) At or before the next significant point (normally within ten degrees of longitude along track(s)), or

(2) Within 90 minutes of the time the following aircraft passes the common point, or

(3) Within 600 NM of the common point.

3. Apply *15 minutes* between all other turbojet aircraft.

c. Nonturbojet operations:

1. Apply *20 minutes* between aircraft operating in the West Atlantic Route System (WATRS), or

2. Apply *30 minutes* between aircraft operating outside of the WATRS.

NOTE–
The WATRS area is defined as beginning at a point 27°00'N/77°00'W direct to 20°00'N/67°00'W direct to 18°00'N/62°00'W direct to 18°00'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/69°15'W, thence counterclockwise along the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary, thence southbound along the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the point of beginning.

d. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;

2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;

3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;

4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:

(a) same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or

(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.

NOTE−
Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.

5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;

7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and

9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.

NOTE−
ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

e. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract (ADS-C):

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8-7-1 between aircraft on the same track within airspace designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS-C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

FIG 8−7−1
ADS−C Criteria

Minima	RNP	Maximum ADS-C Periodic Reporting Interval
50 NM	10	27 minutes
50 NM	4	32 minutes
30 NM	4	10 minutes

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided:

(a) An ADS-C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

(b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.

NOTE−
Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

3. When an ADS-C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS-C report.

4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

8−7−4. LATERAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:

a. *30 NM* to RNP-4 approved aircraft operating within airspace designated for RNP-4 when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS-C contracts are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (e.g., Ocean21).

b. *50 NM* between Required Navigation Performance (RNP 4 or RNP 10) approved aircraft which:

1. Operate on routes or in areas within WATRS, the San Juan CTA/FIR or the Atlantic portion of the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR; or

2. Operate in the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR outside of WATRS.

NOTE−
This reduced lateral separation must not be used if track−keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

c. *60 NM or 1 degree latitude* between:

1. Supersonic aircraft operating above FL 275.

2. Aircraft which meet the MNPS and which:

(a) Operate within MNPS airspace; or

(b) Are in transit to or from MNPS airspace; or

(c) Operate for part of their flight within, above, or below MNPS airspace.

NOTE–
This reduced lateral separation must not be used if track–keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

d. *90 NM or 1 and 1/2 degrees latitude* between aircraft not approved for RNP 4 or RNP 10 and which:

1. Operate on routes or in areas within WATRS, the San Juan CTA/FIR or the Atlantic portion of the Miami CTA/FIR;

2. Operate between points in the U.S. or Canada, and Bermuda;

3. Operate west of 55° West between the U.S., Canada, or Bermuda and points in the Caribbean ICAO Region.

e. *120 NM or 2 degrees latitude* between aircraft not covered by subparas a, c or d above.

NOTE–
Tracks may be spaced with reference to their difference in latitude, provided that in any interval of 10 degrees of longitude the change in latitude of at least one of the tracks does not exceed 3 degrees when operating south of 58°North.

8–7–5. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS IN NORTH ATLANTIC (NAT) AIRSPACE

Aircraft must request an ATC clearance to deviate. Since aircraft will not fly into known areas of weather, weather deviation requests should take priority over routine requests. If there is no traffic in the horizontal dimension, ATC must issue clearance to deviate from track; or if there is conflicting traffic in the horizontal dimension, ATC separates aircraft by establishing vertical separation. If there is conflicting traffic and ATC is unable to establish the required separation, ATC must:

a. Advise the pilot unable to issue clearance for requested deviation;

b. Advise the pilot of conflicting traffic; and

c. Request pilot's intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNABLE (requested deviation), TRAFFIC IS (call sign, position, altitude, direction), ADVISE INTENTIONS.

NOTE–
1. *The pilot will advise ATC of intentions by the most expeditious means available.*

2. *In the event that pilot/controller communications cannot be established or a revised ATC clearance is not available, pilots will follow the procedures outlined in the Regional Supplementary Procedures, ICAO Doc. 7030.*

Section 8. Caribbean ICAO Region

8–8–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the Caribbean ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8–8–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4, IFR, Section 5, Altitude Assignment and Verification.

8–8–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

Provide longitudinal separation between aircraft as follows:

a. Supersonic flight:

1. *10 minutes* provided both aircraft are in level flight at the same Mach number or the aircraft are of the same type and are both operating in cruise climb, and one of the following;

(a) Both aircraft have reported over a common point; or,

(b) If both aircraft have not reported over a common point, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at the common point; or,

(c) If a common point does not exist, the appropriate time interval being applied between aircraft exists and will exist at significant points along each track.

2. *15 minutes* between all other aircraft.

b. Turbojet operations at or above FL 200 in the Miami Oceanic, Houston Oceanic and San Juan CTAs/FIRs and all altitudes in the West Atlantic Route System (WATRS) and New York Oceanic CTA/FIR *(subsonic flight)*:

1. Apply the prescribed minima in accordance with para 8–3–3, Mach Number Technique; or

2. In the New York CTA/FIR, where tracks diverge from the common point and the following aircraft is maintaining a greater Mach number than the preceding aircraft:

(a) At least *10 minutes* longitudinal separation exists at the point where the tracks diverge; and

(b) At least *5 minutes* longitudinal separation will exist where minimum lateral separation is achieved *(whichever is estimated to occur first)*;

(1) At or before the next significant point (normally within ten degrees of longitude along track(s)), or

(2) Within *90 minutes* of the time the following aircraft passes the common point, or

(3) Within *600 NM* of the common point; or

3. Apply *15 minutes* between all other turbojet aircraft.

c. Turbojet operations below FL 200 *(subsonic flight)*:

Apply *20 minutes* between turbojet aircraft operating below FL 200 in the San Juan Oceanic *(outside the WATRS area)*, Miami Oceanic and Houston Oceanic CTAs/FIRs.

d. Nonturbojet operations.

1. Apply *20 minutes* between aircraft operating in the WATRS; or

2. Apply *20 minutes* between aircraft operating below FL 200 in the Miami Oceanic, Houston Oceanic and San Juan CTAs/FIRs; or

3. Apply *30 minutes* between aircraft operating outside of the WATRS in the New York CTA/FIR.

NOTE–
The WATRS area is defined as beginning at a point 27°00'N/77°00'W direct to 20°00'N/67°00'W direct to 18°00'N/62°00'W direct to 18°00'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/60°00'W direct to 38°30'N/69°15'W, thence counterclockwise along the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary, thence southbound along the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR boundary to the point of beginning.

e. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;

2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;

3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;

4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:

(a) same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or

(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.

NOTE–
Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.

5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;

7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and

9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.

NOTE–
ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

f. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract (ADS-C):

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8-8-1 between aircraft on the same track within airspace designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS-C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

FIG 8–8–1
ADS–C Criteria

Minima	RNP	Maximum ADS-C Periodic Reporting Interval
50 NM	10	27 minutes
50 NM	4	32 minutes
30 NM	4	10 minutes

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided:

(a) An ADS-C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

(b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.

NOTE–
Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

3. When an ADS-C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS-C report.

4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

8–8–4. LATERAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:

a. *30 NM* to RNP-4 approved aircraft operating within airspace designated for RNP-4 when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS-C contracts are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (e.g., Ocean21).

b. *50 NM* between Required Navigation Performance (RNP 4 or RNP 10) approved aircraft which:

1. Operate on routes or in areas within WATRS, the San Juan CTA/FIR or the Atlantic portion of the Miami Oceanic CTA/FIR; or

2. Operate in the New York Oceanic CTA/FIR outside of WATRS; or

3. Operate in the Houston Oceanic CTA/FIR or the Gulf of Mexico portion of the Miami CTA/FIR.

NOTE−
This reduced lateral separation must not be used if track−keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

c. *60 NM* between:

1. Supersonic aircraft operating above FL 275 within the New York oceanic CTA/FIR.

2. Supersonic aircraft operating at or above FL 450 not covered in subpara 1 above.

3. Aircraft which meet the MNPS and which:

(a) Operate within MNPS airspace; or

(b) Are in transit to or from MNPS airspace; or

(c) Operate for part of their flight within, above, or below MNPS airspace.

NOTE−
This reduced lateral separation must not be used if track−keeping capability of the aircraft has been reduced for any reason.

d. *90 NM* between aircraft not approved for RNP 4 or RNP 10 and which:

1. Operate within *WATRS*; or

2. Operate west of 55° West between the U.S., Canada, or Bermuda and points in the Caribbean ICAO Region.

e. *100 NM* between aircraft operating west of 55° West not covered by subparas a, c or d above.

f. *120 NM* between aircraft operating east of 55° West.

8−8−5. VFR CLIMB AND DESCENT

a. In the Houston, Miami, and San Juan CTAs, IFR flights may be cleared to climb and descend in VFR conditions only:

1. When requested by the pilot; and

2. Between sunrise and sunset.

b. Apply the following when the flight is cleared:

1. If there is a possibility that VFR conditions may become impractical, issue alternative instructions.

2. Issue traffic information to aircraft that are not separated in accordance with the minima in this section.

Section 9. Pacific ICAO Region

8−9−1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the Pacific ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section except when noted otherwise.

8−9−2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with Chapter 4, IFR, Section 5, Altitude Assignment and Verification, except when aircraft operate within airspace where composite separation and procedures are authorized, apply the minima specified in para 8−9−5, Composite Separation Minima.

8−9−3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

a. Minima based on time:

1. *15 minutes* between aircraft; or

2. *10 minutes* between turbojet aircraft whether in level, climbing or descending flight, provided that the aircraft concerned follow the same track or continuously diverging tracks until some other form of separation is provided; or

3. The prescribed minima in accordance with para 8−3−3, Mach Number Technique.

4. Reciprocal track aircraft − Where lateral separation is not provided, vertical separation must be provided at least *10 minutes* before and after the time the aircraft are estimated to pass or are estimated to have passed.

b. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;

2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;

3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;

4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:

(a) Same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or

(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.

NOTE−
Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.

5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;

7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and

9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.

NOTE−
ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

c. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance − Contract (ADS−C):

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8−9−1, ADS−C Criteria, between aircraft on the same track within airspace designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS−C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (e.g., Ocean21);

TBL 8−9−1
ADS−C Criteria

Minima	RNP	Maximum ADS−C Periodic Reporting Interval
50 NM	10	27 minutes
50 NM	4	32 minutes
30 NM	4	14 minutes

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided that:

(a) An ADS−C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

(b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.

NOTE−
Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

3. When an ADS−C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS−C report.

4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

d. Minima based on distance *without* ADS−C:

1. Apply *50 NM* between aircraft cruising, climbing or descending on the same track or reciprocal track that meet the requirements for and are operating within airspace designated for RNP−10 operations provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or CPDLC is maintained; and

(b) Separation is established by ensuring that at least *50 NM* longitudinal separation minima exists between aircraft positions as reported by reference to the same waypoint.

(1) *Same track aircraft* − whenever possible ahead of both; or

(2) *Reciprocal track aircraft* − provided that it has been positively established that the aircraft have passed each other.

2. Distance verification must be obtained from each aircraft at least every *24 minutes* to verify that separation is maintained.

3. If an aircraft fails to report its position within *3 minutes* after the expected time, the controller must take action to establish communication. If communication is not established within *8 minutes* after the time the report should have been received, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

NOTE−
When same track aircraft are at, or are expected to reduce to, the minima, speed control techniques should be applied in order to maintain the required separation.

e. Minima based on DME/RNAV:

Apply the following DME/RNAV minima in Control 1234H, Control 1487H and the Norton Sound High Control areas to turbojet aircraft established on or transitioning to the North Pacific (NOPAC) Route System.

1. *30 NM* between aircraft when DME reports or radar observations are used to establish the distance, otherwise at least *40 NM* based on RNAV must be applied; and

2. Unless both aircraft are radar identified, both aircraft must provide DME/RNAV distance reports via direct voice that indicates the appropriate separation exists; and

3. Application of DME/RNAV separation without direct voice communications may not continue for more than *90 minutes;* and

4. The preceding aircraft is assigned the same or greater Mach number than the following aircraft; and

5. Both aircraft must be advised of the other aircraft involved, including the distance relative to the flights.

EXAMPLE−
"Maintain Mach point eight four, same direction traffic, twelve o'clock, three five miles."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

8−9−4. LATERAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:

a. Within areas where Required Navigation Performance 10 (RNP−10) separation and procedures are authorized, apply *50 NM* to RNP−10 approved aircraft.

b. Apply *30 NM* to RNP−4 approved aircraft operating within airspace designated for RNP−4 when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS−C contracts are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (e.g., Ocean21).

c. When aircraft operate within airspace where composite separation and procedures are authorized, apply the minimum specified in para 8−9−5, Composite Separation Minima.

d. Apply *100 NM* to aircraft not covered by subparas a, b or c.

8−9−5. COMPOSITE SEPARATION MINIMA

Provide composite separation within the Central East Pacific (CEP) and North Pacific (NOPAC) composite route systems and where designated by facility directive in the Pacific Organized Track System (PACOTS) at and above FL 290 as follows:

a. *1,000 feet* vertical separation; and

b. *50 NM* lateral separation.

8−9−6. COMPOSITE SEPARATION ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

a. Aircraft operating at or above FL 300 in a composite route system may be cleared at even flight levels. Additionally, aircraft may be cleared at even flight levels while joining, crossing, or leaving a composite route system provided such aircraft leaving the system are cleared to an appropriate odd cardinal flight level when noncomposite vertical or lateral separation is achieved.

b. Aircraft (operating at or above FL 300) leaving a composite route system at an even cardinal flight level do not have to be assigned an odd cardinal flight level provided:

1. The aircraft is being provided radar service; and

2. The aircraft will be cleared for descent and approach to an airport within the facility's domestic FIR; and

3. There is an operational advantage.

c. Aircraft operating on unidirectional routes or traffic flows may be assigned altitudes other than the appropriate altitude for direction of flight provided that 2,000 feet vertical separation is maintained between aircraft operating on the same route.

8−9−7. COMPOSITE SEPARATION APPLICATION

Provide composite separation in the CEP and the North Pacific (NOPAC) composite route systems and where designated by facility directive in the Pacific Organized Track System (PACOTS) as follows:

a. Clear an aircraft to join an outer route of the composite route system at other than the normal entry point provided:

1. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on that route; and

2. Composite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the next adjacent route.

b. Clear an aircraft to leave an outer route of the composite route system at other than the normal exit point provided its course diverges so that lateral spacing from the route system increases until noncomposite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft in the composite route system.

c. Clear an aircraft to change from one route to an adjacent route within the composite route system provided:

1. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the route being vacated until that aircraft is established on the route to which it is proceeding; and

2. Longitudinal or noncomposite vertical separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the route to which that aircraft is proceeding; and

3. Composite separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft on the next adjacent route.

d. Clear an aircraft to cross the composite route system provided longitudinal or noncomposite vertical or lateral separation exists between that aircraft and any other aircraft in the composite route system.

e. Clear aircraft to transition to or from the composite route system from an Oceanic Transition Route (OTR) provided:

1. The OTR is charted on aeronautical charts; and

2. Composite separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft within the composite route system; and

NOTE–
An aircraft is within the confines of a composite route system when the aircraft joins or crosses the outer route of the composite route system or passes a composite route entry point.

3. Composite separation is maintained between that aircraft and any other aircraft on adjacent OTRs.

f. Clear an aircraft to change altitude on a route if noncomposite separation exists between that aircraft and others operating on that route regardless of other aircraft operating on adjacent routes in the system. Pilot's discretion climbs and descents are not authorized when applying composite separation.

NOTE–
Although composite separation is not applied between aircraft on different tracks at FL 280 and FL 290, this paragraph applies to climbs and descents between FL 280 and altitudes within the composite altitude stratum (FL 300 and above).

8–9–8. PROCEDURES FOR WEATHER DEVIATIONS AND OTHER CONTINGENCIES IN OCEANIC CONTROLLED AIRSPACE

Aircraft must request an ATC clearance to deviate. Since aircraft will not fly into known areas of weather, weather deviation requests should take priority over routine requests. If there is no traffic in the horizontal dimension, ATC must issue clearance to deviate from track; or if there is conflicting traffic in the horizontal dimension, ATC separates aircraft by establishing vertical separation. If there is conflicting traffic and ATC is unable to establish approved separation, ATC must:

a. Advise the pilot unable to issue clearance for requested deviation;

b. Advise the pilot of conflicting traffic; and

c. Request pilot's intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNABLE (requested deviation), TRAFFIC IS (call sign, position, altitude, direction), SAY INTENTIONS.

NOTE–
1. *The pilot will advise ATC of intentions by the most expeditious means available.*

2. *In the event that pilot/controller communications cannot be established or a revised AT clearance is not available, pilots will follow the procedures outlined in the Regional Supplementary Procedures, ICAO Doc 7030 and Chart Supplements.*

Section 10. North American ICAO Region

8–10–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North American ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section.

8–10–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with:

a. Chapter 4, IFR, Section 5, Altitude Assignment and Verification; and

b. Facility directives depicting the transition between flight levels and metric altitudes.

8–10–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

a. Minima based on time:

1. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft.

2. The prescribed minima in accordance with Paragraph 8–3–3, Mach Number Technique.

3. *20 minutes* between other aircraft.

b. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;

2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;

3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;

4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:

(a) same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or

(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.

NOTE–
Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.

5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;

7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;

8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and

9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.

NOTE–
ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

c. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract (ADS-C) in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs only:

NOTE–
The minima described in this paragraph are not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8-10-1 between aircraft on the same track within airspace in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS-C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

TBL 8−10−1
ADS−C Criteria

Minima	RNP	Maximum ADS−C Periodic Reporting Interval
50 NM	10	27 minutes
50 NM	4	32 minutes
30 NM	4	10 minutes

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided:

(a) (a) An ADS-C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

(b) (b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.

NOTE−
Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

3. When an ADS-C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS-C report.

4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

8−10−4. LATERAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:

a. *50 NM* to RNP−10 approved aircraft within areas where RNP−10 separation and procedures are authorized,

b. *30 NM* to RNP−4 approved aircraft operating within the Anchorage Oceanic CTA and Anchorage Continental CTA when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS−C contracts are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

NOTE−
The minimum described in subparagraph b is not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.

c. *90 NM* to aircraft not covered by subparagraphs a or b.

Chapter 9. Special Flights

Section 1. General

9−1−1. GENERAL

Provide aircraft engaged in the flight inspection of NAVAIDs with maximum assistance. Unless otherwise agreed to, maintain direct contact with the pilot and exchange information regarding known traffic in the area and his/her intentions.

NOTE−
1. *Many flight inspections are accomplished using automatic recording equipment, and an uninterrupted flight is necessary for successful completion of the mission. The workload for the limited number of aircraft engaged in these activities requires strict adherence to a schedule.*

2. *Flight inspection operations which require special participation of ground personnel, specific communications, or radar operation capabilities are considered to require special handling. These flights are coordinated with appropriate facilities before departure.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO 8200.1, United States Standard Flight Inspection Manual.
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On−Site Coordination Requirements.

9−1−2. SPECIAL HANDLING

a. Clear the aircraft according to pilot request as soon as practicable. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from his/her planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On−Site Coordination Requirements, Appendix 1, describes certain flight inspection maneuvers in detail.

b. Issue radar advisories to the flight inspection aircraft where adequate coverage exists and to the extent permitted by workload.

c. Suggest flight path adjustments, as required, for any aircraft which will enter or penetrate an area in which a flight inspection function is being performed.

d. Provide special handling, as required, to FAA aircraft conducting flight inspections using the call sign "Flight Check." The call sign "Flight Check (Nr) recorded" indicates automated flight inspections are in progress in terminal areas.

NOTE−
1. *FAA flight inspection aircraft will file flight plans using the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" during flight inspections or when inbound to conduct flight inspections. Flight plan remarks may indicate type NAVAID inspection to be accomplished; e.g. "FC OKC P."*

2. *Authorized non-FAA Service Providers conducting Flight Validation activities use the call sign "FLIGHT VAL." Although these activities are similar to Flight Inspection activities, no additional priority is granted with this call sign.*

9−1−3. FLIGHT CHECK AIRCRAFT

a. Provide special handling, as required, to expedite flight inspection of NAVAIDs and RADAR by flight check aircraft.

NOTE−
Certain flight inspection maneuvers require operations in close proximity to the surface. These maneuvers can only be performed during daylight visual meteorological conditions. Preplanned automatic flight places the following limitations on the capability of the pilot to adhere to normal ATC clearances:

1. *Route of flight − orbital from 6 nautical miles to a maximum of 40 nautical miles from the facility depending on the type of inspection. During commissioning flight checks all SIDs, STARs, airways, DME fixes, and approaches must be flown.*

2. *Altitude assignment − from 1,000 feet above the antenna site up to the minimum en route altitude (MEA).*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On−Site Coordination Requirements, Appendix 1, describes certain flight inspection maneuvers in detail.

b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.

c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in the flight except to preclude emergency situations.

d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 7−1−2, Special Radar Accuracy Checks.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−5−4, ASR Performance Checks.

Section 2. Special Operations

9–2–1. AIRCRAFT CARRYING DANGEROUS MATERIALS

a. Provide the following special handling to military aircraft or military contracted aircraft carrying dangerous materials when:

1. The words "dangerous cargo," or "inert devices," or both are contained in the remarks section of the filed flight plan, or

NOTE–
1. *Certain types of military flights carrying dangerous materials require strict adherence to military regulations and flight planning along carefully selected routes. These flights must avoid heavily populated areas.*

2. *"Inert devices" are devices containing no dangerous materials but closely resembling nuclear or explosive items that are classified as dangerous and could be easily mistaken for their dangerous counterparts.*

2. The pilot uses these words in radio communication.

b. If it becomes necessary to issue a clearance to amend the route/altitude, advise the pilot:

1. Of the proposed change, and

2. The amount of delay to expect if it is necessary to maintain the present route/altitude.

c. When it becomes necessary for the pilot to refuse a clearance amending his/her route/altitude, he/she will advise if the traffic delay is acceptable or if an alternate route/altitude is desired. In such cases, offer all possible assistance.

d. When the aircraft is provided an en route descent, do not vector the aircraft from the planned route unless the pilot concurs.

e. Use special patterns and routings in areas where they have been developed for these flights. If special patterns and routings have not been developed, employ normal procedures.

9–2–2. CELESTIAL NAVIGATION TRAINING

EN ROUTE

a. Approve flight plans specifying celestial navigation only when it is requested for USAF or USN aircraft.

NOTE–
An ATC clearance must be obtained by the pilot before discontinuing conventional navigation to begin celestial navigation training. The pilot will advise when discontinuing celestial navigation and resuming conventional navigation. Celestial navigation training will be conducted within 30 NM of the route centerline specified in the en route clearance unless otherwise authorized by ATC. During celestial navigation training, the pilot will advise ATC before initiating any heading changes which exceed 20 degrees.

b. Within conterminous U.S. airspace, limit celestial navigation training to transponder-equipped aircraft within areas of ARTCC radar coverage.

c. Prior to control transfer, ensure that the receiving controller is informed of the nature of the celestial navigation training leg.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–2–6, IFR Flight Progress Data.

9–2–3. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE) SPECIAL FLIGHTS

a. Provide notification of possible route or altitude changes as far in advance as possible for "RAC" flights. The pilot will indicate if the proposed change is acceptable or if alternate routing or altitude will be requested.

NOTE–
DOE contracts for civil pilots to operate public aircraft to transport radioactive or high explosive materials within the conterminous U.S. These flights operate on an IFR flight plan but principally during daylight hours and VFR conditions. These flights require flight along carefully selected routes and, in some instances, pilots will refuse clearances that require reroute or altitude changes that would derogate their objective.

b. *EN ROUTE.* Approve pilot requests to leave center frequency for operational purposes as traffic conditions permit.

c. Notify a supervisor in the event any of the following occurs with "RAC" aircraft:

1. Loss of radio contact.

2. Loss of radar contact.

3. The flight is overdue at the destination.

d. If you receive information that a "RAC" aircraft is involved in an accident, secure as much information as possible, particularly with respect to location, and immediately notify the ARTCC supervisory traffic management coordinator−in−charge.

NOTE−
There is a possibility of an explosive or radiation hazard of an "RAC" aircraft involved in an accident.

9−2−4. EXPERIMENTAL AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS

a. When notified that an experimental aircraft requires special handling:

NOTE−
14 CFR Section 91.319(d)(3) requires that each person operating an aircraft with an experimental certificate must notify the control tower of the experimental nature of the aircraft when operating into or out of airports with operating control towers.

1. Clear the aircraft according to pilot requests as traffic permits and if not contrary to ATC procedures.

2. Once approved, do not ask the pilot to deviate from a planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.

b. At locations where volume or complexity of experimental aircraft operations warrant, a letter of agreement may be consummated between the facility and operator.

9−2−5. FAA RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT FLIGHTS

When coordinated in advance and traffic permits, approve requests for special flight procedures from aircraft participating in FAA research and development test activities. These special procedures must be applied to participating aircraft/vehicles.

NOTE−
Special flight procedures for FAA research and development test activities must be approved by the facility air traffic manager prior to their use.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5−2−4, Research and Development Flights.

9−2−6. FLYNET

Provide expeditious handling for U.S. Government, civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET." Relay the code name as an element in the remarks position of the flight plan.

NOTE−
The code name "FLYNET" indicates that an aircraft is transporting a nuclear emergency team or a disaster control team to the location of a potential or actual nuclear accident or an accident involving chemical agents or hazardous materials. It is in the public interest that they reach their destination as rapidly as possible.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12−4−1, "FLYNET" Flights, Nuclear Emergency Teams.

9−2−7. IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES

a. Except for aircraft operating in the same altitude reservation, clear aircraft into an MTR provided separation will be applied between successive aircraft unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement between the military scheduling activity and the concerned ATC facility.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED INTO IR (designator).
MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

MAINTAIN IR (designator) ALTITUDE(S),

or

MAINTAIN AT OR BELOW (altitude),

or

CRUISE (altitude),

and if required,

CROSS (fix) AT OR LATER THAN (time).

b. Unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement between the military scheduling activity and the concerned FAA facility, clear aircraft to exit an MTR.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO (destination/clearance limit) FROM IR (designator/exit fix) VIA (route).
MAINTAIN (altitude).

c. If the provisions of subpara a above cannot be accomplished, MTRs may be designated for MARSA operations. To preclude an inadvertent compromise of MARSA standards by ATC, appropriate MARSA application for such routes must be covered in a letter of agreement with the military scheduling activity. Establish separation between aircraft as soon as practicable after operation on the designated MARSA route is ended.

NOTE−
For designated MARSA routes, the military assumes responsibility for separation for MTR aircraft that have passed the primary/alternate entry fix until separation is established by ATC after operations on the MARSA route are completed.

d. The lateral airspace to be protected along an MTR is the designated width of the route.

e. Prior to an aircraft entering an MTR, request the pilot's estimate for the route's exit/alternate exit fix, the pilot's requested altitude after exiting and, if applicable, the number of reentries on a Strategic Training Range (STR).

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign) VERIFY YOUR EXIT FIX ESTIMATE AND REQUESTED ALTITUDE AFTER EXIT,

and if applicable,

THE NUMBER OF REENTRIES.

f. Forward estimates for exit/alternate exit fixes, requested altitude after exit, and, if applicable, the number of reentries on the STR.

g. Apply the procedures of para 6−1−2, Nonreceipt of Position Report, based upon the pilot's estimate for the route exit fix.

h. Clearance may be issued to amend or restrict operations on a route for ATC considerations. Where a route has been designated MARSA in accordance with subpara c, ATC must not amend or restrict operations in such a manner as to compromise MARSA provisions.

NOTE−
When MARSA is provided through route scheduling and circumstances prevent the pilot from entering the route within established time limits, it must be the responsibility of the pilot to inform the ATC facility and advise his/her intentions.

i. If an aircraft on an IR experiences a two-way radio communications failure and you are unable to determine if the aircraft is proceeding VFR in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.185(b) or the aircraft has not been positively radar identified:

1. Provide separation to the destination airport based on the aircraft complying with the following:

(a) Maintain to the exit/alternate exit fix the higher of the following altitudes:

(1) The minimum IFR altitude for each of the remaining route segment(s) remaining on the route.

(2) The highest altitude assigned in the last ATC clearance.

(b) Depart the exit/alternate exit fix at the appropriate altitude specified in subpara (a) above, then climb/descend to the altitude filed in the flight plan for the remainder of the flight, or

NOTE−
In the event of a two-way communications failure, ATC will be based on the following anticipated pilot action at the exit fix. Unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement, and if the pilot is unable to comply with the VFR provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.185/FLIP IFR Supplement, the pilot will exercise his/her emergency authority, squawk transponder ***Code 7700****, depart the exit/alternate exit fix and climb/descend (continuing to squawk 7700) to the altitude filed in the flight plan. Subsequent transponder operations will be in accordance with para 10−4−4, Communications Failure. Air traffic controller action from the exit fix is as prescribed in para 10−1−1, Emergency Determinations.*

(c) Proceed in accordance with the lost communication procedure contained in letters of agreement.

2. Continue to monitor the last ATC assigned discrete code.

NOTE−
Pilots who experience a two-way radio failure will adjust their transponder to ***Code 7700*** *during climb/descent to altitude filed for the next leg of the flight plan; then change to* ***Code 7600*** *for a period of 15 minutes. At the end of each 15−minute period, he/she will squawk 7700 for a period of 1 minute; all other times he/she will squawk 7600.*

j. Impose delays, if needed, to eliminate conflict with nonparticipating IFR aircraft when necessary to preclude denial of IR usage. Advise the pilot of the expected length and reason for delay.

9−2−8. INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS

Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations.

NOTE−
The FAA and the military have mutually agreed to the implementation of policies and procedures for control of air defense interceptor operations. Effective coordination and cooperation between FAA and the military at all levels are essential if policy objectives are to be met.

a. The ADCF initiating the SCRAMBLE must identify the mission as an active air defense mission.

b. ATC services must be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.

c. Upon request, the ATC facility must expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ADCF.

9−2−9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES

a. Immediately relay any reports or information regarding unusual aircraft activities in the vicinity of special interest sites such as nuclear power plants, power plants, dams, refineries, etc., to supervisory/ CIC personnel.

NOTE−
Air traffic controllers have no responsibilities to monitor or observe aircraft in the vicinity of special interest sites unless directed by supervisory/CIC personnel.

9−2−10. WASHINGTON, DC, SPECIAL FLIGHT RULES AREA (DC SFRA)/ATC SECURITY SERVICES

Provide ATC security services at locations where procedures are required for tracking aircraft in security services airspace. ATC security services are designed to support the national security mission of the FAA and other agencies. Two−way radio communications, flight planning, and an operational transponder on an assigned code are required for operations in the designated area.

a. When the assigned code is observed, advise the aircraft to proceed on course/as requested but to remain outside of Class B, C, and/or D airspace as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID) TRANSPONDER OBSERVED PROCEED ON COURSE/AS REQUESTED; REMAIN OUTSIDE (class) AIRSPACE.

1. Maintain continuous security tracking of VFR aircraft operating in the designated area to assist security forces in situational awareness. Immediately report all instances of loss of radio communication or the inability to conduct security tracking of an aircraft to the front line manager (FLM)/CIC and wait for instructions.

2. Basic separation services to aircraft, for example, IFR, SVFR, Class B, Class C, TRSA, do not apply to ATC security tracking.

3. Aircraft with operating transponders, but without operating Mode C (altitude), require specific authorization from ATC to operate in the SFRA. ATC must coordinate with the Domestic Events Network (DEN) before approval.

4. Aircraft flying too low for radar coverage must be instructed to report landing or exiting the SFRA. Keep flight progress strips on these aircraft until pilot reports landing or exiting the SFRA. If a flight progress strip does not exist for the aircraft, record the call sign, transponder code, entry point (for example, north, northeast, east), and time of entry into the SFRA.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call sign), REPORT LANDING OR LEAVING THE SFRA.

5. United States military, law enforcement, and aeromedical flights are exempt from filing flight plans.

b. Establishing two−way Communications.

1. Pilots must establish two−way radio communications with ATC prior to entering the security service area. Responding to a radio call with, "(a/c call sign) standby," establishes radio communications and the pilot may enter the area, provided all other security requirements have been satisfied.

2. Aircraft requesting security services should not normally be held. However, if holding is necessary or workload/traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of ATC security services, inform the pilot to remain outside the designated area until conditions permit the provision of ATC security services. Inform the pilot of the expected length of delay.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(A/C call sign) REMAIN OUTSIDE OF THE (location) AND STANDBY. EXPECT (time) MINUTES DELAY.

c. Termination of Service.

1. If the aircraft is not landing within the designated area, provide security services until the aircraft exits the area and then advise the aircraft to squawk VFR and that frequency change is approved.

PHRASEOLOGY−
SQUAWK VFR, FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

or

CONTACT (facility identification).

2. When an aircraft is landing at an airport inside the area, instruct the pilot to remain on the assigned transponder code until after landing.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(ACID) REMAIN ON YOUR ASSIGNED TRANSPONDER CODE UNTIL YOU LAND, FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

3. Using approved handoff functionality, transfer the data blocks of all security tracked aircraft that will enter another sector/position for coordination of aircraft information/location. Upon acceptance of the transferred information, instruct the pilot to contact the next sector/positions' frequency.

9−2−11. SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT)

Upon receiving notification of a SECNOT, the controller must forward all information on the subject aircraft to the FLM/CIC. If information is not known, broadcast call sign on all frequencies and advise the FLM/CIC of the response.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term − Security Notice.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 19, Section 9, Security Notice (SECNOT).

9−2−12. LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BY CIVIL AND MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS

a. Law enforcement alerts.

1. Aircraft lookouts must not be distributed outside the FAA.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 1600.29, Law Enforcement Alert Message System.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−7−7, Cooperation With Law Enforcement Agencies.

2. Stolen aircraft alerts, including stolen aircraft summaries, may be distributed outside the FAA to: airport offices, air carriers, fixed base operators, and law enforcement agencies.

3. Upon receipt of knowledge concerning an aircraft for which a current law enforcement alert message is held, do the following:

(a) Forward any information on the aircraft to El Paso Intelligence Center (EPIC) and the requester when specified in the message.

(b) Immediately notify the cognizant Transportation Security Administration office by the most rapid means.

(c) DO NOT TAKE ANY OTHER ACTION AFFECTING THE AIRCRAFT, CARGO, CREW, OR PASSENGERS NOT NORMALLY RELATED TO JOB RESPONSIBILITIES.

b. Special law enforcement operations.

1. Special law enforcement operations include inflight identification, surveillance, interdiction and pursuit activities performed in accordance with official civil and/or military mission responsibilities.

2. To facilitate accomplishment of these special missions, exemptions from specified parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations have been granted to designated departments and agencies. However, it is each organization's responsibility to apprise ATC of their intent to operate under an authorized exemption before initiating actual operations.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 18−3−1, Authorizations and Exemptions from Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR).

3. Additionally, some departments and agencies that perform special missions have been assigned coded identifiers to permit them to apprise ATC of ongoing mission activities and solicit special air traffic assistance.

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7110.67, Special Aircraft Operations by Law Enforcement/Military Organizations.

NOTE−
As specified in para 2−1−4, Operational Priority, priority of handling for aircraft operating with coded identifiers will be the same as that afforded to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

c. Assistance to law enforcement aircraft operations.

1. Provide the maximum assistance possible to law enforcement aircraft, when requested, in helping them locate suspect aircraft.

2. Communicate with law enforcement aircraft, when possible and if requested, on a frequency not paired with your normal communications frequencies.

3. Do not allow assistance to law enforcement aircraft to violate any required separation minima.

4. Do not assist VFR law enforcement aircraft in any way that will create a situation which, in your judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain or other aircraft.

9−2−13. MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING

Authorize aircraft to conduct aerial refueling along published or special tracks at their flight plan altitude, unless otherwise requested.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO CONDUCT REFUELING ALONG (number) TRACK,

or

FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

MAINTAIN REFUELING LEVEL (altitude),

or

MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

COMMENCING AT (altitude), DESCENDING TO (altitude).

NOTE−
1. *During aerial refueling, tanker aircraft are responsible for receiver aircraft communication with ATC and for their navigation along the track.*

2. *Aerial refueling airspace is not sterilized airspace and other aircraft may transit this airspace provided vertical or lateral separation is provided from refueling aircraft.*

3. *MARSA begins between the tanker and receiver when the tanker and receiver(s) have entered the air refueling airspace and the tanker advises ATC that he/she is accepting MARSA.*

4. *MARSA ends between the tanker and receiver when the tanker advises ATC that the tanker and receiver aircraft are vertically positioned within the air refueling airspace and ATC advises MARSA is terminated.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−11, Use of MARSA.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 10, Aerial Refueling.

a. Provide radar assistance to the rendezvous for participating aircraft:

1. When requested, and

2. By providing vertical separation prior to MARSA declaration.

b. Do not request receiver aircraft that have been cleared to conduct air refueling and have departed the ARIP to:

1. Make code changes when less than 5 miles from the tanker.

2. Squawk standby when less than 1 mile or more than 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE−
Requests for receiver aircraft to make code changes during air refueling diverts the receiver pilot's attention during a critical phase of flight.

c. When issuing an initial air refueling clearance, you may request a receiver to squawk standby when the receiver reaches a point 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE−
1. *Receiver aircraft will squawk normal when separation from the tanker is greater than 3 miles.*

2. *Once rendezvous is completed, heading and altitude assignments may be made with the tanker concurrence with MARSA remaining in effect.*

3. *Upon rendezvous completion, the tanker must keep receiver aircraft within 3 miles of the tanker until MARSA is terminated.*

d. After MARSA has been declared, you should avoid issuing course or altitude changes prior to rendezvous.

NOTE−
Altitude or course changes issued will automatically void MARSA.

e. Do not use the altitude vacated during the refueling operation until the refueling aircraft has reported reaching the next IFR altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–6–2, Exceptions.

f. Approve requests by the tanker pilot for vectors or alternative routes or altitudes as follows:

1. Furnish vectors or alternative altitudes at any time.

2. Furnish nonradar routes only after the refueling aircraft have passed the ARCP.

NOTE–
1. *To meet a training requirement that aerial refueling be accomplished in a nonradar environment, the military has requested that vectors be furnished only upon request.*

2. *The tanker commander is responsible for coordinating all inflight requests with other aircraft in the refueling mission before submission of such requests to the center.*

3. *Normally, aircraft conducting aerial refueling operations will utilize at least three consecutive altitudes.*

g. Unless a vector or alternative route has been furnished, clear the aircraft to depart the refueling track at a navigational reference point or egress fix.

h. Request an aircraft to report the ARIP, ARCP, or egress fix as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT:

A–R–I–P,

or

A–R–C–P,

or

EGRESS FIX.

i. Expect the following procedures in addition to those required by the appropriate parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations in the event of two-way communications failure:

1. The tanker will depart the track from the highest altitude in the block.

2. The receiver will depart the track from the lowest altitude in the block.

3. Aircraft will squawk 7600 for at least 2 minutes prior to departing the track.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–14, Military Operations Above FL 600.

9–2–14. MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600

Control aircraft operating above FL 600 using the following procedures:

a. Flight plans involving supersonic flight are required 16 hours in advance of proposed departure times for processing and approval by the ARTCCs concerned. The originating ARTCC, where the flight plan is first filed, may waive the 16–hour advance filing requirement.

b. The route of flight must be defined by at least one high altitude fix within each ARTCC area without regard to the distance between fixes. Additionally, the entry and exit points of turns of 90 degrees or more will be designated.

c. Elapsed times from takeoff to the first fix in each ARTCC area must be included in the route of flight.

d. The ARTCC which originates the flight plan must forward departure times to all ARTCCs responsible for processing the flight plan.

e. Approval of the flight plan indicates approval of both route and flight levels (if stated) including operations below FL 600 (aerial refueling).

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED AS FILED VIA ROUTE AND FLIGHT LEVELS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–13, Military Aerial Refueling.

f. Separation. Use the following as minima in lieu of the corresponding type of separation prescribed in:

NOTE–
The primary method described to provide separation between two supersonic aircraft is to descend the aircraft at the lower FL and provide vertical separation since the aircraft at the higher FL may not be able to climb rapidly enough to establish the required separation. Another aspect which should be considered is that supersonic aircraft during turns, either programmed or as the result of vectors, will lose a few thousand feet. Vectoring supersonic aircraft seriously affects the range and mission objectives. Radar separation is the preferred method of separating a subsonic aircraft both from another subsonic aircraft or from a supersonic aircraft.

1. Para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima: *5,000 feet.*

NOTE−
1. *The security requirements of the military services preclude the transmission of actual altitude information on the air/ground or landline circuits. A classified document detailing the plan for ascertaining altitude codes for the day should be readily available to the controllers at their positions of operation.*

2. *Pilots will report their altitude, using the coded plan, and intended flight profile on initial contact with each ARTCC.*

2. Para 6−5−4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes: Protect the airspace 25 miles either side of the route centerline. For turns by supersonic aircraft, protect the airspace 75 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side. For turns by subsonic aircraft, protect the airspace 34 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−3, Abbreviated Departure Clearance.

9−2−15. MILITARY SPECIAL USE FREQUENCIES

a. Assign special use frequency to:

NOTE−
Special use frequencies are assigned to ARTCCs in such a manner that adjacent ARTCCs will not have the same frequency. They are to be used within the ARTCC area jurisdiction from the established FL base of the high altitude sectors and above. Each high altitude sector should have the capability to use the special use frequency on a shared basis.

1. USAF, U.S. Navy, and Air National Guard (ANG) single-pilot jet aircraft formations operating at night or in instrument weather conditions. Formations of five or more USAF aircraft deploying either to a continental U.S. staging base or nonstop to an overseas location are authorized to use special use frequencies at any time. Normally these deployments will be conducted within an altitude reservation.

2. U−2 and B−57 (pressure suit flights) aircraft at all altitudes/FLs except where terminal operations require the assignment of other frequencies.

NOTE−
Aerial refueling operations may require that aircraft leave the special use frequency for communications with the tanker. This will occur when the receiver is approximately 200 miles from the ARCP. The tanker aircraft will remain on the ARTCC assigned frequency and will relay clearances to the receiver as required. An alternate means of communications between the tanker and receiver is HF radio.

3. All aircraft during supersonic flight.

NOTE−
Pilots are expected to request assignment of the special use frequency in the remarks section of the flight plan or before entering supersonic flight. B−57 aircraft engaged in pressure suit operations will use the static call sign KITE and flights will normally be conducted from Dover, Eielson, Ellington, Hickman, Howard, Kirtland, and McClellan Air Force Bases.

4. E−3A AWACS mission crews when operations are being conducted as an MRU in accordance with appropriate letters of agreement.

b. The special use frequency may be assigned as "backup" for the high-altitude sector when direct communications are essential because of a potential emergency control situation.

c. Do not assign the special use frequency to the aircraft in subpara a1 above, when they will operate in airspace assigned for special military operations.

9−2−16. AVOIDANCE OF AREAS OF NUCLEAR RADIATION

a. Advise pilots whenever their proposed flight path will traverse a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and reroute the aircraft when requested by the pilot.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 4−4−4, Avoidance of Hazardous Radiation Areas.

b. Inform pilots when an airfield of intended landing lies within a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and request the pilot to advise his/her intentions.

9−2−17. SAMP

Provide special handling to U.S. Government and military aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions (atmosphere sampling for nuclear, chemical, or hazardous material contamination). Honor inflight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation standards as outlined in this order must be applied in all cases.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4, Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20, Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 4–4–4, Avoidance of Hazardous Radiation Areas.

9–2–18. AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Do not delay E–3 AWACS aircraft identified as "AWACS/NORAD Special" flights. The following control actions are acceptable while expediting these aircraft to the destination orbit.

a. En route altitude changes +/– 2,000 feet from the requested flight level.

b. Radar vectors or minor route changes that do not impede progress towards the destination orbit.

NOTE–
NORAD has a requirement to position E–3 AWACS aircraft at selected locations on a time-critical basis. To the extent possible these flights will utilize routes to the destination orbit that have been precoordinated with the impacted ATC facilities. To identify these flights, the words "AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL" will be included as the first item in the remarks section of the flight plan.

9–2–19. WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS

TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft fly reconnaissance flights to gather meteorological data on winter storms, (NWSOP missions), hurricanes and tropical cyclones (NHOP missions). The routes and timing of these flights are determined by movement of the storm areas and not by traffic flows.

a. When a dropsonde release time is received from a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft, workload and priorities permitting, controllers must advise the mission aircraft of any traffic estimated to pass through the area of the drop at altitudes below that of the mission aircraft. This traffic advisory must include:

1. Altitude.

2. Direction of flight.

3. ETA at the point closest to drop area (or at the fix/intersection where drop will occur).

NOTE–
A dropsonde is a 14–inch long cardboard cylinder about 2.75 inches in diameter, that weighs approximately 14 ounces (400 grams), and has a parachute attached. When released from the aircraft it will fall at a rate of approximately 2,500 feet per minute. Controllers should recognize that a dropsonde released at FL 310 will be a factor for traffic at FL 210 four minutes later. It is the aircraft commanders responsibility to delay release of dropsondes if traffic is a factor. Aircraft commanders will delay release of dropsondes based solely upon traffic as issued by ATC.

b. When advised that an airborne TEAL or NOAA aircraft is requesting a clearance via CARCAH, issue the clearance in accordance with Chapter 4, IFR, Section 2, Clearances.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–1, Clearance Items.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–2, Clearance Prefix.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–3, Delivery Instructions.

c. If a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft must be contacted but is out of VHF, UHF, and HF radio range, advise the supervisory traffic management coordinator–in–charge.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–3–6, Weather Reconnaissance Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4, Operational Priority.

9–2–20. EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER

Approve a pilot request to conduct an evasive action maneuver only on the basis of a permissible traffic situation. Specify the following items, as necessary, when issuing approval:

NOTE–
The "evasive action" maneuver is performed by a bomber/fighter bomber aircraft at or above FL 250 along a 60 NM long segment of the flight plan route overlying a RBS or other site and includes:

1. *Flying a zigzag pattern on both the left and right side of the flight plan route centerline. Altitude deviations are made in conjunction with the lateral maneuvering.*

2. *Lateral deviations from the route centerline will not normally exceed 12 miles. Altitude variations must not exceed plus or minus 1,000 feet of the assigned flight level; i.e., confined within a 2,000 foot block.*

a. Specific route segment on which the maneuver will take place.

b. Distance of maximum route deviation from the centerline in miles.

c. Altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED TO CONDUCT EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

(number of miles) EITHER SIDE OF CENTERLINE,

and

MAINTAIN (altitude) THROUGH (altitude),

and

COMPLETE MANEUVER AT (fix) AT (altitude).

9−2−21. NONSTANDARD FORMATION/ CELL OPERATIONS

Occasionally the military is required to operate in a nonstandard cell formation and controllers should be knowledgeable of the various tactics employed and the procedures used.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 12, Section 12, Formation Flight.

a. Formation leaders are responsible for obtaining ATC approval to conduct nonstandard formation/cell operations.

b. When nonstandard formation/cell operations have been approved, controllers must assign sufficient altitudes to allow intra-cell vertical spacing of 500 feet between each aircraft in the formation.

c. Control nonstandard formation/cell operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between the participating aircraft until they establish approved separation which is acknowledged by ATC.

d. Apply approved separation criteria between the approved nonstandard formation/cell envelope and nonparticipating aircraft.

e. Clear aircraft operating in a nonstandard formation/cell to the breakup fix as the clearance limit. Forward data pertaining to route or altitude beyond the breakup point to the center concerned as a part of the routine flight plan information.

f. *EN ROUTE.* If the breakup occurs in your area, issue appropriate clearances to authorize transition from formation to individual routes or altitudes. If a breakup cannot be approved, issue an appropriate clearance for the flight to continue as a formation.

9−2−22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT

a. OPEN SKIES aircraft will be identified by the call sign "OSY" (OPEN SKIES) followed by the flight number and a one−letter mission suffix.

EXAMPLE−
OSY123D
Mission suffixes:
**F = Observation Flights (Priority).*
**D = Demonstration Flights (Priority).*
**T = Transit Flights (Nonpriority).*

NOTE−
1. *Observation/Demonstration flights are conducted under rigid guidelines outlined in the Treaty of OPEN SKIES that govern sensor usage, maximum flight distances, altitudes and priorities.*

2. *Transit flights are for the sole purpose of moving an OPEN SKIES aircraft from airport to airport in preparation for an actual OPEN SKIES "F" or "D" mission.*

b. Provide priority and special handling to expedite the movement of an OPEN SKIES observation or demonstration flight.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority, subpara n.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5−3−7, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft.
Treaty on OPEN SKIES, Treaty Document, 102−37.

c. OPEN SKIES (F and D) Treaty aircraft, while maintaining compliance with ATC procedures, must have priority over activities in special use airspace (SUA) and must be allowed to transit such airspace as filed after appropriate and timely coordination has been accomplished between the using agency and controlling agency. A letter of agreement is required between the using agency and the controlling agency for Open Skies F and D aircraft to transit active SUA. When Open Skies F and D aircraft transit SUA, an ATC facility must provide approved separation services at all times.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-4 Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA

1. F and D Treaty flights transiting SUA will be handled in the following manner:

(a) The ATC facility controlling the F and D Treaty flight must advise the using/scheduling agency or appropriate ATC facility upon initial notification and when the aircraft is 15 minutes from the SUA boundary; and

(1) For SUA that has an ATC facility providing services to the area, provide approved separation. If the ATC facility is unable to provide approved separation from the activities in the SUA, the using agency must confirm that all operations in the SUA have ceased.

(2) For SUA not associated with an ATC facility, the using/scheduling agency must return the SUA to the controlling agency and confirm that all operations in the SUA have ceased.

(b) If the controlling facility/using agency is unable to confirm that all conflicting activities in the SUA have ceased, the OPEN SKIES aircraft must not be permitted access to the SUA.

2. Return SUA to the using agency, if appropriate, within (15) minutes after the F and D Treaty aircraft clears the SUA.

d. Clear the aircraft according to the filed flight plan.

1. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from the planned action or route of flight except to preclude an emergency situation or other higher priority aircraft.

2. Do not impose air traffic control delays except to preclude emergency situations or other higher priority aircraft.

NOTE−
If for reasons of flight safety the route or altitude must be changed, return the aircraft to the filed flight plan route as soon as practical.

Section 3. Special Use, ATC−Assigned Airspace, and Stationary ALTRVs

9−3−1. APPLICATION

Apply the procedures in this section to aircraft operating in proximity to special use, ATC-assigned airspace (ATCAA), and stationary ALTRVs unless the airspace is designated an alert area/controlled firing area or one of the following conditions exist:

NOTE−
These procedures are not applicable to Alert Areas or Controlled Firing Areas.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Special Use Airspace.

a. The pilot informs you that permission has been obtained from the using agency to operate in the airspace.

b. The using agency informs you they have given permission for the aircraft to operate in the airspace.

NOTE−
Using agency permission may be relayed to the pilot.

c. The restricted/warning area, MOA, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV has been released to the controlling agency.

d. The aircraft is on an approved ALTRV, unless the airspace area in question is an ATCAA.

NOTE−
Mission project officers are responsible for obtaining approval for ALTRV operations within prohibited/ restricted/warning areas, MOAs, and stationary ALTRVs.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−3−4, Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA.

e. Operations in special use airspace and stationary ALTRVs located in offshore/oceanic airspace will be conducted in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures.

9−3−2. SEPARATION MINIMA

Unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/ through/adjacent to a prohibited/restricted/ warning area/MOA/ATCAA/stationary ALTRV is provided for in a letter of agreement (LOA) or letter of procedure (LOP), separate nonparticipating aircraft from active special use airspace, ATCAAs, and stationary ALTRVs by the following minima:

a. Assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-2, Flight Direction, and 4-5-3, Exceptions, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290-1000 feet) above/below the upper/lower limit of the prohibited/ restricted/ warning area/MOA/ ATCAA/stationary ALTRV.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas and Stationary ALTRVs

b. Provide radar separation of 3 miles (FL 600 and above - 6 miles) from the special use airspace, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV peripheral boundary.

c. Clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary.

d. Exception. Some prohibited/restricted/ warning areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. Where facility management has identified these areas as outlined in FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, vector aircraft to remain clear of the peripheral boundary.

NOTE−
Nonparticipating aircraft refers to those aircraft for which you have separation responsibility and which have not been authorized by the using agency to operate in/through the special use airspace, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV in question. VFR traffic is not prohibited from transiting stationary ALTRVs.

9−3−3. VFR-ON-TOP

If the aircraft's route, track, or altitude may cause it to enter an active Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA:

a. Inform the pilot to conduct flight "VFR−on−top" at least 500 feet above the upper limit or below the lower limit of the airspace (subject to para 7−3−1, VFR−on−top); or

PHRASEOLOGY−
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP AT LEAST 500 FEET ABOVE/BELOW (upper/lower limit of airspace) ACROSS (name or number of airspace) BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix);

and if the airspace is an ATCAA,

(name of ATCAA) IS ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–1–1, Class A Airspace Restrictions.

b. Clear the aircraft via a routing which provides approved separation from the airspace.

c. *Exception:* Some Prohibited/Restricted Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. The addition of 500 (or 1,000) feet to the upper/lower limit of these Prohibited/Restricted Areas is not required if the areas have been identified by facility management.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas.

9–3–4. TRANSITING ACTIVE SUA/ATCAA

If a LOA/LOP has been coordinated with the Using Agency and permission has been granted to transit the area:

a. Comply with the instruction/clearances issued by the Using Agency and provide the applicable separation minima between aircraft when two or more aircraft are transiting the area; or

NOTE–
Some Using Agencies are also air traffic control facilities.

b. If unable to comply with instructions/clearances, clear the aircraft in accordance with para 9–3–2, Separation Minima.

NOTE–
The FAA has no jurisdictional authority over the use of nonjoint use prohibited/restricted/warning area airspace; therefore, clearance cannot be issued for flight therein without the appropriate approval.

Section 4. Fuel Dumping

9–4–1. INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

When information is received that an aircraft plans to dump fuel, determine the route and altitude it will fly and the weather conditions in which the operation will be conducted.

9–4–2. ROUTING

Except when it is dumping fuel for emergency reasons, an aircraft in either VFR or IFR conditions may be requested to fly a different route.

9–4–3. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT

If an aircraft is dumping fuel in IFR conditions, assign an altitude at least 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within 5 miles of the route or pattern being flown.

9–4–4. SEPARATION MINIMA

Separate known aircraft from the aircraft dumping fuel as follows:

a. IFR aircraft by one of the following:

1. *1,000 feet* above it; or in accordance with para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima, whichever is greater.

2. *2,000 feet* below it.

3. *5 miles* radar.

4. *5 miles* laterally.

b. VFR radar-identified aircraft by *5 miles* and in accordance with para 5–6–1, Application.

9–4–5. INFORMATION DISSEMINATION

a. If you are in contact with an aircraft when it starts dumping fuel, inform other controllers and facilities which might be concerned. Facilities concerned must broadcast an advisory on appropriate radio frequencies at 3–minute intervals until the dumping stops.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT.
FUEL DUMPING IN PROGRESS OVER (location) AT (altitude) BY (type aircraft) (flight direction).

b. Broadcast a terminating advisory when the fuel dumping operation is completed.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT.
FUEL DUMPING OVER (location) TERMINATED.

Section 5. Jettisoning of External Stores

9–5–1. JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES

At locations where a drop area has been established for radar assistance in jettisoning of external stores, provide vectoring service upon request to:

NOTE–
1. *Where required, a mutually satisfactory drop area for the jettisoning of external stores will be determined by radar-equipped towers and centers in cooperation with the local USAF units, Air Division, or civil operators and civil aircraft companies concerned.*

2. *FAA and Headquarters, USAF, have agreed to allow FAA facilities to vector USAF, Air Force Reserve, and Air National Guard aircraft for jettisoning of all external stores; i.e., tip tanks, JATO racks, special weapons, etc. Any similar vectoring service given to civil operators and civil aircraft companies operating Air Force type aircraft requires written agreement between the FAA and the user to relieve the FAA of possible liability. The regional counsel's office acts for FAA in executing this agreement.*

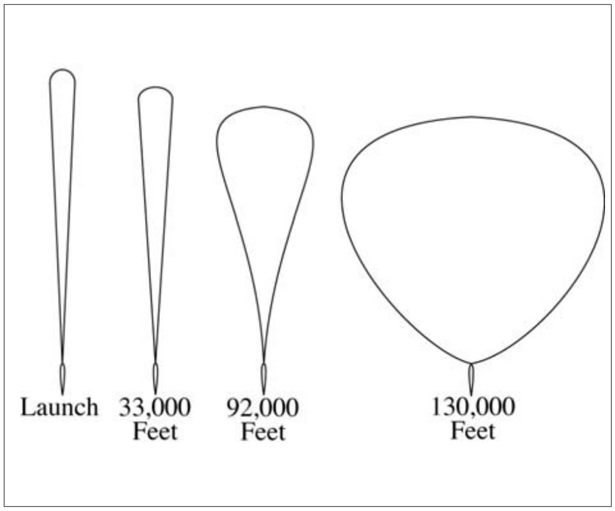
a. USAF, ANG, and Air Force Reserve aircraft at any time.

b. Civil operators and civil aircraft when a written agreement is in effect for your location.

Section 6. Unmanned Free Balloons

9-6-1. APPLICATION

FIG 9-6-1
Shapes of 11 Million Cubic Feet Balloon at Various Altitudes



Apply the following procedures, as appropriate, when unmanned free balloons are within airspace for which you have control jurisdiction:

NOTE-
These procedures apply to unmanned free balloons that carry payloads as described in 14 CFR Section 101.1(a)(4). Payloads may weigh several hundred pounds and the physical shape of the balloons change at various altitudes/flight levels. (See FIG 9-6-1.) Balloon and payload ascend at an average rate of 400 feet a minute. Over the descent area, the payload is normally released from the balloon and descends by parachute at a minimum rate of 1,000 feet a minute. The balloon is normally deflated automatically when the payload is released. The operator is required to advise ATC 1 hour in advance of descent in accordance with 14 CFR Section 101.39.

a. Post the balloon flight on flight progress strips along the planned trajectory and revise routing as tracking/position reports require.

NOTE-
The prelaunch notice information should be posted on flight progress strips for planning and operational purposes.

b. Radar flight follow balloons to the extent that equipment capabilities permit. If radar flight following is not possible, tracking should be attempted by communication with the "chase plane," telephone contact with the operator, pilot, or ground observation reports.

NOTE-
Some operators have equipped their balloons with transponder beacons in addition to a radar reflection device or material required by 14 CFR Section 101.35, but at cruise altitude, the balloon's communications equipment and transponder, if so equipped, are operated intermittently to conserve battery energy.

c. With pilot concurrence, provide separation between aircraft and balloons when you are satisfied that the balloon information is sufficiently reliable to provide the service. Do not attempt to separate aircraft from the balloon by using vertical separation unless you have accurate balloon altitude information.

d. Provide traffic advisories to all affected aircraft during initial contact specifying the balloon's known or estimated position, direction of movement, and altitude as "unknown" or "reported," as appropriate.

NOTE-
Unless ATC requires otherwise, operators of unmanned free balloons are required to monitor the course of the balloon and record its position at least every two hours. As required in 14 CFR Section 101.39a, balloon position reports are not forwarded by the operator unless requested by ATC.

PHRASEOLOGY-
UNMANNED FREE BALLOON OVER (name of location),

or

ESTIMATED OVER (name of location), MOVING (direction of movement).

LAST REPORTED ALTITUDE AT (altitude as reported by the operator or determined from pilot report),

or

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

e. To transfer flight following responsibility of balloons between facilities or between controllers, forward the following information when available:

REFERENCE-
14 CFR Section 101.37, Notice Requirements.
14 CFR Section 101.39, Balloon Position Reports.

1. Identification and type; e.g., Flight 804 Balloon.

2. Last known position and altitude.

3. General direction of movement and speed.

4. ETA over facility boundary, sector boundary, or other point if believed to be reasonably accurate.

5. Other pertinent information.

6. If in radar contact, physically point out the target to the receiving controller.

7. The name and the telephone number of the location where tracking is being accomplished.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−6−2, Derelict Balloons.

9−6−2. DERELICT BALLOONS

Balloons become derelict when a moored balloon slips its mooring and becomes a hazard to air navigation or when an unmanned free balloon flight cannot be terminated as planned. When this occurs:

a. In the case of a moored balloon which has slipped its moorings, issue traffic advisories.

b. In the case of an unmanned free balloon, flight follow the balloon and, to the extent possible, provide aircraft under your control separation from the balloon.

c. Forward balloon position information received from pilot reports or derived from radar returns to your supervisor for further dissemination.

d. If radar contact with the balloon is lost, broadcast an advisory to all aircraft operating in the airspace affected by the derelict balloon at 10−minute intervals continuing until the derelict balloon is no longer a factor.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ADVISORY TO ALL AIRCRAFT.

DERELICT BALLOON REPORTED IN THE VICINITY OF (location),

or

ESTIMATED IN VICINITY OF (location),

or

REPORTED OVER (location),

or

RADAR REPORTED OVER (location).

LAST REPORTED ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL AT (altitude/flight level as reported by operator or pilot report),

or

ALTITUDE/FLIGHT LEVEL UNKNOWN.

e. Transfer flight following responsibility as outlined in para 9−6−1, Application, subpara e.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 18−5−2, Derelict Balloons/Objects.

Section 7. Parachute Operations

9-7-1. COORDINATION

Coordinate any pertinent information prior to and at the end of each parachute jump or series of jumps which begins or ends in your area of jurisdiction with other affected ATC facilities/sectors.

NOTE-
14 CFR Section 105.15 prescribes the information required from each person requesting authorization or submitting notification for nonemergency parachute jumping activity.

REFERENCE-
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 18-4-1, Nonemergency Parachute Jump Operations.
14 CFR Part 105, Parachute Operations.

9-7-2. CLASS A, CLASS B, AND CLASS C AIRSPACE

a. Authorize parachute operations only within airspace designated for the jumping activity.

b. Separate aircraft, other than those participating in the jump operation, from the airspace authorized for the jumping activity.

c. Impose, as necessary, any conditions and restrictions which in your judgment would promote the safety of the operation.

REFERENCE-
14 CFR Section 105.25, Parachute Operations in Designated Airspace.

9-7-3. CLASS D AIRSPACE

TERMINAL

Handle requests to conduct jump operations in or into Class D airspace in which there is a functioning control tower as follows:

a. Authorize parachute jumping with respect to known or observed traffic.

b. Issue advisory information to the jump aircraft and to nonparticipating aircraft as necessary for the safe conduct of the jump operation.

9-7-4. OTHER CONTROL AIRSPACE

Handle notifications to conduct jump operations in other Class E airspace as follows:

a. Issue a traffic advisory to the jump aircraft before the jump. Include aircraft type, altitude, and direction of flight of all known traffic which will transit the airspace within which the jump will be conducted.

NOTE-
14 CFR Section 105.13, Radio Equipment and Use Requirements, prescribes that, except when otherwise authorized by ATC, parachute jumping is not allowed in or into Class E airspace unless radio communications have been established between the aircraft and the FAA ATC facility having jurisdiction over the affected airspace of the first intended exit altitude at least 5 minutes before the jumping activity is to begin for the purpose of receiving information in the aircraft about known air traffic in the vicinity of the jump aircraft.

b. Issue advisories to all known aircraft which will transit the airspace within which the jump operations will be conducted. Advisories must consist of the location, time, duration, and altitude from which the jump will be made.

c. When time or numbers of aircraft make individual transmissions impractical, advisories to nonparticipating aircraft may be broadcast on appropriate control frequencies, or when available, the ATIS broadcast.

d. When requested by the pilot and to the extent possible, assist nonparticipating aircraft to avoid the airspace within which the jump will be conducted.

Section 8. Unidentified Flying Object (UFO) Reports

9–8–1. GENERAL

a. Persons wanting to report UFO/unexplained phenomena activity should contact a UFO/unexplained phenomena reporting data collection center, such as the National UFO Reporting Center, etc.

b. If concern is expressed that life or property might be endangered, report the activity to the local law enforcement department.

Chapter 10. Emergencies

Section 1. General

10−1−1. EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS

a. An emergency can be either a *Distress* or an *Urgency* condition as defined in the "Pilot/Controller Glossary."

b. A pilot who encounters a *Distress* condition should declare an emergency by beginning the initial communication with the word "Mayday," preferably repeated three times. For an *Urgency* condition, the word "Pan-Pan" should be used in the same manner.

c. If the words "Mayday" or "Pan-Pan" are not used and you are in doubt that a situation constitutes an emergency or potential emergency, handle it as though it were an emergency.

d. Because of the infinite variety of possible emergency situations, specific procedures cannot be prescribed. However, when you believe an emergency exists or is imminent, select and pursue a course of action which appears to be most appropriate under the circumstances and which most nearly conforms to the instructions in this manual.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−7, IFR Military Training Routes.

10−1−2. OBTAINING INFORMATION

Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he/she is authorized by 14 CFR Part 91 to determine a course of action.

10−1−3. PROVIDING ASSISTANCE

Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the Federal Communications Commission, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−4, Operational Priority.

10−1−4. RESPONSIBILITY

a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.

b. When you receive information about an aircraft in distress, forward detailed data to the center in whose area the emergency exists.

NOTE−
1. *Centers serve as the central points for collecting information, for coordinating with SAR, and for conducting a communications search by distributing any necessary ALNOTs concerning:*

a. *Overdue or missing IFR aircraft.*

b. *Aircraft in an emergency situation occurring in their respective area.*

c. *Aircraft on a combination VFR/IFR or an airfiled IFR flight plan and 30 minutes have passed since the pilot requested IFR clearance and neither communication nor radar contact can be established with it. For SAR purposes, these aircraft are treated the same as IFR aircraft.*

d. *Overdue or missing aircraft which have been authorized to operate in accordance with special VFR clearances.*

2. *Notifying the center about a VFR aircraft emergency allows provision of IFR separation if considered necessary.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−5, Emergency Situations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−3−2, Information to be Forwarded to ARTCC.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−3−3, Information to be Forwarded to RCC.

c. If the aircraft involved is operated by a foreign air carrier, notify the center serving the departure or destination point, when either point is within the U.S., for relay to the operator of the aircraft.

d. The ARTCC must be responsible for receiving and relaying all pertinent ELT signal information to the appropriate authorities.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−10, Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

e. When consideration is given to the need to escort an aircraft in distress, evaluate the close formation required by both aircraft. Special consideration should be given if the maneuver takes the aircraft through the clouds.

f. Before a determination is made to have an aircraft in distress be escorted by another aircraft, ask the pilots if they are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

1. Do not allow aircraft to join up in formation during emergency conditions, unless:

(a) The pilots involved are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

(b) They can communicate with one another, and have visual contact with each other.

2. If there is a need for aircraft that are not designated as search and rescue aircraft to get closer to one another than radar separation standards allow, the maneuver must be accomplished, visually, by the aircraft involved.

10–1–5. COORDINATION

Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.

10–1–6. AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY

TERMINAL

a. When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled. This also applies when routes within the airport proper are required for movement of local emergency equipment going to or from an emergency which occurs outside the airport proper.

NOTE–
Aircraft operated in proximity to accident or other emergency or disaster locations may cause hindrances to airborne and surface rescue or relief operations. Congestion, distraction or other effects, such as wake turbulence from nearby airplanes and helicopters, could prevent or delay proper execution of these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 19, Temporary Flight Restrictions.
14 CFR Section 91.137, Temporary Flight Restrictions.

b. Workload permitting, monitor the progress of emergency vehicles responding to a situation. If necessary, provide available information to assist responders in finding the accident/incident scene.

10–1–7. INFLIGHT EMERGENCIES INVOLVING MILITARY FIGHTER-TYPE AIRCRAFT

a. The design and complexity of military fighter-type aircraft places an extremely high workload on the pilot during an inflight emergency. The pilot's full attention is required to maintain control of the aircraft. Therefore, radio frequency and transponder code changes should be avoided and radio transmissions held to a minimum, especially when the aircraft experiencing the emergency is at low altitude.

b. Pilots of military fighter–type aircraft, normally single engine, experiencing or anticipating loss of engine power or control may execute a flameout pattern in an emergency situation. Circumstances may dictate that the pilot, depending on the position and nature of the emergency, modify the pattern based on actual emergency recovery requirements.

c. Military airfields with an assigned flying mission may conduct practice emergency approaches. Participating units maintain specific procedures for conducting these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–13, Simulated Flameout (SFO) Approaches/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations/Practice Precautionary Approaches.

Section 2. Emergency Assistance

10−2−1. INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

a. Start assistance as soon as enough information has been obtained upon which to act. Information requirements will vary, depending on the existing situation. Minimum required information for inflight emergencies is:

NOTE−
In the event of an ELT signal see para 10−2−10, Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

1. Aircraft identification and type.

2. Nature of the emergency.

3. Pilot's desires.

b. After initiating action, obtain the following items or any other pertinent information from the pilot or aircraft operator, as necessary:

NOTE−
Normally, do not request this information from military fighter-type aircraft that are at low altitudes (i.e., on approach, immediately after departure, on a low level route, etc.). However, request the position of an aircraft that is not visually sighted or displayed on radar if the location is not given by the pilot.

1. Aircraft altitude.

2. Fuel remaining in time.

3. Pilot reported weather.

4. Pilot capability for IFR flight.

5. Time and place of last known position.

6. Heading since last known position.

7. Airspeed.

8. Navigation equipment capability.

9. NAVAID signals received.

10. Visible landmarks.

11. Aircraft color.

12. Number of people on board.

13. Point of departure and destination.

14. Emergency equipment on board.

10−2−2. FREQUENCY CHANGES

Although 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are emergency frequencies, it might be best to keep the aircraft on the initial contact frequency. Change frequencies only when there is a valid reason.

10−2−3. AIRCRAFT ORIENTATION

Orientate an aircraft by the means most appropriate to the circumstances. Recognized methods include:

a. Radar.

b. NAVAIDs.

c. Pilotage.

d. Sighting by other aircraft.

10−2−4. ALTITUDE CHANGE FOR IMPROVED RECEPTION

When you consider it necessary and if weather and circumstances permit, recommend that the aircraft maintain or increase altitude to improve communications or radar.

NOTE−
Aircraft with high-bypass turbofan engines (such as B747) encountering volcanic ash clouds have experienced total loss of power to all engines. Damage to engines due to volcanic ash ingestion increases as engine power is increased, therefore, climb while in the ash cloud is to be avoided where terrain permits.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 7−5−9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.

10−2−5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC when any of the following exist:

NOTE−
USAF facilities are only required to notify the ARTCC.

a. An emergency is declared by either:

1. The pilot.

2. Facility personnel.

3. Officials responsible for the operation of the aircraft.

b. There is unexpected loss of radar contact and radio communications with any IFR or VFR aircraft.

c. Reports indicate it has made a forced landing, is about to do so, or its operating efficiency is so impaired that a forced landing will be necessary.

d. Reports indicate the crew has abandoned the aircraft or is about to do so.

e. An emergency transponder code is displayed or reported.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. ERAM: Code 7700 causes an emergency indicator to blink in the data block.

f. Intercept or escort aircraft services are required.

g. The need for ground rescue appears likely.

h. An Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) signal is heard or reported.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–3 , Providing Assistance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–10 , Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

10–2–6. HIJACKED AIRCRAFT

Hijack attempts or actual events are a matter of national security and require special handling. Policy and procedures for hijack situations are detailed in FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations. FAAO JO 7610.4 describes reporting requirements, air crew procedures, air traffic procedures and escort or interceptor procedures for hijack situations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 7, Hijacked/Suspicious Aircraft Reporting and Procedures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–13 , Code Monitor.

10–2–7. VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If VFR aircraft requests assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, determine the facility best able to provide service. If a frequency change is necessary, advise the pilot of the reason for the change, and request the aircraft contact the appropriate control facility. Inform that facility of the situation. If the aircraft is unable to communicate with the control facility, relay information and clearances.

b. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–8. RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If a VFR aircraft requests radar assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, ask the pilot if he/she is qualified for and capable of conducting IFR flight.

b. If the pilot states he/she is qualified for and capable of IFR flight, request him/her to file an IFR flight plan and then issue clearance to destination airport, as appropriate.

c. If the pilot states he/she is not qualified for or not capable of conducting IFR flight, or if he/she refuses to file an IFR flight plan, take whichever of the following actions is appropriate:

1. Inform the pilot of airports where VFR conditions are reported, provide other available pertinent weather information, and ask if he/she will elect to conduct VFR flight to such an airport.

2. If the action in subpara 1 above is not feasible or the pilot declines to conduct VFR flight to another airport, provide radar assistance if the pilot:

(a) Declares an emergency.

(b) Refuses to declare an emergency and you have determined the exact nature of the radar services the pilot desires.

3. If the aircraft has already encountered IFR conditions, inform the pilot of the appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude. If the aircraft is below appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude and sufficiently accurate position information has been received or radar identification is established, furnish a heading or radial on which to climb to reach appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

d. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10−2−9. RADAR ASSISTANCE TECHNIQUES

Use the following techniques to the extent possible when you provide radar assistance to a pilot not qualified to operate in IFR conditions:

a. Avoid radio frequency changes except when necessary to provide a clear communications channel.

b. Make turns while the aircraft is in VFR conditions so it will be in a position to fly a straight course while in IFR conditions.

c. Have pilot lower gear and slow aircraft to approach speed while in VFR conditions.

d. Avoid requiring a climb or descent while in a turn if in IFR conditions.

e. Avoid abrupt maneuvers.

f. Vector aircraft to VFR conditions.

g. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10−2−10. EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS

When an ELT signal is heard or reported:

a. *EN ROUTE.* Notify the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC).

NOTE−
FAA Form 7210−8, ELT INCIDENT, contains standardized format for coordination with the RCC.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 9−3−1, FAA Form 7210−8, ELT Incident.

b. *TERMINAL.* Notify the ARTCC which will coordinate with the RCC.

NOTE−
1. *Operational ground testing of emergency locator transmitters (ELTs) has been authorized during the first 5 minutes of each hour. To avoid confusing the tests with an actual alarm, the testing is restricted to no more than three audio sweeps.*

2. *Controllers can expect pilots to report aircraft position and time the signal was first heard, aircraft position and time the signal was last heard, aircraft position at maximum signal strength, flight altitude, and frequency of the emergency signal (121.5/243.0). (See AIM, Para 6−2−5, Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT).)*

c. *TERMINAL.* Attempt to obtain fixes or bearings on the signal.

d. Solicit the assistance of other aircraft known to be operating in the signal area.

e. *TERMINAL.* Forward fixes or bearings and any other pertinent information to the ARTCC.

NOTE−
Fix information in relation to a VOR or VORTAC (radial-distance) facilitates accurate ELT plotting by RCC and should be provided when possible.

f. *EN ROUTE.* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on an airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site technical operations personnel and the Regional Operations Center (ROC) for their actions. This action is in addition to the above.

g. *TERMINAL.* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on the airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site technical operations personnel and the ARTCC for their action. This action is in addition to the above.

h. Air traffic personnel must not leave their required duty stations to locate an ELT signal source.

NOTE−
Portable handcarried receivers assigned to air traffic facilities (where no technical operations personnel are available) may be loaned to responsible airport personnel or local authorities to assist in locating the ELT signal source.

i. *EN ROUTE.* Notify the RCC and the ROC if signal source is located/terminated.

j. *TERMINAL.* Notify the ARTCC if signal source is located/terminated.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−1−4, Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−1, Information Requirements.

10−2−11. AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS

a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager. If the threat is general in nature, handle it as a "Suspicious Activity." When the threat is targeted against a specific aircraft and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions as appropriate:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 7, Hijacked/Suspicious Aircraft Reporting and Procedures.

1. Advise the pilot of the threat.

2. Inform the pilot that technical assistance can be obtained from an FAA aviation explosives expert.

NOTE−
An FAA aviation explosive expert is on call at all times and may be contacted by calling the FAA Operations Center, Washington, DC, Area Code 202−267−3333, ETN 521−0111, or DSN 851−3750. Technical advice can be relayed to assist civil or military air crews in their search for a bomb and in determining what precautionary action to take if one is found.

3. Ask the pilot if he/she desires to climb or descend to an altitude that would equalize or reduce the outside air pressure/existing cabin air pressure differential. Issue or relay an appropriate clearance considering MEA, MOCA, MRA, and weather.

NOTE−
Equalizing existing cabin air pressure with outside air pressure is a key step which the pilot may wish to take to minimize the damage potential of a bomb.

4. Handle the aircraft as an emergency and/or provide the most expeditious handling possible with respect to the safety of other aircraft, ground facilities, and personnel.

NOTE−
Emergency handling is discretionary and should be based on the situation. With certain types of threats, plans may call for a low-key action or response.

5. Issue or relay clearances to a new destination if requested.

6. When a pilot requests technical assistance or if it is apparent that a pilot may need such assistance, do NOT suggest what actions the pilot should take concerning a bomb, but obtain the following information and notify your supervisor who will contact the FAA aviation explosives expert:

NOTE−
This information is needed by the FAA aviation explosives expert so that he/she can assess the situation and make immediate recommendations to the pilot. The aviation explosives expert may not be familiar with all military aircraft configurations but he/she can offer technical assistance which would be beneficial to the pilot.

(a) Type, series, and model of the aircraft.

(b) Precise location/description of the bomb device if known.

(c) Other details which may be pertinent.

NOTE−
The following details may be of significance if known, but it is not intended that the pilot should disturb a suspected bomb/bomb container to ascertain the information: The altitude or time set for the bomb to explode, type of detonating action (barometric, time, anti-handling, remote radio transmitter), power source (battery, electrical, mechanical), type of initiator (blasting cap, flash bulb, chemical), and the type of explosive/incendiary charge (dynamite, black powder, chemical).

b. When a bomb threat involves an aircraft on the ground and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions in addition to those discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate:

1. If the aircraft is at an airport where tower control or FSS advisory service is not available, or if the pilot ignores the threat at any airport, recommend that takeoff be delayed until the pilot or aircraft operator establishes that a bomb is not aboard in accordance with 14 CFR Part 121. If the pilot insists on taking off and in your opinion the operation will not adversely affect other traffic, issue or relay an ATC clearance.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 121.538, Airplane Security.

2. Advise the aircraft to remain as far away from other aircraft and facilities as possible, to clear the runway, if appropriate, and to taxi to an isolated or designated search area. When it is impractical or if the pilot takes an alternative action; e.g., parking and off-loading immediately, advise other aircraft to remain clear of the suspect aircraft by at least 100 yards if able.

NOTE−
Passenger deplaning may be of paramount importance and must be considered before the aircraft is parked or moved away from service areas. The decision to use ramp facilities rests with the pilot, aircraft operator/airport manager.

c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.

d. When a pilot reports the discovery of a bomb or suspected bomb on an aircraft which is airborne or on the ground, determine the pilot's intentions and comply with his/her requests in so far as possible. Take all of the actions discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate under the existing circumstances.

e. The handling of aircraft when a hijacker has or is suspected of having a bomb requires special considerations. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel. Apply hijacking procedures and offer assistance to the pilot according to the preceding paragraphs, if needed.

10−2−12. EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K−9 TEAMS

Take the following actions should you receive an aircraft request for the location of the nearest explosive detection K−9 team.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−11, Explosives Detection K−9 Teams.

a. Obtain the aircraft identification and position and advise your supervisor of the pilot request.

b. When you receive the nearest location of the explosive detection K−9 team, relay the information to the pilot.

c. If the aircraft wishes to divert to the airport location provided, obtain an estimated arrival time from the pilot and advise your supervisor.

10−2−13. MANPADS ALERT

When a threat or attack from Man−Portable Air Defense Systems (MANPADS) is determined to be real, notify and advise aircraft as follows:

a. Do not withhold landing clearance. To the extent possible, issue information on MANPADS threats, confirmed attacks, or post−event activities in time for it to be useful to the pilot. The pilot or parent company will determine the pilot's actions.

b. MANPADS information will be disseminated via the ATIS and/or controller−to−pilot transmissions.

c. Disseminate via controller−to−pilot transmission until the appropriate MANPADS information is broadcast via the ATIS and pilots indicate they have received the appropriate ATIS code. MANPADS information will include nature and location of threat or incident, whether reported or observed and by whom, time (if known), and when transmitting to an individual aircraft, a request for pilot's intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION (aircraft identification), MANPADS ALERT. EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION. MANPADS THREAT/ ATTACK/POST−EVENT ACTIVITY OBSERVED/ REPORTED BY (reporting agency) (location) AT (time, if known). (When transmitting to an individual aircraft) SAY INTENTIONS.

EXAMPLE−
"Attention Eastern Four Seventeen, MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS threat reported by TSA, LaGuardia vicinity. Say intentions."

"Attention all aircraft, MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS post−event activity observed by tower south of airport at two−one−zero−zero Zulu."

d. Report MANPADS threat/attack/post–event activity via the ATIS and/or controller–to–pilot transmissions until notified otherwise by the Domestic Events Network (DEN) Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−9−3, Content.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2−1−9, Handling MANPADS Incidents.
FAAO JO 7610.4, para 16-1-3, Responsibilities.

10−2−14. UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION OF AIRCRAFT

a. When a laser event is reported to an air traffic facility, broadcast on all appropriate frequencies a general caution warning every five minutes for 20 minutes following the last report.

PHRASEOLOGY−
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, (location), (altitude).

b. Terminal facilities must include reported unauthorized laser illumination events on the ATIS broadcast for one hour following the last report. Include the time, location, altitude, color, and direction of the laser as reported by the pilot.

NOTE–
All personnel can expect aircrews to regard lasers as an inflight emergency and may take evasive action to avoid laser illumination. Additionally, other aircraft may request clearance to avoid the area.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–9–3, Content.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–27, Reporting Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft.

10–2–15. EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATION

a. Consider the following factors when recommending an emergency airport:

1. Remaining fuel in relation to airport distances.

2. Weather conditions.

NOTE–
Depending on the nature of the emergency, certain weather phenomena may deserve weighted consideration when recommending an airport; e.g., a pilot may elect to fly farther to land at an airport with VFR instead of IFR conditions.

3. Airport conditions.

4. NAVAID status.

5. Aircraft type.

6. Pilot's qualifications.

7. Vectoring or homing capability to the emergency airport.

b. Consideration to the provisions of subpara a and para 10–2–16, Guidance to Emergency Airport, must be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10–2–16. GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT

a. When necessary, use any of the following for guidance to the airport:

1. Radar.

2. Following another aircraft.

3. NAVAIDs.

4. Pilotage by landmarks.

5. Compass headings.

b. Consideration to the provisions of para 10–2–15, Emergency Airport Recommendation, must be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10–2–17. EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)

a. The EOVM is intended to facilitate advisory service to an aircraft in an emergency situation wherein an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude cannot be maintained. It must only be used and the service provided under the following conditions:

1. The pilot has declared an emergency, or

2. The controller has determined that an emergency condition exists or is imminent because of the pilot's inability to maintain an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

NOTE–
Appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitudes may be defined as Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA), Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MOCA), or Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA).

b. When providing emergency vectoring service, the controller must advise the pilot that any headings issued are emergency advisories intended only to direct the aircraft toward and over an area of lower terrain/obstacle elevation.

NOTE–
Altitudes and obstructions depicted on the EOVM are the actual altitudes and locations of the obstacle/terrain and contain no lateral or vertical buffers for obstruction clearance.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–9–4, Emergency Obstruction Video Map (EOVM).

10–2–18. VOLCANIC ASH

a. If a volcanic ash cloud is known or forecast to be present:

1. Relay all information available to pilots to ensure that they are aware of the ash cloud's position and altitude(s).

2. Suggest appropriate reroutes to avoid the area of known or forecast ash clouds.

NOTE−
Volcanic ash clouds are not normally detected by airborne or air traffic radar systems.

b. If advised by an aircraft that it has entered a volcanic ash cloud and indicates that a distress situation exists:

1. Consider the aircraft to be in an emergency situation.

2. Do not initiate any climb clearances to turbine−powered aircraft until the aircraft has exited the ash cloud.

3. Do not attempt to provide escape vectors without pilot concurrence.

NOTE−
1. *The recommended escape maneuver is to reverse course and begin a descent (if terrain permits). However, it is the pilot's responsibility to determine the safest escape route from the ash cloud.*

2. *Controllers should be aware of the possibility of complete loss of power to any turbine−powered aircraft that encounters an ash cloud.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−4, Altitude Change for Improved Reception.
AIM, Para 7−5−9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.

10−2−19. REPORTING DEATH, ILLNESS, OR OTHER PUBLIC HEALTH RISK ON BOARD AIRCRAFT

a. If an air traffic controller receives a report of the death of person, an illness, and/or other public health risk obtain the following information and notify the operations manager in charge (OMIC)/front line manager (FLM)/controller-in-charge (CIC) as soon as possible.

1. Call sign.

2. Number of suspected cases of illness on board.

3. Nature of the illnesses or other public health risk, if known.

4. Number of persons on board.

5. Number of deaths, if applicable.

6. Pilot's intent (for example, continue to destination or divert).

7. Any request for assistance (for example, needing emergency medical services to meet the aircraft at arrival).

b. The OMIC/FLM/CIC must relay the information to the DEN as soon as possible.

NOTE−
1. *If the ATC facility is not actively monitoring the DEN or does not have a dedicated line to the DEN, they must call into the DEN directly via (202) 493-4170.*

2. *Except in extraordinary circumstances, such as a situation requiring ATC intervention, follow-on coordination regarding the incident will not involve ATC frequencies.*

3. *The initial report to a U.S. ATC facility may be passed from a prior ATC facility along the route of flight.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-29, REPORTING DEATH, ILLNESS, OR OTHER PUBLIC HEALTH RISK ON BOARD AIRCRAFT

Section 3. Overdue Aircraft

10–3–1. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT/OTHER SITUATIONS

a. Consider an aircraft to be overdue and initiate the procedures stated in this section to issue an ALNOT when neither communications nor radar contact can be established and 30 minutes have passed since:

NOTE–
The procedures in this section also apply to an aircraft referred to as "missing" or "unreported."

1. Its ETA over a specified or compulsory reporting point or at a clearance limit in your area.

2. Its clearance void time.

3. A VFR or IFR aircraft arriving at an airport not served by an air traffic control tower or flight service station fails to cancel a flight plan after receiving instructions on how to cancel.

NOTE–
If you have reason to believe that an aircraft is overdue prior to 30 minutes, take the appropriate action immediately.

b. Consider an aircraft to be in an emergency status and initiate ALNOT procedures in this section immediately when there is an abnormal simultaneous loss of radar and communications with an IFR aircraft or VFR/SVFR aircraft receiving flight following services. This situation may be applicable to an aircraft operating in a non-radar environment and an unexpected/abnormal loss of communications occurs.

c. The ARTCC in whose area the aircraft is reported as overdue, missing or lost will make these determinations and takes any subsequent action required.

d. If you have reason to believe that an aircraft is overdue prior to 30 minutes, take the appropriate action immediately.

e. The center in whose area the aircraft is first unreported or overdue will make these determinations and takes any subsequent action required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–4, Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times.

10–3–2. INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO ARTCC

TERMINAL

When an aircraft is considered to be in emergency status that may require SAR procedures, or an IFR aircraft is overdue, the terminal facility must alert the appropriate ARTCC and forward the following information, as available:

a. Flight plan, including color of aircraft, if known.

b. Time of last transmission received, by whom, and frequency used.

c. Last position report and how determined.

d. Aircraft beacon code.

e. Number of persons on board.

f. Fuel status.

g. Facility working aircraft and frequency.

h. Last known position, how determined, time, estimated present position, and maximum range of flight of the aircraft based on remaining fuel and airspeed.

i. Position of other aircraft near aircraft's route of flight, when requested.

j. Whether or not an ELT signal has been heard or reported in the vicinity of the last known position.

k. Other pertinent information.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–4, Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–5, Emergency Situations.

NOTE–
FSSs serve as the central points for collecting and disseminating information on an overdue or missing aircraft which is not on an IFR flight plan. Non–FSS ATC facilities that receive telephone calls or other inquiries regarding these flights must refer these calls and inquiries to the appropriate AFSS/FSS.

10–3–3. INFORMATION TO BE FORWARDED TO RCC

EN ROUTE

When an aircraft is considered to be in emergency status or an IFR aircraft is overdue, the ARTCC must alert the RCC and forward the following information, as available:

a. Facility and person calling.

b. Flight plan, including color of aircraft, if known.

c. Time of last transmission received, by whom, and frequency used.

d. Last position report and how determined.

e. Aircraft beacon code.

f. Action taken by reporting facility and proposed action.

g. Number of persons on board.

h. Fuel status.

i. Facility working aircraft and frequency.

j. Last known position, how determined, time, estimated present position, and maximum range of flight of the aircraft based on remaining fuel and airspeed.

k. Position of other aircraft near aircraft's route of flight, when requested.

l. Whether or not an ELT signal has been heard or reported in the vicinity of the last known position.

m. Other pertinent information.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−1−4, Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−2−5, Emergency Situations.

NOTE−
FSSs serve as the central points for collecting and disseminating information on an overdue or missing aircraft which is not on an IFR flight plan. Non−FSS ATC facilities that receive telephone calls or other inquiries regarding these flights must refer these calls and inquiries to the appropriate FSS.

10−3−4. ALNOT

EN ROUTE

a. In addition to routing to the regional office operations center for the area in which the facility is located, issue an ALNOT to all centers and Area B circuits, generally 50 miles on either side of the route of flight from the last reported position to destination. Include the original or amended flight plan, as appropriate, and the last known position of the aircraft. At the recommendation of the RCC or at your discretion, the ALNOT may be issued to cover the maximum range of the aircraft.

NOTE−
1. *An ALNOT must be issued before the RCC can begin search and rescue procedures.*

2. *Flight plan information on military aircraft is available at the FSS serving as a tie-in station for the departure or destination airport. FAA tie-in stations for airports in the continental U.S. are listed in FAAO JO 7350.8, Location Identifiers. In the West Flight Services Area Office, tie−in stations are listed in service area publications entitled, "Flight Plan Routing and Airport Search Directory." For flights with overseas departure points, the information is available through the destination FSS or the appropriate IFSS.*

b. Upon receipt of an INREQ or ALNOT, check the position records to determine whether the aircraft has contacted your facility. Notify the originator of the results or status of this check within one hour of the time the alert was received. Retain the alert in an active status, and immediately notify the originator of subsequent contact, until cancellation is received.

c. Include pertinent information in the ALNOT that will aid the RCC and SAR Teams in conducting the SAR mission. When known, include:

1. Last known position.

2. Time.

3. Aircraft beacon code.

d. When information is obtained not previously contained in the ALNOT, issue an amended ALNOT to update information that will assist the SAR providers.

10−3−5. RESPONSIBILITY TRANSFER TO RCC

EN ROUTE

Transfer responsibility for further search to the RCC when one of the following occurs:

a. Thirty minutes have elapsed after the estimated aircraft fuel exhaustion time.

b. The aircraft has not been located within one hour after ALNOT issuance.

c. The ALNOT search has been completed with negative results.

10−3−6. LAST KNOWN POSITION DETERMINATION

a. To assist the RCC and SAR Teams in the conduct of the SAR mission, provide the most accurate latitude and longitude available to the FAA using en route and terminal radar sensor data near the aircraft's last known position.

b. If necessary to prevent an undue delay, utilize any available method to determine the initial latitude and longitude. Follow-up as soon as possible with a formal latitude and longitude using the appropriate terminal or en route facility data extraction tools.

c. If available, solicit the assistance of other aircraft known to be operating near the aircraft in distress.

d. Forward this information to the RCC or the ARTCC as appropriate.

10−3−7. ALNOT CANCELLATION

EN ROUTE

a. When directed by the RCC, cancel the ALNOT when the aircraft is located or the search is abandoned.

b. Include pertinent information in the cancellation that will aid the RCC, SAR Teams, and FAA SAR management to include the location where the aircraft or wreckage was found.

Section 4. Control Actions

10−4−1. TRAFFIC RESTRICTIONS

IFR traffic which could be affected by an overdue or unreported aircraft must be restricted or suspended unless radar separation is used. The facility responsible must restrict or suspend IFR traffic for a period of 30 minutes following the applicable time listed in subparas a thru e:

a. The time at which approach clearance was delivered to the pilot.

b. The EFC time delivered to the pilot.

c. The arrival time over the NAVAID serving the destination airport.

d. The current estimate, either the control facility's or the pilot's, whichever is later, at:

1. The appropriate en route NAVAID or fix, and

2. The NAVAID serving the destination airport.

e. The release time and, if issued, the clearance void time.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−4, Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times.

10−4−2. LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

a. *EN ROUTE.* At nontower or non−FSS locations, request the airport management to light all runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after its fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.

b. *TERMINAL.* Operate runway lights, approach lights, and all other required airport lighting systems for at least 30 minutes before the ETA of the unreported aircraft until the aircraft has been located or for 30 minutes after its fuel supply is estimated to be exhausted.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−4−1, Emergency Lighting.

10−4−3. TRAFFIC RESUMPTION

After the 30−minute traffic suspension period has expired, resume normal air traffic control if the operators or pilots of other aircraft concur. This concurrence must be maintained for a period of 30 minutes after the suspension period has expired.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−3−4, Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times.

10−4−4. COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE

Take the following actions, as appropriate, if two-way radio communications are lost with an aircraft:

NOTE−
1. *When an IFR aircraft experiences two-way radio communications failure, air traffic control is based on anticipated pilot actions. Pilot procedures and recom− mended practices are set forth in the AIM, CFRs, and pertinent military regulations.*

2. *Should the pilot of an aircraft equipped with a coded radar beacon transponder experience a loss of two-way radio capability, the pilot can be expected to adjust the transponder to reply on Mode 3/A **Code 7600**.*

a. In the event of lost communications with an aircraft under your control jurisdiction use all appropriate means available to reestablish communications with the aircraft. These may include, but not be limited to, emergency frequencies, NAVAIDs that are equipped with voice capability, FSS, Aeronautical Radio Incorporated (ARINC), etc.

NOTE−
1. *ARINC is a commercial communications corporation which designs, constructs, operates, leases or otherwise engages in radio activities serving the aviation community. ARINC has the capability of relaying information to/from subscribing aircraft throughout the country.*

2. *Aircraft communications addressing and reporting system (ACARS) or selective calling (SELCAL) may be utilized to reestablish radio communications with suitably equipped aircraft. ACARS can be accessed by contacting the San Francisco ARINC communications center, watch supervisor, at 925−294−8297 and 800−621−0140. Provide ARINC the aircraft call sign, approximate location, and contact instructions. In order to utilize the SELCAL system, the SELCAL code for the subject aircraft must be known. If the SELCAL code is not contained in the remarks section of the flight plan, contact the pertinent air carrier dispatch* *office to determine the code. Then contact the San Francisco ARINC communications center, watch supervisor, at 925−294−8297 and 800−621−0140. Provide ARINC the aircraft call sign, SELCAL code, approximate location, and contact instructions.*

b. Broadcast clearances through any available means of communications including the voice feature of NAVAIDs.

NOTE−
1. *Some UHF equipped aircraft have VHF navigation equipment and can receive 121.5 MHz.*

2. *"Any available means" includes the use of FSS and ARINC.*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−2−2, Clearance Prefix.

c. Attempt to re-establish communication by having the aircraft use its transponder or make turns to acknowledge clearances and answer questions. Request any of the following in using the transponder:

1. Request the aircraft to reply Mode 3/A "IDENT."

2. Request the aircraft to reply on **Code 7600** or if already on **Code 7600**, the appropriate stratum code.

3. Request the aircraft to change to "stand-by" for sufficient time for you to be sure that the lack of a target is the result of the requested action.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPLY NOT RECEIVED, (appropriate instructions).

(Action) OBSERVED, (additional instructions/information if necessary).

d. Broadcast a clearance for the aircraft to proceed to its filed alternate airport at the MEA if the aircraft operator concurs.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−8, Radio Failure.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−7, IFR Military Training Routes.

e. If radio communications have not been (re) established with the aircraft after 5 minutes, consider the aircraft's or pilot's activity to be suspicious and report it to the FLM/CIC per FAA Order JO 7610.4, Chapter 7, Hijacked/Suspicious Aircraft Reporting and Procedures, and Paragraph 2−1−25f, Supervisory Notification, of this order.

Section 5. Miscellaneous Operations

10−5−1. EXPLOSIVE CARGO

TERMINAL

When you receive information that an emergency landing will be made with explosive cargo aboard, inform the pilot of the safest or least congested airport areas. Relay the explosive cargo information to:

a. The emergency equipment crew.

b. The airport management.

c. The appropriate military agencies, when requested by the pilot.

Section 6. Oceanic Emergency Procedures

10−6−1. APPLICATION

The procedures in this section are to be used solely in oceanic airspace.

10−6−2. PHASES OF EMERGENCY

Emergency phases are described as follows:

a. Uncertainty phase (INCERFA). When there is concern about the safety of an aircraft or its occupants, an INCERFA exists:

1. When communication from an aircraft has not been received within 30 minutes after the time a communication should have been received or after the time an unsuccessful attempt to establish communication with such aircraft was first made, whichever is earlier; or

2. When an aircraft fails to arrive within 30 minutes after the time of arrival last estimated by the pilot or by the ATC units, whichever is later.

b. Alert phase (ALERFA). When there is apprehension about the safety of an aircraft and its occupants, an ALERFA exists:

1. Following the uncertainty phase when subsequent attempts to establish communications with the aircraft, or inquiries to other relevant sources have failed to reveal any information about the aircraft; or

2. When information has been received which indicates that the operating efficiency of the aircraft has been impaired but not to the extent that a forced landing is likely; or

3. When communication from an aircraft has not been received within 60 minutes after the time a communication should have been received or after the time an unsuccessful attempt to establish communication with such aircraft was first made, whichever is earlier.

c. Distress phase (DETRESFA). When there is reasonable certainty that the aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger, a DETRESFA exists:

1. Following the alert phase when further attempts to establish communications with the aircraft and more widespread inquiries are unsuccessful; or

2. When the fuel on board is considered to be exhausted or to be insufficient for the aircraft to reach safety; or

3. When information is received which indicates that the operating efficiency of the aircraft has been impaired to the extent that a forced landing is likely; or

4. When information is received or it is reasonably certain that the aircraft is about to make or has made a forced landing.

10−6−3. ALERTING SERVICE AND SPECIAL ASSISTANCE

a. Provide alerting service to:

1. All aircraft receiving ATC service;

2. All other aircraft which have filed a flight plan or which are otherwise known to the ATC unit; and

3. Any aircraft known or believed to be the subject of unlawful interference.

b. When alerting service is required, the responsibility for coordinating such service must, unless otherwise established by letter of agreement, rest with the facility serving the FIR or CTA:

1. Within which the aircraft was flying at the time of last air-ground radio contact; or

2. Which the aircraft was about to enter if the last air-ground contact was established at or close to the boundary; or

3. Within which the point of destination is located if the aircraft:

(a) Was not equipped with suitable two-way radio communications equipment; or

(b) Was not under obligation to transmit position reports.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 8, Section 2, Coordination.

c. The responsible Area Control Center (ACC) must serve as the control point for:

1. Collecting all information relevant to a state of emergency of an aircraft;

2. Forwarding that information to the appropriate RCC; and

3. Coordinating with other facilities concerned.

d. The responsibility of the ACC to provide alerting service for military aircraft may be waived upon a written or recorded request from a military agency. In this case, the military request must state that the military agency assumes full responsibility for their aircraft while the aircraft are operating in the oceanic airspace.

e. Responsibility to provide alerting service for flight operations conducted under the "due regard" or "operational" prerogative of military aircraft is assumed by the military. When "due regard" operations are scheduled to end with aircraft filed under ICAO procedures, the ACC may, if specified in a letter of agreement, assume responsibility for alerting service at proposed time filed.

f. In the event of INCERFA, ALERFA, or DETRESFA, notify the following:

1. When practicable, the aircraft operator.

2. The appropriate RCC.

3. Aeronautical stations having en route communications guard responsibilities at the point of departure, along or adjacent to the route of flight, and at the destination.

4. ACCs having jurisdiction over the proposed route of flight from the last reported position to the destination airport.

g. INCERFA, ALERFA, and DETRESFA messages must include the following information, if available, in the order listed:

1. INCERFA, ALERFA, or DETRESFA according to the phase of the emergency.

2. Agency and person originating the message.

3. Nature of the emergency.

4. Significant flight plan information.

5. The air traffic unit which made the last radio contact, the time, and the frequency used.

6. The aircraft's last position report, how it was received, and what facility received it.

7. Color and distinctive marks of aircraft.

8. Any action taken by reporting office.

9. Other pertinent remarks.

h. An INCERFA phase ends with the receipt of any information or position report on the aircraft. Cancel the INCERFA by a message addressed to the same stations as the INCERFA message.

1. An ALERFA ends when:

(a) Evidence exists that would ease apprehension about the safety of the aircraft and its occupants; or

(b) The concerned aircraft lands. Cancel the ALERFA message by a message addressed to the same stations as the ALERFA message.

2. A DETRESFA ends when the:

(a) Aircraft successfully lands; or

(b) RCC advises of a successful rescue; or

(c) RCC advises of termination of SAR activities. Cancel the DETRESFA by a message addressed to the same stations as the DETRESFA message.

i. A separate chronological record should be kept on each ALERFA and DETRESFA together with a chart which displays the projected route of the aircraft, position reports received, route of interceptor aircraft, and other pertinent information.

10−6−4. INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES

a. If an aircraft over water requests weather, sea conditions, ditching information, and/or assistance from surface vessels, or if the controller feels that this information may be necessary for aircraft safety, it should be requested from the RCC. Also, an appropriate AMVER SURPIC should be asked for if requested by the aircraft or deemed beneficial by control personnel.

NOTE−
The AMVER Center can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a SURPIC of vessels in the area of a SAR incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

b. In all cases of aircraft ditching, the airspace required for SAR operations must be determined by the RCC. The ACC must block that airspace until the RCC advises the airspace is no longer required. An International Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) must be issued describing the airspace affected.

c. The following actions will be taken in the event an aircraft must make an emergency descent:

1. In the event an aircraft requests an emergency descent:

(a) Issue a clearance to the requested altitude if approved separation can be provided.

(b) Advise the aircraft of the traffic, and request its intentions if traffic prevents an unrestricted descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATC ADVISES (aircraft identification) UNABLE TO APPROVE UNRESTRICTED DESCENT.
TRAFFIC (traffic information).
REQUEST INTENTIONS.

2. In the event an aircraft is making or will make an emergency descent without a clearance:

(a) Advise other aircraft of the emergency descent.

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATC ADVISES (aircraft identification/all aircraft) BE ALERT FOR EMERGENCY DESCENT IN THE VICINITY OF (latitude/longitude) FROM (altitude/FL) TO (altitude/FL).

(b) Advise other aircraft when the emergency descent is complete.

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Aircraft identification/all aircraft) EMERGENCY DESCENT AT (location) COMPLETED.

3. Upon notification that an aircraft is making an emergency descent through other traffic, take action immediately to safeguard all aircraft concerned.

4. When appropriate, broadcast by ATC communications, by radio navigation aids, and/or through aeronautical communication stations/services an emergency message to all aircraft in the vicinity of the descending aircraft. Include the following information:

(a) Location of emergency descent.

(b) Direction of flight.

(c) Type aircraft.

(d) Route if appropriate.

(e) Altitude vacated.

(f) Other information.

EXAMPLE−
"Attention all aircraft in the vicinity of Trout, a northbound D−C Ten on A−T−S Route Alfa Seven Hundred is making an emergency descent from flight level three three zero." (Repeat as you deem appropriate.)

5. If traffic conditions permit, provide traffic information to the affected aircraft.

6. Immediately after an emergency broadcast or traffic information has been made, issue appropriate clearances or instructions, as necessary, to all aircraft involved.

10−6−5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

a. Provide IFR separation between the SAR and the aircraft in distress, except when visual or radar contact has been established by the search and rescue aircraft and the pilots of both aircraft concur, IFR separation may be discontinued.

b. Clear the SAR aircraft to a fixed clearance limit rather than to the aircraft in distress, which is a moving fix. Issue route clearances that are consistent with that of the distressed aircraft.

c. Advise the rescue aircraft, as soon as practicable, of any factors that could adversely affect its mission; e.g., unfavorable weather conditions, anticipated problems, the possibility of not being able to approve an IFR descent through en route traffic, etc.

d. Advise the appropriate rescue agency of all pertinent information as it develops.

e. Forward immediately any information about the action being taken by the RCC, other organizations, or aircraft to the aircraft concerned.

f. Advise the aircraft operator of the current status of the SAR operation as soon as practicable.

g. Since prompt, correct, and complete information is the key to successful rescue operations, ensure that this information is swiftly and smoothly supplied to those organizations actively engaged in rescue operations.

Section 7. Ground Missile Emergencies

10−7−1. INFORMATION RELAY

When you receive information concerning a ground missile emergency, notify other concerned facilities and take action to have alerting advisories issued by:

a. *EN ROUTE.* Air carrier company radio stations for each VFR company aircraft which is or will be operating in the vicinity of the emergency.

b. *EN ROUTE.* FSSs adjacent to the emergency location.

c. *TERMINAL.* Relay all information concerning a ground missile emergency to the ARTCC within whose area the emergency exists and disseminate as a NOTAM.

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term− Notice to Airmen.

10−7−2. IFR AND SVFR MINIMA

Reroute IFR and SVFR aircraft as necessary to avoid the emergency location by one of the following minima, or by greater minima when suggested by the notifying official:

a. Lateral separation− *1 mile* between the emergency location and either of the following:

1. An aircraft under radar control and the emergency location which can be accurately determined by reference to the radar scope.

2. The airspace to be protected for the route being flown.

b. Vertical separation− *6,000 feet* above the surface over the emergency location.

10−7−3. VFR MINIMA

Advise all known VFR aircraft which are, or will be, operating in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency, to avoid the emergency location by 1 mile laterally or 6,000 feet vertically, or by a greater distance or altitude, when suggested by the notifying official.

10−7−4. SMOKE COLUMN AVOIDANCE

Advise all aircraft to avoid any observed smoke columns in the vicinity of a ground missile emergency.

10−7−5. EXTENDED NOTIFICATION

EN ROUTE

When reports indicate that an emergency will exist for an extended period of time, a Notice to Airmen may be issued.

Chapter 11. Traffic Management Procedures

Section 1. General

11−1−1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY

a. The mission of the traffic management system is to balance air traffic demand with system capacity to ensure the maximum efficient utilization of the NAS.

b. TBFM must be used to the maximum extent feasible in preference to miles-in-trail initiatives.

NOTE−
The benefits of TBFM are best realized through the coordinated effort of all facilities supporting Performance Based Navigation procedures or Traffic Management Initiatives (TMIs).

c. It is recognized that the ATCS is integral in the execution of the traffic management mission.

NOTE−
Complete details of traffic management initiatives and programs can be found in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration.

11−1−2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

a. Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator−in−Charge (STMCIC) must:

1. Ensure an operational briefing is conducted at least once during the day and evening shifts. Participants must include, at a minimum, the STMCIC, Front Line Manager-in-Charge (FLMIC)/Controller-in-Charge (CIC) and other interested personnel as designated by facility management. Discussions at the meeting should include meteorological conditions (present and forecasted), staffing, equipment status, runways in use, Airport Arrival Rate (AAR)/Metering Parameters and Traffic Management Initiatives (TMIs) (present and anticipated).

2. Assume responsibility for TMC duties when not staffed.

3. Ensure that TMIs are carried out by personnel providing traffic management services.

4. Where authorized, perform EDST data entries to keep the activation status of designated EDST Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of an EDST outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

6. Ensure changes to restrictions/metering are implemented in a timely manner.

b. FLM/CIC must:

1. Keep the TMU and affected sectors apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

2. Coordinate with the TMU and personnel providing air traffic services to develop appropriate TMIs for sectors and airports in their area of responsibility.

3. Continuously review TMIs affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

4. Ensure that TMIs are carried out by personnel providing air traffic services.

5. Where authorized, perform data entries to keep the activation status of designated EDST Airspace Configuration Elements current.

6. Perform assigned actions in the event of an EDST outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

7. Ensure changes to TMIs are implemented in a timely manner.

c. Personnel providing air traffic services must:

1. Ensure that TMIs are enforced within their area of responsibility. TMIs do not have priority over maintaining:

(a) Separation of aircraft.

(b) Procedural integrity of the sector.

2. Keep the FLM/CIC and TMU apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

3. Continuously review TMIs affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with FLM/CIC and TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

4. Where authorized, perform data entries to keep the activation status of designated EDST Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of an EDST outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

d. ARTCCs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Support TBFM operations and monitor TBFM equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to TMIs.

2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.

e. TRACONs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Support TBFM operations and monitor TBFM equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to TMIs.

2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.

3. Schedule internal departures in accordance with specific written procedures and agreements developed with overlying ARTCCs and adjacent facilities.

f. ATCTs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Monitor TBFM equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to TMIs.

2. Release aircraft, when CFR is in effect, so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time.

NOTE−
Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.

11−1−3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

During periods of metering, personnel providing air traffic services must:

a. Display TBFM schedule information on the main display monitor (MDM).

b. Comply with TBFM-generated metering times within +/- 1 minute.

1. If TBFM-generated metering time accuracy within +/- 1 minute cannot be used for specific aircraft due to significant jumps in the delay countdown timer (DCT), other TMIs may be used between those aircraft such as miles-in-trail (MIT) or minutes-in-trail (MINIT) to assist in delay absorption until stability resumes.

2. An exception to the requirement to comply within +/- 1 minute may be authorized for certain ARTCC sectors if explicitly defined in an appropriate facility directive.

c. When compliance is not possible, coordinate with FLM/CIC, personnel providing traffic management services, and adjacent facilities/sectors as appropriate.

NOTE−
TBFM accuracy of generated metering times is predicated on several factors, including vectoring outside of TBFM route conformance boundaries (route recovery logic), certain trajectory ground speed calculations, and when TMU resequences a specific flight or flight list. Caution should be used in these situations to minimize impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.

Chapter 12. Canadian Airspace Procedures

Section 1. General Control

12−1−1. APPLICATION

Where control responsibility within Canadian airspace has been formally delegated to the FAA by the Transport Canada Aviation Group, apply basic FAA procedures except for the Canadian procedures contained in this chapter.

NOTE−
In 1985, the U.S. and Canada established an agreement recognizing the inherent safety of the ATC procedures exercised by the other country. This agreement permits the use of ATC procedures of one country when that country is exercising ATC in the airspace over the territory of the other country insofar as they are not inconsistent with, or repugnant to, the laws and regulations or unique operational requirements of the country over whose territory such airspace is located. Accordingly, this chapter was revised to include only those Canadian procedures that must be used because of a Canadian regulatory or unique operational requirement.

12−1−2. AIRSPACE CLASSIFICATION

a. Class A airspace. Controlled airspace within which only IFR flights are permitted. Airspace designated from the base of all controlled high level airspace up to and including FL 600.

b. Class B airspace. Controlled airspace within which only IFR and Controlled VFR (CVFR) flights are permitted. Includes all controlled low level airspace above 12,500 feet ASL or at and above the minimum en route IFR altitude, (whichever is higher) up to but not including 18,000 feet ASL. ATC procedures pertinent to IFR flights must be applied to CVFR aircraft.

NOTE−
The CVFR pilot is responsible to maintain VFR flight and visual reference to the ground at all times.

c. Class C airspace. Controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted, but VFR flights require a clearance from ATC to enter.

d. Class D airspace. Controlled airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted, but VFR flights do not require a clearance from ATC to enter, however, they must establish two−way communications with the appropriate ATC agency prior to entering the airspace.

e. Class E airspace. Airspace within which both IFR and VFR flights are permitted, but for VFR flight there are no special requirements.

f. Class F airspace. Airspace of defined dimensions within which activities must be confined because of their nature, or within which limitations are imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities, or both. Special use airspace may be classified as Class F advisory or Class F restricted.

g. Class G airspace. Uncontrolled airspace within which ATC has neither the authority nor responsibility for exercising control over air traffic.

12−1−3. ONE THOUSAND−ON−TOP

Clear an aircraft to maintain "at least 1,000 feet-on-top" in lieu of "VFR−on−top," provided:

a. The pilot requests it.

NOTE−
It is the pilot's responsibility to ensure that the requested operation can be conducted at least 1,000 feet above all cloud, haze, smoke, or other formation, with a flight visibility of 3 miles or more. A pilot's request can be considered as confirmation that conditions are adequate.

b. The pilot will not operate within Class A or Class B airspace.

12−1−4. SEPARATION

Apply a lateral, longitudinal, or vertical separation minimum between aircraft operating in accordance with an IFR or CVFR clearance, regardless of the weather conditions.

12−1−5. DEPARTURE CLEARANCE/ COMMUNICATION FAILURE

Base controller action regarding radio failures in Canadian airspace on the requirement for pilots to comply with Canadian Airspace Regulations, which are similar to 14 CFR Section 91.185; however, the following major difference must be considered when planning control actions. Except when issued alternate radio failure instructions by ATC, pilots will adhere to the following: If flying a turbine-powered (turboprop or turbojet) aircraft and cleared on departure to a point other than the destination, proceed to the destination airport in accordance with the flight plan, maintaining the last assigned altitude or flight level or the minimum en route IFR altitude, whichever is higher, until 10 minutes beyond the point specified in the clearance (clearance limit), and then proceed at altitude(s) or flight level(s) filed in the flight plan. When the aircraft will enter U.S. airspace within 10 minutes after passing the clearance limit, the climb to the flight planned border crossing altitude is to be commenced at the estimated time of crossing the Canada/U.S. boundary.

12−1−6. PARACHUTE JUMPING

Do not authorize parachute jumping without prior permission from the appropriate Canadian authority.

NOTE−
Canadian regulations require written authority from the Ministry of Transport.

12−1−7. SPECIAL VFR (SVFR)

NOTE−
Pilots do not have to be IFR qualified to fly SVFR at night, nor does the aircraft have to be equipped for IFR flight.

a. Within a control zone where there is an airport controller on duty, approve or refuse a pilot's request for SVFR on the basis of current or anticipated IFR traffic only. If approved, specify the period of time during which SVFR flight is permitted.

b. Within a control zone where there is no airport controller on duty, authorize or refuse an aircraft's request for SVFR on the basis of:

1. Current or anticipated IFR traffic, and

2. Official ceiling and visibility reports.

c. Canadian SVFR weather minimums for:

1. Aircraft other than helicopters. Flight visibility (ground visibility when reported) 1 mile.

2. Helicopters. Flight visibility (ground visibility when available) 1/2 mile.

Chapter 13. Decision Support Tools

Section 1. ERAM Decision Support Tools (EDST)

13−1−1. DESCRIPTION

EDST is used by the sector team in performing its strategic planning responsibilities. EDST uses flight plan data, forecast winds, aircraft performance characteristics, and track data to derive expected aircraft trajectories, and to predict conflicts between aircraft and between aircraft and special use or designated airspace. It also provides trial planning and enhanced flight data management capabilities. Under ERAM, the EDST capabilities constitute the initial En Route decision support tools.

13−1−2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION

a. Actively scan EDST information for predicted aircraft-to-aircraft and aircraft-to-airspace alerts.

b. When a conflict probe alert is displayed, evaluate the alert and take appropriate action as early as practical, in accordance with duty priorities.

c. Prioritize the evaluation and resolution of conflict probe alerts to ensure the safe, expeditious, and efficient flow of air traffic.

NOTE−
Conflict probe alerts are based on standard radar separation. Conflict probe does not account for instances in which greater separation may be needed (e.g., non-standard formations, A380) or where reduced separation is permitted (e.g., 3mile airspace).

d. When a conflict probe alert is displayed and when sector priorities permit, give consideration to the following in determining a solution:

1. Solutions that involve direct routing, altitude changes, removal of a flight direction constraint (i.e., inappropriate altitude for direction of flight), and/or removal of a static restriction for one or more pertinent aircraft.

2. Impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.

e. When the Stop Probe feature is activated for an aircraft, conflict probe for that aircraft shall be restarted before transfer of control, unless otherwise coordinated.

NOTE−
The requirement in paragraph 13-1-2e does not apply to aircraft entering a non EDST facility.

13−1−3. TRIAL PLANNING

When EDST is operational at the sector and when sector priorities permit, use the trial plan capability to evaluate:

a. Solutions to predicted conflicts.

b. The feasibility of granting user requests.

c. The feasibility of removing a flight direction constraint (i.e., inappropriate altitude for direction of flight) for an aircraft.

d. The feasibility of removing a static restriction for an aircraft.

13−1−4. CONFLICT PROBE-BASED CLEARANCES

When the results of a trial plan based upon a user request indicate the absence of alerts, every effort should be made to grant the user request, unless the change is likely to adversely affect operations at another sector.

13−1−5. THE AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL), DEPARTURE LIST (DL) AND FLIGHT DATA MANAGEMENT

a. The ACL must be used as the sector team's primary source of flight data.

b. Actively scan EDST to identify automated notifications that require sector team action.

c. When an ACL or DL entry has a Remarks indication, the Remarks field of the flight plan must be reviewed. Changes to the Remarks field must also be reviewed.

d. Highlighting an entry on the ACL or DL must be used to indicate the flight requires an action or special attention.

e. The Special Posting Area (SPA) should be used to group aircraft that have special significance (e.g., aircraft to be sequenced, air refueling missions, formations).

f. Sector teams shall post flight progress strips for any non-radar flights.

g. A flight progress strip shall be posted for any flight plan not contained in the EAS.

h. Sector teams shall post any flight progress strip(s) that are deemed necessary for safe or efficient operations. The sector team shall comply with all applicable facility directives to maintain posted flight progress strips.

i. The Drop Track Delete option shall be used in accordance with facility directives.

13−1−6. MANUAL COORDINATION AND THE COORDINATION MENU

a. Where automated coordination with a facility is not available (e.g., an international facility, a VFR tower), use the Coordination Menu or a flight progress strip to annotate manual coordination status, in accordance with facility directives.

b. When the Coordination Menu is used and the flight plan is subsequently changed, remove the yellow coding from the Coordination Indicator after any appropriate action has been taken.

13−1−7. HOLDING

For flights in hold, use the ERAM Hold Data Menu/Hold View, the EDST Hold Annotations Menu, a flight progress strip, or a facility approved worksheet, to annotate holding instructions, in accordance with facility directives.

13−1−8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA

a. All control information not otherwise recorded via automation recordings or voice recordings must be manually recorded using approved methods.

b. When a point out has been approved, remove the yellow color coding on the ACL.

c. When the ACL or DL Free Text Area is used to enter control information, authorized abbreviations must be used. You may use:

1. The clearance abbreviations authorized in TBL 13−1−1.

TBL 13−1−1
Clearance Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
A	Cleared to airport (point of intended landing)
B	Center clearance delivered
C	ATC clears (when clearance relayed through non−ATC facility)
CAF	Cleared as filed
D	Cleared to depart from the fix
F	Cleared to the fix
H	Cleared to hold and instructions issued
N	Clearance not delivered
O	Cleared to the outer marker
PD	Cleared to climb/descend at pilot's discretion
Q	Cleared to fly specified sectors of a NAVAID defined in terms of courses, bearings, radials, or quadrants within a designated radius
T	Cleared through (for landing and takeoff through intermediate point)
V	Cleared over the fix
X	Cleared to cross (airway, route, radial) at (point)
Z	Tower jurisdiction

2. The miscellaneous abbreviations authorized in TBL 13−1−2.

3. The EDST equivalents for control information symbols authorized in TBL 13-1-3.

4. Plain language markings when it will aid in understanding information.

5. Locally approved abbreviations.

d. When the ACL or DL Free Text Area is used to enter control information, the Free Text Area must remain open and visible. When no longer relevant, the information entered into the Free Text Area must be updated or deleted.

e. Control information entered in the Free Text Area must be used for reference purposes only.

NOTE−
Information entered into the Free Text Area does not pass on handoff and, if necessary, must be coordinated.

TBL 13−1−2
Miscellaneous Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
BC	Back course approach
CT	Contact approach
FA	Final approach
FMS	Flight management system approach
GPS	GPS approach
I	Initial approach
ILS	ILS approach
MA	Missed approach
NDB	Nondirectional radio beacon approach
OTP	VFR conditions−on−top
PA	Precision approach
PT	Procedure turn
RA	Resolution advisory (Pilot−reported TCAS event)
RH	Runway heading
RNAV	Area navigation approach
RP	Report immediately upon passing (fix/altitude)
RX	Report crossing
SA	Surveillance approach
SI	Straight−in approach
TA	TACAN approach
TL	Turn left
TR	Turn right
VA	Visual approach
VR	VOR approach

TBL 13−1−3
EDST Equivalents for Control Information Symbols

Abbreviation	Meaning
T *dir*	Depart (direction if specified)
↑	Climb and maintain
↓	Descend and maintain
CR	Cruise
AT	At
X	Cross
M	Maintain
/*airway*	Join or intercept (airway, jet route, track, or course)
=	While in controlled airspace
WICA	While in control area
dir ECA	Enter control area
dir OOCA	Out of control area
dir ESA	Cleared to enter surface area. Indicated direction of flight by appropriate compass letter(s)
TSA *alt*	Through surface area and altitude indicated direction of flight by appropriate compass letter(s). Maintain special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate) while in surface area
250 K	Aircraft requested to adjust speed to 250 knots
−20 K	Aircraft requested to reduce speed 20 knots
+30 K	Aircraft requested to increase speed 30 knots
SVFR	Local Special VFR operations in the vicinity of (name) airport are authorized until (time). Maintain special VFR conditions (altitude if appropriate)
B4	Before
AF	After or Past
/	Until
instructions	Alternate instructions
REST	Restriction
AOB	At or Below
AOA	At or Above
−	From−to (route, time, etc.)
(Alt)B(Alt)	Indicates a block altitude assignment. Altitudes are inclusive, and the first altitude must be lower than the second (Example 310B370)
V *time*	Clearance void if aircraft not off ground by *time*
CL	Pilot canceled flight plan
+*info*+	Information or revised information forwarded
alt	Other than assigned altitude reported Example: **50**
ARC *mi. dir.*	DME arc of VORTAC or TACAN
C *freq.*	Contact (facility) or (freq.), (time, fix, or altitude if appropriate). Insert frequency only when it is other than standard
R	Radar contact
R *alt*	Requested altitude
R/	Radar service terminated
RX	Radar Contact Lost
RV	Radar vector
RVX	Pilot resumed own navigation
HO	Handoff completed
E	Emergency
W	Warning
P	Point out initiated. Indicate the appropriate facility, sector, or position.
FUEL	Minimum fuel
EFC *time*	Expect further clearance at (time)
− *fix*	Direct to fix
FRC	Full route clearance
IAF	Initial approach fix
NORDO	No Radio
PT	Procedure turn
RLS	Release
REQ	Request
SI	Straight in

13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION

a. The EDST Inappropriate Altitude for Direction of Flight (IAFDOF) feature must be used in the automatic mode (i.e., IAFDOF Manual must remain deselected) unless otherwise authorized in a facility directive.

b. Completion of any required coordination for IAFDOF must be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the IAFDOF coding.

c. Completion of appropriate coordination for an Unsuccessful Transmission Message (UTM) must be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the UTM coding.

d. Issuance of the Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT) to the pilot or other control facility must be acknowledged on the DL by removing the EDCT coding.

e. IAFDOF, UTM, or EDCT coding must be acknowledged only after the appropriate action has been completed.

f. The first sector which displays Embedded Route Text (ERT) coding must issue and send/acknowledge the route prior to initiating a hand-off unless verbally coordinated or as specified in appropriate facility directives. Do not send/acknowledge ERT coding unless the sector has track control for the flight or it has been otherwise coordinated.

g. Route Action Notifications (RAN) such as ATC preferred routes or route processing errors must be amended at the first control position that displays the RAN unless verbally coordinated or as specified in appropriate facility directives. Do not remove RAN coding unless the sector has track control or it has been otherwise coordinated.

13-1-10. CURRENCY OF TRAJECTORY INFORMATION

a. The sector team shall perform automation entries in a timely manner.

NOTE-
1. *Conflict probe accuracy requires timely updates of data used to model each flight's trajectory. If this data is not current, the aircraft entries and notification of probe results for surrounding sectors and facilities, as well as the subject sector, may be misleading.*

2. *Data used to model an individual aircraft's trajectory includes route of flight, assigned and interim altitudes, application/removal of an adapted restriction for that flight, and aircraft type.*

b. An exception to the requirement to enter or update interim altitudes may be authorized for certain ARTCC sectors if explicitly defined in an appropriate facility directive.

NOTE-
Conflict probe accuracy in assigning alert notification is dependent upon entry/update of a flight's interim altitude.

13-1-11. DELAY REPORTING

a. Adhere to all applicable delay reporting directives.

b. Delay information shall be recorded. Delay information may be automatically recorded via use of the EDST Hold Annotations Menu, ERAM Hold Data Menu, ERAM Hold View, or manually on flight progress strips or facility-approved worksheets, in accordance with the facility-defined standard.

c. When using the Hold Annotation Menu to automatically record delay information, the hold annotations shall be deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding.

NOTE-
When using EDST hold annotations, delay information cannot be accurately recorded unless the annotations are deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding. When using the ERAM Hold Data Menu or Hold View, delays are automatically recorded when the aircraft is cleared out of hold.

13-1-12. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

Upon receipt of the overdue aircraft notification take appropriate actions set forth in Chapter 10, Section 3, Overdue aircraft.

NOTE-
ESDT overdue aircraft notification is based on radar track data. Updating an aircraft's route of fight will remove the overdue aircraft notification.

13−1−13. USE OF GRAPHICS PLAN DISPLAY (GPD)

a. Graphic depictions of flight trajectories may be used only to aid in situational awareness and strategic planning.

b. Do not use trajectory−based positions as a substitute for radar track position.

c. Do not use trajectory−based altitude in lieu of Mode C for altitude confirmation.

d. Do not use the GPD for radar identification, position information, transfer of radar identification, radar separation, correlation, or pointouts.

13−1−14. FORECAST WINDS

In the event that current forecast wind data are not available, continue use of conflict probe and trial planning with appropriate recognition that alert and trajectory data may be affected.

13−1−15. INTERFACILITY CONNECTIVITY

In the event of a loss of connectivity to an adjacent ERAM facility, continue use of EDST with appropriate recognition that alert data may be affected.

13−1−16. SURVEILLANCE AND FLIGHT DATA OUTAGES

In the event of a surveillance or flight data outage, electronic flight data may be used to support situational awareness while the facility transitions to alternate automation capabilities or non radar procedures.

13−1−17. AIRSPACE CONFIGURATION ELEMENTS

a. Airspace Configuration Elements are:

1. Special Activity Airspace (SAA).

2. Airport Stream Filters (ASF).

3. Adapted restrictions.

b. Where assigned as a sector responsibility by facility directive, the sector team shall update Airspace Configuration Elements to reflect current status.

NOTE−
Unless otherwise covered in an LOA or facility directive, activating or scheduling the SAA in the Airspace Status View does NOT constitute coordination for activation of airspace.

c. For Airspace Configuration Elements designated as a sector responsibility, notify the operational supervisor when the status of an Airspace Configuration Element has been modified.

Section 2. Ocean21 − Oceanic

The following procedures are applicable to the operation of the Ocean21 Oceanic Air Traffic Control (ATC) System.

13−2−1. DESCRIPTION

a. The Ocean21 ATC System is utilized in designated en route/oceanic airspace. Ocean21 includes both surveillance and flight data processing, which provides the controllers with automated decision support tools to establish, monitor and maintain separation between aircraft, and aircraft to airspace and terrain.

b. Ocean21 capabilities include:

1. MEARTS based radar surveillance processing.

2. Conflict Prediction and Reporting.

3. Automatic Dependent Surveillance− Broadcast (ADS−B).

4. Automatic Dependent Surveillance− Contract (ADS−C).

5. Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC).

6. ATS Interfacility Data Communications (AIDC).

7. Additional Decision Support Tools used primarily for situational awareness.

8. Electronic Flight Data including Electronic Flight Strips.

13−2−2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION

The controller must use the most accurate information available to initiate, monitor, and maintain separation.

a. Apply the following procedures in airspace where conflict probe is being utilized as a decision support tool:

1. Conflict Probe Results.

(a) Controllers must assume that the conflict probe separation calculations are accurate.

(b) Unless otherwise prescribed in subpara a3, controllers must utilize the results from conflict probe to initiate and maintain the prescribed separation minima.

2. Conflict Resolution.

(a) When a controller is alerted to a conflict, which will occur in his/her sector, take the appropriate action to resolve the conflict.

(b) The controller responsible for resolving a conflict must evaluate the alert and take appropriate action as early as practical, in accordance with duty priorities, alert priority, and operational considerations.

(c) Unless otherwise specified in facility directives, the controller must take immediate action to resolve any "red" conflicts.

3. Overriding Conflict Probe.

(a) Controllers must not override conflict probe except for the following situations:

(1) The application of a separation standard not recognized by conflict probe listed in subpara a8(a), or as identified by facility directive.

(2) When action has been taken to resolve the identified conflict and separation has been ensured, or

(3) Control responsibility has been delegated to another sector or facility, or

(4) Other situations as specified in facility directives.

(b) Controllers must continue to ensure that separation is maintained until the overridden conflict is resolved.

4. Use of Probe when Issuing Clearances. Utilize conflict probe results when issuing a clearance to ensure that any potential conflict has been given thorough consideration.

5. Use of Probe when Accepting Manual Transfers. Prior to manually accepting an aircraft transfer from an external facility ensure that the coordinated flight profile is accurately entered, conflict probe initiated and, if necessary, action is taken to resolve any potential conflicts.

6. Trial Probe. The controller can utilize trial probe to assess whether there are any potential conflicts with a proposed clearance or when performing manual coordination.

NOTE–
Once initiated, trial probe does not take into account any changes made to the proposed profile or to any other flight profile in the system. It is an assessment by conflict probe of the current situation at the time the controller enters the trial probe. A trial probe does not alleviate the controller from performing a conflict probe when issuing a clearance or accepting a transfer.

7. System Unable to Perform Conflict Probe for a Specific Aircraft.

(a) If a flight's profile becomes corrupted, conflict probe may not be able to correctly monitor separation for that flight. Take the necessary steps to correct an aircraft's flight plan when conflict probe could not be performed.

(b) In addition, after verifying flight plan data accuracy, utilize other decision support tools to establish and maintain the appropriate separation minima until such time that conflict probe can be utilized.

8. Conflict Probe Limitations.

(a) Conflict Probe does not support the following separation minima:

(1) Subpara 8–4–2a2 – Nonintersecting paths.

(2) Subpara 8–4–2d – Intersecting flight paths with variable width protected airspace.

(3) Subpara 8–4–3a – Reduction of Route Protected Airspace, below FL 240.

(4) Subpara 8–4–3b – Reduction of Route Protected Airspace, at and above FL 240.

(5) Subpara 8–4–4a1 – Same NAVAID: VOR/VORTAC/TACAN.

(6) Subpara 8–4–4a2 – Same NAVAID: NDB.

(7) Subpara 8–4–4c – Dead Reckoning.

(8) Para 8–5–4 – Same Direction.

(9) Para 8–8–5 – VFR Climb and Descent.

b. Additional Decision Support Tools: These support tools include: range/bearing, time of passing, intercept angle, the aircraft situation display (ASD) and electronic flight data.

1. The results provided by these additional decision support/controller tools can be used by the controller for maintaining situational awareness and monitoring flight profile information, and for establishing and maintaining separation standards not supported by probe, or when probe is unavailable.

2. Under no circumstances must the controller utilize any of the additional decision support tools to override probe results when the applicable separation standard is supported by probe and none of the other conditions for overriding probe apply.

13–2–3. INFORMATION MANAGEMENT

a. Currency of Information: The sector team is responsible for ensuring that manually entered data is accurate and timely. Ensure that nonconformant messages are handled in a timely manner and that the flight's profile is updated as necessary.

NOTE–
Conflict probe accuracy requires timely updates of data used to model each flight's trajectory. If this data is not current, the aircraft flight profile and probe results may be misleading.

b. Data Block Management.

1. Ensure that the data block reflects the most current flight information and controller applied indicators as specified in facility directives.

2. Ensure that appropriate and timely action is taken when a special condition code is indicated in the data block.

c. Electronic Flight Strip Management.

1. Electronic flight strips must be maintained in accordance with facility directives and the following:

(a) Annotations. Ensure that annotations are kept up to date.

(b) Reduced Separation Flags. Ensure the flags listed below are selected appropriately for each flight:

(1) M– Mach Number Technique (MNT).

(2) R– Reduced MNT.

(3) D− Distance−based longitudinal.

(4) W− Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM).

(c) Degraded RNP. Select when an aircraft has notified ATC of a reduction in navigation capability that affects the applicable separation minima.

(d) Restrictions. Ensure restrictions accurately reflect the cleared profile.

d. Queue Management.

1. Manage all sector and coordination queues in accordance with the appropriate message priority and the controller's priority of duties.

2. In accordance with facility directives, ensure that the messages directed to the error queue are processed in a timely manner.

e. Window/List Management.

1. Ensure that the situation display window title bar is not obscured by other windows and/or lists.

NOTE−
The title bar changes color to denote when priority information on the ASD is being obscured or is out of view.

2. In accordance with facility directives, ensure that designated windows and/or lists are displayed at all times.

13−2−4. CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS (CPDLC)

a. Means of communication.

1. When CPDLC is available and CPDLC connected aircraft are operating outside of VHF coverage, CPDLC must be used as the primary means of communication.

2. Voice communications may be utilized for CPDLC aircraft when it will provide an operational advantage and/or when workload or equipment capabilities demand.

3. When CPDLC is being utilized, a voice backup must exist (e.g., HF, SATCOM, Third party).

4. When a pilot communicates via CPDLC, the response should be via CPDLC.

5. To the extent possible, the CPDLC message set should be used in lieu of free text messages.

NOTE−
The use of the CPDLC message set ensures the proper "closure" of CPDLC exchanges.

b. Transfer of Communications to the Next Facility.

1. When the receiving facility is capable of CPDLC communications, the data link transfer is automatic and is accomplished within facility adapted parameters.

2. When a receiving facility is not CPDLC capable, the transfer of communications must be made in accordance with local directives and Letters of Agreement (LOAs).

c. Abnormal conditions.

1. If any portion of the automated transfer fails, the controller should attempt to initiate the transfer manually. If unable to complete the data link transfer, the controller should advise the pilot to log on to the next facility and send an End Service (EOS) message.

2. If CPDLC fails, voice communications must be utilized until CPDLC connections can be reestablished.

3. If the CPDLC connection is lost on a specific aircraft, the controller should send a connection request message (CR1) or advise the pilot via backup communications to log on again.

4. If CPDLC service is to be canceled, the controller must advise the pilot as early as possible to facilitate a smooth transition to voice communications. Workload permitting, the controller should also advise the pilot of the reason for the termination of data link.

5. When there is uncertainty that a clearance was delivered to an aircraft via CPDLC, the controller must continue to protect the airspace associated with the clearance until an appropriate operational response is received from the flight crew. If an expected operational response to a clearance is not received, the controller will initiate appropriate action to ensure that the clearance was received by the flight crew. On initial voice contact with aircraft preface the message with the following:

PHRASEOLOGY−
(Call Sign) CPDLC Failure, (message).

13−2−5. COORDINATION

In addition to the requirements set forth in Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 2, Coordination, automated coordination must constitute complete coordination between Ocean21 sectors, both internally and between sectors across adjacent Ocean21 facilities, except:

a. When the aircraft is in conflict with another in the receiving sector, or

b. When otherwise specified in facility directives or LOA.

13−2−6. TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES − MULTIPLE PERSON OPERATION

a. When operating in a multiple controller operation at a workstation, ensure all ATC tasks are completed according to their priority of duties.

b. Multiple controller operation must be accomplished according to facility directives.

Appendix A. Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility

1. PURPOSE

This appendix prescribes the method and step–by–step process for conducting a position relief briefing and transferring position responsibility from one specialist to another.

2. DISCUSSION

a. In all operational facilities, the increase in traffic density and the need for the expeditious movement of traffic without compromising safety have emphasized the importance of the position relief process.

b. The contents, methods, and practices used for position relief and briefings vary among personnel, and pertinent information is often forgotten or incompletely covered. Major problems occur whenever there is a heavy reliance upon memory, unsupported by routines or systematic reminders. This SOP addresses the complete task of transferring position responsibility and the associated relief briefing.

c. Position relief unavoidably provides workload for specialists at the time of relief. The intent of this SOP is to make the transfer of position responsibility take place smoothly and to ensure a complete transfer of information with a minimum amount of workload. The method takes advantage of a self–briefing concept in which the relieving specialist obtains needed status information by reading from the Status Information Area/s to begin the relief process. Up to the moment information related to the control of aircraft or vehicular movements requires verbal exchanges between specialists during the relief process. The method also specifies the moment when the transfer of position responsibility occurs.

d. In the final part of the relief process, the specialist being relieved monitors and reviews the position to ensure that nothing has been overlooked or incorrectly displayed and that the transfer of position responsibility occurred with a complete briefing.

3. TERMS

The following terms are important for a complete understanding of this SOP:

a. Status Information Area (SIA). Manual or automatic displays of the current status of position related equipment and operational conditions or procedures.

b. Written Notes. Manually recorded items of information kept at designated locations on the position of operation. They may be an element of the Status Information Area/s.

c. Checklist. An ordered listing of items to be covered during a position relief.

4. PRECAUTIONS

a. Specialists involved in the position relief process should not rush or be influenced to rush.

b. During position operation, each item of status information which is or may be an operational factor for the relieving specialist should be recorded as soon as it is operationally feasible so that it will not be forgotten or incorrectly recorded.

c. Extra care should be taken when more than one specialist relieves or is being relieved from a position at the same time; e.g., combining or decombining positions. Such simultaneous reliefs should be approached with caution.

5. RESPONSIBILITIES

a. The specialist being relieved must be responsible for ensuring that any pertinent status information of which he/she is aware is relayed to the relieving specialist and is either:

1. Accurately displayed in the Status Information Area/s for which he/she has responsibility, or

2. Relayed to the position having responsibility for accurately displaying the status information.

b. The relieving specialist must be responsible for ensuring that, prior to accepting responsibility for the position, any unresolved questions pertaining to the operation of the position are resolved.

c. The relieving specialist and the specialist being relieved must share equal responsibility for the completeness and accuracy of the position relief briefing.

d. The specialists engaged in a position relief must conduct the relief process at the position being relieved unless other procedures have been established and authorized by the facility air traffic manager.

NOTE−
The "sharing" of this responsibility means that the specialist being relieved is obligated to provide a complete, accurate briefing and the relieving specialist is obligated to ensure that a briefing takes place and is to his/her total satisfaction.

6. STEP−BY−STEP PROCESS

a. PREVIEW THE POSITION

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Follow checklist and review the Status Information Area(s).	
NOTE− *This sub-step may be replaced by an authorized pre−position briefing provided an equivalent review of checklist items is accomplished.*	
2. Observe position equipment, operational situation, and the work environment. **3.** Listen to voice communications and observe other operational actions. **4.** Observe current and pending aircraft and vehicular traffic and correlate with flight and other movement information. **5.** Indicate to the specialist being relieved that the position has been previewed and that the verbal briefing may begin.	
NOTE− *Substeps 6a2, 3, and 4 may be conducted concurrently or in any order.*	

b. VERBAL BRIEFING

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
	1. Brief the relieving specialist on the abnormal status of items not listed on the Status Information Area(s) as well as on any items of special interest calling for verbal explanation or additional discussion.
	2. Brief on traffic if applicable.
	3. Brief communication status of all known aircraft.
4. Ask questions necessary to ensure a complete understanding of the operational situation.	
	5. Completely answer any questions asked.

c. ASSUMPTION OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Make a statement or otherwise indicate to the specialist being relieved that position responsibility has been assumed.	
	2. Release the position to the relieving specialist and mentally note the time.

d. REVIEW THE POSITION

Relieving Specialist	Specialist Being Relieved
1. Check, verify, and update the information obtained in steps 6a and b.	
2. Check position equipment in accordance with existing directives.	
	3. Review checklist, Status Information Area/s, written notes, and other prescribed sources of information and advise the relieving specialist of known omissions, updates, or inaccuracies.
	4. Observe overall position operation to determine if assistance is needed.
	5. If assistance is needed, provide or summon it as appropriate.
	6. Advise the appropriate position regarding known Status Information Area(s) omissions, updates, or inaccuracies.
	7. Sign-on the relieving specialist with the time as noted in step 6c2.
	8. Sign off the position in accordance with existing directives or otherwise indicate that the relief process is complete.

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

PURPOSE

a. This Glossary was compiled to promote a common understanding of the terms used in the Air Traffic Control system. It includes those terms which are intended for pilot/controller communications. Those terms most frequently used in pilot/controller communications are printed in ***bold italics***. The definitions are primarily defined in an operational sense applicable to both users and operators of the National Airspace System. Use of the Glossary will preclude any misunderstandings concerning the system's design, function, and purpose.

b. Because of the international nature of flying, terms used in the Lexicon, published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), are included when they differ from FAA definitions. These terms are followed by "[ICAO]." For the reader's convenience, there are also cross references to related terms in other parts of the Glossary and to other documents, such as the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

c. This Glossary will be revised, as necessary, to maintain a common understanding of the system.

EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

d. Terms Added:
ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE
CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.
COLD TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION
GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS)
GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS) LANDING SYSTEM (GLS)
TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)
WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION (WAM)

e. Terms Deleted:
AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY (A/FD)
EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE
FLIGHT WATCH
OCEANIC DISPLAY AND PLANNING SYSTEM (ODAPS)
REMOTE AIRPORT ADVISORY (RAA)
SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY
TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT ADVISOR (TMA)

f. Terms Modified:
ADVISORY SERVICE
AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE
BRAKING ACTION
DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT
DME FIX
FLIGHT SERVICE STATION (FSS)
ICING
LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY (LAA)
RADAR CONTACT
RADAR CONTACT LOST

SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL (STA)
UNFROZEN

g. Editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used due to the insignificant nature of the changes.

A

AAI–
(See ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL.)

AAR–
(See AIRPORT ARRIVAL RATE.)

ABBREVIATED IFR FLIGHT PLANS– An authorization by ATC requiring pilots to submit only that information needed for the purpose of ATC. It includes only a small portion of the usual IFR flight plan information. In certain instances, this may be only aircraft identification, location, and pilot request. Other information may be requested if needed by ATC for separation/control purposes. It is frequently used by aircraft which are airborne and desire an instrument approach or by aircraft which are on the ground and desire a climb to VFR-on-top.
(See VFR-ON-TOP.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ABEAM– An aircraft is "abeam" a fix, point, or object when that fix, point, or object is approximately 90 degrees to the right or left of the aircraft track. Abeam indicates a general position rather than a precise point.

ABORT– To terminate a preplanned aircraft maneuver; e.g., an aborted takeoff.

ACC [ICAO]–
(See ICAO term AREA CONTROL CENTER.)

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE– The runway plus stopway length declared available and suitable for the acceleration and deceleration of an airplane aborting a takeoff.

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the stopway if provided.

ACDO–
(See AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE.)

ACKNOWLEDGE– Let me know that you have received and understood this message.

ACL–
(See AIRCRAFT LIST.)

ACLS–
(See AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM.)

ACLT–
(See ACTUAL CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT– An intentional maneuver involving an abrupt change in an aircraft's attitude, an abnormal attitude, or abnormal acceleration not necessary for normal flight.
(See ICAO term ACROBATIC FLIGHT.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT [ICAO]– Maneuvers intentionally performed by an aircraft involving an abrupt change in its attitude, an abnormal attitude, or an abnormal variation in speed.

ACTIVE RUNWAY–
(See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

ACTUAL CALCULATED LANDING TIME– ACLT is a flight's frozen calculated landing time. An actual time determined at freeze calculated landing time (FCLT) or meter list display interval (MLDI) for the adapted vertex for each arrival aircraft based upon runway configuration, airport acceptance rate, airport arrival delay period, and other metered arrival aircraft. This time is either the vertex time of arrival (VTA) of the aircraft or the tentative calculated landing time (TCLT)/ACLT of the previous aircraft plus the arrival aircraft interval (AAI), whichever is later. This time will not be updated in response to the aircraft's progress.

ACTUAL NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (ANP)–
(See REQUIRED NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE.)

ADDITIONAL SERVICES– Advisory information provided by ATC which includes but is not limited to the following:

a. Traffic advisories.

b. Vectors, when requested by the pilot, to assist aircraft receiving traffic advisories to avoid observed traffic.

c. Altitude deviation information of 300 feet or more from an assigned altitude as observed on a verified (reading correctly) automatic altitude readout (Mode C).

d. Advisories that traffic is no longer a factor.

e. Weather and chaff information.

f. Weather assistance.

g. Bird activity information.

h. Holding pattern surveillance. Additional services are provided to the extent possible contingent only upon the controller's capability to fit them into the performance of higher priority duties and on the basis of limitations of the radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and controller workload. The controller has complete discretion for determining if he/she is able to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case. The controller's reason not to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case is not subject to question by the pilot and need not be made known to him/her.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ADF−
(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)

ADIZ−
(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)

ADLY−
(See ARRIVAL DELAY.)

ADMINISTRATOR− The Federal Aviation Administrator or any person to whom he/she has delegated his/her authority in the matter concerned.

ADR−
(See AIRPORT DEPARTURE RATE.)

ADS [ICAO]−
(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE.)

ADS−B−
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)

ADS−C−
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−CONTRACT.)

ADVISE INTENTIONS− Tell me what you plan to do.

ADVISORY− Advice and information provided to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.
(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

ADVISORY FREQUENCY− The appropriate frequency to be used for Airport Advisory Service.
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(See UNICOM.)
(Refer to ADVISORY CIRCULAR NO. 90-42.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ADVISORY SERVICE− Advice and information provided by a facility to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.
(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(See RADAR ADVISORY.)
(See SAFETY ALERT.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AERIAL REFUELING− A procedure used by the military to transfer fuel from one aircraft to another during flight.
(Refer to VFR/IFR Wall Planning Charts.)

AERODROME− A defined area on land or water (including any buildings, installations and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure, and movement of aircraft.

AERODROME BEACON [ICAO]− Aeronautical beacon used to indicate the location of an aerodrome from the air.

AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]− Air traffic control service for aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME CONTROL TOWER [ICAO]− A unit established to provide air traffic control service to aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME ELEVATION [ICAO]− The elevation of the highest point of the landing area.

AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT [ICAO]− The specified path to be flown by aircraft operating in the vicinity of an aerodrome.

AERONAUTICAL BEACON− A visual NAVAID displaying flashes of white and/or colored light to indicate the location of an airport, a heliport, a landmark, a certain point of a Federal airway in mountainous terrain, or an obstruction.
(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART− A map used in air navigation containing all or part of the following: topographic features, hazards and obstructions, navigation aids, navigation routes, designated airspace, and airports. Commonly used aeronautical charts are:

a. Sectional Aeronautical Charts (1:500,000)− Designed for visual navigation of slow or medium speed aircraft. Topographic information on these charts features the portrayal of relief and a judicious selection of visual check points for VFR flight. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

b. VFR Terminal Area Charts (1:250,000)− Depict Class B airspace which provides for the control or segregation of all the aircraft within Class B airspace. The chart depicts topographic information and aeronautical information which includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

c. En Route Low Altitude Charts− Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the low altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of airways, limits of controlled airspace, position identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, minimum en route and minimum obstruction clearance altitudes, airway distances, reporting points, restricted areas, and related data. Area charts, which are a part of this series, furnish terminal data at a larger scale in congested areas.

d. En Route High Altitude Charts− Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the high altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of jet routes, identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, distances, time zones, special use airspace, and related information.

e. Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP) Charts− Portray the aeronautical data which is required to execute an instrument approach to an airport. These charts depict the procedures, including all related data, and the airport diagram. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific type of electronic navigation system including NDB, TACAN, VOR, ILS RNAV and GLS. These charts are identified by the type of navigational aid(s)/equipment required to provide final approach guidance.

f. Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) Charts− Designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. Each DP is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

g. Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Charts− Designed to expedite air traffic control arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

h. Airport Taxi Charts− Designed to expedite the efficient and safe flow of ground traffic at an airport. These charts are identified by the official airport name; e.g., Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport.

(See ICAO term AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART [ICAO]− A representation of a portion of the earth, its culture and relief, specifically designated to meet the requirements of air navigation.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL (AIM)− A primary FAA publication whose purpose is to instruct airmen about operating in the National Airspace System of the U.S. It provides basic flight information, ATC Procedures and general instructional information concerning health, medical facts, factors affecting flight safety, accident and hazard reporting, and types of aeronautical charts and their use.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION (AIP) [ICAO]− A publication issued by or with the authority of a State and containing aeronautical information of a lasting character essential to air navigation.

(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

AFFIRMATIVE− Yes.

AFIS−

(See AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE − ALASKA FSSs ONLY.)

AFP−

(See AIRSPACE FLOW PROGRAM.)

AIM−

(See AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL.)

AIP [ICAO]−

(See ICAO term AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION.)

AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE− An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area, staffed with Flight Standards personnel serving the aviation industry and the general public on matters related to the certification and operation of scheduled air carriers and other large aircraft operations.

AIR DEFENSE EMERGENCY− A military emergency condition declared by a designated authority. This condition exists when an attack upon the continental U.S., Alaska, Canada, or U.S. installations in Greenland by hostile aircraft or missiles is considered probable, is imminent, or is taking place.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE (ADIZ)− The area of airspace over land or water, extending upward from the surface, within which the ready identification, the location, and the control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

a. Domestic Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ within the United States along an international boundary of the United States.

b. Coastal Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the United States.

c. Distant Early Warning Identification Zone (DEWIZ). An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the State of Alaska.

d. Land−Based Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ over U.S. metropolitan areas, which is activated and deactivated as needed, with dimensions, activation dates and other relevant information disseminated via NOTAM.

Note: ADIZ locations and operating and flight plan requirements for civil aircraft operations are specified in 14 CFR Part 99.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY− Any facility used in, available for use in, or designed for use in, aid of air navigation, including landing areas, lights, any apparatus or equipment for disseminating weather information, for signaling, for radio-directional finding, or for radio or other electrical communication, and any other structure or mechanism having a similar purpose for guiding or controlling flight in the air or the landing and takeoff of aircraft.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR− Air route traffic control center (ARTCC) radar used primarily to detect and display an aircraft's position while en route between terminal areas. The ARSR enables controllers to provide radar air traffic control service when aircraft are within the ARSR coverage. In some instances, ARSR may enable an ARTCC to provide terminal radar services similar to but usually more limited than those provided by a radar approach control.

AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER− A facility established to provide air traffic control service to aircraft operating on IFR flight plans within controlled airspace and principally during the en route phase of flight. When equipment capabilities and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.

(See EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR TAXI− Used to describe a helicopter/VTOL aircraft movement conducted above the surface but normally not above 100 feet AGL. The aircraft may proceed either via hover taxi or flight at speeds more than 20 knots. The pilot is solely responsible for selecting a safe airspeed/altitude for the operation being conducted.

(See HOVER TAXI.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR TRAFFIC− Aircraft operating in the air or on an airport surface, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC.)

AIR TRAFFIC [ICAO]− All aircraft in flight or operating on the maneuvering area of an aerodrome.

AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE− An authorization by air traffic control for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified traffic conditions within controlled airspace. The pilot-in-command of an aircraft may not deviate from the provisions of a visual flight rules (VFR) or instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic clearance except in an emergency or unless an amended clearance has been obtained. Additionally, the pilot may request a different clearance from that which has been issued by air traffic control (ATC) if information available to the pilot makes another course of action more practicable or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued. Pilots may also request clarification or amendment, as appropriate, any time a clearance is not fully understood, or considered unacceptable because of safety of flight. Controllers should, in such instances and to the extent of operational practicality and safety, honor the pilot's request. 14 CFR Part 91.3(a) states: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft." THE PILOT IS RESPONSIBLE TO REQUEST AN AMENDED CLEARANCE if ATC issues a clearance that would cause a pilot to deviate from a rule or regulation, or in the pilot's opinion, would place the aircraft in jeopardy.

(See ATC INSTRUCTIONS.)
(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL− A service operated by appropriate authority to promote the safe, orderly and expeditious flow of air traffic.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE [ICAO]− Authorization for an aircraft to proceed under conditions specified by an air traffic control unit.

Note 1: For convenience, the term air traffic control clearance is frequently abbreviated to clearance when used in appropriate contexts.

Note 2: The abbreviated term clearance may be prefixed by the words taxi, takeoff, departure, en route, approach or landing to indicate the particular portion of flight to which the air traffic control clearance relates.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]− A service provided for the purpose of:

a. Preventing collisions:

1. Between aircraft; and

2. On the maneuvering area between aircraft and obstructions.

b. Expediting and maintaining an orderly flow of air traffic.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST− A person authorized to provide air traffic control service.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See ICAO term CONTROLLER.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER (ATCSCC) − An Air Traffic Tactical Operations facility responsible for monitoring and managing the flow of air traffic throughout the NAS, producing a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic while minimizing delays. The following functions are located at the ATCSCC:

a. Central Altitude Reservation Function (CARF). Responsible for coordinating, planning, and approving special user requirements under the Altitude Reservation (ALTRV) concept.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

b. Airport Reservation Office (ARO). Responsible for approving IFR flights at designated high density traffic airports (John F. Kennedy, LaGuardia, and Ronald Reagan Washington National) during specified hours.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 93.)
(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

c. U.S. Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) Office. Responsible for collecting, maintaining, and distributing NOTAMs for the U.S. civilian and military, as well as international aviation communities.

(See NOTICE TO AIRMEN.)

d. Weather Unit. Monitor all aspects of weather for the U.S. that might affect aviation including cloud cover, visibility, winds, precipitation, thunderstorms, icing, turbulence, and more. Provide forecasts based on observations and on discussions with meteorologists from various National Weather Service offices, FAA facilities, airlines, and private weather services.

AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE− A generic term meaning:

a. Flight Information Service.

b. Alerting Service.

c. Air Traffic Advisory Service.

d. Air Traffic Control Service:

1. Area Control Service,

2. Approach Control Service, or

3. Airport Control Service.

AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) ROUTES − The term "ATS Route" is a generic term that includes "VOR Federal airways," "colored Federal airways," "jet routes," and "RNAV routes." The term "ATS route" does not replace these more familiar route names, but serves only as an overall title when listing the types of routes that comprise the United States route structure.

AIRBORNE− An aircraft is considered airborne when all parts of the aircraft are off the ground.

AIRBORNE DELAY− Amount of delay to be encountered in airborne holding.

AIRCRAFT− Device(s) that are used or intended to be used for flight in the air, and when used in air traffic control terminology, may include the flight crew.

(See ICAO term AIRCRAFT.)

AIRCRAFT [ICAO]− Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air other than the reactions of the air against the earth's surface.

AIRCRAFT APPROACH CATEGORY− A grouping of aircraft based on a speed of 1.3 times the stall speed in the landing configuration at maximum gross landing weight. An aircraft must fit in only one category. If it is necessary to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of a speed range for a category, the minimums for the category for that speed must be used. For example, an aircraft which falls in Category A, but is circling to land at a speed in excess of 91 knots, must use the approach Category B minimums when circling to land. The categories are as follows:

a. Category A− Speed less than 91 knots.

b. Category B− Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

c. Category C− Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

d. Category D− Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

e. Category E− Speed 166 knots or more.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

AIRCRAFT CLASSES− For the purposes of Wake Turbulence Separation Minima, ATC classifies aircraft as Super, Heavy, Large, and Small as follows:

a. Super. The Airbus A-380-800 (A388) and the Antonov An-225 (A225) are classified as super.

b. Heavy− Aircraft capable of takeoff weights of 300,000 pounds or more whether or not they are operating at this weight during a particular phase of flight.

c. Large− Aircraft of more than 41,000 pounds, maximum certificated takeoff weight, up to but not including 300,000 pounds.

d. Small− Aircraft of 41,000 pounds or less maximum certificated takeoff weight.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRCRAFT CONFLICT− Predicted conflict, within EDST of two aircraft, or between aircraft and airspace. A Red alert is used for conflicts when the predicted minimum separation is 5 nautical miles or less. A Yellow alert is used when the predicted minimum separation is between 5 and approximately 12 nautical miles. A Blue alert is used for conflicts between an aircraft and predefined airspace.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL)− A view available with EDST that lists aircraft currently in or predicted to be in a particular sector's airspace. The view contains textual flight data information in line format and may be sorted into various orders based on the specific needs of the sector team.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY− Procedures used at USAF bases to provide increased launch and recovery rates in instrument flight rules conditions. ASLAR is based on:

a. Reduced separation between aircraft which is based on time or distance. Standard arrival separation applies between participants including multiple flights until the DRAG point. The DRAG point is a published location on an ASLAR approach where aircraft landing second in a formation slows to a predetermined airspeed. The DRAG point is the reference point at which MARSA applies as expanding elements effect separation within a flight or between subsequent participating flights.

b. ASLAR procedures shall be covered in a Letter of Agreement between the responsible USAF military ATC facility and the concerned Federal Aviation Administration facility. Initial Approach Fix spacing requirements are normally addressed as a minimum.

AIRMEN'S METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION−
(See AIRMET.)

AIRMET− In-flight weather advisories issued only to amend the area forecast concerning weather phenomena which are of operational interest to all aircraft and potentially hazardous to aircraft having limited capability because of lack of equipment, instrumentation, or pilot qualifications. AIRMETs concern weather of less severity than that covered by SIGMETs or Convective SIGMETs. AIRMETs cover moderate icing, moderate turbulence, sustained winds of 30 knots or more at the surface, widespread areas of ceilings less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility less than 3 miles, and extensive mountain obscurement.
(See AWW.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT− An area on land or water that is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft and includes its buildings and facilities, if any.

AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA− The area within ten miles of an airport without a control tower or where the tower is not in operation, and on which a Flight Service Station is located.
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT ARRIVAL RATE (AAR)− A dynamic input parameter specifying the number of arriving aircraft which an airport or airspace can accept from the ARTCC per hour. The AAR is used to calculate the desired interval between successive arrival aircraft.

AIRPORT DEPARTURE RATE (ADR)− A dynamic parameter specifying the number of aircraft which can depart an airport and the airspace can accept per hour.

AIRPORT ELEVATION− The highest point of an airport's usable runways measured in feet from mean sea level.
(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME ELEVATION.)

AIRPORT LIGHTING− Various lighting aids that may be installed on an airport. Types of airport lighting include:

a. Approach Light System (ALS)− An airport lighting facility which provides visual guidance to landing aircraft by radiating light beams in a directional pattern by which the pilot aligns the aircraft with the extended centerline of the runway on his/her final approach for landing. Condenser-Discharge Sequential Flashing Lights/Sequenced Flashing Lights may be installed in conjunction with the ALS at some airports. Types of Approach Light Systems are:

1. ALSF-1− Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-I configuration.

2. ALSF-2− Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-II configuration. The ALSF-2 may operate as an SSALR when weather conditions permit.

3. SSALF− Simplified Short Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

4. SSALR− Simplified Short Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

5. MALSF− Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

6. MALSR− Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

7. RLLS− Runway Lead-in Light System Consists of one or more series of flashing lights installed at or near ground level that provides positive visual guidance along an approach path, either curving or straight, where special problems exist with hazardous terrain, obstructions, or noise abatement procedures.

8. RAIL− Runway Alignment Indicator Lights− Sequenced Flashing Lights which are installed only in combination with other light systems.

9. ODALS− Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System consists of seven omnidirectional flashing lights located in the approach area of a nonprecision runway. Five lights are located on the runway centerline extended with the first light located 300 feet from the threshold and extending at equal intervals up to 1,500 feet from the threshold. The other two lights are located, one on each side of the runway threshold, at a lateral distance of 40 feet from the runway edge, or 75 feet from the runway edge when installed on a runway equipped with a VASI.

(Refer to FAAO JO 6850.2, VISUAL GUIDANCE LIGHTING SYSTEMS.)

b. Runway Lights/Runway Edge Lights− Lights having a prescribed angle of emission used to define the lateral limits of a runway. Runway lights are uniformly spaced at intervals of approximately 200 feet, and the intensity may be controlled or preset.

c. Touchdown Zone Lighting− Two rows of transverse light bars located symmetrically about the runway centerline normally at 100 foot intervals. The basic system extends 3,000 feet along the runway.

d. Runway Centerline Lighting− Flush centerline lights spaced at 50-foot intervals beginning 75 feet from the landing threshold and extending to within 75 feet of the opposite end of the runway.

e. Threshold Lights− Fixed green lights arranged symmetrically left and right of the runway centerline, identifying the runway threshold.

f. Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL)− Two synchronized flashing lights, one on each side of the runway threshold, which provide rapid and positive identification of the approach end of a particular runway.

g. Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)− An airport lighting facility providing vertical visual approach slope guidance to aircraft during approach to landing by radiating a directional pattern of high intensity red and white focused light beams which indicate to the pilot that he/she is "on path" if he/she sees red/white, "above path" if white/white, and "below path" if red/red. Some airports serving large aircraft have three-bar VASIs which provide two visual glide paths to the same runway.

h. Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI)− An airport lighting facility, similar to VASI, providing vertical approach slope guidance to aircraft during approach to landing. PAPIs consist of a single row of either two or four lights, normally installed on the left side of the runway, and have an effective visual range of about 5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles at night. PAPIs radiate a directional pattern of high intensity red and white focused light beams which indicate that the pilot is "on path" if the pilot sees an equal number of white lights and red lights, with white to the left of the red; "above path" if the pilot sees more white than red lights; and "below path" if the pilot sees more red than white lights.

i. Boundary Lights− Lights defining the perimeter of an airport or landing area.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT MARKING AIDS− Markings used on runway and taxiway surfaces to identify a specific runway, a runway threshold, a centerline, a hold line, etc. A runway should be marked in accordance with its present usage such as:

a. Visual.

b. Nonprecision instrument.

c. Precision instrument.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT REFERENCE POINT (ARP)− The approximate geometric center of all usable runway surfaces.

AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE− Office responsible for monitoring the operation of slot controlled airports. It receives and processes requests for unscheduled operations at slot controlled airports.

AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON− A visual NAVAID operated at many airports. At civil airports, alternating white and green flashes indicate the location of the airport. At military airports, the beacons flash alternately white and green, but are differentiated from civil beacons by dualpeaked (two quick) white flashes between the green flashes.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT STREAM FILTER (ASF)− An on/off filter that allows the conflict notification function to be inhibited for arrival streams into single or multiple airports to prevent nuisance alerts.

AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT (ASDE)− Surveillance equipment specifically designed to detect aircraft, vehicular traffic, and other objects, on the surface of an airport, and to present the image on a tower display. Used to augment visual observation by tower personnel of aircraft and/or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways. There are three ASDE systems deployed in the NAS:

a. ASDE−3− a Surface Movement Radar.

b. ASDE−X− a system that uses a X−band Surface Movement Radar and multilateration. Data from these two sources are fused and presented on a digital display.

c. ASDE−3X− an ASDE−X system that uses the ASDE−3 Surface Movement Radar.

AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR− Approach control radar used to detect and display an aircraft's position in the terminal area. ASR provides range and azimuth information but does not provide elevation data. Coverage of the ASR can extend up to 60 miles.

AIRPORT TAXI CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE− A service provided by a control tower for aircraft operating on the movement area and in the vicinity of an airport.
(See MOVEMENT AREA.)
(See TOWER.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWER−
(See TOWER.)

AIRSPACE CONFLICT− Predicted conflict of an aircraft and active Special Activity Airspace (SAA).

AIRSPACE FLOW PROGRAM (AFP)− AFP is a Traffic Management (TM) process administered by the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) where aircraft are assigned an Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT) in order to manage capacity and demand for a specific area of the National Airspace System (NAS). The purpose of the program is to mitigate the effects of en route constraints. It is a flexible program and may be implemented in various forms depending upon the needs of the air traffic system.

AIRSPACE HIERARCHY− Within the airspace classes, there is a hierarchy and, in the event of an overlap of airspace: Class A preempts Class B, Class B preempts Class C, Class C preempts Class D, Class D preempts Class E, and Class E preempts Class G.

AIRSPEED− The speed of an aircraft relative to its surrounding air mass. The unqualified term "airspeed" means one of the following:

a. Indicated Airspeed− The speed shown on the aircraft airspeed indicator. This is the speed used in pilot/controller communications under the general term "airspeed."
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 1.)

b. True Airspeed− The airspeed of an aircraft relative to undisturbed air. Used primarily in flight planning and en route portion of flight. When used in pilot/controller communications, it is referred to as "true airspeed" and not shortened to "airspeed."

AIRSTART− The starting of an aircraft engine while the aircraft is airborne, preceded by engine shutdown during training flights or by actual engine failure.

AIRWAY− A Class E airspace area established in the form of a corridor, the centerline of which is defined by radio navigational aids.
(See FEDERAL AIRWAYS.)
(See ICAO term AIRWAY.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 71.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRWAY [ICAO]− A control area or portion thereof established in the form of corridor equipped with radio navigational aids.

AIRWAY BEACON− Used to mark airway segments in remote mountain areas. The light flashes Morse Code to identify the beacon site.
(Refer to AIM.)

AIT−
(See AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER.)

ALERFA (Alert Phase) [ICAO]− A situation wherein apprehension exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

ALERT− A notification to a position that there is an aircraft-to-aircraft or aircraft-to-airspace conflict, as detected by Automated Problem Detection (APD).

ALERT AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ALERT NOTICE− A request originated by a flight service station (FSS) or an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) for an extensive communication search for overdue, unreported, or missing aircraft.

ALERTING SERVICE− A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and assist such organizations as required.

ALNOT−
(See ALERT NOTICE.)

ALONG−TRACK DISTANCE (ATD)− The distance measured from a point-in-space by systems using area navigation reference capabilities that are not subject to slant range errors.

ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY− Letters and numerals used to show identification, altitude, beacon code, and other information concerning a target on a radar display.

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

ALTERNATE AERODROME [ICAO]− An aerodrome to which an aircraft may proceed when it becomes either impossible or inadvisable to proceed to or to land at the aerodrome of intended landing.

Note: The aerodrome from which a flight departs may also be an en-route or a destination alternate aerodrome for the flight.

ALTERNATE AIRPORT− An airport at which an aircraft may land if a landing at the intended airport becomes inadvisable.

(See ICAO term ALTERNATE AERODROME.)

ALTIMETER SETTING− The barometric pressure reading used to adjust a pressure altimeter for variations in existing atmospheric pressure or to the standard altimeter setting (29.92).

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE− The height of a level, point, or object measured in feet Above Ground Level (AGL) or from Mean Sea Level (MSL).

(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

a. MSL Altitude− Altitude expressed in feet measured from mean sea level.

b. AGL Altitude− Altitude expressed in feet measured above ground level.

c. Indicated Altitude− The altitude as shown by an altimeter. On a pressure or barometric altimeter it is altitude as shown uncorrected for instrument error and uncompensated for variation from standard atmospheric conditions.

(See ICAO term ALTITUDE.)

ALTITUDE [ICAO]− The vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level (MSL).

ALTITUDE READOUT− An aircraft's altitude, transmitted via the Mode C transponder feature, that is visually displayed in 100-foot increments on a radar scope having readout capability.

(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE RESERVATION− Airspace utilization under prescribed conditions normally employed for the mass movement of aircraft or other special user requirements which cannot otherwise be accomplished. ALTRVs are approved by the appropriate FAA facility.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ALTITUDE RESTRICTION− An altitude or altitudes, stated in the order flown, which are to be maintained until reaching a specific point or time. Altitude restrictions may be issued by ATC due to traffic, terrain, or other airspace considerations.

ALTITUDE RESTRICTIONS ARE CANCELED− Adherence to previously imposed altitude restrictions is no longer required during a climb or descent.

ALTRV−

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

AMVER−

(See AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM.)

APB−

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY.)

APD−

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION.)

APDIA−

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA.)

APPROACH CLEARANCE− Authorization by ATC for a pilot to conduct an instrument approach. The type of instrument approach for which a clearance and other pertinent information is provided in the approach clearance when required.

(See CLEARED APPROACH.)

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY− A terminal ATC facility that provides approach control service in a terminal area.

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE− Air traffic control service provided by an approach control facility for arriving and departing VFR/IFR aircraft and, on occasion, en route aircraft. At some airports not served by an approach control facility, the ARTCC provides limited approach control service.

(See ICAO term APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]− Air traffic control service for arriving or departing controlled flights.

APPROACH GATE− An imaginary point used within ATC as a basis for vectoring aircraft to the final approach course. The gate will be established along the final approach course 1 mile from the final approach fix on the side away from the airport and will be no closer than 5 miles from the landing threshold.

APPROACH HOLD AREA− The locations on taxiways in the approach or departure areas of a runway designated to protect landing or departing aircraft. These locations are identified by signs and markings.

APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM−

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE− The order in which aircraft are positioned while on approach or awaiting approach clearance.

(See LANDING SEQUENCE.)
(See ICAO term APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE [ICAO]− The order in which two or more aircraft are cleared to approach to land at the aerodrome.

APPROACH SPEED− The recommended speed contained in aircraft manuals used by pilots when making an approach to landing. This speed will vary for different segments of an approach as well as for aircraft weight and configuration.

APPROACH WITH VERTICAL GUIDANCE (APV)– A term used to describe RNAV approach procedures that provide lateral and vertical guidance but do not meet the requirements to be considered a precision approach.

APPROPRIATE ATS AUTHORITY [ICAO]− The relevant authority designated by the State responsible for providing air traffic services in the airspace concerned. In the United States, the "appropriate ATS authority" is the Program Director for Air Traffic Planning and Procedures, ATP-1.

APPROPRIATE AUTHORITY−

a. Regarding flight over the high seas: the relevant authority is the State of Registry.

b. Regarding flight over other than the high seas: the relevant authority is the State having sovereignty over the territory being overflown.

APPROPRIATE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE− Any of the following:

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APPROPRIATE TERRAIN CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE− Any of the following:

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APRON− A defined area on an airport or heliport intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers or cargo, refueling, parking, or maintenance. With regard to seaplanes, a ramp is used for access to the apron from the water.

(See ICAO term APRON.)

APRON [ICAO]− A defined area, on a land aerodrome, intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, mail or cargo, refueling, parking or maintenance.

ARC− The track over the ground of an aircraft flying at a constant distance from a navigational aid by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).

AREA CONTROL CENTER [ICAO]− An air traffic control facility primarily responsible for ATC services being provided IFR aircraft during the en route phase of flight. The U.S. equivalent facility is an air route traffic control center (ARTCC).

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)− A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of ground− or space−based navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

Note: Area navigation includes performance−based navigation as well as other operations that do not meet the definition of performance−based navigation.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) APPROACH CONFIGURATION:

a. STANDARD T− An RNAV approach whose design allows direct flight to any one of three initial approach fixes (IAF) and eliminates the need for procedure turns. The standard design is to align the procedure on the extended centerline with the missed approach point (MAP) at the runway threshold, the final approach fix (FAF), and the initial approach/ intermediate fix (IAF/IF). The other two IAFs will be established perpendicular to the IF.

b. MODIFIED T− An RNAV approach design for single or multiple runways where terrain or operational constraints do not allow for the standard T. The "T" may be modified by increasing or decreasing the angle from the corner IAF(s) to the IF or by eliminating one or both corner IAFs.

c. STANDARD I− An RNAV approach design for a single runway with both corner IAFs eliminated. Course reversal or radar vectoring may be required at busy terminals with multiple runways.

d. TERMINAL ARRIVAL AREA (TAA)− The TAA is controlled airspace established in conjunction with the Standard or Modified T and I RNAV approach configurations. In the standard TAA, there are three areas: straight-in, left base, and right base. The arc boundaries of the three areas of the TAA are published portions of the approach and allow aircraft to transition from the en route structure direct to the nearest IAF. TAAs will also eliminate or reduce feeder routes, departure extensions, and procedure turns or course reversal.

1. STRAIGHT-IN AREA− A 30NM arc centered on the IF bounded by a straight line extending through the IF perpendicular to the intermediate course.

2. LEFT BASE AREA− A 30NM arc centered on the right corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

3. RIGHT BASE AREA− A 30NM arc centered on the left corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITORING (PRM) APPROACH – A GPS approach, which requires vertical guidance, used in lieu of an ILS PRM approach to conduct approaches to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet, where simultaneous close parallel approaches are permitted. Also used in lieu of an ILS PRM and/or LDA PRM approach to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations.

ARINC− An acronym for Aeronautical Radio, Inc., a corporation largely owned by a group of airlines. ARINC is licensed by the FCC as an aeronautical station and contracted by the FAA to provide communications support for air traffic control and meteorological services in portions of international airspace.

ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN− A bulletin that provides air operation data covering Army, National Guard, and Army Reserve aviation activities.

ARO−
(See AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE.)

ARRESTING SYSTEM− A safety device consisting of two major components, namely, engaging or catching devices and energy absorption devices for the purpose of arresting both tailhook and/or nontailhook-equipped aircraft. It is used to prevent aircraft from overrunning runways when the aircraft cannot be stopped after landing or during aborted takeoff. Arresting systems have various names; e.g., arresting gear, hook device, wire barrier cable.
(See ABORT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL− An internally generated program in hundredths of minutes based upon the AAR. AAI is the desired optimum interval between successive arrival aircraft over the vertex.

ARRIVAL CENTER− The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the impacted airport.

ARRIVAL DELAY− A parameter which specifies a period of time in which no aircraft will be metered for arrival at the specified airport.

ARRIVAL SECTOR− An operational control sector containing one or more meter fixes.

ARRIVAL SECTOR ADVISORY LIST− An ordered list of data on arrivals displayed at the PVD/MDM of the sector which controls the meter fix.

ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM− The automated program designed to assist in sequencing aircraft destined for the same airport.

ARRIVAL TIME− The time an aircraft touches down on arrival.

ARSR−
(See AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ARTCC−
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

ARTS−
(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

ASDA−
(See ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDA [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDE−
(See AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT.)

ASF−
(See AIRPORT STREAM FILTER.)

ASLAR−
(See AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY.)

ASP−
(See ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

ASR−
(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ASR APPROACH−
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)

ASSOCIATED− A radar target displaying a data block with flight identification and altitude information.
(See UNASSOCIATED.)

ATC−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

ATC ADVISES− Used to prefix a message of noncontrol information when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.
(See ADVISORY.)

ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE− Airspace of defined vertical/lateral limits, assigned by ATC, for the purpose of providing air traffic segregation between the specified activities being conducted within the assigned airspace and other IFR air traffic.DME FIX
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ATC CLEARANCE−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

ATC CLEARS− Used to prefix an ATC clearance when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC INSTRUCTIONS− Directives issued by air traffic control for the purpose of requiring a pilot to take specific actions; e.g., “Turn left heading two five zero,” “Go around,” “Clear the runway.”
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTE NOTIFICATION− EDST notification to the appropriate controller of the need to determine if an ATC preferred route needs to be applied, based on destination airport.
(See ROUTE ACTION NOTIFICATION.)
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTES− Preferred routes that are not automatically applied by Host.

ATC REQUESTS− Used to prefix an ATC request when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES − Communications and security tracking provided by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other Federal security elements in the interest of national security.

Such security services are only applicable within designated areas. ATC security services do not include ATC basic radar services or flight following.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES POSITION − The position responsible for providing ATC security services as defined. This position does not provide ATC, IFR separation, or VFR flight following services, but is responsible for providing security services in an area comprising airspace assigned to one or more ATC operating sectors. This position may be combined with control positions.

ATC SECURITY TRACKING− The continuous tracking of aircraft movement by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other security elements for national security using radar (i.e., radar tracking) or other means (e.g., manual tracking) without providing basic radar services (including traffic advisories) or other ATC services not defined in this section.

ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE− Used by ATC for establishing identification, control and separation using a target depicted on an air traffic control facility's video display that has met the relevant safety standards for operational use and received from one, or a combination, of the following surveillance sources:
a. Radar (See RADAR)
b. ADS-B (See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)
c. WAM (See WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION)
(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ATCAA−
(See ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.)

ATCRBS−
(See RADAR.)

ATCSCC−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ATCT−
(See TOWER.)

ATD−
(See ALONG−TRACK DISTANCE.)

ATIS−
(See AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATIS [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATS ROUTE [ICAO]− A specified route designed for channeling the flow of traffic as necessary for the provision of air traffic services.

Note: The term "ATS Route" is used to mean variously, airway, advisory route, controlled or uncontrolled route, arrival or departure, etc.

ATTENTION ALL USERS PAGE (AAUP)- The AAUP provides the pilot with additional information relative to conducting a specific operation, for example, PRM approaches and RNAV departures.

AUTOLAND APPROACH−An autoland system aids by providing control of aircraft systems during a precision instrument approach to at least decision altitude and possibly all the way to touchdown, as well as in some cases, through the landing rollout. The autoland system is a sub-system of the autopilot system from which control surface management occurs. The aircraft autopilot sends instructions to the autoland system and monitors the autoland system performance and integrity during its execution.

AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER− A precoordinated process, specifically defined in facility directives, during which a transfer of altitude control and/or radar identification is accomplished without verbal coordination between controllers using information communicated in a full data block.

AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM− A facility which can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a surface picture (SURPIC) of vessels in the area of a potential or actual search and rescue incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.
(See FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−6−4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION (APD)− An Automation Processing capability that compares trajectories in order to predict conflicts.

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY (APB)− The adapted distance beyond a facilities boundary defining the airspace within which EDST performs conflict detection.
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA (APDIA)− Airspace surrounding a terminal area within which APD is inhibited for all flights within that airspace.

AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS (ARTS)− A generic term for several tracking systems included in the Terminal Automation Systems (TAS). ARTS plus a suffix roman numeral denotes a major modification to that system.

a. ARTS IIIA. The Radar Tracking and Beacon Tracking Level (RT&BTL) of the modular, programmable automated radar terminal system. ARTS IIIA detects, tracks, and predicts primary as well as secondary radar-derived aircraft targets. This more sophisticated computer-driven system upgrades the existing ARTS III system by providing improved tracking, continuous data recording, and fail-soft capabilities.

b. Common ARTS. Includes ARTS IIE, ARTS IIIE; and ARTS IIIE with ACD (see DTAS) which combines functionalities of the previous ARTS systems.

AUTOMATED WEATHER SYSTEM− Any of the automated weather sensor platforms that collect weather data at airports and disseminate the weather information via radio and/or landline. The systems currently consist of the Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS), Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS) and Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS).

AUTOMATED UNICOM− Provides completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an Automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability will be published in the Chart Supplement U.S. and approach charts.

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT−
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING− That function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100-foot increments.

AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM− U.S. Navy final approach equipment consisting of precision tracking radar coupled to a computer data link to provide continuous information to the aircraft, monitoring capability to the pilot, and a backup approach system.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE (ADS) [ICAO]− A surveillance technique in which aircraft automatically provide, via a data link, data derived from on−board navigation and position fixing systems, including aircraft identification, four dimensional position and additional data as appropriate.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST (ADS-B)− A surveillance system in which an aircraft or vehicle to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a data link transmitter. The aircraft or vehicle periodically broadcasts its GPS−derived position and other information such as velocity over the data link, which is received by a ground−based transmitter/receiver (transceiver) for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.
(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)
(See GROUND−BASED TRANSCEIVER.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−CONTRACT (ADS−C)− A data link position reporting system, controlled by a ground station, that establishes contracts with an aircraft's avionics that occur automatically whenever specific events occur, or specific time intervals are reached.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE-REBROADCAST (ADS-R) is a datalink translation function of the ADS−B ground system required to accommodate the two separate operating frequencies (978 MHz and 1090 ES). The ADS−B system receives the ADS−B messages transmitted on one frequency and ADS−R translates and reformats the information for rebroadcast and use on the other frequency. This allows ADS−B In equipped aircraft to see nearby ADS−B Out traffic regardless of the operating link of the other aircraft. Aircraft operating on the same ADS−B frequency exchange information directly and do not require the ADS−R translation function.

AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER− An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) ground transmitter. Direction is indicated to the pilot as a magnetic bearing or as a relative bearing to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft depending on the type of indicator installed in the aircraft. In certain applications, such as military, ADF operations may be based on airborne and ground transmitters in the VHF/UHF frequency spectrum.

(See BEARING.)
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS) − ALASKA FSSs ONLY− The continuous broadcast of recorded non−control information at airports in Alaska where a FSS provides local airport advisory service. The AFIS broadcast automates the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information such as weather, wind, altimeter, favored runway, breaking action, airport NOTAMs, and other applicable information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency (usually the ASOS/ AWSS/AWOS frequency.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE− The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information; e.g., "Los Angeles information Alfa. One three zero zero Coordinated Universal Time. Weather, measured ceiling two thousand overcast, visibility three, haze, smoke, temperature seven one, dew point five seven, wind two five zero at five, altimeter two niner niner six. I-L-S Runway Two Five Left approach in use, Runway Two Five Right closed, advise you have Alfa."

(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE [ICAO]− The provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft by means of continuous and repetitive broadcasts throughout the day or a specified portion of the day.

AUTOROTATION− A rotorcraft flight condition in which the lifting rotor is driven entirely by action of the air when the rotorcraft is in motion.

a. Autorotative Landing/Touchdown Autorotation. Used by a pilot to indicate that the landing will be made without applying power to the rotor.

b. Low Level Autorotation. Commences at an altitude well below the traffic pattern, usually below 100 feet AGL and is used primarily for tactical military training.

c. 180 degrees Autorotation. Initiated from a downwind heading and is commenced well inside the normal traffic pattern. "Go around" may not be possible during the latter part of this maneuver.

AVAILABLE LANDING DISTANCE (ALD)− The portion of a runway available for landing and roll-out for aircraft cleared for LAHSO. This distance is measured from the landing threshold to the hold-short point.

AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE− A service provided by the National Weather Service (NWS) and FAA which collects and disseminates pertinent weather information for pilots, aircraft operators, and ATC. Available aviation weather reports and forecasts are displayed at each NWS office and FAA FSS.

(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AWW−

(See SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS.)

B

BACK-TAXI– A term used by air traffic controllers to taxi an aircraft on the runway opposite to the traffic flow. The aircraft may be instructed to back-taxi to the beginning of the runway or at some point before reaching the runway end for the purpose of departure or to exit the runway.

BASE LEG–
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

BEACON–
(See AERONAUTICAL BEACON.)
(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)
(See AIRWAY BEACON.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)
(See RADAR.)

BEARING– The horizontal direction to or from any point, usually measured clockwise from true north, magnetic north, or some other reference point through 360 degrees.
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

BELOW MINIMUMS– Weather conditions below the minimums prescribed by regulation for the particular action involved; e.g., landing minimums, takeoff minimums.

BLAST FENCE– A barrier that is used to divert or dissipate jet or propeller blast.

BLAST PAD– A surface adjacent to the ends of a runway provided to reduce the erosive effect of jet blast and propeller wash.

BLIND SPEED– The rate of departure or closing of a target relative to the radar antenna at which cancellation of the primary radar target by moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment causes a reduction or complete loss of signal.
(See ICAO term BLIND VELOCITY.)

BLIND SPOT– An area from which radio transmissions and/or radar echoes cannot be received. The term is also used to describe portions of the airport not visible from the control tower.

BLIND TRANSMISSION–
(See TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND.)

BLIND VELOCITY [ICAO]– The radial velocity of a moving target such that the target is not seen on primary radars fitted with certain forms of fixed echo suppression.

BLIND ZONE–
(See BLIND SPOT.)

BLOCKED– Phraseology used to indicate that a radio transmission has been distorted or interrupted due to multiple simultaneous radio transmissions.

BOTTOM ALTITUDE– In reference to published altitude restrictions on a STAR or STAR runway transition, the lowest altitude authorized.

BOUNDARY LIGHTS–
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

BRAKING ACTION (GOOD, MEDIUM, POOR, OR NIL)– A report of conditions on the airport movement area providing a pilot with a degree/quality of braking that he/she might expect. Braking action is reported in terms of good, fair, poor, or nil. Effective October 1, 2016, Braking Action will be categorized in the following terms: Good, Good to Medium, Medium, Medium to Poor, Poor, and Nil.
(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES– When tower controllers have received runway braking action reports which include the terms "fair," "poor," or "nil," or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway braking conditions, the tower will include on the ATIS broadcast the statement, "Braking action advisories are in effect" on the ATIS broadcast. During the time braking action advisories are in effect, ATC will issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft. Pilots should be prepared for deteriorating braking conditions and should request current runway condition information if not volunteered by controllers. Pilots should also be prepared to provide a descriptive runway condition report to controllers after landing. Effective October 1, 2016, the term "fair" will be replaced with "medium".

BREAKOUT– A technique to direct aircraft out of the approach stream. In the context of simultaneous (independent) parallel operations, a breakout is used to direct threatened aircraft away from a deviating aircraft.

BROADCAST− Transmission of information for which an acknowledgement is not expected.

(See ICAO term BROADCAST.)

BROADCAST [ICAO]− A transmission of information relating to air navigation that is not addressed to a specific station or stations.

C

CALCULATED LANDING TIME− A term that may be used in place of tentative or actual calculated landing time, whichever applies.

CALL FOR RELEASE− Wherein the overlying ARTCC requires a terminal facility to initiate verbal coordination to secure ARTCC approval for release of a departure into the en route environment.

CALL UP− Initial voice contact between a facility and an aircraft, using the identification of the unit being called and the unit initiating the call.
(Refer to AIM.)

CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE− That portion of Canadian domestic airspace within which MNPS separation may be applied.

CARDINAL ALTITUDES− “Odd” or “Even” thousand-foot altitudes or flight levels; e.g., 5,000, 6,000, 7,000, FL 250, FL 260, FL 270.
(See ALTITUDE.)
(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

CARDINAL FLIGHT LEVELS−
(See CARDINAL ALTITUDES.)

CAT−
(See CLEAR-AIR TURBULENCE.)

CATCH POINT− A fix/waypoint that serves as a transition point from the high altitude waypoint navigation structure to an arrival procedure (STAR) or the low altitude ground−based navigation structure.

CEILING− The heights above the earth’s surface of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomena that is reported as “broken,” “overcast,” or “obscuration,” and not classified as “thin” or “partial.”
(See ICAO term CEILING.)

CEILING [ICAO]− The height above the ground or water of the base of the lowest layer of cloud below 6,000 meters (20,000 feet) covering more than half the sky.

CENRAP−
(See CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING.)

CENRAP-PLUS−
(See CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/PROCESSING- PLUS.)

CENTER−
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

CENTER’S AREA− The specified airspace within which an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) provides air traffic control and advisory service.
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/ PROCESSING− A computer program developed to provide a back-up system for airport surveillance radar in the event of a failure or malfunction. The program uses air route traffic control center radar for the processing and presentation of data on the ARTS IIA or IIIA displays.

CENTER RADAR ARTS PRESENTATION/ PROCESSING-PLUS− A computer program developed to provide a back-up system for airport surveillance radar in the event of a terminal secondary radar system failure. The program uses a combination of Air Route Traffic Control Center Radar and terminal airport surveillance radar primary targets displayed simultaneously for the processing and presentation of data on the ARTS IIA or IIIA displays.

CENTER TRACON AUTOMATION SYSTEM (CTAS)− A computerized set of programs designed to aid Air Route Traffic Control Centers and TRACONs in the management and control of air traffic.

CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY− An unscheduled weather advisory issued by Center Weather Service Unit meteorologists for ATC use to alert pilots of existing or anticipated adverse weather conditions within the next 2 hours. A CWA may modify or redefine a SIGMET.
(See AWW.)
(See AIRMET.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC− An organized route system between the U.S. West Coast and Hawaii.

CEP−
(See CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC.)

CERAP−
(See COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON.)

CERTIFIED TOWER RADAR DISPLAY (CTRD)− A FAA radar display certified for use in the NAS.

CFR−
(See CALL FOR RELEASE.)

CHAFF− Thin, narrow metallic reflectors of various lengths and frequency responses, used to reflect radar energy. These reflectors when dropped from aircraft and allowed to drift downward result in large targets on the radar display.

CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.− A publication designed primarily as a pilot's operational manual containing all airports, seaplane bases, and heliports open to the public including communications data, navigational facilities, and certain special notices and procedures. This publication is issued in seven volumes according to geographical area.

CHARTED VFR FLYWAYS− Charted VFR Flyways are flight paths recommended for use to bypass areas heavily traversed by large turbine-powered aircraft. Pilot compliance with recommended flyways and associated altitudes is strictly voluntary. VFR Flyway Planning charts are published on the back of existing VFR Terminal Area charts.

CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH− An approach conducted while operating on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot of an aircraft to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport via visual landmarks and other information depicted on a charted visual flight procedure. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Weather minimums required are depicted on the chart.

CHASE− An aircraft flown in proximity to another aircraft normally to observe its performance during training or testing.

CHASE AIRCRAFT−
(See CHASE.)

CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER− A maneuver initiated by the pilot to align the aircraft with a runway for landing when a straight-in landing from an instrument approach is not possible or is not desirable. At tower controlled airports, this maneuver is made only after ATC authorization has been obtained and the pilot has established required visual reference to the airport.
(See CIRCLE TO RUNWAY.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (RUNWAY NUMBER)− Used by ATC to inform the pilot that he/she must circle to land because the runway in use is other than the runway aligned with the instrument approach procedure. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, the controller will state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right downwind or base leg as appropriate; e.g., "Cleared VOR Runway Three Six Approach circle to Runway Two Two," or "Circle northwest of the airport for a right downwind to Runway Two Two."
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLING APPROACH−
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MANEUVER−
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MINIMA−
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

CLASS A AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS B AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS C AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS D AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS E AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS G AIRSPACE− That airspace not designated as Class A, B, C, D or E.

CLEAR AIR TURBULENCE (CAT)− Turbulence encountered in air where no clouds are present. This term is commonly applied to high-level turbulence associated with wind shear. CAT is often encountered in the vicinity of the jet stream.

(See WIND SHEAR.)
(See JET STREAM.)

CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY−

a. Taxiing aircraft, which is approaching a runway, is clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are held short of the applicable runway holding position marking.

b. A pilot or controller may consider an aircraft, which is exiting or crossing a runway, to be clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are beyond the runway edge and there are no restrictions to its continued movement beyond the applicable runway holding position marking.

c. Pilots and controllers shall exercise good judgement to ensure that adequate separation exists between all aircraft on runways and taxiways at airports with inadequate runway edge lines or holding position markings.

CLEARANCE−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT− The fix, point, or location to which an aircraft is cleared when issued an air traffic clearance.
(See ICAO term CLEARANCE LIMIT.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT [ICAO]− The point to which an aircraft is granted an air traffic control clearance.

CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (TIME)− Used by ATC to advise an aircraft that the departure clearance is automatically canceled if takeoff is not made prior to a specified time. The pilot must obtain a new clearance or cancel his/her IFR flight plan if not off by the specified time.
(See ICAO term CLEARANCE VOID TIME.)

CLEARANCE VOID TIME [ICAO]− A time specified by an air traffic control unit at which a clearance ceases to be valid unless the aircraft concerned has already taken action to comply therewith.

CLEARED APPROACH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute any standard or special instrument approach procedure for that airport. Normally, an aircraft will be cleared for a specific instrument approach procedure.
(See CLEARED (Type of) APPROACH.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED (Type of) APPROACH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute a specific instrument approach procedure to an airport; e.g., "Cleared ILS Runway Three Six Approach."
(See APPROACH CLEARANCE.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED AS FILED− Means the aircraft is cleared to proceed in accordance with the route of flight filed in the flight plan. This clearance does not include the altitude, DP, or DP Transition.
(See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF− ATC authorization for an aircraft to depart. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARED FOR THE OPTION− ATC authorization for an aircraft to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop and go, or full stop landing at the discretion of the pilot. It is normally used in training so that an instructor can evaluate a student's performance under changing situations.
(See OPTION APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED THROUGH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to make intermediate stops at specified airports without refiling a flight plan while en route to the clearance limit.

CLEARED TO LAND− ATC authorization for an aircraft to land. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARWAY− An area beyond the takeoff runway under the control of airport authorities within which terrain or fixed obstacles may not extend above specified limits. These areas may be required for certain turbine-powered operations and the size and upward slope of the clearway will differ depending on when the aircraft was certificated.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 1.)

CLIMB TO VFR− ATC authorization for an aircraft to climb to VFR conditions within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas when the only weather limitation is restricted visibility. The aircraft must remain clear of clouds while climbing to VFR.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLIMBOUT− That portion of flight operation between takeoff and the initial cruising altitude.

CLIMB VIA− An abbreviated ATC clearance that requires compliance with the procedure lateral path, associated speed restrictions, and altitude restrictions along the cleared route or procedure.

CLOSE PARALLEL RUNWAYS− Two parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3000 feet (750 feet for SOIA operations) that are authorized to conduct simultaneous independent approach operations. PRM and simultaneous close parallel appear in approach title. Dual communications, special pilot training, an Attention All Users Page (AAUP), NTZ monitoring by displays that have aural and visual alerting algorithms are required. A high update rate surveillance sensor is required for certain runway or approach course spacing.

CLOSED RUNWAY− A runway that is unusable for aircraft operations. Only the airport management/ military operations office can close a runway.

CLOSED TRAFFIC− Successive operations involving takeoffs and landings or low approaches where the aircraft does not exit the traffic pattern.

CLOUD− A cloud is a visible accumulation of minute water droplets and/or ice particles in the atmosphere above the Earth's surface. Cloud differs from ground fog, fog, or ice fog only in that the latter are, by definition, in contact with the Earth's surface.

CLT−
(See CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

CLUTTER− In radar operations, clutter refers to the reception and visual display of radar returns caused by precipitation, chaff, terrain, numerous aircraft targets, or other phenomena. Such returns may limit or preclude ATC from providing services based on radar.

(See CHAFF.)
(See GROUND CLUTTER.)
(See PRECIPITATION.)
(See TARGET.)
(See ICAO term RADAR CLUTTER.)

CMNPS−
(See CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE.)

COASTAL FIX− A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

CODES− The number assigned to a particular multiple pulse reply signal transmitted by a transponder.

(See DISCRETE CODE.)

COLD TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION− An action on the part of the pilot to adjust an aircraft's indicated altitude due to the effect of cold temperatures on true altitude above terrain versus aircraft indicated altitude. The amount of compensation required increases at a greater rate with a decrease in temperature and increase in height above the reporting station.

COLLABORATIVE TRAJECTORY OPTIONS PROGRAM (CTOP)- CTOP is a traffic management program administered by the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) that manages demand through constrained airspace, while considering operator preference with regard to both route and delay as defined in a Trajectory Options Set (TOS).

COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON− An air traffic facility which combines the functions of an ARTCC and a radar approach control facility.

(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

COMMON POINT− A significant point over which two or more aircraft will report passing or have reported passing before proceeding on the same or diverging tracks. To establish/maintain longitudinal separation, a controller may determine a common point not originally in the aircraft's flight plan and then clear the aircraft to fly over the point.

(See SIGNIFICANT POINT.)

COMMON PORTION−
(See COMMON ROUTE.)

COMMON ROUTE− That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

OR

COMMON ROUTE− Typically the portion of a RNAV STAR between the en route transition end point and the runway transition start point; however, the common route may only consist of a single point that joins the en route and runway transitions.

COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF)− A frequency designed for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating control tower. The CTAF may be a UNICOM, Multicom, FSS, or tower frequency and is identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.
(See DESIGNATED COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF) AREA.)
(Refer to AC 90-42, Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers.)

COMPASS LOCATOR− A low power, low or medium frequency (L/MF) radio beacon installed at the site of the outer or middle marker of an instrument landing system (ILS). It can be used for navigation at distances of approximately 15 miles or as authorized in the approach procedure.

a. Outer Compass Locator (LOM)− A compass locator installed at the site of the outer marker of an instrument landing system.
(See OUTER MARKER.)

b. Middle Compass Locator (LMM)− A compass locator installed at the site of the middle marker of an instrument landing system.
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)
(See ICAO term LOCATOR.)

COMPASS ROSE− A circle, graduated in degrees, printed on some charts or marked on the ground at an airport. It is used as a reference to either true or magnetic direction.

COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS− An ATC instruction that requires an aircraft being vectored back onto an arrival or departure procedure to comply with all altitude and/or speed restrictions depicted on the procedure. This term may be used in lieu of repeating each remaining restriction that appears on the procedure.

COMPOSITE FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan which specifies VFR operation for one portion of flight and IFR for another portion. It is used primarily in military operations.
(Refer to AIM.)

COMPOSITE ROUTE SYSTEM− An organized oceanic route structure, incorporating reduced lateral spacing between routes, in which composite separation is authorized.

COMPOSITE SEPARATION− A method of separating aircraft in a composite route system where, by management of route and altitude assignments, a combination of half the lateral minimum specified for the area concerned and half the vertical minimum is applied.

COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS− Reporting points which must be reported to ATC. They are designated on aeronautical charts by solid triangles or filed in a flight plan as fixes selected to define direct routes. These points are geographical locations which are defined by navigation aids/fixes. Pilots should discontinue position reporting over compulsory reporting points when informed by ATC that their aircraft is in "radar contact."

CONFIDENCE MANEUVER− A confidence maneuver consists of one or more turns, a climb or descent, or other maneuver to determine if the pilot in command (PIC) is able to receive and comply with ATC instructions.

CONFLICT ALERT− A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between tracked targets (known IFR or VFR aircraft) that require his/her immediate attention/action.
(See MODE C INTRUDER ALERT.)

CONFLICT RESOLUTION− The resolution of potential conflictions between aircraft that are radar identified and in communication with ATC by ensuring that radar targets do not touch. Pertinent traffic advisories shall be issued when this procedure is applied.

Note: This procedure shall not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

CONFORMANCE− The condition established when an aircraft's actual position is within the conformance region constructed around that aircraft at its position, according to the trajectory associated with the aircraft's Current Plan.

CONFORMANCE REGION− A volume, bounded laterally, vertically, and longitudinally, within which an aircraft must be at a given time in order to be in conformance with the Current Plan Trajectory for that aircraft. At a given time, the conformance region is determined by the simultaneous application of the lateral, vertical, and longitudinal conformance bounds for the aircraft at the position defined by time and aircraft's trajectory.

CONSOLAN− A low frequency, long-distance NAVAID used principally for transoceanic navigations.

CONTACT−

a. Establish communication with (followed by the name of the facility and, if appropriate, the frequency to be used).

b. A flight condition wherein the pilot ascertains the attitude of his/her aircraft and navigates by visual reference to the surface.

(See CONTACT APPROACH.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)

CONTACT APPROACH− An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an air traffic control authorization, operating clear of clouds with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface. This approach will only be authorized when requested by the pilot and the reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

(Refer to AIM.)

CONTAMINATED RUNWAY− A runway is considered contaminated whenever standing water, ice, snow, slush, frost in any form, heavy rubber, or other substances are present. A runway is contaminated with respect to rubber deposits or other friction-degrading substances when the average friction value for any 500-foot segment of the runway within the ALD fails below the recommended minimum friction level and the average friction value in the adjacent 500-foot segments falls below the maintenance planning friction level.

CONTERMINOUS U.S.− The 48 adjoining States and the District of Columbia.

CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES− The 49 States located on the continent of North America and the District of Columbia.

CONTINUE− When used as a control instruction should be followed by another word or words clarifying what is expected of the pilot. Example: "continue taxi," "continue descent," "continue inbound," etc.

CONTROL AREA [ICAO]− A controlled airspace extending upwards from a specified limit above the earth.

CONTROL SECTOR− An airspace area of defined horizontal and vertical dimensions for which a controller or group of controllers has air traffic control responsibility, normally within an air route traffic control center or an approach control facility. Sectors are established based on predominant traffic flows, altitude strata, and controller workload. Pilot-communications during operations within a sector are normally maintained on discrete frequencies assigned to the sector.

(See DISCRETE FREQUENCY.)

CONTROL SLASH− A radar beacon slash representing the actual position of the associated aircraft. Normally, the control slash is the one closest to the interrogating radar beacon site. When ARTCC radar is operating in narrowband (digitized) mode, the control slash is converted to a target symbol.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE− An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

a. Controlled airspace is a generic term that covers Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E airspace.

b. Controlled airspace is also that airspace within which all aircraft operators are subject to certain pilot qualifications, operating rules, and equipment requirements in 14 CFR Part 91 (for specific operating requirements, please refer to 14 CFR Part 91). For IFR operations in any class of controlled airspace, a pilot must file an IFR flight plan and receive an appropriate ATC clearance. Each Class B, Class C, and Class D airspace area designated for an airport contains at least one primary airport around which the airspace is designated (for specific designations and descriptions of the airspace classes, please refer to 14 CFR Part 71).

c. Controlled airspace in the United States is designated as follows:

1. CLASS A− Generally, that airspace from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including FL 600, including the airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska. Unless otherwise authorized, all persons must operate their aircraft under IFR.

2. CLASS B− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 10,000 feet MSL surrounding the nation's busiest airports in terms of airport operations or passenger enplanements. The configuration of each Class B airspace area is individually tailored and consists of a surface area and two or more layers (some Class B airspaces areas resemble upside-down wedding cakes), and is designed to contain all published instrument procedures once an aircraft enters the airspace. An ATC clearance is required for all aircraft to operate in the area, and all aircraft that are so cleared receive separation services within the airspace. The cloud clearance requirement for VFR operations is "clear of clouds."

3. CLASS C− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower, are serviced by a radar approach control, and that have a certain number of IFR operations or passenger enplanements. Although the configuration of each Class C area is individually tailored, the airspace usually consists of a surface area with a 5 nautical mile (NM) radius, a circle with a 10NM radius that extends no lower than 1,200 feet up to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation and an outer area that is not charted. Each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while within the airspace. VFR aircraft are only separated from IFR aircraft within the airspace.

(See OUTER AREA.)

4. CLASS D− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures. Arrival extensions for instrument approach procedures may be Class D or Class E airspace. Unless otherwise authorized, each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while in the airspace. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

5. CLASS E− Generally, if the airspace is not Class A, Class B, Class C, or Class D, and it is controlled airspace, it is Class E airspace. Class E airspace extends upward from either the surface or a designated altitude to the overlying or adjacent controlled airspace. When designated as a surface area, the airspace will be configured to contain all instrument procedures. Also in this class are Federal airways, airspace beginning at either 700 or 1,200 feet AGL used to transition to/from the terminal or en route environment, en route domestic, and offshore airspace areas designated below 18,000 feet MSL. Unless designated at a lower altitude, Class E airspace begins at 14,500 MSL over the United States, including that airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska, up to, but not including 18,000 feet MSL, and the airspace above FL 600.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

Note: Controlled airspace is a generic term which covers ATS airspace Classes A, B, C, D, and E.

CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL− Arrival time assigned during a Traffic Management Program. This time may be modified due to adjustments or user options.

CONTROLLER−

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST.)

CONTROLLER [ICAO]− A person authorized to provide air traffic control services.

CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS (CPDLC)− A two−way digital communications system that conveys textual air traffic control messages between controllers and pilots using ground or satellite-based radio relay stations.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET– A weather advisory concerning convective weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. Convective SIGMETs are issued for tornadoes, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms of any intensity level, areas of thunderstorms greater than or equal to VIP level 4 with an area coverage of $^{4}/_{10}$ (40%) or more, and hail $^{3}/_{4}$ inch or greater.

(See AIRMET.)
(See AWW.)
(See CWA.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CONVECTIVE SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION–
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

COORDINATES– The intersection of lines of reference, usually expressed in degrees/minutes/seconds of latitude and longitude, used to determine position or location.

COORDINATION FIX– The fix in relation to which facilities will handoff, transfer control of an aircraft, or coordinate flight progress data. For terminal facilities, it may also serve as a clearance for arriving aircraft.

COPTER–
(See HELICOPTER.)

CORRECTION– An error has been made in the transmission and the correct version follows.

COUPLED APPROACH– An instrument approach performed by the aircraft autopilot, and/or visually depicted on the flight director, which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigational equipment. In general, coupled non-precision approaches must be flown manually (autopilot disengaged) at altitudes lower than 50 feet AGL below the minimum descent altitude, and coupled precision approaches must be flown manually (autopilot disengaged) below 50 feet AGL unless authorized to conduct autoland operations. Coupled instrument approaches are commonly flown to the allowable IFR weather minima established by the operator or PIC, or flown VFR for training and safety.

COURSE–

a. The intended direction of flight in the horizontal plane measured in degrees from north.

b. The ILS localizer signal pattern usually specified as the front course or the back course.

(See BEARING.)
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See RADIAL.)

CPDLC–
(See CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS.)

CPL [ICAO]–
(See ICAO term CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN.)

CRITICAL ENGINE– The engine which, upon failure, would most adversely affect the performance or handling qualities of an aircraft.

CROSS (FIX) AT (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a specific altitude restriction at a specified fix is required.

CROSS (FIX) AT OR ABOVE (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when an altitude restriction at a specified fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a higher altitude than specified; however, the higher altitude may not be one that will violate a succeeding altitude restriction or altitude assignment.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CROSS (FIX) AT OR BELOW (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a maximum crossing altitude at a specific fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a lower altitude; however, it must be at or above the minimum IFR altitude.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

CROSSWIND–

a. When used concerning the traffic pattern, the word means "crosswind leg."

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

b. When used concerning wind conditions, the word means a wind not parallel to the runway or the path of an aircraft.

(See CROSSWIND COMPONENT.)

CROSSWIND COMPONENT– The wind component measured in knots at 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway.

CRUISE− Used in an ATC clearance to authorize a pilot to conduct flight at any altitude from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the altitude specified in the clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediate altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot. However, once the pilot starts descent and verbally reports leaving an altitude in the block, he/she may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance. Further, it is approval for the pilot to proceed to and make an approach at destination airport and can be used in conjunction with:

a. An airport clearance limit at locations with a standard/special instrument approach procedure. The CFRs require that if an instrument letdown to an airport is necessary, the pilot shall make the letdown in accordance with a standard/special instrument approach procedure for that airport, or

b. An airport clearance limit at locations that are within/below/outside controlled airspace and without a standard/special instrument approach procedure. Such a clearance is NOT AUTHORIZATION for the pilot to descend under IFR conditions below the applicable minimum IFR altitude nor does it imply that ATC is exercising control over aircraft in Class G airspace; however, it provides a means for the aircraft to proceed to destination airport, descend, and land in accordance with applicable CFRs governing VFR flight operations. Also, this provides search and rescue protection until such time as the IFR flight plan is closed.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

CRUISE CLIMB− A climb technique employed by aircraft, usually at a constant power setting, resulting in an increase of altitude as the aircraft weight decreases.

CRUISING ALTITUDE− An altitude or flight level maintained during en route level flight. This is a constant altitude and should not be confused with a cruise clearance.

(See ALTITUDE.)
(See ICAO term CRUISING LEVEL.)

CRUISING LEVEL−

(See CRUISING ALTITUDE.)

CRUISING LEVEL [ICAO]− A level maintained during a significant portion of a flight.

CT MESSAGE− An EDCT time generated by the ATCSCC to regulate traffic at arrival airports. Normally, a CT message is automatically transferred from the traffic management system computer to the NAS en route computer and appears as an EDCT. In the event of a communication failure between the traffic management system computer and the NAS, the CT message can be manually entered by the TMC at the en route facility.

CTA−

(See CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)
(See ICAO term CONTROL AREA.)

CTAF−

(See COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY.)

CTAS−

(See CENTER TRACON AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

CTOP−

(See COLLABORATIVE TRAJECTORY OPTIONS PROGRAM)

CTRD−

(See CERTIFIED TOWER RADAR DISPLAY.)

CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN [ICAO]− The flight plan, including changes, if any, brought about by subsequent clearances.

CURRENT PLAN− The ATC clearance the aircraft has received and is expected to fly.

CVFP APPROACH−

(See CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH.)

CWA−

(See CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY and WEATHER ADVISORY.)

D

D-ATIS−

(See DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

DA [ICAO]−

(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DAIR−

(See DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT.)

DANGER AREA [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions within which activities dangerous to the flight of aircraft may exist at specified times.

Note: The term "Danger Area" is not used in reference to areas within the United States or any of its possessions or territories.

DAS−

(See DELAY ASSIGNMENT.)

DATA BLOCK−

(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

DEAD RECKONING− Dead reckoning, as applied to flying, is the navigation of an airplane solely by means of computations based on airspeed, course, heading, wind direction, and speed, groundspeed, and elapsed time.

DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT [ICAO Annex 6]- A specified altitude or height (A/H) in the precision approach at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established.

1. Decision altitude (DA) is referenced to mean sea level and decision height (DH) is referenced to the threshold elevation.

2. Category II and III minima are expressed as a DH and not a DA. Minima is assessed by reference to a radio altimeter and not a barometric altimeter, which makes the minima a DH.

3. The required visual reference means that section of the visual aids or of the approach area which should have been in view for sufficient time for the pilot to have made an assessment of the aircraft position and rate of change of position, in relation to the desired flight path.

Decision altitude (DA) - A specified altitude (mean sea level (MSL)) on an instrument approach procedure (ILS, GLS, vertically guided RNAV) at which the pilot must decide whether to continue the approach or initiate an immediate missed approach if the pilot does not see the required visual references.

DECISION HEIGHT− With respect to the operation of aircraft, means the height at which a decision must be made during an ILS or PAR instrument approach to either continue the approach or to execute a missed approach.

(See ICAO term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DECODER− The device used to decipher signals received from ATCRBS transponders to effect their display as select codes.

(See CODES.)
(See RADAR.)

DEFENSE AREA- Any airspace of the contiguous United States that is not an ADIZ in which the control of aircraft is required for reasons of national security.

DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES− Rules applicable to flights within an ADIZ conducted under the visual flight rules in 14 CFR Part 91.

(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 99.)

DELAY ASSIGNMENT (DAS)− Delays are distributed to aircraft based on the traffic management program parameters. The delay assignment is calculated in 15−minute increments and appears as a table in Traffic Flow Management System (TFMS).

DELAY INDEFINITE (REASON IF KNOWN) EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)− Used by ATC to inform a pilot when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately be determined; e.g., a disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center area saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc.

(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

DELAY TIME− The amount of time that the arrival must lose to cross the meter fix at the assigned meter fix time. This is the difference between ACLT and VTA.

DEPARTURE CENTER− The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the airspace that generates a flight to the impacted airport.

DEPARTURE CONTROL− A function of an approach control facility providing air traffic control service for departing IFR and, under certain conditions, VFR aircraft.
(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM− A program designed to assist in achieving a specified interval over a common point for departures.

DEPARTURE TIME− The time an aircraft becomes airborne.

DESCEND VIA– An abbreviated ATC clearance that requires compliance with a published procedure lateral path and associated speed restrictions and provides a pilot-discretion descent to comply with published altitude restrictions.

DESCENT SPEED ADJUSTMENTS− Speed deceleration calculations made to determine an accurate VTA. These calculations start at the transition point and use arrival speed segments to the vertex.

DESIGNATED COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF) AREA- In Alaska, in addition to being designated for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating airport traffic control tower, a CTAF may also be designated for the purpose of carrying out advisory practices for operations in and through areas with a high volume of VFR traffic.

DESIRED COURSE−

a. True− A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from true north).

b. Magnetic− A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from local magnetic north).

DESIRED TRACK− The planned or intended track between two waypoints. It is measured in degrees from either magnetic or true north. The instantaneous angle may change from point to point along the great circle track between waypoints.

DETRESFA (DISTRESS PHASE) [ICAO]− The code word used to designate an emergency phase wherein there is reasonable certainty that an aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger or require immediate assistance.

DEVIATIONS−

a. A departure from a current clearance, such as an off course maneuver to avoid weather or turbulence.

b. Where specifically authorized in the CFRs and requested by the pilot, ATC may permit pilots to deviate from certain regulations.

DH−
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)

DH [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/ DECISION HEIGHT.)

DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (D-ATIS)− The service provides text messages to aircraft, airlines, and other users outside the standard reception range of conventional ATIS via landline and data link communications to the cockpit. Also, the service provides a computer−synthesized voice message that can be transmitted to all aircraft within range of existing transmitters. The Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) D-ATIS application uses weather inputs from local automated weather sources or manually entered meteorological data together with preprogrammed menus to provide standard information to users. Airports with D-ATIS capability are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S.

DIGITAL TARGET− A computer−generated symbol representing an aircraft's position, based on a primary return or radar beacon reply, shown on a digital display.

DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM (DTAS)− A system where digital radar and beacon data is presented on digital displays and the operational program monitors the system performance on a real−time basis.

DIGITIZED TARGET− A computer−generated indication shown on an analog radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

DIRECT− Straight line flight between two navigational aids, fixes, points, or any combination thereof. When used by pilots in describing off-airway routes, points defining direct route segments become compulsory reporting points unless the aircraft is under radar contact.

DIRECTLY BEHIND− An aircraft is considered to be operating directly behind when it is following the actual flight path of the lead aircraft over the surface of the earth except when applying wake turbulence separation criteria.

DISCRETE BEACON CODE−
(See DISCRETE CODE.)

DISCRETE CODE− As used in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS), any one of the 4096 selectable Mode 3/A aircraft transponder codes except those ending in zero zero; e.g., discrete codes: 0010, 1201, 2317, 7777; nondiscrete codes: 0100, 1200, 7700. Nondiscrete codes are normally reserved for radar facilities that are not equipped with discrete decoding capability and for other purposes such as emergencies (7700), VFR aircraft (1200), etc.
(See RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISCRETE FREQUENCY− A separate radio frequency for use in direct pilot-controller communications in air traffic control which reduces frequency congestion by controlling the number of aircraft operating on a particular frequency at one time. Discrete frequencies are normally designated for each control sector in en route/terminal ATC facilities. Discrete frequencies are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S. and the DOD FLIP IFR En Route Supplement.
(See CONTROL SECTOR.)

DISPLACED THRESHOLD− A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway.
(See THRESHOLD.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT (DME)− Equipment (airborne and ground) used to measure, in nautical miles, the slant range distance of an aircraft from the DME navigational aid.
(See TACAN.)
(See VORTAC.)

DISTRESS− A condition of being threatened by serious and/or imminent danger and of requiring immediate assistance.

DIVE BRAKES−
(See SPEED BRAKES.)

DIVERSE VECTOR AREA− In a radar environment, that area in which a prescribed departure route is not required as the only suitable route to avoid obstacles. The area in which random radar vectors below the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles and terrain avoidance, may be issued to departing aircraft.

DIVERSION (DVRSN)− Flights that are required to land at other than their original destination for reasons beyond the control of the pilot/company, e.g. periods of significant weather.

DME−
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DME FIX− A geographical position determined by reference to a navigational aid which provides distance and azimuth information. It is defined by a specific distance in nautical miles and a radial, azimuth, or course (i.e., localizer) in degrees magnetic from that aid.
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)
(See FIX.)

DME SEPARATION− Spacing of aircraft in terms of distances (nautical miles) determined by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DOD FLIP− Department of Defense Flight Information Publications used for flight planning, en route, and terminal operations. FLIP is produced by the National Geospatial−Intelligence Agency (NGA) for world-wide use. United States Government Flight Information Publications (en route charts and instrument approach procedure charts) are incorporated in DOD FLIP for use in the National Airspace System (NAS).

DOMESTIC AIRSPACE− Airspace which overlies the continental land mass of the United States plus Hawaii and U.S. possessions. Domestic airspace extends to 12 miles offshore.

DOWNBURST− A strong downdraft which induces an outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground. Damaging winds, either straight or curved, are highly divergent. The sizes of downbursts vary from 1/2 mile or less to more than 10 miles. An intense downburst often causes widespread damage. Damaging winds, lasting 5 to 30 minutes, could reach speeds as high as 120 knots.

DOWNWIND LEG−
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

DP−
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

DRAG CHUTE− A parachute device installed on certain aircraft which is deployed on landing roll to assist in deceleration of the aircraft.

DROP ZONE− Any pre-determined area upon which parachutists or objects land after making an intentional parachute jump or drop.

(Refer to 14 CFR §105.3, Definitions)

DSP−

(See DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

DT−

(See DELAY TIME.)

DTAS−

(See DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

DUE REGARD− A phase of flight wherein an aircraft commander of a State-operated aircraft assumes responsibility to separate his/her aircraft from all other aircraft.

(See also FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1−2−1, WORD MEANINGS.)

DUTY RUNWAY−

(See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

DVA−

(See DIVERSE VECTOR AREA.)

DVFR−

(See DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

DVFR FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan filed for a VFR aircraft which intends to operate in airspace within which the ready identification, location, and control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

DVRSN−

(See DIVERSION.)

DYNAMIC− Continuous review, evaluation, and change to meet demands.

DYNAMIC RESTRICTIONS− Those restrictions imposed by the local facility on an "as needed" basis to manage unpredictable fluctuations in traffic demands.

E

EAS−
(See EN ROUTE AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

EDCT−
(See EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME.)

EDST−
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL)

EFC−
(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

ELT−
(See EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER.)

EMERGENCY− A distress or an urgency condition.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER− A radio transmitter attached to the aircraft structure which operates from its own power source on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. It aids in locating downed aircraft by radiating a downward sweeping audio tone, 2-4 times per second. It is designed to function without human action after an accident.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

E-MSAW−
(See EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES− Air traffic control service provided aircraft on IFR flight plans, generally by centers, when these aircraft are operating between departure and destination terminal areas. When equipment, capabilities, and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE AUTOMATION SYSTEM (EAS)− The complex integrated environment consisting of situation display systems, surveillance systems and flight data processing, remote devices, decision support tools, and the related communications equipment that form the heart of the automated IFR air traffic control system. It interfaces with automated terminal systems and is used in the control of en route IFR aircraft.
(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL− An automated tool provided at each Radar Associate position in selected En Route facilities. This tool utilizes flight and radar data to determine present and future trajectories for all active and proposal aircraft and provides enhanced automated flight data management.

EN ROUTE DESCENT− Descent from the en route cruising altitude which takes place along the route of flight.

EN ROUTE HIGH ALTITUDE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE LOW ALTITUDE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING− A function of the EAS that aids the controller by providing an alert when a tracked aircraft is below or predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum IFR altitude (MIA).

EN ROUTE SPACING PROGRAM (ESP)− A program designed to assist the exit sector in achieving the required in-trail spacing.

EN ROUTE TRANSITION−

a. Conventional STARs/SIDs. The portion of a SID/STAR that connects to one or more en route airway/jet route.

b. RNAV STARs/SIDs. The portion of a STAR preceding the common route or point, or for a SID the portion following, that is coded for a specific en route fix, airway or jet route.

ESP−
(See EN ROUTE SPACING PROGRAM.)

ESTABLISHED−To be stable or fixed on a route, route segment, altitude, heading, etc.

ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]− The estimated time required to proceed from one significant point to another.

(See ICAO Term TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

ESTIMATED OFF-BLOCK TIME [ICAO]− The estimated time at which the aircraft will commence movement associated with departure.

ESTIMATED POSITION ERROR (EPE)−

(See Required Navigation Performance)

ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL− The time the flight is estimated to arrive at the gate (scheduled operators) or the actual runway on times for nonscheduled operators.

ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE− The estimated flying time from departure point to destination (lift-off to touchdown).

ETA−

(See ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

ETE−

(See ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE.)

EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH− Instructions issued to a pilot making an instrument approach which means continue inbound to the missed approach point and execute the missed approach procedure as described on the Instrument Approach Procedure Chart or as previously assigned by ATC. The pilot may climb immediately to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure upon making a missed approach. No turns should be initiated prior to reaching the missed approach point. When conducting an ASR or PAR approach, execute the assigned missed approach procedure immediately upon receiving instructions to "execute missed approach."

(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECT (ALTITUDE) AT (TIME) or (FIX)− Used under certain conditions to provide a pilot with an altitude to be used in the event of two-way communications failure. It also provides altitude information to assist the pilot in planning.

(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME (EDCT)− The runway release time assigned to an aircraft in a traffic management program and shown on the flight progress strip as an EDCT.

(See GROUND DELAY PROGRAM.)

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)− The time a pilot can expect to receive clearance beyond a clearance limit.

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (AIRWAYS, ROUTES OR FIXES)− Used to inform a pilot of the routing he/she can expect if any part of the route beyond a short range clearance limit differs from that filed.

EXPEDITE− Used by ATC when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation. Expedite climb/descent normally indicates to a pilot that the approximate best rate of climb/descent should be used without requiring an exceptional change in aircraft handling characteristics.

F

FAF−
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

FAST FILE− An FSS system whereby a pilot files a flight plan via telephone that is recorded and later transcribed for transmission to the appropriate air traffic facility. (Alaska only.)

FAWP− Final Approach Waypoint

FCLT−
(See FREEZE CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

FEATHERED PROPELLER− A propeller whose blades have been rotated so that the leading and trailing edges are nearly parallel with the aircraft flight path to stop or minimize drag and engine rotation. Normally used to indicate shutdown of a reciprocating or turboprop engine due to malfunction.

FEDERAL AIRWAYS−
(See LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE.)

FEEDER FIX− The fix depicted on Instrument Approach Procedure Charts which establishes the starting point of the feeder route.

FEEDER ROUTE− A route depicted on instrument approach procedure charts to designate routes for aircraft to proceed from the en route structure to the initial approach fix (IAF).
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FERRY FLIGHT− A flight for the purpose of:

a. Returning an aircraft to base.

b. Delivering an aircraft from one location to another.

c. Moving an aircraft to and from a maintenance base.− Ferry flights, under certain conditions, may be conducted under terms of a special flight permit.

FIELD ELEVATION−
(See AIRPORT ELEVATION.)

FILED− Normally used in conjunction with flight plans, meaning a flight plan has been submitted to ATC.

FILED EN ROUTE DELAY− Any of the following preplanned delays at points/areas along the route of flight which require special flight plan filing and handling techniques.

a. Terminal Area Delay. A delay within a terminal area for touch-and-go, low approach, or other terminal area activity.

b. Special Use Airspace Delay. A delay within a Military Operations Area, Restricted Area, Warning Area, or ATC Assigned Airspace.

c. Aerial Refueling Delay. A delay within an Aerial Refueling Track or Anchor.

FILED FLIGHT PLAN− The flight plan as filed with an ATS unit by the pilot or his/her designated representative without any subsequent changes or clearances.

FINAL− Commonly used to mean that an aircraft is on the final approach course or is aligned with a landing area.
(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH [ICAO]− That part of an instrument approach procedure which commences at the specified final approach fix or point, or where such a fix or point is not specified.

a. At the end of the last procedure turn, base turn or inbound turn of a racetrack procedure, if specified; or

b. At the point of interception of the last track specified in the approach procedure; and ends at a point in the vicinity of an aerodrome from which:

1. A landing can be made; or

2. A missed approach procedure is initiated.

FINAL APPROACH COURSE− A bearing/radial/track of an instrument approach leading to a runway or an extended runway centerline all without regard to distance.

FINAL APPROACH FIX− The fix from which the final approach (IFR) to an airport is executed and which identifies the beginning of the final approach segment. It is designated on Government charts by the Maltese Cross symbol for nonprecision approaches and the lightning bolt symbol, designating the PFAF, for precision approaches; or when ATC directs a lower-than-published glideslope/path or vertical path intercept altitude, it is the resultant actual point of the glideslope/path or vertical path intercept.

(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)
(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH-IFR− The flight path of an aircraft which is inbound to an airport on a final instrument approach course, beginning at the final approach fix or point and extending to the airport or the point where a circle-to-land maneuver or a missed approach is executed.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH.)

FINAL APPROACH POINT− The point, applicable only to a nonprecision approach with no depicted FAF (such as an on airport VOR), where the aircraft is established inbound on the final approach course from the procedure turn and where the final approach descent may be commenced. The FAP serves as the FAF and identifies the beginning of the final approach segment.

(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT−

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure in which alignment and descent for landing are accomplished.

FINAL CONTROLLER− The controller providing information and final approach guidance during PAR and ASR approaches utilizing radar equipment.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL GUARD SERVICE− A value added service provided in conjunction with LAA/RAA only during periods of significant and fast changing weather conditions that may affect landing and takeoff operations.

FINAL MONITOR AID− A high resolution color display that is equipped with the controller alert system hardware/software used to monitor the no transgression zone (NTZ) during simultaneous parallel approach operations. The display includes alert algorithms providing the target predictors, a color change alert when a target penetrates or is predicted to penetrate the no transgression zone (NTZ), synthesized voice alerts, and digital mapping.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL MONITOR CONTROLLER− Air Traffic Control Specialist assigned to radar monitor the flight path of aircraft during simultaneous parallel (approach courses spaced less than 9000 feet/9200 feet above 5000 feet) and simultaneous close parallel approach operations. Each runway is assigned a final monitor controller during simultaneous parallel and simultaneous close parallel ILS approaches.

FIR−

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

FIRST TIER CENTER− The ARTCC immediately adjacent to the impacted center.

FIS−B−

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)

FIX− A geographical position determined by visual reference to the surface, by reference to one or more radio NAVAIDs, by celestial plotting, or by another navigational device.

FIX BALANCING− A process whereby aircraft are evenly distributed over several available arrival fixes reducing delays and controller workload.

FLAG− A warning device incorporated in certain airborne navigation and flight instruments indicating that:

a. Instruments are inoperative or otherwise not operating satisfactorily, or

b. Signal strength or quality of the received signal falls below acceptable values.

FLAG ALARM−

(See FLAG.)

FLAMEOUT− An emergency condition caused by a loss of engine power.

FLAMEOUT PATTERN− An approach normally conducted by a single-engine military aircraft experiencing loss or anticipating loss of engine power or control. The standard overhead approach starts at a relatively high altitude over a runway ("high key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn to a high, wide position ("low key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn final. The standard straight-in pattern starts at a point that results in a straight-in approach with a high rate of descent to the runway. Flameout approaches terminate in the type approach requested by the pilot (normally fullstop).

FLIGHT CHECK− A call-sign prefix used by FAA aircraft engaged in flight inspection/certification of navigational aids and flight procedures. The word "recorded" may be added as a suffix; e.g., "Flight Check 320 recorded" to indicate that an automated flight inspection is in progress in terminal areas.

(See FLIGHT INSPECTION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT FOLLOWING−

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION− An airspace of defined dimensions within which Flight Information Service and Alerting Service are provided.

a. Flight Information Service. A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

b. Alerting Service. A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and to assist such organizations as required.

FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE− A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE− BROADCAST (FIS−B)− A ground broadcast service provided through the ADS−B Broadcast Services network over the UAT data link that operates on 978 MHz. The FIS−B system provides pilots and flight crews of properly equipped aircraft with a cockpit display of certain aviation weather and aeronautical information.

FLIGHT INSPECTION− Inflight investigation and evaluation of a navigational aid to determine whether it meets established tolerances.

(See FLIGHT CHECK.)

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

FLIGHT LEVEL− A level of constant atmospheric pressure related to a reference datum of 29.92 inches of mercury. Each is stated in three digits that represent hundreds of feet. For example, flight level (FL) 250 represents a barometric altimeter indication of 25,000 feet; FL 255, an indication of 25,500 feet.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT LEVEL.)

FLIGHT LEVEL [ICAO]− A surface of constant atmospheric pressure which is related to a specific pressure datum, 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), and is separated from other such surfaces by specific pressure intervals.

Note 1: A pressure type altimeter calibrated in accordance with the standard atmosphere:

a. When set to a QNH altimeter setting, will indicate altitude;

b. When set to a QFE altimeter setting, will indicate height above the QFE reference datum; and

c. When set to a pressure of 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), may be used to indicate flight levels.

Note 2: The terms 'height' and 'altitude,' used in Note 1 above, indicate altimetric rather than geometric heights and altitudes.

FLIGHT LINE− A term used to describe the precise movement of a civil photogrammetric aircraft along a predetermined course(s) at a predetermined altitude during the actual photographic run.

FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS− A computer system that uses a large data base to allow routes to be preprogrammed and fed into the system by means of a data loader. The system is constantly updated with respect to position accuracy by reference to conventional navigation aids. The sophisticated program and its associated data base ensures that the most appropriate aids are automatically selected during the information update cycle.

FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURE− An arrival, departure, or approach procedure developed for use by aircraft with a slant (/) E or slant (/) F equipment suffix.

FLIGHT PATH− A line, course, or track along which an aircraft is flying or intended to be flown.

(See COURSE.)
(See TRACK.)

FLIGHT PLAN− Specified information relating to the intended flight of an aircraft that is filed orally or in writing with an FSS or an ATC facility.

(See FAST FILE.)
(See FILED.)
(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT PLAN AREA (FPA)− The geographical area assigned to a flight service station (FSS) for the purpose of establishing primary responsibility for services that may include search and rescue for VFR aircraft, issuance of NOTAMs, pilot briefings, inflight services, broadcast services, emergency services, flight data processing, international operations, and aviation weather services. Large consolidated FSS facilities may combine FPAs into larger areas of responsibility (AOR).

(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See TIE-IN FACILITY.)

FLIGHT RECORDER− A general term applied to any instrument or device that records information about the performance of an aircraft in flight or about conditions encountered in flight. Flight recorders may make records of airspeed, outside air temperature, vertical acceleration, engine RPM, manifold pressure, and other pertinent variables for a given flight.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT RECORDER.)

FLIGHT RECORDER [ICAO]− Any type of recorder installed in the aircraft for the purpose of complementing accident/incident investigation.

Note: See Annex 6 Part I, for specifications relating to flight recorders.

FLIGHT SERVICE STATION (FSS)− An air traffic facility which provides pilot briefings, flight plan processing, en route flight advisories, search and rescue services, and assistance to lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations. FSS also relay ATC clearances, process Notices to Airmen, broadcast aviation weather and aeronautical information, and advise Customs and Immigration of transborder flights. In Alaska, FSS provide Airport Advisory Services.

(See FLIGHT PLAN AREA.)
(See TIE-IN FACILITY.)

FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE− An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area and staffed with Flight Standards personnel who serve the aviation industry and the general public on matters relating to the certification and operation of air carrier and general aviation aircraft. Activities include general surveillance of operational safety, certification of airmen and aircraft, accident prevention, investigation, enforcement, etc.

FLIGHT TEST− A flight for the purpose of:

a. Investigating the operation/flight characteristics of an aircraft or aircraft component.

b. Evaluating an applicant for a pilot certificate or rating.

FLIGHT VISIBILITY−

(See VISIBILITY.)

FLIP−

(See DOD FLIP.)

FLY HEADING (DEGREES)− Informs the pilot of the heading he/she should fly. The pilot may have to turn to, or continue on, a specific compass direction in order to comply with the instructions. The pilot is expected to turn in the shorter direction to the heading unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

FLY-BY WAYPOINT− A fly-by waypoint requires the use of turn anticipation to avoid overshoot of the next flight segment.

FLY-OVER WAYPOINT− A fly-over waypoint precludes any turn until the waypoint is overflown and is followed by an intercept maneuver of the next flight segment.

FLY VISUAL TO AIRPORT−

(See PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT.)

FMA−

(See FINAL MONITOR AID.)

FMS−

(See FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.)

FMSP−

(See FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURE.)

FORMATION FLIGHT− More than one aircraft which, by prior arrangement between the pilots, operate as a single aircraft with regard to navigation and position reporting. Separation between aircraft within the formation is the responsibility of the flight leader and the pilots of the other aircraft in the flight. This includes transition periods when aircraft within the formation are maneuvering to attain separation from each other to effect individual control and during join-up and breakaway.

a. A standard formation is one in which a proximity of no more than 1 mile laterally or longitudinally and within 100 feet vertically from the flight leader is maintained by each wingman.

b. Nonstandard formations are those operating under any of the following conditions:

1. When the flight leader has requested and ATC has approved other than standard formation dimensions.

2. When operating within an authorized altitude reservation (ALTRV) or under the provisions of a letter of agreement.

3. When the operations are conducted in airspace specifically designed for a special activity.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

FRC−
(See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)

FREEZE/FROZEN− Terms used in referring to arrivals which have been assigned ACLTs and to the lists in which they are displayed.

FREEZE CALCULATED LANDING TIME− A dynamic parameter number of minutes prior to the meter fix calculated time of arrival for each aircraft when the TCLT is frozen and becomes an ACLT (i.e., the VTA is updated and consequently the TCLT is modified as appropriate until FCLT minutes prior to meter fix calculated time of arrival, at which time updating is suspended and an ACLT and a frozen meter fix crossing time (MFT) is assigned).

FREEZE HORIZON− The time or point at which an aircraft's STA becomes fixed and no longer fluctuates with each radar update. This setting ensures a constant time for each aircraft, necessary for the metering controller to plan his/her delay technique. This setting can be either in distance from the meter fix or a prescribed flying time to the meter fix.

FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER− A speed adapted for each aircraft to determine fast and slow aircraft. Fast aircraft freeze on parameter FCLT and slow aircraft freeze on parameter MLDI.

FRICTION MEASUREMENT− A measurement of the friction characteristics of the runway pavement surface using continuous self-watering friction measurement equipment in accordance with the specifications, procedures and schedules contained in AC 150/5320−12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

FSDO−
(See FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE.)

FSPD−
(See FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER.)

FSS−
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

FUEL DUMPING− Airborne release of usable fuel. This does not include the dropping of fuel tanks.
(See JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES.)

FUEL REMAINING− A phrase used by either pilots or controllers when relating to the fuel remaining on board until actual fuel exhaustion. When transmitting such information in response to either a controller question or pilot initiated cautionary advisory to air traffic control, pilots will state the APPROXIMATE NUMBER OF MINUTES the flight can continue with the fuel remaining. All reserve fuel SHOULD BE INCLUDED in the time stated, as should an allowance for established fuel gauge system error.

FUEL SIPHONING− Unintentional release of fuel caused by overflow, puncture, loose cap, etc.

FUEL VENTING−
(See FUEL SIPHONING.)

FUSED TARGET-
(See DIGITAL TARGET)

FUSION [STARS/CARTS]- the combination of all available surveillance sources (airport surveillance radar [ASR], air route surveillance radar [ARSR], ADS-B, etc.) into the display of a single tracked target for air traffic control separation services. FUSION is the equivalent of the current single-sensor radar display. FUSION performance is characteristic of a single-sensor radar display system. Terminal areas use mono-pulse secondary surveillance radar (ASR 9, Mode S or ASR 11, MSSR).

G

GATE HOLD PROCEDURES− Procedures at selected airports to hold aircraft at the gate or other ground location whenever departure delays exceed or are anticipated to exceed 15 minutes. The sequence for departure will be maintained in accordance with initial call−up unless modified by flow control restrictions. Pilots should monitor the ground control/clearance delivery frequency for engine start/taxi advisories or new proposed start/taxi time if the delay changes.

GBT−
(See GROUND−BASED TRANSCEIVER.)

GCA−
(See GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH.)

GDP−
(See GROUND DELAY PROGRAM.)

GENERAL AVIATION− That portion of civil aviation that does not include scheduled or unscheduled air carriers or commercial space operations.
(See ICAO term GENERAL AVIATION.)

GENERAL AVIATION [ICAO]− All civil aviation operations other than scheduled air services and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire.

GEO MAP− The digitized map markings associated with the ASR-9 Radar System.

GLIDEPATH−
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

GLIDEPATH [ICAO]− A descent profile determined for vertical guidance during a final approach.

GLIDEPATH INTERCEPT ALTITUDE−
(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)

GLIDESLOPE− Provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing. The glideslope/glidepath is based on the following:

a. Electronic components emitting signals which provide vertical guidance by reference to airborne instruments during instrument approaches such as ILS or

b. Visual ground aids, such as VASI, which provide vertical guidance for a VFR approach or for the visual portion of an instrument approach and landing.

c. PAR. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft making a PAR approach of its vertical position (elevation) relative to the descent profile.
(See ICAO term GLIDEPATH.)

GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE− The published minimum altitude to intercept the glideslope in the intermediate segment of an instrument approach. Government charts use the lightning bolt symbol to identify this intercept point. This intersection is called the Precise Final Approach fix (PFAF). ATC directs a higher altitude, the resultant intercept becomes the PFAF.
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM (GNSS) [ICAO]− GNSS refers collectively to the worldwide positioning, navigation, and timing determination capability available from one or more satellite constellation in conjunction with a network of ground stations.

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE (GNSS MEA)− The minimum en route IFR altitude on a published ATS route or route segment which assures acceptable Global Navigation Satellite System reception and meets obstacle clearance requirements.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)− GPS refers to the worldwide positioning, navigation and timing determination capability available from the U.S. satellite constellation. The service provided by GPS for civil use is defined in the GPS Standard Positioning System Performance Standard. GPS is composed of space, control, and user elements.

GNSS [ICAO]−
(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM.)

GNSS MEA−
(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

GO AHEAD− Proceed with your message. Not to be used for any other purpose.

GO AROUND− Instructions for a pilot to abandon his/her approach to landing. Additional instructions may follow. Unless otherwise advised by ATC, a VFR aircraft or an aircraft conducting visual approach should overfly the runway while climbing to traffic pattern altitude and enter the traffic pattern via the crosswind leg. A pilot on an IFR flight plan making an instrument approach should execute the published missed approach procedure or proceed as instructed by ATC; e.g., "Go around" (additional instructions if required).
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See MISSED APPROACH.)

GPD−
(See GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY.)

GPS−
(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)

GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY (GPD)− A view available with EDST that provides a graphic display of aircraft, traffic, and notification of predicted conflicts. Graphic routes for Current Plans and Trial Plans are displayed upon controller request.
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

GROSS NAVIGATION ERROR (GNE) − A lateral deviation from a cleared track, normally in excess of 25 Nautical Miles (NM). More stringent standards (for example, 10NM in some parts of the North Atlantic region) may be used in certain regions to support reductions in lateral separation.

GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS)– A ground based GNSS station which provides local differential corrections, integrity parameters and approach data via VHF data broadcast to GNSS users to meet real-time performance requirements for CAT I precision approaches. The aircraft applies the broadcast data to improve the accuracy and integrity of its GNSS signals and computes the deviations to the selected approach. A single ground station can serve multiple runway ends up to an approximate radius of 23 NM.

GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS) LANDING SYSTEM (GLS)- A type of precision IAP based on local augmentation of GNSS data using a single GBAS station to transmit locally corrected GNSS data, integrity parameters and approach information. This improves the accuracy of aircraft GNSS receivers' signal in space, enabling the pilot to fly a precision approach with much greater flexibility, reliability and complexity. The GLS procedure is published on standard IAP charts, features the title GLS with the designated runway and minima as low as 200 feet DA. Future plans are expected to support Cat II and CAT III operations.

GROUND−BASED TRANSCEIVER (GBT)− The ground−based transmitter/receiver (transceiver) receives automatic dependent surveillance−broadcast messages, which are forwarded to an air traffic control facility for processing and display with other radar targets on the plan position indicator (radar display).
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE-BROADCAST.)

GROUND CLUTTER− A pattern produced on the radar scope by ground returns which may degrade other radar returns in the affected area. The effect of ground clutter is minimized by the use of moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment resulting in a radar presentation which displays only targets which are in motion.
(See CLUTTER.)

GROUND COMMUNICATION OUTLET (GCO)− An unstaffed, remotely controlled, ground/ground communications facility. Pilots at uncontrolled airports may contact ATC and FSS via VHF to a telephone connection to obtain an instrument clearance or close a VFR or IFR flight plan. They may also get an updated weather briefing prior to takeoff. Pilots will use four "key clicks" on the VHF radio to contact the appropriate ATC facility or six "key clicks" to contact the FSS. The GCO system is intended to be used only on the ground.

GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH− A radar approach system operated from the ground by air traffic control personnel transmitting instructions to the pilot by radio. The approach may be conducted with surveillance radar (ASR) only or with both surveillance and precision approach radar (PAR). Usage of the term "GCA" by pilots is discouraged except when referring to a GCA facility. Pilots should specifically request a "PAR" approach when a precision radar approach is desired or request an "ASR" or "surveillance" approach when a nonprecision radar approach is desired.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

GROUND DELAY PROGRAM (GDP)− A traffic management process administered by the ATCSCC; when aircraft are held on the ground. The purpose of the program is to support the TM mission and limit airborne holding. It is a flexible program and may be implemented in various forms depending upon the needs of the AT system. Ground delay programs provide for equitable assignment of delays to all system users.

GROUND SPEED− The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface of the earth.

GROUND STOP (GS)− The GS is a process that requires aircraft that meet a specific criteria to remain on the ground. The criteria may be airport specific, airspace specific, or equipment specific; for example, all departures to San Francisco, or all departures entering Yorktown sector, or all Category I and II aircraft going to Charlotte. GSs normally occur with little or no warning.

GROUND VISIBILITY−

(See VISIBILITY.)

GS−

(See GROUND STOP.)

H

HAA−
(See HEIGHT ABOVE AIRPORT.)

HAL−
(See HEIGHT ABOVE LANDING.)

HANDOFF− An action taken to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another if the aircraft will enter the receiving controller's airspace and radio communications with the aircraft will be transferred.

HAR−
(See HIGH ALTITUDE REDESIGN.)

HAT−
(See HEIGHT ABOVE TOUCHDOWN.)

HAVE NUMBERS− Used by pilots to inform ATC that they have received runway, wind, and altimeter information only.

HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE− Continuous recorded hazardous inflight weather forecasts broadcasted to airborne pilots over selected VOR outlets defined as an HIWAS BROADCAST AREA.

HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION− Summary of significant meteorological information (SIGMET/WS), convective significant meteorological information (convective SIGMET/WST), urgent pilot weather reports (urgent PIREP/UUA), center weather advisories (CWA), airmen's meteorological information (AIRMET/WA) and any other weather such as isolated thunderstorms that are rapidly developing and increasing in intensity, or low ceilings and visibilities that are becoming widespread which is considered significant and are not included in a current hazardous weather advisory.

HEAVY (AIRCRAFT)−
(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)

HEIGHT ABOVE AIRPORT− The height of the Minimum Descent Altitude above the published airport elevation. This is published in conjunction with circling minimums.
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

HEIGHT ABOVE LANDING− The height above a designated helicopter landing area used for helicopter instrument approach procedures.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

HEIGHT ABOVE TOUCHDOWN− The height of the Decision Height or Minimum Descent Altitude above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone (first 3,000 feet of the runway). HAT is published on instrument approach charts in conjunction with all straight-in minimums.
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

HELICOPTER− A heavier-than-air aircraft supported in flight chiefly by the reactions of the air on one or more power-driven rotors on substantially vertical axes.

HELIPAD− A small, designated area, usually with a prepared surface, on a heliport, airport, landing/takeoff area, apron/ramp, or movement area used for takeoff, landing, or parking of helicopters.

HELIPORT− An area of land, water, or structure used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of helicopters and includes its buildings and facilities if any.

HELIPORT REFERENCE POINT (HRP)− The geographic center of a heliport.

HERTZ− The standard radio equivalent of frequency in cycles per second of an electromagnetic wave. Kilohertz (kHz) is a frequency of one thousand cycles per second. Megahertz (MHz) is a frequency of one million cycles per second.

HF−
(See HIGH FREQUENCY.)

HF COMMUNICATIONS−
(See HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS.)

HIGH ALTITUDE REDESIGN (HAR)− A level of non−restrictive routing (NRR) service for aircraft that have all waypoints associated with the HAR program in their flight management systems or RNAV equipage.

HIGH FREQUENCY− The frequency band between 3 and 30 MHz.
(See HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS.)

HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATIONS− High radio frequencies (HF) between 3 and 30 MHz used for air-to-ground voice communication in overseas operations.

HIGH SPEED EXIT−
(See HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY.)

HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY− A long radius taxiway designed and provided with lighting or marking to define the path of aircraft, traveling at high speed (up to 60 knots), from the runway center to a point on the center of a taxiway. Also referred to as long radius exit or turn-off taxiway. The high speed taxiway is designed to expedite aircraft turning off the runway after landing, thus reducing runway occupancy time.

HIGH SPEED TURNOFF−
(See HIGH SPEED TAXIWAY.)

HIWAS−
(See HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE.)

HIWAS AREA−
(See HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE.)

HIWAS BROADCAST AREA− A geographical area of responsibility including one or more HIWAS outlet areas assigned to a FSS for hazardous weather advisory broadcasting.

HIWAS OUTLET AREA− An area defined as a 150 NM radius of a HIWAS outlet, expanded as necessary to provide coverage.

HOLD FOR RELEASE− Used by ATC to delay an aircraft for traffic management reasons; i.e., weather, traffic volume, etc. Hold for release instructions (including departure delay information) are used to inform a pilot or a controller (either directly or through an authorized relay) that an IFR departure clearance is not valid until a release time or additional instructions have been received.
(See ICAO term HOLDING POINT.)

HOLD IN LIEU OF PROCEDURE TURN− A hold in lieu of procedure turn shall be established over a final or intermediate fix when an approach can be made from a properly aligned holding pattern. The hold in lieu of procedure turn permits the pilot to align with the final or intermediate segment of the approach and/or descend in the holding pattern to an altitude that will permit a normal descent to the final approach fix altitude. The hold in lieu of procedure turn is a required maneuver (the same as a procedure turn) unless the aircraft is being radar vectored to the final approach course, when "NoPT" is shown on the approach chart, or when the pilot requests or the controller advises the pilot to make a "straight−in" approach.

HOLD PROCEDURE− A predetermined maneuver which keeps aircraft within a specified airspace while awaiting further clearance from air traffic control. Also used during ground operations to keep aircraft within a specified area or at a specified point while awaiting further clearance from air traffic control.
(See HOLDING FIX.)
(Refer to AIM.)

HOLDING FIX− A specified fix identifiable to a pilot by NAVAIDs or visual reference to the ground used as a reference point in establishing and maintaining the position of an aircraft while holding.
(See FIX.)
(See VISUAL HOLDING.)
(Refer to AIM.)

HOLDING POINT [ICAO]− A specified location, identified by visual or other means, in the vicinity of which the position of an aircraft in flight is maintained in accordance with air traffic control clearances.

HOLDING PROCEDURE−
(See HOLD PROCEDURE.)

HOLD-SHORT POINT− A point on the runway beyond which a landing aircraft with a LAHSO clearance is not authorized to proceed. This point may be located prior to an intersecting runway, taxiway, predetermined point, or approach/departure flight path.

HOLD-SHORT POSITION LIGHTS− Flashing in-pavement white lights located at specified hold-short points.

HOLD-SHORT POSITION MARKING− The painted runway marking located at the hold-short point on all LAHSO runways.

HOLD-SHORT POSITION SIGNS− Red and white holding position signs located alongside the hold-short point.

HOMING– Flight toward a NAVAID, without correcting for wind, by adjusting the aircraft heading to maintain a relative bearing of zero degrees.

(See BEARING.)
(See ICAO term HOMING.)

HOMING [ICAO]– The procedure of using the direction-finding equipment of one radio station with the emission of another radio station, where at least one of the stations is mobile, and whereby the mobile station proceeds continuously towards the other station.

HOVER CHECK– Used to describe when a helicopter/VTOL aircraft requires a stabilized hover to conduct a performance/power check prior to hover taxi, air taxi, or takeoff. Altitude of the hover will vary based on the purpose of the check.

HOVER TAXI– Used to describe a helicopter/VTOL aircraft movement conducted above the surface and in ground effect at airspeeds less than approximately 20 knots. The actual height may vary, and some helicopters may require hover taxi above 25 feet AGL to reduce ground effect turbulence or provide clearance for cargo slingloads.

(See AIR TAXI.)
(See HOVER CHECK.)
(Refer to AIM.)

HOW DO YOU HEAR ME?– A question relating to the quality of the transmission or to determine how well the transmission is being received.

HZ–

(See HERTZ.)

I

***I SAY AGAIN*–** The message will be repeated.

IAF–
(See INITIAL APPROACH FIX.)

IAP–
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

IAWP– Initial Approach Waypoint

ICAO–
(See ICAO Term INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION.)

ICING– The accumulation of airframe ice.

Types of icing are:

a. Rime Ice– Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.

b. Clear Ice– A glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing or large supercooled water droplets.

c. Mixed– A mixture of clear ice and rime ice.

Intensity of icing:

a. Trace– Ice becomes perceptible. Rate of accumulation is slightly greater than the rate of sublimation. Deicing/anti-icing equipment is not utilized unless encountered for an extended period of time (over 1 hour).

b. Light– The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment (over 1 hour). Occasional use of deicing/anti-icing equipment removes/prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the deicing/anti-icing equipment is used.

c. Moderate– The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of deicing/anti-icing equipment or flight diversion is necessary.

d. Severe– The rate of ice accumulation is such that ice protection systems fail to remove the accumulation of ice, or ice accumulates in locations not normally prone to icing, such as areas aft of protected surfaces and any other areas identified by the manufacturer. Immediate exit from the condition is necessary.

Note:
Severe icing is aircraft dependent, as are the other categories of icing intensity. Severe icing may occur at any ice accumulation rate.

***IDENT*–** A request for a pilot to activate the aircraft transponder identification feature. This will help the controller to confirm an aircraft identity or to identify an aircraft.
(Refer to AIM.)

IDENT FEATURE– The special feature in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) equipment. It is used to immediately distinguish one displayed beacon target from other beacon targets.
(See IDENT.)

IF–
(See INTERMEDIATE FIX.)

IFIM–
(See INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL.)

***IF NO TRANSMISSION RECEIVED FOR (TIME)*–** Used by ATC in radar approaches to prefix procedures which should be followed by the pilot in event of lost communications.
(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

IFR–
(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

IFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with instrument flight rules.

IFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions below the minimum for flight under visual flight rules.
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IFR DEPARTURE PROCEDURE–
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

IFR FLIGHT–
(See IFR AIRCRAFT.)

IFR LANDING MINIMUMS–
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES (IR)– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated

Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training in both IFR and VFR weather conditions below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES− Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations Part 91, prescribes standard takeoff rules for certain civil users. At some airports, obstructions or other factors require the establishment of nonstandard takeoff minimums, departure procedures, or both to assist pilots in avoiding obstacles during climb to the minimum en route altitude. Those airports are listed in FAA/DOD Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs) Charts under a section entitled "IFR Takeoff Minimums and Departure Procedures." The FAA/DOD IAP chart legend illustrates the symbol used to alert the pilot to nonstandard takeoff minimums and departure procedures. When departing IFR from such airports or from any airports where there are no departure procedures, DPs, or ATC facilities available, pilots should advise ATC of any departure limitations. Controllers may query a pilot to determine acceptable departure directions, turns, or headings after takeoff. Pilots should be familiar with the departure procedures and must assure that their aircraft can meet or exceed any specified climb gradients.

IF/IAWP− Intermediate Fix/Initial Approach Waypoint. The waypoint where the final approach course of a T approach meets the crossbar of the T. When designated (in conjunction with a TAA) this waypoint will be used as an IAWP when approaching the airport from certain directions, and as an IFWP when beginning the approach from another IAWP.

IFWP− Intermediate Fix Waypoint

ILS−
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

ILS CATEGORIES− 1. Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 200 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,800 feet.− 2. Special Authorization Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 150 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,400 feet, HUD to DH. 3. Category II. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet (with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization, RVR 1,000 feet).− 4. Special Authorization Category II with Reduced Lighting. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization (no touchdown zone and centerline lighting are required).− 5. Category III:

a. IIIA.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 700 feet.

b. IIIB.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 150 feet.

c. IIIC.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and without runway visual range minimum.

ILS PRM APPROACH− An instrument landing system (ILS) approach conducted to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet where independent closely spaced approaches are permitted. Also used in conjunction with an LDA PRM, RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations. No Transgression Zone (NTZ) monitoring is required to conduct these approaches. ATC utilizes an enhanced display with alerting and, with certain runway spacing, a high update rate PRM surveillance sensor. Use of a secondary monitor frequency, pilot PRM training, and publication of an Attention All Users Page are also required for all PRM approaches.
(Refer to AIM)

IM−
(See INNER MARKER.)

IMC−
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IMMEDIATELY− Used by ATC or pilots when such action compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

INCERFA (Uncertainty Phase) [ICAO]− A situation wherein uncertainty exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

INCREASE SPEED TO (SPEED)−
(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM− An RNAV system which is a form of self-contained navigation.
(See Area Navigation/RNAV.)

INFLIGHT REFUELING−
(See AERIAL REFUELING.)

INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY−
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INFORMATION REQUEST− A request originated by an FSS for information concerning an overdue VFR aircraft.

INITIAL APPROACH FIX− The fixes depicted on instrument approach procedure charts that identify the beginning of the initial approach segment(s).
(See FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT−
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure between the initial approach fix and the intermediate approach fix or, where applicable, the final approach fix or point.

INLAND NAVIGATION FACILITY− A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

INNER MARKER− A marker beacon used with an ILS (CAT II) precision approach located between the middle marker and the end of the ILS runway, transmitting a radiation pattern keyed at six dots per second and indicating to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he/she is at the designated decision height (DH), normally 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation, on the ILS CAT II approach. It also marks progress during a CAT III approach.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INNER MARKER BEACON−
(See INNER MARKER.)

INREQ−
(See INFORMATION REQUEST.)

INS−
(See INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH−
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE− A series of predetermined maneuvers for the orderly transfer of an aircraft under instrument flight conditions from the beginning of the initial approach to a landing or to a point from which a landing may be made visually. It is prescribed and approved for a specific airport by competent authority.
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

a. U.S. civil standard instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA as prescribed under 14 CFR Part 97 and are available for public use.

b. U.S. military standard instrument approach procedures are approved and published by the Department of Defense.

c. Special instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA for individual operators but are not published in 14 CFR Part 97 for public use.
(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS [ICAO]* An approach and landing using instruments for navigation guidance based on an instrument approach procedure. There are two methods for executing instrument approach operations:

a. A two−dimensional (2D) instrument approach operation, using lateral navigation guidance only; and

b. A three−dimensional (3D) instrument approach operation, using both lateral and vertical navigation guidance.

Note: Lateral and vertical navigation guidance refers to the guidance provided either by:
a) a ground−based radio navigation aid; or
b) computer−generated navigation data from ground−based, space−based, self−contained navigation aids or a combination of these.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]− A series of predetermined maneuvers by reference to flight instruments with specified protection from obstacles from the initial approach fix, or where applicable, from the beginning of a defined arrival route to a point from which a landing can be completed and thereafter, if a landing is not completed, to a position at which holding or en route obstacle clearance criteria apply.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES CHARTS−

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure published for pilot use, in graphic or textual format, that provides obstruction clearance from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. There are two types of DP, Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), printed either textually or graphically, and, Standard Instrument Departure (SID), which is always printed graphically.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP) CHARTS−

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES− Rules governing the procedures for conducting instrument flight. Also a term used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES [ICAO]− A set of rules governing the conduct of flight under instrument meteorological conditions.

INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM− A precision instrument approach system which normally consists of the following electronic components and visual aids:

a. Localizer.
(See LOCALIZER.)

b. Glideslope.
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

c. Outer Marker.
(See OUTER MARKER.)

d. Middle Marker.
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

e. Approach Lights.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS− Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling less than the minima specified for visual meteorological conditions.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY− A runway equipped with electronic and visual navigation aids for which a precision or nonprecision approach procedure having straight-in landing minimums has been approved.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT RUNWAY.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY [ICAO]− One of the following types of runways intended for the operation of aircraft using instrument approach procedures:

a. Nonprecision Approach Runway−An instrument runway served by visual aids and a nonvisual aid providing at least directional guidance adequate for a straight-in approach.

b. Precision Approach Runway, Category I−An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 60 m (200 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 800 m.

c. Precision Approach Runway, Category II−An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 30 m (100 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 400 m.

d. Precision Approach Runway, Category III−An instrument runway served by ILS to and along the surface of the runway and:

1. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 200 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids during the final phase of landing;

2. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 50 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids for taxiing;

3. Intended for operations without reliance on visual reference for landing or taxiing.

Note 1: See Annex 10 Volume I, Part I, Chapter 3, for related ILS specifications.

Note 2: Visual aids need not necessarily be matched to the scale of nonvisual aids provided. The criterion for the selection of visual aids is the conditions in which operations are intended to be conducted.

INTEGRITY− The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT−

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure between either the intermediate approach fix and the final approach fix or point, or between the end of a reversal, race track or dead reckoning track procedure and the final approach fix or point, as appropriate.

INTERMEDIATE FIX− The fix that identifies the beginning of the intermediate approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. The fix is not normally identified on the instrument approach chart as an intermediate fix (IF).

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE LANDING− On the rare occasion that this option is requested, it should be approved. The departure center, however, must advise the ATCSCC so that the appropriate delay is carried over and assigned at the intermediate airport. An intermediate landing airport within the arrival center will not be accepted without coordination with and the approval of the ATCSCC.

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT− Relating to international flight, it means:

a. An airport of entry which has been designated by the Secretary of Treasury or Commissioner of Customs as an international airport for customs service.

b. A landing rights airport at which specific permission to land must be obtained from customs authorities in advance of contemplated use.

c. Airports designated under the Convention on International Civil Aviation as an airport for use by international commercial air transport and/or international general aviation.

(See ICAO term INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT.)
(Refer to Chart Supplement U.S.)
(Refer to IFIM.)

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT [ICAO]− Any airport designated by the Contracting State in whose territory it is situated as an airport of entry and departure for international air traffic, where the formalities incident to customs, immigration, public health, animal and plant quarantine and similar procedures are carried out.

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION [ICAO]− A specialized agency of the United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

a. Regions include:

1. African-Indian Ocean Region
2. Caribbean Region
3. European Region
4. Middle East/Asia Region
5. North American Region
6. North Atlantic Region
7. Pacific Region
8. South American Region

INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL− A publication designed primarily as a pilot's preflight planning guide for flights into foreign airspace and for flights returning to the U.S. from foreign locations.

INTERROGATOR− The ground-based surveillance radar beacon transmitter-receiver, which normally scans in synchronism with a primary radar, transmitting discrete radio signals which repetitiously request all transponders on the mode being used to reply. The replies received are mixed with the primary radar returns and displayed on the same plan position indicator (radar scope). Also, applied to the airborne element of the TACAN/DME system.

(See TRANSPONDER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INTERSECTING RUNWAYS− Two or more runways which cross or meet within their lengths.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION−

a. A point defined by any combination of courses, radials, or bearings of two or more navigational aids.

b. Used to describe the point where two runways, a runway and a taxiway, or two taxiways cross or meet.

INTERSECTION DEPARTURE− A departure from any runway intersection except the end of the runway.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION TAKEOFF−

(See INTERSECTION DEPARTURE.)

IR−

(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

ISR− Indicates the confidence level of the track requires 5NM separation. 3NM separation, 1 1/2NM separation, and target resolution cannot be used.

J

JAMMING− Electronic or mechanical interference which may disrupt the display of aircraft on radar or the transmission/reception of radio communications/navigation.

JET BLAST− Jet engine exhaust (thrust stream turbulence).

(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)

JET ROUTE− A route designed to serve aircraft operations from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including flight level 450. The routes are referred to as "J" routes with numbering to identify the designated route; e.g., J105.

(See Class A AIRSPACE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 71.)

JET STREAM− A migrating stream of high-speed winds present at high altitudes.

JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES− Airborne release of external stores; e.g., tiptanks, ordnance.

(See FUEL DUMPING.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

JOINT USE RESTRICTED AREA−

(See RESTRICTED AREA.)

JUMP ZONE− The airspace directly associated with a Drop Zone. Vertical and horizontal limits may be locally defined.

K

KNOWN TRAFFIC− With respect to ATC clearances, means aircraft whose altitude, position, and intentions are known to ATC.

L

LAA−
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

LAAS−
(See LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM.)

LAHSO− An acronym for "Land and Hold Short Operation." These operations include landing and holding short of an intersecting runway, a taxiway, a predetermined point, or an approach/departure flightpath.

LAHSO-DRY− Land and hold short operations on runways that are dry.

LAHSO-WET− Land and hold short operations on runways that are wet (but not contaminated).

LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS− Operations which include simultaneous takeoffs and landings and/or simultaneous landings when a landing aircraft is able and is instructed by the controller to hold-short of the intersecting runway/taxiway or designated hold-short point. Pilots are expected to promptly inform the controller if the hold short clearance cannot be accepted.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING AREA− Any locality either on land, water, or structures, including airports/heliports and intermediate landing fields, which is used, or intended to be used, for the landing and takeoff of aircraft whether or not facilities are provided for the shelter, servicing, or for receiving or discharging passengers or cargo.
(See ICAO term LANDING AREA.)

LANDING AREA [ICAO]− That part of a movement area intended for the landing or take-off of aircraft.

LANDING DIRECTION INDICATOR− A device which visually indicates the direction in which landings and takeoffs should be made.
(See TETRAHEDRON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE (LDA)− The runway length declared available and suitable for a landing airplane.
(See ICAO term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of runway which is declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

LANDING MINIMUMS− The minimum visibility prescribed for landing a civil aircraft while using an instrument approach procedure. The minimum applies with other limitations set forth in 14 CFR Part 91 with respect to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or Decision Height (DH) prescribed in the instrument approach procedures as follows:

a. Straight-in landing minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility, or DH and visibility, required for a straight-in landing on a specified runway, or

b. Circling minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility required for the circle-to-land maneuver.

Note: Descent below the MDA or DH must meet the conditions stated in 14 CFR Section 91.175.

(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)
(See VISIBILITY.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LANDING ROLL− The distance from the point of touchdown to the point where the aircraft can be brought to a stop or exit the runway.

LANDING SEQUENCE− The order in which aircraft are positioned for landing.
(See APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

LAST ASSIGNED ALTITUDE− The last altitude/flight level assigned by ATC and acknowledged by the pilot.
(See MAINTAIN.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LATERAL NAVIGATION (LNAV)– A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides lateral guidance to a profile or path.

LATERAL SEPARATION− The lateral spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by requiring operation on different routes or in different geographical locations.
(See SEPARATION.)

LDA−
(See LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID.)
(See LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO Term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LF−
(See LOW FREQUENCY.)

LIGHTED AIRPORT− An airport where runway and obstruction lighting is available.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LIGHT GUN− A handheld directional light signaling device which emits a brilliant narrow beam of white, green, or red light as selected by the tower controller. The color and type of light transmitted can be used to approve or disapprove anticipated pilot actions where radio communication is not available. The light gun is used for controlling traffic operating in the vicinity of the airport and on the airport movement area.
(Refer to AIM.)

LIGHT-SPORT AIRCRAFT (LSA)- An FAA-registered aircraft, other than a helicopter or powered-lift, that meets certain weight and performance. Principally it is a single engine aircraft with a maximum of two seats and weighing no more than 1,430 pounds if intended for operation on water, or 1,320 pounds if not. They must be of simple design (fixed landing gear (except if intended for operations on water or a glider) piston powered, non-pressurized, with a fixed or ground adjustable propeller), Performance is also limited to a maximum airspeed in level flight of not more than 120 knots CAS, have a maximum never-exceed speed of not more than 120 knots CAS for a glider, and have a maximum stalling speed, without the use of lift-enhancing devices (VS1) of not more than 45 knots CAS. They may be certificated as either Experimental LSA or as a Special LSA aircraft. A minimum of a sport pilot_certificate is required to operate light-sport aircraft." (Refer to 14 CFR Part 1, §1.1.)

LINE UP AND WAIT (LUAW)− Used by ATC to inform a pilot to taxi onto the departure runway to line up and wait. It is not authorization for takeoff. It is used when takeoff clearance cannot immediately be issued because of traffic or other reasons.
(See CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.)

LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY (LAA)− A service available only in Alaska and provided by facilities, which are located on the landing airport, have a discrete ground−to−air communication frequency or the tower frequency when the tower is closed, automated weather reporting with voice broadcasting, and a continuous ASOS/AWSS/AWOS data display, other continuous direct reading instruments, or manual observations available to the specialist.
(See AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA.)

LOCAL TRAFFIC− Aircraft operating in the traffic pattern or within sight of the tower, or aircraft known to be departing or arriving from flight in local practice areas, or aircraft executing practice instrument approaches at the airport.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

LOCALIZER− The component of an ILS which provides course guidance to the runway.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See ICAO term LOCALIZER COURSE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER COURSE [ICAO]− The locus of points, in any given horizontal plane, at which the DDM (difference in depth of modulation) is zero.

LOCALIZER OFFSET− An angular offset of the localizer aligned with 3° of the runway alignment.

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID− A localizer with an angular offset that exceeds 3°. of the runway alignment used for nonprecision instrument approaches with utility and accuracy comparable to a localizer but which are not part of a complete ILS.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID (LDA) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) APPROACH− An approach, which includes a glidslope, used in conjunction with an ILS PRM, RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach to an adjacent runway to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA) to parallel runways whose centerlines are separated by less than 3,000 feet and at least 750 feet. NTZ monitoring is required to conduct these approaches.

(See SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA).)
(Refer to AIM)

LOCALIZER USABLE DISTANCE− The maximum distance from the localizer transmitter at a specified altitude, as verified by flight inspection, at which reliable course information is continuously received.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOCATOR [ICAO]− An LM/MF NDB used as an aid to final approach.

Note: A locator usually has an average radius of rated coverage of between 18.5 and 46.3 km (10 and 25 NM).

LONG RANGE NAVIGATION−

(See LORAN.)

LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION− The longitudinal spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by a minimum distance expressed in units of time or miles.

(See SEPARATION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LORAN− An electronic navigational system by which hyperbolic lines of position are determined by measuring the difference in the time of reception of synchronized pulse signals from two fixed transmitters. Loran A operates in the 1750-1950 kHz frequency band. Loran C and D operate in the 100-110 kHz frequency band. In 2010, the U.S. Coast Guard terminated all U.S. LORAN-C transmissions.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOST COMMUNICATIONS− Loss of the ability to communicate by radio. Aircraft are sometimes referred to as NORDO (No Radio). Standard pilot procedures are specified in 14 CFR Part 91. Radar controllers issue procedures for pilots to follow in the event of lost communications during a radar approach when weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE− The network of airways serving aircraft operations up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL.

(See AIRWAY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE ALERT, CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY−

(See SAFETY ALERT.)

LOW APPROACH− An approach over an airport or runway following an instrument approach or a VFR approach including the go-around maneuver where the pilot intentionally does not make contact with the runway.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW FREQUENCY− The frequency band between 30 and 300 kHz.

(Refer to AIM.)

LPV− A type of approach with vertical guidance (APV) based on WAAS, published on RNAV (GPS) approach charts. This procedure takes advantage of the precise lateral guidance available from WAAS. The minima is published as a decision altitude (DA).

LUAW−

(See LINE UP AND WAIT.)

M

MAA−
(See MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE.)

MACH NUMBER− The ratio of true airspeed to the speed of sound; e.g., MACH .82, MACH 1.6.
(See AIRSPEED.)

MACH TECHNIQUE [ICAO]− Describes a control technique used by air traffic control whereby turbojet aircraft operating successively along suitable routes are cleared to maintain appropriate MACH numbers for a relevant portion of the en route phase of flight. The principle objective is to achieve improved utilization of the airspace and to ensure that separation between successive aircraft does not decrease below the established minima.

MAHWP− Missed Approach Holding Waypoint

MAINTAIN−

a. Concerning altitude/flight level, the term means to remain at the altitude/flight level specified. The phrase "climb and" or "descend and" normally precedes "maintain" and the altitude assignment; e.g., "descend and maintain 5,000."

b. Concerning other ATC instructions, the term is used in its literal sense; e.g., maintain VFR.

MAINTENANCE PLANNING FRICTION LEVEL− The friction level specified in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, which represents the friction value below which the runway pavement surface remains acceptable for any category or class of aircraft operations but which is beginning to show signs of deterioration. This value will vary depending on the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MAKE SHORT APPROACH− Used by ATC to inform a pilot to alter his/her traffic pattern so as to make a short final approach.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

MAN PORTABLE AIR DEFENSE SYSTEMS (MANPADS)− MANPADS are lightweight, shoulder−launched, missile systems used to bring down aircraft and create mass casualties. The potential for MANPADS use against airborne aircraft is real and requires familiarity with the subject. Terrorists choose MANPADS because the weapons are low cost, highly mobile, require minimal set−up time, and are easy to use and maintain. Although the weapons have limited range, and their accuracy is affected by poor visibility and adverse weather, they can be fired from anywhere on land or from boats where there is unrestricted visibility to the target.

MANDATORY ALTITUDE− An altitude depicted on an instrument Approach Procedure Chart requiring the aircraft to maintain altitude at the depicted value.

MANPADS−
(See MAN PORTABLE AIR DEFENSE SYSTEMS.)

MAP−
(See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)

MARKER BEACON− An electronic navigation facility transmitting a 75 MHz vertical fan or boneshaped radiation pattern. Marker beacons are identified by their modulation frequency and keying code, and when received by compatible airborne equipment, indicate to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he/she is passing over the facility.
(See INNER MARKER.)
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)
(See OUTER MARKER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MARSA−
(See MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT.)

MAWP− Missed Approach Waypoint

MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE− A published altitude representing the maximum usable altitude or flight level for an airspace structure or route segment. It is the highest altitude on a Federal airway, jet route, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route for which an MEA is designated in 14 CFR Part 95 at which adequate reception of navigation aid signals is assured.

MAYDAY− The international radiotelephony distress signal. When repeated three times, it indicates imminent and grave danger and that immediate assistance is requested.

(See PAN-PAN.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MCA−
(See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)

MDA−
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

MEA−
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

MEARTS−
(See MICRO-EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM.)

METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT− An unscheduled planning forecast describing conditions expected to begin within 4 to 12 hours which may impact the flow of air traffic in a specific center's (ARTCC) area.

METER FIX ARC− A semicircle, equidistant from a meter fix, usually in low altitude relatively close to the meter fix, used to help CTAS/HOST calculate a meter time, and determine appropriate sector meter list assignments for aircraft not on an established arrival route or assigned a meter fix.

METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME− A calculated time to depart the meter fix in order to cross the vertex at the ACLT. This time reflects descent speed adjustment and any applicable time that must be absorbed prior to crossing the meter fix.

METER LIST−
(See ARRIVAL SECTOR ADVISORY LIST.)

METER LIST DISPLAY INTERVAL− A dynamic parameter which controls the number of minutes prior to the flight plan calculated time of arrival at the meter fix for each aircraft, at which time the TCLT is frozen and becomes an ACLT; i.e., the VTA is updated and consequently the TCLT modified as appropriate until frozen at which time updating is suspended and an ACLT is assigned. When frozen, the flight entry is inserted into the arrival sector's meter list for display on the sector PVD/MDM. MLDI is used if filed true airspeed is less than or equal to freeze speed parameters (FSPD).

METERING− A method of time-regulating arrival traffic flow into a terminal area so as not to exceed a predetermined terminal acceptance rate.

METERING AIRPORTS− Airports adapted for metering and for which optimum flight paths are defined. A maximum of 15 airports may be adapted.

METERING FIX− A fix along an established route from over which aircraft will be metered prior to entering terminal airspace. Normally, this fix should be established at a distance from the airport which will facilitate a profile descent 10,000 feet above airport elevation (AAE) or above.

METERING POSITION(S)− Adapted PVDs/MDMs and associated "D" positions eligible for display of a metering position list. A maximum of four PVDs/MDMs may be adapted.

METERING POSITION LIST− An ordered list of data on arrivals for a selected metering airport displayed on a metering position PVD/MDM.

MFT−
(See METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

MHA−
(See MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE.)

MIA−
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)

MICROBURST− A small downburst with outbursts of damaging winds extending 2.5 miles or less. In spite of its small horizontal scale, an intense microburst could induce wind speeds as high as 150 knots

(Refer to AIM.)

MICRO-EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM (MEARTS)− An automated radar and radar beacon tracking system capable of employing both short-range (ASR) and long-range (ARSR) radars. This microcomputer driven system provides improved tracking, continuous data recording, and use of full digital radar displays.

MID RVR−
(See VISIBILITY.)

MIDDLE COMPASS LOCATOR−
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

MIDDLE MARKER− A marker beacon that defines a point along the glideslope of an ILS normally located at or near the point of decision height (ILS Category I). It is keyed to transmit alternate dots and dashes, with the alternate dots and dashes keyed at the rate of 95 dot/dash combinations per minute on a

1300 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MILES-IN-TRAIL− A specified distance between aircraft, normally, in the same stratum associated with the same destination or route of flight.

MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT− A condition whereby the military services involved assume responsibility for separation between participating military aircraft in the ATC system. It is used only for required IFR operations which are specified in letters of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military documents.

MILITARY LANDING ZONE− A landing strip used exclusively by the military for training. A military landing zone does not carry a runway designation.

MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES− Airspace of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established for the conduct of military flight training at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)
(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MINIMA−
(See MINIMUMS.)

MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE− The lowest altitude at certain fixes at which an aircraft must cross when proceeding in the direction of a higher minimum en route IFR altitude (MEA).

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE− The lowest altitude, expressed in feet above mean sea level, to which descent is authorized on final approach or during circle-to-land maneuvering in execution of a standard instrument approach procedure where no electronic glideslope is provided.

(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE (MEA)− The lowest published altitude between radio fixes which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage and meets obstacle clearance requirements between those fixes. The MEA prescribed for a Federal airway or segment thereof, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route applies to the entire width of the airway, segment, or route between the radio fixes defining the airway, segment, or route.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM FRICTION LEVEL− The friction level specified in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, that represents the minimum recommended wet pavement surface friction value for any turbojet aircraft engaged in LAHSO. This value will vary with the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MINIMUM FUEL− Indicates that an aircraft's fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching the destination, it can accept little or no delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE− The lowest altitude prescribed for a holding pattern which assures navigational signal coverage, communications, and meets obstacle clearance requirements.

MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES (MIA)− Minimum altitudes for IFR operations as prescribed in 14 CFR Part 91. These altitudes are published on aeronautical charts and prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 for airways and routes, and in 14 CFR Part 97 for standard instrument approach procedures. If no applicable minimum altitude is prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 or 14 CFR Part 97, the following minimum IFR altitude applies:

a. In designated mountainous areas, 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

b. Other than mountainous areas, 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

c. As otherwise authorized by the Administrator or assigned by ATC.

(See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION− A set of standards which require aircraft to have a minimum navigation performance capability in order to operate in MNPS designated airspace. In addition, aircraft must be certified by their State of Registry for MNPS operation.

MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE− Designated airspace in which MNPS procedures are applied between MNPS certified and equipped aircraft. Under certain conditions, non-MNPS aircraft can operate in MNPSA. However, standard oceanic separation minima is provided between the non-MNPS aircraft and other traffic. Currently, the only designated MNPSA is described as follows:

a. Between FL 285 and FL 420;

b. Between latitudes 27°N and the North Pole;

c. In the east, the eastern boundaries of the CTAs Santa Maria Oceanic, Shanwick Oceanic, and Reykjavik;

d. In the west, the western boundaries of CTAs Reykjavik and Gander Oceanic and New York Oceanic excluding the area west of 60°W and south of 38°30'N.

MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE (MOCA)− The lowest published altitude in effect between radio fixes on VOR airways, off-airway routes, or route segments which meets obstacle clearance requirements for the entire route segment and which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage only within 25 statute (22 nautical) miles of a VOR.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE− The lowest altitude at which an intersection can be determined.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE−

a. The minimum altitude specified in 14 CFR Part 91 for various aircraft operations.

b. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for emergency use. These altitudes will be identified as Minimum Safe Altitudes or Emergency Safe Altitudes and are established as follows:

1. Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA). Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance within a 25-mile radius of the navigation facility, waypoint, or airport reference point upon which the MSA is predicated. MSAs are for emergency use only and do not necessarily assure acceptable navigational signal coverage.

(See ICAO term Minimum Sector Altitude.)

2. Emergency Safe Altitude (ESA). Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet of obstacle clearance in designated mountainous areas within a 100-mile radius of the navigation facility or waypoint used as the ESA center. These altitudes are normally used only in military procedures and are identified on published procedures as "Emergency Safe Altitudes."

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING− A function of the ARTS III computer that aids the controller by alerting him/her when a tracked Mode C equipped aircraft is below or is predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum safe altitude.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM SECTOR ALTITUDE [ICAO]− The lowest altitude which may be used under emergency conditions which will provide a minimum clearance of 300 m (1,000 feet) above all obstacles located in an area contained within a sector of a circle of 46 km (25 NM) radius centered on a radio aid to navigation.

MINIMUMS− Weather condition requirements established for a particular operation or type of operation; e.g., IFR takeoff or landing, alternate airport for IFR flight plans, VFR flight, etc.

(See IFR CONDITIONS.)
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See VFR CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE (MVA)− The lowest MSL altitude at which an IFR aircraft will be vectored by a radar controller, except as otherwise authorized for radar approaches, departures, and missed approaches. The altitude meets IFR obstacle clearance criteria. It may be lower than the published MEA along an airway or J-route segment. It may be utilized for radar vectoring only upon the controller's determination that an adequate radar return is being received from the aircraft being controlled. Charts depicting minimum vectoring altitudes are normally available only to the controllers and not to pilots.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINUTES-IN-TRAIL− A specified interval between aircraft expressed in time. This method would more likely be utilized regardless of altitude.

MIS−

(See METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT.)

MISSED APPROACH−

a. A maneuver conducted by a pilot when an instrument approach cannot be completed to a landing. The route of flight and altitude are shown on instrument approach procedure charts. A pilot executing a missed approach prior to the Missed Approach Point (MAP) must continue along the final approach to the MAP.

b. A term used by the pilot to inform ATC that he/she is executing the missed approach.

c. At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure.

(See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MISSED APPROACH POINT− A point prescribed in each instrument approach procedure at which a missed approach procedure shall be executed if the required visual reference does not exist.

(See MISSED APPROACH.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]− The procedure to be followed if the approach cannot be continued.

MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT−

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MLDI−

(See METER LIST DISPLAY INTERVAL.)

MM−

(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

MNPS−

(See MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION.)

MNPSA−

(See MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE− SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE.)

MOA−

(See MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA.)

MOCA−

(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)

MODE− The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of radio signals transmitted or received by ground interrogator or airborne transponder components of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). Mode A (military Mode 3) and Mode C (altitude reporting) are used in air traffic control.

(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See RADAR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term MODE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MODE (SSR MODE) [ICAO]− The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of the interrogation signals transmitted by an interrogator. There are 4 modes, A, B, C and D specified in Annex 10, corresponding to four different interrogation pulse spacings.

MODE C INTRUDER ALERT− A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between a tracked target (known IFR or VFR aircraft) and an untracked target (unknown IFR or VFR aircraft) that requires immediate attention/action.

(See CONFLICT ALERT.)

MONITOR− (When used with communication transfer) listen on a specific frequency and stand by for instructions. Under normal circumstances do not establish communications.

MONITOR ALERT (MA)− A function of the TFMS that provides traffic management personnel with a tool for predicting potential capacity problems in individual operational sectors. The MA is an indication that traffic management personnel need to analyze a particular sector for actual activity and to determine the required action(s), if any, needed to control the demand.

MONITOR ALERT PARAMETER (MAP)− The number designated for use in monitor alert processing by the TFMS. The MAP is designated for each operational sector for increments of 15 minutes.

MOSAIC/MULTI−SENSOR MODE− Accepts positional data from multiple radar or ADS−B sites. Targets are displayed from a single source within a radar sort box according to the hierarchy of the sources assigned.

MOVEMENT AREA− The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport which are utilized for taxiing/hover taxiing, air taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airports/heliports with a tower, specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from ATC.

(See ICAO term MOVEMENT AREA.)

MOVEMENT AREA [ICAO]− That part of an aerodrome to be used for the takeoff, landing and taxiing of aircraft, consisting of the maneuvering area and the apron(s).

MOVING TARGET INDICATOR− An electronic device which will permit radar scope presentation only from targets which are in motion. A partial remedy for ground clutter.

MRA−

(See MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE.)

MSA−

(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)

MSAW−

(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

MTI−

(See MOVING TARGET INDICATOR.)

MTR−

(See MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MULTICOM− A mobile service not open to public correspondence used to provide communications essential to conduct the activities being performed by or directed from private aircraft.

MULTIPLE RUNWAYS− The utilization of a dedicated arrival runway(s) for departures and a dedicated departure runway(s) for arrivals when feasible to reduce delays and enhance capacity.

MVA−

(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

N

NAS−
(See NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM.)

NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM− The common network of U.S. airspace; air navigation facilities, equipment and services, airports or landing areas; aeronautical charts, information and services; rules, regulations and procedures, technical information, and manpower and material. Included are system components shared jointly with the military.

NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE− Airspace over United States territory located within the North American continent between Canada and Mexico, including adjacent territorial waters outward to about boundaries of oceanic control areas (CTA)/Flight Information Regions (FIR).
(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER− A facility in Washington D.C., established by FAA to operate a central aeronautical information service for the collection, validation, and dissemination of aeronautical data in support of the activities of government, industry, and the aviation community. The information is published in the National Flight Data Digest.
(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST− A daily (except weekends and Federal holidays) publication of flight information appropriate to aeronautical charts, aeronautical publications, Notices to Airmen, or other media serving the purpose of providing operational flight data essential to safe and efficient aircraft operations.

NATIONAL SEARCH AND RESCUE PLAN− An interagency agreement which provides for the effective utilization of all available facilities in all types of search and rescue missions.

NAVAID−
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

NAVAID CLASSES− VOR, VORTAC, and TACAN aids are classed according to their operational use. The three classes of NAVAIDs are:

a. T− Terminal.

b. L− Low altitude.

c. H− High altitude.

Note: The normal service range for T, L, and H class aids is found in the AIM. Certain operational requirements make it necessary to use some of these aids at greater service ranges than specified. Extended range is made possible through flight inspection determinations. Some aids also have lesser service range due to location, terrain, frequency protection, etc. Restrictions to service range are listed in Chart Supplement U.S.

NAVIGABLE AIRSPACE− Airspace at and above the minimum flight altitudes prescribed in the CFRs including airspace needed for safe takeoff and landing.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

NAVIGATION REFERENCE SYSTEM (NRS)− The NRS is a system of waypoints developed for use within the United States for flight planning and navigation without reference to ground based navigational aids. The NRS waypoints are located in a grid pattern along defined latitude and longitude lines. The initial use of the NRS will be in the high altitude environment in conjunction with the High Altitude Redesign initiative. The NRS waypoints are intended for use by aircraft capable of point−to−point navigation.

NAVIGATION SPECIFICATION [ICAO]− A set of aircraft and flight crew requirements needed to support performance−based navigation operations within a defined airspace. There are two kinds of navigation specifications:

a. RNP specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that includes the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNP; e.g., RNP 4, RNP APCH.

b. RNAV specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that does not include the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNAV; e.g., RNAV 5, RNAV 1.

Note: The Performance−based Navigation Manual (Doc 9613), Volume II contains detailed guidance on navigation specifications.

NAVIGATIONAL AID− Any visual or electronic device airborne or on the surface which provides point-to-point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight.

(See AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY.)

NBCAP AIRSPACE−

(See NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE.)

NDB−

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

NEGATIVE− "No," or "permission not granted," or "that is not correct."

NEGATIVE CONTACT− Used by pilots to inform ATC that:

a. Previously issued traffic is not in sight. It may be followed by the pilot's request for the controller to provide assistance in avoiding the traffic.

b. They were unable to contact ATC on a particular frequency.

NFDC−

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER.)

NFDD−

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NIGHT− The time between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as published in the Air Almanac, converted to local time.

(See ICAO term NIGHT.)

NIGHT [ICAO]− The hours between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight or such other period between sunset and sunrise as may be specified by the appropriate authority.

Note: Civil twilight ends in the evening when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon and begins in the morning when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon.

NO GYRO APPROACH− A radar approach/vector provided in case of a malfunctioning gyro-compass or directional gyro. Instead of providing the pilot with headings to be flown, the controller observes the radar track and issues control instructions "turn right/left" or "stop turn" as appropriate.

(Refer to AIM.)

NO GYRO VECTOR−

(See NO GYRO APPROACH.)

NO TRANSGRESSION ZONE (NTZ)− The NTZ is a 2,000 foot wide zone, located equidistant between parallel runway or SOIA final approach courses in which flight is normally not allowed.

NONAPPROACH CONTROL TOWER− Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace. The primary function of a nonapproach control tower is the sequencing of aircraft in the traffic pattern and on the landing area. Nonapproach control towers also separate aircraft operating under instrument flight rules clearances from approach controls and centers. They provide ground control services to aircraft, vehicles, personnel, and equipment on the airport movement area.

NONCOMMON ROUTE/PORTION− That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

NONCOMPOSITE SEPARATION− Separation in accordance with minima other than the composite separation minimum specified for the area concerned.

NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON− An L/MF or UHF radio beacon transmitting nondirectional signals whereby the pilot of an aircraft equipped with direction finding equipment can determine his/her bearing to or from the radio beacon and "home" on or track to or from the station. When the radio beacon is installed in conjunction with the Instrument Landing System marker, it is normally called a Compass Locator.

(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

NONMOVEMENT AREAS− Taxiways and apron (ramp) areas not under the control of air traffic.

NONPRECISION APPROACH−

(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE− A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic glideslope is provided; e.g., VOR, TACAN, NDB, LOC, ASR, LDA, or SDF approaches.

NONRADAR− Precedes other terms and generally means without the use of radar, such as:

a. Nonradar Approach. Used to describe instrument approaches for which course guidance on final approach is not provided by ground-based precision or surveillance radar. Radar vectors to the final approach course may or may not be provided by ATC. Examples of nonradar approaches are VOR, NDB, TACAN, ILS, RNAV, and GLS approaches.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See RADAR APPROACH.)

b. Nonradar Approach Control. An ATC facility providing approach control service without the use of radar.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

c. Nonradar Arrival. An aircraft arriving at an airport without radar service or at an airport served by a radar facility and radar contact has not been established or has been terminated due to a lack of radar service to the airport.

(See RADAR ARRIVAL.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

d. Nonradar Route. A flight path or route over which the pilot is performing his/her own navigation. The pilot may be receiving radar separation, radar monitoring, or other ATC services while on a nonradar route.

(See RADAR ROUTE.)

e. Nonradar Separation. The spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima without the use of radar; e.g., vertical, lateral, or longitudinal separation.

(See RADAR SEPARATION.)
(See ICAO term NONRADAR SEPARATION.)

NONRADAR SEPARATION [ICAO]− The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from sources other than radar.

NON−RESTRICTIVE ROUTING (NRR)− Portions of a proposed route of flight where a user can flight plan the most advantageous flight path with no requirement to make reference to ground−based NAVAIDs.

NOPAC−

(See NORTH PACIFIC.)

NORDO (No Radio)− Aircraft that cannot or do not communicate by radio when radio communication is required are referred to as "NORDO."

(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

NORMAL OPERATING ZONE (NOZ)− The NOZ is the operating zone within which aircraft flight remains during normal independent simultaneous parallel ILS approaches.

NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE− A numerically coded route preplanned over existing airway and route systems to and from specific coastal fixes serving the North Atlantic. North American Routes consist of the following:

a. Common Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

b. Noncommon Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

c. Inland Navigation Facility. A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

d. Coastal Fix. A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP)− The NRP is a set of rules and procedures which are designed to increase the flexibility of user flight planning within published guidelines.

NORTH MARK− A beacon data block sent by the host computer to be displayed by the ARTS on a 360 degree bearing at a locally selected radar azimuth and distance. The North Mark is used to ensure correct range/azimuth orientation during periods of CENRAP.

NORTH PACIFIC− An organized route system between the Alaskan west coast and Japan.

NOTAM−

(See NOTICE TO AIRMEN.)

NOTAM [ICAO]− A notice containing information concerning the establishment, condition or change in any aeronautical facility, service, procedure or hazard, the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

a. I Distribution− Distribution by means of telecommunication.

b. II Distribution− Distribution by means other than telecommunications.

NOTICE TO AIRMEN− A notice containing information (not known sufficiently in advance to publicize by other means) concerning the establishment, condition, or change in any component (facility, service, or procedure of, or hazard in the National Airspace System) the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

a. NOTAM(D)− A NOTAM given (in addition to local dissemination) distant dissemination beyond the area of responsibility of the Flight Service Station. These NOTAMs will be stored and available until canceled.

b. FDC NOTAM− A NOTAM regulatory in nature, transmitted by USNOF and given system wide dissemination.

(See ICAO term NOTAM.)

NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION− A publication issued every 28 days, designed primarily for the pilot, which contains current NOTAM information considered essential to the safety of flight as well as supplemental data to other aeronautical publications. The contraction NTAP is used in NOTAM text.

(See NOTICE TO AIRMEN.)

NRR−

(See NON−RESTRICTIVE ROUTING.)

NRS−

(See NAVIGATION REFERENCE SYSTEM.)

NTAP−

(See NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

NUMEROUS TARGETS VICINITY (LOCATION)− A traffic advisory issued by ATC to advise pilots that targets on the radar scope are too numerous to issue individually.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

O

OBSTACLE− An existing object, object of natural growth, or terrain at a fixed geographical location or which may be expected at a fixed location within a prescribed area with reference to which vertical clearance is or must be provided during flight operation.

OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (ODP)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure printed for pilot use in textual or graphic form to provide obstruction clearance via the least onerous route from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

OBSTACLE FREE ZONE− The OFZ is a three dimensional volume of airspace which protects for the transition of aircraft to and from the runway. The OFZ clearing standard precludes taxiing and parked airplanes and object penetrations, except for frangible NAVAID locations that are fixed by function. Additionally, vehicles, equipment, and personnel may be authorized by air traffic control to enter the area using the provisions of FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/ PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS. The runway OFZ and when applicable, the inner-approach OFZ, and the inner-transitional OFZ, comprise the OFZ.

a. Runway OFZ. The runway OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered above the runway. The runway OFZ is the airspace above a surface whose elevation at any point is the same as the elevation of the nearest point on the runway centerline. The runway OFZ extends 200 feet beyond each end of the runway. The width is as follows:

1. For runways serving large airplanes, the greater of:

(a) 400 feet, or

(b) 180 feet, plus the wingspan of the most demanding airplane, plus 20 feet per 1,000 feet of airport elevation.

2. For runways serving only small airplanes:

(a) 300 feet for precision instrument runways.

(b) 250 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of 50 knots, or more.

(c) 120 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of less than 50 knots.

b. Inner-approach OFZ. The inner-approach OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered on the approach area. The inner-approach OFZ applies only to runways with an approach lighting system. The inner-approach OFZ begins 200 feet from the runway threshold at the same elevation as the runway threshold and extends 200 feet beyond the last light unit in the approach lighting system. The width of the inner-approach OFZ is the same as the runway OFZ and rises at a slope of 50 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) from the beginning.

c. Inner-transitional OFZ. The inner transitional surface OFZ is a defined volume of airspace along the sides of the runway and inner-approach OFZ and applies only to precision instrument runways. The inner-transitional surface OFZ slopes 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) out from the edges of the runway OFZ and inner-approach OFZ to a height of 150 feet above the established airport elevation.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Chapter 3.)
(Refer to FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, VEHICLES/EQUIPMENT/PERSONNEL ON RUNWAYS.)

OBSTRUCTION− Any object/obstacle exceeding the obstruction standards specified by 14 CFR Part 77, Subpart C.

OBSTRUCTION LIGHT− A light or one of a group of lights, usually red or white, frequently mounted on a surface structure or natural terrain to warn pilots of the presence of an obstruction.

OCEANIC AIRSPACE− Airspace over the oceans of the world, considered international airspace, where oceanic separation and procedures per the International Civil Aviation Organization are applied. Responsibility for the provisions of air traffic control service in this airspace is delegated to various countries, based generally upon geographic proximity and the availability of the required resources.

OCEANIC ERROR REPORT− A report filed when ATC observes an Oceanic Error as defined by FAAO 7110.82, Reporting Oceanic Errors.

OCEANIC PUBLISHED ROUTE− A route established in international airspace and charted or described in flight information publications, such as Route Charts, DOD Enroute Charts, Chart Supplements, NOTAMs, and Track Messages.

OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE− An ATS route established for the purpose of transitioning aircraft to/from an organized track system.

ODP−
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

OFF COURSE− A term used to describe a situation where an aircraft has reported a position fix or is observed on radar at a point not on the ATC-approved route of flight.

OFF-ROUTE VECTOR− A vector by ATC which takes an aircraft off a previously assigned route. Altitudes assigned by ATC during such vectors provide required obstacle clearance.

OFFSET PARALLEL RUNWAYS− Staggered runways having centerlines which are parallel.

OFFSHORE/CONTROL AIRSPACE AREA− That portion of airspace between the U.S. 12 NM limit and the oceanic CTA/FIR boundary within which air traffic control is exercised. These areas are established to provide air traffic control services. Offshore/Control Airspace Areas may be classified as either Class A airspace or Class E airspace.

OFT−
(See OUTER FIX TIME.)

OM−
(See OUTER MARKER.)

ON COURSE−

a. Used to indicate that an aircraft is established on the route centerline.

b. Used by ATC to advise a pilot making a radar approach that his/her aircraft is lined up on the final approach course.
(See ON-COURSE INDICATION.)

ON-COURSE INDICATION− An indication on an instrument, which provides the pilot a visual means of determining that the aircraft is located on the centerline of a given navigational track, or an indication on a radar scope that an aircraft is on a given track.

ONE-MINUTE WEATHER− The most recent one minute updated weather broadcast received by a pilot from an uncontrolled airport ASOS/AWSS/AWOS.

ONER−
(See OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT.)

OPERATIONAL−
(See DUE REGARD.)

OPERATIONS SPECIFICATIONS [ICAO]− The authorizations, conditions and limitations associated with the air operator certificate and subject to the conditions in the operations manual.

OPPOSITE DIRECTION AIRCRAFT− Aircraft are operating in opposite directions when:

a. They are following the same track in reciprocal directions; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in reciprocal directions; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of more than 135°.

OPTION APPROACH− An approach requested and conducted by a pilot which will result in either a touch-and-go, missed approach, low approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing.
(See CLEARED FOR THE OPTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM− A series of ATS routes which are fixed and charted; i.e., CEP, NOPAC, or flexible and described by NOTAM; i.e., NAT TRACK MESSAGE.

OROCA− An off-route altitude which provides obstruction clearance with a 1,000 foot buffer in nonmountainous terrain areas and a 2,000 foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the United States. This altitude may not provide signal coverage from ground-based navigational aids, air traffic control radar, or communications coverage.

OTR−
(See OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE.)

OTS−
(See ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM.)

OUT− The conversation is ended and no response is expected.

OUTER AREA (associated with Class C airspace)− Nonregulatory airspace surrounding designated Class C airspace airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring and sequencing on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The service provided in the outer area is called Class C service which includes: IFR/IFR−IFR separation; IFR/VFR−traffic advisories and conflict resolution; and VFR/VFR−traffic advisories and, as appropriate, safety alerts. The normal radius will be 20 nautical miles with some variations based on site-specific requirements. The outer area extends outward from the primary Class C airspace airport and extends from the lower limits of radar/radio coverage up to the ceiling of the approach control's delegated airspace excluding the Class C charted area and other airspace as appropriate.
(See CONFLICT RESOLUTION.)
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

OUTER COMPASS LOCATOR−
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

OUTER FIX− A general term used within ATC to describe fixes in the terminal area, other than the final approach fix. Aircraft are normally cleared to these fixes by an Air Route Traffic Control Center or an Approach Control Facility. Aircraft are normally cleared from these fixes to the final approach fix or final approach course.

OR

OUTER FIX− An adapted fix along the converted route of flight, prior to the meter fix, for which crossing times are calculated and displayed in the metering position list.

OUTER FIX ARC− A semicircle, usually about a 50−70 mile radius from a meter fix, usually in high altitude, which is used by CTAS/HOST to calculate outer fix times and determine appropriate sector meter list assignments for aircraft on an established arrival route that will traverse the arc.

OUTER FIX TIME− A calculated time to depart the outer fix in order to cross the vertex at the ACLT. The time reflects descent speed adjustments and any applicable delay time that must be absorbed prior to crossing the meter fix.

OUTER MARKER− A marker beacon at or near the glideslope intercept altitude of an ILS approach. It is keyed to transmit two dashes per second on a 400 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment. The OM is normally located four to seven miles from the runway threshold on the extended centerline of the runway.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

OVER− My transmission is ended; I expect a response.

OVERHEAD MANEUVER− A series of predetermined maneuvers prescribed for aircraft (often in formation) for entry into the visual flight rules (VFR) traffic pattern and to proceed to a landing. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument flight rules (IFR) approach procedure. An aircraft executing an overhead maneuver is considered VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the "initial point" on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The pattern usually specifies the following:

a. The radio contact required of the pilot.

b. The speed to be maintained.

c. An initial approach 3 to 5 miles in length.

d. An elliptical pattern consisting of two 180 degree turns.

e. A break point at which the first 180 degree turn is started.

f. The direction of turns.

g. Altitude (at least 500 feet above the conventional pattern).

h. A "Roll-out" on final approach not less than 1/4 mile from the landing threshold and not less than 300 feet above the ground.

OVERLYING CENTER− The ARTCC facility that is responsible for arrival/departure operations at a specific terminal.

P

P TIME–
(See PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME.)

P-ACP–
(See PREARRANGED COORDINATION PROCEDURES.)

PAN-PAN– The international radio-telephony urgency signal. When repeated three times, indicates uncertainty or alert followed by the nature of the urgency.
(See MAYDAY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

PAR–
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PAR [ICAO]–
(See ICAO Term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PARALLEL ILS APPROACHES– Approaches to parallel runways by IFR aircraft which, when established inbound toward the airport on the adjacent final approach courses, are radar-separated by at least 2 miles.
(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

PARALLEL OFFSET ROUTE– A parallel track to the left or right of the designated or established airway/route. Normally associated with Area Navigation (RNAV) operations.
(See AREA NAVIGATION.)

PARALLEL RUNWAYS– Two or more runways at the same airport whose centerlines are parallel. In addition to runway number, parallel runways are designated as L (left) and R (right) or, if three parallel runways exist, L (left), C (center), and R (right).

PBCT–
(See PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME.)

PBN
(See ICAO Term PERFORMANCE–BASED NAVIGATION.)

PDC–
(See PRE–DEPARTURE CLEARANCE.)

PERFORMANCE–BASED NAVIGATION (PBN) [ICAO]– Area navigation based on performance requirements for aircraft operating along an ATS route, on an instrument approach procedure or in a designated airspace.

Note: Performance requirements are expressed in navigation specifications (RNAV specification, RNP specification) in terms of accuracy, integrity, continuity, availability, and functionality needed for the proposed operation in the context of a particular airspace concept.

PERMANENT ECHO– Radar signals reflected from fixed objects on the earth's surface; e.g., buildings, towers, terrain. Permanent echoes are distinguished from "ground clutter" by being definable locations rather than large areas. Under certain conditions they may be used to check radar alignment.

PHOTO RECONNAISSANCE– Military activity that requires locating individual photo targets and navigating to the targets at a preplanned angle and altitude. The activity normally requires a lateral route width of 16 NM and altitude range of 1,500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

PILOT BRIEFING– A service provided by the FSS to assist pilots in flight planning. Briefing items may include weather information, NOTAMS, military activities, flow control information, and other items as requested.
(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT IN COMMAND– The pilot responsible for the operation and safety of an aircraft during flight time.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

PILOT WEATHER REPORT– A report of meteorological phenomena encountered by aircraft in flight.
(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT'S DISCRETION– When used in conjunction with altitude assignments, means that ATC has offered the pilot the option of starting climb or descent whenever he/she wishes and conducting the climb or descent at any rate he/she wishes. He/she may temporarily level off at any intermediate altitude. However, once he/she has vacated an altitude, he/she may not return to that altitude.

PIREP−
(See PILOT WEATHER REPORT.)

PITCH POINT− A fix/waypoint that serves as a transition point from a departure procedure or the low altitude ground−based navigation structure into the high altitude waypoint system.

PLANS DISPLAY− A display available in EDST that provides detailed flight plan and predicted conflict information in textual format for requested Current Plans and all Trial Plans.
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL)

POFZ−
(See PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE.)

POINT OUT−
(See RADAR POINT OUT.)

POINT−TO−POINT (PTP)− A level of NRR service for aircraft that is based on traditional waypoints in their FMSs or RNAV equipage.

POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE− A system of organized routes between Iceland and Alaska which overlie Canadian MNPS Airspace.

POSITION REPORT− A report over a known location as transmitted by an aircraft to ATC.
(Refer to AIM.)

POSITION SYMBOL− A computer-generated indication shown on a radar display to indicate the mode of tracking.

POSITIVE CONTROL− The separation of all air traffic within designated airspace by air traffic control.

PRACTICE INSTRUMENT APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure conducted by a VFR or an IFR aircraft for the purpose of pilot training or proficiency demonstrations.

PRE−DEPARTURE CLEARANCE− An application with the Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) that provides clearance information to subscribers, through a service provider, in text to the cockpit or gate printer.

PREARRANGED COORDINATION− A standardized procedure which permits an air traffic controller to enter the airspace assigned to another air traffic controller without verbal coordination. The procedures are defined in a facility directive which ensures approved separation between aircraft.

PREARRANGED COORDINATION PROCEDURES− A facility's standardized procedure that describes the process by which one controller shall allow an aircraft to penetrate or transit another controller's airspace in a manner that assures approved separation without individual coordination for each aircraft.

PRECIPITATION− Any or all forms of water particles (rain, sleet, hail, or snow) that fall from the atmosphere and reach the surface.

PRECIPITATION RADAR WEATHER DESCRIPTIONS − Existing radar systems cannot detect turbulence. However, there is a direct correlation between the degree of turbulence and other weather features associated with thunderstorms and the weather radar precipitation intensity. Controllers will issue (where capable) precipitation intensity as observed by radar when using weather and radar processor (WARP) or NAS ground based digital radars with weather capabilities. When precipitation intensity information is not available, the intensity will be described as UNKNOWN. When intensity levels can be determined, they shall be described as:

a. LIGHT (< 30 dBZ)

b. MODERATE (30 to 40 dBZ)

c. HEAVY (> 40 to 50 dBZ)

d. EXTREME (> 50 dBZ)

(Refer to AC 00−45, Aviation Weather Services.)

PRECISION APPROACH−
(See PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE− A standard instrument approach procedure in which an electronic glideslope/or other type of glidepath is provided ; e.g., ILS, PAR, and GLS.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR− Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain nonradar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the aircraft's position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radar scope.

Note: The abbreviation "PAR" is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in ARTCC computers.

(See GLIDEPATH.)
(See PAR.)
(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)
(See ICAO term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR [ICAO]− Primary radar equipment used to determine the position of an aircraft during final approach, in terms of lateral and vertical deviations relative to a nominal approach path, and in range relative to touchdown.

Note: Precision approach radars are designed to enable pilots of aircraft to be given guidance by radio communication during the final stages of the approach to land.

PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (POFZ)− An 800 foot wide by 200 foot long area centered on the runway centerline adjacent to the threshold designed to protect aircraft flying precision approaches from ground vehicles and other aircraft when ceiling is less than 250 feet or visibility is less than 3/4 statute mile (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet.)

PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) SYSTEM− Provides air traffic controllers monitoring the NTZ during simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches with precision, high update rate secondary surveillance data. The high update rate surveillance sensor component of the PRM system is only required for specific runway or approach course separation. The high resolution color monitoring display, Final Monitor Aid (FMA) of the PRM system, or other FMA with the same capability, presents (NTZ) surveillance track data to controllers along with detailed maps depicting approaches and no transgression zone and is required for all simultaneous close parallel PRM NTZ monitoring operations.

(Refer to AIM)

PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (PWS)− A self−contained system used onboard some aircraft to alert the flight crew to the presence of a potential wind shear. PWS systems typically monitor 3 miles ahead and 25 degrees left and right of the aircraft's heading at or below 1200' AGL. Departing flights may receive a wind shear alert after they start the takeoff roll and may elect to abort the takeoff. Aircraft on approach receiving an alert may elect to go around or perform a wind shear escape maneuver.

PREFERENTIAL ROUTES− Preferential routes (PDRs, PARs, and PDARs) are adapted in ARTCC computers to accomplish inter/intrafacility controller coordination and to assure that flight data is posted at the proper control positions. Locations having a need for these specific inbound and outbound routes normally publish such routes in local facility bulletins, and their use by pilots minimizes flight plan route amendments. When the workload or traffic situation permits, controllers normally provide radar vectors or assign requested routes to minimize circuitous routing. Preferential routes are usually confined to one ARTCC's area and are referred to by the following names or acronyms:

a. Preferential Departure Route (PDR). A specific departure route from an airport or terminal area to an en route point where there is no further need for flow control. It may be included in an Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) or a Preferred IFR Route.

b. Preferential Arrival Route (PAR). A specific arrival route from an appropriate en route point to an airport or terminal area. It may be included in a Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) or a Preferred IFR Route. The abbreviation "PAR" is used primarily within the ARTCC and should not be confused with the abbreviation for Precision Approach Radar.

c. Preferential Departure and Arrival Route (PDAR). A route between two terminals which are within or immediately adjacent to one ARTCC's area. PDARs are not synonymous with Preferred IFR Routes but may be listed as such as they do accomplish essentially the same purpose.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

PREFERRED IFR ROUTES− Routes established between busier airports to increase system efficiency and capacity. They normally extend through one or more ARTCC areas and are designed to achieve balanced traffic flows among high density terminals. IFR clearances are issued on the basis of these routes except when severe weather avoidance procedures or other factors dictate otherwise. Preferred IFR Routes are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S. If a flight is planned to or from an area having such routes but the departure or arrival point is not listed in the Chart Supplement U.S., pilots may use that part of a Preferred IFR Route which is appropriate for the departure or arrival point that is listed. Preferred IFR Routes are correlated with DPs and STARs and may be defined by airways, jet routes, direct routes between NAVAIDs, Waypoints, NAVAID radials/ DME, or any combinations thereof.

(See CENTER'S AREA.)
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)
(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)
(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)
(Refer to NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

PRE-FLIGHT PILOT BRIEFING−
(See PILOT BRIEFING.)

PREVAILING VISIBILITY−
(See VISIBILITY.)

PRIMARY RADAR TARGET− An analog or digital target, exclusive of a secondary radar target, presented on a radar display.

PRM−
(See ILS PRM APPROACH and PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR SYSTEM.)

PROCEDURE TURN− The maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish an aircraft on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. The outbound course, direction of turn, distance within which the turn must be completed, and minimum altitude are specified in the procedure. However, unless otherwise restricted, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn are left to the discretion of the pilot.

(See ICAO term PROCEDURE TURN.)

PROCEDURE TURN [ICAO]− A maneuver in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Note 1: Procedure turns are designated "left" or "right" according to the direction of the initial turn.

Note 2: Procedure turns may be designated as being made either in level flight or while descending, according to the circumstances of each individual approach procedure.

PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND− That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of "procedure turn inbound" is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PROFILE DESCENT− An uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment; e.g., 250 knots at 10,000 feet MSL) from cruising altitude/level to interception of a glideslope or to a minimum altitude specified for the initial or intermediate approach segment of a nonprecision instrument approach. The profile descent normally terminates at the approach gate or where the glideslope or other appropriate minimum altitude is intercepted.

PROGRESS REPORT−
(See POSITION REPORT.)

PROGRESSIVE TAXI− Precise taxi instructions given to a pilot unfamiliar with the airport or issued in stages as the aircraft proceeds along the taxi route.

PROHIBITED AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)
(See ICAO term PROHIBITED AREA.)

PROHIBITED AREA [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

PROMINENT OBSTACLE– An obstacle that meets one or more of the following conditions:

a. An obstacle which stands out beyond the adjacent surface of surrounding terrain and immediately projects a noticeable hazard to aircraft in flight.

b. An obstacle, not characterized as low and close in, whose height is no less than 300 feet above the departure end of takeoff runway (DER) elevation, is within 10NM from the DER, and that penetrates that airport/heliport's diverse departure obstacle clearance surface (OCS).

c. An obstacle beyond 10NM from an airport/heliport that requires an obstacle departure procedure (ODP) to ensure obstacle avoidance.

(See OBSTACLE.)
(See OBSTRUCTION.)

PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME− Each center has a PBCT parameter for each internal airport. Proposed internal flight plans are transmitted to the adjacent center if the flight time along the proposed route from the departure airport to the center boundary is less than or equal to the value of PBCT or if airport adaptation specifies transmission regardless of PBCT.

PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME− The time that the aircraft expects to become airborne.

PROTECTED AIRSPACE− The airspace on either side of an oceanic route/track that is equal to one-half the lateral separation minimum except where reduction of protected airspace has been authorized.

PROTECTED SEGMENT- The protected segment is a segment on the amended TFM route that is to be inhibited from automatic adapted route alteration by ERAM.

PT−
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

PTP−
(See POINT−TO−POINT.)

PTS−
(See POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE.)

PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT− A segment on an IAP chart annotated as "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow will indicate the visual flight path on the profile and plan view with an associated note on the approximate heading and distance. The visual segment should be flown as a dead reckoning course while maintaining visual conditions.

PUBLISHED ROUTE− A route for which an IFR altitude has been established and published; e.g., Federal Airways, Jet Routes, Area Navigation Routes, Specified Direct Routes.

PWS−
(See PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM.)

Q

Q ROUTE− 'Q' is the designator assigned to published RNAV routes used by the United States.

QNE− The barometric pressure used for the standard altimeter setting (29.92 inches Hg.).

QNH− The barometric pressure as reported by a particular station.

QUADRANT− A quarter part of a circle, centered on a NAVAID, oriented clockwise from magnetic north as follows: NE quadrant 000-089, SE quadrant 090-179, SW quadrant 180-269, NW quadrant 270-359.

QUEUING−
(See STAGING/QUEUING.)

QUICK LOOK− A feature of the EAS and ARTS which provides the controller the capability to display full data blocks of tracked aircraft from other control positions.

R

RADAR− A device which, by measuring the time interval between transmission and reception of radio pulses and correlating the angular orientation of the radiated antenna beam or beams in azimuth and/or elevation, provides information on range, azimuth, and/or elevation of objects in the path of the transmitted pulses.

a. Primary Radar− A radar system in which a minute portion of a radio pulse transmitted from a site is reflected by an object and then received back at that site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

b. Secondary Radar/Radar Beacon (ATCRBS)− A radar system in which the object to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a radio receiver/transmitter (transponder). Radar pulses transmitted from the searching transmitter/receiver (interrogator) site are received in the cooperative equipment and used to trigger a distinctive transmission from the transponder. This reply transmission, rather than a reflected signal, is then received back at the transmitter/receiver site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR [ICAO]− A radio detection device which provides information on range, azimuth and/or elevation of objects.

a. Primary Radar− Radar system which uses reflected radio signals.

b. Secondary Radar− Radar system wherein a radio signal transmitted from a radar station initiates the transmission of a radio signal from another station.

RADAR ADVISORY− The provision of advice and information based on radar observations.

(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

RADAR ALTIMETER−

(See RADIO ALTIMETER.)

RADAR APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure which utilizes Precision Approach Radar (PAR) or Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR).

(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)
(See ICAO term RADAR APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR APPROACH [ICAO]− An approach, executed by an aircraft, under the direction of a radar controller.

RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY− A terminal ATC facility that uses radar and nonradar capabilities to provide approach control services to aircraft arriving, departing, or transiting airspace controlled by the facility.

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

a. Provides radar ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of one or more civil and/or military airports in a terminal area. The facility may provide services of a ground controlled approach (GCA); i.e., ASR and PAR approaches. A radar approach control facility may be operated by FAA, USAF, US Army, USN, USMC, or jointly by FAA and a military service. Specific facility nomenclatures are used for administrative purposes only and are related to the physical location of the facility and the operating service generally as follows:

1. Army Radar Approach Control (ARAC) (Army).

2. Radar Air Traffic Control Facility (RATCF) (Navy/FAA).

3. Radar Approach Control (RAPCON) (Air Force/FAA).

4. Terminal Radar Approach Control (TRACON) (FAA).

5. Air Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) (FAA). (Only those towers delegated approach control authority.)

RADAR ARRIVAL− An aircraft arriving at an airport served by a radar facility and in radar contact with the facility.

(See NONRADAR.)

RADAR BEACON−
(See RADAR.)

RADAR CLUTTER [ICAO]− The visual indication on a radar display of unwanted signals.

RADAR CONTACT−

a. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft that it is identified using an approved ATC surveillance source on an air traffic controller's display and that radar flight following will be provided until radar service is terminated. Radar service may also be provided within the limits of necessity and capability. When a pilot is informed of "radar contact," he/she automatically discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points.
(See ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE.)
(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)
(See RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)
(Refer to AIM.)

b. The term used to inform the controller that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controllers airspace.
(See ICAO term RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR CONTACT [ICAO]− The situation which exists when the radar blip or radar position symbol of a particular aircraft is seen and identified on a radar display.

RADAR CONTACT LOST− Used by ATC to inform a pilot that the surveillance data used to determine the aircraft's position is no longer being received, or is no longer reliable and radar service is no longer being provided. The loss may be attributed to several factors including the aircraft merging with weather or ground clutter, the aircraft operating below radar line of sight coverage, the aircraft entering an area of poor radar return, failure of the aircraft's equipment, or failure of the surveillance equipment.
(See CLUTTER.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR ENVIRONMENT− An area in which radar service may be provided.
(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING− The observation of the progress of radar identified aircraft, whose primary navigation is being provided by the pilot, wherein the controller retains and correlates the aircraft identity with the appropriate target or target symbol displayed on the radar scope.
(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR IDENTIFICATION− The process of ascertaining that an observed radar target is the radar return from a particular aircraft.
(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(See ICAO term RADAR IDENTIFICATION.)

RADAR IDENTIFICATION [ICAO]− The process of correlating a particular radar blip or radar position symbol with a specific aircraft.

RADAR IDENTIFIED AIRCRAFT− An aircraft, the position of which has been correlated with an observed target or symbol on the radar display.
(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)

RADAR MONITORING−
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR NAVIGATIONAL GUIDANCE−
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR POINT OUT− An action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller if the aircraft will or may enter the airspace or protected airspace of another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

RADAR REQUIRED− A term displayed on charts and approach plates and included in FDC NOTAMs to alert pilots that segments of either an instrument approach procedure or a route are not navigable because of either the absence or unusability of a NAVAID. The pilot can expect to be provided radar navigational guidance while transiting segments labeled with this term.
(See RADAR ROUTE.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR ROUTE− A flight path or route over which an aircraft is vectored. Navigational guidance and altitude assignments are provided by ATC.
(See FLIGHT PATH.)
(See ROUTE.)

RADAR SEPARATION−
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE− A term which encompasses one or more of the following services based on the use of radar which can be provided by a controller to a pilot of a radar identified aircraft.

a. Radar Monitoring− The radar flight-following of aircraft, whose primary navigation is being performed by the pilot, to observe and note deviations from its authorized flight path, airway, or route. When being applied specifically to radar monitoring of instrument approaches; i.e., with precision approach radar (PAR) or radar monitoring of simultaneous ILS,RNAV and GLS approaches, it includes advice and instructions whenever an aircraft nears or exceeds the prescribed PAR safety limit or simultaneous ILS RNAV and GLS no transgression zone.
(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

b. Radar Navigational Guidance− Vectoring aircraft to provide course guidance.

c. Radar Separation− Radar spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima.
(See ICAO term RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE [ICAO]− Term used to indicate a service provided directly by means of radar.

a. Monitoring− The use of radar for the purpose of providing aircraft with information and advice relative to significant deviations from nominal flight path.

b. Separation− The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from radar sources.

RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED− Used by ATC to inform a pilot that he/she will no longer be provided any of the services that could be received while in radar contact. Radar service is automatically terminated, and the pilot is not advised in the following cases:

a. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where Basic Radar service is provided.

b. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

c. An arriving VFR aircraft, receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where sequencing service is provided, has landed; or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

d. An aircraft completes a radar approach.

RADAR SURVEILLANCE− The radar observation of a given geographical area for the purpose of performing some radar function.

RADAR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES− Advisories issued to alert pilots to known or observed radar traffic which may affect the intended route of flight of their aircraft.
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR VECTORING [ICAO]− Provision of navigational guidance to aircraft in the form of specific headings, based on the use of radar.

RADIAL− A magnetic bearing extending from a VOR/VORTAC/TACAN navigation facility.

RADIO−

a. A device used for communication.

b. Used to refer to a flight service station; e.g., “Seattle Radio” is used to call Seattle FSS.

RADIO ALTIMETER− Aircraft equipment which makes use of the reflection of radio waves from the ground to determine the height of the aircraft above the surface.

RADIO BEACON−
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

RADIO DETECTION AND RANGING−
(See RADAR.)

RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR− An aircraft navigational instrument coupled with a gyro compass or similar compass that indicates the direction of a selected NAVAID and indicates bearing with respect to the heading of the aircraft.

RAIS−
(See REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE.)

RAMP−
(See APRON.)

RANDOM ALTITUDE− An altitude inappropriate for direction of flight and/or not in accordance with FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−5−1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA.

RANDOM ROUTE− Any route not established or charted/published or not otherwise available to all users.

RC−
(See ROAD RECONNAISSANCE.)

RCAG−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY.)

RCC−
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)

RCO−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

RCR−
(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

READ BACK− Repeat my message back to me.

RECEIVER AUTONOMOUS INTEGRITY MONITORING (RAIM)− A technique whereby a civil GNSS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GNSS navigation signals without reference to sensors or non-DoD integrity systems other than the receiver itself. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements.

RECEIVING CONTROLLER− A controller/facility receiving control of an aircraft from another controller/facility.

RECEIVING FACILITY−
(See RECEIVING CONTROLLER.)

RECONFORMANCE− The automated process of bringing an aircraft's Current Plan Trajectory into conformance with its track.

REDUCE SPEED TO (SPEED)−
(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

REIL−
(See RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS.)

RELEASE TIME− A departure time restriction issued to a pilot by ATC (either directly or through an authorized relay) when necessary to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.
(See ICAO term RELEASE TIME.)

RELEASE TIME [ICAO]− Time prior to which an aircraft should be given further clearance or prior to which it should not proceed in case of radio failure.

REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE (RAIS)− A temporary service provided by facilities, which are not located on the landing airport, but have communication capability and automated weather reporting available to the pilot at the landing airport.

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY− An unmanned VHF/UHF transmitter/receiver facility which is used to expand ARTCC air/ground communications coverage and to facilitate direct contact between pilots and controllers. RCAG facilities are sometimes not equipped with emergency frequencies 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz.
(Refer to AIM.)

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET− An unmanned communications facility remotely controlled by air traffic personnel. RCOs serve FSSs. RTRs serve terminal ATC facilities. An RCO or RTR may be UHF or VHF and will extend the communication range of the air traffic facility. There are several classes of RCOs and RTRs. The class is determined by the number of transmitters or receivers. Classes A through G are used primarily for air/ground purposes. RCO and RTR class O facilities are nonprotected outlets subject to undetected and prolonged outages. RCO (O's) and RTR (O's) were established for the express purpose of providing ground-to-ground communications between air traffic control specialists and pilots located at a satellite airport for delivering en route clearances, issuing departure authorizations, and acknowledging instrument flight rules cancellations or departure/landing times. As a secondary function, they may be used for advisory purposes whenever the aircraft is below the coverage of the primary air/ground frequency.

REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

REPORT− Used to instruct pilots to advise ATC of specified information; e.g., "Report passing Hamilton VOR."

REPORTING POINT− A geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft is reported.
(See COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS.)
(See ICAO term REPORTING POINT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

REPORTING POINT [ICAO]− A specified geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft can be reported.

REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE− Used by pilots to request that the entire route of flight be read verbatim in an ATC clearance. Such request should be made to preclude receiving an ATC clearance based on the original filed flight plan when a filed IFR flight plan has been revised by the pilot, company, or operations prior to departure.

REQUIRED NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (RNP)– A statement of the navigational performance necessary for operation within a defined airspace. The following terms are commonly associated with RNP:

a. Required Navigation Performance Level or Type (RNP-X). A value, in nautical miles (NM), from the intended horizontal position within which an aircraft would be at least 95-percent of the total flying time.

b. Required Navigation Performance (RNP) Airspace. A generic term designating airspace, route (s), leg (s), operation (s), or procedure (s) where minimum required navigational performance (RNP) have been established.

c. Actual Navigation Performance (ANP). A measure of the current estimated navigational performance. Also referred to as Estimated Position Error (EPE).

d. Estimated Position Error (EPE). A measure of the current estimated navigational performance. Also referred to as Actual Navigation Performance (ANP).

e. Lateral Navigation (LNAV). A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides lateral guidance to a profile or path.

f. Vertical Navigation (VNAV). A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides vertical guidance to a profile or path.

RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER− A search and rescue (SAR) facility equipped and manned to coordinate and control SAR operations in an area designated by the SAR plan. The U.S. Coast Guard and the U.S. Air Force have responsibility for the operation of RCCs.

(See ICAO term RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE.)

RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE [ICAO]− A unit responsible for promoting efficient organization of search and rescue service and for coordinating the conduct of search and rescue operations within a search and rescue region.

RESOLUTION ADVISORY−A display indication given to the pilot by the traffic alert and collision avoidance systems (TCAS II) recommending a maneuver to increase vertical separation relative to an intruding aircraft. Positive, negative, and vertical speed limit (VSL) advisories constitute the resolution advisories. A resolution advisory is also classified as corrective or preventive

RESTRICTED AREA−

(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)
(See ICAO term RESTRICTED AREA.)

RESTRICTED AREA [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions.

RESUME NORMAL SPEED− Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume an aircraft's normal operating speed. It is issued to terminate a speed adjustment where no published speed restrictions apply. It does not delete speed restrictions in published procedures of upcoming segments of flight. This does not relieve the pilot of those speed restrictions, which are applicable to 14 CFR Section 91.117.

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION− Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume his/her own navigational responsibility. It is issued after completion of a radar vector or when radar contact is lost while the aircraft is being radar vectored.

(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)
(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)

RESUME PUBLISHED SPEED- Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume published speed restrictions that are applicable to a SID, STAR, or other instrument procedure. It is issued to terminate a speed adjustment where speed restrictions are published on a charted procedure.

RMI−

(See RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR.)

RNAV−

(See AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV).)

RNAV APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure which relies on aircraft area navigation equipment for navigational guidance.

(See AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV).)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

ROAD RECONNAISSANCE− Military activity requiring navigation along roads, railroads, and rivers. Reconnaissance route/route segments are seldom along a straight line and normally require a lateral route width of 10 NM to 30 NM and an altitude range of 500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

ROGER− I have received all of your last transmission. It should not be used to answer a question requiring a yes or a no answer.

(See AFFIRMATIVE.)
(See NEGATIVE.)

ROLLOUT RVR−
(See VISIBILITY.)

ROUTE− A defined path, consisting of one or more courses in a horizontal plane, which aircraft traverse over the surface of the earth.

(See AIRWAY.)
(See JET ROUTE.)
(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)
(See UNPUBLISHED ROUTE.)

ROUTE ACTION NOTIFICATION− EDST notification that a PAR/PDR/PDAR has been applied to the flight plan.

(See ATC PREFERRED ROUTE NOTIFICATION.)
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL)

ROUTE SEGMENT− As used in Air Traffic Control, a part of a route that can be defined by two navigational fixes, two NAVAIDs, or a fix and a NAVAID.

(See FIX.)
(See ROUTE.)
(See ICAO term ROUTE SEGMENT.)

ROUTE SEGMENT [ICAO]− A portion of a route to be flown, as defined by two consecutive significant points specified in a flight plan.

RSA−
(See RUNWAY SAFETY AREA.)

RTR−
(See REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER.)

RUNWAY− A defined rectangular area on a land airport prepared for the landing and takeoff run of aircraft along its length. Runways are normally numbered in relation to their magnetic direction rounded off to the nearest 10 degrees; e.g., Runway 1, Runway 25.

(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(See ICAO term RUNWAY.)

RUNWAY [ICAO]− A defined rectangular area on a land aerodrome prepared for the landing and take-off of aircraft.

RUNWAY CENTERLINE LIGHTING−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY CONDITION READING− Numerical decelerometer readings relayed by air traffic controllers at USAF and certain civil bases for use by the pilot in determining runway braking action. These readings are routinely relayed only to USAF and Air National Guard Aircraft.

(See BRAKING ACTION.)

RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY ENTRANCE LIGHTS (REL)—An array of red lights which include the first light at the hold line followed by a series of evenly spaced lights to the runway edge aligned with the taxiway centerline, and one additional light at the runway centerline in line with the last two lights before the runway edge.

RUNWAY GRADIENT− The average slope, measured in percent, between two ends or points on a runway. Runway gradient is depicted on Government aerodrome sketches when total runway gradient exceeds 0.3%.

RUNWAY HEADING− The magnetic direction that corresponds with the runway centerline extended, not the painted runway number. When cleared to "fly or maintain runway heading," pilots are expected to fly or maintain the heading that corresponds with the extended centerline of the departure runway. Drift correction shall not be applied; e.g., Runway 4, actual magnetic heading of the runway centerline 044, fly 044.

RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY− Any runway or runways currently being used for takeoff or landing. When multiple runways are used, they are all considered active runways. In the metering sense, a selectable adapted item which specifies the landing runway configuration or direction of traffic flow. The adapted optimum flight plan from each transition fix to the vertex is determined by the runway configuration for arrival metering processing purposes.

RUNWAY LIGHTS−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY MARKINGS−
(See AIRPORT MARKING AIDS.)

RUNWAY OVERRUN− In military aviation exclusively, a stabilized or paved area beyond the end of a runway, of the same width as the runway plus shoulders, centered on the extended runway centerline.

RUNWAY PROFILE DESCENT− An instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure to a runway published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form and may be associated with a STAR. Runway Profile Descents provide routing and may depict crossing altitudes, speed restrictions, and headings to be flown from the en route structure to the point where the pilot will receive clearance for and execute an instrument approach procedure. A Runway Profile Descent may apply to more than one runway if so stated on the chart.
(Refer to AIM.)

RUNWAY SAFETY AREA− A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared, or suitable, for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an undershoot, overshoot, or excursion from the runway. The dimensions of the RSA vary and can be determined by using the criteria contained within AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3. Figure 3−1 in AC 150/5300-13 depicts the RSA. The design standards dictate that the RSA shall be:

a. Cleared, graded, and have no potentially hazardous ruts, humps, depressions, or other surface variations;

b. Drained by grading or storm sewers to prevent water accumulation;

c. Capable, under dry conditions, of supporting snow removal equipment, aircraft rescue and firefighting equipment, and the occasional passage of aircraft without causing structural damage to the aircraft; and,

d. Free of objects, except for objects that need to be located in the runway safety area because of their function. These objects shall be constructed on low impact resistant supports (frangible mounted structures) to the lowest practical height with the frangible point no higher than 3 inches above grade.
(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3.)

RUNWAY STATUS LIGHTS (RWSL) SYSTEM—The RWSL is a system of runway and taxiway lighting to provide pilots increased situational awareness by illuminating runway entry lights (REL) when the runway is unsafe for entry or crossing, and take-off hold lights (THL) when the runway is unsafe for departure.

RUNWAY TRANSITION−

a. Conventional STARs/SIDs. The portion of a STAR/SID that serves a particular runway or runways at an airport.

b. RNAV STARs/SIDs. Defines a path(s) from the common route to the final point(s) on a STAR. For a SID, the common route that serves a particular runway or runways at an airport.

RUNWAY USE PROGRAM− A noise abatement runway selection plan designed to enhance noise abatement efforts with regard to airport communities for arriving and departing aircraft. These plans are developed into runway use programs and apply to all turbojet aircraft 12,500 pounds or heavier; turbojet aircraft less than 12,500 pounds are included only if the airport proprietor determines that the aircraft creates a noise problem. Runway use programs are coordinated with FAA offices, and safety criteria used in these programs are developed by the Office of Flight Operations. Runway use programs are administered by the Air Traffic Service as "Formal" or "Informal" programs.

a. Formal Runway Use Program− An approved noise abatement program which is defined and acknowledged in a Letter of Understanding between Flight Operations, Air Traffic Service, the airport proprietor, and the users. Once established, participation in the program is mandatory for aircraft operators and pilots as provided for in 14 CFR Section 91.129.

b. Informal Runway Use Program− An approved noise abatement program which does not require a Letter of Understanding, and participation in the program is voluntary for aircraft operators/pilots.

RUNWAY VISIBILITY VALUE−
(See VISIBILITY.)

RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE−
(See VISIBILITY.)

S

SAA−
(See SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE.)

SAFETY ALERT− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he/she is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions; e.g., "Low Altitude Alert, check your altitude immediately."

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft that is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible; e.g., "Traffic Alert, advise you turn right heading zero niner zero or climb to eight thousand immediately."

Note: The issuance of a safety alert is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of an unsafe condition. The course of action provided will be predicated on other traffic under ATC control. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, he/she will take.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM− A software enhancement to ASDE−3, ASDE−X, and ASDE−3X, that predicts the path of aircraft landing and/or departing, and/or vehicular movements on runways. Visual and aural alarms are activated when the safety logic projects a potential collision. The Airport Movement Area Safety System (AMASS) is a safety logic system enhancement to the ASDE−3. The Safety Logic System for ASDE−X and ASDE−3X is an integral part of the software program.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM ALERTS−

a. ALERT− An actual situation involving two real safety logic tracks (aircraft/aircraft, aircraft/vehicle, or aircraft/other tangible object) that safety logic has predicted will result in an imminent collision, based upon the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

b. FALSE ALERT−

1. Alerts generated by one or more false surface−radar targets that the system has interpreted as real tracks and placed into safety logic.

2. Alerts in which the safety logic software did not perform correctly, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

3. The alert is generated by surface radar targets caused by moderate or greater precipitation.

c. NUISANCE ALERT− An alert in which one or more of the following is true:

1. The alert is generated by a known situation that is not considered an unsafe operation, such as LAHSO or other approved operations.

2. The alert is generated by inaccurate secondary radar data received by the Safety Logic System.

3. One or more of the aircraft involved in the alert is not intending to use a runway (for example, helicopter, pipeline patrol, non−Mode C overflight, etc.).

d. VALID NON−ALERT− A situation in which the safety logic software correctly determines that an alert is not required, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

e. INVALID NON−ALERT− A situation in which the safety logic software did not issue an alert when an alert was required, based upon the design specifications.

SAIL BACK− A maneuver during high wind conditions (usually with power off) where float plane movement is controlled by water rudders/opening and closing cabin doors.

SAME DIRECTION AIRCRAFT− Aircraft are operating in the same direction when:

a. They are following the same track in the same direction; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in the same direction; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of less than 45 degrees.

SAR−
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SAY AGAIN− Used to request a repeat of the last transmission. Usually specifies transmission or portion thereof not understood or received; e.g., "Say again all after ABRAM VOR."

SAY ALTITUDE− Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's specific altitude/flight level. When the aircraft is climbing or descending, the pilot should state the indicated altitude rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

SAY HEADING− Used by ATC to request an aircraft heading. The pilot should state the actual heading of the aircraft.

SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL (STA)− A STA is the desired time that an aircraft should cross a certain point (landing or metering fix). It takes other traffic and airspace configuration into account. A STA time shows the results of the TBFM scheduler that has calculated an arrival time according to parameters such as optimized spacing, aircraft performance, and weather.

SDF−
(See SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY.)

SEA LANE− A designated portion of water outlined by visual surface markers for and intended to be used by aircraft designed to operate on water.

SEARCH AND RESCUE− A service which seeks missing aircraft and assists those found to be in need of assistance. It is a cooperative effort using the facilities and services of available Federal, state and local agencies. The U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for coordination of search and rescue for the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible for search and rescue for the Inland Region. Information pertinent to search and rescue should be passed through any air traffic facility or be transmitted directly to the Rescue Coordination Center by telephone.
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SEARCH AND RESCUE FACILITY− A facility responsible for maintaining and operating a search and rescue (SAR) service to render aid to persons and property in distress. It is any SAR unit, station, NET, or other operational activity which can be usefully employed during an SAR Mission; e.g., a Civil Air Patrol Wing, or a Coast Guard Station.
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SECNOT−
(See SECURITY NOTICE.)

SECONDARY RADAR TARGET− A target derived from a transponder return presented on a radar display.

SECTIONAL AERONAUTICAL CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL− A parameter number of minutes after the meter fix time when arrival aircraft will be deleted from the arrival sector list.

SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT) − A SECNOT is a request originated by the Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC) for an extensive communications search for aircraft involved, or suspected of being involved, in a security violation, or are considered a security risk. A SECNOT will include the aircraft identification, search area, and expiration time. The search area, as defined by the ATSC, could be a single airport, multiple airports, a radius of an airport or fix, or a route of flight. Once the expiration time has been reached, the SECNOT is considered to be cancelled.

SECURITY SERVICES AIRSPACE − Areas established through the regulatory process or by NOTAM, issued by the Administrator under title 14, CFR, sections 99.7, 91.141, and 91.139, which specify that ATC security services are required; i.e., ADIZ or temporary flight rules areas.

SEE AND AVOID− When weather conditions permit, pilots operating IFR or VFR are required to observe and maneuver to avoid other aircraft. Right-of-way rules are contained in 14 CFR Part 91.

SEGMENTED CIRCLE− A system of visual indicators designed to provide traffic pattern information at airports without operating control towers.
(Refer to AIM.)

SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE− An instrument approach procedure may have as many as four separate segments depending on how the approach procedure is structured.

a. Initial Approach− The segment between the initial approach fix and the intermediate fix or the point where the aircraft is established on the intermediate course or final approach course.

(See ICAO term INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

b. Intermediate Approach− The segment between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix.

(See ICAO term INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT.)

c. Final Approach− The segment between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport, or missed approach point.

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

d. Missed Approach− The segment between the missed approach point or the point of arrival at decision height and the missed approach fix at the prescribed altitude.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

(See ICAO term MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SEPARATION− In air traffic control, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

(See SEPARATION MINIMA.)

(See ICAO term SEPARATION.)

SEPARATION [ICAO]− Spacing between aircraft, levels or tracks.

SEPARATION MINIMA− The minimum longitudinal, lateral, or vertical distances by which aircraft are spaced through the application of air traffic control procedures.

(See SEPARATION.)

SERVICE− A generic term that designates functions or assistance available from or rendered by air traffic control. For example, Class C service would denote the ATC services provided within a Class C airspace area.

SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN− An approved plan to minimize the affect of severe weather on traffic flows in impacted terminal and/or ARTCC areas. SWAP is normally implemented to provide the least disruption to the ATC system when flight through portions of airspace is difficult or impossible due to severe weather.

SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS− Preliminary messages issued in order to alert users that a Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (WW) is being issued. These messages define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The messages are unscheduled and issued as required by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) at Norman, Oklahoma.

(See AIRMET.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(See SIGMET.)

SFA−

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SFO−

(See SIMULATED FLAMEOUT.)

SHF−

(See SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY.)

SHORT RANGE CLEARANCE− A clearance issued to a departing IFR flight which authorizes IFR flight to a specific fix short of the destination while air traffic control facilities are coordinating and obtaining the complete clearance.

SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT− An aircraft which, at some weight within its approved operating weight, is capable of operating from a runway in compliance with the applicable STOL characteristics, airworthiness, operations, noise, and pollution standards.

(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

SIAP−

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SID−

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE.)

SIDESTEP MANEUVER− A visual maneuver accomplished by a pilot at the completion of an instrument approach to permit a straight-in landing on a parallel runway not more than 1,200 feet to either side of the runway to which the instrument approach was conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET− A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of all aircraft.

SIGMET advisories cover severe and extreme turbulence, severe icing, and widespread dust or sandstorms that reduce visibility to less than 3 miles.
(See AIRMET.)
(See AWW.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See ICAO term SIGMET INFORMATION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET INFORMATION [ICAO]− Information issued by a meteorological watch office concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION−
(See SIGMET.)

SIGNIFICANT POINT− A point, whether a named intersection, a NAVAID, a fix derived from a NAVAID(s), or geographical coordinate expressed in degrees of latitude and longitude, which is established for the purpose of providing separation, as a reporting point, or to delineate a route of flight.

SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY− A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches. The final approach course is similar to that of an ILS localizer except that the SDF course may be offset from the runway, generally not more than 3 degrees, and the course may be wider than the localizer, resulting in a lower degree of accuracy.
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULATED FLAMEOUT− A practice approach by a jet aircraft (normally military) at idle thrust to a runway. The approach may start at a runway (high key) and may continue on a relatively high and wide downwind leg with a continuous turn to final. It terminates in landing or low approach. The purpose of this approach is to simulate a flameout.
(See FLAMEOUT.)

SIMULTANEOUS CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES- A simultaneous, independent approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 3,000 feet and less than 4300 feet between centerlines. Aircraft are permitted to pass each other during these simultaneous operations. Integral parts of a total system are radar, NTZ monitoring with enhanced FMA color displays that include aural and visual alerts and predictive aircraft position software, communications override, ATC procedures, an Attention All Users Page (AAUP), PRM in the approach name, and appropriate ground based and airborne equipment. High update rate surveillance sensor required for certain runway or approach course separations.

SIMULTANEOUS (CONVERGING) DEPENDENT APPROACHES-An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to runways or missed approach courses that intersect where required minimum spacing between the aircraft on each final approach course is required.

SIMULTANEOUS (CONVERGING) INDEPENDENT APPROACHES- An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to non-parallel runways where approach procedure design maintains the required aircraft spacing throughout the approach and missed approach and hence the operations may be conducted independently.

SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES− An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 4,300 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne equipment.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA)− An instrument landing system comprised of an ILS PRM, RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach to one runway and an offset LDA PRM with glideslope or an RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach utilizing vertical guidance to another where parallel runway spaced less than 3,000 feet and at least 750 feet apart. The approach courses converge by 2.5 to 3 degrees. Simultaneous close parallel PRM approach procedures apply up to the point where the approach course separation becomes 3,000 feet, at the offset MAP. From the offset MAP to the runway threshold, visual separation by the aircraft conducting the offset approach is utilized.
(Refer to AIM)

SIMULTANEOUS (PARALLEL) DEPENDENT APPROACHES- An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to adjacent parallel runways where prescribed diagonal spacing must be maintained. Aircraft are not permitted to pass each other during simultaneous dependent operations. Integral parts of a total system ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne and ground based equipment.

SINGLE DIRECTION ROUTES− Preferred IFR Routes which are sometimes depicted on high altitude en route charts and which are normally flown in one direction only.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH− A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft which permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation “SFA” in the DOD FLIP IFR Supplement under “Communications” indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT− A military turbojet aircraft possessing one set of flight controls, tandem cockpits, or two sets of flight controls but operated by one pilot is considered single-piloted by ATC when determining the appropriate air traffic service to be applied.

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SKYSPOTTER− A pilot who has received specialized training in observing and reporting inflight weather phenomena.

SLASH− A radar beacon reply displayed as an elongated target.

SLDI−

(See SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL.)

SLOT TIME−

(See METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

SLOW TAXI− To taxi a float plane at low power or low RPM.

SN−

(See SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION.)

SPEAK SLOWER− Used in verbal communications as a request to reduce speech rate.

SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA)− Any airspace with defined dimensions within the National Airspace System wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations. This airspace may be restricted areas, prohibited areas, military operations areas, air ATC assigned airspace, and any other designated airspace areas. The dimensions of this airspace are programmed into EDST and can be designated as either active or inactive by screen entry. Aircraft trajectories are constantly tested against the dimensions of active areas and alerts issued to the applicable sectors when violations are predicted.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

SPECIAL EMERGENCY− A condition of air piracy or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

SPECIAL INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE− Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

a. Alert Area− Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert Areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an Alert Area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

b. Controlled Firing Area− Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

c. Military Operations Area (MOA)− A MOA is airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

d. Prohibited Area− Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.

(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to En Route Charts.)

e. Restricted Area− Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Restricted areas are depicted on en route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 73.)
(Refer to AIM.)

f. Warning Area− A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States, that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS− Meteorological conditions that are less than those required for basic VFR flight in Class B, C, D, or E surface areas and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.

(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT [ICAO]− A VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in metrological conditions below VMC.

SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS− Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minima. Such operations must be requested by the pilot and approved by ATC.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)
(See ICAO term SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT.)

SPEED−

(See AIRSPEED.)
(See GROUND SPEED.)

SPEED ADJUSTMENT− An ATC procedure used to request pilots to adjust aircraft speed to a specific value for the purpose of providing desired spacing. Pilots are expected to maintain a speed of plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed. Examples of speed adjustments are:

a. "Increase/reduce speed to Mach point (number.)"

b. "Increase/reduce speed to (speed in knots)" or "Increase/reduce speed (number of knots) knots."

SPEED BRAKES− Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed during descent and landing.

SPEED SEGMENTS− Portions of the arrival route between the transition point and the vertex along the optimum flight path for which speeds and altitudes are specified. There is one set of arrival speed segments adapted from each transition point to each vertex. Each set may contain up to six segments.

SQUAWK (Mode, Code, Function)− Activate specific modes/codes/functions on the aircraft transponder; e.g., "Squawk three/alpha, two one zero five, low."

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STA−

(See SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

STAGING/QUEUING− The placement, integration, and segregation of departure aircraft in designated movement areas of an airport by departure fix, EDCT, and/or restriction.

STAND BY− Means the controller or pilot must pause for a few seconds, usually to attend to other duties of a higher priority. Also means to wait as in "stand by for clearance." The caller should reestablish contact if a delay is lengthy. "Stand by" is not an approval or denial.

STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE (SIAP)−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE (SID)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control (ATC) departure procedure printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstacle clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement to expedite traffic flow and to reduce pilot/controller

workload. ATC clearance must always be received prior to flying a SID.
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

STANDARD RATE TURN− A turn of three degrees per second.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. STARs provide transition from the en route structure to an outer fix or an instrument approach fix/arrival waypoint in the terminal area.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STANDARD TERMINAL AUTOMATION REPLACEMENT SYSTEM (STARS)−
(See DTAS.)

STAR−
(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

STATE AIRCRAFT− Aircraft used in military, customs and police service, in the exclusive service of any government, or of any political subdivision, thereof including the government of any state, territory, or possession of the United States or the District of Columbia, but not including any government-owned aircraft engaged in carrying persons or property for commercial purposes.

STATIC RESTRICTIONS− Those restrictions that are usually not subject to change, fixed, in place, and/or published.

STATIONARY RESERVATIONS− Altitude reservations which encompass activities in a fixed area. Stationary reservations may include activities, such as special tests of weapons systems or equipment, certain U.S. Navy carrier, fleet, and anti-submarine operations, rocket, missile and drone operations, and certain aerial refueling or similar operations.

STEP TAXI− To taxi a float plane at full power or high RPM.

STEP TURN− A maneuver used to put a float plane in a planing configuration prior to entering an active sea lane for takeoff. The STEP TURN maneuver should only be used upon pilot request.

STEPDOWN FIX− A fix permitting additional descent within a segment of an instrument approach procedure by identifying a point at which a controlling obstacle has been safely overflown.

STEREO ROUTE− A routinely used route of flight established by users and ARTCCs identified by a coded name; e.g., ALPHA 2. These routes minimize flight plan handling and communications.

STOL AIRCRAFT−
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

***STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK*−** Used by ATC to inform an aircraft to turn-off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder. It is issued when the verbally reported altitude varies 300 feet or more from the automatic altitude report.
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP AND GO− A procedure wherein an aircraft will land, make a complete stop on the runway, and then commence a takeoff from that point.
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See OPTION APPROACH.)

***STOP BURST*−**
(See STOP STREAM.)

***STOP BUZZER*−**
(See STOP STREAM.)

***STOP SQUAWK (Mode or Code)*−** Used by ATC to tell the pilot to turn specified functions of the aircraft transponder off.
(See STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

***STOP STREAM*−** Used by ATC to request a pilot to suspend electronic attack activity.
(See JAMMING.)

STOPOVER FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan format which permits in a single submission the filing of a sequence of flight plans through interim full-stop destinations to a final destination.

STOPWAY− An area beyond the takeoff runway no less wide than the runway and centered upon the extended centerline of the runway, able to support the airplane during an aborted takeoff, without causing structural damage to the airplane, and designated by the airport authorities for use in decelerating the airplane during an aborted takeoff.

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR− An instrument approach wherein final approach is begun without first having executed a procedure turn, not necessarily completed with a straight-in landing or made to straight-in landing minimums.

(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR− Entry into the traffic pattern by interception of the extended runway centerline (final approach course) without executing any other portion of the traffic pattern.

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING− A landing made on a runway aligned within 30° of the final approach course following completion of an instrument approach.

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS−
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS−
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRATEGIC PLANNING− Planning whereby solutions are sought to resolve potential conflicts.

SUBSTITUTE ROUTE− A route assigned to pilots when any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status. These routes consist of:

a. Substitute routes which are shown on U.S. Government charts.

b. Routes defined by ATC as specific NAVAID radials or courses.

c. Routes defined by ATC as direct to or between NAVAIDs.

SUNSET AND SUNRISE− The mean solar times of sunset and sunrise as published in the Nautical Almanac, converted to local standard time for the locality concerned. Within Alaska, the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as defined for each locality.

SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION− Airport facilities staffed with contract personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. (All other services are provided by the parent FSS.)

SUPPS− Refers to ICAO Document 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures. SUPPS contain procedures for each ICAO Region which are unique to that Region and are not covered in the worldwide provisions identified in the ICAO Air Navigation Plan. Procedures contained in Chapter 8 are based in part on those published in SUPPS.

SURFACE AREA− The airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D, or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.

SURPIC− A description of surface vessels in the area of a Search and Rescue incident including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(Refer to FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10−6−4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

SURVEILLANCE APPROACH− An instrument approach wherein the air traffic controller issues instructions, for pilot compliance, based on aircraft position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), and the distance (range) from the end of the runway as displayed on the controller's radar scope. The controller will provide recommended altitudes on final approach if requested by the pilot.

(Refer to AIM.)

SWAP−
(See SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN.)

SWSL−
(See SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION.)

SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION− Military activity accomplished by navigating along a preplanned route using internal aircraft systems to maintain a desired track. This activity normally requires a lateral route width of 10 NM and altitude range of 1,000 feet to 6,000 feet AGL with some route segments that permit terrain following.

T

TACAN−
(See TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION.)

TACAN-ONLY AIRCRAFT− An aircraft, normally military, possessing TACAN with DME but no VOR navigational system capability. Clearances must specify TACAN or VORTAC fixes and approaches.

TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION− An ultra-high frequency electronic rho-theta air navigation aid which provides suitably equipped aircraft a continuous indication of bearing and distance to the TACAN station.
(See VORTAC.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TAILWIND− Any wind more than 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway. The magnetic direction of the runway shall be used as the basis for determining the longitudinal axis.

TAKEOFF AREA−
(See LANDING AREA.)

TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE (TODA)– The takeoff run available plus the length of any remaining runway or clearway beyond the far end of the takeoff run available.
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of the takeoff run available plus the length of the clearway, if provided.

TAKEOFF HOLD LIGHTS (THL)– The THL system is composed of in-pavement lighting in a double, longitudinal row of lights aligned either side of the runway centerline. The lights are focused toward the arrival end of the runway at the "line up and wait" point, and they extend for 1,500 feet in front of the holding aircraft. Illuminated red lights indicate to an aircraft in position for takeoff or rolling that it is unsafe to takeoff because the runway is occupied or about to be occupied by an aircraft or vehicle.

TAKEOFF ROLL − The process whereby an aircraft is aligned with the runway centerline and the aircraft is moving with the intent to take off. For helicopters, this pertains to the act of becoming airborne after departing a takeoff area.

TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE (TORA) – The runway length declared available and suitable for the ground run of an airplane taking off.
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of runway declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane take-off.

TARGET− The indication shown on an analog display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.
(See ASSOCIATED.)
(See DIGITAL TARGET.)
(See DIGITIZED RADAR TARGET.)
(See FUSED TARGET)
(See PRIMARY RADAR TARGET.)
(See RADAR.)
(See SECONDARY RADAR TARGET.)
(See TARGET SYMBOL.)
(See ICAO term TARGET.)
(See UNASSOCIATED.)

TARGET [ICAO]− In radar:

a. Generally, any discrete object which reflects or retransmits energy back to the radar equipment.

b. Specifically, an object of radar search or surveillance.

TARGET RESOLUTION− A process to ensure that correlated radar targets do not touch. Target resolution must be applied as follows:

a. Between the edges of two primary targets or the edges of the ASR-9/11 primary target symbol.

b. Between the end of the beacon control slash and the edge of a primary target.

c. Between the ends of two beacon control slashes.

Note 1: Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts must be issued when this procedure is used.

Note 2: This procedure must not be used when utilizing mosaic radar systems or multi−sensor mode.

TARGET SYMBOL− A computer-generated indication shown on a radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

TARMAC DELAY− The holding of an aircraft on the ground either before departure or after landing with no opportunity for its passengers to deplane.

TARMAC DELAY AIRCRAFT− An aircraft whose pilot−in−command has requested to taxi to the ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning area to comply with the Three−hour Tarmac Rule.

TARMAC DELAY REQUEST− A request by the pilot−in−command to taxi to the ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning location to comply with the Three−hour Tarmac Rule.

TAS−
(See TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEMS.)

TAWS−
(See TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM.)

TAXI− The movement of an airplane under its own power on the surface of an airport (14 CFR Section 135.100 [Note]). Also, it describes the surface movement of helicopters equipped with wheels.
(See AIR TAXI.)
(See HOVER TAXI.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Section 135.100.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TAXI PATTERNS− Patterns established to illustrate the desired flow of ground traffic for the different runways or airport areas available for use.

TCAS−
(See TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM.)

TCH−
(See THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT.)

TCLT−
(See TENTATIVE CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

TDLS−
(See TERMINAL DATA LINK SYSTEM.)

TDZE−
(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)

TELEPHONE INFORMATION BRIEFING SERVICE− A continuous telephone recording of meteorological and/or aeronautical information.
(Refer to AIM.)

TEMPORARY FLIGHT RESTRICTION (TFR) − A TFR is a regulatory action issued by the FAA via the U.S. NOTAM System, under the authority of United States Code, Title 49. TFRs are issued within the sovereign airspace of the United States and its territories to restrict certain aircraft from operating within a defined area on a temporary basis to protect persons or property in the air or on the ground. While not all inclusive, TFRs may be issued for disaster or hazard situations such as: toxic gas leaks or spills, fumes from flammable agents, aircraft accident/incident sites, aviation or ground resources engaged in wildlife suppression, or aircraft relief activities following a disaster. TFRs may also be issued in support of VIP movements; for reasons of national security; or when determined necessary for the management of air traffic in the vicinity of aerial demonstrations or major sporting events. NAS users or other interested parties should contact a FSS for TFR information. Additionally, TFR information can be found in automated briefings, NOTAM publications, and on the internet at http://www.faa.gov. The FAA also distributes TFR information to aviation user groups for further dissemination.

TENTATIVE CALCULATED LANDING TIME− A projected time calculated for adapted vertex for each arrival aircraft based upon runway configuration, airport acceptance rate, airport arrival delay period, and other metered arrival aircraft. This time is either the VTA of the aircraft or the TCLT/ACLT of the previous aircraft plus the AAI, whichever is later. This time will be updated in response to an aircraft's progress and its current relationship to other arrivals.

TERMINAL AREA− A general term used to describe airspace in which approach control service or airport traffic control service is provided.

TERMINAL AREA FACILITY− A facility providing air traffic control service for arriving and departing IFR, VFR, Special VFR, and on occasion en route aircraft.
(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See TOWER.)

TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEMS (TAS)− TAS is used to identify the numerous automated tracking systems including ARTS IIE, ARTS IIIA, ARTS IIIE, STARS, and MEARTS.

TERMINAL DATA LINK SYSTEM (TDLS)− A system that provides Digital Automatic Terminal Information Service (D−ATIS) both on a specified radio frequency and also, for subscribers, in a text message via data link to the cockpit or to a gate printer. TDLS also provides Pre−departure Clearances (PDC), at selected airports, to subscribers, through a service provider, in text to the cockpit or to a gate printer. In addition, TDLS will emulate the Flight Data Input/Output (FDIO) information within the control tower.

TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA− Airspace surrounding designated airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring, sequencing, and separation on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The AIM contains an explanation of TRSA. TRSAs are depicted on VFR aeronautical charts. Pilot participation is urged but is not mandatory.

TERMINAL VFR RADAR SERVICE− A national program instituted to extend the terminal radar services provided instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft to visual flight rules (VFR) aircraft. The program is divided into four types service referred to as basic radar service, terminal radar service area (TRSA) service, Class B service and Class C service. The type of service provided at a particular location is contained in the Chart Supplement U.S.

a. Basic Radar Service− These services are provided for VFR aircraft by all commissioned terminal radar facilities. Basic radar service includes safety alerts, traffic advisories, limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot, and sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a letter of agreement. The purpose of this service is to adjust the flow of arriving IFR and VFR aircraft into the traffic pattern in a safe and orderly manner and to provide traffic advisories to departing VFR aircraft.

b. TRSA Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, sequencing of all IFR and participating VFR aircraft to the primary airport and separation between all participating VFR aircraft. The purpose of this service is to provide separation between all participating VFR aircraft and all IFR aircraft operating within the area defined as a TRSA.

c. Class C Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation between IFR and VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport.

d. Class B Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation of aircraft based on IFR, VFR, and/or weight, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport(s).

(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)
(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNI-DIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION− A very high frequency terminal omnirange station located on or near an airport and used as an approach aid.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(See VOR.)

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS)− An on−board, terrain proximity alerting system providing the aircrew 'Low Altitude warnings' to allow immediate pilot action.

TERRAIN FOLLOWING− The flight of a military aircraft maintaining a constant AGL altitude above the terrain or the highest obstruction. The altitude of the aircraft will constantly change with the varying terrain and/or obstruction.

TETRAHEDRON− A device normally located on uncontrolled airports and used as a landing direction indicator. The small end of a tetrahedron points in the direction of landing. At controlled airports, the tetrahedron, if installed, should be disregarded because tower instructions supersede the indicator.

(See SEGMENTED CIRCLE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TF−

(See TERRAIN FOLLOWING.)

THAT IS CORRECT− The understanding you have is right.

THREE−HOUR TARMAC RULE− Rule that relates to Department of Transportation (DOT) requirements placed on airlines when tarmac delays are anticipated to reach 3 hours.

360 OVERHEAD−

(See OVERHEAD MANEUVER.)

THRESHOLD− The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(See DISPLACED THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT− The theoretical height above the runway threshold at

which the aircraft's glideslope antenna would be if the aircraft maintains the trajectory established by the mean ILS glideslope or the altitude at which the calculated glidepath of an RNAV or GPS approaches.
(See GLIDESLOPE.)
(See THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD LIGHTS−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TIBS−
(See TELEPHONE INFORMATION BRIEFING SERVICE.)

TIE-IN FACILITY− The FSS primarily responsible for providing FSS services, including telecommunications services for landing facilities or navigational aids located within the boundaries of a flight plan area (FPA). Three-letter identifiers are assigned to each FSS/FPA and are annotated as tie-in facilities in the Chart Supplement U.S., the Alaska Supplement, the Pacific Supplement, and FAA Order JO 7350.8, Location Identifiers. Large consolidated FSS facilities may have many tie-in facilities or FSS sectors within one facility.
(See FLIGHT PLAN AREA.)
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)− The hardware, software, methods, processes, and initiatives to manage air traffic flows based on time to balance air traffic demand with system capacity, and support the management of PBN. This includes, but not limited to, Adjacent Center Metering (ACM). En Route Departure Capability (EDC), Ground-Interval Management-Spacing (GIM-S), Integrated Departure/Arrival Capability (IDAC), Single Center Metering (SCM), Time-Based Metering (TBM), Time-Based Scheduling (TBS), and Extended/Coupled Metering.

TIME GROUP− Four digits representing the hour and minutes from the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) clock. FAA uses UTC for all operations. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. When written, a time zone designator is used to indicate local time; e.g. "0205M" (Mountain). The local time may be based on the 24-hour clock system. The day begins at 0000 and ends at 2359.

TIS−B−
(See TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)

TMPA−
(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT.)

TMU−
(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT.)

TODA−
(See TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TOI−
(See TRACK OF INTEREST.)

TOP ALTITUDE− In reference to SID published altitude restrictions the charted "maintain" altitude contained in the procedure description or assigned by ATC.

TORA−
(See TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TORCHING− The burning of fuel at the end of an exhaust pipe or stack of a reciprocating aircraft engine, the result of an excessive richness in the fuel air mixture.

TOS−
(See TRAJECTORY OPTIONS SET)

TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]− For IFR flights, the estimated time required from take-off to arrive over that designated point, defined by reference to navigation aids, from which it is intended that an instrument approach procedure will be commenced, or, if no navigation aid is associated with the destination aerodrome, to arrive over the destination aerodrome. For VFR flights, the estimated time required from take-off to arrive over the destination aerodrome.
(See ICAO term ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

TOUCH-AND-GO− An operation by an aircraft that lands and departs on a runway without stopping or exiting the runway.

TOUCH-AND-GO LANDING−
(See TOUCH-AND-GO.)

TOUCHDOWN−

a. The point at which an aircraft first makes contact with the landing surface.

b. Concerning a precision radar approach (PAR), it is the point where the glide path intercepts the landing surface.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN.)

TOUCHDOWN [ICAO]− The point where the nominal glide path intercepts the runway.

Note: Touchdown as defined above is only a datum and is not necessarily the actual point at which the aircraft will touch the runway.

TOUCHDOWN RVR−

(See VISIBILITY.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE− The first 3,000 feet of the runway beginning at the threshold. The area is used for determination of Touchdown Zone Elevation in the development of straight-in landing minimums for instrument approaches.

(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE [ICAO]− The portion of a runway, beyond the threshold, where it is intended landing aircraft first contact the runway.

TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION− The highest elevation in the first 3,000 feet of the landing surface. TDZE is indicated on the instrument approach procedure chart when straight-in landing minimums are authorized.

(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTING−

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TOWER− A terminal facility that uses air/ground communications, visual signaling, and other devices to provide ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of an airport or on the movement area. Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace area regardless of flight plan or weather conditions (IFR or VFR). A tower may also provide approach control services (radar or nonradar).

(See AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See MOVEMENT AREA.)
(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL TOWER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE− The control of IFR en route traffic within delegated airspace between two or more adjacent approach control facilities. This service is designed to expedite traffic and reduce control and pilot communication requirements.

TOWER TO TOWER−

(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

TRACEABLE PRESSURE STANDARD− The facility station pressure instrument, with certification/calibration traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Traceable pressure standards may be mercurial barometers, commissioned ASOS/AWSS or dual transducer AWOS, or portable pressure standards or DASI.

TRACK− The actual flight path of an aircraft over the surface of the earth.

(See COURSE.)
(See FLIGHT PATH.)
(See ROUTE.)
(See ICAO term TRACK.)

TRACK [ICAO]− The projection on the earth's surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which path at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (True, Magnetic, or Grid).

TRACK OF INTEREST (TOI)− Displayed data representing an airborne object that threatens or has the potential to threaten North America or National Security. Indicators may include, but are not limited to: noncompliance with air traffic control instructions or aviation regulations; extended loss of communications; unusual transmissions or unusual flight behavior; unauthorized intrusion into controlled airspace or an ADIZ; noncompliance with issued flight restrictions/security procedures; or unlawful interference with airborne flight crews, up to and including hijack. In certain circumstances, an object may become a TOI based on specific and credible intelligence pertaining to that particular aircraft/object, its passengers, or its cargo.

TRACK OF INTEREST RESOLUTION− A TOI will normally be considered resolved when: the aircraft/object is no longer airborne; the aircraft complies with air traffic control instructions, aviation regulations, and/or issued flight restrictions/security procedures; radio contact is re−established and authorized control of the aircraft is verified; the aircraft is intercepted and intent is verified to be nonthreatening/nonhostile; TOI was identified based on specific and credible intelligence that was later determined to be invalid or unreliable; or displayed data is identified and characterized as invalid.

TRAFFIC−

a. A term used by a controller to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued:

1. In response to a handoff or point out,

2. In anticipation of a handoff or point out, or

3. In conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

b. A term used by ATC to refer to one or more aircraft.

TRAFFIC ADVISORIES− Advisories issued to alert pilots to other known or observed air traffic which may be in such proximity to the position or intended route of flight of their aircraft to warrant their attention. Such advisories may be based on:

a. Visual observation.

b. Observation of radar identified and nonidentified aircraft targets on an ATC radar display, or

c. Verbal reports from pilots or other facilities.

Note 1: The word "traffic" followed by additional information, if known, is used to provide such advisories; e.g., "Traffic, 2 o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, eight thousand."

Note 2: Traffic advisory service will be provided to the extent possible depending on higher priority duties of the controller or other limitations; e.g., radar limitations, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, or controller workload. Radar/nonradar traffic advisories do not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to see and avoid other aircraft. Pilots are cautioned that there are many times when the controller is not able to give traffic advisories concerning all traffic in the aircraft's proximity; in other words, when a pilot requests or is receiving traffic advisories, he/she should not assume that all traffic will be issued.

(Refer to AIM.)

TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY, (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude).

(See SAFETY ALERT.)

TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM− An airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals which operates independent of ground-based equipment. TCAS-I generates traffic advisories only. TCAS-II generates traffic advisories, and resolution (collision avoidance) advisories in the vertical plane.

TRAFFIC INFORMATION−

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST (TIS−B)− The broadcast of ATC derived traffic information to ADS−B equipped (1090ES or UAT) aircraft. The source of this traffic information is derived from ground−based air traffic surveillance sensors, typically from radar targets. TIS−B service will be available throughout the NAS where there are both adequate surveillance coverage (radar) and adequate broadcast coverage from ADS−B ground stations. Loss of TIS−B will occur when an aircraft enters an area not covered by the GBT network. If this occurs in an area with adequate surveillance coverage (radar), nearby aircraft that remain within the adequate broadcast coverage (ADS−B) area will view the first aircraft. TIS−B may continue when an aircraft enters an area with inadequate surveillance coverage (radar); nearby aircraft that remain within the adequate broadcast coverage (ADS−B) area will not view the first aircraft.

TRAFFIC IN SIGHT− Used by pilots to inform a controller that previously issued traffic is in sight.

(See NEGATIVE CONTACT.)

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT− A term used in a Notice to Airmen (NOTAM) issued in conjunction with a special traffic management program to alert pilots to the existence of the program and to refer them to either the Notices to Airmen publication or a special traffic management program advisory message for program details. The contraction TMPA is used in NOTAM text.

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT− The entity in ARTCCs and designated terminals directly involved in the active management of facility traffic. Usually under the direct supervision of an assistant manager for traffic management.

TRAFFIC NO FACTOR− Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no factor.

TRAFFIC NO LONGER OBSERVED− Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no longer depicted on radar, but may still be a factor.

TRAFFIC PATTERN− The traffic flow that is prescribed for aircraft landing at, taxiing on, or taking off from an airport. The components of a typical traffic pattern are upwind leg, crosswind leg, downwind leg, base leg, and final approach.

a. Upwind Leg− A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction of landing.

b. Crosswind Leg− A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its upwind end.

c. Downwind Leg− A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction opposite to landing. The downwind leg normally extends between the crosswind leg and the base leg.

d. Base Leg− A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its approach end. The base leg normally extends from the downwind leg to the intersection of the extended runway centerline.

e. Final Approach. A flight path in the direction of landing along the extended runway centerline. The final approach normally extends from the base leg to the runway. An aircraft making a straight-in approach VFR is also considered to be on final approach.

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See TAXI PATTERNS.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TRAFFIC SITUATION DISPLAY (TSD)− TSD is a computer system that receives radar track data from all 20 CONUS ARTCCs, organizes this data into a mosaic display, and presents it on a computer screen. The display allows the traffic management coordinator multiple methods of selection and highlighting of individual aircraft or groups of aircraft. The user has the option of superimposing these aircraft positions over any number of background displays. These background options include ARTCC boundaries, any stratum of en route sector boundaries, fixes, airways, military and other special use airspace, airports, and geopolitical boundaries. By using the TSD, a coordinator can monitor any number of traffic situations or the entire systemwide traffic flows.

TRAJECTORY− A EDST representation of the path an aircraft is predicted to fly based upon a Current Plan or Trial Plan.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

TRAJECTORY MODELING− The automated process of calculating a trajectory.

TRAJECTORY OPTIONS SET (TOS)- A TOS is an electronic message, submitted by the operator, that is used by the Collaborative Trajectory Options Program (CTOP) to manage the airspace captured in the traffic management program. The TOS will allow the operator to express the route and delay trade-off options that they are willing to accept.

TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST− A continuous recording of meteorological and aeronautical information that is broadcast on L/MF and VOR facilities for pilots. (Provided only in Alaska.)

(Refer to AIM.)

TRANSFER OF CONTROL− That action whereby the responsibility for the separation of an aircraft is transferred from one controller to another.

(See ICAO term TRANSFER OF CONTROL.)

TRANSFER OF CONTROL [ICAO]− Transfer of responsibility for providing air traffic control service.

TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER− A controller/facility transferring control of an aircraft to another controller/facility.

(See ICAO term TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING FACILITY−

(See TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER [ICAO]− Air traffic control unit/air traffic controller in the process of transferring the responsibility for providing air traffic control service to an aircraft to the next air traffic control unit/air traffic controller along the route of flight.

Note: See definition of accepting unit/controller.

TRANSITION−

a. The general term that describes the change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another; e.g., transition from en route flight to the approach or transition from instrument flight to visual flight.

b. A published procedure (DP Transition) used to connect the basic DP to one of several en route airways/jet routes, or a published procedure (STAR

Transition) used to connect one of several en route airways/jet routes to the basic STAR.
(Refer to DP/STAR Charts.)

TRANSITION POINT− A point at an adapted number of miles from the vertex at which an arrival aircraft would normally commence descent from its en route altitude. This is the first fix adapted on the arrival speed segments.

TRANSITION WAYPOINT− The waypoint that defines the beginning of a runway or en route transition on an RNAV SID or STAR.

TRANSITIONAL AIRSPACE− That portion of controlled airspace wherein aircraft change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another.

TRANSMISSOMETER− An apparatus used to determine visibility by measuring the transmission of light through the atmosphere. It is the measurement source for determining runway visual range (RVR) and runway visibility value (RVV).
(See VISIBILITY.)

TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND− A transmission from one station to other stations in circumstances where two-way communication cannot be established, but where it is believed that the called stations may be able to receive the transmission.

TRANSPONDER− The airborne radar beacon receiver/transmitter portion of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) which automatically receives radio signals from interrogators on the ground, and selectively replies with a specific reply pulse or pulse group only to those interrogations being received on the mode to which it is set to respond.
(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See ICAO term TRANSPONDER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TRANSPONDER [ICAO]− A receiver/transmitter which will generate a reply signal upon proper interrogation; the interrogation and reply being on different frequencies.

TRANSPONDER CODES−
(See CODES.)

TRANSPONDER OBSERVED − Phraseology used to inform a VFR pilot the aircraft's assigned beacon code and position have been observed. Specifically, this term conveys to a VFR pilot the transponder reply has been observed and its position correlated for transit through the designated area.

TRIAL PLAN− A proposed amendment which utilizes automation to analyze and display potential conflicts along the predicted trajectory of the selected aircraft.

TRSA−
(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)

TSD−
(See TRAFFIC SITUATION DISPLAY.)

TURBOJET AIRCRAFT− An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which in turn operates the air compressor.

TURBOPROP AIRCRAFT− An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which drives the propeller.

TURN ANTICIPATION− (maneuver anticipation).

TVOR−
(See TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION.)

TWEB−
(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)

TWO-WAY RADIO COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE−
(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

U

UHF−
(See ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY.)

ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY− The frequency band between 300 and 3,000 MHz. The bank of radio frequencies used for military air/ground voice communications. In some instances this may go as low as 225 MHz and still be referred to as UHF.

ULTRALIGHT VEHICLE− A single-occupant aeronautical vehicle operated for sport or recreational purposes which does not require FAA registration, an airworthiness certificate, nor pilot certification. Operation of an ultralight vehicle in certain airspace requires authorization from ATC
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 103.)

UNABLE− Indicates inability to comply with a specific instruction, request, or clearance.

UNASSOCIATED− A radar target that does not display a data block with flight identification and altitude information.
(See ASSOCIATED.)

UNDER THE HOOD− Indicates that the pilot is using a hood to restrict visibility outside the cockpit while simulating instrument flight. An appropriately rated pilot is required in the other control seat while this operation is being conducted.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

UNFROZEN− The Scheduled Time of Arrival (STA) tags, which are still being rescheduled by the time based flow management (TBFM) calculations. The aircraft will remain unfrozen until the time the corresponding estimated time of arrival (ETA) tag passes the preset freeze horizon for that aircraft's stream class. At this point the automatic rescheduling will stop, and the STA becomes "frozen."

UNICOM− A nongovernment communication facility which may provide airport information at certain airports. Locations and frequencies of UNICOMs are shown on aeronautical charts and publications.
(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)
(Refer to AIM.)

UNMANNED AIRCRAFT (UA) - A device used or intended to be used for flight that has no onboard pilot. This device can be any type of airplane, helicopter, airship, or powered-lift aircraft. Unmanned free balloons, moored balloons, tethered aircraft, gliders, and unmanned rockets are not considered to be a UA.

UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (UAS)- An unmanned aircraft and its associated elements related to safe operations, which may include control stations (ground, ship, or air based), control links, support equipment, payloads, flight termination systems, and launch/recovery equipment. It consists of three elements: unmanned aircraft, control station, and data link.

UNPUBLISHED ROUTE− A route for which no minimum altitude is published or charted for pilot use. It may include a direct route between NAVAIDs, a radial, a radar vector, or a final approach course beyond the segments of an instrument approach procedure.
(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)
(See ROUTE.)

UNRELIABLE (GPS/WAAS)− An advisory to pilots indicating the expected level of service of the GPS and/or WAAS may not be available. Pilots must then determine the adequacy of the signal for desired use.

UPWIND LEG−
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

URGENCY− A condition of being concerned about safety and of requiring timely but not immediate assistance; a potential distress condition.
(See ICAO term URGENCY.)

URGENCY [ICAO]− A condition concerning the safety of an aircraft or other vehicle, or of person on board or in sight, but which does not require immediate assistance.

USAFIB−
(See ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN.)

V

VASI−
(See VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR.)

VCOA−
(See VISUAL CLIMB OVER AIRPORT.)

VDP−
(See VISUAL DESCENT POINT.)

VECTOR− A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.
(See ICAO term RADAR VECTORING.)

VERIFY− Request confirmation of information; e.g., "verify assigned altitude."

VERIFY SPECIFIC DIRECTION OF TAKEOFF (OR TURNS AFTER TAKEOFF)− Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's direction of takeoff and/or direction of turn after takeoff. It is normally used for IFR departures from an airport not having a control tower. When direct communication with the pilot is not possible, the request and information may be relayed through an FSS, dispatcher, or by other means.
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

VERTEX− The last fix adapted on the arrival speed segments. Normally, it will be the outer marker of the runway in use. However, it may be the actual threshold or other suitable common point on the approach path for the particular runway configuration.

VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL− A calculated time of aircraft arrival over the adapted vertex for the runway configuration in use. The time is calculated via the optimum flight path using adapted speed segments.

VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VNAV)− A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides vertical guidance to a profile or path.

VERTICAL SEPARATION− Separation between aircraft expressed in units of vertical distance.
(See SEPARATION.)

VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT− Aircraft capable of vertical climbs and/or descents and of using very short runways or small areas for takeoff and landings. These aircraft include, but are not limited to, helicopters.
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY− The frequency band between 30 and 300 MHz. Portions of this band, 108 to 118 MHz, are used for certain NAVAIDs; 118 to 136 MHz are used for civil air/ground voice communications. Other frequencies in this band are used for purposes not related to air traffic control.

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION−
(See VOR.)

VERY LOW FREQUENCY− The frequency band between 3 and 30 kHz.

VFR−
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR AIRCRAFT− An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR CONDITIONS− Weather conditions equal to or better than the minimum for flight under visual flight rules. The term may be used as an ATC clearance/instruction only when:

a. An IFR aircraft requests a climb/descent in VFR conditions.

b. The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA approved noise abatement route or altitude.

c. A pilot has requested a practice instrument approach and is not on an IFR flight plan.

Note: All pilots receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in 14 CFR Part 91. Use of the term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAAO JO 7110.65. When used as an ATC clearance/instruction, the term may be abbreviated "VFR;" e.g., "MAINTAIN VFR," "CLIMB/DESCEND VFR," etc.

VFR FLIGHT−
(See VFR AIRCRAFT.)

VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES− Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training under VFR below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

VFR NOT RECOMMENDED− An advisory provided by a flight service station to a pilot during a preflight or inflight weather briefing that flight under visual flight rules is not recommended. To be given when the current and/or forecast weather conditions are at or below VFR minimums. It does not abrogate the pilot's authority to make his/her own decision.

VFR-ON-TOP− ATC authorization for an IFR aircraft to operate in VFR conditions at any appropriate VFR altitude (as specified in 14 CFR and as restricted by ATC). A pilot receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility, distance from cloud criteria, and the minimum IFR altitudes specified in 14 CFR Part 91. The use of this term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAAO JO 7110.65.

VFR TERMINAL AREA CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

VFR WAYPOINT−
(See WAYPOINT.)

VHF−
(See VERY HIGH FREQUENCY.)

VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE/TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION−
(See VORTAC.)

VIDEO MAP− An electronically displayed map on the radar display that may depict data such as airports, heliports, runway centerline extensions, hospital emergency landing areas, NAVAIDs and fixes, reporting points, airway/route centerlines, boundaries, handoff points, special use tracks, obstructions, prominent geographic features, map alignment indicators, range accuracy marks, minimum vectoring altitudes.

VISIBILITY− The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night. Visibility is reported as statute miles, hundreds of feet or meters.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

a. Flight Visibility− The average forward horizontal distance, from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight, at which prominent unlighted objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects may be seen and identified by night.

b. Ground Visibility− Prevailing horizontal visibility near the earth's surface as reported by the United States National Weather Service or an accredited observer.

c. Prevailing Visibility− The greatest horizontal visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least half the horizon circle which need not necessarily be continuous.

d. Runway Visibility Value (RVV)− The visibility determined for a particular runway by a transmissometer. A meter provides a continuous indication of the visibility (reported in miles or fractions of miles) for the runway. RVV is used in lieu of prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

e. Runway Visual Range (RVR)− An instrumentally derived value, based on standard calibrations, that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high intensity runway lights or on the visual contrast of other targets whichever yields the greater visual range. RVR, in contrast to prevailing or runway visibility, is based on what a pilot in a moving aircraft should see looking down the runway. RVR is horizontal visual range, not slant visual range. It is based on the measurement of a transmissometer made near the touchdown point of the instrument runway and is reported in hundreds of feet. RVR is used in lieu of RVV and/or prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

1. Touchdown RVR− The RVR visibility readout values obtained from RVR equipment serving the runway touchdown zone.

2. Mid-RVR− The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located midfield of the runway.

3. Rollout RVR– The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located nearest the rollout end of the runway.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT VISIBILITY.)
(See ICAO term GROUND VISIBILITY.)
(See ICAO term RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE.)
(See ICAO term VISIBILITY.)

VISIBILITY [ICAO]– The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night.

a. Flight Visibility–The visibility forward from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight.

b. Ground Visibility–The visibility at an aerodrome as reported by an accredited observer.

c. Runway Visual Range [RVR]–The range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centerline of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centerline.

VISUAL APPROACH– An approach conducted on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must, at all times, have either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must be ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility of 3 miles or greater.

(See ICAO term VISUAL APPROACH.)

VISUAL APPROACH [ICAO]– An approach by an IFR flight when either part or all of an instrument approach procedure is not completed and the approach is executed in visual reference to terrain.

VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

VISUAL CLIMB OVER AIRPORT (VCOA)– A departure option for an IFR aircraft, operating in visual meteorological conditions equal to or greater than the specified visibility and ceiling, to visually conduct climbing turns over the airport to the published “climb–to” altitude from which to proceed with the instrument portion of the departure. VCOA procedures are developed to avoid obstacles greater than 3 statute miles from the departure end of the runway as an alternative to complying with climb gradients greater than 200 feet per nautical mile. Pilots are responsible to advise ATC as early as possible of the intent to fly the VCOA option prior to departure. These textual procedures are published in the ‘Take–Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures’ section of the Terminal Procedures Publications and/or appear as an option on a Graphic ODP.

(See AIM.)

VISUAL DESCENT POINT– A defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided the approach threshold of that runway, or approach lights, or other markings identifiable with the approach end of that runway are clearly visible to the pilot.

VISUAL FLIGHT RULES– Rules that govern the procedures for conducting flight under visual conditions. The term “VFR” is also used in the United States to indicate weather conditions that are equal to or greater than minimum VFR requirements. In addition, it is used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VISUAL HOLDING– The holding of aircraft at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air.

(See HOLDING FIX.)

VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling equal to or better than specified minima.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VISUAL SEGMENT–

(See PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT.)

VISUAL SEPARATION− A means employed by ATC to separate aircraft in terminal areas and en route airspace in the NAS. There are two ways to effect this separation:

a. The tower controller sees the aircraft involved and issues instructions, as necessary, to ensure that the aircraft avoid each other.

b. A pilot sees the other aircraft involved and upon instructions from the controller provides his/her own separation by maneuvering his/her aircraft as necessary to avoid it. This may involve following another aircraft or keeping it in sight until it is no longer a factor.

(See SEE AND AVOID.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

VLF−
(See VERY LOW FREQUENCY.)

VMC−
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM− The VSCS is a computer controlled switching system that provides air traffic controllers with all voice circuits (air to ground and ground to ground) necessary for air traffic control.
(See VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VOR− A ground-based electronic navigation aid transmitting very high frequency navigation signals, 360 degrees in azimuth, oriented from magnetic north. Used as the basis for navigation in the National Airspace System. The VOR periodically identifies itself by Morse Code and may have an additional voice identification feature. Voice features may be used by ATC or FSS for transmitting instructions/information to pilots.
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VOR TEST SIGNAL−
(See VOT.)

VORTAC− A navigation aid providing VOR azimuth, TACAN azimuth, and TACAN distance measuring equipment (DME) at one site.
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(See TACAN.)
(See VOR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VORTICES− Circular patterns of air created by the movement of an airfoil through the air when generating lift. As an airfoil moves through the atmosphere in sustained flight, an area of area of low pressure is created above it. The air flowing from the high pressure area to the low pressure area around and about the tips of the airfoil tends to roll up into two rapidly rotating vortices, cylindrical in shape. These vortices are the most predominant parts of aircraft wake turbulence and their rotational force is dependent upon the wing loading, gross weight, and speed of the generating aircraft. The vortices from medium to super aircraft can be of extremely high velocity and hazardous to smaller aircraft.
(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)
(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VOT− A ground facility which emits a test signal to check VOR receiver accuracy. Some VOTs are available to the user while airborne, and others are limited to ground use only.
(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VR−
(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

VSCS−
(See VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM.)

VTA−
(See VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

VTOL AIRCRAFT−
(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

W

WA−
(See AIRMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WAAS−
(See WIDE-AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM.)

WAKE TURBULENCE− Phenomena resulting from the passage of an aircraft through the atmosphere. The term includes vortices, thrust stream turbulence, jet blast, jet wash, propeller wash, and rotor wash both on the ground and in the air.
(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)
(See JET BLAST.)
(See VORTICES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

WARNING AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

WAYPOINT− A predetermined geographical position used for route/instrument approach definition, progress reports, published VFR routes, visual reporting points or points for transitioning and/or circumnavigating controlled and/or special use airspace, that is defined relative to a VORTAC station or in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates.

WEATHER ADVISORY− In aviation weather forecast practice, an expression of hazardous weather conditions not predicted in the area forecast, as they affect the operation of air traffic and as prepared by the NWS.
(See AIRMET.)
(See SIGMET.)

WHEN ABLE−

a. In conjunction with ATC instructions, gives the pilot the latitude to delay compliance until a condition or event has been reconciled. Unlike "pilot discretion," when instructions are prefaced "when able," the pilot is expected to seek the first opportunity to comply.

b. In conjunction with a weather deviation clearance, requires the pilot to determine when he/she is clear of weather, then execute ATC instructions.

c. Once a maneuver has been initiated, the pilot is expected to continue until the specifications of the instructions have been met. "When able," should not be used when expeditious compliance is required.

WIDE-AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (WAAS)− The WAAS is a satellite navigation system consisting of the equipment and software which augments the GPS Standard Positioning Service (SPS). The WAAS provides enhanced integrity, accuracy, availability, and continuity over and above GPS SPS. The differential correction function provides improved accuracy required for precision approach.

WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION (WAM)− A distributed surveillance technology which may utilize any combination of signals from Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) (Modes A and C) and Mode S transponders, and ADS-B transmissions. Multiple geographically dispersed ground sensors measure the time-of-arrival of the transponder messages. Aircraft position is determined by joint processing of the time-difference-of-arrival (TDOA) measurements computed between a reference and the ground stations measured time-of-arrival.

WILCO− I have received your message, understand it, and will comply with it.

WIND GRID DISPLAY− A display that presents the latest forecasted wind data overlaid on a map of the ARTCC area. Wind data is automatically entered and updated periodically by transmissions from the National Weather Service. Winds at specific altitudes, along with temperatures and air pressure can be viewed.

WIND SHEAR− A change in wind speed and/or wind direction in a short distance resulting in a tearing or shearing effect. It can exist in a horizontal or vertical direction and occasionally in both.

WIND SHEAR ESCAPE− An unplanned abortive maneuver initiated by the pilot in command (PIC) as a result of onboard cockpit systems. Wind shear escapes are characterized by maximum thrust climbs in the low altitude terminal environment until wind shear conditions are no longer detected.

WING TIP VORTICES−
(See VORTICES.)

WORDS TWICE−

a. As a request: "Communication is difficult. Please say every phrase twice."

b. As information: "Since communications are difficult, every phrase in this message will be spoken twice."

WS−
(See SIGMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WST−
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

[References are to page numbers]

B

C

[References are to page numbers]

D

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

S

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

BRIEFING GUIDE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

Initiated By: AJV−0
Vice President, Mission Support Services

Table of Contents

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 1-1-7. DELIVERY DATES

2. BACKGROUND: Headquarters, Air Force Flight Standards Agency (AFFSA), is the office of primary responsibility for Air Force air traffic control operations. Subordinate units throughout the country, and those overseas, informed personnel at HQ AFFSA that their units/flights had not received the most recent publication and that the contact information listed in the order appeared to be incorrect. After reviewing the information in the order, it was determined that the information was incorrect and HQ AFFSA requested a document change proposal to provide these facilities with the correct address/information to obtain late orders/publication. This change will resolve the potential of facilities not having current publications available for reference and reduces/eliminates a potential impact on flight safety.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
1-1-7. DELIVERY DATES	**1-1-7. DELIVERY DATES**
Title through **b**	No Change

OLD

TBL 1-1-2
Military Distribution Contacts

Military Headquarters	**DSN**	**Commercial**
U.S. Army USAASA	656-4868	(703) 806-4868
U.S. Air Force		Contact Local *NGA Customer Account Representative
U.S. Navy CNO (N885F)	664-7727	(703) 604-7727
* NGA – National Geospatial/Intelligence Agency		

NEW

TBL 1-1-2
Military Distribution Contacts

Military Headquarters	DSN	Commercial
U.S. Army USAASA	656-4868	(703) 806-4868
U.S. Air Force **HQ AFFSA**	**884-5509**	**(405) 734-5509**
U.S. Navy CNO **(N980A)**	**224–2638**	**(703) 614–2638**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-2-11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA
2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)
2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES
4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS
4-6-3. DELAYS
5-1-6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS
5-2-2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT
5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT
5-3-3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS
5-3-8. TARGET MARKERS
5-4-3. METHODS
5-4-5. TRANSERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5-4-7. POINT OUT
5-4-11. EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-5-9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS
5-5-10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE
5-5-11. EDGE OF SCOPE
5-6-2. METHODS
5-14-1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT
5-14-3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF ASSIGNED ALTITUDE
5-14-5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS
5-14-8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS
5-14-9. ERAM COMPUTER ENTRIES OF HOLD INFORMATION
5-14-10. ERAM VISUAL INDICATOR OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SSA) STATUS
10-2-5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
13-1-1. DESCRIPTION
13-1-2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION
13-1-3. TRIAL PLANNING
13-1-4. URET−BASED CLEARANCES
13-1-5. THE AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL), DEPARTURE (DL), AND FLIGHT DATA MANAGEMENT
13-1-6. MANUAL COORDINATION AND THE COORDINATION MENU
13-1-7. HOLDING
13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA
13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION
13-1-10. CURRENCY OF TRAJECTORY INFORMATION
13-1-11. DELAY REPORTING
13-1-12. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT
13-1-14. FORCAST WINDS
13-1-15. INTERFACILITY CONNECTIVITY
13-1-16. PRIMARY RDP/FDP OUTAGES
13-1-17. URET AIRSPACE CONFIGURATION ELEMENTS

2. BACKGROUND: Several years ago the FAA began replacing the En Route legacy computer system known as Host, with a new NextGen enabling system known as En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM). The installation of ERAM was accomplished using a waterfall implementation process over the span of many years. During this transition period the guidance for air traffic control services operating under ERAM was found in FAA Order JO 7110.311. Now that the transition nears completion, FAA Order 7110.311C is being incorporated into FAA Order JO 7110.65. During this process certain outdated terms that are no longer used in the field were identified. The decision was made to use this opportunity to update the handbook by eliminating or amending the outdated terminology.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS	**1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS**
Add	**Automation Embedded Route Text (AERT)**
Add	**Enhanced Backup Surveillance System (EBUS)**
Add	**En Route Decision Support Tool (EDST)**
Add	**Enhanced Limited Data Block (ELDB)**
Add	**En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM)**
Add	**Full Data Block (FDB)**
Add	**Surveillance Data Processing (SDP)**
Direct Access Radar Channel (DARC)	Delete
Host Embedded Route Text (HERT)	Delete
Radar Data Processing (RDP)	Delete
User Request Evaluation Tool (URET)	Delete

OLD	NEW
2-2-11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA	**2-2-11. FORWARDING AMENDED AND UTM DATA**
Title through **d**	No Change
Add	**e. EN ROUTE. When a controller receives a UTM notification to an FDIO only facility, they must effect manual coordination for the flight plan data. In addition, the controller must verify the flight plan data to the receiving facility within three minutes of the transfer of control point estimate.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***FDIO only facilities are facilities with FDIO but without ARTS or STARS.***

OLD	NEW
2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)	**2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)**
Title through **c**	No Change
Add	**d. *EN ROUTE*. ERAM. Controllers must electronically acknowledge hazardous weather information messages after appropriate action has been taken.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***EN ROUTE. While hazardous weather information is commonly distributed via the SIGMET View, it is possible to receive the information via the GI View.***

OLD	NEW
2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES	**2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES**
Title through **c1(f)**	No Change
(g) Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information or User Request Evaluation Tool (URET) data, as applicable.	**(g)** Scan radar display. Correlate with flight progress strip information or **EDST** data, as applicable.
c1(h)	No Change
(i) Ensure strip marking and/or URET entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.	**(i)** Ensure strip marking and/or **electronic flight data** entries are completed on instructions or clearances you issue or receive.
c1(j) through c1(k)	No Change
Add	**(l) At ERAM facilities, ensure the situation display accurately reflects the status of all SAAs that impact their area of control responsibility.**
c2 through **c2a**	No Change
(b) At URET facilities, use URET information to plan, organize, and expedite the flow of traffic.	**(b) Where available**, use **EDST** to plan, organize, and expedite the flow of traffic.
c2(c) through **c2(h)**	No Change
(i) Scan flight progress strips and/or URET data. Correlate with radar data.	**(i)** Scan flight progress strips and/or **EDST** data. Correlate with radar data.
(j) Manage flight progress strips and/or URET flight data.	**(j)** Manage flight progress strips and/or **electronic** flight data.
c2(k)	No Change
(l) As appropriate, ensure strip marking and/or URET entries are completed on instructions issued or received, and record instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of them.	**(l)** As appropriate, ensure strip marking and/or **EDST** data entries are completed on instructions issued or received, and record instructions issued or received by the radar position when aware of them.
c2(m)	No Change
(n) Where authorized, perform URET data entries to keep the activation status of designated URET Airspace Configuration Elements current.	**(n)** Where authorized, perform **EDST** data entries to keep the activation status of designated Airspace Configuration Elements current.
Add	**(o) At ERAM facilities, scan the radar associate display for electronically distributed information, evaluate the information, and take action as appropriate.**
c3 through **c4(c)**	No Change
(d) Ensure flight data processing equipment is operational, except for URET capabilities.	**(d)** Ensure flight data processing equipment is operational, except for **EDST** capabilities.

OLD

4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS

Title through **a2**

NOTE−
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a letter of agreement between the appropriate facilities.

NEW

4-5-3. EXCEPTIONS

No Change

Delete

OLD

4-6-3. DELAYS

Title through **b1**

Add

NEW

4-6-3. DELAYS

No Change

REFERENCE−
FAAO7110.65, Para 5-14-9, ERAM Computer Entry of Hold Information

OLD

5-1-6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS

Title through **a3**

b. *EN ROUTE.* When the position symbol associated with the full data block falls more than one history behind the actual aircraft target or there is no target symbol displayed, the Mode C information in the full data block must not be used for the purpose of determining separation.

NEW

5-1-6. SERVICE LIMITATIONS

No Change

b. *EN ROUTE.* When the position symbol associated with the data block falls more than one history behind the actual aircraft target or there is no target symbol displayed, the Mode C information in the data block must not be used for the purpose of determining separation.

OLD

5-2-2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

Title through ***NOTE*** **1**

2. When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the host computer and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, send a remove strips (RS) message on that aircraft via host keyboard, the FDIO keyboard, or call via service F.

NEW

5-2-2. DISCRETE ENVIRONMENT

No Change

*2. When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the **ARTCC** computer and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, **ensure that appropriate action is taken to** remove strips (RS message) on that aircraft.*

OLD

5-3-3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS

Title through **c**

d. *EN ROUTE.* During narrowband operations, an aircraft may be considered identified when the full data block is automatically associated with the beacon target symbol of an aircraft that is squawking a discrete code assigned by the computer.

Add

NEW

5-3-3. BEACON IDENTIFICATION METHODS

No Change

d. *EN ROUTE.* **A**n aircraft may be considered identified when the full data block is automatically associated with the beacon target symbol of an aircraft that is squawking a discrete code assigned by the computer.

NOTE−
Paired LDBs in ERAM do not display a beacon code.

OLD

5-3-8. TARGET MARKERS

EN ROUTE

Retain data blocks that are associated with the appropriate target symbol in order to maintain continuous identity of aircraft. Retain the data block until the aircraft has exited the sector or delegated airspace, and all potential conflicts have been resolved; including an aircraft that is a point out. The data block shall display flight identification and altitude information, as a minimum. The displayed altitude may be assigned, interim, or reported.

Add

NEW

5-3-8. TARGET MARKERS

No Change

No Change

ERAM: When you have separation responsibility for an aircraft and a paired track exists, display a full data block (FDB).

OLD

5-4-3. METHODS

a1 through **a3**

NOTE−
EN ROUTE. Interfacility handoff capabilities are available that can be manually initiated and accepted when operating on the backup RDP while FDP is available. The backup RDP by itself does not have the capabilities for interfacility handoffs. Therefore, handoffs between facilities must be made via landline voice communications when operating with the backup RDP only.

a4 through **b3**

NOTE−
1. *When physically pointing to the target, you do not have to state the aircraft position.*

2. *Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.*

NEW

5-4-3. METHODS

No Change

NOTE−
Automated** handoff capabilities are **only** available **when** FDP is **operational.

No Change

NOTE−
When physically pointing to the target, you do not have to state the aircraft position.

Delete

OLD

5-4-5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

Title through **b**

NOTE−
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

NEW

5-4-5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

No Change

Delete

OLD

5-4-7. POINT OUT

Title through **a2**

NOTE−
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

NEW

5-4-7. POINT OUT

No Change

Delete

OLD

5-4-11 EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE

a. The en route fourth line data block must be used to forward only the specified control information listed below. Any additional control information must be forwarded via other communication methods. En route fourth line data block free text area may be used by individual sector teams for recording any additional information the team deems appropriate for managing the sector, but must be removed prior to initiation of identification transfer.

REFERENCE−
REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff, subpara b.

b through **k** ***EXAMPLE***

l. The acceptance of a handoff by the receiving controller must constitute receipt of the information contained within the en route fourth line data block. It is the responsibility of the receiving controller to advise the transferring controller if any information is not understood, or needs to be revised.

NEW

5-4-11 EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE

a. The fourth line of the data block must be displayed. When used for forwarding control information, only the specified messages listed in this section may be used. Any additional control information must be forwarded via other communications methods. Free text may be used by individual sector teams for recording information the team deems appropriate for managing the sector, but must be removed prior to initiation of identification transfer.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−5, Transferring Controller Handoff, subpara b.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−9, Interfacility Automated Information Transfer.

No Change

l. The acceptance of a handoff by the receiving controller must constitute receipt of the information contained within the en route fourth line data block. **This information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.** It is the responsibility of the receiving controller to advise the transferring controller if any information is not understood, or needs to be revised.

OLD

5-5-4. MINIMA

Title through **b**

c. Stage A/DARC, Terminal Mosaic/ Multi-Sensor Mode

NOTE through **c2**

3. For areas meeting all of the following conditions:

c3(a) through **c3(c)**

NEW

5-5-4. MINIMA

No Change

c. EBUS, Terminal Mosaic/Multi-Sensor Mode

No Change

3. Facility directives may specify 3 miles for areas meeting all of the following conditions:

No Change

(d) Below FL 180	**(d) Up to and including FL 230.**
(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied. Facility directives may specify 3 miles.	**(e)** Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied **and define the requirements for displaying the area on the controller's display.**
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-1, Single Site Coverage Stage A Operations.* *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11-8-15, Single Site Coverage ATTS*	***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-1, **Three Mile Airspace Operations*** *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11-8-15, Single Site Coverage ATTS Operations*
c4(a) through **c4(d)**	No Change
Add	**d. ERAM:**
Add	**1. Below FL 600- *5 miles.***
Add	**2. At or above FL 600- *10 miles***
Add	**3. Below FL 230 where all the following conditions are met – *3 miles:***
Add	**(a) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.**
Add	**(b) Within 40 miles of the preferred sensor, and within the 3 NM separation area.**
Add	**(c) The preferred sensor is providing reliable beacon targets.**
Add	**(d) Facility directives specifically define the 3 NM separation area.**
Add	**(e) The 3 NM separation area is displayable on the video map.**
Add	**(f) Involved aircraft are displayed using the 3 NM target symbol.**
Add	**4. When transitioning from terminal to en route control, 3 miles increasing to 5 miles or greater, provided:**
Add	**(a) The aircraft are on diverging routes/courses, and/or**
Add	**(b) The leading aircraft is and will remain faster than the following aircraft; and**
Add	**(c) Separation constantly increasing and the first center controller will establish 5 NM or other appropriate form of separation prior to the aircraft departing the first center sector; and**
Add	**(d) The procedure is covered by a letter of agreement between the facilities involved and limited to specified routes and/or sectors/positions.**
Add	***REFERENCE–*** ***FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-1, Three Mile Airspace Operations*** ***FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11-8-15, Single Site Coverage ATTS Operations***
d and **e**	Reletter to **e** and **f**

OLD

5-5-9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS

a. Except in En Route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, separate aircraft from obstructions depicted on the radar display by the following minima:

a1 and **a2**

b. Except in En Route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, vertical separation of aircraft above an obstruction depicted on the radar display may be discontinued after the aircraft has passed it.

c. Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, apply the radar separation minima specified in para 5-5-4, Minima, subpara b1.

NEW

5-5-9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS

a. TERMINAL. **S**eparate aircraft from obstructions depicted on the radar display by the following minima:

No Change

b. TERMINAL. Vertical separation of aircraft above an obstruction depicted on the radar display may be discontinued after the aircraft has passed it.

c. EAS. Apply the radar separation minima specified in **P**ara 5-5-4, Minima.

OLD

5-5-10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

Title through **a2**

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

b1 and b2

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

NEW

5-5-10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

No Change

3. ***EAS:***

No Change

3. ***EAS:***

OLD

5-5-11. EDGE OF SCOPE

Title through **b**

c. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

NEW

5-5-11. EDGE OF SCOPE

No Change

c. ***EAS:***

OLD

5-6-2. METHODS

a through **g**

h. During stage A operation, update the route of flight in the computer unless an operational advantage is gained and coordination is accomplished.

NEW

5-6-2. METHODS

No Change

h. When flight data processing is available, update the route of flight in the computer unless an operational advantage is gained and coordination is accomplished.

OLD

5-14-1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT

Title through **a**

NOTE−
DARC does not have CA/MCI alert capability.

NEW

5-14-1. CONFLICT ALERT (CA) AND MODE C INTRUDER (MCI) ALERT

No Change

Delete

OLD	NEW
5-14-3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF ASSIGNED ALTITUDE	**5-14-3. COMPUTER ENTRY OF FLIGHT PLAN INFORMATION**
The data block must always reflect the current status of the aircraft unless otherwise specified in a facility directive. Whenever an aircraft is cleared to maintain an altitude different from that in the flight plan database, enter into the computer one of the following:	Delete
NOTE− *A facility directive may be published deleting the interim altitude computer entry requirements of subpara b. The directive would apply to those conditions where heavy traffic or sector complexity preclude meeting these entry requirements.*	Delete
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8−2−7, Waiver to Interim Altitude Requirements.*	Delete
Add	**a. Altitude**
Add	**1. The altitude field(s) of the data block must always reflect the current status of the aircraft unless otherwise specified in an appropriate facility directive.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***As it applies to altitude, the current status of the aircraft, for the transferring controller, indicates the clearance given by air traffic control, directly to and read back by an aircraft. This ensures the aircraft has received the clearance and is expected to comply with the instructions. The current status of the aircraft, for the receiving controller, indicates the specific verbally coordinated altitude, if that differs from the altitude coordinated by automated means.***
Add	**2. Assigned and Interim altitude information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.**
Add	**3. Whenever an aircraft is cleared to maintain an altitude different from that in the flight plan database, enter into the computer one of the following:**
a. The new assigned altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude, or	**(a)** The new assigned altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude, or
b. An interim altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude for a short period of time and subsequently be recleared to the altitude in the flight plan database or a new altitude or a new interim altitude.	**(b)** An interim altitude if the aircraft will (climb or descend to and) maintain the new altitude for a short period of time and subsequently be recleared to the altitude in the flight plan database or a new altitude or a new interim altitude**, or**

OLD	NEW
NOTE− *Use of the interim altitude function will ensure that the data block reflects the actual status of the aircraft and eliminate superfluous altitude updates.*	Delete
Add	**(c) A Local Interim Altitude (LIA), entered by the transferring controller when the assigned altitude differs from the coordinated altitude unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***A facility directive may be published, in accordance with JO 7210.3, Paragraph 8-2-7, Waiver to Interim Altitude Requirements, deleting the interim altitude computer entry requirements of subpara 3(b).***
Add	**b. Flight Plan Route Data**
Add	**This information must not be modified outside of the controller's area of jurisdiction unless verbally coordinated or specified in a Letter of Agreement or Facility Directive.**

OLD	NEW
5-14-5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS	**5-14-5. SELECTED ALTITUDE LIMITS**
Title through **a**	No Change
b. 2,200 feet above the highest and below the lowest flight level of the sector where 2,000 feet vertical separation is applicable.	No Change
NOTE− *1. The data block, for purposes of this paragraph, must contain the beacon code and Mode C altitude at a minimum.*	*NOTE−* *1. The data block, for purposes of this paragraph, must contain the Mode C altitude* ***and call sign or beacon code*** *at a minimum.*

OLD	NEW
5-14-8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS	**5-14-8. CONTROLLER INITIATED COAST TRACKS**
Title through **a** ***NOTE*** **1**	No Change
2. DARC does not have the capability to initiate coast tracks	*2.* ***EBUS*** *does not have the capability to initiate coast tracks*
b. Prior to initiating a coast track, ensure the following:	**b.** Prior to initiating a coast track, ensure **that a departure message or progress report corresponding with the aircraft's current position is entered into the computer.**
1. A departure message or progress report corresponding with the aircraft's current position is entered into the computer.	Delete

2. The track being started is within the Posted Time Update Interval (PTUI) of the aircraft's Computer-estimated position and the Flight Plan Track Position Difference (FTPD) distance of the aircraft's flight plan route.	Delete
NOTE– *FTPD is an automation parameter, normally set to 15 miles, that is compared with the tracked target's perpendicular distance from the stored flight plan route. If the track is within the parameter miles, it is eligible for "FLAT tracking." PTUI is an automation parameter, normally set to 3 minutes, that is compared against the difference between the calculated time of arrival and the actual time of arrival over a fix. If the difference is greater than PTUI, the flight plan's stored data will be revised and fix-time update messages will be generated.*	Delete

OLD	NEW
Add	**5-14-9. ERAM COMPUTER ENTRY OF HOLD INFORMATION**
Add	**a. When an aircraft is issued holding instructions, the delay is ATC initiated, and the EFC is other than "no delay expected:"**
Add	**1. Enter a hold message.**
Add	**2. Maintain a paired track.**
Add	**3. Enter an EFC time via a hold message, the Hold Data Menu, or the Hold View.**
Add	**4. Enter non-published holding instructions via a hold message or the Hold Data Menu.**
Add	***NOTE–*** ***The ERAM hold message allows automatic calculation and reporting of aggregate delays.***
Add	**b. Unless otherwise specified in a facility directive, verbally coordinate non-published holding instructions when handing off an aircraft in hold status to another ERAM sector.**
Add	**c. An EFC time entered into the Hold Data Menu, Hold View, or the hold message constitutes coordination of the EFC between ERAM sectors.**
Add	***REFERENCE–*** ***FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8-2-9, ERAM Hold Information Facility Directive Requirements***

OLD	NEW
Add	**5-14-10. <u>ERAM VISUAL INDICATOR OF SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA) STATUS</u>**
Add	**<u>Sector controllers shall ensure the situation display accurately reflects the status of all SAAs that impact their area of control responsibility. When “SAA DOWN” is displayed in the Outage View, manually create visual indicators on the situation display to reflect changes to airspace status.</u>**
Add	***<u>NOTE−</u>*** ***<u>The “SAA DOWN” message in the Outage View means that SAA status is no longer being updated. The status of each SAA at the time of the failure, whether “on” or “off”, will continue to be displayed. Status changes will not be automatically updated on the display until the outage is resolved.</u>***

OLD	NEW
10-2-5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS	**10-2-5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS**
Title through **e**	No Change
NOTE− *EN ROUTE. <u>During Stage A operation,</u> Code 7700 causes <u>EMRG</u> to blink in <u>field E of</u> the data block.*	***NOTE−*** *EN ROUTE.* ***<u>ERAM:</u>*** *Code 7700 causes* ***<u>an emergency indicator</u>*** *to blink in the data block.*

OLD	NEW
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	**11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**
Title through **a3**	No Change
4. Where authorized, perform <u>URET</u> data entries to keep the activation status of designated <u>URET</u> Airspace Configuration Elements current.	**4.** Where authorized, perform **<u>EDST</u>** data entries to keep the activation status of designated **<u>EDST</u>** Airspace Configuration Elements current.
5. Perform assigned actions in the event of <u>a</u> <u>URET</u> outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.	**5.** Perform assigned actions in the event of **<u>an</u>** **<u>EDST</u>** outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.
a6 through **b4**	No Change
5. Where authorized, perform <u>URET</u> data entries to keep the activation status of designated <u>URET</u> Airspace Configuration Elements current.	**5.** Where authorized, perform data entries to keep the activation status of designated **<u>EDST</u>** Airspace Configuration Elements current.
6. Perform assigned actions in the event of <u>a</u> <u>URET</u> outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.	**6.** Perform assigned actions in the event of **<u>an</u>** **<u>EDST</u>** outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.
b7 through **c3**	No Change

4. Where authorized, perform URET data entries to keep the activation status of designated URET Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of a URET outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

4. Where authorized, perform data entries to keep the activation status of designated **EDST** Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of **an EDST** outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

OLD

CHAPTER 13. DECISION SUPPORT TOOLS

Section 1. User Request Evaluation Tool (URET)

13-1-1. DESCRIPTION

URET is an en route decision support tool that is used by the sector team in performing its strategic planning responsibilities. URET uses flight plan data, forecast winds, aircraft performance characteristics, and track data to derive expected aircraft trajectories, and to predict conflicts between aircraft and between aircraft and special use or designated airspace. It also provides trial planning and enhanced flight data management capabilities.

NEW

No Change

Section 1. ERAM Decision Support Tools (EDST)

13-1-1. DESCRIPTION

EDST is used by the sector team in performing its strategic planning responsibilities. **EDST** uses flight plan data, forecast winds, aircraft performance characteristics, and track data to derive expected aircraft trajectories, and to predict conflicts between aircraft and between aircraft and special use or designated airspace. It also provides trial planning and enhanced flight data management capabilities. **Under ERAM, the EDST capabilities constitute the initial En Route decision support tools.**

OLD

13-1-2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION

a. Actively scan URET information for predicted aircraft-to-aircraft and aircraft-to-airspace alerts.

b. When a URET alert is displayed, evaluate the alert and take appropriate action as early as practical, in accordance with duty priorities.

c. Prioritize the evaluation and resolution of URET alerts to ensure the safe, expeditious, and efficient flow of air traffic.

NOTE−
URET alerts are based on radar separation standards. Caution should be used when situations include nonstandard formations.

d. When a URET alert is displayed and when sector priorities permit, give consideration to the following in determining a solution:

d1 and **d2**

NEW

13-1-2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION

a. Actively scan **EDST** information for predicted aircraft-to-aircraft and aircraft-to-airspace alerts.

b. When a **conflict probe** alert is displayed, evaluate the alert and take appropriate action as early as practical, in accordance with duty priorities.

c. Prioritize the evaluation and resolution of **conflict probe** alerts to ensure the safe, expeditious, and efficient flow of air traffic.

NOTE−
Conflict probe *alerts are based on* ***standard*** *radar separation.* ***Conflict probe does not account for instances in which greater separation may be needed (e.g., non-standard formations, A380) or where reduced separation is permitted (e.g., 3mile airspace).***

d. When a **conflict probe** alert is displayed and when sector priorities permit, give consideration to the following in determining a solution:

No Change

e. When the URET Stop Probe feature is activated for an aircraft, Conflict Probe for that aircraft shall be restarted before transfer of control, unless otherwise coordinated.

NOTE−
The requirement in paragraph 13-1-2e does not apply to aircraft entering a non-URET facility.

e. When the Stop Probe feature is activated for an aircraft, **c**onflict **p**robe for that aircraft shall be restarted before transfer of control, unless otherwise coordinated.

NOTE−
*The requirement in paragraph 13-1-2e does not apply to aircraft entering a non **EDST** facility.*

OLD

13-1-3. TRIAL PLANNING

When URET is operational at the sector and when sector priorities permit, use the trial plan capability to evaluate:

NEW

13-1-3. TRIAL PLANNING

When **EDST** is operational at the sector and when sector priorities permit, use the trial plan capability to evaluate:

OLD

13-1-4. URET-BASED CLEARANCES

When the results of a trial plan based upon a user request indicate the absence of alerts, every effort should be made to grant the user request, unless the change is likely to adversely affect operations at another sector.

NEW

13-1-4. CONFLICT PROBE-BASED CLEARANCES

No Change

OLD

13-1-5. THE AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL), DEPARTURE LIST (DL), AND FLIGHT DATA MANAGEMENT

Title through **a**

b. Actively scan URET to identify automated notifications that require sector team action.

c through **e**

f. When URET is operational, sector teams shall post flight progress strips for any non-radar flights.

g. When URET is operational, a flight progress strip shall be posted for any flight plan not contained in the Host Computer System.

h. When URET is operational, sector teams shall post any flight progress strip(s) that are deemed necessary for safe or efficient operations. The sector team shall comply with all applicable facility directives to maintain posted flight progress strips.

i. The URET Drop Track Delete option shall be used in accordance with facility directives.

NEW

13-1-5. THE AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL), DEPARTURE LIST (DL), AND FLIGHT DATA MANAGEMENT

No Change

b. Actively scan **EDST** to identify automated notifications that require sector team action.

No Change

f. **S**ector teams shall post flight progress strips for any non-radar flights.

g. **A** flight progress strip shall be posted for any flight plan not contained in the **EAS**.

h. **S**ector teams shall post any flight progress strip(s) that are deemed necessary for safe or efficient operations. The sector team shall comply with all applicable facility directives to maintain posted flight progress strips.

i. The Drop Track Delete option shall be used in accordance with facility directives.

OLD

13-1-6. MANUAL COORDINATION AND THE URET COORDINATION MENU

a. Where automated coordination with a facility is not available (e.g., an international facility, a VFR tower), use the URET Coordination Menu or a flight progress strip to annotate manual coordination status, in accordance with facility directives.

b. When the URET Coordination Menu is used and the flight plan is subsequently changed, remove the yellow coding from the Coordination Indicator after any appropriate action has been taken.

NEW

13-1-6. MANUAL COORDINATION AND THE COORDINATION MENU

a. Where automated coordination with a facility is not available (e.g., an international facility, a VFR tower), use the Coordination Menu or a flight progress strip to annotate manual coordination status, in accordance with facility directives.

b. When the Coordination Menu is used and the flight plan is subsequently changed, remove the yellow coding from the Coordination Indicator after any appropriate action has been taken.

OLD

13-1-7. HOLDING

For flights in hold, use URET Hold Annotations, Hold Data Menu, Hold View, a flight progress strip, or a facility approved worksheet to annotate holding instructions, in accordance with facility directives.

NEW

13-1-7. HOLDING

For flights in hold, use **the ERAM Hold Data Menu/Hold View, the EDST Hold Annotations Menu,** a flight progress strip, or a facility approved worksheet, to annotate holding instructions, in accordance with facility directives.

OLD

13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA

a and **b**

c. When the URET Free Text Area is used to enter control information, authorized abbreviations shall be used. You may use:

c1 and **c2**

3. The URET equivalents for control information symbols authorized in TBL 13-1-3.

c4 and **c5**

d. When the URET Free Text Area is used to enter control information, the Free Text Area shall remain open and visible. When no longer relevant, the information entered into the Free Text Area shall be updated or deleted.

e through **TBL 13-1-2**

TBL 13-1-3
URET Equivalents for Control Information Symbols

NEW

13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA

No Change

c. When the **ACL or DL** Free Text Area is used to enter control information, authorized abbreviations must be used. You may use:

No Change

3. The **EDST** equivalents for control information symbols authorized in TBL 13-1-3.

No Change

d. When the **ACL or DL** Free Text Area is used to enter control information, the Free Text Area must remain open and visible. When no longer relevant, the information entered into the Free Text Area must be updated or deleted.

No Change

TBL 13-1-3
EDST Equivalents for Control Information Symbols

OLD

13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION

a. The URET Inappropriate Altitude for Direction of Flight (IAFDOF) feature shall be used in the automatic mode (i.e., IAFDOF Manual shall remain deselected) unless otherwise authorized in a facility directive.

b. Completion of any required coordination for IAFDOF shall be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the IAFDOF coding.

c. Completion of appropriate coordination for an Unsuccessful Transmission Message (UTM) shall be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the UTM coding.

d. Issuance of the Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT) to the pilot or other control facility shall be acknowledged on the DL by removing the EDCT coding.

e. IAFDOF, UTM, or EDCT coding shall be acknowledged only after the appropriate action has been completed.

NEW

13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION

a. The **EDST** Inappropriate Altitude for Direction of Flight (IAFDOF) feature **must** be used in the automatic mode (i.e., IAFDOF Manual **must** remain deselected) unless otherwise authorized in a facility directive.

b. Completion of any required coordination for IAFDOF **must** be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the IAFDOF coding.

c. Completion of appropriate coordination for an Unsuccessful Transmission Message (UTM) **must** be acknowledged on the ACL by removing the UTM coding.

d. Issuance of the Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT) to the pilot or other control facility **must** be acknowledged on the DL by removing the EDCT coding.

e. IAFDOF, UTM, or EDCT coding **must** be acknowledged only after the appropriate action has been completed.

OLD

13-1-10. CURRENCY OF TRAJECTORY INFORMATION

Title through **b**

NOTE−
URET accuracy in assigning alert notification is dependent upon entry/update of a flight's interim altitude.

NEW

13-1-10. CURRENCY OF TRAJECTORY INFORMATION

No Change

NOTE−
***Conflict probe** accuracy in assigning alert notification is dependent upon entry/update of a flight's interim altitude.*

OLD

13-1-11. DELAY REPORTING

a. Adhere to all applicable delay reporting directives while URET is operational.

b. Delay information shall be recorded. Delay information may be automatically recorded via use of the URET Hold Annotations Menu, or manually on flight progress strips or facility-approved worksheets, in accordance with the facility-defined standard.

NEW

13-1-11. DELAY REPORTING

a. Adhere to all applicable delay reporting directives.

b. Delay information shall be recorded. Delay information may be automatically recorded via use of the **EDST** Hold Annotations Menu**, ERAM Hold Data Menu, ERAM Hold View,** or manually on flight progress strips or facility-approved worksheets, in accordance with the facility-defined standard.

c. When using URET to automatically record delay information, the URET hold annotations shall be deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding.

NOTE−
Delay information cannot be accurately recorded unless URET annotations are deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding.

c. When using **the Hold Annotation Menu** to automatically record delay information, the hold annotations shall be deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding.

NOTE−
***When using EDST hold annotations, d**elay information cannot be accurately recorded unless **the** annotations are deleted when the aircraft is cleared from holding. **When using the ERAM Hold Data Menu or Hold View, delays are automatically recorded when the aircraft is cleared out of hold**.*

OLD

13-1-12. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

Upon receipt of the URET overdue aircraft notification take appropriate actions set forth in Chapter 10, Section 3, Overdue aircraft.

NOTE−
URET overdue aircraft notification is based on radar track data. Updating an aircraft's route of fight will remove the overdue aircraft notification.

NEW

13-1-12. OVERDUE AIRCRAFT

Upon receipt of the overdue aircraft notification take appropriate actions set forth in Chapter 10, Section 3, Overdue aircraft.

NOTE−
EDST overdue aircraft notification is based on radar track data. Updating an aircraft's route of fight will remove the overdue aircraft notification.

OLD

13-1-14. FORECAST WINDS

In the event that current forecast wind data are not available, continue use of with appropriate recognition that alert and trajectory data may be affected.

NEW

13-1-14. FORECAST WINDS

In the event that current forecast wind data are not available, continue use of **conflict probe and trial planning** with appropriate recognition that alert and trajectory data may be affected.

OLD

13-1-15. INTERFACILITY CONNECTIVITY

In the event of a loss of connectivity to a neighboring URET system, continue use of URET with appropriate recognition that alert data may be affected.

NEW

13-1-15. INTERFACILITY CONNECTIVITY

In the event of a loss of connectivity to **an adjacent ERAM facility**, continue use of **EDST** with appropriate recognition that alert data may be affected.

OLD

13-1-16. PRIMARY HOST OUTAGES

In the event of a primary HOST outage, URET data may be used to support situational awareness while the facility transitions to the backup RDP capabilities or non radar procedures.

NOTE−
Without primary system input, URET data cannot be updated and becomes stale.

NEW

13-1-16. SURVEILLANCE AND FLIGHT DATA OUTAGES

In the event of a **surveillance or flight data** outage, **electronic flight** data may be used to support situational awareness while the facility transitions to **alternate automation** capabilities or non radar procedures.

Delete

OLD	NEW
13-1-17. URET AIRSPACE CONFIGURATION ELEMENTS	**13-1-17. AIRSPACE CONFIGURATION ELEMENTS**
a. URET Airspace Configuration Elements are:	**a.** Airspace Configuration Elements are:
a1 through **a2**	No Change
3. URET adapted restrictions.	**3.** Adapted restrictions.
b. Where assigned as a sector responsibility by facility directive, the sector team shall update URET Airspace Configuration Elements to reflect current status.	**b.** Where assigned as a sector responsibility by facility directive, the sector team shall update Airspace Configuration Elements to reflect current status.
Add	***NOTE−*** *Unless otherwise covered in an LOA or facility directive, activating or scheduling the SAA in the Airspace Status View does NOT constitute coordination for activation of airspace.*
c. For Airspace Configuration Elements designated as a sector responsibility, notify the operational supervisor when the status of an Airspace Configuration Element has been modified in URET.	**c.** For Airspace Configuration Elements designated as a sector responsibility, notify the operational supervisor when the status of an Airspace Configuration Element has been modified.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-1-6. SAFETY ALERTS
5-2-13. CODE MONITOR
5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C
5-4-6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5-5-2. TARGET SEPARATION
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-15-1. APPLICATION
Chapter 5, Section 16. TPX-42
7-6-1. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT
7-7-3. SEPARATION
7-8-3. SEPARATION
7-9-4. SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Terminal areas use mono-pulse secondary surveillance radar (ASR 9, Mode S and ASR-11 Beacon System). FUSION utilizes all available surveillance sources (airport surveillance radar (ASR), air route surveillance radar (ARSR), ADS-B, etc.) to display a single tracked target for air traffic control separation services. FUSION performance characteristics is equivalent to the current single-sensor radar display system. The performance of this system will be used as the baseline radar system to ensure minimal degradation of current separation operations within the NAS. The Surveillance and Broadcast Services Air Traffic CHI Workgroup was established to ensure functional standardization and usability of multiple surveillance sources integration in both terminal and en route domains. A recently signed Safety Risk Management Document (SRMD) addendum supports and authorizes 3NM ADS-B to ADS-B and ADS-B to Radar separation when operating in Fusion mode. Facilities may determine the necessity of the use of ADS-B CHI in airspace where the only surveillance source is being provided by ADS-B based upon the number of equipped aircraft and affected operations.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

1−2−6. ABBREVIATIONS

Programmable Indicator Data Processor (PIDP)

NEW

1−2−6. ABBREVIATIONS

Delete

OLD

2-1-6. SAFETY ALERTS

Title through ***NOTE 1***

2. Recognition of situations of unsafe proximity may result from MSAW/E−MSAW/LAAS, automatic altitude readouts, Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert, observations on a PAR scope, or pilot reports.

NEW

2-1-6. SAFETY ALERTS

No Change

2. Recognition of situations of unsafe proximity may result from MSAW/E−MSAW, automatic altitude readouts, Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert, observations on a PAR scope, or pilot reports.

OLD

5-2-13. CODE MONITOR

Title through ***REFERENCE***

NOTE−
In addition to alphanumeric and control symbology processing enhancements, the MEARTS, STARS, and the TPX−42 systems are equipped with automatic beacon decoders. Therefore, in facilities where the automatic beacon decoders are providing the control slash video, there is no requirement to have the nonautomated decoding equipment operating simultaneously.

NEW

5-2-13. CODE MONITOR

No Change

NOTE−
*In addition to alphanumeric and control symbology processing enhancements, the MEARTS **and** STARS systems are equipped with automatic beacon decoders. Therefore, in facilities where the automatic beacon decoders are providing the control slash video, there is no requirement to have the non−automated decoding equipment operating simultaneously.*

OLD

5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT

Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts. For TPX-42 and equivalent systems ensure that altitude readout is valid immediately after identification. (TCDD-/BANS-equipped tower cabs are not required to validate Mode C readouts after receiving interfacility handoffs from TRACONs according to the procedures in para 5-4-3, Methods, subpara a4.)

NEW

5-2-17. VALIDATION OF MODE C READOUT

Ensure that Mode C altitude readouts are valid after accepting an interfacility handoff, initial track start, track start from coast/suspend tabular list, missing, or unreasonable Mode C readouts. **When an X is displayed adjacent to the Mode C, the Mode C altitude readout must be validated after the X is no longer displayed in the data block.** (**CTRD** equipped tower cabs are not required to validate Mode C readouts after receiving interfacility handoffs from TRACONs according to the procedures in **P**ara 5-4-3, Methods, subpara a4.)

OLD

5-4-6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

Title through **f**

1. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP/STARS system.

NEW

5-4-6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

No Change

1. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your system.

OLD

5-5-2. TARGET SEPARATION

a. Apply radar separation:

1. Between the centers of primary radar targets; however, do not allow a primary target to touch another primary target or a beacon control slash.

2. Between the ends of beacon control slashes.

NOTE−
At TPX−42 sites, the bracket video feature must be activated to display the beacon control slash.

3. Between the end of a beacon control slash and the center of a primary target.

4. All−digital displays. Between the centers of digitized targets. Do not allow digitized targets to touch.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent ILS/MLS Approaches− Dual & Triple.

NEW

5-5-2. TARGET SEPARATION

Apply radar separation:

a. Between the centers of primary radar targets; however, do not allow a primary target to touch another primary target or a beacon control slash.

b. Between the ends of beacon control slashes.

Delete

c. Between the end of a beacon control slash and the center of a primary target.

d. All−digital displays. Between the centers of digitized targets. Do not allow digitized targets to touch.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple.

OLD

5-5-4. MINIMA

Title through **b2**

Add

b3

Add

Add

NEW

5-5-4. MINIMA

No Change

NOTE−
In the event of an unexpected ISR on one or more aircraft, the ATCS working that aircraft must transition from 3-mile to 5-mile separation, or establish some other form of approved separation (visual or vertical) as soon as feasible. This action must be timely, but taken in a reasonable fashion, using the controller's best judgment, as not to reduce safety or the integrity of the traffic situation. For example, if ISR appears when an aircraft is established on final with another aircraft on short final, it would be beneficial from a safety perspective to allow the trailing aircraft to continue the approach and land rather than terminate a stabilized approach.

No Change

4. ADS-B may be integrated as an additional surveillance source when operating in FUSION mode. The display of ADS-B targets is permitted and does not require radar reinforcement.

NOTE−
ADS-B surveillance must only be used when operating in FUSION.

OLD	NEW
Add	**5. The use of ADS-B only information may be used to support all radar requirements associated with any published instrument procedure that is annotated "Radar Required".**
Add	**6. The ADS-B Computer Human Interface (CHI) may be implemented by facilities on a sector by sector or facility wide basis when the determination is made that utilization of the ADS-B CHI provides an operational advantage to the controller.**

OLD	NEW
Section 15. Automated Radar Terminal Systems (ARTS)− Terminal	**Section 15. Common Automated Radar Terminal Systems (CARTS) & Standard Terminal Automation Replacement System (STARS)− Terminal**

OLD	NEW
5-15-1. APPLICATION	**5-15-1. APPLICATION**
ARTS/STARS may be used for identifying aircraft assigned a discrete beacon code, maintaining identity of targets, and performing handoffs of these targets between controllers.	CARTS/STARS may be used for identifying aircraft assigned a discrete beacon code, maintaining identity of targets, and performing handoffs of these targets between controllers. **All procedures for the terminal domain related to air traffic control services using CARTS or STARS apply to the FUSION target.**
NOTE− *USAF/USN. Where PIDP/DAIR equipment is capable of performing the functions described in this section, it may be used accordingly.*	Delete

OLD	NEW
Section 16. TPX-42− Terminal	Delete
5-16−1. APPLICATION	Delete
Each TPX−42 facility shall utilize the equipment to the maximum extent possible consistent with local operating conditions.	Delete
5-16-2. RESPONSIBILITY	Delete
This equipment does not relieve the controller of the responsibility to ensure proper identification, maintenance of identity, handoff of the correct radar beacon target associated with numeric data, and the separation of aircraft.	Delete
5-16-3. FUNCTIONAL USE	Delete
TPX− 42 may be used for the following functions:	Delete
a. Tagging.	Delete
b. Altitude information.	Delete
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.*	Delete

c. Coordination.	Delete
d. Target identity confirmation.	Delete
5–16–4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	Delete
Use the TPX–42 system as follows:	Delete
a. TPX–42 facilities must inform adjacent facilities of scheduled and unscheduled shutdowns.	Delete
b. To the maximum extent practicable, tags should be utilized for all controlled aircraft.	Delete
5–16–5. INFORMATION DEISPLAYED	Delete
a. Inhibiting portions of the tag must be in accordance with facility directives, which must ensure maximum required use of the equipment.	Delete
b. Mode C altitude information must not be inhibited unless a ground malfunction causes repeated discrepancies of 300 feet or more between the automatic altitude readouts and pilot reported altitudes.	Delete
5–16–6. INHIBITING LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM (LAAS)	Delete
Assign a beacon code to a VFR aircraft or to an aircraft that has canceled its IFR flight plan to inhibit LAAS processing unless the aircraft has specifically requested LAAS.	Delete

OLD	NEW
7-6-1. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT-TERMINAL	**7-6-1. BASIC RADAR SERVICE TO VFR AIRCRAFT-TERMINAL**
Title through **b** ***REFERENCE***	No Change
c. When ISR is being displayed, target resolution is prohibited.	Delete

OLD	NEW
7–7–3. SEPARATION	**7–7–3. SEPARATION**
Title through **b**	No Change
c. Target resolution.	**c.** Target resolution**, except when ISR is being displayed.**
NOTE– 1. *When ISR is being displayed, target resolution is prohibited.* 2. *Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.*	***NOTE–*** *Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.*

OLD	NEW
7–8–3. SEPARATION	**7–8–3. SEPARATION**
Title through **b**	No Change
c. Target resolution.	**c.** Target resolution**, except when ISR is being displayed.**
NOTE– 1. *When ISR is being displayed, target resolution is prohibited.* 2. *Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.*	*NOTE–* *Apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g, when wake turbulence separation is required.*

OLD	NEW
7-9-4. SEPARATION	**7-9-4. SEPARATION**
Title through **b1**	No Change
Add	***NOTE–*** ***When ISR is being displayed, discontinue 1 1/2–NM separation.***
b2 through **d**	No Change
1. Target resolution, or	**1.** Target resolution, **except when ISR is being displayed,** or
NOTE– *When ISR is being displayed, target resolution is prohibited.*	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS
8–1–7. OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORTING (ONER) PROCEDURES

2. BACKGROUND: FAA JO 7110.65, Para 8-1-7, requires facilities to refer to FAAO 7110.82 for procedures on how to process Oceanic Navigational Error (ONER) Reports. FAAO 7110.82 was effective June 3, 2009, and replaced the terminology ONER with Oceanic Error Report.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS	**1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS**
Oceanic Navigational Error Report (ONER)	Delete

OLD

8−1−7. OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORTING (ONER) PROCEDURES

FAAO 7110.82, Monitoring of Navigation, Longitudinal Separation, and Altitude Keeping Performance in Oceanic Airspace, contains procedures for reporting and processing navigational errors observed by ATC radar for aircraft exiting oceanic airspace.

NOTE−
FAAO 7110.82 establishes procedures for processing ONER procedures, Oceanic Altitude Deviation Reports, Erosion of Longitudinal Separation Reports, Letter of Authorization Verification Reports, and for collecting system data for analysis. This data is needed for risk modeling activities to support separation standard reductions.

NEW

8−1−7. OCEANIC ERROR REPORT PROCEDURES

FAAO 7110.82 establishes procedures for reporting Gross Navigation Errors (GNE), height errors, time(longitudinal) errors, intervention, and Special Area of Operations (SAO) verification in oceanic airspace. This data is needed for risk modeling activities to support separation standard reductions.

Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2−1−6. SAFETY ALERT

2. BACKGROUND: The original phraseology for Safety Alert in the 7110.65A, paragraph 33 read: “(Ident) Traffic alert, advise you turn right/left heading (degrees) and /or climb/descend to (altitude) immediately”. Paragraph 33, was later changed to 2-1-6, and then modified in FAA JO 7110.65M on 2/2/00, to incorporate “traffic alert” at the beginning of the transmission. The phraseology instructs controllers to give the position of the aircraft, while the example omits the position information. A number of controllers are not discerning the difference between the phraseology and example in paragraph 2-1-6b.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

2−1−6. SAFETY ALERT

Title through **b** ***PHRASEOLOGY***

EXAMPLE−
“Traffic Alert, Cessna Three Four Juliet, advise you turn left immediately.”
or
“Traffic Alert, Cessna Three-Four Juliet, advise you turn left and climb immediately.”

REFERENCE−
REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−1, Conflict Alert (CA) and Mode C Intruder (MCI) Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−2, En Route Minimum Safe Altitude Warning (E−MSAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−15−6, CA/MCI.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.

NEW

2−1−6. SAFETY ALERT

No Change

EXAMPLE−
“Traffic Alert, Cessna Three Four Juliet, ***12’o clock, 1 mile*** *advise you turn left immediately.”*
or
“Traffic Alert, Cessna Three-Four Juliet, ***12’o clock, 1 mile*** *advise you turn left and climb immediately.”*

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−1, Conflict Alert (CA) and Mode C Intruder (MCI) Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−2, En Route Minimum Safe Altitude Warning (E−MSAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−15−6, CA/MCI.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2-1-21, Traffic Advisories

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
2-1-19. WAKE TURBULENCE
2-1-20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES
2-4-14. WORDS AND PHRASES
2-4-21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES
3-3-5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES
3-7-3. GROUND OPERATIONS
3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH
4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES
5-5-7. PASSING OR DIVERGING
7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: In 2008, the FAA European Organization for the Safety of Air Navigation (EuroControl), the Joint Aviation Authorities, and the aircraft manufacturer modified existing separation standards for the Airbus A380-800 (A388) aircraft. The separation standards apply to terminal and enroute facilities. Although a "J" indicator for the A388 has been identified by ICAO in its October 9, 2006, guidance, the FAA has not rendered a final determination in support of such an indicator. Accordingly, existing flight data processing systems and records have not yet been modified to reflect a "J" indicator for the A388 on electronic flight lists or printed flight progress strips. Studies indicate that wake vortices generated by the A388 may be more substantial than those of aircraft in the "Heavy" Aircraft Weight Class, thus requiring the special designation, "Super" and additional wake turbulence separation during certain segments of flight. The A388 must identify itself as, "Super" in radio communications with air traffic control. Recent analysis of the current U.S. weight-based wake turbulence categories and associated separation minima has indicated that the Antonov An225 is more appropriately aligned with the A388 than as a U.S. heavy aircraft.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

2–1–19. WAKE TURBULENCE

a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets/B757s and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.

NOTE–
Para 5–5–4, Minima, specifies increased radar separation for small type aircraft landing behind large, heavy, or B757 aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

NEW

2–1–19. WAKE TURBULENCE

a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to **an** aircraft operating behind **another aircraft when wake turbulence separation is required.**

NOTE–
Para 5–5–4, Minima, subparagraphs g and h specify the required radar wake turbulence separations. Time-based separations are contained in Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-9-7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures, Para 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway Separation, Para 3-9-9, Nonintersecting Converging Runway Operations, Para 3-10-3, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-10-4, Intersecting Runway Separation, Para 6-1-4, Adjacent Airport Operation, Para 6-1-5, Arrival Minima, and Para 6-7-5, Interval Minima.

OLD

2–1–20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES

a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, including the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight to aircraft operating behind Heavy or B757 aircraft to:

NEW

2–1–20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES

a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories including the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight to aircraft operating behind **an** aircraft **that requires wake turbulence separation when**:

REFERENCE−
AC 90-23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Pilot Responsibility, Para 12.

1. *TERMINAL.* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets or B757s.

2. IFR aircraft that accept a visual approach or visual separation.

REFERENCE−

3. *TERMINAL.* VFR arriving aircraft that have previously been radar vectored and the vectoring has been discontinued.

b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion, wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word *heavy* in the description.

REFERENCE−
*AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Pilot Responsibility, Para **11**.*
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4,Minima, Subparagraph g.

1. *TERMINAL.* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored are behind **the larger aircraft**.

2. IFR aircraft accept a visual approach or visual separation.

No Change

3. *TERMINAL.* VFR arriving aircraft have previously been radar vectored and the vectoring has been discontinued.

b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion, wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. **When traffic is known to be a super aircraft, include the word *super* in the description**. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word *heavy* in the description.

OLD

2-4-14. WORDS AND PHRASES

Title through **a**

Add

b. The word "heavy" must be used as part of the identification of heavy jet aircraft as follows:

TERMINAL. In all communications with or about heavy jet aircraft.

EN ROUTE. The use of the word heavy may be omitted except as follows:

Add

1. In communications with a terminal facility about heavy jet operations.

2. In communications with or about heavy jet aircraft with regard to an airport where the en route center is providing approach control service.

3. In communications with or about heavy jet aircraft when the separation from a following aircraft may become less than 5 miles by approved procedure.

4 through ***EXAMPLE***

NEW

2-4-14. WORDS AND PHRASES

No Change

b. The word *super* must be used as part of the identification in all communications with or about super aircraft.

c. The word ***heavy*** must be used as part of the identification **in all communications with or about** heavy aircraft**.**

Delete

Delete

d. *EN ROUTE.* The use of the words *super* or *heavy* may be omitted except as follows:

1. In communications with a terminal facility about **super or** heavy **aircraft** operations.

2. In communications with or about **super or** heavy aircraft with regard to an airport where the en route center is providing approach control service.

3. In communications with or about **super or** heavy aircraft when the separation from a following aircraft may become less than 5 miles by approved procedure.

No Change

NOTE−
Most airlines will use the word "heavy" following the company prefix and flight number when establishing communications or when changing frequencies within a terminal facility's area.

b5

OLD

2-4-21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES

Except for heavy aircraft, describe aircraft as follows when issuing traffic information.

a through **b**

1. Manufacturer's model or designator

b2 through **c**

1. Manufacturer's model or designator.

c2 through ***EXAMPLE***

Add

d. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a heavy jet, specify the word "heavy" before the manufacturer's name and model.

EXAMPLE−
"Heavy L-Ten-Eleven."
"Heavy C-Five."
"Heavy Boeing Seven Forty-Seven."

NOTE−
*Most airlines will use the word **"super" or** "heavy" following the company prefix and flight number when establishing communications or when changing frequencies within a terminal facility's area.*

Renumber to **e**

NEW

2-4-21. DESCRIPTION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES

Except for **super and** heavy aircraft, describe aircraft as follows when issuing traffic information.

No Change

1. Manufacturer's model or **type** designator.

No Change

1. Manufacturer's model or **type** designator.

No Change

d. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a super aircraft, specify the word s*uper* before the manufacturer's name and model.

e. When issuing traffic information to aircraft following a heavy **aircraft**, specify the word *heavy* before the manufacturer's name and model.

EXAMPLE−
"Super A-Three-Eighty" or "Super A-three-eighty-eight."
*"Heavy C-**Seventeen.**"*
"Heavy Boeing Seven Forty-Seven."

OLD

3-3-5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES

Title through **b**

1. Issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft early enough to be of benefit to the pilot. When possible, include reports from heavy jet aircraft when the arriving or departing aircraft is a heavy.

NEW

3-3-5. BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES

No Change

1. Issue the latest braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft early enough to be of benefit to the pilot. When possible, include reports from **super or** heavy aircraft when the arriving or departing aircraft is a **super or** heavy.

OLD

3-7-3. GROUND OPERATIONS

Title through **a**

a. Heavy jet aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.

NEW

3-7-3. GROUND OPERATIONS

No Change

a. Super or heavy aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.

OLD

3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH

A low approach with an altitude restriction of not less than 500 feet above the airport may be authorized except over an aircraft in takeoff position or a departure aircraft. Do not clear aircraft for restricted altitude low approaches over personnel unless airport authorities have advised these personnel that the approaches will be conducted. Advise the approaching aircraft of the location of applicable ground traffic, personnel, or equipment.

NOTE−
1. *The 500 feet restriction is a minimum. Higher altitudes should be used when warranted. For example, 1,000 feet is more appropriate for heavy aircraft operating over unprotected personnel or small aircraft on or near the runway.*

NEW

3-10-10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH

No Change

NOTE−
1. *The 500 feet restriction is a minimum. Higher altitudes should be used when warranted. For example, 1,000 feet is more appropriate for* ***super or*** *heavy aircraft operating over unprotected personnel or small aircraft on or near the runway.*

OLD

4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

Title through **a1(b)**

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/B757, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

NEW

4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

No Change

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for **super or** heavy aircraft, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

OLD

5-5-7. PASSING OR DIVERGING

Title through **a2(b)**

3. Although approved separation may be discontinued, the requirements of Para 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraphs f and g apply when operating behind a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE through **b4**

5. You have advised the pilots if either aircraft is classified as a heavy jet/B757 aircraft.

6. Although vertical separation may be discontinued, the requirements of para 5−5−4, Minima, subparas f must be applied when operating behind a heavy jet/B757.

NEW

5-5-7. PASSING OR DIVERGING

No Change

3. Although approved separation may be discontinued, the requirements of Para 5-5-4, Minima, subparagraph **g must be applied** when **wake turbulence separation is required.**

No Change

5. You have advised the pilots if either aircraft is classified as a **super or** heavy aircraft.

6. Although vertical separation may be discontinued, the requirements of **P**ara 5−5−4, Minima, subpara**graph g** must be applied when **wake turbulence separation is required.**

OLD

7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

Aircraft may be separated by visual means, as provided in this paragraph, when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, and known weather conditions. Reported weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists. Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation.

NEW

7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

Aircraft may be separated by visual means, as provided in this paragraph, when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, and known weather conditions. Reported weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists. Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation. **Visual separation is not authorized when the lead aircraft is a super.**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-3-8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

2. BACKGROUND: When the new aircraft equipment suffix table was introduced in 2013, the automation was designed to translate the NAS equipment suffix of an aircraft that loses Mode C altitude reporting capability to a slant H (/H). The automation would also translate the NAS equipment suffix of an aircraft that loses Mode A beacon reporting capability (loss of transponder) to a /H. This dual assignment of /H produced numerous interfacility handoff failures in facilities operating on ERAM involving aircraft that had only lost Mode C altitude reporting. This situation was caused by ERAM interpreting /H as “No Transponder”, therefore would not process the handoff if it determined that the aircraft was transmitting a beacon code.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

2-3-8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

Title through **c** ***EXAMPLE***

d. Utilize aircraft equipment suffix /H to indicate “RVSM−capable, no transponder.”

NOTE−
/H is for ATC use only. Users are not authorized to file this suffix

NEW

2-3-8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

No Change

d. Utilize aircraft equipment suffix /**O** to indicate “RVSM−capable, no transponder.”

NOTE−
*/**O** is for ATC use only. Users are not authorized to file this suffix*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION
3-9-7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES
3-9-8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS
3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS
3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION
3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS
5-5-4. MINIMA
5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES
5-8-5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS
6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION
6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA
6-7-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA
7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH
7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS
7-6-7. SEQUENCING

2. BACKGROUND: This change revises wake turbulence separation criteria in two separate areas: Super aircraft, which consists of the Airbus A380-800 and Antonov A225, and the integration of some of the provisions contained in FAA Order JO 7110.659B, Wake Turbulence Recategorization.

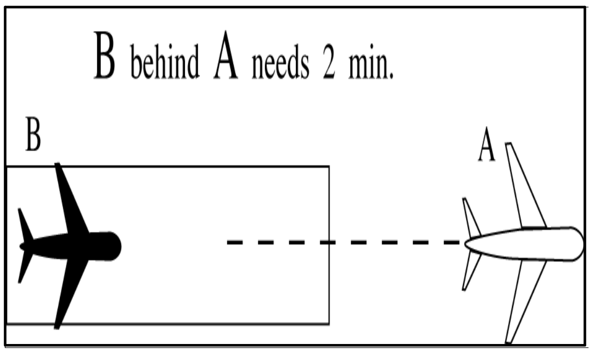
3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION**
Title through **WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION**	No Change
c. Do not issue clearances which imply or indicate approval of rolling takeoffs by heavy jet aircraft except as provided in para 3−1−14, Ground Operations When Volcanic Ash is Present.	**c.** Do not issue clearances which imply or indicate approval of rolling takeoffs by **super or** heavy aircraft except as provided in **P**ara 3−1−14, Ground Operations When Volcanic Ash is Present.
d. Do not issue clearances to a small aircraft to line up and wait on the same runway behind a departing heavy jet aircraft to apply the necessary intervals.	**d.** Do not issue clearances to a small aircraft to line up and wait on the same runway behind a departing **super or** heavy aircraft to apply the necessary intervals.
REFERENCE− *AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence.*	No Change
e. The minima in para 5-5-4, Minima, may be applied in lieu of the 2 minute requirement in subpara f. When para 5-5-4, Minima, are applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne when taking off behind a heavy jet/B757.	**e.** The minima in **P**ara 5-5-4, Minima, **subparagraph g**, may be applied in lieu of the **time interval** requirements in subpara**graphs** f **and g**. When **P**ara 5-5-4, Minima, **is** applied, ensure that the appropriate radar separation exists at or prior to the time an aircraft becomes airborne.
NOTE− *The pilot may request additional separation; i.e., 2 minutes vs. 4 miles, but should make this request before taxiing on the runway.*	***NOTE−*** *The pilot may request additional separation, but should make this request before taxiing on the runway.*
f. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/B757 departure by 2 minutes, when departing:	**f.** Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off **from the same runway or a parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet:**

NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.

1. The same runway. (See FIG 3-9-4).

FIG 3-9-4
2 Minute Separation



2. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet.

g. Separate an aircraft from a heavy jet/B757 when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross− *2 minutes when:*

1. A departure follows a heavy jet/B757 arrival.

2. An arrival follows a heavy jet/B757 departure.

Add

NOTE−
*Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until **the time interval has passed after the preceding aircraft** begins takeoff roll.*

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − ***3 minutes.***

Delete

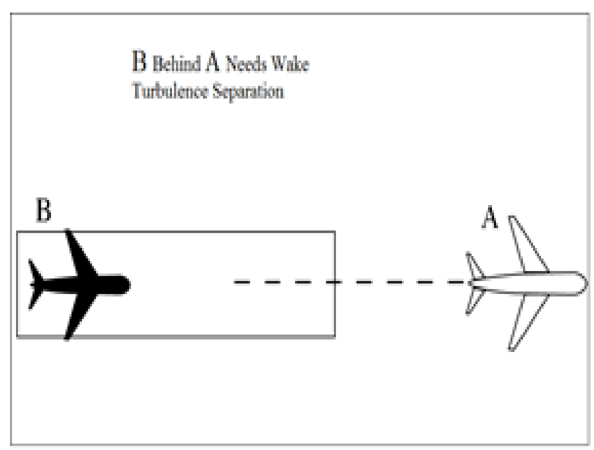
2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − ***2 minutes.***

g. Separate a small aircraft behind a B757 by ***2 minutes*** **when departing the same runway.**

Delete

Delete

FIG 3-9-4
Same Runway Separation



h. Air traffic controllers must not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.	**h. Separate aircraft when operating on a runway with a displaced landing threshold if projected flight paths will cross when either a departure follows an arrival or an arrival follows a departure by the following minima:**
Add	**1. Heavy, large, or small behind super –** ***3 minutes.***
Add	**2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy –** ***2 minutes.***
Add	**3. Small behind B757 –** ***2 minutes.***
i. Separate a small aircraft behind a large aircraft that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs on the same runway by *3 minutes* unless a pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the 3–minute interval. In the latter case, issue a wake turbulence advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff. Controllers must not initiate or suggest a waiver of the 3–minute rule.	**i. Separate an aircraft behind another aircraft that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet by the following minima:**
Add	**1. Heavy, large, or small behind super –** ***4 minutes.***
Add	**2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy –** ***3 minutes***
NOTE– *A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request.*	Delete
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Appendix A, Appendix B, and Appendix C, Aircraft Information.*	No Change
j. Separate aircraft behind a heavy jet/B757 that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet – *3 minutes*.	**j. Separate a small aircraft behind a B757 that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs or landings on the same runway by –** ***3 minutes.***
k. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required *3–minute* interval.	**k. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required intervals contained in subparagraphs f through j.**
PHRASEOLOGY– *HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.*	No Change
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.*	No Change
Add	**l. Separate a small aircraft behind a large aircraft (except B757) that has departed or made a low/missed approach when utilizing opposite direction takeoffs on the same runway by** ***3 minutes*** **unless a pilot has initiated a request to deviate from the time interval. In the latter case, issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory before clearing the aircraft for takeoff. Controllers must not initiate or suggest a waiver of the time interval.**

Add

NOTE−
A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request.

Add

m. Inform aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required time interval.

OLD	NEW
3−9−7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES	**3−9−7. WAKE TURBULENCE SEPARATION FOR INTERSECTION DEPARTURES**
a. Apply the following wake turbulence criteria for intersection departures:	No Change
1. Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding departing large aircraft by ensuring that the small aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after the large aircraft has taken off.	**1.** Separate a small aircraft **weighing 12,500 lbs. or less** taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a departing **small** aircraft **weighing more than 12,500 lbs.** by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least ***3 minutes*** after the **preceding** aircraft has taken off.
2. Separate any aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff), parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with runway thresholds offset by 500 feet or more, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after a heavy aircraft/B757 has taken off.	**2.** Separate **a small** aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) **behind a departing large aircraft (except B757)** by ensuring that the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least ***3 minutes*** after the **preceding** aircraft has taken off.
NOTE− *Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with runway thresholds offset by less than 500 feet must apply para 3−9−6, Same Runway Separation, subpara f.*	Delete
3. Separate a small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a preceding small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. by ensuring the following small aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least 3 minutes after the preceding aircraft has taken off.	**3.** Separate a small aircraft taking off from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff) behind a **departing B757** by ensuring **that** the aircraft does not start takeoff roll until at least ***3 minutes*** after the preceding aircraft has taken off.
4. Inform an aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required 3−minute interval.	**4. Separate aircraft departing from an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction takeoff), parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, and parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with the runway thresholds offset by 500 feet or more, by ensuring that the aircraft does not start take-off roll until the following intervals exist after the preceding aircraft has taken off:**
Add	*NOTE−* *Apply Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, subparagraph f to parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet with runway thresholds offset by less than 500 feet.*

Add

Add

Add

PHRASEOLOGY−
HOLD FOR WAKE TURBULENCE.

NOTE−
Aircraft conducting touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are considered to be departing from an intersection.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−8−2, Touch−and−Go or Stop−and−Go or Low Approach.

b. The 3−minute interval is not required when:

1. A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from that interval unless the preceding departing aircraft is a heavy aircraft/B757.

NOTE−
A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request; the request for takeoff must be accomplished by a request to deviate from the 3−minute interval.

b2

3. Successive touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are conducted with a small aircraft following another small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or a large aircraft in the pattern, or a small aircraft weighing more than 12,500 lbs. or a large aircraft departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the small aircraft is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding large aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the large aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
"Caution wake turbulence, DC−9 on base leg."

Add

Add

(a) Heavy, large, or small behind super - *4 minutes.*

(b) Heavy, large, or small behind heavy - *3 minutes.*

5. Inform aircraft when it is necessary to hold in order to provide the required time interval.

No Change

No Change

No Change

b. The **time** interval is not required when:

1. A pilot has initiated a request to deviate from **the time** interval**s contained in subparagraph a1 or a2.**

NOTE−
*A request for takeoff does not initiate a waiver request; the request for takeoff must be accomplished by a request to deviate from the **time** interval.*

No Change

3. Successive touch-and-go **or** stop-and-go operations are conducted with **any** aircraft following **an** aircraft in the pattern **that requires wake turbulence separation,** or **an** aircraft departing the same runway **that requires wake turbulence separation in accordance with subparagraphs a1, a2, a3, or a4 (except for super aircraft),** provided the pilot is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding aircraft. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the large**r** aircraft.

Delete

NOTE−
Not authorized with a Super as the lead or departure aircraft.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-2-1, Visual Separation

4. Successive touch-and-go and stop-and-go operations are conducted with any aircraft following a heavy aircraft/B757 in the pattern, or heavy aircraft/B757 departing the same runway, provided the pilot of the aircraft is maintaining visual separation/spacing behind the preceding heavy aircraft/B757. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and the position of the heavy aircraft/B757.

Delete

EXAMPLE−
"Caution wake turbulence, heavy Lockheed C5A departing runway two three."

Delete

5. If action is initiated to reduce the separation between successive touch-and-go or stop-and-go operations, apply 3 minutes separation.

4. If action is initiated to reduce the separation between successive touch-and-go or stop-and-go operations, apply **the appropriate** separation **contained in subparagraph a1, a2, a3, or a4.**

c through **c2**

No Change

3. Issue a clearance to permit the trailing aircraft to deviate from course enough to avoid the flight path of the preceding large departure when applying subpara b1 or b2.

3. Issue a clearance to permit the trailing aircraft to deviate from course enough to avoid the flight path of the preceding **aircraft** when applying subpara b1 or b2.

OLD

3-9-8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/ INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS

Title through
WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

3. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/B757 departure by *2 minutes* when departing:

NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.

(a) Intersecting runways if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG. 3−9−7.)

NEW

3-9-8. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/ INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH OPERATIONS

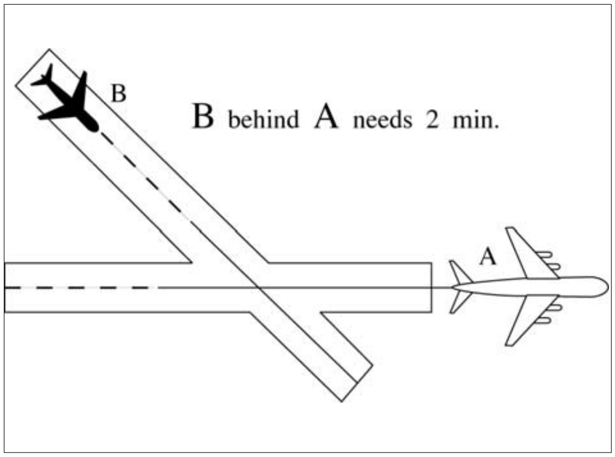
No Change

3. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind **a departing or landing aircraft on an intersecting runway if flight paths will cross (see FIG 3-9-7 and FIG 3-9-8), or an aircraft departing a parallel runway separated by 2,500 feet or more if projected flights will cross (see FIG 3-9-9):**

NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until ***the appropriate time interval has passed*** *after the* ***preceding aircraft began*** ***takeoff roll****.*

(a) Heavy, large, or small behind super – ***3 minutes.***

FIG 3–9–7
Intersecting Runways



(b) A parallel runway separated by 2,500 feet or more if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 3-9-8)

Add

Add

Delete

(b) **Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – *2 minutes.***

(c) **Small behind B757 – *2 minutes.***

FIG 3-9-7
Departure Behind Departure on Intersecting Runway

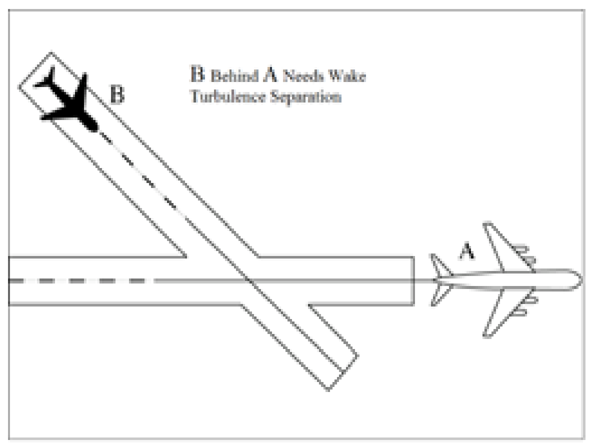
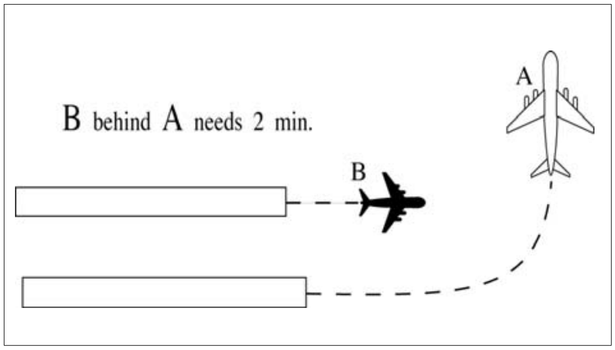


FIG 3-9-8
Parallel Runway



Delete

Add

FIG 3-9-8
Departure Behind Arrival on Intersecting Runway

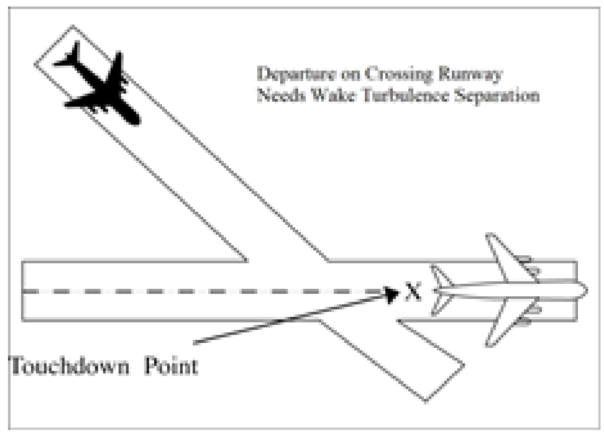
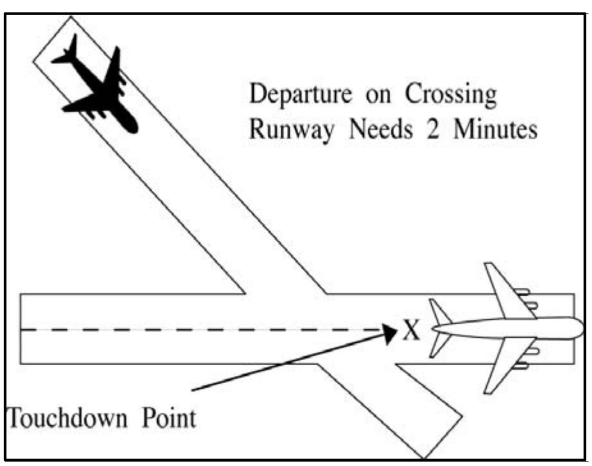


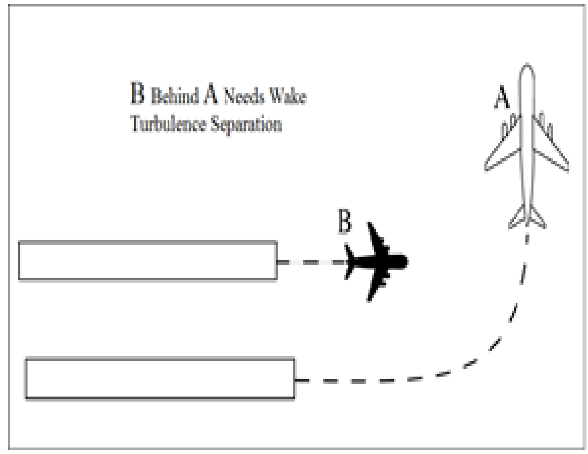
FIG 3-9-9
Departure on Intersecting Runway



Delete

Add

FIG 3-9-9
Parallel Runway



4. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival – *2 minutes.* (See FIG 3-9-9)

4. Pilot requests to deviate from the required time intervals must not be approved if the preceding aircraft requires wake turbulence separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

Add

5. Air traffic controllers must not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.

Delete

Delete

OLD

3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

Title through **WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION**

b. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a heavy jet/B757 departure by *2 minutes* when departing a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 3-9-13).

Add

Add

Add

NEW

3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

No Change

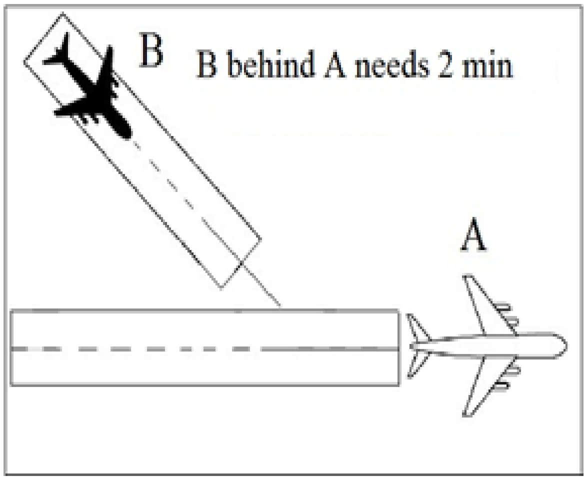
b. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a **departing aircraft on** a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross (See FIG 3-9-13):

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super – *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 – *2 minutes.*

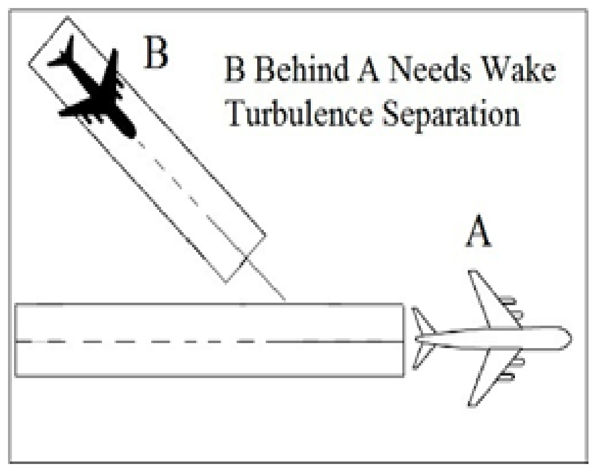
FIG 3-9-13
Intersecting Runway Separation



Delete

Add

FIG 3-9-13
Intersecting Runway Separation



NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until 2 minutes after the heavy jet/B757 begins takeoff roll.

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival*- 2 minutes.* (See FIG 3-9-14).

NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until ***the time interval has passed from when the preceding aircraft began*** *takeoff roll.*

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing **aircraft** on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival (See FIG 3-9-14)**:**

Add

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super – ***3 minutes.***

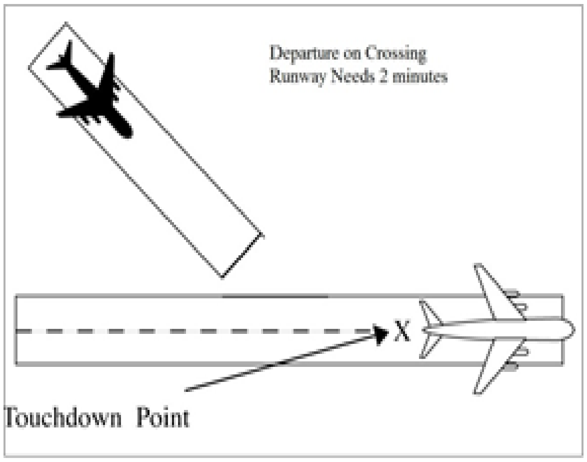
Add

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – ***2 minutes.***

Add

3. Small behind B757 – ***2 minutes.***

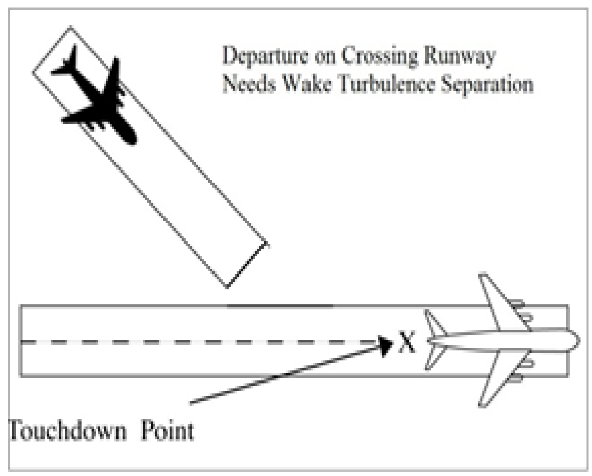
FIG 3-9-14
Intersecting Runway Separation



Delete

Add

FIG 3-9-14
Intersecting Runway Separation



d. Air traffic controllers must not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.

d. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required time interval if the preceding aircraft **requires wake turbulence separation.**

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

OLD

3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

Title through **b**

1. The heavy jet/B757 to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving heavy jet/B757 on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

2. The large aircraft to a small aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving large aircraft on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

NEW

3-10-3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

No Change

1. The **super or** heavy to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving **super or** heavy on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

2. The **B757/**large aircraft to a small aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving **B757/**large aircraft on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

OLD

3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/ INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH SEPARATION

Title through **WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION**

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure- *2 minutes* or the appropriate radar separation minima. (See FIG 3-10-10.)

Add

Add

Add

d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet/B757 to:

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 12, Pilot Responsibility.

FIG 3-10-10
Intersecting Runway Separation

1. IFR/VFR aircraft landing on crossing runways behind a departing heavy jet/B757; if the arrival flight path will cross the takeoff path behind the heavy jet/B757 and behind the heavy jet/B757 rotation point. (See FIG 3−10−11.)

FIG 3-10-11 through ***EXAMPLE***

2. VFR aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind an arriving heavy jet/B757 if the arrival flight path will cross. (See FIG 3-10-12.)

NEW

3-10-4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY/ INTERSECTING FLIGHT PATH SEPARATION

No Change

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing **aircraft** on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure **by** the appropriate radar separation **or the following interval:** (See FIG 3-10-10):

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super – ***3 minutes.***

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – ***2 minutes.***

3. Small behind B757 – ***2 minutes.***

d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the **super,** heavy**, or** B757 to:

REFERENCE−
AC 90−23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 11, Pilot Responsibility.

No Change

1. All aircraft landing on **a** crossing runway behind a departing **super or** heavy**, or a small aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind a departing** B757, if the arrival flight path will cross the takeoff path behind the departing aircraft rotation point. (See FIG 3−10−11.)

No Change

2. All VFR aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind an arriving **super or** heavy**, and VFR small aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind a** B757**,** if the arrival flight path**s** will cross. (See FIG 3-10-12.)

OLD	NEW
5-5-4. MINIMA	**5-5-4. MINIMA**
Title through **e**	No Change
f. Separate aircraft operating directly behind, or directly behind and less than 1,000 feet below, or following an aircraft conducting an instrument approach by:	**g.** Separate aircraft operating directly behind or following an aircraft conducting an instrument approach by **the minima specified and in accordance with the following:**
NOTE− *1. When applying wake turbulence separation criteria, directly behind means an aircraft is operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth.* *2. Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*	***NOTE−*** *Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*
1. Heavy behind heavy− *4 miles.*	**1. When operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth and less than 1,000 feet below:**
Add	**(a) *TERMINAL*. Behind super:**
Add	**(1) Heavy - *6 miles.***
Add	**(2) Large - *7 miles.***
Add	**(3) Small - *8 miles.***
Add	**(b) *EN ROUTE*. Behind super - *5 miles*, unless the super is operating at or below FL240 and below 250 knots, then:**
Add	**(1) Heavy - *6 miles.***
Add	**(2) Large - *7 miles.***
Add	**(3) Small - *8 miles.***
Add	**(c) Behind heavy:**
Add	**(1) Heavy - *4 miles.***
Add	**(2) Large or small - *5 miles.***
2. Large/heavy behind B757− *4 miles.*	**2. Separate small aircraft behind a B757 by *4 miles* when operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth and/or less than 500 feet below.**
3. Small behind B757− *5 miles.*	**3. *TERMINAL*. When departing parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, the 2,500 feet requirement in subparagraph 2 is not required when a small departs the parallel runway behind a B757. Issue a wake turbulence cautionary advisory and instructions that will establish lateral separation in accordance with subparagraph 2. Do not issue instructions that will allow the small to pass behind the B757.**

OLD	NEW
Add	***NOTE−*** ***The application of paragraph 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures, satisfies this requirement when an initial heading is issued with the take-off clearance.***
4. Small/large behind heavy – *5 miles.*	Delete
g. In addition to subpara f, separate an aircraft landing behind another aircraft on the same runway, or one making a touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach by ensuring the following minima will exist at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold:	**h.** In addition to subpara g, separate an aircraft landing behind another aircraft on the same runway, or one making a touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach by ensuring the following minima will exist at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold:
NOTE− *Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*	No Change
1. Small behind large− *4 miles*.	No Change
2. Small behind B757−5 miles.	Delete
3. Small behind heavy− *6 miles.*	**2.** Small behind heavy− *6 miles.*
If the landing threshold cannot be determined, apply the above minima as constant or increasing at the closest point that can be determined prior to the landing threshold.	No Change
Add	**i.** ***TERMINAL.*** **When NOWGT is displayed in an aircraft data block, provide** ***10 miles*** **separation behind the preceding aircraft and** ***10 miles*** **separation to the succeeding aircraft.**
h. *TERMINAL*. 2.5 nautical miles (NM) separation is authorized between aircraft established on the final approach course within 10 NM of the landing runway when operating in single sensor slant range mode and aircraft remains within 40 miles of the antenna and:	**j.** *TERMINAL*. 2.5 nautical miles (NM) separation is authorized between aircraft established on the final approach course within 10 NM of the landing runway when operating in single sensor slant range mode and aircraft remains within 40 miles of the antenna, and:
1. The leading aircraft's weight class is the same or less than the trailing aircraft;	No Change
2. Heavy aircraft and the Boeing 757 are permitted to participate in the separation reduction as the trailing aircraft only;	**2.** **Super and h**eavy aircraft are permitted to participate in the separation reduction as the trailing aircraft only;

OLD	NEW
5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES	**5-8-3. SUCCESSIVE OR SIMULTANEOUS DEPARTURES**
Title through **FIG 5-8-3**	No Change
NOTE− *This procedure does not apply when a small aircraft is taking off from an intersection on the same runway behind a large aircraft or when an aircraft is departing behind a heavy jet/B757.*	***NOTE−*** *This procedure does not apply when* ***wake turbulence separation is required.***

OLD	NEW
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4, Minima.*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−7, Wake Turbulence Separation for Intersection Departures.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4, Minima.* ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.***
b1 through **FIG 5-8-5**	No Change
NOTE− *This procedure does not apply when aircraft are departing behind a heavy jet/B757.*	***NOTE−*** *This procedure does not apply when **wake turbulence separation is required.***
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.***

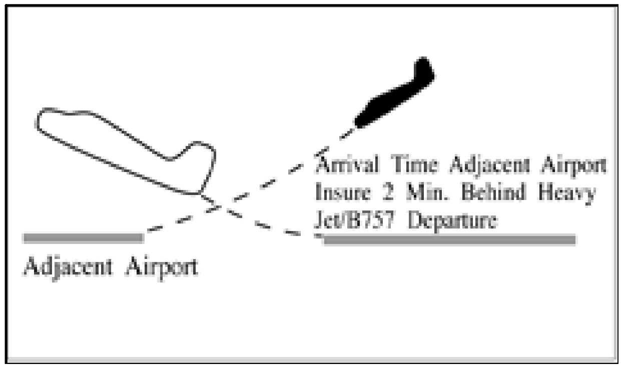
OLD	NEW
5-8-5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS	**5-8-5. DEPARTURES AND ARRIVALS ON PARALLEL OR NONINTERSECTING DIVERGING RUNWAYS**
Title through **b1**	No Change
NOTE− *In the event of a missed approach by a heavy jet/B757, apply the procedures in Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, or Para 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations, ensure that the heavy jet does not overtake or cross in front of an aircraft departing from the adjacent parallel runway.*	***NOTE−*** *In the event of a missed approach by **an aircraft requiring wake turbulence separation behind it**, apply the procedures in Para 3-9-6, Same Runway Separation, Para 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations, ensure that the **larger aircraft** does not overtake or cross in front of an aircraft departing from the adjacent parallel runway.*
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph f.***

OLD	NEW
6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION	**6-1-4. ADJACENT AIRPORT OPERATION**
Title through **WAKE TRUBULENCE APPLICATION**	No Change
The ATC facility providing service to heavy jets/B757s and having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports must separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross behind the flight path of a heavy jet/B757 − *2 minutes.*	The ATC facility having control jurisdiction at adjacent airports must separate arriving or departing IFR aircraft on a course that will cross the flight path of **an aircraft requiring wake turbulence separation in accordance with the following:**
Add	**a. Heavy, large, or small behind super −** ***3 minutes.***
Add	**b. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy −** ***2 minutes.***
Add	**c. Small behind B757 -** ***2 minutes.***

OLD

FIG 6−1−1

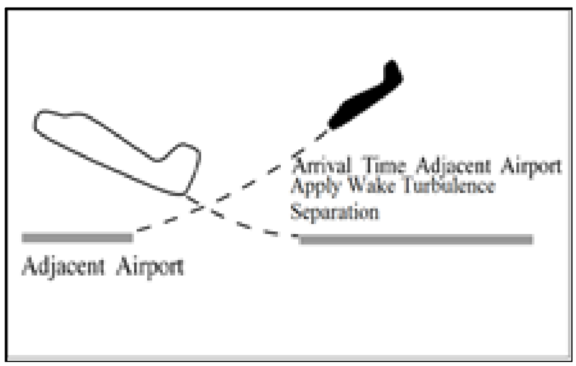
Adjacent Airport Operation − Arrival



NEW

FIG 6−1−1

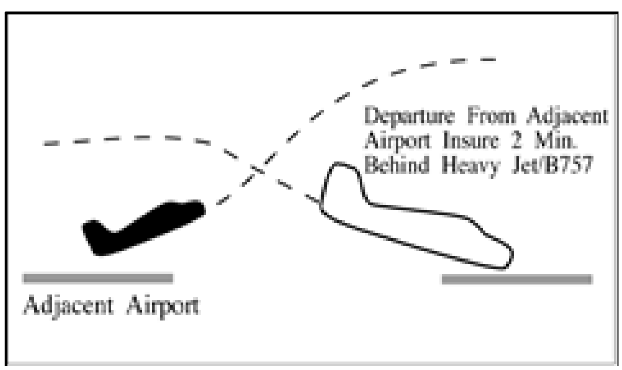
Adjacent Airport Operation − Arrival



OLD

FIG 6−1−2

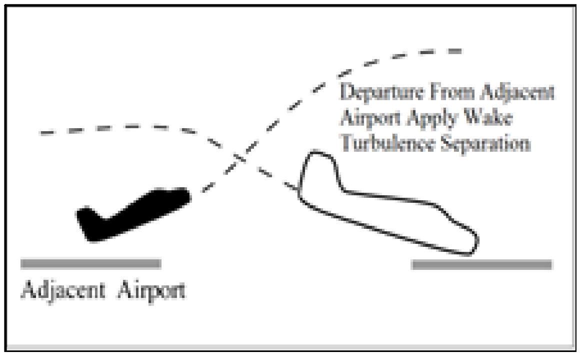
Adjacent Airport Operation − Departure



NEW

FIG 6–1–2

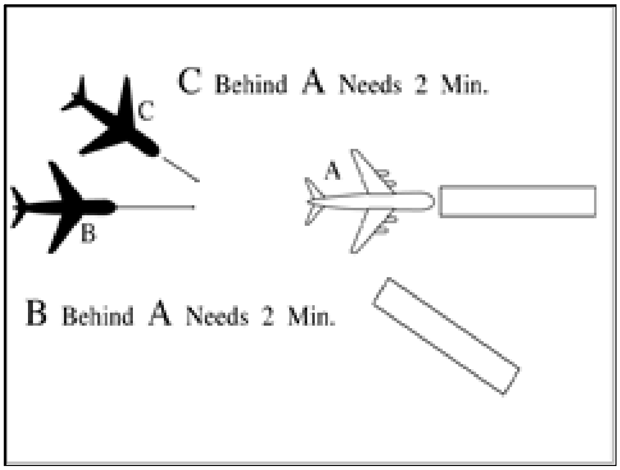
Adjacent Airport Operation – Departure



OLD	NEW
6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA	**6-1-5. ARRIVAL MINIMA**
Title through **WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION**	No Change
Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving heavy jet/B757 by *2 minutes* when arriving:	**a.** Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving **aircraft to the same runway:**
a. The same runway (use *3 minutes* for a small aircraft behind a heavy jet/B757).	Delete
b. A parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet.	Delete
c. A crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross. (See FIG 6-1-3.)	Delete
Add	**1. Behind super:**
Add	**(a) Heavy or large – *3 minutes.***
Add	**(b) Small – *4 minutes.***
Add	**2. Behind heavy:**
Add	**(a) Heavy or large – *2 minutes.***
Add	**(b) Small – *3 minutes.***
Add	**3. Small behind B757 – *3 minutes.***
Add	**b. Separate IFR aircraft landing behind an arriving aircraft to a parallel runway separated by less than 2,500 feet, or a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross:**
Add	**1. Heavy, large, or small behind super – *3 minutes.***
Add	**2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – *2 minutes.***
Add	**3. Small behind B757 – *2 minutes.***

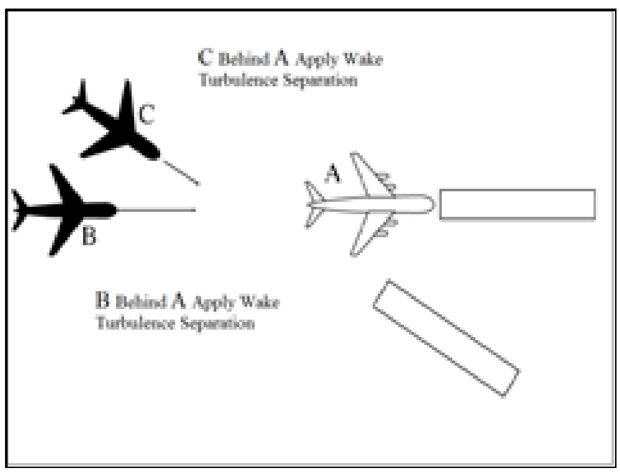
OLD

FIG 6-1-3
Arrival Minima
Landing Behind an Arriving Heavy Jet/B757



NEW

FIG 6-1-3
Arrival Minima Landing Behind an Arriving **Aircraft Requiring Wake Turbulence Separation**



OLD

6-7-5. INTERVAL MINIMA

Use a *2-minute* or a *5-mile* radar interval (except for a small aircraft behind a heavy aircraft: use a *3-minute* or a *6-mile* radar interval) as the minimum between successive approaches and increase the interval, as necessary, taking into account the:

NOTE–
Increased separation is required for small aircraft behind heavy aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

NEW

6-7-5. INTERVAL MINIMA

Use **the following time** or radar interval as the minimum interval between successive approaches:

Delete

OLD	NEW
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5, Approach Separation Responsibility.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–7–1, Application.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–7–2, Approach Sequence.*	No Change
Add	**a. Behind super:**
Add	**1. Heavy – *3 minutes* or *6 miles.***
Add	**2. Large – *3 minutes* or *7 miles.***
Add	**3. Small – *4 minutes* or *8 miles.***
Add	**b. Behind heavy:**
Add	**1. Heavy – *2 minutes or 4 miles.***
Add	**2. Large – *2 minutes* or *5 miles.***
Add	**3. Small – *3 minutes* or *6 miles.***
Add	**c. Small behind B757 – *2 minutes* or *4 miles.***
Add	**d. Increase the interval, as necessary, taking into account the:**
a through **d**	Renumber **d1** through **d4**

OLD	NEW
7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH	**7-4-3. CLEARANCE FOR VISUAL APPROACH**
Title through **c3**	No Change
d. All aircraft following a heavy jet/B757 must be informed of the airplane manufacturer and/or model.	**d**. All aircraft following a heavy**, or a small aircraft following a** B757**,** must be informed of the airplane manufacturer and/or model.
EXAMPLE– *"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Boeing 757, 12 o'clock, six miles."* *or* *"Cessna Three Four Juliet, following a Seven fifty seven, 12 o'clock, six miles."*	No Change
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para.2–4–21, Description of Aircraft Types.*	No Change
Add	***NOTE–*** ***Visual separation is not authorized when the lead aircraft is a super.***
Add	***REFERENCE–*** ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7-2-1.***

OLD	NEW
7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS	**7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS**
Title through **b1**	No Change
2. When the aircraft flight paths intersect, ensure another form of approved separation is maintained until visual separation is provided.	**2.** When the aircraft flight paths intersect, ensure approved separation is maintained until visual separation is provided.
c	No Change

1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless standard separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation. However, do not permit a heavy/B757 aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.

c2 through **c4(a)**

(b) When aircraft flight paths intersect, another form of approved separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

1. Parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Unless approved separation is provided by ATC, an aircraft must report sighting a preceding aircraft making an approach (instrument or visual) to the adjacent parallel runway. When an aircraft reports another aircraft in sight on the adjacent final approach course and visual separation is applied, controllers must advise the succeeding aircraft to maintain visual separation. However, do not permit a **super or** heavy aircraft to overtake another aircraft. Do not permit a **B757 or other** large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft.

No Change

(b) When aircraft flight paths intersect, approved separation must be maintained until visual separation is provided.

OLD

7-6-7. SEQUENCING

Title through **c1**

2. When parallel runways are less than 2,500 feet apart, do not permit a heavy jet/B757 to overtake any aircraft, nor a large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft established on final within the facility's area of responsibility.

NEW

7-6-7. SEQUENCING

No Change

2. When parallel runways are less than 2,500 feet apart, do not permit a **super or** heavy **aircraft** to overtake any aircraft, nor a **B757 or other** large aircraft to overtake a small aircraft established on final within the facility's area of responsibility.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

2. BACKGROUND: During development of the Arrival Departure Windows (ADW) tool, it was discovered that there are configurations in which FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 3-9-9, could safely support independent operations without an ADW.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

3−9−9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

Title through **d**

e. If the extended centerline of a runway crosses a converging runway or the extended centerline of a converging runway within 1 NM of either departure end, apply the provisions of Paragraph 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway/Intersecting Flight Path Operations. (See FIG 3-9-15)

NEW

3−9−9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

No Change

e. If the extended centerline of a runway crosses a converging runway or the extended centerline of a converging runway **at a distance of 1NM or less from** either departure end, apply the provisions of **P**aragraph 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway Separation, **unless: The facility is using aids specified in a facility directive, (may include, but are not limited to, Arrival/Departure Window (ADW), ASDE-X Virtual Runway Intersection Point (VRIP), cut-off points or automation). (See FIG 3-9-15 and FIG 3-9-16).**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

2. BACKGROUND: In 2012, in response to industry concerns, the Aeronautical Charting Forum (ACF) formed a work group to improve the understanding and use of Visual Climb Over Airport (VCOA). The VCOA option provides an alternative means of departure for those aircraft that are unable to achieve the minimum climb gradient published for the runway and the departure routing. Since the VCOA is a part of the published Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), when the ODP is included in the ATC clearance, pilots have the option of using the VCOA option without advising ATC. This lack of specificity can pose a safety concern.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES	**4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES**
Title through **c2**	No Change
Add	**3. Do not solicit use of the Visual Climb over Airport (VCOA) option.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***Pilots will specifically advise ATC of their intent to use the VCOA option.***
c3 and **c4**	Renumber to **c4** and **c5**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

2. BACKGROUND: Confusion exists concerning the issuance of approach clearances in accordance with FAAO JO 7110.65, Paragraph 4-8-1, Approach Clearance. The FAAO JO 7110.65 Revision Steering Committee convened in August 2014 and was asked to review and modify this paragraph in a manner that would eliminate this confusion as one of the Top 15 document change proposal taskings for FY2015. Separately, a question was raised by the Air Traffic Procedures Advisory Committee (ATPAC) about whether controllers are authorized to assign altitudes below altitudes published on approach charts. This change clarifies that they are, provided there is an MVA or MIA that allows it, and the aircraft is assigned an altitude to maintain until reaching a point that it is vertically established on the approach.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE	**4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE**
Title through **a5** ***PHRASEOLOGY***	No Change

EXAMPLE− *"Cleared Approach."* *"<u>Cleared V-O-R Approach."</u>* *<u>"Cleared V-O-R Runway Three-Six Approach.</u>"* *<u>"Cleared L-D-A Approach."</u>* *"Cleared L-D-A Runway Three-Six Approach."* *<u>"Cleared I-L-S Approach."</u>* *<u>"Cleared Localizer Approach."</u>* *"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One-Three Approach."* *<u>"Cleared RNAV Z Runway Two-Two Approach."</u>* *<u>"Cleared GPS Runway Two Approach."</u>* *<u>"Cleared BRANCH ONE Arrival and RNAV Runway One-Three Approach."</u>* *"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three-Six Approach, glideslope unusable."* *"Cleared S-D-F Approach."* *"Cleared G-L-S Approach."*	***EXAMPLE−*** *"Cleared Approach."* ***<u>"Cleared (V-O-R/I-L-S/Localizer) Approach."</u>*** *"Cleared L-D-A Runway Three-Six Approach."* *"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One-Three Approach."* ***<u>"Cleared (GPS/RNAV Z) Runway Two-Two Approach."</u>*** ***<u>"Cleared BRANCH ONE Arrival and (ILS/RNAV) Runway One-Three Approach."</u>*** *"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three-Six Approach, glideslope unusable."* *"Cleared S-D-F Approach."* *"Cleared G-L-S Approach."*
NOTE 1 and ***2***	No Change
3. *In some cases, the name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS is inoperative. <u>Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC. The use of alphabetical identifiers in the approach name with a letter from the end of the alphabet; for example, X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN Z Rwy 6L or HI TACAN Y Rwy 6L," or "RNAV (GPS) Z Rwy 04 or RNAV (GPS) Y Rwy 04," denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid. Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet; for example, A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.</u>*	***3.*** *In some cases, the name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS is inoperative.*
Add	***<u>4. Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC.</u>***
Add	***<u>5. The use of alphabetical identifiers in the approach name with a letter from the end of the alphabet; for example, X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN Z Rwy 6L or RNAV(GPS) Y Rwy 04", denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid.</u>***
Add	***<u>6. Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet; for example, A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.</u>***

NOTE 4

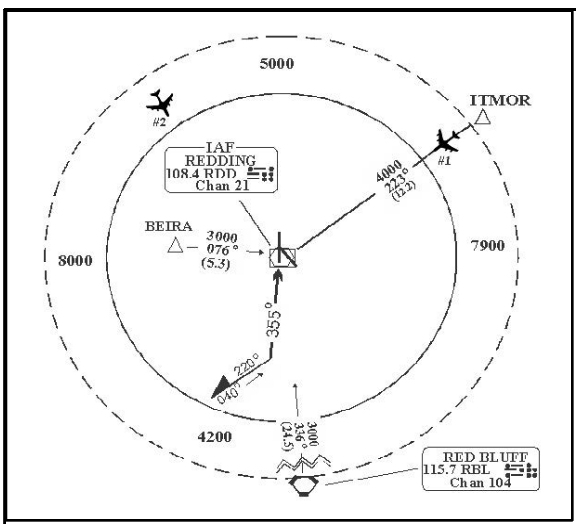
5. An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and prior to reaching that fix is issued a clearance for an approach, but not issued a revised routing; that is, "proceed direct to...." may be expected to proceed via the last assigned route, a feeder route (if one is published on the approach chart), and then to commence the approach as published. If, by following the route of flight to the holding fix, the aircraft would overfly an IAF or the fix associated\ with the beginning of a feeder route to be used, the aircraft is expected to commence the approach using the published feeder route to the IAF or from the IAF as appropriate; that is, the aircraft would not be expected to overfly and return to the IAF or feeder route.

NOTE 6

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS).

b. For aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue the approach clearance only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4-8-1)

FIG 4-8-1
Approach Clearance Example



1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1: *The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."*

Renumber ***NOTE 7***

8. An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and prior to reaching that fix is issued a clearance for an approach, but not issued a revised routing; that is, "proceed direct to...." may be expected to proceed via the last assigned route, a feeder route (if one is published on the approach chart), and then to commence the approach as published. If, by following the route of flight to the holding fix, the aircraft would overfly an IAF or the fix associated with the beginning of a feeder route to be used, the aircraft is expected to commence the approach using the published feeder route to the IAF or from the IAF as appropriate. The aircraft would not be expected to overfly and return to the IAF or feeder route.

Renumber ***NOTE 9***

No Change

b. For aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue the approach clearance only after the aircraft is:

Delete

1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or (See FIG 4-8-1)

EXAMPLE–
The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."

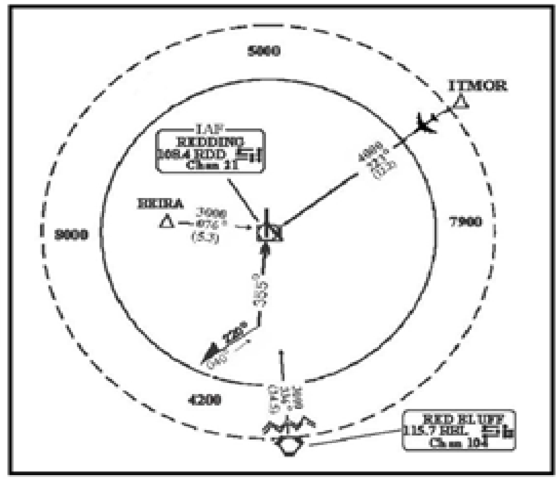
Add

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

EXAMPLE−
<u>Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the VOR on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the VOR is 5,000 feet. "Cross the Redding V-O-R at or above five thousand, cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."</u>

Add

<u>**FIG 4-8-1**</u>
<u>**Approach Clearance Example**</u>



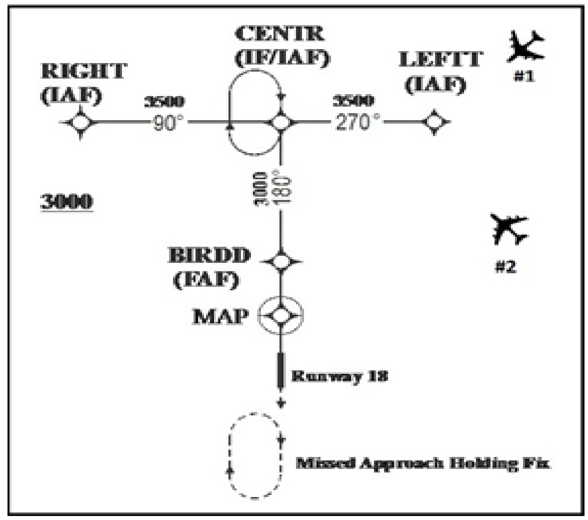
2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. <u>**(See FIG 4-8-2.**</u>)

EXAMPLE−
<u>Aircraft 1 is cleared direct LEFTT. The MVA in the area is 3,000 feet, and the aircraft is at 4,000 feet. "Cross LEFTT at or above three thousand five hundred, cleared RNAV Runway One Eight Approach."</u>

<u>The MVA in the area is 3,000 feet and Aircraft 2 is at 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT direct CENTR, maintain three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One Eight Approach."</u>

Add

<u>FIG 4-8-2</u>
<u>Approach Clearance Example</u>



***NOTE* 1** and **2** — No Change

Add — ***<u>3.</u>*** ***<u>An aircraft is not established on an approach until at or above an altitude published on that segment of the approach</u>***.

Add — *<u>REFERENCE−</u>*
<u>FAAO 8260.3 United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Para 10-2</u>

c — No Change

d. For RNAV−equipped aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue approach clearance for conventional or RNAV SIAP including approaches with RF legs only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4−8−2).

<u>d.</u> **<u>Intercept angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a procedure turn, a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern, or arrival holding is depicted and the pilot will execute the procedure.</u>**

<u>1.</u> <u>Established on a heading or course direct to the IAF at an intercept angle not greater than 90 degrees and is assigned an altitude in accordance with b2. Radar monitoring is required to the IAF for RNAV (RNP) approaches when no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn is executed.</u>

Delete

EXAMPLE−
<u>Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR, section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold in lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at an IAF and a TAA is not defined, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a hold-in-lieu procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One Eight Approach."</u>

Delete

2. Established on a heading or course direct to the IF at an angle not greater than 90 degrees, provided the following conditions are met:

Delete

(a) Assign an altitude in accordance with b2 that will permit a normal descent to the FAF.

Delete

NOTE−
Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 150-300 feet per nautical mile when applying guidance in subpara d2(a).

Delete

(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the IF.

Delete

(c) The SIAP must identify the intermediate fix with the letters "IF."

Delete

(d) For procedures where an IAF is published, the pilot is advised to expect clearance to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix.

Delete

EXAMPLE−
"Expect direct CENTR for RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

Delete

3. Established on a heading or course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees, and assigned an altitude in accordance with b2.

Delete

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1 is more than 5 miles from SHANN. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to SHANN is 3,000 feet. SHANN is a step down fix between the IF/IAF ***(CENTR) and the FAF. To*** *clear Aircraft 1 to SHANN, ATC must ensure the intercept angle for the intermediate segment at SHANN is not greater than 30 degrees and must be cleared to an altitude that will allow a normal descent to the FAF. "Cleared direct SHANN, cross SHANN at or above three thousand, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

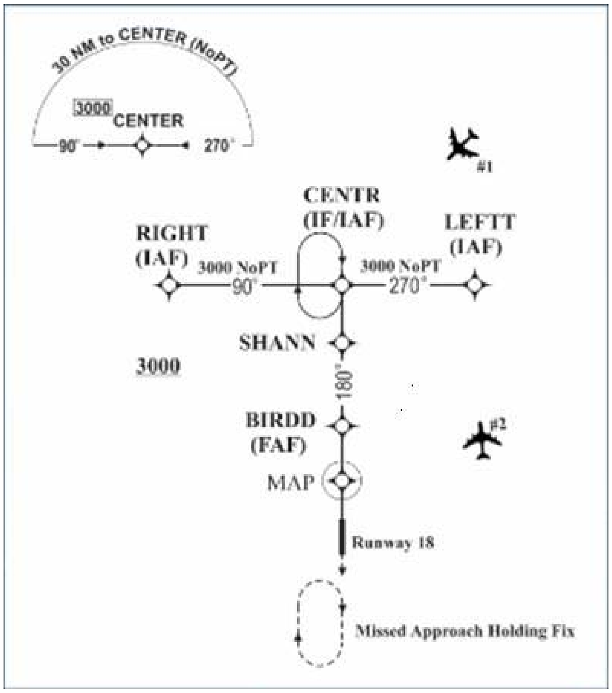
Delete

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7110.65, Par 5-6-2, Methods
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

Delete

<u>**FIG 4−8−2**</u>
<u>**Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft**</u>

Delete



<u>***EXAMPLE−***</u>
<u>***Aircraft 2*** *cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu-of procedure turn. The intercept angle at that IF/IAF is greater than 90 degrees. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared RNAV Runway One Eight approach." The pilot is expected to proceed direct CENTR and execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.*</u>

Delete

<u>***Aircraft 2*** *can be cleared direct LEFTT. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at LEFTT.*</u>

<u>***REFERENCE−***</u>
<u>*FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals*</u>

Delete

e. <u>For both RNAV and conventional approaches, intercept angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a procedure turn, a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern, or arrival holding is depicted and the pilot will execute the procedure.</u> If a procedure turn, hold-in-lieu of procedure turn, or arrival holding pattern is depicted and the angle of intercept is 90 degrees or less, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. (See FIG 4−8−3)

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH

NOTE−
<u>1.</u> <u>Restate "cleared straight-in" in the approach clearance even if the pilot was advised earlier to expect a straight-in approach.</u>
<u>2.</u> <u>Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC.</u>

EXAMPLE−
<u>"Cleared direct SECND, maintain at or above three thousand until SECND, cleared straight-in ILS Runway One-Eight approach."</u>

REFERENCE−
<u>AIM, Paragraph 5-4-5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts</u>
<u>AIM, Paragraph 5-4-9, Procedure Turn and Hold-in-Lieu of Procedure Turn</u>

e. If a procedure turn, hold-in-lieu of procedure turn, or arrival holding pattern is depicted and the angle of intercept is 90 degrees or less, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. (See FIG 4−8−3)

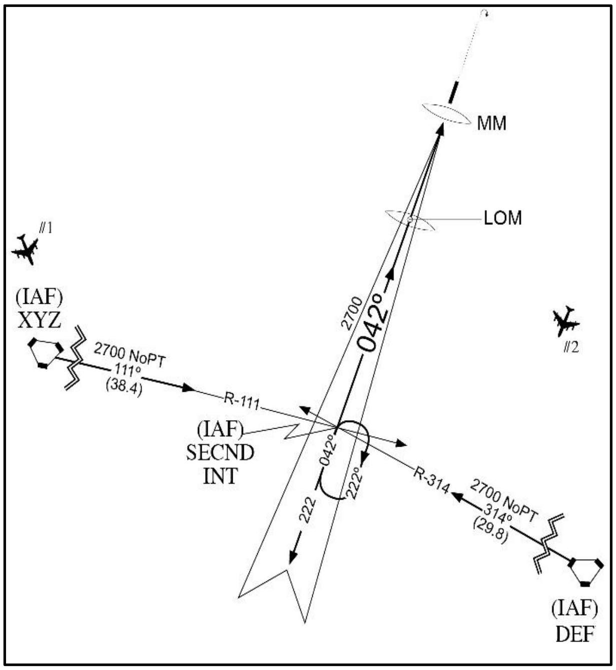
Delete

Delete

Delete

FIG 4−8−3
Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft On a Conventional Approach

Delete



EXAMPLE−
***Aircraft 1** can be cleared direct to XYZ VORTAC, or SECND because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less.*

Delete

***Aircraft 2** cannot be cleared to XYZ VORTAC because the intercept angle is greater than 90 degrees.*

***Aircraft 2** can be cleared to SECND if allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern.*

f. Clear RNAV−equipped aircraft conducting RNAV instrument approach procedures that contain radius to fix (RF) legs:

Delete

1. Via published transitions, or

Delete

2. In accordance with paragraph d.

Delete

3. Do not clear aircraft direct to any waypoint beginning or within an RF leg.

Delete

4. Do not assign fix/waypoint crossing speeds in excess of charted speed restrictions.

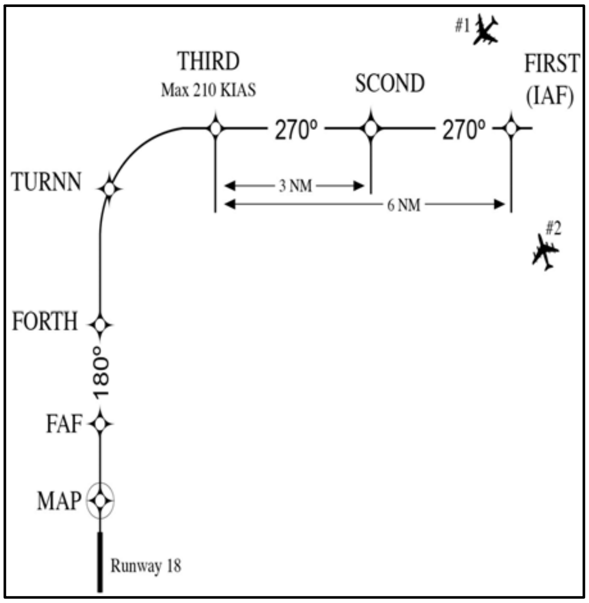
Delete

NOTE−
1. *RNAV approaches (containing RF legs) that commence at 10,000 feet or above require special procedures that will be site specific and specified in a facility directive.*
2. *An RF leg is defined as a curved segment indicating a constant radius circular path about a defined turn center that begins at a waypoint. RF legs may have maximum airspeeds charted for procedural containment that must be followed.*
3. *If an aircraft is vectored off the procedure, expect the aircraft to request a return to an IAF.*

Delete

FIG 4−8−4
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)

Delete



NOTE−
1. *The segment between THIRD and FORTH in FIG 4-8-4 is an RF leg*

2. *The straight segments between waypoints in FIG 4-8-4 are TF legs.*

Delete

g. Except when applying radar procedures, timed or visual approaches, clear an aircraft for an approach to an airport when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled IFR flight plan.

Delete

h. Where instrument approaches require radar monitoring and radar services are not available, do not use the phraseology "cleared approach," which allows the pilot his/her choice of instrument approaches.

Delete

i. Where a terminal arrival area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4−8−5.)

Delete

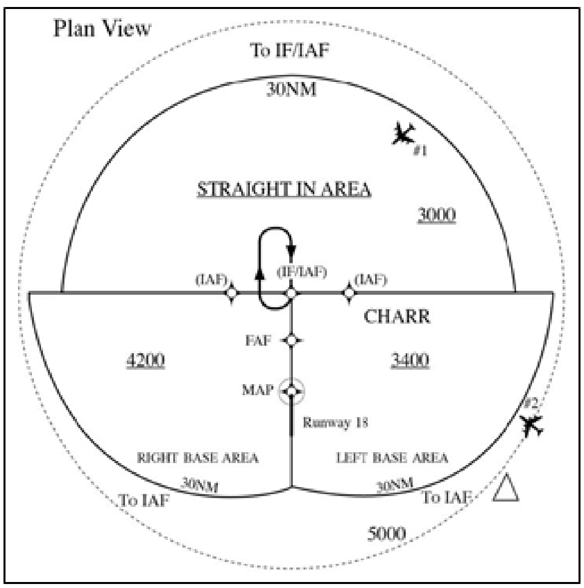
EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1: *The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is therefore established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R−NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

Aircraft 2: *The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct CHARR, maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

Delete

FIG 4−8−5
Basic "T" and TAA Design

Delete



j. When GPS TESTING NOTAMs are published and testing is actually occurring, inform pilots requesting or cleared for a RNAV approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. Do not resume RNAV approach operations until certain that GPS interference is no longer a factor or such GPS testing exercise has ceased.

Delete

k. During times when pilots report GPS anomalies, request the pilot's intentions and/or clear that aircraft for an alternative approach, if available and operational. Announce to other aircraft requesting an RNAV approach that GPS is reported unavailable and request intentions.

Delete

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−10, NAVAID Malfunctions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.

Delete

l. When clearing an aircraft for an RNAV approach, and a GPS NOTAM is published (a WAAS NOTAM is not issued), both GPS and WAAS may become unavailable. Therefore, when a GPS anomaly is reported, request the pilot's intentions.

Delete

NOTE−
WAAS UNAVAILABLE NOTAMs are published to indicate a failure of a WAAS system component. Airborne GPS/WAAS equipment may revert to GPS−only operation which satisfies the requirements for basic RNAV (GPS) approaches to the airport of intended landing or filed alternate airport, if airborne equipment is approved for such operations.

Delete

Add

PHRASEOLOGY−
CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH

Add

NOTE−
1.** **Restate "cleared straight-in" in the approach clearance even if the pilot was advised earlier to expect a straight-in approach.
2.** **Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC.

Add

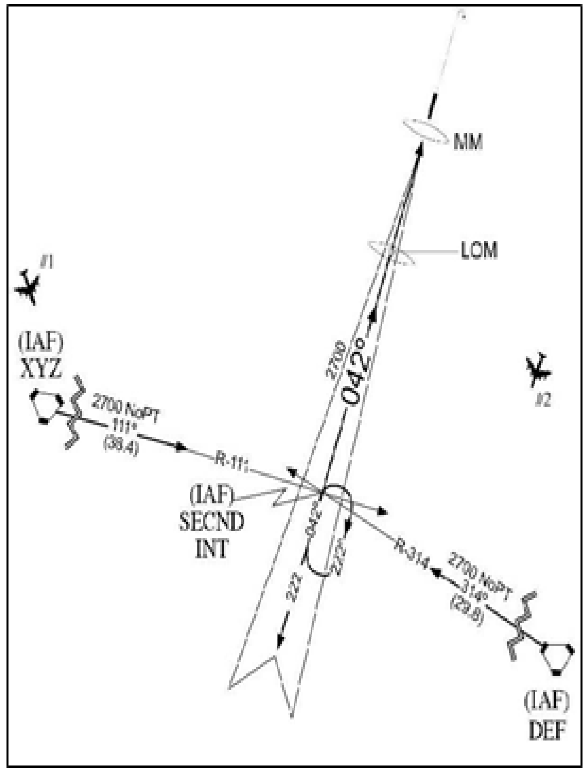
EXAMPLE−
"Cleared direct SECND, maintain at or above three thousand until SECND, cleared straight-in ILS Runway One-Eight approach."

Add

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-9, Procedure Turn and Hold-in-lieu of Procedure Turn

Add

FIG 4–8–3
Approach Clearance Example
For Aircraft On a Conventional Approach



Add

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to XYZ VORTAC, or SECND because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less.

Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared to XYZ VORTAC because the intercept angle is greater than 90 degrees.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared to SECND if allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern.

Add

f. Except when applying radar procedures, timed or visual approaches, clear an aircraft for an approach to an airport when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled IFR flight plan.

Add

g. Where instrument approaches require radar monitoring and radar services are not available, do not use the phraseology "cleared approach," which allows the pilot his/her choice of instrument approaches.

Add

RNAV APPLICATION

Add	**h. For RNAV−equipped aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue approach clearance for conventional or RNAV SIAP including approaches with RF legs only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4−8−4).**
Add	**1. Established on a heading or course direct to the IAF at an intercept angle not greater than 90 degrees and is assigned an altitude in accordance with b2. Radar monitoring is required to the IAF for RNAV (RNP) approaches when no hold−in−lieu of procedure turn is executed.**
Add	*EXAMPLE−* *Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR, section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold in lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at an IAF and a TAA is not defined, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a hold-in-lieu procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*
Add	**2. Established on a heading or course direct to the IF at an angle not greater than 90 degrees, provided the following conditions are met:**
Add	**(a) Assign an altitude in accordance with b2 that will permit a normal descent to the FAF.**
Add	*NOTE−* *Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 150-300 feet per nautical mile when applying guidance in subpara d2(a).*
Add	**(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the IF.**
Add	**(c) The SIAP must identify the intermediate fix *with the letters "IF."***
Add	**(d) For procedures where an IAF is published, the pilot is advised to expect clearance to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix.**
Add	*EXAMPLE−* *"Expect direct CENTR for RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*
Add	**3. Established on a heading or course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees, and assigned an altitude in accordance with b2.**

Add

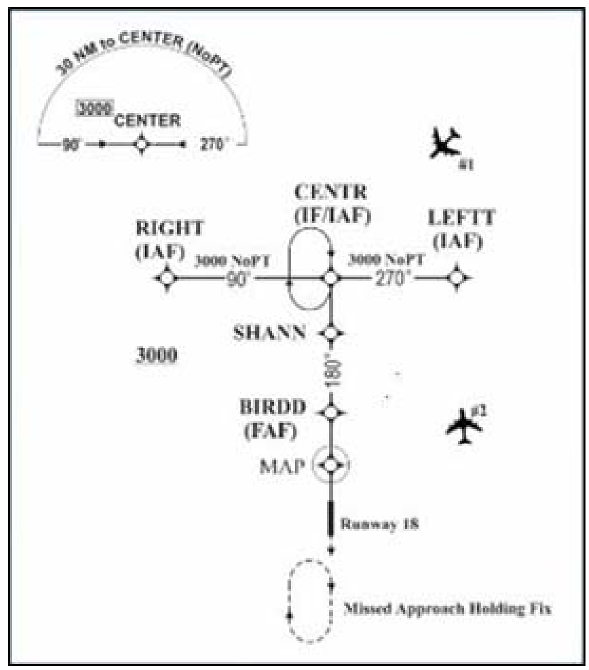
EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1 is more than 5 miles from SHANN. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to SHANN is 3,000 feet. SHANN is a step down fix between the IF/IAF (CENTR) and the FAF. To clear Aircraft 1 to SHANN, ATC must ensure the intercept angle for the intermediate segment at SHANN is not greater than 30 degrees and must be cleared to an altitude that will allow a normal descent to the FAF. "Cleared direct SHANN, cross SHANN at or above three thousand, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

Add

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7110.65, Par 5-6-2, Methods
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

Add

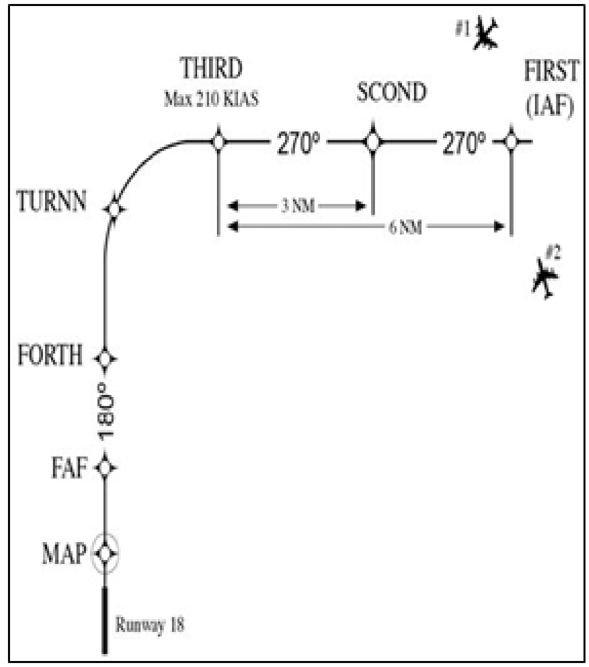
FIG 4-8−4
Approach Clearance Example
For RNAV Aircraft



Add	***EXAMPLE−*** ***Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. The intercept angle at that IF/IAF is greater than 90 degrees. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight approach." The pilot is expected to proceed direct CENTR and execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.*** ***Aircraft 2 can be cleared direct LEFTT. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at LEFTT.***
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals***
Add	**i. Clear RNAV−equipped aircraft conducting RNAV instrument approach procedures that contain radius to fix (RF) legs:**
Add	**1. Via published transitions, or**
Add	**2. In accordance with paragraph d.**
Add	**3. Do not clear aircraft direct to any waypoint beginning or within an RF leg.**
Add	**4. Do not assign fix/waypoint crossing speeds in excess of charted speed restrictions.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***1. RNAV approaches (containing RF legs) that commence at 10,000 feet or above require special procedures that will be site specific and specified in a facility directive.*** ***2. An RF leg is defined as a curved segment indicating a constant radius circular path about a defined turn center that begins at a waypoint. RF legs may have maximum airspeeds charted for procedural containment that must be followed.*** ***3. If an aircraft is vectored off the procedure, expect the aircraft to request a return to an IAF.***

Add

FIG 4−8−5
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)



Add

NOTE−
1. The segment between THIRD and FORTH in FIG 4-8-5 is an RF leg.
2. The straight segments between waypoints in FIG 4-8-5 are TF legs.

Add

j. Where a terminal arrival area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4−8−6.)

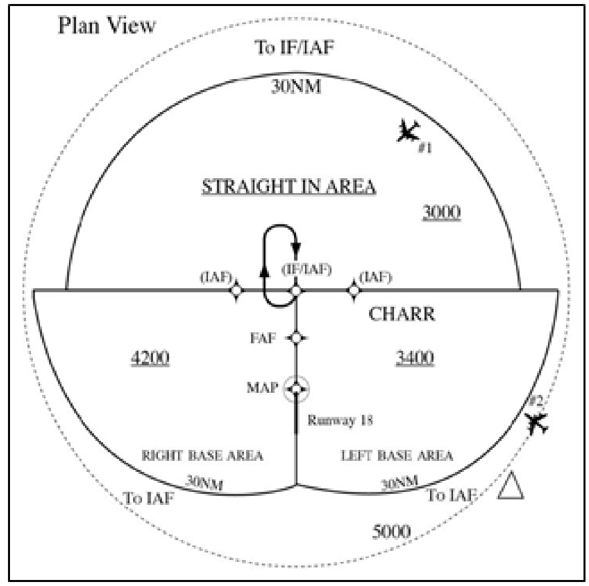
Add

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft 1: The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is therefore established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R-NAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

Aircraft 2: The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct CHARR, maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."

Add

FIG 4−8−6
Basic "T" and TAA Design



Add

k. When GPS TESTING NOTAMs are published and testing is actually occurring, inform pilots requesting or cleared for a RNAV approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. Do not resume RNAV approach operations until certain that GPS interference is no longer a factor or such GPS testing exercise has ceased.

Add

l. During times when pilots report GPS anomalies, request the pilot's intentions and/or clear that aircraft for an alternative approach, if available and operational. Announce to other aircraft requesting an RNAV approach that GPS is reported unavailable and request intentions.

Add

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−10, NAVAID Malfunctions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4−7−12, Airport Conditions.

Add

m. When clearing an aircraft for an RNAV approach, and a GPS NOTAM is published (a WAAS NOTAM is not issued), both GPS and WAAS may become unavailable. Therefore, when a GPS anomaly is reported, request the pilot's intentions.

Add

NOTE−
WAAS UNAVAILABLE NOTAMs are published to indicate a failure of a WAAS system component. Airborne GPS/WAAS equipment may revert to GPS−only operation which satisfies the requirements for basic RNAV (GPS) approaches to the airport of intended landing or filed alternate airport, if airborne equipment is approved for such operations.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES
7-3-1. VFR-ON-TOP
10-6-5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

2. BACKGROUND: FAA Order JO 7110.65 uses several terms when describing aircraft separation applied by controllers. The use of undefined terms introduces a variety of interpretations and the possibility of altering the intent of the paragraph. "Standard IFR separation" is not defined in this order and its use may infer that various standards of separation exist. Guidance for the application of IFR separation is contained in Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 of this order. Removing extraneous and undefined words reduces the chance of misinterpretation.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

Title through **a1(b)**

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/B757, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

NEW

4-8-11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

No Change

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/B757, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

OLD

7-3-1. VFR-ON-TOP

Title through ***NOTE 1.***

2. *Although standard IFR separation is not applied, controllers must continue to provide traffic advisories and safety alerts, and apply merging target procedures to aircraft operating VFR-on-top.*

NEW

7-3-1. VFR-ON-TOP

No Change

2. *Although IFR separation is not applied, controllers must continue to provide traffic advisories and safety alerts, and apply merging target procedures to aircraft operating VFR-on-top.*

OLD

10-6-5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

a. Provide standard IFR separation between the SAR and the aircraft in distress, except when visual or radar contact has been established by the search and rescue aircraft and the pilots of both aircraft concur, IFR separation may be discontinued.

NEW

10-6-5. SERVICES TO RESCUE AIRCRAFT

a. Provide IFR separation between the SAR and the aircraft in distress, except when visual or radar contact has been established by the search and rescue aircraft and the pilots of both aircraft concur, IFR separation may be discontinued.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5−4−2. TERMS

2. BACKGROUND: On February 29, 1996, a change was made to FAA JO 7110.65J, Paragraph 5-4-2c, TERMS, that defined a point out as a "physical or automated action" taken by a controller in lieu of "an action" taken by a controller. The background for the change explained this was done only to improve understanding. Upon review of paragraph 5-4-2 it has been determined that the original language of "an action" is preferable and is consistent with the wording used in the definition of a "handoff" in paragraph 5-4-2a.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5−4−2. TERMS	**5−4−2. TERMS**
Title through **b**	No Change
c. *Point out*. <u>A physical or automated</u> action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.	**c.** *Point out*. **<u>An</u>** action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-6-1. APPLICATION

2. BACKGROUND: With the advent of NextGEN, the number of RNAV equipped aircraft within the NAS has increased, and RNAV procedures have become the industry standard. Throughout FAA Order JO 7110.65, there are several sections that cover the proper handling of RNAV aircraft regarding routing assignments and the ability to issue amended routes.

3. CHANGE:

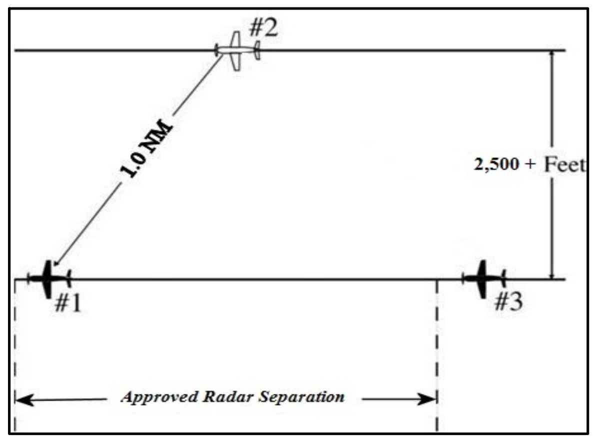
OLD	NEW
5-6-1. APPLICATION	**5-6-1. APPLICATION**
Vector aircraft:	No Change
a. In controlled airspace for separation, safety, noise abatement, operational advantage, confidence maneuver, or when a pilot requests. <u>Allow aircraft operating on an RNAV route to remain on their own navigation to the extent possible.</u>	**a.** In controlled airspace for separation, safety, noise abatement, operational advantage, confidence maneuver, or when a pilot requests.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES

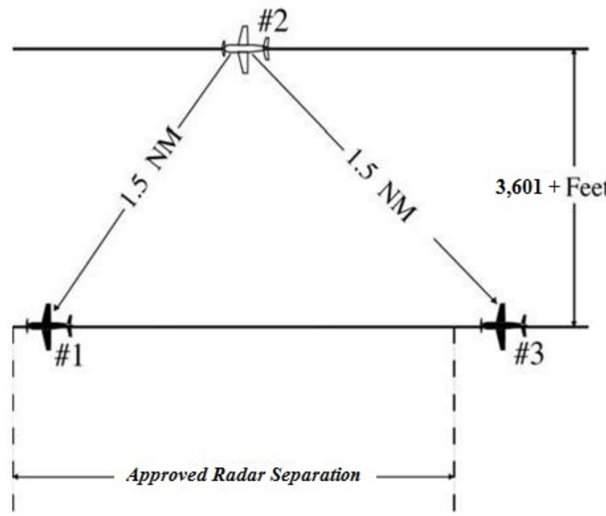
2. BACKGROUND: The Flight Standards Service recently released technical report DOT-FAA-AFS-400-83, Reduction of Diagonal Separation from 1.5 Nautical Miles (NM) to 1.0 NM for Parallel Dependent Approaches. The report, generated at the request of Air Traffic, now permits the use of 1 NM radar separation diagonally when runway centerlines are separated by at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet, and the legacy 1.5 NM radar separation diagonally will now be required when runway centerlines are separated by more than 3,600 feet but no more than 4,300 feet. The application of 1 NM or 1.5 NM diagonal minima ensures aircraft remain staggered on adjacent approaches. This reduces the risk of collision from aircraft inadvertently deviating from the final approach path.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES	**5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES**
Title through **a1**	No Change
Add	<u>**2.**</u> <u>**Provide a minimum of 1 mile radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet apart.**</u>
Add	<u>**FIG 5-9-7**</u> <u>**Simultaneous Dependent Approaches**</u> 
Add	<u>***EXAMPLE−***</u> <u>***In FIG 5−9−7, Aircraft 2 is 1.0 mile from Aircraft 1. Approved radar separation must be maintained between Aircraft 1 and Aircraft 3.***</u>
<u>**2.**</u> Provide a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses when runway centerlines are <u>at least 2,500</u> feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart.	<u>**3.**</u> Provide a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses when runway centerlines are <u>**more than 3,600**</u> feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart.

Add

FIG 5-9-8
Simultaneous Dependent Approaches



EXAMPLE− *In FIG 5−9−7, Aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from Aircraft 1, and Aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from Aircraft 2. *The resultant separation between Aircraft 1 and 3 is at least 2.5 miles.*	*EXAMPLE−* *In FIG 5−9−8, Aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from Aircraft 1, and Aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from Aircraft 2.* ***Approved radar separation must be maintained between aircraft on the same final.***
3. Provide a minimum of 2 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses where runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart.	**4.** Provide a minimum of 2 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on adjacent final approach courses where runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart.
FIG 5-9-8	Re-Label **FIG 5-9-9**
EXAMPLE− *In FIG 5−9−8, Aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy Aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from Aircraft 1.*The resultant separation between Aircraft 2 and 3 is at least 4.2 miles.*	*EXAMPLE−* *In FIG 5−9−**9**, Aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy Aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from Aircraft 1. *The resultant separation between Aircraft 2 and 3 is at least 4.2 miles.*
4. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.	**5.** Provide the minimum **approved** radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-9-7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES – DUAL & TRIPLE

2. BACKGROUND: The Flight Standards Service (AFS) released DOT-FAA-AFS-450-69, Simultaneous Independent Close Parallel Approaches - High Update Radar Not Required, in September 2011; DOT-FAA-AFS-400-84, Separation Requirements for Simultaneous Offset Independent Dual Instrument Approaches - High Update Radar Not Required, in July 2014; and DOT-FAA-AFS-400-85, Separation Requirements for Triple Simultaneous Independent Close Parallel Approaches - High Update Rate Surveillance Not Required in September 2014. These three technical reports form the framework for the changes contained within this document change proposal accounting for new runway centerline spacing (RCLS) distances when operating with dual parallel runways or triple parallel runways. Additionally, they account for the inclusion of offset approaches to further reduce the RCLS without the need for high update radars and allows for the removal of the simultaneous independent close parallel approaches without high update radar paragraph due to the duplicative content.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-9-7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES – DUAL & TRIPLE	**5-9-7. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES – DUAL & TRIPLE**
Title through **a1** *NOTE*	No Change
2. Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 4,300 feet apart.	**2.** Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least **3,600** feet apart**, or dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart with a 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to either runway and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less.**
Add	***NOTE–*** ***Airport field elevation requirement does not apply to dual parallel runways that are 4,300 feet or more apart.***
3. Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is less than 1,000 feet MSL.	**3.** Triple parallel **approaches may be conducted under one of the following conditions:**
Add	**(a) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,900 feet apart and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less; or**
Add	**(b) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart, a 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to both outside runways, and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less; or**
Add	**(c) Parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 feet apart, a single 2.5° to 3.0° offset approach to either outside runway while parallel approaches to the remaining two runways are separated by at least 3,900 feet, and the airport field elevation is 2,000 feet MSL or less.**
Add	**4. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.**
4. A high-resolution color monitor with alert algorithms, such as the final monitor aid or that required in the precision runway monitor program must be used to monitor approaches where:	**b.** A color **digital display set to a 4 to 1 (4:1) aspect ratio (AR)** with **visual and aural** alerts, such as the **STARS** final monitor aid **(FMA), and a surveillance update rate at least 4.8 seconds** must be used to monitor approaches where:
Add	**1. Dual parallel runway centerlines are at least 3,000 and no more than 4,300 feet apart.**
(a) Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least 4,300 but less than 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is less than 1,000 feet MSL.	**2.** Triple parallel runway centerlines are at least **3,000** but less than 5,000 feet apart and the airport field elevation is **2,000** feet MSL **or less.**

(b) Triple parallel approaches to airports where the airport field elevation is 1,000 feet MSL or more require the high resolution color monitor with alert algorithms and an approved FAA aeronautical study.	3. Triple parallel approaches to airports where the airport field elevation is **more than 2,000 feet MSL** require **use of** the **FMA system** and an approved FAA aeronautical study.
Add	***NOTE−*** *FMA is not required to monitor the NTZ for runway centerlines greater than 4,300 feet for dual runways, and 5,000 feet or greater for triple operations.*
Add	**c. FUSION must be discontinued on the FMA displays and set to a single-sensor, when conducting final monitoring activities.**
5. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.	Delete
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−5, Minima.*	No Change
b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on adjacent dual or triple final approach courses allowed in subparagraph a:	**d.** The following conditions **must be met when conducting** dual or triple **simultaneous independent approaches**:
NOTE− *Simultaneous independent approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches to adjacent runways.*	***NOTE−*** *Simultaneous independent approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.*
b1 and **b2**	Re-Letter **d1** and **d2**
3. Inform aircraft that simultaneous independent approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.	**3.** Inform aircraft that simultaneous independent approaches are in use, or when runway centerlines are less than 4,300 feet PRM approaches are in use, prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***P/CG Term− Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) System.***
b4	Reletter **d4**
Add	***NOTE−*** *Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.*
b5 through **c1**	Re-Letter **d5** through **e1**
PHRASEOLOGY−	No Change
2. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgment will penetrate the NTZ.	**2.** Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in your judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES-HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-9-9. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES– HIGH UPDATE RADAR NOT REQUIRED
5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)–HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-9-11. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY–SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

2. BACKGROUND: The Flight Standards Service (AFS) released DOT-FAA-AFS-450-69, Simultaneous Independent Close Parallel Approaches - High Update Radar Not Required, in September 2011; DOT-FAA-AFS-400-84, Separation Requirements for Simultaneous Offset Independent Dual Instrument Approaches - High Update Radar Not Required, in July 2014; and DOT-FAA-AFS-400-85, Separation Requirements for Triple Simultaneous Independent Close Parallel Approaches - High Update Radar Surveillance Not Required in September 2014. These three technical reports form the framework for the changes to the ATC order concerning parallel dual and triple operations. Additionally, they account for the inclusion of offset approaches to further reduce runway centerline spacing without the need for high update radars and allows for the removal of the simultaneous independent close parallel approaches without high update radar paragraph due to the duplicative content. In a July 2014 memo from AFS-400, the requirement to radar monitor aircraft on simultaneous closely spaced approaches to a point 1/2 mile from the departure end of runway in the event of a missed approach is deemed no longer necessary, and is therefore removed as a requirement in paragraph 5-9-8. Also the requirement to radar monitor until the aircraft has landed was clarified to require monitoring until one mile from the threshold, since it is not possible to observe targets to the surface. Lastly, after review, it became clear that certain provisions concerning monitoring in the existing paragraph 5-9-11 were not consistent with this paragraph and needed to be removed.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5–9–8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES – HIGH UPDATE RADAR	**5-9-8. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES - PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) APPROACHES**
TERMINAL	*TERMINAL*
Simultaneous close parallel approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches to adjacent runways.	**a. PRM** approaches may only be conducted **when charted in the approach title, and** where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.
Add	***REFERENCE–*** ***P/CG- Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) System*** ***P/CG-Simultaneous Close Parallel Approaches***
a. Authorize simultaneous independent close parallel approaches to dual runways with centerlines separated by at least 3,000 feet with one final approach course offset by 2.5 degrees using a precision runway monitor system with a 1.0 second radar update system and when centerlines are separated by 3,400 to 4,300 feet when precision runway monitors are utilized with a radar update rate of 2.4 seconds or less; and	**b. PRM approaches must be assigned when conducting instrument** approaches to dual **and triple parallel** runways with **runway** centerlines separated by **less than 4,300** feet**.**

1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach.

NOTE–
Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency must be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.

2. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4 , Minima.

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on dual final approach courses allowed in subparagraph a:

b1 and b2

3. Inform aircraft that closely spaced simultaneous approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

b4

Add

b5 through b7

NOTE–
The aircraft is considered the center of the digitized target for that aircraft for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ.

c. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. A controller must provide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted localizer centerline, and in their opinion is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft call sign) I SHOW YOU (left/right) OF THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

2. Instruct the aircraft to return immediately to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ.

PHRASEOLOGY–
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.
or
TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE.

c. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel **or offset** final approach.

No Change

d. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.

No Change

e. The following conditions **must be met when conducting** dual **and triple PRM approaches:**

Re-Letter e1 and e2

3. Inform aircraft that **PRM** approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

Re-Letter e4

NOTE–
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

Re-Letter e5 through e7

NOTE–
The aircraft is considered the center of the digitized target for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ.

f. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:

1. Provide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted **final approach course** centerline, and in **your judgment** is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.

No Change

No Change

No Change

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

c3 *NOTE* through **c4(b)**

(c) The aircraft has landed or, in the event of a missed approach, is one-half mile beyond the departure end of the runway.

c5

6. Do not apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for closely-spaced simultaneous approaches.

d. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when closely-spaced simultaneous approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, windshear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of the approach in use.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−13 , Radar Service Termination.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2 , Final Approach Course Interception.

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in **your** judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

Re-Letter **f3** *NOTE* through **f4(b)**

(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required, and contained in facility directives.

Re-Letter **f5**

6. Do not apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for **PRM** approaches.

g. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when **PRM** approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, windshear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of the approach in use.

No Change

OLD	NEW
5–9–9. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES – HIGH UPDATE RADAR NOT REQUIRED.	Delete
TERMINAL	Delete
a. Simultaneous close parallel approaches may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches to parallel runways.	Delete
b. Apply the following minimum separation when conducting simultaneous independent close parallel approaches:	Delete
1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach courses.	Delete
NOTE– *Communications transfer to the tower controller's frequency will be completed prior to losing vertical separation between aircraft.*	Delete

2. Parallel runway centerlines are separated by a minimum of 3,600 feet or more, and the airport elevation is less than 2,000 feet MSL.	Delete
3. Provide the minimum applicable radar separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.	Delete
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima.*	Delete
c. A high-resolution color monitor with alert algorithms, such as the final monitor aid, must be used to monitor close parallel approaches.	Delete
d. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on parallel final approach courses allowed in subparagraph a:	Delete
1. Straight-in landings will be made.	Delete
2. All appropriate communication, navigation, and surveillance systems are operating normally.	Delete
3. Inform aircraft that simultaneous closely spaced approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.	Delete
4. Clear the aircraft to descend to the appropriate glideslope intercept altitude soon enough to provide a period of level flight to dissipate excess speed. Provide at least 1 mile of straight flight prior to the final approach course intercept.	Delete
NOTE– *Not applicable to curved and segmented approaches.*	Delete
5. A NTZ at least 2,000 feet wide is established an equal distance between extended runway final approach courses and must be depicted on the monitor display. The primary responsibility for navigation on the final approach course rests with the pilot. Control instructions and information are issued only to ensure separation between aircraft and to prevent aircraft from penetrating the NTZ.	Delete
6. Monitor all approaches regardless of weather. Monitor local control frequency to receive any aircraft transmission. Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure aircraft do not enter the NTZ.	Delete

NOTE− ***1.*** *Separate monitor controllers, each with transmit/receive and override capability on the local control frequency, will ensure aircraft do not penetrate the depicted NTZ. Facility directives must define responsibility for providing the minimum applicable longitudinal separation between aircraft on the same final approach course.* **2.** *The aircraft is considered the center of the primary radar return for that aircraft, or, if an FMA or other color final monitor aid is used, the center of the digitized target of that aircraft, for the purposes of ensuring an aircraft does not penetrate the NTZ. The provisions of Paragraph 5-5-2, Target Separation, also apply.*	Delete
e. The following procedures must be used by the final monitor controllers:	Delete
1. Instruct the aircraft to return to the correct final approach course when aircraft are observed to overshoot the turn-on or to continue on a track that will penetrate the NTZ.	Delete
PHRASEOLOGY− *YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,* *or* *TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE*	Delete
2. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgment will penetrate the NTZ.	Delete
PHRASEOLOGY− *TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (right/left) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude).*	Delete
3. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:	Delete
(a) Visual separation is applied.	Delete
(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.	Delete
(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required, and contained in facility directives.	Delete
4. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.	Delete
5. Do not apply the provisions of Paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for simultaneous independent close parallel approaches.	Delete

OLD	NEW
f. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous independent close parallel approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use.	Delete
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-13, Radar Service Termination.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.*	Delete
OLD	**NEW**
5–9–10. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)– HIGH UPDATE RADAR	**5–9–9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)– HIGH UPDATE RADAR**
TERMINAL	No Change
a. Simultaneous offset independent approaches SOIA may be conducted at FAA designated airports that have an authorization issued by the Director, Terminal Operations, Headquarters, in coordination with AFS with parallel runways that have centerlines separated by less than 3,000 feet with one final approach course offset by 2.5 to 3.0 degrees using a high update rate surveillance system with a 1.0–second radar update; and	**a.** Simultaneous offset independent approaches (SOIA) may be conducted at FAA designated airports that have an authorization issued by the Director, Operations-Headquarters, **AJT-2,** in coordination with AFS with parallel runways that have centerlines separated by less than 3,000 feet with one final approach course offset by 2.5 to 3.0 degrees using a high update rate surveillance system with a 1.0–second radar update; and
a1 through **b2**	No Change
3. Inform aircraft that closely spaced simultaneous approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.	**3.** Inform aircraft that **PRM** approaches are in use prior to aircraft departing an outer fix. This information may be provided through the ATIS.
b4	No Change
NOTE– *Not applicable to curved and segmented approaches*	*NOTE–* *Not applicable to approaches **with RF legs**.*
b5 through **c**	No Change
1. A controller must provide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted final approach course centerline, and in their opinion is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.	**1. P**rovide position information to an aircraft that is (left/right) of the depicted final approach course centerline, and in **your judgment** is continuing on a track that may penetrate the NTZ.
c1 ***PHRASEOLOGY*** through **c2**	No Change

PHRASEOLOGY−
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE.
Or
TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE LOCAL-IZER/AZIMUTH COURSE.

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or in the controller's judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

c3 ***NOTE*** through **c5**

6. Do not apply the provisions of paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for closely-spaced simultaneous approaches.

d through **g2**

3. For runways less than 2,500 feet apart, whenever the ceiling is less than 500 feet above the MVA, wake vortex spacing between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses, as described in para 5−5−4, Minima, must be applied unless acceptable mitigating techniques and operational procedures have been documented and verified by an AFS safety assessment and authorized by Director, Terminal Safety and Operations Support. The wake turbulence mitigation techniques employed will be based on each airport's specific runway geometry and meteorological conditions and implemented through local facility directives.

PHRASEOLOGY−
YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE.
Or
TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE ***FINAL AP-PROACH*** *COURSE.*

3. Instruct aircraft on the adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed penetrating or **in your** judgment will penetrate the NTZ.

No Change

6. Do not apply the provisions of paragraph 5-13-1, Monitor on PAR Equipment, for simultaneous approaches.

No Change

3. For runways less than 2,500 feet apart, whenever the ceiling is less than 500 feet above the MVA, wake vortex spacing between aircraft on adjacent final approach courses, as described in **P**ara 5−5−4, Minima, must be applied unless acceptable mitigating techniques and operational procedures have been documented and verified by an AFS safety assessment and authorized by **the** Director, Operations**-Headquarters, AJT-2**. The wake turbulence mitigation techniques employed will be based on each airport's specific runway geometry and meteorological conditions and implemented through local facility directives.

OLD

5−9−11. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

Add

Simultaneous independent approaches to widely-spaced parallel runways may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches to adjacent runways.

TERMINAL

a through **a2** ***REFERENCE***

b. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on widely−spaced parallel courses allowed in subpara a:

b1 through **b4**

Add

NEW

5−9−10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

TERMINAL

a. Simultaneous independent approaches to widely-spaced parallel runways may only be conducted where instrument approach charts specifically authorize simultaneous approaches.

Delete

Re-letter **b** through **b2** ***REFERENCE***

c. The following conditions are required when applying the minimum separation on widely−spaced parallel courses allowed in subpara **b**:

Re-Letter **c1** through **c4**

NOTE−
Not applicable to approaches with RF legs.

b5	Re-letter **c5**
6. Transfer of communication and monitor responsibility to the tower controller's frequency must be specified in a facility directive and/or Letter of Agreement.	**6.** Transfer of communication to the tower controller's frequency must be specified in a facility directive and/or Letter of Agreement.
c. The following procedures must be used by the final approach controllers:	**d.** The following procedures must be used by the final approach controllers:
NOTE– *There is no requirement for the establishment of a NTZ.*	***NOTE–*** *There is no requirement for establishment of a NTZ.*
1. Instruct the aircraft to return to the correct final approach course when that aircraft is observed to overshoot the turn-on or continue on a track which deviates from the final approach course in the direction of the adjacent approach course.	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY– *YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE,* *or* *TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE LOCALIZER/AZIMUTH COURSE.*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO* ***THE FINAL APPROACH*** *COURSE,* *or* *TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE* ***FINAL APPROACH*** *COURSE.*
2. Instruct aircraft on adjacent final approach course to alter course to avoid the deviating aircraft when an aircraft is observed, or in the controller's judgment, has deviated from the final approach course in the direction of the adjacent approach course.	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY– *TRAFFIC ALERT, (call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), CLIMB AND MAINTAIN (altitude)*	No Change
3. Terminate radar monitoring when one of the following occurs:	Delete
(a) Visual separation is applied.	Delete
(b) The aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight.	Delete
(c) The aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold, if procedurally required, and contained in facility directives.	Delete
4. Do not inform the aircraft when radar monitoring is terminated.	Delete

OLD	NEW
<u>d</u>. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use. ***REFERENCE–*** *<u>FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-1-13,Radar Service Termination.</u>* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.*	<u>e</u>. Consideration should be given to known factors that may in any way affect the safety of the instrument approach phase of flight when simultaneous approaches are being conducted to parallel runways. Factors include, but are not limited to, wind direction/velocity, wind-shear alerts/reports, severe weather activity, etc. Closely monitor weather activity that could impact the final approach course. Weather conditions in the vicinity of the final approach course may dictate a change of approach in use. ***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-9-11. TRANSITIONAL PROCEDURES

2. BACKGROUND: Current guidance permits reduced separation between aircraft on final during simultaneous dependent, simultaneous independent, or approved same runway operations. Existing procedures do not allow for an approved transition from reduced separation to approved separation, without a loss of separation that results in a low Measure of Compliance (MOC).

3. CHANGE:

<u>OLD</u>	<u>NEW</u>
5–9–11. <u>SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS</u>	**5-9-11. <u>TRANSITIONAL PROCEDURES</u>**
Add	**<u>When aircraft are conducting simultaneous dependent, independent, or any approaches allowing for reduced separation, and one of the aircraft executes a go-around or has its approach clearance terminated and prior to losing the approved reduced separation, control instructions must be expeditiously issued to increase separation between the applicable aircraft. These control instructions must establish approved separation (for example, altitude and/or lateral separation via divergence). In addition, wake turbulence cautionary advisories must be issued in accordance with FAAO JO 7110.65, Paragraph 2-1-20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.</u>**

BRIEFING GUIDE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

Initiated By: AJV−0
Vice President, Mission Support Services

Table of Contents

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 1-1-9. REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATIONS OR CLARIFICATIONS

2. BACKGROUND: Currently, there is no defined process for the submission of interpretation or clarification requests regarding the content of FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control. This proposed change formalizes the process as it now exists and delineates responsibilities for interpretation and clarification responses.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Add	**1-1-9. REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATIONS OR CLARIFICATIONS TO THIS ORDER**
Add	**a. Interpretation requests from field air traffic personnel must be submitted as follows:**
Add	**1. The request must be submitted, in writing, by an Air Traffic Facility/District manager to their Service Area Director.**
Add	**2. The Service Area Director must review the request and determine if more than one interpretation on the intent of the language can be inferred.**
Add	**3. If it is determined that an interpretation is required, the Service Area Director must submit the request, in writing, to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate, for a response.**
Add	**b. If a request does not require an interpretation but further clarification is needed it must be forwarded to the Service Center Operations Support Group for a response.**
Add	**1. The Service Center Operations Support Group may consult with the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate when preparing their response.**
Add	**2. The Service Center Operations Support Group must provide a written response to the requestor and forward the response to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate.**
Add	**c. Interpretation requests from all other sources must be submitted, in writing, to the Air Traffic Procedures Directorate through the Air Traffic Procedures correspondence mailbox.**
Add	***NOTE–*** ***Interpretations can be accessed through the Air Traffic Control Interpretation link at the following website:*** ***https://my.faa.gov/org/linebusiness/ato/mission_support/air_traffic_procedures.html.***
1-1-9 through **1-1-13**	Renumber **1-1-10** through **1-1-14**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS

2. BACKGROUND: FAA Order JO 7110.65W added a requirement to provide 10 NM separation in front and behind an aircraft when the data block indicates "NOWGT." The abbreviation description for "NOWGT" was inadvertently omitted from the new basic order.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS	**1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS**
Add	**NOWGT. No weight. The weight class or wake category has not been determined**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS
2-3-10. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY
2-4-17. NUMBERS USAGE
2-5-2. NAVAID TERMS
2-5-3. NAVAID FIXES
3-3-2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION
3-7-5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA
4-1-1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS
4-6-4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS
4-7-5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT
4-7-13. SWITCHING ILS/MLS RUNWAYS
5-1-13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION
5-9-2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION
5-9-4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS
5-9-5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY
5-9-6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES
5-9-9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA) – HIGH UPDATE RADAR
5-13-1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT
5-13-3. MONITOR INFORMATION
13-1-8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA

2. BACKGROUND: Microwave Landing System (MLS) is an all−weather, precision landing system originally intended to replace or supplement instrument landing systems (ILS). The FAA suspended the MLS program in 1994 in favor of the GPS (Wide Area Augmentation System WAAS). The FAA's inventory of instrument flight procedures no longer includes any MLS locations.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS	**1-2-6. ABBREVIATIONS**
TBL 1-2-1	***TBL 1-2-1***
FAA Order JO 7110.65 Abbreviations	FAA Order JO 7110.65 Abbreviations
Microwave Landing System (MLS)	Delete

OLD

2−3−10. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY

TBL 2-3-12

Miscellaneous Abbreviations

MLS approach

NEW

2−3−10. CONTROL SYMBOLOGY

TBL 2-3-12

Miscellaneous Abbreviations

Delete

OLD

2−4−17. NUMBERS USAGE

Title through **k2**

3. Issue MLS/TACAN frequencies by stating the assigned two− or three−digit channel number.

EXAMPLE−
"M−L−S channel Five Three Zero."

NEW

2−4−17. NUMBERS USAGE

No Change

3. Issue TACAN frequencies by stating the assigned two− or three−digit channel number.

Delete

OLD

2−5−2. NAVAID TERMS

Title through **b**

1. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN/MLS/GPS Way-point. State the name of the NAVAID or GPS Waypoint followed by the separate digits of the radial/azimuth/bearing (omitting the word "degrees") and the word "radial/azimuth/bearing."

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero Radial."
"Lindburg Runway Two Seven M−L−S, Two Six Zero Azimuth."

2. Arcs about VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN/ MLS NAVAIDs. State the distance in miles from theNAVAID followed by the words "mile arc," the direction from the NAVAID in terms of the eight principal points of the compass, the word "of," and the name of the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE−
"Two Zero mile arc southwest of O−Hare Runway Two Seven Left M−L−S."

NEW

2−5−2. NAVAID TERMS

No Change

1. VOR/VORTAC/TACAN/GPS Waypoint. State the name of the NAVAID or GPS Waypoint followed by the separate digits of the radial/azimuth/bearing (omitting the word "degrees") and the word "radial/azimuth/bearing."

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero Radial."

2. Arcs about VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN NAVAIDs. State the distance in miles from the NAVAID followed by the words "mile arc," the direction from the NAVAID in terms of the eight principal points of the compass, the word "of," and the name of the NAVAID.

EXAMPLE−
"Two Zero mile arc southwest of ***Kirksville VOR"***

OLD

2−5−3. NAVAID FIXES

Describe fixes determined by reference to a radial/localizer/azimuth and distance from a VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN/ILS-DME or MLS as follows:

a

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero radial Three Seven mile fix." "Reno localizer back course Four mile fix."
"Hobby Runway One Two M−L−S Zero Niner Zero azimuth One Two mile fix."

NEW

2−5−3. NAVAID FIXES

Describe fixes determined by reference to a radial/localizer/azimuth and distance from a VOR-DME/VORTAC/TACAN/ILS-DME as follows:

No Change

EXAMPLE−
"Appleton Zero Five Zero radial Three Seven mile fix." "Reno localizer back course Four mile fix."

OLD

3–3–2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION

Title through **b**

c. Except as permitted by para 4–8–7, Side-step Maneuver, where parallel runways are served by separate ILS/MLS systems and one of the runways is closed, the ILS/MLS associated with the closed runway should not be used for approaches unless not using the ILS/MLS would have an adverse impact on the operational efficiency of the airport.

NEW

3–3–2. CLOSED/UNSAFE RUNWAY INFORMATION

No Change

c. Except as permitted by para 4–8–7, Side-step Maneuver, where parallel runways are served by separate ILS systems and one of the runways is closed, the ILS associated with the closed runway should not be used for approaches unless not using the ILS would have an adverse impact on the operational efficiency of the airport.

OLD

3–7–5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA

Title through **c**

NOTE–
Signs and markings are installed by the airport operator to define the ILS/MLS critical area. No point along the longitudinal axis of the aircraft is permitted past the hold line for holding purposes. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3–1–12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
AC150/5340–1, Standards for Airport Markings

NEW

3–7–5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA

No Change

NOTE–
*Signs and markings are installed by the airport operator to define the ILS critical area. No point along the longitudinal axis of the aircraft is permitted past the hold line for holding purposes. The operator is responsible to properly position the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in **P**ara 3–1–12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.*

No Change

OLD

4–1–1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS

When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the table on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace. (For altitude and distance limitations, see TBL 4–1–1, TBL 4–1–2, TBL 4–1–3, and TBL 4–1–4.) (For correct application of altitude and distance limitations see FIG 4–1–1 and FIG 4–1–2.)

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–1–5, Fix Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–2, Methods.

TBL 4-1-1 through ***TBL 4-1-3***

TBL 4-1–4
MLS
Usable Height and Distance

NEW

4–1–1. ALTITUDE AND DISTANCE LIMITATIONS

When specifying a route other than an established airway or route, do not exceed the limitations in the table on any portion of the route which lies within controlled airspace. (For altitude and distance limitations, see TBL 4–1–1, TBL 4–1–2 **and** TBL 4–1–3.) (For correct application of altitude and distance limitations see FIG 4–1–1 and FIG 4–1–2.)

No Change

No Change

Delete

Height (feet) above transmitter	Distance (miles from transmitter)
20,000	20 (for glideslope)
20,000	20 (for azimuth)
*Use the current flight check height/altitude limitations if different from the above minima.	

OLD

4-6-4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS

Title through **e**

NOTE-
It is mandatory for the controller to issue left or right turns every time a holding pattern is issued for MLS.

NEW

4-6-4. HOLDING INSTRUCTIONS

No Change

Delete

OLD

4-7-5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT

Title through **b3**

EXAMPLE-
"Expect ILS/MLS approach to runway eight; radar vectors to localizer/azimuth course. Weather (reported weather)."

NEW

4-7-5. MILITARY TURBOJET EN ROUTE DESCENT

No Change

EXAMPLE-
"Expect ILS approach to runway eight; radar vectors to localizer course. Weather (reported weather)."

OLD

4-7-10. APPROACH INFORMATION

Title through **c**

d. Advise pilots when the ILS/MLS on the runway in use is not operational if that ILS/MLS is on the same frequency as an operational ILS/MLS serving another runway.

NEW

4-7-10. APPROACH INFORMATION

No Change

d. Advise pilots when the ILS on the runway in use is not operational if that ILS is on the same frequency as an operational ILS serving another runway.

OLD

4-7-13. SWITCHING ILS/MLS RUNWAYS

TERMINAL

When a change is made from one ILS to another or from one MLS to another at airports equipped with multiple systems which are not used simultaneously, coordinate with the facilities which use the fixes formed by reference to these NAVAIDs.

NEW

4-7-13. SWITCHING ILS RUNWAYS

No Change

When a change is made from one ILS to another at airports equipped with multiple systems which are not used simultaneously, coordinate with the facilities which use the fixes formed by reference to these NAVAIDs.

OLD

5-1-13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION

Title through **b**

NOTE-
1. *Termination of radar monitoring when conducting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches is prescribed in para 5-9-7, Simultaneous Independent ILS/MLS Approaches- Dual & Triple.*

NEW

5-1-13. RADAR SERVICE TERMINATION

No Change

NOTE-
1. *Termination of radar monitoring when conducting simultaneous ILS approaches is prescribed in Para 5-9-7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches- Dual & Triple.*

OLD

5−9−2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION

Title through **a**

NEW

5−9−2. FINAL APPROACH COURSE INTERCEPTION

No Change

OLD

TBL 5−9−1

Approach Course Interception Angle

Distance from interception point to approach gate	**Maximum interception angle**
Less than 2 miles or triple simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches in use	20 degrees
2 miles or more	30 degrees (45 degrees for helicopters)

NEW

TBL 5−9−1

Approach Course Interception Angle

Distance from interception point to approach gate	**Maximum interception angle**
Less than 2 miles or triple simultaneous approaches in use	20 degrees
2 miles or more	30 degrees (45 degrees for helicopters)

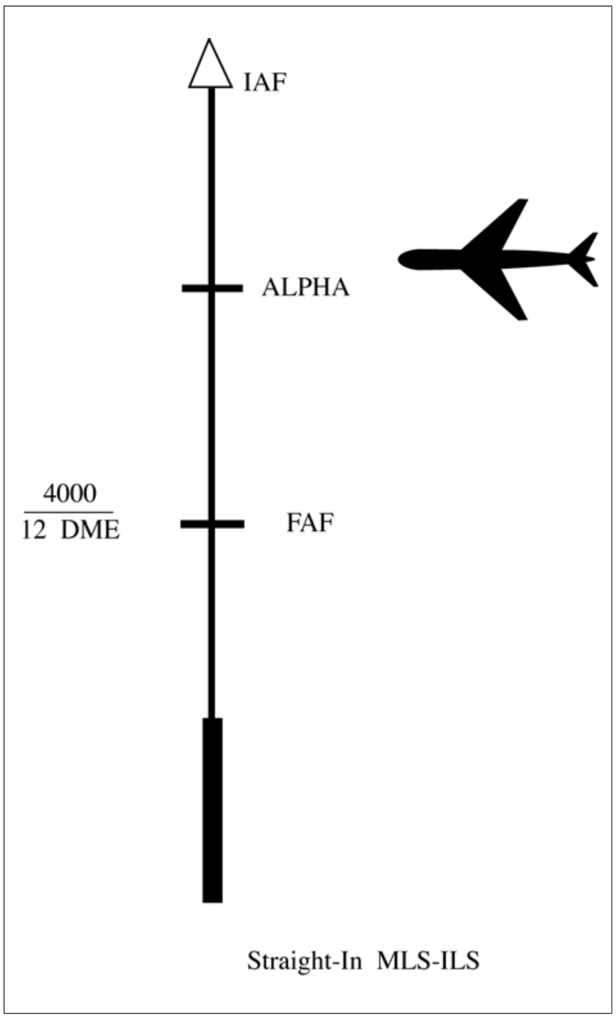
OLD

5−9−4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS

Title through **c1**

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.
(See FIG 5−9−2 thru FIG 5−9−4.)

FIG 5−9−2
Arrival Instructions



EXAMPLE−
The aircraft is being vectored to a published segment of the MLS final approach course, 3 miles from Alpha at 4,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Three miles from Alpha. Turn left heading two one zero. Maintain four thousand until established on the azimuth course. Cleared M−L−S runway one eight approach." (See FIG 5−9−2.)

NEW

5−9−4. ARRIVAL INSTRUCTIONS

No Change

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

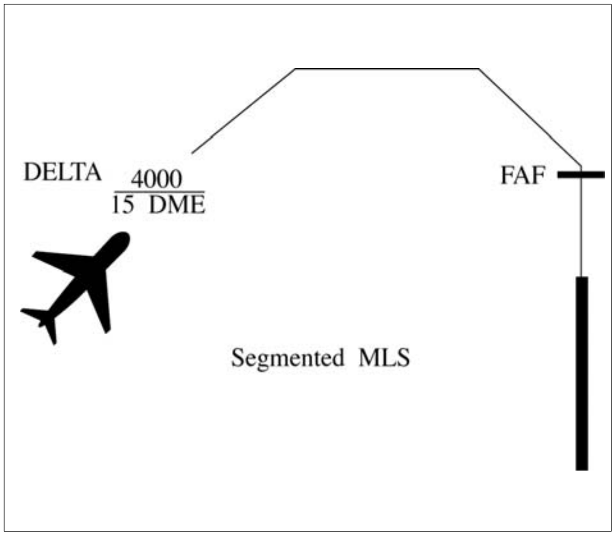
Delete

Delete

FIG 5−9−3

Arrival Instructions

Delete



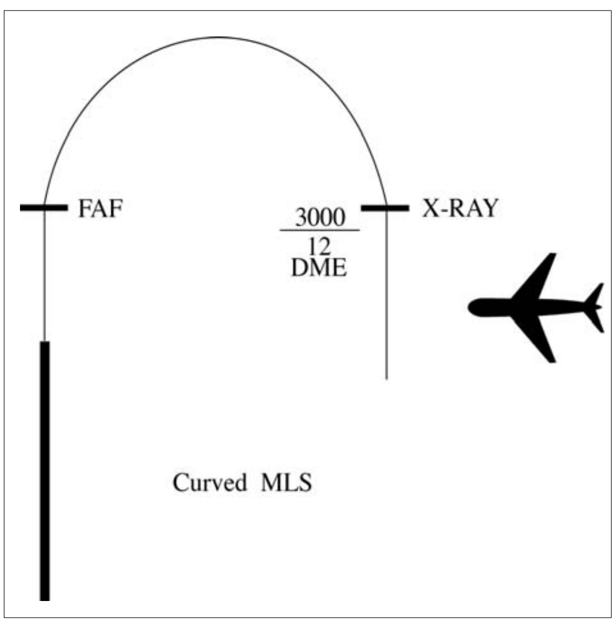
EXAMPLE−
The aircraft is en route to Delta waypoint at 6,000 feet. The MVA for this area is 4,000 feet. "Cross Delta at or above four thousand. Cleared M−L−S runway one eight approach." (See FIG 5−9−3.)

Delete

FIG 5−9−4

Arrival Instructions

Delete



EXAMPLE− *The aircraft is being vectored to an MLS curved approach, 3 miles from X-ray at 3,000 feet. "Three miles from X-ray. Turn right heading three three zero. Maintain three thousand until established on the azimuth course. Cleared M−L−S runway one eight approach."* *(See FIG 5−9−4.)*	Delete
FIG 5-9-5	**Renumber** to ***FIG 5-9-2***
EXAMPLE through **c2** ***NOTE*** **2**	No Change
NOTE− ***3.*** *Aircraft being vectored to the intermediate fix in FIG 5−9−5 must meet all the provisions described in subpara 4−8−1b4.*	***NOTE−*** ***3.*** *Aircraft being vectored to the intermediate fix in FIG 5−9−**2** must meet all the provisions described in subpara 4−8−1**h2.***
d through **d4** ***NOTE***	No Change
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception. FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent ILS/MLS Approaches− Dual & Triple.*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception. FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple*
e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, inform the aircraft of its position relative to the appropriate IAF and issue the approach clearance. (See FIG 5−9−6.)	**e.** Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, inform the aircraft of its position relative to the appropriate IAF and issue the approach clearance. (See FIG 5−9−**3**.)
EXAMPLE 1 through ***EXAMPLE 3***	No Change
FIG 5-9-6	**Renumber** to ***FIG 5-9-3***

OLD	NEW
5−9−5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY	**5−9−5. APPROACH SEPARATION RESPONSIBILITY**
Title through **b**	No Change
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception. FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−6, Parallel Dependent ILS/MLS Approaches.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence.*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−4−6, Receiving Controller Handoff.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−2, Final Approach Course Interception. FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−6, Simultaneous Dependent Approaches.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6−7−2, Approach Sequence.*

OLD	NEW
5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES	**5−9−6. SIMULTANEOUS DEPENDENT APPROACHES**
Title through **a2**	No Change
FIG 5-9-7	**Renumber** to ***FIG 5-9-4***
EXAMPLE− *In FIG 5−9−7, Aircraft 2 is 1.0 mile from Aircraft 1. Approved radar separation must be maintained between Aircraft 1 and Aircraft 3.*	***EXAMPLE−*** *In FIG 5−9−**4**, Aircraft 2 is 1.0 mile from Aircraft 1. Approved radar separation must be maintained between Aircraft 1 and Aircraft 3.*
a3	No Change
FIG 5-9-8	**Renumber** to ***FIG 5-9-5***

EXAMPLE−
In FIG 5−9−8, Aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from Aircraft 1, and Aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from Aircraft 2. Approved radar separation must be maintained between aircraft on the same final.

a4

FIG 5-9-9

EXAMPLE−
*In FIG 5−9−9, Aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy Aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from Aircraft 1. *The resultant separation between Aircraft 2 and 3 is at least 4.2 miles*

EXAMPLE−
In FIG 5−9−5, Aircraft 2 is 1.5 miles from Aircraft 1, and Aircraft 3 is 1.5 miles or more from Aircraft 2. Approved radar separation must be maintained between aircraft on the same final.

No Change

Renumber to ***FIG 5-9-6***

EXAMPLE−
*In FIG 5−9−6, Aircraft 2 is 2 miles from heavy Aircraft 1. Aircraft 3 is a small aircraft and is 6 miles from Aircraft 1. *The resultant separation between Aircraft 2 and 3 is at least 4.2 miles*

OLD

5−9−9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)− HIGH UPDATE RADAR

Title through **g3**

4. Issue all applicable wake turbulence advisories.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 8260.49, Para 13.0, Wake Turbulence Requirements.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−4−6, Simultaneous ILS/MLS Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4 , Minima

NEW

5−9−9. SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACHES (SOIA)− HIGH UPDATE RADAR

No Change

4. Issue all applicable wake turbulence advisories.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 8260.49, Para 13.0, Wake Turbulence Requirements.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10−4−6, Simultaneous ***Independent*** *Approaches.*
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−4 , Minima

OLD

5−13−1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT

Title to ***NOTE***

NOTE−
1. *The provisions of this section do not apply to monitoring simultaneous ILS, MLS, or ILS and MLS approaches.*

NOTE 2 through **2c**

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent ILS/MLS Approaches− Dual & Triple.

NEW

5−13−1. MONITOR ON PAR EQUIPMENT

No Change

NOTE−
1. *The provisions of this section do not apply to monitoring simultaneous approaches.*

No Change

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−9−7, Simultaneous Independent Approaches− Dual & Triple.

OLD

5−13−3. MONITOR INFORMATION

Title through **e**

f. Provide azimuth monitoring only at locations where the MLS glidepath and the PAR glidepath are not coincidental.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−1−13, Radar Service Termination.

NEW

5−13−3. MONITOR INFORMATION

No Change

Delete

Delete

OLD	NEW
13−1−8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA	**13−1−8. RECORDING OF CONTROL DATA**
Title through **e** ***NOTE***	No Change
TBL 13−1−2 Miscellaneous Abbreviations	***TBL 13−1−2*** Miscellaneous Abbreviations
MLS - MLS approach	Delete
TBL 13−1−3 EDST Equivalents for Control Information Symbols	***TBL 13−1−3*** EDST Equivalents for Control Information Symbols
ARC *mi. dir.*− DME arc of VORTAC, TACAN, or MLS	ARC *mi. dir.* − DME arc of VORTAC **or** TACAN

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2−3−6. AIRCRAFT TYPE

2. BACKGROUND: The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) formulates aircraft type designators for the world's aircraft that will most likely receive air traffic services. ICAO provides this information through ICAO Document 8643, Aircraft Type Designators, which is updated at least annually. FAA supplements the ICAO information and publishes it through two documents: FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, and FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control. These FAA documents didn't contain all the aircraft listed by ICAO and the FAA documents contained dissimilar information.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2−3−6. AIRCRAFT TYPE	**2−3−6. AIRCRAFT TYPE**
Use the approved codes listed in Appendix A through C to indicate aircraft type.	Use the **approved aircraft type designator, in accordance with FAA Order 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators.**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
2-6-2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE
2-9-3. CONTENT

2. BACKGROUND: The proposed change to realign the En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS), known as "Flight Watch" in air-to-ground communications, to the Inflight position is part of an effort by Flight Service to modernize and streamline service delivery in order to increase efficiencies and value for its stakeholders. When EFAS was introduced in 1972, EFAS specialists received advanced training in aviation weather which included translating data received from radar and satellite displays. At the time, only flight service stations providing EFAS services had access to these products. Currently, all CONUS flight service specialists have access to common weather displays, such as radar and satellite imagery, as well as other weather products which were previously available only to EFAS specialists. Today, a pilot contacting Flight Watch for updated weather information is not able to obtain NOTAM information or flight planning services and must contact Flight Service on a different frequency. With this new approach, a pilot can obtain all services that Flight Service has to offer with one call. The elimination of overlapping services will allow for a smarter, more strategic allocation of limited resources.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

2−6−2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)

Title through **a** ***NOTE***

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Weather Report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA), Number or Numbers) FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE ON HIWAS, FLIGHT WATCH, OR FLIGHT SERVICE FREQUENCIES.

b. Controllers outside of commissioned HIWAS areas must:

1. Advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories. Pilots requesting additional information should be directed to contact the nearest Flight Watch or Flight Service.

b2

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE FROM FLIGHT WATCH OR FLIGHT SERVICE.

NEW

2−6−2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)

No Change

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Weather Report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA), Number or Numbers) FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE ON HIWAS OR FLIGHT SERVICE FREQUENCIES.

b. Controllers outside of commissioned HIWAS areas must:

1. Advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories. Pilots requesting additional information should be directed to contact the nearest Flight Service.

No Change

PHRASEOLOGY−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE FROM FLIGHT SERVICE.

OLD

2−9−3. CONTENT

Title through **l**

m. Instructions for the pilot to acknowledge receipt of the ATIS message by informing the controller on initial contact.

EXAMPLE−
"Boston Tower Information Delta. One four zero zero Zulu. Wind two five zero at one zero. Visibility one zero. Ceiling four thousand five hundred broken. Temperature three four. Dew point two eight. Altimeter three zero one zero. ILS−DME Runway Two Seven Approach in use. Departing Runway Two Two Right. Hazardous Weather Information for (geographical area) available on HIWAS, Flight Watch, or Flight Service Frequencies. Advise on initial contact you have Delta."

NEW

2−9−3. CONTENT

No Change

No Change

EXAMPLE−
"Boston Tower Information Delta. One four zero zero Zulu. Wind two five zero at one zero. Visibility one zero. Ceiling four thousand five hundred broken. Temperature three four. Dew point two eight. Altimeter three zero one zero. ILS−DME Runway Two Seven Approach in use. Departing Runway Two Two Right. Hazardous Weather Information for (geographical area) available on HIWAS or Flight Service Frequencies. Advise on initial contact you have Delta."

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-6-4. WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES

2. BACKGROUND: Instrument flight procedures with published crossing restrictions have been in use for many years. Continued evolution and expanded use of these procedures results in the need to clarify the actions required when an aircraft is issued a clearance to deviate for weather off a procedure that contains published altitude restrictions. Existing guidance does not capture the need to issue an altitude to maintain after aircraft are cleared to deviate from Climb Via or Descend Via clearances, or even the need to issue an altitude when deviating after a basic crossing altitude has been issued. Without an assigned altitude or a published fix to rejoin, Flight Management Systems may no longer process crossing altitudes and in the case of Climb or Descend Via clearances, VNAV may revert to a SID/STAR's top or bottom altitude.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-6-4 WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES	**2-6-4 WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES**
Title through **g1**	No Change
Add	**2. When approving a weather deviation for an aircraft that had previously been issued a crossing altitude, including Climb Via or Descend Via clearances, issue an altitude to maintain along with the clearance to deviate. If you intend on clearing the aircraft to resume the procedure, advise the pilot.**
Add	*PHRASEOLOGY−* *DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, MAINTAIN (altitude), (if applicable) EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.) AT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint)*
Add	*NOTE−* *After a Climb Via or Descend Via clearance has been issued, a vector/deviation off of a SID/STAR cancels the altitude restrictions on the procedure. The aircraft's Flight Management System (FMS) may be unable to process crossing altitude restrictions once the aircraft leaves the SID/STAR lateral path. Without an assigned altitude, the aircraft's FMS may revert to leveling off at the altitude set by the pilot, which may be the SID/STAR's published top or bottom altitude.*
Add	*REFERENCE−* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4-2-5, Route or Altitude Amendments* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-6-2, Methods*
g2 through **g4**	Renumber **g3** through **g5**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES

2. BACKGROUND: In support of the ATO positive safety culture, several changes are being made to sections in this Order and in FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operations and Administration, to shift away from allusions to "blame" and remove terms such as "operational error/deviation." This change also clarifies the same concept may be applied to en route or oceanic sector teams.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-10-1. EN ROUTE SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES	**2-10-1. EN ROUTE <u>OR OCEANIC</u> SECTOR TEAM POSITION RESPONSIBILITIES**
a. En Route Sector Team Concept and Intent:	**a.** En Route **<u>or Oceanic</u>** Sector Team Concept and Intent: **<u>There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that sector.</u>**
<u>1.</u> <u>There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that sector.</u>	Delete
<u>2.</u> <u>The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members, in the event of an operational accident/incident.</u>	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-10-2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES

2. BACKGROUND: In support of the ATO positive safety culture, several changes are being made to sections in this Order and in FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operations and Administration, to shift away from allusions to "blame" and to remove terms such as "operational error/deviation."

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-10-2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES	**2-10-2. TERMINAL RADAR/NONRADAR TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES**
a. *Terminal Radar Team Concept and Intent:*	**a.** *Terminal Radar Team Concept and Intent:* **<u>There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.</u>**

1. There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.	Delete
2. The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members in the event of an operational error/deviation.	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-10-3. TOWER TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES

2. BACKGROUND: This change reflects support of the ATO positive safety culture. In keeping with that culture, several changes are being made to sections in this Order and in FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, to shift away from allusions to "blame" and to remove terms such as "operational error/deviation."

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2–10–3. TOWER TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES	**2–10–3. TOWER TEAM RESPONSIBILITIES**
a. *Tower Team Concept and Intent:*	**a.** *Tower Team Concept and Intent:* **There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.**
1. There are no absolute divisions of responsibilities regarding position operations. The tasks to be completed remain the same whether one, two, or three people are working positions within a facility/sector. The team, as a whole, has responsibility for the safe and efficient operation of that facility/sector.	Delete
2. The intent of the team concept is not to hold the team accountable for the action of individual members in the event of an operational error/deviation.	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-3-7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT

2. BACKGROUND: A change in CFR 14 Section 91.175 (k) published in 2005 eliminated the need for middle markers as a component for an Instrument Landing System (ILS). Meanwhile, Flight Standards Service policy allows for the elimination of outer markers (OM) and inner markers (IM) where they no longer serve their original need. Many of these NAVAIDS have since been decommissioned. It has become necessary to revise FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 3-3-7, FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT to reflect these changes.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-3-7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT	**3-3-7. FAR FIELD MONITOR (FFM) REMOTE STATUS UNIT**
Title through **e**	No Change
1. The aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM), check for encroachment those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower. It is understood that the entire critical area may not be visible due to low ceilings and poor visibility. The check is strictly to determine possible causal factors for the out-of-tolerance situation. If the alarm has not cleared prior to the aircraft's arriving at the MM, immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.	**1.** The aircraft is outside the middle marker (MM) **or in the absence of a MM, 1/2 mile final,** check for encroachment **of** those portions of the critical area that can be seen from the tower. It is understood that the entire critical area may not be visible due to low ceilings and poor visibility. The check is strictly to determine possible causal factors for the out-of-tolerance situation. If the alarm has not cleared prior to the aircraft's arriving at the MM **or in the absence of a MM, 1/2 mile final,** immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.
2. The aircraft is between the MM and the inner marker (IM), immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.	**2.** The aircraft is between the MM **or 1/2 mile final** and the inner marker (IM)**, or if the IM is not installed, the CAT II Missed Approach Point (MAP),** immediately issue an advisory that the FFM remote status sensing unit indicates the localizer is unreliable.
PHRASEOLOGY	No Change
3. The aircraft has passed the IM, there is no action requirement. Although the FFM has been modified with filters which dampen the effect of false alarms, you may expect alarms when aircraft are located between the FFM and the localizer antenna either on landing or on takeoff.	**3.** The aircraft has passed the IM **or the CAT II MAP (if the IM is not installed)** there is no action requirement. Although the FFM has been modified with filters which dampen the effect of false alarms, you may expect alarms when aircraft are located between the FFM and the localizer antenna either on landing or on takeoff.

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-8-1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION

2. BACKGROUND: The following is a response to the Runway Safety Group Root Cause Analysis Team review of a runway incursion event at Kansas City Downtown (KMKC). The cause was a helicopter pilot that elected to hover over the runway after being issued a cleared for the option.

3. CHANGE:

<u>OLD</u>	<u>NEW</u>
3−8−1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION	**3−8−1. SEQUENCE/SPACING APPLICATION**
Title through ***PHRASEOLOGY***	No Change
NOTE− ***1.*** *The "Cleared for the Option" procedure will permit an instructor pilot/flight examiner/pilot the option to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stopand-go, or full stop landing. This procedure will only be used at those locations with an operational control tower and will be subject to ATC approval.*	***NOTE−*** ***1.*** *The "Cleared for the Option" procedure will permit an instructor pilot/flight examiner/pilot the option to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing. This procedure will only be used at those locations with an operational control tower and will be subject to ATC approval.* ***<u>After ATC approval of the option, the pilot should inform ATC as soon as possible of any delay on the runway during their stop-and-go or full stop landing.</u>***
NOTE 2 *and* ***NOTE 3***	No Change
Add	***<u>REFERENCE−</u>*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3−7−2, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.* ***<u>AIM, Para 4−3−22, Option Approach</u>***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Paragraph 3-9-6 refers to departing aircraft and how to separate a departing aircraft from previous departing or arriving aircraft. In subparagraph "a" references are made to FIG 3-9-1 and FIG 3-9-2 and both of these figures show the departure aircraft on the runway, shaded, with the previous departing aircraft depicted in outline form. In subparagraph "b" a reference is made to FIG 3-9-3 that is intended to depict a departing aircraft from a preceding arriving aircraft. The preceding arriving aircraft is correctly depicted in outline form, consistent with previous figures in this chapter. However, while the departure is shaded consistent with the two previous figures in this chapter, it is not depicted on the runway.

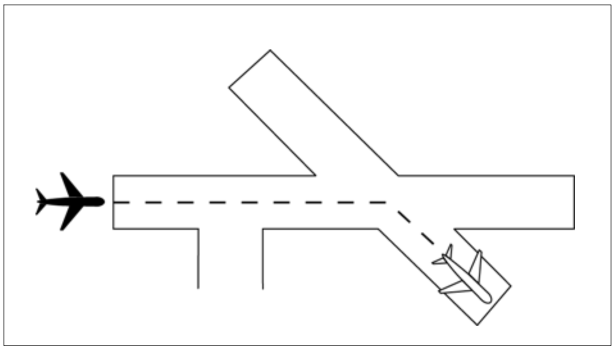
3. CHANGE:

<u>**OLD**</u>	<u>**NEW**</u>
3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION	**3-9-6. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION**
Title through **a**	No Change
FIG 3−9−2 **Same Runway Separation**	
NOTE− *Aircraft same runway separation (SRS) categories are specified in <u>Appendices A, B, and C</u> and based upon the following definitions:*	***NOTE−*** *Aircraft same runway separation (SRS) categories are specified in **<u>FAA Order JO 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators</u>** and based upon the following definitions:*
CATEGORY I − small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, <u>with a single propeller driven engine</u>, and all helicopters.	*CATEGORY I − small **<u>single−engine propeller driven</u>** aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, and all helicopters.*
CATEGORY II − small aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less, <u>with propeller driven twin −engines</u>.	*CATEGORY II − small **<u>twin−engine propeller driven</u>** aircraft weighing 12,500 lbs. or less.*
CATEGORY III − all other aircraft.	*CATEGORY III − all other aircraft.*

<u>**OLD**</u>

FIG 3−9−3

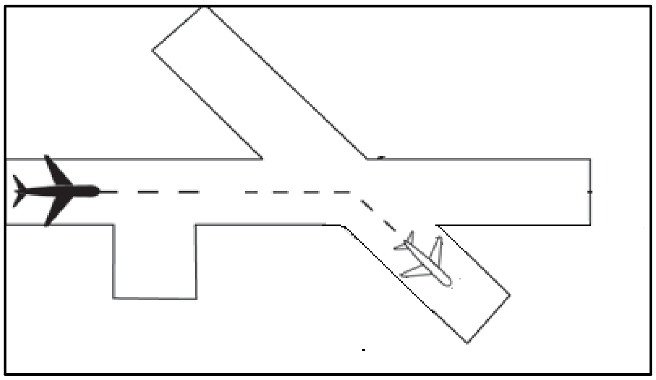
Preceding Landing Aircraft Clear of Runway



<u>**NEW**</u>

FIG 3−9−3

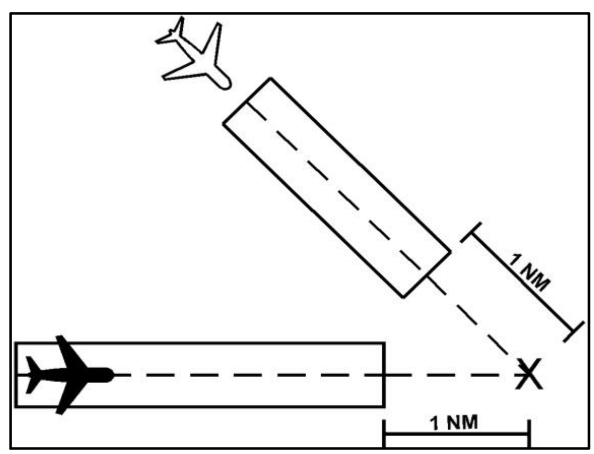
Preceding Landing Aircraft Clear of Runway



1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATIONS

2. BACKGROUND: The placement of paragraph 3-9-9, 2e may result in the conclusion that the procedures are only required for operations requiring wake turbulence application. In fact, the provisions of this paragraph should be applied for all converging runway operations.

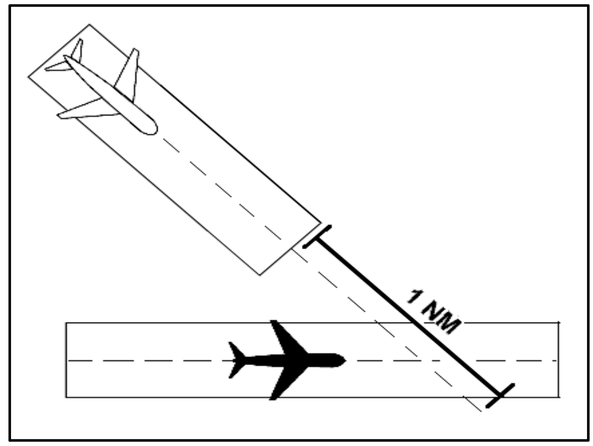
3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATION	**3-9-9. NONINTERSECTING CONVERGING RUNWAY OPERATION**
Title through **a2** ***FIG−3−9−12*** **Intersecting Runway Separation**	No Change
Add	**b. If the extended centerline of a runway crosses a converging runway or the extended centerline of a converging runway at a distance of 1NM or less from either departure end, apply the provisions of Pragraph 3−9−8, Intersecting Runway Separation, unless: The facility is using aids specified in a facility directive, (may include but are not limited to, Arrival/Departure Window (ADW), ASDE−X Virtual Runway Intersection Point (VRIP), cut−off points or automation). (See FIG 3−9−15 and FIG 3−9−16).**
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-14, Go-Around/Missed Approach***
WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION	No Change
Add	***FIG 3−9−13*** Intersecting Runway Separation 

Add

FIG 3−9−14

Intersecting Runway Separation



b. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a departing aircraft on a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross (See FIG 3−9−13).

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super − *3 minutes.*

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy − *2 minutes.*

3. Small behind B757 − *2 minutes.*

FIG 3−9−13

Intersecting Runway Separation

NOTE−
Takeoff clearance to the following aircraft should not be issued until the time interval has passed from when the preceding aircraft began takeoff roll.

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing aircraft on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival (See FIG 3−9−**14**).

1. Heavy, large, or small behind super – 3 minutes.

2. Heavy, large, or small behind heavy – 2 minutes.

3. Small behind B757 – 2 minutes.

FIG 3−9−14

Intersecting Runway Separation

d. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required time interval if the preceding aircraft requires wake turbulence separation.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-8-5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima, Subparagraph g.

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft taking off behind a departing aircraft on a crossing runway if projected flight paths will cross (See FIG 3−9−**15**).

No Change

No Change

No Change

FIG 3−9−15

Intersecting Runway Separation

No Change

d. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing aircraft on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival (See FIG 3−9−**16**).

No Change

No Change

No Change

FIG 3−9−16

Intersecting Runway Separation

e. Do not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required time interval if the preceding aircraft requires wake turbulence separation.

No Change

e. If the extended centerline of a runway crosses a converging runway or the extended centerline of a converging runway at a distance of 1NM or less from either departure end, apply the provisions of Paragraph 3-9-8, Intersecting Runway Separation, unless: The facility is using aids specified in a facility directive, (may include but are not limited to, Arrival/Departure Window (ADW), ASDE-X Virtual Runway Intersection Point (VRIP), cut-off points or automation). (See FIG 3-9-15 and FIG 3-9-16.)	Delete
FIG 3–9–15 Intersecting Runway Separation	Delete

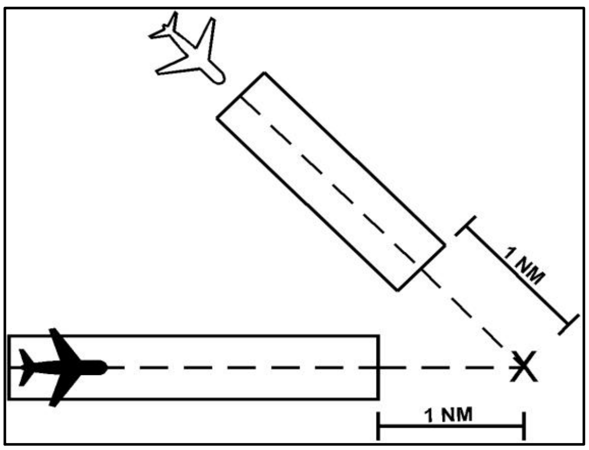
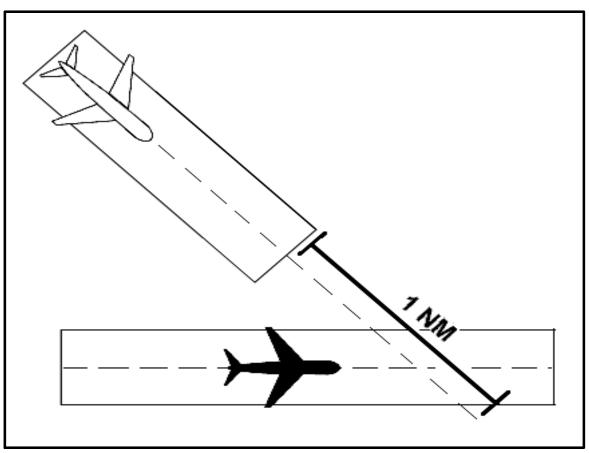


FIG 3–9–16 Intersecting Runway Separation	Delete



1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-10-5. LANDING CLEARANCE

2. BACKGROUND: Airport traffic control towers responsible for sequencing arriving aircraft employ various techniques to establish a landing sequence. Occasionally, control instructions necessary to sequence aircraft are not compatible with the phraseology "CONTINUE" specified in the example in FAA Order JO 7110.65 paragraph 3-10-5. Examples of incompatible phraseology with the word "CONTINUE" include: "EXTEND DOWNWIND, TURN BASE NOW, TURN BASE IN ONE MILE, BASE APPROVED, MAKE LEFT THREE-SIXTY", etc. When an inbound aircraft is issued a restriction such as "TOWER WILL CALL BASE" and a controller subsequently issues the instruction "CONTINUE, TRAFFIC HOLDING IN POSITION", pilots have reported uncertainty on the meaning of "CONTINUE" in this situation. Some pilots believe it means continue flying the current leg of the traffic pattern, some think it means fly a normal pattern. Similarly, some controllers report being unsure whether instructing an aircraft to "CONTINUE" deletes a previously issued control instruction.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3−10−5. LANDING CLEARANCE	**3−10−5. LANDING CLEARANCE**
Title through **b2c**	No Change
EXAMPLE− *"Delta One, Runway One−Eight, continue, traffic holding in position."* *"Delta One, Runway One−Eight, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."*	***EXAMPLE−*** *"Delta One, Runway One−Eight, continue, traffic holding in position."* *"Delta One, Runway One−Eight, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."* ***<u>"Twin Cessna Four Four Golf, Runway One-Niner base approved, traffic holding in position."</u>*** ***<u>"Baron Two Five Foxtrot, Runway One-Niner Right extend downwind, tower will call your base, traffic holding in position."</u>***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS

2. BACKGROUND: Flight Standards Service recommends 4-2-5b, Note 2 be stated better to avoid any potential misinterpretation. It is not a good idea to have "mandatory" used in the same sentence with "crossing altitudes." This could potentially mislead the audience into believing all altitudes on an ODP are "mandatory altitudes," as opposed to what is correctly specified in the ODP text or graphic.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS	**4-2-5. ROUTE OR ALTITUDE AMENDMENTS**
Title through **b** ***NOTE*** **1**	No Change
2. Crossing altitudes and speed restrictions on ODPs are <u>mandatory</u> and cannot be canceled by ATC.	**2.** Crossing altitudes and speed restrictions on **<u>Obstacle Departure Procedure/s (</u>**ODP**<u>/s)</u>** cannot be canceled **<u>or amended</u>** by ATC.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES

2. BACKGROUND: Flight Standards Service (AFS-420) has identified that paragraph 4-3-2 (c) (2) only refers to textually described obstacle departure procedures (ODP).

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES	**4-3-2. DEPARTURE CLEARANCES**
Title through **c1(c)**	No Change
2. Where only textually described obstacle departure procedures (ODP) have been published for a location and pilot compliance is necessary to ensure separation, include the procedure as part of the ATC clearance.	**2.** Where **an** obstacle departure procedure (ODP) **has** been published for a location and pilot compliance is necessary to ensure separation, include the procedure as part of the ATC clearance.
Add	***EXAMPLE−*** *"Depart via the (airport name)(runway number) departure procedure."* *Or* *"Depart via the (graphic ODP name) obstacle departure procedure."*
Add	***NOTE−*** *Some aircraft are required by 14 CFR 91.175 to depart a runway under IFR using the ODP absent other instructions from ATC.*
Add	***NOTE−*** *IFR takeoff minimums and obstacle departure procedures are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in either a textual, or graphic form with the label (OBSTACLE) in the procedure title, and documented on an appropriate FAA Form 8260. To alert pilots of their existence, instrument approach procedure charts are annotated with a symbol:*
Add	 .
3. Do not solicit use of the Visual Climb over Airport (VCOA) option.	No Change
NOTE− *Pilots will specifically advise ATC of their intent to use the VCOA option.*	No Change
EXAMPLE− *"Depart via the (airport name) (runway number) departure procedure."*	Delete
NOTE− *IFR takeoff minimums and departure procedures are prescribed for specific airports/runways and published in a tabular form supplement to the FAA instrument approach procedure chart and appropriate FAA Form 8260. These procedures are identified on instrument approach procedure charts with a symbol:*	Delete

Delete

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
4-7-12. AIRPORT CONDITIONS
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE
4-8-9. MISSED APPROACH
4-8-10. APPROACH INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: In response to aviation industry concerns over cold weather effect on indicated altitudes versus that of an aircraft's true altitude, the FAA completed an analysis to determine if current 14 CFR Part 97 instrument approach procedures in the United States National Airspace System are at risk of compromised required obstacle clearances (ROC) during time of extreme cold temperature. As a result of the study, all airports with runways greater than 2500 feet with instrument approach procedures were analyzed to determine which approach procedures needed compensation based on a formula that articulated the potential for a degree of ROC that could be compromised. A safety risk management panel (SRMP) was conducted on the impact to ATC operations, and a condition of the SRMP was to add content to the pertinent FAA documents to assist in pilot and controller awareness of the need to apply cold temperature compensation.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4–7–12. AIRPORT CONDITIONS	**4–7–12. AIRPORT CONDITIONS**
Title through **a**	No Change
NOTE– ***1.*** *Airport conditions information, in the provision of en route approach control service, does not include information pertaining to the airport surface environment other than the landing area(s) or obstruction information for aircraft that will be cleared for an instrument approach. Accordingly, D NOTAMs that contain the keywords TAXIWAY (TWY), RAMP, APRON, or SERVICE (SVC) are not required to be issued. Additionally, Obstruction NOTAMs (OBST) are not required to be issued if an aircraft will be cleared for an instrument approach.*	***NOTE–*** ***1.*** *Airport conditions information, in the provision of en route approach control service, does not include information pertaining to **cold temperature compensation or** the airport surface environment other than the landing area(s) or obstruction information for aircraft that will be cleared for an instrument approach. Accordingly, D NOTAMs that contain the keywords TAXIWAY (TWY), RAMP, APRON, or SERVICE (SVC) are not required to be issued. Additionally, Obstruction NOTAMs (OBST) are not required to be issued if an aircraft will be cleared for an instrument approach.*
NOTE **2** through **b**	No Change

OLD	NEW
4–8–1. APPROACH CLEARANCE	**4–8–1. APPROACH CLEARANCE**
Title through **a5**	No Change
Add	**6. Controllers must not disapprove a pilot request to cold temperature compensate in conjunction with the issuance of an approach clearance.**
NOTE **1**	No Change

OLD	NEW
***2**. Approach clearances are issued based on known traffic. The receipt of an approach clearance does not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to comply with applicable Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations and the notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; for example, "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," or "Procedure not authorized at night."*	***2**. Approach clearances are issued based on known traffic. The receipt of an approach clearance does not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to comply with applicable Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations and the notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; for example, "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," "Procedure not authorized at night,"* ***or Snowflake icon with associated temperature.***
***NOTE* 3** through ***NOTE* 9**	No Change
Add	***10. Pilots are required to advise ATC when intending to apply cold temperature compensation to instrument approach segments. Pilots must advise ATC of the amount of compensation required for each affected segment on initial contact or as soon as possible. Pilots are not required to advise ATC when correcting on the final segment only. Controllers may delay the issuance of an approach clearance to comply with approved separation requirements when informed that a pilot will apply cold temperature compensation (CTC). Pilots will not apply altitude compensation, unless authorized, when assigned an altitude prior to an approach clearance. Consideration should be given to vectoring aircraft at or above the requested compensating altitude if possible. This eliminates pilots having to climb once on the approach.***
REFERENCE− *FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS).*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS).* ***P/CG Term − Cold Temperature Compensation*** ***AIM, Paragraph 5-1-17, Cold Temperature Operations*** ***AIM, Paragraph 5-5-4, Instrument Approach***

OLD	NEW
4-8-9. MISSED APPROACH	**4-8-9. MISSED APPROACH**
Title through ***NOTE* 2**	No Change
Add	***NOTE−*** ***3. Pilots must advise ATC when intending to apply cold temperature compensation and of the amount of compensation required. Pilots will not apply altitude compensation, unless authorized, when assigned an altitude if provided an initial heading to fly or radar vectors in lieu of published missed approach procedures. Consideration should be given to vectoring aircraft at or above the requested compensating altitude if possible.***
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***AIM, Paragraph 5-5-5, Missed Approach***

OLD	NEW
4-8-10. APPROACH INFORMATION	**4-8-10. APPROACH INFORMATION**
Title through **e**	No Change
Add	**f. Applicable notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; for example, "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," "Procedure not authorized at night," or a Snowflake icon indicating mandatory cold temperature compensation.**
Add	***REFERENCE–*** *AIM, Paragraph 5-1-17, Cold Temperature Operations* *AIM, Paragraph 5-5-4, Instrument Approach* *AIM, Paragraph 5-5-5, Missed Approach*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

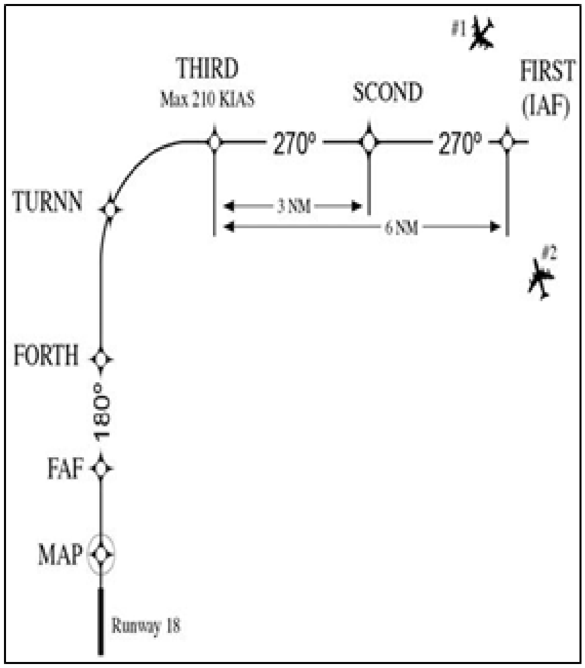
2. BACKGROUND: In the January 2015 change to this paragraph, sub-paragraph f was revised. Content involving Radius to Fix (RF) legs was revised by removing mileage distances that were stated for the segment prior to commencing an RF leg. However, the associated FIG 4-8-5 was not changed at the time the content was revised.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE	**4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE**
Title through **i4** ***NOTE***	No Change

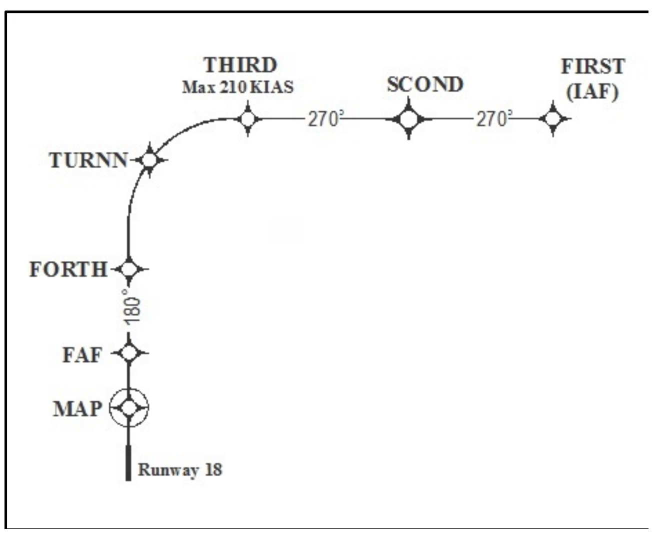
OLD

FIG 4−8−5
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)



NEW

FIG 4−8−5
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)



1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-1-3. RADAR USE

2. BACKGROUND: FAA Order JO 7110.310, Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast (ADS-B) Air Traffic Control (ATC) Services at Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) Using En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM) and FAA Order JO 7110.313 Wide Area Multilateration (WAM) Air Traffic Control (ATC) Services at Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) approved ADS-B and WAM surveillance information for use in the En Route domain as a surveillance source. Safety analyses have been completed that support the use of ADS-B and WAM targets in all areas with or without existing radar coverage.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-1-3. RADAR USE	**5-1-3. ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE USE**
Use radar information derived from primary and secondary radar systems.	Use **approved ATC surveillance sources.**
REFERENCE through **b**	No Change
Add	**c. All procedures and requirements relating to ATC services using secondary radar targets apply to ATC services provided to targets derived from ADS-B and WAM.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***Targets derived from ADS-B and/or WAM cannot be used to provide 3NM separation in the EAS. 3NM targets are not derived from ADS-B and/or WAM within the EAS.***
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***JO 7110.65, Para4-1-2, Exceptions.*** ***JO 7110.65, Para 4-4-2, Route Structure Transitions*** ***JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-1, Application*** ***JO 7110.65, Para 6-5-4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes*** ***JO 7110.65, Chapter 6, Nonradar*** ***JO 7110.65, Para 5-5-4, Minima*** ***JO 7210.3 3-6-2 ATC Surveillance Source Use***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-4-3. METHODS

2. BACKGROUND: Since 2009 the New York Air Route Traffic Control Center has been working under a waiver that allows the use of the Computer Identification Number (CID) in lieu of using the aircraft call sign or discreet beacon code for aircraft identification under paragraph 5-4-3, METHODS, sub-paragraph b.2. This DCP incorporates the provisions of the waiver so the use of the CID is available to all Enroute facilities.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-4-3. METHODS	**5-4-3. METHODS**
Title through **b2(a)**	No Change
(b) The discrete beacon code of the aircraft during inter-facility point-outs only, if both the receiving and the transferring controllers agree.	**(b)** The discrete beacon code of the aircraft during inter-facility point-outs only, if both the receiving and the transferring controllers agree**, or**

Add	(c) **EN ROUTE. The Computer Identification Number (CID) during intra-facility point-outs.**
Add	*EXAMPLE−* *“Point Out, Southwest of Richmond VOR, C-I-D 123…”*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5−4−6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

2. BACKGROUND: Several years ago the FAA began replacing the En Route legacy computer system known as Host, with a new, NextGen enabling system known as En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM). The installation of ERAM was accomplished using a waterfall implementation process over the span of many years. During this transition period, the guidance for air traffic control services operating under ERAM was found in FAA Order JO 7110.311. Now that the transition nears completion, FAA Order 7110.311C is being incorporated into FAA Order JO 7110.65. During this process, certain outdated terms that are no longer used in the field were identified. The decision was made to use this opportunity to update the handbook by eliminating or amending the outdated terminology.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5−4−6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	**5−4−6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF**
Title through **e3**	No Change
f. Initiate verbal coordination prior to accepting control of a track when “CST,” “NAT,” “NT,” “NONE,” “NB,” “NX,” “OLD,” “OL,” “AMB,” “AM,” or “TU” is displayed in the data block.	**f.** Take the identified action prior to accepting control of a track when the following indicators are displayed in the data block:
1. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and “AMB” or “AM” is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your CARTS/PIDP/STARS system.	**1.** “AMB” and “AM”: advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your CARTS/PIDP/STARS system.
2. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and “NAT,” “NT,” or “TU” is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.	**2.** “NAT”, “NT,” or “TU”: advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.
Add	**3. “DATA”, “CST”, “NONE”, “NX”, “OLD”, or “OL”: initiate verbal coordination.**
Add	**g. ERAM: Notify the FLM when a MISM is displayed in the data block.**
g. Advise the transferring controller, prior to accepting the transfer of radar identification, that you will delay the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of the transferring controller’s area of jurisdiction, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.	**h.** Advise the transferring controller, prior to accepting the transfer of radar identification, that you will delay the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of the transferring controller’s area of jurisdiction, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

OLD	NEW
NOTE− *Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.*	Delete
h. If you decide, *after* accepting the transfer of radar identification, to delay the aircraft's climb or descent through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, advise the transferring controller of that decision as soon as possible.	**i.** If you decide, *after* accepting the transfer of radar identification, to delay the aircraft's climb or descent through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, advise the transferring controller of that decision as soon as possible.
NOTE− *Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude shall include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.*	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-6-2. METHODS

2. BACKGROUND: Instrument flight procedures with published crossing restrictions have been in use for many years. Continued evolution of flight procedures has resulted in the need to clarify and supplement actions required when an aircraft is issued a clearance off a procedure that contains published altitude restrictions. Current guidance for when an aircraft is vectored off a procedure has not changed since 1980. Existing guidance does not capture the nuances surrounding Climb Via and Descend Via clearances when subsequent radar vectors are issued or aircraft are cleared to deviate from Climb Via/Descend Via procedures. Without an assigned altitude or a published fix to rejoin, Flight Management Systems may no longer calculate crossing altitudes and VNAV may revert to a SID/STAR's top or bottom altitude. In a separate issue, Flight Standards AFS-420 identified an issue with regards to Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP). In order to be consistent with language currently found in the AIM, they recommend adding guidance to this order for when an aircraft is vectored off an Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP).

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-6-2. METHODS	**5-6-2. METHODS**
Title through **a3**	No Change
b. When initiating a vector, advise the pilot of the purpose.	**b.** When initiating a vector, advise the pilot of the purpose, **and if appropriate, what to expect when radar navigational guidance is terminated.**

PHRASEOLOGY− *VECTOR TO (fix or airway).* *VECTOR TOINTERCEPT (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.* *VECTOR FOR SPACING.* *VECTOR TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE,* *or if the pilot does not have knowledge of the type of approach,* *VECTOR TO (approach name) FINAL APPROACH COURSE.*	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** *VECTOR TO (fix or airway).* *VECTOR TO INTERCEPT (name of NAVAID) (specified) RADIAL.* *VECTOR FOR SPACING.* ***(if appropriate) EXPECT DIRECT (NAVAID, waypoint, fix)*** *VECTOR TO FINAL APPROACH COURSE,* *or if the pilot does not have knowledge of the type of approach,* *VECTOR TO (approach name) FINAL APPROACH COURSE.*
NOTE	No Change
c. Issue with the vector an altitude to maintain and all appropriate altitude restrictions when:	**c. When vectoring or approving course deviations, assign an altitude to maintain when:**
1. The vector will take the aircraft off an assigned procedure which contains altitude instructions, i.e., instrument approach, nonradar SID, FMSP, etc.	**1.** The vector **or approved deviation is** off an assigned procedure which contains altitude instructions, i.e., instrument approach, etc.
c2	No Change
Add	**3. The vector or approved deviation is off an assigned procedure that contains published altitude restrictions, i.e., SID, STAR, and a clearance to Climb Via/Descend Via has been issued.**
d. If appropriate, advise the pilot what to expect when the vector is completed.	**d. When vectoring or approving an aircraft to deviate off of a procedure that includes published altitude restrictions, advise the pilot if you intend on clearing the aircraft to resume the procedure.**
PHRASEOLOGY− *EXPECT TO RESUME (Route, SID, STAR, FMSP, etc.).*	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** ***FLY HEADING (degrees), MAINTAIN (altitude),*** *EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.).* ***DEVIATION (restrictions if necessary) APPROVED, MAINTAIN (altitude) EXPECT TO RESUME (SID, STAR, etc.) AT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint)***
NOTE− *You must ensure that the pilot is made aware if he/she is expected to resume a previously issued route procedure.*	***NOTE−*** ***After a Climb Via or Descend Via clearance has been issued, a vector/deviation off of a SID/STAR cancels the altitude restrictions on the procedure. The aircraft's Flight Management System (FMS) may be unable to process crossing altitude restrictions once the aircraft leaves the SID/STAR lateral path. Without an assigned altitude, the aircraft's FMS may revert to leveling off at the altitude set by the pilot, which may be the SID/STAR's published top or bottom altitude.***
e through **e3**	No Change

PHRASEOLOGY− *(Position with respect to course/fix along route), RESUME OWN NAVIGATION,* *or* *FLY HEADING (degrees). WHEN ABLE, PROCEED DIRECT (name of fix),* *or* *RESUME (name/numberFMSP/SID/transition/STAR/ procedure).*	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** *(Position with respect to course/fix along route), RESUME OWN NAVIGATION, FLY HEADING (degrees). WHEN ABLE, PROCEED DIRECT (name of fix), RESUME (SID/STAR/**transition**/procedure).*
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 4, Section 1, NAVAID Use Limitations.*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 4, Section 1, NAVAID Use Limitations* ***FAAO JO 7110.65,Paragraph 4-5-7, Altitude Information***
f. Aircraft instructed to resume a procedure which contains restrictions (SID/STAR/FMSP, etc.) must be issued/reissued all applicable restrictions or must be advised to comply with those restrictions.	**f.** Aircraft instructed to resume a procedure which contains restrictions (SID/STAR, etc.) must be issued/reissued all applicable restrictions or must be advised to comply with those restrictions.
PHRASEOLOGY− *RESUME (name/numberFMSP/SID/transition/STAR), COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS.*	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** *RESUME (name/SID/transition/STAR), COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS. **PROCEED DIRECT (NAVAID, fix, waypoint) CROSS (NAVAID, fix, waypoint) AT/AT OR ABOVE/AT OR BELOW (altitude) CLIMB VIA/DESCEND VIA (SID/STAR)***
EXAMPLE− *"Resume the Mudde One Arrival, comply with restrictions."* *"Cleared direct Luxor, resume the Ksino One arrival, comply with restrictions."*	***EXAMPLE −*** *"Resume the Mudde One Arrival, comply with restrictions."* *"Cleared direct Luxor, resume the Ksino One arrival, comply with restrictions."* ***"Cleared direct HITME, cross HITME at or above one one thousand, climb via the Boach Five departure."***
Add	**g. Aircraft may not be vectored off an Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), or issued an altitude lower than published altitude on an ODP, until at or above the MVA/MIA, at which time the ODP is cancelled.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***Once an aircraft has been vectored off an Obstacle Departure Procedure, the procedure is cancelled and ATC cannot clear the aircraft to resume the ODP.***
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***P/CG, Obstacle Departure Procedure***
g	**Re−Letter** to **h**
i	**Re−Letter** to **j**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS

2. BACKGROUND: The Flight Technologies and Procedures Division, AFS-400, removed the requirement to provide 1,000 feet vertical or 3 miles radar separation during turn on to widely spaced parallel finals and substituted procedural design to allow simultaneous independent parallel operations between RNAV (RNP) approaches with RF legs and a RNAV (RNP) approaches with RF legs and certain other straight−in approaches.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS	**5-9-10. SIMULTANEOUS INDEPENDENT APPROACHES TO WIDELY-SPACED PARALLEL RUNWAYS WITHOUT FINAL MONITORS**
Title through **a**	No Change
1. Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft during turn-on to parallel final approach.	**1.** Provide a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation between aircraft**:**
Add	(a) **during turn-on to parallel final approach, or**
Add	(b) **conducting an RNAV (RNP) approach that contains a Radius-to-Fix (RF) leg and an aircraft conducting a straight-in ILS/RNAV with vertical guidance/GLS or another RNAV (RNP) approach with an RF leg until both aircraft are established on their respective approach procedures. Ensure dual RNAV (RNP) approaches that contain RF legs are limited to aircraft approaching from opposite downwinds or base legs and all approach pairings must be conducted so that the approach courses do not overlap.**
Add	***REFERENCE−*** ***FAAO JO 7210.3, Paragraph 10-4-7, Simultaneous Widely-Spaced Parallel Operations***

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: Improper application of tower-applied and pilot-applied visual separation has been identified by the Air Traffic Organization (ATO) Safety Roundtable as an ATO Top 5 Issue for 2015. The Top 5 is a quantifiable list of hazards that contribute to the highest risk in the National Airspace System.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION	**7-2-1. VISUAL SEPARATION**
<u>Aircraft may be separated by visual means, as provided in this paragraph</u>, when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, <u>and</u> known weather conditions. <u>Reported</u> weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists. <u>Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/or aircraft performance preclude maintaining</u>	<u>**Visual separation may be applied**</u> when other approved separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. To ensure that other separation will exist, consider aircraft performance, wake turbulence, closure rate, routes of flight, known weather conditions, <u>**and aircraft position**</u>. Weather conditions must allow the aircraft to remain within sight until other separation exists.
REFERENCE	No Change
a1	No Change
(a) Maintain communication with at least one of the aircraft involved or ensure there is an ability to communicate immediately as prescribed in <u>p</u>aragraph 3-9-3, Departure Control Instructions, subparagraph a2.	**(a)** Maintain communication with at least one of the aircraft involved or ensure there is an ability to communicate immediately <u>**with applicable military aircraft**</u> as prescribed in <u>**P**</u>aragraph 3-9-3, Departure Control Instructions, subparagraph a2.
(b) The tower visually observes the aircraft, issues timely traffic advisories, and <u>maintains</u> visual separation between the aircraft. <u>The use of tower-applied visual separation is not authorized when wake turbulence separation is required.</u>	**(b)** The tower visually observes the aircraft, issues timely traffic advisories, and <u>**provides**</u> visual separation between the aircraft.
(c) Issue <u>subsequent</u> control instructions as necessary to ensure continued separation between the applicable aircraft.	**(c)** Issue control instructions as necessary to ensure continued separation between the applicable aircraft.
Add	<u>**(d)**</u> <u>**Do not apply visual separation between successive departures when departure routes and/or aircraft performance preclude maintaining separation.**</u>
Add	<u>**(e)**</u> <u>**The use of tower-applied visual separation is not authorized when wake turbulence separation is required.**</u>
<u>***NOTE−***</u> *Adjacent airports with operating ATCTs are not authorized to apply visual separation between their traffic and the other ATCT's traffic.*	<u>**(f)**</u> Adjacent airports with operating ATCTs are not authorized to apply visual separation between their traffic and the other ATCT's traffic.
a2(a) and **a2(b)**	No Change

(1) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft. Include position, direction, and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention.	**(1)** Tell the pilot about the other aircraft. Include position, direction, **type** and, unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intention.
a2(b)(2) and **a2(b)(3)**	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY– *TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information).*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** ***(ACID),*** *TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information).*
DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT?	***If required,*** ***(ACID), REPORT TRAFFIC IN SIGHT or*** *DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT?*
If the answer is in the affirmative,	***If the pilot reports traffic in sight, or*** *the answer is in the affirmative,*
MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.	***(ACID),*** *MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION*
Add	***NOTE–*** ***Towers must use the procedures contained in Paragraph 3-1-6, Traffic Information, Subparagraph b or c, as appropriate.***
(c) If the pilot advises he/she has the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation from it (the pilot must use that entire phrase), the controller need only "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.	**(c)** If the pilot **reports** the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation from it (the pilot must **state both**), the controller may "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.
PHRASEOLOGY– *APPROVED.*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** ***(ACID),*** *APPROVED.*
NOTE– *Pilot-applied visual separation between aircraft is achieved when the controller has instructed the pilot to maintain visual separation and the pilot acknowledges or when the controller has approved pilot-initiated visual separation.*	***NOTE–*** *Pilot-applied visual separation between aircraft is achieved when the controller has instructed the pilot to maintain visual separation and the pilot acknowledges* ***with their call sign*** *or when the controller has approved pilot-initiated visual separation.*
REFERENCE– *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5-4-5, Transferring Controller Handoff*	No Change
(d) If the aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.	**(d)** If aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.
PHRASEOLOGY– *TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** ***(ACID),*** *TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.*
(e) Advise the pilots if the radar targets appear likely to merge.	**(e)** Advise the pilots if the targets appear likely to merge.
NOTE	No Change
EXAMPLE– *"Radar targets appear likely to merge."*	***EXAMPLE–*** *"Targets appear likely to merge."*
b. TERMINAL. Control of aircraft maintaining visual separation may be transferred to an adjacent position/sector/facility. Coordination procedures must be specified in an LOA or facility directive.	**(f)** Control of aircraft maintaining visual separation may be transferred to an adjacent position/sector/facility. Coordination procedures must be specified in an LOA or facility directive.

REFERENCE	No Change
c. EN ROUTE. Visual separation may be used up to but not including FL 180 when the following conditions are met:	**b.** EN ROUTE. Visual separation may be used up to but not including FL 180 when the following conditions are met:
1. Direct communication is maintained with one of the aircraft involved and there is an ability to communicate with the other.	No Change
2. A pilot sees another aircraft and is instructed to maintain visual separation from it as follows:	No Change
(a) Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction and unless it is obvious, the other aircraft's intentions.	**(a)** Tell the pilot about the other aircraft including position, direction**, and type. If** it is **not** obvious, **include** the other aircraft's intentions.
Add	***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.*
(b) Obtain acknowledgment from the pilot that the other aircraft is in sight.	No Change
(c) Instruct the pilot to maintain visual separation from that aircraft.	No Change
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *(ACID), TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction) BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information). If required, (ACID), REPORT TRAFFIC IN SIGHT or DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT? If the pilot reports traffic in sight, or the answer is in the affirmative, (ACID), MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION*
Add	**(d) If the pilot reports the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation (the pilot must state both), the controller may "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.**
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *(ACID), APPROVED.*
Add	***NOTE–*** *Pilot-applied visual separation between aircraft is achieved when the controller has instructed the pilot to maintain visual separation and the pilot acknowledges with their call sign or when the controller has approved pilot-initiated visual separation.*
(d) Advise the pilot if the radar targets appear likely to converge.	**(e)** Advise the pilot if the targets appear likely to converge.
(e) If the aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.	**(f)** If aircraft are on converging courses, inform the other aircraft of the traffic and that visual separation is being applied.
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *(ACID) TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)–BOUND, (type of aircraft), ON CONVERGING COURSE, HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.*
Add	***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–1, Visual Approach.* *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–2, Vectors for Visual Approach.*

(f) Advise the pilots if either aircraft is a heavy.

(g) Advise the pilots if either aircraft is a heavy.

(g) Traffic advisories and wake turbulence cautionary advisories must be issued in accordance with para 2−1−20, Wake Turbulence Cautionary Advisories, and para 2−1−21, Traffic Advisories.

(h) **Issue** wake turbulence cautionary advisories in accordance with para 2−1−20.

(h) If the pilot advises he/she has the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation from it (the pilot must use that entire phrase), the controller need only "approve" the operation instead of restating the instructions.

Delete

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)−BOUND, (type of aircraft), (intentions and other relevant information).

If applicable,

ON CONVERGING COURSE.

DO YOU HAVE IT IN SIGHT?

If the answer is in the affirmative,

MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.

If the pilot advises he/she has the traffic in sight and will maintain visual separation from it (pilot must use that entire phrase):

(Call Sign) APPROVED.

If aircraft are on converging courses, advise the other aircraft:

TRAFFIC, (clock position and distance), (direction)−BOUND, (type of aircraft), HAS YOU IN SIGHT AND WILL MAINTAIN VISUAL SEPARATION.

Delete

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−1, Visual Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−4−2, Vectors for Visual Approach.

Delete

d. Nonapproach control towers may be authorized to provide visual separation between aircraft within surface areas or designated areas provided other separation is assured before and after the application of visual separation. This may be applied by the nonapproach control tower providing the separation or by a pilot visually observing another aircraft and being instructed to maintain visual separation with that aircraft.

c. Nonapproach control towers may be authorized to provide visual separation between aircraft within surface areas or designated areas when approved separation is provided before and after the application of visual separation. **T**he nonapproach control tower **must apply the procedures contained in subparagraph a1 or a2, when applying visual separation.**

OLD	NEW
PHRASEOLOGY− *VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED BETWEEN (identification) AND (identification),*	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** *VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED BETWEEN **(ACID)** AND **(ACID)**,*
and for departing aircraft,	*and for departing aircraft,*
(departing/succeeding aircraft) RELEASED YOUR DISCRETION.	*(departing/succeeding aircraft) **(ACID),** RELEASED.*
Add	**d. If the nonapproach control tower controller states to the radar controller that they will provide visual separation between arrivals, departures/arrivals and/or successive departures, and states the call signs of all aircraft involved, the radar controller can approve the application of visual separation as requested.**
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY−*** ***VISUAL SEPARATION APPROVED and for departing/succeeding aircraft, (ACIDs) RELEASED***
NOTE− *Separation of IFR aircraft before and after application of visual separation is an IFR control function (Approach/Departure/En Route). A nonapproach control tower by accepting authorization for visual separation becomes responsible for ensuring that separation. Separation requirements also apply to VFR aircraft when IFR, Class B, Class C or TRSA separation is prescribed.*	***NOTE−*** ***A nonapproach control tower by accepting authorization for visual separation becomes responsible for ensuring that separation.*** *Separation of IFR aircraft before and after application of visual separation is an IFR control function **that must be applied by the Approach/Departure/En Route facility**. Separation requirements also apply to VFR aircraft when IFR, Class B, Class C or TRSA separation **services are required.***
REFERENCE	No Change

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS

2. BACKGROUND: Current procedures in FAA Order JO 7110.65, Paragraphs 7-4-4 c2 and c3 restrict controllers to use of radar vectors to achieve the required maximum 30-degree intercept to the final approach course. Advanced NextGen procedures provide a greater degree of course accuracy. However, current guidance does not permit their use with conventional and visual approach procedures while conducting approaches to multiple runways.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS	**7-4-4. APPROACHES TO MULTIPLE RUNWAYS**
Title through **c2**	No Change
(a) Approved separation is provided until the aircraft are established on a heading which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees, and each aircraft has been issued and one pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance, and the other pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual or instrument approach clearance.	**(a)** Approved separation is provided until the aircraft are**:**

Add	**<u>(1)</u> <u>Established on a heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees, and,</u>**
Add	**<u>(2)</u> <u>Issued an approach clearance and one pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual approach clearance, and,</u>**
Add	**<u>(3)</u> <u>The other pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual or instrument approach clearance.</u>**
NOTE **1** and **2**	No Change
Add	***<u>NOTE−</u>*** ***<u>3. Procedures using Radius-to-Fix legs that intercept final may be used in lieu of 30-degree intercept provisions contained in this paragraph.</u>***
REFERENCE− *FAA Publication, Pilot's Handbook of Aeronautical Knowledge, Chapter 15 "Effect of Wind."*	No Change
c2(b) through **c3(c)**	No Change
(d) Each aircraft must be assigned headings which will allow the aircraft to intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.	**(d)** Each aircraft must **<u>either</u>** be assigned <u>a</u> **<u>heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure</u>** which will allow the aircraft to intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.
NOTE **1** and **2**	No Change
Add	***NOTE−*** ***<u>3.</u> <u>Procedures using Radius-to-Fix legs that intercept final may be used in lieu of 30-degree intercept provisions contained in this paragraph.</u>***
REFERENCE− *FAA Publication, Pilot's Handbook of Aeronautical Knowledge, Chapter 15 "Effect of Wind."*	No Change
c4	No Change

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
8-7-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-8-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-9-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) is an additional capability fully compatible with the existing Advanced Technologies and Ocean Procedures (ATOP) oceanic automation system. The ADS-B ITP is a pilot-requested procedure that utilizes existing ADS-B aircraft equipage and air traffic control capabilities to allow more flights to achieve their preferred vertical profiles, and thereby increases both capacity and efficiency in the oceanic domain. The ADS-B ITP was designed to improve service to appropriately equipped aircraft by allowing pilots to request an altitude change when the existing separation minima do not allow aircraft to climb or descend through the altitude of a blocking aircraft.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
8-7-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	**8-7-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION**
Title through **c2**	No Change
Add	**d. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:**
Add	**1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;**
Add	**2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;**
Add	**3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;**
Add	**4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:**
Add	**(a) same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or**
Add	**(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.***
Add	**5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;**
Add	**7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and**
Add	**9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.**
Add	***NOTE−*** ***ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.***
d	Re−Letter **e**

OLD	NEW
8-8-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	**8-8-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION**
Title through **d3**	No Change

Add	**e. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:**
Add	**1. The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;**
Add	**2. The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;**
Add	**3. The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;**
Add	**4. Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:**
Add	**(a) same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or**
Add	**(b) same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.**
Add	*NOTE–* *Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.*
Add	**5. No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**6. The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;**
Add	**7. No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**8. The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and**
Add	**9. The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.**
Add	*NOTE–* *ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.*
e	Renumber **f**

OLD	NEW
8-9-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	**8-9-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION**
Title through **a4**	No Change
Add	**b. Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:**

Add	<u>**1.**</u> <u>**The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;**</u>
Add	<u>**2.**</u> <u>**The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;**</u>
Add	<u>**3.**</u> <u>**The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;**</u>
Add	<u>**4.**</u> <u>**Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:**</u>
Add	<u>**(a)**</u> <u>**Same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or**</u>
Add	<u>**(b)**</u> <u>**same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.**</u>
Add	<u>***NOTE−***</u> <u>***Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.***</u>
Add	<u>**5.**</u> <u>**No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**</u>
Add	<u>**6.**</u> <u>**The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;**</u>
Add	<u>**7.**</u> <u>**No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**</u>
Add	<u>**8.**</u> <u>**The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and**</u>
Add	<u>**9.**</u> <u>**The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.**</u>
Add	<u>***NOTE−***</u> <u>***ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.***</u>
<u>**b**</u>	Re−Letter <u>**c**</u>

<u>**OLD**</u>	<u>**NEW**</u>
8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION	**8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION**
Title through **a3**	No Change
Add	<u>**b.**</u> <u>**Clear an aircraft for an ADS-B In Trail Procedure (ITP) climb or descent provided the following conditions are satisfied:**</u>
Add	<u>**1.**</u> <u>**The ITP climb or descent has been requested by the pilot;**</u>

Add	**2.** **The aircraft identification of each reference aircraft in the ITP request exactly matches the Item 7 - aircraft identification of the corresponding aircraft's filed flight plan;**
Add	**3.** **The reported ITP distance between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft is 15 NM or more;**
Add	**4.** **Both the ITP aircraft and reference aircraft are either on:**
Add	**(a)** **same identical tracks and any turn at a waypoint shall be limited to less than 45 degrees; or**
Add	**(b)** **same tracks with no turns permitted that degrade required separation during the ITP.**
Add	***NOTE−*** *Same identical tracks are where the angular difference is zero degrees.*
Add	**5.** **No speed or route change clearance shall be issued to the ITP aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**6.** **The altitude difference between the ITP aircraft and any reference aircraft shall be 2000 ft or less;**
Add	**7.** **No instruction to amend speed, altitude or route shall be issued to any reference aircraft until the ITP climb or descent is completed;**
Add	**8.** **The maximum closing speed between the ITP aircraft and each reference aircraft shall be Mach 0.06; and**
Add	**9.** **The ITP aircraft shall not be a reference aircraft in another ITP clearance.**
Add	***NOTE−*** *ATOP is designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.*
b	Re−Letter **c**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 9-1-2. SPECIAL HANDLING

2. BACKGROUND: A GENOT was issued on May 11, 2015, regarding the call sign addition FLIGHT VAL. Activities associated with FAA authorized non-FAA Service Providers conducting Flight Validation (FV) activities are similar to Flight Check activities. The Flight Procedure Implementation and Oversight Branch (AFS-460) felt that additional information should be added to FAA Order JO 7110.65, para 9-1-2 to increase Air Traffic awareness and understanding of the level of activity required.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
9-1-2. SPECIAL HANDLING	**9-1-2. SPECIAL HANDLING**

OLD	NEW
Title through **d**	No Change
NOTE− *FAA flight inspection aircraft will file flight plans using the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" during flight inspections or when inbound to conduct flight inspections. Flight plan remarks may indicate type NAVAID inspection to be accomplished; e.g. "FC OKC P."*	***NOTE−*** *1. FAA flight inspection aircraft will file flight plans using the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" during flight inspections or when inbound to conduct flight inspections. Flight plan remarks may indicate type NAVAID inspection to be accomplished; e.g. "FC OKC P."*
Add	***2. Authorized non-FAA Service Providers conducting Flight Validation activities use the call sign "FLIGHT VAL." Although these activities are similar to Flight Inspection activities, no additional priority is granted with this call sign.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 10-2-13. MANPADS ALERT

2. BACKGROUND: Changes to reporting responsibilities and obsolete procedures have necessitated updates and clarifications to MANPADS paragraphs in FAA Order JO 7610.4, Special Operations; FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration; and FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control. The updates include requiring ATC facilities to report any MANPADS threat received to the the Domestic Events Network (DEN) Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC).

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
10-2-13. MANPADS ALERT	**10-2-13. MANPADS ALERT**
Title through **c**	No Change
d. Report MANPADS threat/attack/post–event activity until notified otherwise by FAA national headquarters.	**d.** Report MANPADS threat/attack/post–event activity **via the ATIS and/or controller–to–pilot transmissions** until notified otherwise by **the Domestic Events Network (DEN) Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC).**
REFERENCE− *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–9–3, Content.* *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–9, Handling MANPADS Incidents.*	***REFERENCE−*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–9–3, Content.* *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–9, Handling MANPADS Incidents.* ***FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 16-1-3, Responsibilities.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
11-1-3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

2. BACKGROUND: Traffic Management Advisor (TMA) was known as a comprehensive, automated method of planning efficient arrival trajectories from cruise altitude to the runway threshold. It increased situational awareness through its graphical displays, timelines, and load graphs. TMA trajectories have been optimized for each aircraft to permit an accurate estimated time of arrival at an airport and provide scheduled times of arrival (meter times) that optimize the flow of traffic into a terminal area. The next generation of TMA has begun. In this generation, all references to TMA have been changed, now referencing its new name: Time-Based Flow Management (TBFM).

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
11−1−1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY	**11−1−1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY**
Title through **a**	No Change
Add	**b.** **TBFM must be used to the maximum extent feasible in preference to miles-in-trail initiatives.**
Add	***NOTE−*** *The benefits of TBFM are best realized through the coordinated effort of all facilities supporting Performance Based Navigation procedures or Traffic Management Initiatives (TMIs).*
b. It is recognized that the ATCS is integral in the execution of the traffic management mission.	**c.** It is recognized that the ATCS is integral in the execution of the traffic management mission.
NOTE− *Complete details of traffic management initiatives and programs can be found in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration.*	No Change

OLD	NEW
11−1−2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	**11−1−2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**
Title through **a**	No Change
1. Ensure that an operational briefing is conducted at least once during the day and evening shifts. Participants must include, at a minimum, the STMCIC, Operations Supervisors (OS), Traffic Management Coordinator(s) (TMC), and other interested personnel as designated by facility management. Discussions at the meeting should include meteorological conditions (present and forecasted), staffing, equipment status, runways in use, AAR and traffic management initiatives (present and anticipated).	**1.** Ensure an operational briefing is conducted at least once during the day and evening shifts. Participants must include, at a minimum, the STMCIC, **Front Line Manager-in-Charge (FLMIC)/Controller-in-Charge (CIC)** and other interested personnel as designated by facility management. Discussions at the meeting should include meteorological conditions (present and forecasted), staffing, equipment status, runways in use, **Airport Arrival Rate** (AAR)**/Metering Parameters and Traffic Management Initiatives (TMIs)** (present and anticipated).
a2	No Change
3. Ensure that traffic management initiatives are carried out by Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator−in−Charge (STMCIC).	**3.** Ensure that **TMIs** are carried out by **personnel providing traffic management services.**
a4 and **a5**	No Change
6. Ensure changes to restrictions based on the Restrictions Inventory and Evaluation are implemented in a timely manner.	**6.** Ensure changes to restrictions**/metering** are implemented in a timely manner.
b. FLM must:	**b.** FLM**/CIC** must:
b1	No Change
2. Coordinate with the TMU and ATCSs to develop appropriate traffic management initiatives for sectors and airports in their area of responsibility.	**2.** Coordinate with the TMU and **personnel providing air traffic services** to develop appropriate **TMIs** for sectors and airports in their area of responsibility.

3. Continuously review traffic management initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.	**3.** Continuously review **TMIs** affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.
4. Ensure that traffic management initiatives are carried out by ATCSs.	**4.** Ensure that TMIs are carried out by personnel providing air traffic services.
b5 and **b6**	No Change
7. Ensure changes to restrictions based on the Restrictions Inventory and Evaluation are implemented in a timely manner.	**7.** Ensure changes to **TMIs** are implemented in a timely manner.
c. ATCSs must:	**c. Personnel providing air traffic services** must:
1. Ensure that traffic management initiatives and programs are enforced within their area of responsibility. Traffic management initiatives and programs do not have priority over maintaining:	**1.** Ensure that **TMIs** are enforced within their area of responsibility. **TMIs** do not have priority over maintaining:
c1(a) and **c1(b)**	No Change
2. Keep the OS and TMU apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.	**2.** Keep the **FLM/CIC** and TMU apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.
3. Continuously review traffic management initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with OS and TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.	**3.** Continuously review **TMIs** affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with **FLM/CIC** and TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.
c4 through **d**	No Change
1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.	**1.** Support **TBFM** operations and monitor **TBFM** equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to **TMIs.**
d2 through **e**	No Change
1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.	**1.** Support **TBFM** operations and monitor **TBFM** equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to **TMIs.**
e2 through **f**	No Change
1. Monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.	**1.** Monitor **TBFM** equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to **TMIs.**

OLD	**NEW**
11–1–3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)	**11–1–3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)**
During periods of metering, ATCS must:	During periods of metering, **personnel providing air traffic services** must:
a. Display TMA schedule information on the main display monitor (MDM).	**a.** Display **TBFM** schedule information on the main display monitor (MDM).
b. Comply with TMA-generated metering times within +/- 1 minute.	**b.** Comply with **TBFM**-generated metering times within +/- 1 minute.

OLD	NEW
1. If <u>TMA</u>-generated metering time accuracy within +/- 1 minute cannot be used for specific aircraft due to significant jumps in the delay countdown timer (DCT), other <u>traffic management initiatives</u> may be used between those aircraft such as miles-in-trail (MIT) or minutes-in-trail (MINIT) to assist in delay absorption until stability resumes.	**1.** If **<u>TBFM</u>**-generated metering time accuracy within +/- 1 minute cannot be used for specific aircraft due to significant jumps in the delay countdown timer (DCT), other **<u>TMIs</u>** may be used between those aircraft such as miles-in-trail (MIT) or minutes-in-trail (MINIT) to assist in delay absorption until stability resumes.
b2	No Change
c. When compliance is not possible, coordinate with FLM <u>and</u> adjacent facilities/sectors as appropriate.	**c.** When compliance is not possible, coordinate with FLM**<u>/CIC, personnel providing traffic management services,</u>** and adjacent facilities/sectors as appropriate.
NOTE− *<u>TMA</u> accuracy of generated metering times is predicated on several factors, including vectoring outside of <u>TMA</u> route conformance boundaries (route recovery logic), certain trajectory ground speed calculations, and when TMU resequences a specific flight or flight list. Caution should be used in these situations to minimize impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.*	***NOTE−*** ***<u>TBFM</u>*** *accuracy of generated metering times is predicated on several factors, including vectoring outside of* ***<u>TBFM</u>*** *route conformance boundaries (route recovery logic), certain trajectory ground speed calculations, and when TMU resequences a specific flight or flight list. Caution should be used in these situations to minimize impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION

2. BACKGROUND: In the Host Computer System, computer applied preferential routes (PARs, PDRs, PDARs) were developed to provide Air Traffic Control (ATC) directed preferred and/or mandated routes. The need for a controller to provide a modified clearance to an aircraft was provided by a "red route" or later a "highlighted route" on a flight strip. Only a single sector received this indication and it was expected the controller would issue the clearance or provide some alternative. En Route Decision Support Tool (EDST previously URET) introduced the concept of blue Embedded Route Text (ERT previously HERT) coding as a replacement for the red/highlighted indication on flight strips, and is integrated in En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM). Embedded Route Text (ERT) coding differs from previous method in that the ERT coding will show at every sector in the facility until the coding is acknowledged. However depending on facility settings, flight plans sent to other facilities could show the route merged; i.e., assumes that the ERT route has been issued. To function properly with the ERAM design, the acknowledgement of the ERT coding needs to be done in a timely manner. This is especially true to support terminal ARTS/STARS and FDIO processing.

3. CHANGE:

<u>OLD</u>	<u>NEW</u>
13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION	**13-1-9. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF AUTOMATED NOTIFICATION**
Title through **e**	No Change

f. Send/acknowledge Host Embedded Route Text (HERT) coding only after the appropriate clearance has been issued to the pilot or otherwise coordinated. Do not send/acknowledge HERT unless the sector has track control for the flight or it has been otherwise coordinated.

g. Remove ATC Preferred Route (APR) coding only after the route has been checked and any required action has been completed. Do not remove APR coding unless the sector has track control or it has been otherwise coordinated.

NOTE–
If coding is prematurely removed and the control of the aircraft is transferred before completing the appropriate action, the next sector may not receive the necessary APR notification.

f. The first sector which displays Embedded Route Text (ERT) coding must issue and send/acknowledge the route prior to initiating a hand-off unless verbally coordinated or as specified in appropriate facility directives. Do not send/acknowledge **ERT coding** unless the sector has track control for the flight or it has been otherwise coordinated.

g. Route **Action Notifications (RAN) such as ATC preferred routes or route processing errors must be amended at the first control position that displays the RAN unless verbally coordinated or as specified in appropriate facility directives.** Do not remove **RAN** coding unless the sector has track control or it has been otherwise coordinated.

Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
Appendix A - Aircraft Information Fixed-Wing Aircraft
Appendix B - Aircraft Information Helicopters/Rotorcrafts
Appendix C - Aircraft Information Specific Amateur−Built/Experimental Aircraft

2. BACKGROUND: The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) formulates aircraft type designators for the world's aircraft that will most likely receive air traffic services. ICAO provides this information through ICAO Document 8643, Aircraft Type Designators, which is updated at least annually. FAA supplements the ICAO information and publishes it through two documents: FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, and FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control. These FAA documents didn't contain all the aircraft listed by ICAO and the FAA documents contained dissimilar information.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
Appendix A - Aircraft Information Fixed-Wing Aircraft	Delete Entire Appendix

OLD	NEW
Appendix B - Aircraft Information Helicopters/ Rotorcrafts	Delete Entire Appendix

OLD	NEW
Appendix C - Aircraft Information Specific Amateur−Built/Experimental Aircraft	Delete Entire Appendix

OLD	NEW
Appendix D − Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility	**Appendix A − Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility**